

CBSE

2027

ENGLISH R1

CHAPTERWISE QUESTION BANK

Based on New NCERT Textbook

KAVERI

Class

9

NODIA

Nodia

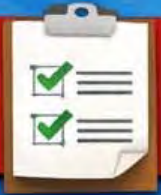


**Scan QR for
Demo PDF**

GET ALL STUDY MATERIAL **IN** ONE APP!



Textbooks



**Previous Year
Chapterwise Question Banks**



**30 Sets
Sample Papers**



Worksheets



DOWNLOAD NOW!

**SCAN &
DOWNLOAD**



GET IT ON
Google Play



CBSE 2027

ENGLISH R1

Based on New NCERT textbook KAVERI

CLASS 9

Chapter-wise Question Bank

NODIA

CBSE Class 9 English R1 Question Bank
Edition April 2026
Published by : NODIA
An Imprint of NODIA EDITIONS LLP

Information contained in this book has been obtained by author, from sources believes to be reliable. However, neither NODIA nor its author guarantee the accuracy or completeness of any information herein and NODIA nor its author shall be responsible for any error, omissions, or damages arising out of use of this information. This book is published with the understanding that NODIA and its author are supplying information but are not attempting to render engineering or other professional services.

© NODIA EDITIONS LLP

MRP ₹650.00

available at
amazon

The Amazon logo, featuring the word "amazon" in a bold, lowercase sans-serif font, with a grey curved arrow underneath it pointing from the 'a' to the 'z'.

This book is available on amazon and flipkart only and not available in market.

NODIA

NODIA EDITIONS LLP

125, Sector 6, Vidyadhar Nagar, Jaipur 302039

Phone : +91 9024037387

email : mail@nodia.in

CONTENTS

Section A : Reading Skills

CHAP 1.	Descriptive/Discursive Passage	5-47
CHAP 2.	Case-Based Passage	48-92

Section B : Writing Skills and Grammar

CHAP 1.	Tenses	93-110
CHAP 2.	Modals Auxiliaries	111-121
CHAP 3.	Reported Speech	122-135
CHAP 4.	Conditional Clause - Type 1	136-141
CHAP 5.	Subject-Verb Concord	142-150
CHAP 6.	Determiners	151-166
CHAP 7.	Clauses	167-173
CHAP 8.	Editing and Omitting	174-181
CHAP 9.	Sentence Rearrangement	182-189
CHAP 10.	Sentence Transformation	190-207
CHAP 11.	Notice Writing	208-216
CHAP 12.	Informal Invitation	217-228
CHAP 13.	Letter to the Editor	229-242
CHAP 14.	Formal E-mail	243-256
CHAP 15.	Factual Description	257-269
CHAP 16.	Article Writing	270-282
CHAP 17.	Essay Writing	283-298

Section C : Language through Literature

Kaveri – Prose Section

CHAP 1.	How I Taught My Grandmother to Read	299-323
CHAP 2.	The Pot Maker	324-345
CHAP 3.	Winds of Change	346-366
CHAP 4.	Vitamin-M	367-389
CHAP 5.	The World of Limitless Possibilities	390-414
CHAP 6.	Twin Melodies	415-439
CHAP 7.	Carrier of Words	440-462
CHAP 8.	Follow That Dream	463-484

Kaveri – Poetry Section

CHAP 1.	Bharat Our Land	485-503
CHAP 2.	Gifts of Grace: Honouring Our Vocations	504-523
CHAP 3.	Canvas of Soil	524-541
CHAP 4.	I Cannot Remember My Mother	542-558
CHAP 5.	Nine Gold Medals	559-578
CHAP 6.	A Friend Found in Music	579-595
CHAP 7.	Words	596-615
CHAP 8.	Believe in Yourself	616-635

CHAPTER 1

DESCRIPTIVE / DISCURSIVE PASSAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

Reading comprehension is an important part of English learning. In Class 9, students come across different types of passages that test their understanding and thinking skills. Two such types are Descriptive and Discursive passages. A descriptive passage helps the reader visualise a scene through detailed description, while a discursive passage encourages the reader to think about ideas and opinions on a topic. Learning to understand these passages helps students answer questions correctly and improves their overall reading and writing skills.

2. DESCRIPTIVE PASSAGE

A descriptive passage gives a clear and detailed picture of something. It uses sensory details like sight, sound, smell, taste, and touch.

Features:

- Focuses on description and imagination
- Uses adjectives and figurative language
- Creates a visual image in the reader's mind
- Often emotional and expressive

Example Topics:

- A rainy day
- A crowded market
- A school playground

3. DISCURSIVE PASSAGE

A discursive passage discusses a topic by presenting facts, opinions, or arguments. It may include both sides of an issue.

Features:

- Focuses on ideas and discussion
- May present for and against views
- Uses logical reasoning
- Language is formal and clear

Example Topics:

- Importance of education
- Advantages and disadvantages of mobile phones

- Should homework be banned?

4. POINTS TO REMEMBER

One should keep the following points in mind before answering the questions set on a given descriptive/discursive passage:

1. Read the passage carefully at least twice.
2. Identify the type of passage (descriptive or discursive).
3. Look for keywords and main ideas.
4. In descriptive passages, focus on details and imagery.
5. In discursive passages, focus on arguments and viewpoints.
6. Do not add your own ideas while answering.
7. Write answers in clear and simple sentences.
8. Follow the word limit, if given.
9. Check your answers for grammar and spelling mistakes.

5. SOME IMPORTANT EXAMPLES

1. Read the following passage carefully:

1. In an era dominated by bite-sized digital content and endless video streams, the timeless act of reading a book can seem like a quaint, almost forgotten, pastime. Yet, to dismiss reading as outdated is to ignore a powerful tool for personal and intellectual growth. Reading offers a unique form of engagement that stimulates the mind in ways that passive screen consumption cannot. It is an active pursuit, a conversation between the reader and the author across time and space.
2. One of the most immediate benefits of reading is vocabulary expansion. Unlike everyday conversation, books introduce readers to a plethora of new words and phrases in context, making them easier to remember and use. This enhanced vocabulary not only improves communication skills but also sharpens writing abilities. Furthermore, regular reading is a formidable workout for the brain, particularly for

concentration and focus. In a world of constant notifications and distractions, sitting with a book trains the mind to focus for sustained periods, a skill that is becoming increasingly rare and valuable.

3. Beyond the cognitive gains, reading fiction, in particular, has a profound impact on emotional intelligence. When we read a story, we step into the shoes of its characters, experiencing their joys, sorrows, and dilemmas. This process of living vicariously through fictional characters fosters empathy, the ability to understand and share the feelings of another. It broadens our perspective, making us more compassionate and understanding of the diverse human experiences that exist beyond our own bubble.
4. Reading is also a proven method of stress reduction. Just six minutes of reading can be enough to reduce stress levels by more than two-thirds, according to some studies. Escaping into a compelling story provides a much-needed break from the anxieties of daily life. It allows the mind to relax and resets our emotional state more effectively than many other common relaxation methods.
5. It's important to remember that 'reading' isn't confined to dense classical novels. Graphic novels, fantasy series, science fiction, and non-fiction all offer the same fundamental benefits. The key is to find genres and authors that you genuinely enjoy. The goal is not to impress others with a sophisticated reading list, but to cultivate a personal habit that brings joy, knowledge, and tranquillity.
6. Ultimately, reading is more than just a hobby; it is a gateway to countless worlds and an investment in oneself. It sharpens the intellect, nurtures empathy, and provides a sanctuary from the stresses of modern life, proving that the humble book remains one of our most potent tools for growth.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. Which of the following is the most suitable title for the passage?
 - (a) The Dramatic Decline of Reading
 - (b) Reading vs. Modern Digital Media
 - (c) The Enduring Power of Reading Books
 - (d) Simple Ways to Improve Vocabulary

- ii. The word 'quaint' as used in paragraph 1 most nearly means:

- (a) Modern and popular
- (b) Useless and boring
- (c) Complicated and difficult
- (d) Attractively old-fashioned

- iii. Based on the passage, consider the following statements:

- I. Reading is an active conversation between reader and author.
- II. Digital content is more mentally stimulating than reading.

Which of the following is correct?

- (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
- (c) Both statements I and II are true.
- (d) Both statements I and II are false.

- iv. Identify two cognitive benefits of reading as mentioned in paragraph 2.

- v. Reading is described as a 'formidable workout for the brain' because it:

- (a) Promotes physical health
- (b) Builds academic lists
- (c) Sharpens mental focus
- (d) Escapes worldly reality

- vi. How does the act of reading fiction contribute to the development of emotional intelligence and empathy?

- vii. Complete the following sentence:

According to some studies, just six minutes of reading can reduce _____ levels by more than two-thirds.

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The author believes that passive screen consumption stimulates the mind more effectively than reading.

- ix. What is the author's primary advice regarding the selection of genres and authors?

- x. What is the ultimate message regarding reading as an investment in oneself?

Ans :

- i. (c) The Enduring Power of Reading Books
- ii. (d) Attractively old-fashioned
- iii. (a) Statement I is true and II is false.

- iv. Two cognitive benefits mentioned are the expansion of vocabulary, which improves communication, and the training of the mind to maintain concentration and focus for sustained periods.
- v. (c) Sharpens mental focus
- vi. Reading fiction allows individuals to step into the shoes of various characters and experience their joys and dilemmas vicariously. This process broadens perspectives and fosters the ability to understand and share the feelings of people outside one's own immediate experience.
- vii. stress
- viii. False.
- ix. The author suggests that one should choose genres and authors they genuinely enjoy rather than trying to impress others with a sophisticated list.
- x. The author conveys that reading is a potent tool for growth that sharpens the intellect, nurtures empathy, and provides a sanctuary from modern stress.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

2. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Plastic is a material that has revolutionised the modern world. Its versatility, durability, and low cost have made it ubiquitous in our daily lives, from packaging and electronics to clothing and medical devices. However, the very quality that makes plastic so useful—its durability—is also the source of an immense environmental crisis. Most plastics are not biodegradable, meaning they do not decompose naturally. Instead, they persist in the environment for hundreds, or even thousands, of years.
2. The most menacing culprit in this crisis is the single-use plastic item. Think of the plastic bottle you drink from, the straw in your juice, the bag you carry groceries in, and the wrapper on your snack. These items are designed to be used for a few moments but are destined to pollute our planet for centuries. A significant portion of this plastic waste ends up in our oceans, transported by rivers and wind from landfills and cities.
3. Once in the ocean, plastic waste poses a grave threat to marine life. Sea turtles mistake floating plastic bags for jellyfish, their natural prey, and ingest them, leading to internal injury and starvation. Seabirds often feed plastic fragments to their chicks, with fatal consequences. Larger animals, such as seals and dolphins, can become

entangled in discarded fishing nets and plastic rings, leading to injury, drowning, or suffocation.

4. Over time, these larger plastic items break down under the sun's glare and the ocean's churning into smaller and smaller pieces known as microplastics. These tiny particles, often less than five millimetres long, are an insidious form of pollution. They are ingested by small marine organisms like plankton, and then they travel up the food chain, eventually ending up on our own dinner plates in the seafood we consume. The long-term health effects of consuming microplastics are still being studied, but they are a growing concern for scientists.
5. Tackling this global problem requires a multi-pronged approach. While recycling is important, it is not a complete solution, as many types of plastic are difficult to recycle. The most effective strategies focus on the first two 'R's: Reduce and Reuse. We must consciously reduce our consumption of single-use plastics by opting for sustainable alternatives—carrying reusable water bottles, using cloth shopping bags, and refusing plastic straws.
6. The challenge of plastic pollution is monumental, but it is not insurmountable. It begins with a simple shift in our daily habits and consumer choices. By becoming more mindful of our plastic footprint, we can collectively turn the tide on this environmental threat and safeguard the planet for future generations.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the primary paradox of plastic discussed in the first paragraph?
 - (a) Its low cost compared to its high versatility.
 - (b) Its use in electronics versus medical devices.
 - (c) Its durability being both a benefit and a crisis.
 - (d) Its ubiquity on land versus its presence in oceans.
- ii. Based on the passage, identify the most significant culprit in the current environmental crisis and explain why.
- iii. According to the passage, microplastics primarily enter the human food chain through:
 - (a) Consumption of seafood
 - (b) Contaminated bottled water
 - (c) Air we breathe daily
 - (d) Contact with packaging

CBSE CLASS 12

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Core

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Physics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Chemistry

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Biology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Physical Education

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Informatics Practice

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Computer Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Accountancy

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Business Studies

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Economics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Entrepreneurship

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Legal Studies

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Applied Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Hindi

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

History

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Geography

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Political Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Psychology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Sociology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF(NEET, JEE and CUET) visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 11

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Core

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Physics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Chemistry

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Biology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Physical Education

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Informatic Practice

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Computer Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Accountancy

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Business Studies

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Economics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Entrepreneurship

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Legal Studies

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Applied Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Hindi

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

History

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Geography

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Political Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Psychology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Sociology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF (NEET, JEE and CUET) visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 10

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English LL

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

English Comm

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics STD

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics Basic

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Social Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

IT (402)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

AI (417)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (419)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी अ

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी ब

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

संस्कृत

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

सामाजिक विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित मानक

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित आधार

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

NEET Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit

www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 9

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English LL

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

English Comm

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics STD

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics Basic

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Social Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

IT (402)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

AI (417)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (419)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी अ

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी ब

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

संस्कृत

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

सामाजिक विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित मानक

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित आधार

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

NEET Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit

www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 8

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Social Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

संस्कृत

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

IT (906)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

AI (901)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (911)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Coding (910)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

सामाजिक विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

NEET Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad General Aptitude

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 7

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Social Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



संस्कृत

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



IT (906)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



AI (901)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Data Science (911)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Coding (910)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



सामाजिक विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



NEET Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



JEE Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



JEE Foundation Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad General Aptitude

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 6

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Social Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

संस्कृत

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

IT (906)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

AI (901)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (911)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Coding (910)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

सामाजिक विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

NEET Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad General Aptitude

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 5 and 4

Worksheets

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

English 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 3 and 2

Worksheets

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

English 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 1 and KG

Worksheets

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

English KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

iv. Identify the direct threat plastic bags pose specifically to sea turtles.

v. **Assertion (A):** Microplastics are considered an insidious form of pollution.

Reason (R): They are tiny particles that travel up the food chain to humans.

(a) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).

(b) Both (A) and (R) are true but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).

(c) (A) is true but (R) is false.

(d) (A) is false but (R) is true.

vi. How does the transition from large plastic waste to microplastics create a broader threat to the ecosystem and human health?

vii. Complete the following sentence:

Plastics that persist in the environment and do not decompose naturally are called _____.

viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The author believes that recycling alone is a sufficient solution to the plastic crisis.

ix. The word 'insidious' in paragraph 4 most nearly means:

(a) Harmless (b) Visible

(c) Rapid (d) Subtle

x. List two examples of sustainable alternatives to single-use plastics mentioned by the author.

Ans :

i. (c) Its durability being both a benefit and a crisis.

ii. The most significant culprit is the single-use plastic item, such as bottles, straws, and bags. These items are problematic because they are designed for only a few moments of use but persist in the environment for centuries, often ending up in oceans.

iii. (a) Consumption of seafood

iv. Sea turtles mistake floating plastic bags for jellyfish, leading to ingestion, internal injury, and eventual starvation.

v. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).

vi. Large plastic items break down into microplastics under sunlight and ocean movement. These tiny particles are ingested by small organisms like plankton and then travel up the food chain, eventually reaching human dinner plates, where

their long-term health effects remain a concern for scientists.

vii. non-biodegradable

viii. False.

ix. (d) Subtle

x. Two examples mentioned are reusable water bottles and cloth shopping bags.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

3. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Artificial Intelligence, or AI, is a term that once belonged to the realm of science fiction. Today, it is a powerful reality that is reshaping our world. At its core, AI is the science of making machines smart—teaching them to learn, reason, problem-solve, and even create. It's the engine behind the voice assistants on our phones, the recommendation systems that suggest what we should watch next, and the navigation apps that guide us through traffic.

2. The potential benefits of AI are immense and span across numerous fields. In medicine, AI algorithms can analyse medical images like X-rays and MRIs to detect diseases like cancer with a speed and accuracy that can surpass human experts. In transportation, AI is the key to developing self-driving cars, which promise to make our roads safer and reduce traffic congestion. It optimises supply chains, predicts weather patterns, and helps scientists tackle complex problems like climate change.

3. But how does a machine 'learn'? The most common approach is called machine learning, where an AI system is fed vast amounts of data. For instance, to teach an AI to recognise a cat, developers would show it millions of images labelled 'cat'. The system learns to identify the patterns, features, and characteristics common to all cats. Over time, it can identify a cat in a new picture it has never seen before, much like how a human learns from experience.

4. Despite its incredible potential, the rise of AI also brings significant challenges and ethical questions. One of the primary concerns is job displacement. As AI becomes more capable of automating routine tasks, many jobs currently performed by humans could become obsolete. Another critical issue is algorithmic bias. If the data used to train an AI system is biased, the AI's decisions will reflect that bias. For example, an AI hiring tool trained on historical data from a male-dominated industry might unfairly favour male candidates.

5. Therefore, the future of AI is not just in the hands of computer scientists but in all of ours. Developing AI responsibly is paramount. We must ensure that these systems are designed to be fair, transparent, and accountable. Human oversight and ethical guidelines are crucial to steer the development of AI in a direction that benefits humanity as a whole, rather than creating new forms of inequality.
6. In conclusion, AI is not merely a technological advancement; it is a transformative force. Like any powerful tool, it holds the potential for both tremendous good and significant harm. The key is to approach its development with foresight and wisdom, ensuring that we harness its power to build a better, more equitable future for everyone.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the primary theme of the passage?
 - (a) AI will inevitably replace all human jobs.
 - (b) AI offers great benefits despite challenges.
 - (c) Machine learning is too complex for humans.
 - (d) AI is mainly used for digital assistants.
- ii. According to the first paragraph, what are some everyday examples of AI?
- iii. Based on paragraph 2, which of the following are potential benefits of AI?
 - I. Detecting cancer in medical images with high accuracy.
 - II. Developing self-driving cars to reduce traffic.
 - III. Completely eliminating the need for human scientists.
 - IV. Optimising supply chains and weather prediction.

Choose the correct option:

 - (a) I, II, and III only
 - (b) II, III, and IV only
 - (c) I, II, and IV only
 - (d) All of the above

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

- iv. The word 'paramount' as used in paragraph 5 most nearly means:
 - (a) Optional
 - (b) Critical
 - (c) Complex
 - (d) Passive
- v. Explain the process of 'Machine Learning' as described in the passage using the example of image recognition.

- vi. Discuss the two major ethical challenges and risks associated with the rise of Artificial Intelligence.
- vii. Complete the following sentence:
The technology behind self-driving cars, which aims to make roads safer, is _____.
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
The passage suggests that AI learns by being explicitly programmed for every single task.
- ix. The author's attitude towards the future of AI can best be described as:
 - (a) Fearful
 - (b) Indifferent
 - (c) Enthusiastic
 - (d) Cautious
- x. According to the author, what is essential for steering the development of AI in a direction that benefits humanity?

Ans :

- i. (b) AI offers great benefits despite challenges.
- ii. Everyday examples include voice assistants on phones, recommendation systems for entertainment, and navigation apps for traffic.
- iii. (c) I, II, and IV only
- iv. (b) Critical
- v. Machine learning involves feeding an AI system vast amounts of data to help it identify patterns. For example, to recognize a cat, the system is shown millions of labeled images; over time, it learns the specific characteristics of a cat so it can identify one in a new picture it has never seen before.
- vi. The first major challenge is job displacement, where the automation of routine tasks may make many human roles obsolete. The second is algorithmic bias, which occurs when AI systems produce unfair results because they were trained on biased historical data, leading to inequality in areas like hiring.
- vii. Artificial Intelligence
- viii. False.
- ix. (d) Cautious
- x. The author emphasizes that human oversight and the implementation of ethical guidelines are essential for responsible AI development.

4. Read the following passage carefully:

1. In our fast-paced world, food is often seen as a quick fuel stop rather than a source of nourishment. Amidst a flood of diet fads and conflicting advice,

the fundamental concept of a balanced diet can seem confusing. However, the principle is quite simple: a balanced diet provides our body with all the essential nutrients it needs to function correctly. It isn't about extreme restrictions but about making mindful choices to consume a variety of foods in the right proportions.

2. The primary building blocks of our diet are the macronutrients: carbohydrates, proteins, and fats. Carbohydrates are the body's main source of energy, powering everything from a morning run to brain function. Proteins are essential for growth, repair, and maintaining tissues and muscles—think of them as the repair crew for your body. Fats, often unfairly demonised, are crucial for storing energy, protecting organs, and absorbing certain vitamins. The key is to consume healthy fats, found in foods like avocados and nuts, rather than unhealthy ones.
3. Beyond these are the micronutrients—vitamins and minerals. Though needed in smaller amounts, they are vital for our health. They act like spark plugs in a car, enabling hundreds of chemical reactions in the body. A simple way to ensure a wide range of these micronutrients is to 'eat the rainbow'. This means including fruits and vegetables of different colours in your diet—red tomatoes, orange carrots, green spinach, and purple berries. Each colour typically signifies the presence of different vitamins and antioxidants.
4. A major challenge to healthy eating today is the prevalence of highly processed foods. These foods are often engineered to be hyper-palatable (extremely tasty) but are loaded with added sugar, unhealthy fats, and sodium, while being stripped of fibre, vitamins, and minerals. A diet heavy in such foods is linked to an increased risk of various health problems, including obesity and heart disease.
5. Improving one's diet doesn't require a radical overhaul. Small, consistent changes can make a huge difference. Swapping sugary drinks for water, adding a side of salad or fruit to every meal, and learning to read food labels to understand what you're consuming are practical first steps. It's about progress, not perfection.
6. Ultimately, a balanced diet is one of the cornerstones of good health. It is an act of self-care and a long-term investment in your physical and mental well-being. By understanding the basics and making conscious choices, we can nourish our bodies to lead healthier and more energetic lives.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the central message conveyed by the author regarding a balanced diet?
 - (a) It requires following the latest modern diet fads.
 - (b) It is about variety and making mindful food choices.
 - (c) It involves avoiding all fats to maintain health.
 - (d) It is only possible through extreme restrictions.
- ii. The passage compares proteins to a 'repair crew' because they are essential for:
 - (a) Providing quick energy
 - (b) Absorbing all vitamins
 - (c) Enabling brain activity
 - (d) Maintaining body tissues
- iii. Based on the information in Paragraph 2, describe the specific functions of carbohydrates and fats in the human body.
- iv. Which of the following best describes the concept of 'eating the rainbow'?
 - (a) Consuming a wide range of micronutrients
 - (b) Eating only red and orange vegetables
 - (c) Focusing purely on healthy macronutrients
 - (d) Avoiding any form of processed food items
- v. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:
Statement I: Vitamins and minerals act like spark plugs for chemical reactions.
Statement II: Micronutrients are required by the body in very large quantities.
 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
 - (c) Both statements I and II are true.
 - (d) Both statements I and II are false.
- vi. Explain why highly processed foods are considered a major challenge to healthy eating despite being "hyper-palatable."
- vii. Complete the following sentence:
 The body's main source of energy for powering the brain and physical activity comes from -----.
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The author suggests that making small, consistent changes is an ineffective way to improve one's diet.

ix. The word 'prevalence' in paragraph 4 most nearly means:

- (a) Scarcity (b) Commonness
- (c) Nutrition (d) Expense

x. Identify the three primary macronutrients that serve as the building blocks of our diet.

Ans :

- i. (b) It is about variety and making mindful food choices.
- ii. (d) Maintaining body tissues
- iii. Carbohydrates serve as the body's primary source of energy, fueling both physical activities like running and cognitive functions of the brain. Fats are essential for long-term energy storage, the protection of internal organs, and the absorption of specific vitamins.
- iv. (a) Consuming a wide range of micronutrients
- v. (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- vi. While processed foods are engineered to be extremely tasty, they are often loaded with harmful ingredients like added sugars, sodium, and unhealthy fats. Simultaneously, the processing strips away essential fiber, vitamins, and minerals, making them a primary driver for health issues like obesity and heart disease.
- vii. carbohydrates
- viii. False.
- ix. (b) Commonness
- x. The three primary macronutrients are carbohydrates, proteins, and fats.

5. Read the following passage carefully:

- 1. Have you ever thought about how you view your own intelligence and abilities? According to Stanford psychologist Carol Dweck, our beliefs about our own potential profoundly shape our lives. She identifies two core mindsets: a 'fixed mindset' and a 'growth mindset'. A fixed mindset is the belief that qualities like intelligence or talent are static, inborn traits that cannot be changed. In contrast, a growth mindset is the belief that abilities can be developed and strengthened through dedication, hard work, and learning.
- 2. Individuals with a fixed mindset tend to avoid challenges, as they see them as risks that might expose their perceived lack of ability. When they encounter an obstacle, they are more likely to give

up easily, believing that if they are not good at something immediately, they will never be. For them, effort is a negative sign; they think that if you need to work hard, you must not be smart. They often feel threatened by the success of others and ignore useful negative feedback.

- 3. On the other hand, those with a growth mindset thrive on challenges, viewing them as exciting opportunities for self-improvement. They understand that failure is not a sign of unintelligence but a natural part of the learning process. They persist in the face of setbacks, believing that effort is the path to mastery. They learn from criticism and find lessons and inspiration in the success of others.
 - 4. One of the most powerful tools for cultivating a growth mindset is the simple power of the word "yet." When a student with a fixed mindset says, "I can't solve this math problem," they are stating a permanent condition. But by adding "yet" – "I can't solve this math problem yet" – the statement transforms. It implies that with more time, effort, or a different strategy, a solution is possible. This small linguistic shift reframes failure as a temporary state on the journey towards success.
 - 5. This concept is not just applicable to academics. Whether it's learning to play a musical instrument, mastering a new sport, or navigating social relationships, a growth mindset is crucial. It allows us to embrace the learning process, with all its ups and downs, and encourages the resilience needed to achieve long-term goals.
- Ultimately, the mindset we adopt is a choice. It is not about denying our current weaknesses but about understanding that our potential is not a predetermined limit. By choosing to cultivate a growth mindset, we empower ourselves to learn, grow, and unlock our true capabilities throughout our entire lives.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the fundamental difference between a fixed and a growth mindset?
 - (a) Growth mindsets possess more natural intelligence.
 - (b) Fixed mindsets believe abilities are unchangeable.
 - (c) Fixed mindsets never achieve any form of success.
 - (d) Growth mindsets ignore the reality of all failure.

- ii. Contrast the way individuals with fixed and growth mindsets perceive the concept of “effort.”
- iii. Based on the passage, how does a person with a growth mindset respond to the success of others?
- They feel deeply threatened by it.
 - They find inspiration in the success.
 - They ignore the success of others.
 - They find lessons within that success.
- Choose the correct option:
- I and III only
 - II and IV only
 - I and II only
 - III and IV only
- iv. The author introduces the power of the word “yet” as a tool to:
- Finalise a negative conclusion
 - Reframe a permanent failure
 - Make excuses for any inability
 - Show that a task is impossible
- v. Explain the linguistic shift caused by adding the word “yet” to a negative statement and how it impacts a student’s perspective.
- vi. The word ‘cultivating’ in paragraph 6 most nearly means:
- Neglecting
 - Developing
 - Concealing
 - Finalising
- vii. Complete the following analogy based on the passage:
Fixed Mindset : Static Traits :: Growth Mindset : _____
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
According to the passage, a person with a growth mindset is often threatened by the success of others.
- ix. Complete the following sentence:
The psychologist credited with developing the theory of the two mindsets is _____.
- x. How does a growth mindset apply to learning a new skill, such as playing a musical instrument?
- Ans :
- (b) Fixed mindsets believe abilities are unchangeable.
 - For those with a fixed mindset, effort is seen as a negative sign suggesting a lack of natural talent or intelligence. In contrast, those with a growth mindset view effort as the necessary path to mastery and believe that hard work is how abilities are strengthened.
- iii. (b) II and IV only
- iv. (b) Reframe a permanent failure
- v. Adding the word “yet” transforms a statement of permanent inability into a temporary state. It implies that while a solution hasn’t been found at the present moment, it remains possible in the future through continued effort, time, or a change in strategy.
- vi. (b) Developing
- vii. Developed Abilities
- viii. False.
- ix. Carol Dweck
- x. It encourages the learner to embrace the ups and downs of practice and provides the resilience needed to persist until they become skilled.
- 6. Read the following passage carefully:**
- There is a well-known African proverb that says, “If you want to go fast, go alone. If you want to go far, go together.” This simple yet profound statement captures the very essence of teamwork. In our modern world, which often celebrates individual achievement, it is easy to overlook the immense power of collaboration. Teamwork is the process where a group of individuals work together cohesively, leveraging their diverse talents and skills to achieve a common objective.
 - The core principle that makes teamwork so effective is synergy. This is the idea that the final outcome of a group’s effort is greater than the sum of the individual efforts of its members. Think of a successful sports team; it is not just the star player who wins the match, but the coordinated effort of every member, each playing their specific role. When different perspectives, skills, and experiences are combined, the team can generate more creative and robust solutions than any one person could alone.
 - Beyond achieving a better outcome, working in a team offers significant benefits for the individuals involved. It is a powerful learning experience. Teamwork cultivates essential life skills such as communication, negotiation, and conflict resolution. It teaches us how to listen to others, articulate our own ideas clearly, and find a middle ground through compromise. Moreover, being part of a team provides a support system that can boost morale and motivation, especially when facing difficult challenges.
 - However, successful teamwork does not happen automatically. It requires a conscious effort from all members and a clear framework to operate

within. One of the most critical components is open and honest communication. Team members must feel safe to share ideas, voice concerns, and provide constructive feedback without fear of ridicule.

5. Effective teams also establish clear goals and define the roles and responsibilities of each member. This ensures that everyone is working towards the same target and that the workload is distributed fairly, preventing issues like social loafing, where some members rely on others to do all the work. Mutual respect is the glue that holds it all together; team members must value the contributions of others, even when they disagree.
6. In conclusion, teamwork is a fundamental skill for the 21st century. From group projects in the classroom to tackling complex global issues, our ability to collaborate effectively is paramount. It empowers us to go further than we ever could alone, transforming individual potential into collective success.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the central idea conveyed by the author in this passage?
 - (a) Individual success is the ultimate modern goal.
 - (b) Teamwork is essential for growth and success.
 - (c) Working alone is always the fastest approach.
 - (d) Sports are the only true measure of synergy.
- ii. The word 'cohesively' in paragraph 1 most nearly means:
 - (a) Independently
 - (b) Competitively
 - (c) Unitedly
 - (d) Inefficiently
- iii. Explain the concept of 'Synergy' as described in the passage and how it relates to the final outcome of a group.
- iv. Based on the passage, read the following statements and choose the correct option:
Statement I: Teamwork helps individuals develop skills like negotiation and conflict resolution.
Statement II: Being part of a team can decrease a person's morale and motivation.
 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
 - (c) Both statements I and II are true.
 - (d) Both statements I and II are false.

- v. According to the passage, what is the 'glue' that holds a team together?
 - (a) Strict leadership
 - (b) Individual fame
 - (c) Mutual respect
 - (d) Fear of failure
- vi. What is 'social loafing,' and how do effective teams establish a framework to prevent it?
- vii. Complete the following sentence:
 The problem where some team members rely on others to do most of the work is known as -----.
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
 The author believes that effective teamwork happens naturally without any need for a clear framework or conscious effort.
- ix. What specific message does the African proverb in the first paragraph convey about the scope of teamwork?
- x. Besides open communication, name one other critical requirement for an effective team mentioned in the passage.

Ans :

- i. (b) Teamwork is essential for growth and success.
- ii. (c) Unitedly
- iii. Synergy is the principle where the final result of a group's collective work is greater than the simple sum of the individual efforts of its members. By combining different perspectives and experiences, a team can generate more robust and creative solutions than a single person working in isolation.
- iv. (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- v. (c) Mutual respect
- vi. Social loafing occurs when certain members of a group exert less effort because they rely on others to complete the work. To prevent this, effective teams define clear roles and responsibilities for every member and establish specific goals to ensure the workload is distributed fairly.
- vii. social loafing
- viii. False.
- ix. It conveys that while going alone might be faster for small tasks, reaching significant or long-term goals requires the collective effort of a group.
- x. The establishment of clear goals or the definition of specific roles and responsibilities for each member.

7. Read the following passage carefully:

1. In today's complex world, learning about money is just as important as learning mathematics or science. Financial literacy—the knowledge and skills to manage financial resources effectively—is no longer a topic reserved for adults. For teenagers standing at the threshold of adulthood, developing a healthy relationship with money is one of the most crucial steps towards independence and security. It's a life skill that pays dividends for a lifetime.
2. The journey to financial literacy often begins with the concepts of earning and budgeting. Whether it's money from an allowance, a part-time job, or gifts, learning to manage this income is fundamental. A budget is simply a plan for your money. It involves tracking how much money comes in and how much goes out. Creating a budget helps you see where your money is going, enabling you to prioritise spending and avoid running out of money before your next allowance or paycheck.
3. Beyond managing day-to-day expenses, a key pillar of financial health is saving. This means setting aside a portion of your income for future goals, both short-term (like buying a new video game) and long-term (like education). Closely related to saving is the powerful concept of investing, where you make your money work for you. One of the miracles of investing is compound interest, where you earn interest not only on your initial money but also on the accumulated interest. It's like a small snowball rolling downhill, gathering more snow and getting bigger and bigger over time.
4. On the flip side of saving is the danger of debt. Debt occurs when you borrow money that you must pay back, usually with an extra charge called interest. While some debt can be necessary (like a student loan), getting into unnecessary debt due to impulse buying can be a serious trap. It limits your financial freedom and can cause significant stress. Understanding the difference between 'needs' (things you must have to survive) and 'wants' (things you would like to have) is critical to avoiding this pitfall.
5. Becoming a smart consumer is another vital aspect. This involves more than just not overspending. It means comparing prices, reading reviews, and being aware of advertising tactics designed to persuade you to buy things you may not need. A financially literate person makes informed and intentional decisions rather than being swayed by momentary desires.

6. In essence, learning about money is about learning about choices. Mastering your finances early on provides you with the freedom to build the future you want. It's not about becoming rich overnight; it's about building a solid foundation of good habits that will support you throughout your entire life.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the primary purpose of the passage provided?
 - (a) To provide a guide for stock market investing.
 - (b) To explain why financial literacy is a life skill.
 - (c) To argue that saving is better than earning.
 - (d) To teach teenagers how to get wealthy fast.
- ii. According to Paragraph 2, how does the process of creating a budget help an individual manage their finances?
- iii. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:
Statement I: Compound interest allows you to earn interest on both the initial principal and accumulated interest.
Statement II: The passage compares the growth of debt to a snowball rolling downhill and getting bigger.
 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
 - (c) Both statements I and II are true.
 - (d) Both statements I and II are false.
- iv. The snowball analogy is used specifically to explain:

(a) Budgeting	(b) Debt
(c) Interest	(d) Spending
- v. Explain the difference between 'needs' and 'wants' and why distinguishing between them is vital to avoiding the "debt trap."
- vi. The word 'prioritise' in paragraph 2 most nearly means:

(a) Spend	(b) Rank
(c) Earn	(d) Save
- vii. Complete the following sentence:
 The knowledge and skills needed to manage financial resources effectively for a lifetime of financial well-being is called _____.

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The passage suggests that the difference between 'needs' and 'wants' is unimportant for managing money.

- ix. Which of the following is presented as a primary danger of unnecessary debt?
- Increased financial freedom
 - Improved credit history
 - Stress and limited choice
 - Easy payment for needs

- x. According to the author, what is the core requirement for being a 'smart consumer'?

Ans :

- (b) To explain why financial literacy is a life skill.
- A budget acts as a plan for your money by tracking exactly how much income comes in and how much goes out. By doing this, an individual can see exactly where their money is going, which allows them to rank their spending by importance and prevents them from running out of funds prematurely.
- (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- (c) Interest
- 'Needs' are essential items required for survival, while 'wants' are things we desire but do not strictly require. Distinguishing between them is vital because failing to do so often leads to impulse buying and the accumulation of unnecessary debt, which creates financial stress and restricts long-term freedom.
- (b) Rank
- financial literacy
- False.
- (c) Stress and limited choice
- Being a smart consumer means making informed, intentional decisions by comparing prices and staying aware of persuasive advertising tactics.

8. Read the following passage carefully:

- Every time you go online, you leave a trail. Much like footprints in the sand, you leave behind a path of data that is uniquely yours. This trail is your digital footprint. It is the collection of all your online activities, from the websites you visit and the emails you send, to the information you submit to online services. Your digital footprint can be created actively, by sharing information, or passively, without you even realising it.

- Your active digital footprint is created when you deliberately share information about yourself. This includes posting on social media sites like Instagram or Facebook, commenting on a blog, uploading a video to YouTube, or sending a public tweet. It's the digital identity that you are consciously building for others to see.
 - In contrast, a passive digital footprint is a data trail you unintentionally leave online. When you visit a website, the web server may log your IP address, which identifies your device. Websites also often use 'cookies' to track your visits and preferences. Your search history on Google and your browsing history are also parts of your passive footprint, collected by various services to understand your interests.
 - One of the most critical things to understand is the permanence of the digital world. The phrase "once on the internet, always on the internet" holds a lot of truth. Even if you delete a post or a photo, it might have already been screenshotted, shared, or saved by others. This information can persist for years and can be seen by a much wider audience than you intended, including future colleges or employers.
- Therefore, managing your digital footprint—a practice often called 'digital hygiene'—is essential. The first rule is to think before you post. Ask yourself if you would be comfortable with a parent, a teacher, or a future boss seeing what you are about to share. Regularly reviewing the privacy settings on your social media accounts is another crucial step. This allows you to control who sees your posts and personal information. Using strong, unique passwords for different accounts can also protect your digital identity from being compromised.
- Your digital footprint is an extension of your real-world identity. It is not something to be feared, but something to be managed with mindfulness and responsibility. By being a conscious and careful digital citizen, you can build a positive online reputation that can serve you well in the future.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- What is the best definition of a 'digital footprint' according to the passage?
 - Time spent on daily internet usage
 - Data trail left from online activity
 - Password used for online accounts
 - Brand of the electronic hardware

- ii. Differentiate between an 'active' and a 'passive' digital footprint using examples provided in the text.
- iii. Which of the following is a specific example of a passive digital footprint?
- Uploading a photo
 - Logging an IP address
 - Writing a comment
 - Sending an email
- iv. **Assertion (A):** The digital world is considered a permanent environment.
Reason (R): Even deleted posts may have been screenshotted or shared by others previously.
- Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - Both (A) and (R) are true but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 - (A) is true but (R) is false.
 - (A) is false but (R) is true.
- v. The word 'compromised' in paragraph 5 most nearly means:
- Improved
 - Risked
 - Shared
 - Deleted
- vi. What is 'digital hygiene,' and why does the author emphasize its importance for future opportunities?
- vii. Complete the following sentence:
 The conscious practice of managing one's online identity and data trail is often called _____.
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
 According to the passage, your digital footprint is only visible to your close friends and family.
- ix. Why is it important to "think before you post" in the context of a wider audience?
- x. List one practical step, other than thinking before you post, that can protect your digital identity.
- Ans :
- (b) Data trail left from online activity
 - An active digital footprint is created when a user deliberately shares information, such as posting a photo on Instagram or sending a tweet. In contrast, a passive footprint is left unintentionally, such as when a web server logs a user's IP address or tracks their browsing history through cookies.
 - (b) Logging an IP address

- iv. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- v. (b) Risked
- vi. Digital hygiene refers to the essential practice of managing one's digital footprint through mindful posting and security checks. It is emphasized because online information is permanent and can be accessed by future colleges or employers, significantly impacting one's long-term reputation and career prospects.
- vii. digital hygiene
- viii. False.
- ix. Information can be permanent and seen by a wide audience you didn't intend, such as future bosses or teachers.
- x. Regularly reviewing privacy settings on social media accounts or using strong, unique passwords.

9. Read the following passage carefully:

- The water you drank today might have once been part of a distant ocean, a fluffy cloud, or a raindrop that fell on a dinosaur. This is possible because of the water cycle, Earth's magnificent and perpetual recycling system. The water cycle, also known as the hydrologic cycle, describes the continuous movement of water on, above, and below the surface of the Earth. The total amount of water on our planet remains constant; it simply changes its form and location in a never-ending journey.
- The cycle is powered by the sun's energy. The first major stage is evaporation. The sun heats up water in oceans, lakes, and rivers, turning it into water vapour, a gas, which then rises into the atmosphere. A similar process called transpiration occurs when plants release water vapour from their leaves. Together, these processes move vast amounts of water into the air.
- As the warm, moist air rises, it begins to cool. This leads to the next stage: condensation. During condensation, the water vapour in the air cools down and changes back into tiny liquid water droplets or ice crystals. These particles clump together to form the clouds we see in the sky. You can see a small-scale example of condensation when droplets form on the outside of a cold glass on a humid day.
- When these clouds become saturated and the water droplets grow too heavy to stay suspended in the air, the water falls back to Earth. This stage is called precipitation. Precipitation can take various forms depending on the temperature, including rain, snow, sleet, or hail. It is the primary

route for water to return from the atmosphere to the Earth's surface.

5. Once the water reaches the ground, it begins the final stage of its journey, collection. Some of the water seeps into the ground through a process called infiltration, becoming groundwater. The rest of the water flows over the surface of the land as runoff, collecting in streams, rivers, lakes, and eventually flowing back into the oceans. From these bodies of water, the sun's heat starts the process of evaporation all over again, continuing the cycle.
6. The water cycle is a delicate yet powerful system that is absolutely vital for supporting all life on Earth. It connects our land, oceans, and atmosphere, distributing fresh water across the globe. Understanding this cycle helps us appreciate the importance of protecting our water resources from pollution and overuse, which can disrupt this essential natural balance.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the central theme of the passage?
 - (a) Dangers of global water pollution
 - (b) Vital process of the water cycle
 - (c) Formation of different cloud types
 - (d) Importance of sun for plant life
- ii. Based on the passage, identify the correct sequence of the water cycle's stages as water moves from the surface to the atmosphere and back:
 - I. Precipitation
 - II. Evaporation
 - III. Collection
 - IV. Condensation

Choose the correct option:

 - (a) I → II → III → IV
 - (b) II → IV → I → III
 - (c) II → I → IV → III
 - (d) IV → II → III → I
- iii. Describe the two distinct processes mentioned in Paragraph 2 that move water from the Earth's surface and vegetation into the atmosphere.
- iv. The energy that powers the entire hydrologic cycle comes from:
 - (a) Earth's core
 - (b) Moon's pull
 - (c) Sun's heat
 - (d) Wind power

- v. The word 'perpetual' in paragraph 1 most nearly means:
 - (a) Temporary
 - (b) Complicated
 - (c) Never-ending
 - (d) Scientific
- vi. Explain how the water cycle acts as a distribution system and why it is considered vital for the survival of all living organisms.
- vii. Complete the following sentence:
Water that flows over the land's surface after precipitation, eventually collecting in rivers and lakes, is known as _____.
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
According to the passage, the total amount of water on Earth is gradually decreasing over time.
- ix. What is the primary difference between the physical states of water during the stages of evaporation and precipitation?
- x. During which specific stage do water vapour particles clump together to form the clouds we see in the sky?
Ans :
 - i. (b) Vital process of the water cycle.
 - ii. (b) II → IV → I → III
 - iii. The two processes are evaporation and transpiration. Evaporation occurs when the sun heats water in bodies like oceans and lakes, turning it into gas. Transpiration is a similar process where plants release water vapour into the air through their leaves.
 - iv. (c) Sun's heat
 - v. (c) Never-ending
 - vi. The water cycle is a perpetual recycling system that connects the land, oceans, and atmosphere. It is vital because it is the primary mechanism for distributing fresh water across the entire globe, ensuring that all life forms have access to the water they need to survive.
 - vii. runoff
 - viii. False.
 - ix. During evaporation, water changes from a liquid to a gas (water vapour), whereas during precipitation, it returns to Earth as a liquid (rain) or a solid (snow/hail).
 - x. Condensation.

10. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Long before the rise of ancient Greece or Rome, one of the world's earliest and most advanced urban civilizations flourished in the basin of the Indus River. The Indus Valley Civilization (IVC), also known as the Harappan Civilization, thrived from approximately 3300 to 1300 BCE. Contemporary with the great civilizations of Mesopotamia and ancient Egypt, the IVC was the most widespread of the three, yet it remains the most enigmatic.
2. The hallmark of the Indus Valley Civilization was its extraordinary urban planning. Cities like Mohenjo-daro and Harappa were masterpieces of engineering for their time. They were laid out in a grid-like pattern with well-planned, straight streets. Houses were built with uniform, baked bricks and many had their own private wells and bathrooms. Most impressively, these cities featured some of the world's earliest and most advanced sanitation systems, including covered drains and sewers that were far superior to those found in many parts of the world even centuries later.
3. The civilization's economy was robust, based primarily on agriculture and trade. Farmers grew crops like wheat, barley, and cotton. This agricultural surplus supported the large urban populations and allowed for a flourishing trade network. Evidence for this trade is widespread; distinctive Indus seals, used to mark goods, have been found as far away as Mesopotamia (modern-day Iraq), indicating a well-established international trade route. Harappan artisans were masters of their craft, producing intricate pottery, jewellery from beads, and tools from bronze.
4. Much about Harappan society remains a puzzle. Unlike their Egyptian and Mesopotamian counterparts, they did not build monumental structures like pyramids or grand palaces for kings. The relative uniformity of the houses suggests a society that may have been more egalitarian, or equal, than others. Famous artifacts like the "Priest-King" statue and the bronze "Dancing Girl" offer tantalizing glimpses into their culture, but without written records, their social structure is open to interpretation.
5. Perhaps the greatest mystery of all is the Indus script. Archaeologists have discovered thousands of short inscriptions on seals and pottery, featuring hundreds of unique symbols. However, despite numerous attempts by scholars from around the world, this elegant script has not yet been deciphered. This inability to read their

writing is the primary reason why their system of governance, their religious beliefs, and many aspects of their daily life remain shrouded in mystery.

6. Around 1800 BCE, this great civilization began to decline. The precise reasons for its collapse are still debated. Leading theories point towards environmental factors, such as climate change that altered monsoon patterns and dried up major rivers like the Sarasvati. While the IVC eventually faded, it left behind a legacy of urban planning and craftsmanship that continues to fascinate and mystify historians and archaeologists today.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is considered the most remarkable hallmark of the Indus Valley Civilization?
 - (a) The construction of massive royal pyramids
 - (b) The advanced urban planning and sanitation
 - (c) The presence of powerful kings and armies
 - (d) The decoded and well-understood writing
- ii. Based on the passage, read the following statements and choose the correct option:
Statement I: Distinctive Indus seals found in Mesopotamia suggest international trade.
Statement II: The Harappan artisans were unskilled in producing bronze tools.
 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
 - (c) Both statements I and II are true.
 - (d) Both statements I and II are false.
- iii. Describe the specific features of Harappan engineering that made their cities "masterpieces" of urban planning.
- iv. The word 'enigmatic' in paragraph 1 most nearly means:

(a) Ancient	(b) Massive
(c) Mysterious	(d) Simple
- v. The society of the IVC is described as potentially 'egalitarian' because:
 - (a) They possessed very powerful monarchs
 - (b) They lacked grand palaces and monuments
 - (c) They built numerous large public temples
 - (d) They shared the same agricultural roles
- vi. What is the 'Indus script,' and how has the inability to decipher it affected our understanding of Harappan life?

vii. Complete the following sentence:
Two of the most well-known cities of the Indus Valley Civilization are Harappa and _____.

viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The passage suggests that the decline of the IVC was definitively caused by a massive invasion.

ix. Identify the primary agricultural crops that supported the large urban populations of the IVC.

x. What are the leading environmental theories regarding the decline of this great civilization?

Ans :

- i. (b) The advanced urban planning and sanitation
- ii. (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- iii. Harappan cities were engineered with a grid-like pattern featuring straight streets and uniform, baked bricks. Most notably, they included advanced sanitation systems with covered drains and private bathrooms, which were far superior to systems found in other parts of the world at that time.
- iv. (c) Mysterious
- v. (b) They lacked grand palaces and monuments
- vi. The Indus script is a system of writing consisting of hundreds of unique symbols found on seals and pottery. Because scholars have not yet deciphered it, many aspects of Harappan life, including their religious beliefs, system of governance, and specific daily rituals, remain a mystery.
- vii. Mohenjo-daro
- viii. False.
- ix. The primary crops grown were wheat, barley, and cotton.
- x. Leading theories point to climate change, specifically the alteration of monsoon patterns and the drying up of major rivers like the Sarasvati.

11. Read the following passage carefully:

1. In the last two decades, social media has transformed from a niche novelty into a ubiquitous force in the lives of billions. Platforms like Instagram, Facebook, X (formerly Twitter), and TikTok have fundamentally changed how we communicate, share information, and perceive the world. This constant connectivity raises a crucial question: are these platforms genuinely bringing us closer together, or are they paradoxically making us feel more isolated?

2. On one hand, the case for connection is strong. Social media allows us to effortlessly maintain relationships with friends and family who live far away. For individuals with unique hobbies or those who feel like outsiders in their local communities, the internet provides a space to find like-minded people, fostering a sense of belonging and support that might otherwise be absent. It can be a powerful tool for building and sustaining communities across geographical barriers.
3. However, there is a significant counterargument. The very nature of social media can contribute to feelings of loneliness and inadequacy. Platforms often showcase a curated, highlight reel of people's lives—perfect vacations, happy relationships, and great achievements. This constant exposure can lead to social comparison, where we measure our own ordinary lives against others' extraordinary online personas, often leaving us feeling dissatisfied. Furthermore, the phenomenon of "phubbing" (phone snubbing), where we ignore the people we are physically with in favour of our devices, shows how virtual connections can damage our real-world relationships.
4. This brings up the debate of quantity versus quality. On social media, it's possible to have hundreds or even thousands of "friends" or "followers." Yet, these connections are often superficial. They lack the depth, empathy, and non-verbal cues of face-to-face interaction. A "like" on a post is not the same as a supportive conversation with a friend, and an online comment thread can rarely replace a heartfelt chat.
5. The key, therefore, is not to demonize social media but to cultivate a healthy and mindful relationship with it. This involves being conscious of the time spent scrolling and recognising the signs of social comparison. It means curating your feed to follow accounts that inspire or educate you rather than those that make you feel inadequate. Most importantly, it requires prioritising genuine, real-world interactions and using social media as a supplement to, not a replacement for, them.
6. Ultimately, social media is a double-edged sword. It is a powerful tool with the potential to both unite and divide, to foster community and to create isolation. The outcome depends entirely on how we choose to wield it. By using it intentionally, we can harness its power for connection while mitigating its risks, ensuring our digital lives enrich our real ones.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the central question explored by the author in this passage?
- Which social media platform is currently the most popular?
 - How can individuals become famous on the global internet?
 - Does social media truly connect us or primarily isolate us?
 - What is the historical origin of modern digital connectivity?
- ii. According to the second paragraph, how can social media serve as a “power for connection”?
- iii. Based on the passage, consider the following statements about “phubbing”:
- It involves creating a fake online persona to impress others.
 - It refers to ignoring people in person to focus on a device.
 - It is a behavior that can damage real-world relationships.
- Choose the correct option:
- I and II only
 - II and III only
 - I and III only
 - All of the above
- iv. The term ‘social comparison’ in the context of the passage refers to:
- Building a large community of online followers
 - Comparing one’s own life to curated online posts
 - Finding like-minded people with unique hobbies
 - Measuring the speed of different internet services
- v. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:
- Statement I:** Digital connections often lack the non-verbal cues of face-to-face interaction.
- Statement II:** Online “likes” are equivalent to having a supportive, deep conversation.
- Statement I is true and II is false.
 - Statement II is true and I is false.
 - Both statements I and II are true.
 - Both statements I and II are false.
- vi. Contrast the concepts of ‘quantity’ and ‘quality’ in friendships as discussed in the fourth paragraph.

- vii. Complete the following sentence:
The passage describes social media as a _____, meaning it has both positive and negative potential.
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
The author argues that online connections are always deeper and more meaningful than face-to-face interactions.
- ix. The word ‘ubiquitous’ in paragraph 1 most nearly means:
- Rare
 - Complex
 - Everywhere
 - Innovative
- x. What does it mean to ‘curate your feed’ for a healthier social media experience?
- Ans :
- (c) Does social media truly connect us or primarily isolate us?
 - Social media acts as a tool for connection by allowing people to maintain long-distance relationships effortlessly. It also provides a vital space for individuals with niche interests or those who feel marginalized in their local areas to find supportive, like-minded communities across geographical barriers.
 - (b) II and III only
 - (b) Comparing one’s own life to curated online posts
 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - Quantity refers to the high number of “friends” or followers one can accumulate online, which are often superficial and lack depth. Quality, however, refers to face-to-face interactions that include empathy and non-verbal cues, providing a level of emotional support that digital “likes” cannot replicate.
 - double-edged sword
 - False.
 - (c) Everywhere
 - It means intentionally choosing to follow accounts that inspire or educate you while unfollowing those that trigger feelings of inadequacy or envy.

12. Read the following passage carefully:

- Our mind is a powerful tool that shapes our experience of the world. The attitude we adopt when facing life’s challenges can dramatically influence the outcome. This is the core idea behind positive thinking. It is not about ignoring reality

or pretending that problems don't exist. Rather, it is the practice of approaching difficulties and setbacks with a productive and optimistic outlook, focusing on potential solutions rather than dwelling on the negative.

2. The benefits of this mindset are not just psychological; they have a tangible impact on our physical health. Scientific studies have shown a strong mind-body connection. Optimism and positive thinking are linked to lower stress levels, a stronger immune system, and better cardiovascular health. When we are stressed or pessimistic, our bodies produce more of the stress hormone cortisol, which can be harmful over time. A positive outlook, however, can help regulate these responses, promoting overall well-being.
3. The fundamental difference between an optimist and a pessimist lies in their explanatory style. When faced with a failure, a pessimist tends to see it as permanent ("This will never change"), universal ("I fail at everything"), and personal ("It's all my fault"). In contrast, an optimist views the same setback as temporary ("I'll do better next time"), specific ("I struggled with this one task"), and external ("The circumstances were difficult"). This outlook fosters resilience, the ability to bounce back from adversity.
4. This difference in mindset can lead to a self-fulfilling prophecy. If you constantly believe you are going to fail an exam, you may feel unmotivated to study, thus making failure more likely. Conversely, if you believe in your ability to succeed, you are more likely to put in the effort, persist through challenges, and seek help when needed—actions that greatly increase your chances of success. In this way, our beliefs can help create our reality.
5. The good news is that optimism is a skill that can be cultivated. One of the most effective techniques is practicing gratitude—regularly taking time to acknowledge and appreciate the good things in your life. Another method is using positive affirmations, which are positive statements you repeat to yourself to challenge negative thoughts. Surrounding yourself with positive and supportive people also makes a significant difference.
6. In conclusion, positive thinking is not a magic solution that makes all problems disappear. It is a powerful psychological tool that equips us with the strength, motivation, and resilience to face challenges head-on. By choosing to focus on possibilities and solutions, we empower ourselves to lead a healthier, more successful, and more

fulfilling life.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the best definition of positive thinking as described in the passage?
 - (a) Ignoring all problems and pretending to be happy
 - (b) Believing that nothing bad will ever happen
 - (c) Approaching challenges with an optimistic attitude
 - (d) Blaming others for all of your personal setbacks
 - ii. Explain the 'mind-body connection' mentioned in Paragraph 2 and how a positive outlook physically benefits the human body.
 - iii. How does an optimist typically perceive and explain a personal failure?
 - (a) As a permanent and personal flaw
 - (b) As a sign that they should give up
 - (c) As a temporary and specific event
 - (d) As a universal and constant state
 - iv. Compare and contrast the 'explanatory styles' of an optimist and a pessimist when they encounter a significant setback.
- Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs**
- v. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:
Statement I: A 'self-fulfilling prophecy' occurs when a person's beliefs influence their actions to bring about an expected result.
Statement II: Constant belief in failure has no actual impact on a student's motivation or their final exam results.
 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
 - (c) Both statements I and II are true.
 - (d) Both statements I and II are false.
 - vi. The word 'resilience' in paragraph 3 most nearly means:

(a) Predictability	(b) Recovery
(c) Happiness	(d) Pessimism
 - vii. Complete the following sentence:
 According to the passage, a positive outlook can lower the levels of the stress hormone _____.

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The passage suggests that optimism and pessimism are inborn traits that cannot be changed.

- ix. Which of the following is NOT mentioned as a method for cultivating a positive mindset?

- (a) Practicing gratitude
- (b) Using affirmations
- (c) Dwelling on mistakes
- (d) Seeking support

- x. What are positive affirmations, and how are they used to challenge negative thoughts?

Ans :

- i. (c) Approaching challenges with an optimistic attitude
- ii. The mind-body connection refers to the psychological and physical link where our mental state affects our health. A positive outlook lowers stress levels and reduces the production of the hormone cortisol, which in turn strengthens the immune system and improves cardiovascular health.
- iii. (c) As a temporary and specific event
- iv. A pessimist views failure as a permanent, universal, and personal defect, believing things will never change. An optimist, however, sees the same failure as a temporary setback tied to a specific task and influenced by external circumstances, which allows them to maintain hope and persistence.
- v. (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- vi. (b) Recovery
- vii. cortisol
- viii. False.
- ix. (c) Dwelling on mistakes
- x. They are positive statements repeated to oneself to challenge negative internal dialogue and reinforce a more productive mindset.

13. Read the following passage carefully:

1. The Age of Exploration, spanning roughly from the 15th to the 17th centuries, was a remarkable period in human history. Driven by a thirst for discovery, wealth, and glory, European sailors embarked on ambitious and perilous voyages that would forever change the world map. The primary motivations were to find new, faster trade routes to the lucrative spice markets of Asia, to acquire gold and other valuable resources, and to expand national influence.

2. Life for a sailor during this era was fraught with danger. The ships were small, wooden vessels, vulnerable to the immense power of the ocean. Journeys could last for years, and crews faced the constant threats of violent storms, running out of food and fresh water, and battling unknown diseases. One of the most feared ailments was scurvy, a debilitating illness caused by a severe lack of Vitamin C, which was common on long voyages without fresh fruit and vegetables. Many ships that set sail never returned.
3. Navigation was an immense challenge. Without modern technology like GPS, sailors relied on celestial navigation (using the positions of the sun and stars), the magnetic compass, and rudimentary maps. These maps were often wildly inaccurate, filled with vast blank spaces and sometimes even depicting mythical sea monsters. A single miscalculation could send a ship hundreds of miles off course into uncharted and dangerous waters.
4. Despite the risks, this era produced some of the most legendary voyages in history. Christopher Columbus, seeking a westward route to Asia, crossed the Atlantic in 1492 and made contact with the Americas, connecting the “Old World” of Europe, Asia, and Africa with the “New World.” Vasco da Gama successfully navigated around Africa to reach India in 1498, opening a direct sea route for the spice trade. Perhaps most famously, Ferdinand Magellan’s expedition (1519-1522) completed the first circumnavigation of the globe, proving definitively that the Earth was round.
5. The consequences of these voyages were profound. They initiated the Columbian Exchange, the widespread transfer of plants, animals, diseases, technology, and ideas between the Eastern and Western Hemispheres. While this led to new foods and goods being shared globally, it also marked the beginning of European colonialism and had a devastating impact on the indigenous populations of the Americas, who suffered from new diseases and conquest.
6. In conclusion, the Age of Exploration was a defining period of human courage and ambition. It was an era of incredible discovery that connected the world in unprecedented ways, but it also unleashed powerful forces of change that had both positive and tragic consequences, the effects of which are still felt today.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What was one of the primary motivations for European sailors during the Age of Exploration?

- (a) To prove that the Earth was flat
 - (b) To find new sea routes to Asia
 - (c) To escape European diseases
 - (d) To discover new aquatic life
- ii. According to Paragraph 2, describe the physical and environmental dangers that made life for a sailor “fraught with danger.”
- iii. The disease scurvy, which was common among sailors on long voyages, was caused by:
- (a) Dehydration
 - (b) Vitamin C deficiency
 - (c) Tropical heat
 - (d) Contaminated water
- iv. Explain the various methods and tools early navigators used to find their way and why these methods often led to “uncharted and dangerous waters.”
- v. Based on the passage, identify the correct pairings of explorers and their primary achievements:
- I. Christopher Columbus — Contact with the Americas
 - II. Vasco da Gama — First circumnavigation of the globe
 - III. Ferdinand Magellan — Direct sea route to India
 - IV. Magellan’s Expedition — Proof that the Earth was round
- Choose the correct option:
- (a) I and II only
 - (b) II and III only
 - (c) I and IV only
 - (d) III and IV only
- vi. The word ‘profound’ in paragraph 5 most nearly means:
- (a) Insignificant
 - (b) Intense
 - (c) Risky
 - (d) Immediate
- vii. Complete the following analogy based on the passage:
Old World : Europe, Asia, and Africa :: New World : _____
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
The passage suggests that the maps used by early explorers were highly accurate and complete.
- ix. Complete the following sentence:
Navigators during the Age of Exploration used the sun and stars for a method known as _____.
- x. Identify one major negative consequence of the Columbian Exchange for the indigenous populations of the Americas.

Ans :

- i. (b) To find new sea routes to Asia
 - ii. Sailors lived in small, vulnerable wooden vessels and faced the constant threat of violent oceanic storms. Additionally, they dealt with life-threatening resource shortages, such as running out of food and fresh water, and battled debilitating diseases like scurvy.
 - iii. (b) Vitamin C deficiency
 - iv. Sailors relied on celestial navigation, using the positions of the stars and sun, alongside magnetic compasses and rudimentary maps. Because these maps were often wildly inaccurate and filled with blank spaces, a single mathematical error could send a ship hundreds of miles off course into unknown territory.
 - v. (c) I and IV only
 - vi. (b) Intense
 - vii. The Americas
 - viii. False.
 - ix. celestial navigation
 - x. Indigenous populations suffered from the introduction of new diseases and the onset of European conquest.
- 14. Read the following passage carefully:**
1. Of all the systems of government humans have devised, perhaps none is more aspirational than democracy. Often defined by the simple yet powerful phrase, “government of the people, by the people, for the people,” democracy is a system where the ultimate power rests with the citizens. Unlike a monarchy, where a king or queen rules, or a dictatorship, where one person holds absolute power, a democracy is founded on the principle of popular sovereignty.
 2. A healthy democracy is supported by several key pillars. The first is citizen participation, where people have the right and duty to engage in political life. Another is a commitment to equality, ensuring that all citizens are equal before the law and have an equal opportunity to participate. Crucially, democracy operates under the rule of law, which means that no one, not even the government itself, is above the law.
 3. The most visible mechanism of democracy is the holding of free and fair elections. Through elections, citizens choose their leaders and hold them accountable for their actions. This process is built on the concept of universal adult franchise, which guarantees the right to vote to all adult

citizens, regardless of their gender, caste, religion, or wealth. Regular and transparent elections ensure that power can be transferred peacefully and that the government reflects the will of the people.

4. However, democracy is a two-way street; it involves both rights and responsibilities. It grants citizens fundamental rights, such as freedom of speech and expression, the freedom to assemble peacefully, and a free press to report without censorship. In return, it requires citizens to fulfill certain responsibilities. These include being informed about civic issues, respecting the law, paying taxes, and, most importantly, respecting the rights and diverse opinions of fellow citizens.
5. Democracy is not without its challenges. Issues like voter apathy (a lack of interest in voting), the spread of misinformation, and corruption can weaken its foundations. A constant challenge is to protect the rights of minority groups and ensure that the majority does not oppress them. Maintaining a democracy requires constant vigilance and effort from its citizens.
6. In conclusion, democracy is more than just a method of choosing a government. It is a continuous process and a shared commitment to the values of liberty, equality, and justice. While it can often be slow and contentious, it provides a framework for resolving differences peacefully. Its ultimate success rests on the shoulders of an active, informed, and engaged citizenry.

Answer the following questions, based on on the above passage:

- i. What is the core principle that distinguishes a democracy from other systems?
 - (a) The government is all-powerful and above the law.
 - (b) Political power is inherited by the ruler's children.
 - (c) The ultimate power of the state rests with citizens.
 - (d) Only the wealthiest individuals are allowed to vote.
- ii. According to Paragraph 2, describe the three key pillars that support a healthy democratic system.
- iii. The 'rule of law' as described in the passage specifically means that:
 - (a) Only common citizens must follow the law
 - (b) The government can change laws at will
 - (c) Everyone, including leaders, must obey
 - (d) Laws are made by a single, unelected head
- iv. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:

Statement I: Universal adult franchise guarantees the right to vote regardless of caste or religion.

Statement II: Democracy is a one-way street where citizens have rights but no responsibilities.

 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
 - (c) Both statements I and II are true.
 - (d) Both statements I and II are false.
- v. The word 'apathy' in paragraph 5 most nearly means:
 - (a) Excitement
 - (b) Indifference
 - (c) Respect
 - (d) Diligence
- vi. Why is active citizen participation considered essential, and what are the specific responsibilities expected of a citizen in return for their rights?
- vii. Complete the following sentence:
Democracy is famously defined as the "government of the people, by the people, and for the _____."
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
The passage suggests that democracy is a perfect system without any internal challenges or weaknesses.
- ix. Which of the following is considered a primary responsibility of a citizen in a democracy?
 - (a) Right to free speech
 - (b) Staying civic-minded
 - (c) Right to equality
 - (d) Freedom of the press
- x. What is the primary role of regular and transparent elections in a democratic framework?
Ans :
 - i. (c) The ultimate power of the state rests with citizens.
 - ii. The three key pillars are citizen participation, where people engage in political life; a commitment to equality, ensuring all citizens have equal opportunities before the law; and the rule of law, which mandates that no individual or government body is above legal statutes.
 - iii. (c) Everyone, including leaders, must obey
 - iv. (a) Statement I is true and II is false.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

- v. (b) Indifference
- vi. Citizen participation is essential because democracy is built on the concept of popular sovereignty, meaning power originates from the people. In return for their fundamental rights, citizens are responsible for being informed about civic issues, paying taxes, respecting the law, and valuing the diverse opinions of others to prevent the oppression of any group.
- vii. people
- viii. False.
- ix. (b) Staying civic-minded
- x. Elections allow citizens to choose their leaders, hold them accountable for their actions, and ensure a peaceful transfer of political power.

15. Read the following passage carefully:

1. In our increasingly sedentary world of screens and chairs, the importance of physical exercise cannot be overstated. Exercise is any bodily activity that maintains or enhances physical fitness and overall health. While many people associate it with building muscle or losing weight, the benefits of regular physical activity are far more profound, touching every aspect of our well-being—from our bones and heart to our mood and mind.
2. Let's start with the well-known physical benefits. Regular exercise strengthens the cardiovascular system, making the heart more efficient at pumping blood. This reduces the risk of heart disease, a leading cause of death worldwide. It helps in maintaining a healthy body weight by burning calories and building muscle. Furthermore, weight-bearing exercises, like walking or running, strengthen our bones, which is crucial for preventing osteoporosis later in life. A strong body is also better at fighting off illnesses, as exercise can boost the immune system.
3. Perhaps less visible but equally important are the mental health benefits. When you exercise, your body releases chemicals called endorphins. These endorphins interact with the receptors in your brain that reduce your perception of pain and also trigger a positive feeling in the body, similar to that of morphine. This is often described as a "runner's high" and can significantly reduce feelings of stress, anxiety, and depression. A good workout can be one of the most effective ways to clear your mind and improve your mood.
4. The advantages extend to our cognitive function—our ability to think, learn, and remember. Physical activity increases heart rate, which pumps more oxygen to the brain. This increased blood flow can

help improve memory and concentration. Studies have consistently shown that students who are physically active tend to have better focus in the classroom and achieve higher academic scores. Exercise is truly a workout for the brain as much as it is for the body.

5. The key to reaping these benefits is consistency, and the key to consistency is enjoyment. Exercise doesn't have to mean spending hours in a gym. It can be anything that gets you moving and that you find fun. It could be playing a team sport like cricket or football, dancing to your favourite music, cycling, swimming, or even taking a brisk daily walk with a friend. When you find an activity you love, it no longer feels like a chore.
6. In conclusion, physical exercise is a holistic tool for a better life. It strengthens the body, sharpens the mind, and uplifts the spirit. Making regular physical activity a non-negotiable part of your routine is one of the best investments you can make in your long-term health and happiness.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the central theme of the passage?
 - (a) Exercise is only for professional athletes.
 - (b) The sole benefit of exercise is weight loss.
 - (c) Physical activity offers holistic health gains.
 - (d) Gym memberships are required for true fitness.
- ii. Based on the passage, read the following statements and choose the correct option:
 - I. Regular exercise makes the heart more efficient at pumping blood.
 - II. Weight-bearing exercises are primarily used to improve skin health.
 - III. Exercise helps prevent osteoporosis by strengthening the bones.
 - IV. A sedentary lifestyle is characterized by high levels of physical activity.

Choose the correct option:

 - (a) I and II only
 - (b) II and IV only
 - (c) I and III only
 - (d) III and IV only
- iii. According to Paragraph 2, how does regular exercise specifically benefit the cardiovascular and immune systems?
- iv. The word 'sedentary' in paragraph 1 most nearly means:
 - (a) Energetic
 - (b) Inactive
 - (c) Healthy
 - (d) Outdoor

v. A 'cognitive' benefit of exercise, as described in the text, refers to:

- (a) Increased bone density
- (b) Immune system strength
- (c) Stress management skills
- (d) Improved mental functions

vi. Explain the role of endorphins in the body during exercise and how they contribute to what is known as a "runner's high."

vii. Complete the following analogy based on the passage:

Cardiovascular system : Heart :: Cognitive function : _____

viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The passage suggests that the benefits of exercise are limited to improving physical appearance.

ix. Complete the following sentence:

Weight-bearing exercises are particularly important for strengthening our _____ and preventing osteoporosis.

x. What is the author's primary advice for ensuring that an exercise routine remains consistent over time?

Ans :

- i. (c) Physical activity offers holistic health gains.
- ii. (c) I and III only
- iii. Regular exercise strengthens the cardiovascular system by making the heart a more efficient pump, thereby reducing the risk of heart disease. Additionally, it boosts the immune system, making the body better equipped to fight off various illnesses and infections.
- iv. (b) Inactive
- v. (d) Improved mental functions
- vi. During exercise, the body releases chemicals called endorphins which interact with brain receptors to reduce the perception of pain. These chemicals trigger a positive feeling in the body, often called a "runner's high," which effectively reduces feelings of stress, anxiety, and depression while improving overall mood.
- vii. Brain
- viii. False.
- ix. bones
- x. The author suggests finding an activity that you genuinely enjoy so that the exercise no longer

feels like a chore.

16. Read the following passage carefully:

1. We are living in an increasingly connected world, but this connectivity is no longer just about people. A new technological revolution is unfolding: the Internet of Things (IoT). In simple terms, the IoT refers to the giant network of physical objects—from smartwatches and home appliances to cars and industrial machinery—that are embedded with sensors and software to connect and exchange data with other devices over the internet.
2. The operation of an IoT system is a simple, four-stage process. First, sensors or devices collect data from their environment. This could be a temperature reading from a smart thermostat or a video feed from a security camera. Second, this data is sent to the cloud (a network of servers) through a form of connectivity like Wi-Fi or Bluetooth. Third, software in the cloud processes this data. Finally, the processed information can trigger an action, like automatically adjusting your home's temperature or sending an alert to your phone.
3. The most familiar application of IoT is in the smart home. Imagine your alarm clock waking you up and then signalling your coffee maker to start brewing. Smart refrigerators can track your groceries and add items to a shopping list. Smart lights can be turned on or off with a voice command, and smart thermostats learn your daily routine to adjust the temperature, saving energy and money. These devices aim to make our lives more convenient and efficient through automation.
4. But the impact of IoT extends far beyond the home. In smart cities, IoT sensors can monitor traffic flow to reduce congestion, manage waste collection more efficiently, and even detect air pollution levels. In agriculture, farmers can use sensors to monitor soil moisture and nutrient levels, allowing them to use water and fertilizer more precisely. In healthcare, wearable IoT devices like fitness trackers and smartwatches can monitor a patient's heart rate or activity levels in real-time and alert a doctor in case of an emergency.
5. Despite its incredible potential, the growth of IoT also presents significant challenges. The two most pressing concerns are privacy and security. With billions of devices constantly collecting data about our lives, questions about who owns this data and how it is used are paramount. Furthermore, each connected device is a potential entry point for

hackers. A compromised smart lock could grant a burglar access to your home, and a hacked medical device could have life-threatening consequences.

6. The Internet of Things is rapidly transforming our world from a collection of isolated devices into a vast, intelligent network. While it promises a future of greater efficiency and convenience, it also demands that we proceed with caution, developing strong security measures and clear privacy rules to ensure this technology is used safely and responsibly.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the best definition of the Internet of Things (IoT) according to the passage?
 - (a) A new type of high-speed internet for personal computers
 - (b) A network of physical objects that connect and share data
 - (c) A social media platform designed for electronic devices
 - (d) A system specifically for storing digital data in the cloud
- ii. Based on the information in the second paragraph, explain the four-stage process of how an IoT system operates.
- iii. According to the passage, what is the primary role of a sensor within an IoT device?
 - (a) To process data in the cloud
 - (b) To perform a final action
 - (c) To connect to the internet
 - (d) To collect environment data
- iv. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:
Statement I: IoT applications in agriculture allow farmers to use water and fertilizer more precisely.
Statement II: Wearable IoT devices in healthcare are used only to track a patient's social media activity.
 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
 - (c) Both statements I and II are true.
 - (d) Both statements I and II are false.
- v. The word 'paramount' in paragraph 5 most nearly means:

(a) Minor	(b) Supreme
(c) Optional	(d) Complex

- vi. Discuss the two primary challenges of IoT (Privacy and Security) and why a "compromised" device can have life-threatening consequences.

- vii. Complete the following sentence:
 In an IoT system, data from sensors is sent to the _____ for processing and analysis.

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
 The passage suggests that the Internet of Things is a technology that will only be available in the distant future.

- ix. Which of the following is an example of an IoT application in a "Smart City"?
 - (a) Brewing coffee automatically
 - (b) Tracking grocery shopping lists
 - (c) Monitoring urban traffic flow
 - (d) Adjusting a home's thermostat
- x. Give one specific example of an IoT device mentioned in the text that would be found in a smart home.

Ans :

- i. (b) A network of physical objects that connect and share data.
- ii. The process begins with sensors collecting environmental data, which is then sent to the cloud via Wi-Fi or Bluetooth. Next, specialized software in the cloud processes this information, and finally, the system triggers a specific action, such as adjusting a temperature setting or sending a phone alert.
- iii. (d) To collect environment data
- iv. (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- v. (b) Supreme
- vi. Privacy is a concern because billions of devices collect personal data, raising questions about ownership and usage. Security is critical because every connected device is a potential entry point for hackers; for example, a hacked medical device could lead to fatal results, while a compromised smart lock could allow unauthorized physical access to a home.
- vii. cloud
- viii. False.
- ix. (c) Monitoring urban traffic flow
- x. A smart thermostat/smart refrigerator/smart lights.

17. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Music is a uniquely human experience. It is a universal language that transcends cultural, social, and linguistic barriers, speaking to us in a way that words often cannot. Found in every known society, past and present, music is not just a form of entertainment but a fundamental part of what it means to be human. It has the power to stir our emotions, sharpen our minds, and bring us together.
2. The most immediate power of music lies in its profound connection to our emotions. A song can make us feel happy, sad, energetic, or calm. A fast tempo and major key can evoke feelings of joy, while a slow tempo in a minor key can bring about a sense of melancholy. This emotional response is deeply wired into our brains. Music can trigger the release of dopamine, a neurotransmitter associated with pleasure and reward, which is why a favourite song can feel so good to listen to.
3. Beyond its emotional impact, engaging with music has significant cognitive benefits. Numerous studies have shown that learning to play a musical instrument is a powerful workout for the brain. It can enhance memory, improve concentration, and even boost mathematical and spatial-reasoning skills. This is because playing music requires the simultaneous coordination of multiple brain regions, strengthening the connections between them.
4. Music also acts as a powerful social glue. Think of the songs you sing at festivals, the national anthem at a sporting event, or the hymns in a religious service. These are all examples of music creating a sense of shared identity and unity. Attending a concert or dancing with friends is a communal experience that fosters social bonding and a feeling of belonging to a group.
5. Finally, music is one of our most potent forms of self-expression. For a songwriter or composer, it is a medium to convey complex feelings and ideas that might be difficult to put into words. For the listener, music can offer comfort and validation. Finding a song that perfectly captures your feelings can make you feel understood and less alone in your experiences.
6. In conclusion, music is a multifaceted and indispensable part of life. It is a source of emotional release, a tool for cognitive enhancement, a unifier of communities, and a deeply personal language of the heart. Its enduring and universal appeal is a testament to its power to enrich the human experience.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the central theme explored by the author in this passage?
 - (a) Music is primarily used for entertainment and parties.
 - (b) Playing an instrument is too difficult for most people.
 - (c) Music is a vital part of the human experience.
 - (d) Only certain cultures possess a musical tradition.
- ii. Based on Paragraph 2, explain the relationship between music, the brain, and the chemical dopamine.
- iii. According to the passage, how does music specifically function as a “social glue”?
 - (a) By making individuals feel more isolated
 - (b) By creating a shared sense of identity
 - (c) By being difficult for others to understand
 - (d) By causing debates about different tastes
- iv. The word ‘transcends’ in paragraph 1 most nearly means:

(a) Surpasses	(b) Restricts
(c) Matches	(d) Reduces
- v. Based on the passage, identify the cognitive benefits associated with learning a musical instrument:
 - I. Enhancement of memory
 - II. Release of social stress
 - III. Improvement in concentration
 - IV. Boost in mathematical skills
 Choose the correct option:
 - (a) I, II, and III only
 - (b) II, III, and IV only
 - (c) I, III, and IV only
 - (d) All of the above
- vi. Explain why learning a musical instrument is considered a “workout for the brain” and list the specific skills it enhances.
- vii. Complete the following sentence:
Because it can be understood and appreciated across different cultures, music is often called a _____.

 Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The passage suggests that music's effects are purely emotional and have no impact on our physical brain.

- ix. Which of the following is described as a way music serves as self-expression for a composer?
- Building a shared national identity
 - Conveying complex feelings and ideas
 - Improving their mathematical skills
 - Reducing the perception of physical pain

- x. What is one way the tempo or key of a song can specifically affect a listener's mood?

Ans :

- (c) Music is a vital part of the human experience.
- Music has a deep connection to our biology; specifically, it can trigger the brain to release dopamine. This neurotransmitter is associated with the body's pleasure and reward system, which is why listening to a favorite song provides a tangible sense of enjoyment.
- (b) By creating a shared sense of identity
- (a) Surpasses
- (c) I, III, and IV only
- Learning an instrument is a mental workout because it requires the simultaneous coordination of multiple brain regions, which strengthens the neural connections between them. This process leads to enhanced memory, better concentration, and a boost in spatial-reasoning and mathematical skills.
- universal language
- False.
- (b) Conveying complex feelings and ideas
- A fast tempo in a major key typically evokes joy, while a slow tempo in a minor key can bring about a sense of melancholy.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

18. Read the following passage carefully:

- Each year, across the globe, one of nature's most spectacular events unfolds as billions of animals embark on incredible journeys. This regular, large-scale movement of a species from one place to another is known as migration. These are not random wanderings but are purposeful, seasonal journeys, often covering vast distances, driven by the fundamental instinct for survival.

- The primary reasons for migration are intertwined with the availability of resources and suitable conditions for breeding. Many species migrate to find food. For instance, birds that feed on insects in the northern hemisphere fly south for the winter to escape the cold and find a plentiful food supply. Others migrate to find a more hospitable climate or a safe and protected place to give birth and raise their young.
- One of the most awe-inspiring aspects of migration is the animals' extraordinary ability to navigate. For years, scientists have been studying how they find their way over thousands of miles of unfamiliar territory. Many birds use a form of celestial navigation, using the sun as a compass during the day and the stars at night. Some animals, including sea turtles and salmon, can sense the Earth's magnetic field to guide them. Others rely on a keen sense of smell or follow familiar landmarks like coastlines and mountain ranges.
- The world is full of epic migrations. The Arctic Tern holds the record for the longest journey, flying from its breeding grounds in the Arctic to the Antarctic and back again each year, a round trip of about 90,000 kilometres. In Africa, the great wildebeest migration sees over a million of these animals travel in a massive loop across the Serengeti in search of green pasture. The delicate monarch butterfly also undertakes a multi-generational migration, travelling thousands of miles from Canada and the US to Mexico.
- These journeys are fraught with peril. Migrating animals face the constant threats of exhaustion, starvation, and an increased risk from predators who line the migratory routes. They must also endure harsh weather conditions, from violent storms to extreme temperatures. Increasingly, human activities pose the greatest threat. The loss of habitats, the construction of obstacles like dams and fences, and pollution disrupt these ancient routes and endanger the survival of many migratory species.

Animal migration is a powerful testament to the resilience and instinct of the natural world. These great journeys, etched into the DNA of species over millennia, are vital for maintaining the balance of ecosystems. Protecting the corridors and habitats these animals depend on is a crucial responsibility to ensure that nature's great journeys can continue.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the best definition of animal migration as provided in the passage?
 - (a) A random movement of an animal in search of a new home
 - (b) A regular, large-scale seasonal movement for survival
 - (c) A one-time journey an animal takes when leaving its parents
 - (d) The natural process of an animal hibernating during winter
- ii. Based on Paragraph 3, explain the different natural mechanisms animals use to navigate thousands of miles of unfamiliar territory.
- iii. According to the passage, which of the following animals holds the record for the longest migratory journey?
 - (a) The wildebeest
 - (b) The monarch butterfly
 - (c) The salmon
 - (d) The Arctic Tern
- iv. Identify the primary reasons for migration and how they are “intertwined” with a species’ survival and reproduction.
- v. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:
Statement I: Human activities, such as pollution and habitat loss, are currently the greatest threat to migration.
Statement II: Migrating species are only found on the continent of Africa and in the northern hemisphere.
 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
 - (c) Both statements I and II are true.
 - (d) Both statements I and II are false.
- vi. The word ‘fraught’ in paragraph 5 most nearly means:

(a) Facilitated	(b) Infested
(c) Lacking	(d) Commenced
- vii. Complete the following analogy based on the passage:
 Birds : Celestial Navigation :: Sea Turtles :

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
 The passage suggests that animal migration is a recent phenomenon caused by climate change.
- ix. Complete the following sentence:
 The great wildebeest migration is a search for green pasture and is located on the continent of -----
- x. Name two natural dangers migrating animals face on their journeys, excluding human-related activities.
 Ans :
 - i. (b) A regular, large-scale seasonal movement for survival
 - ii. Animals use a variety of sophisticated methods to navigate. Many birds utilize celestial navigation, using the sun and stars as a compass. Other species, such as sea turtles and salmon, can sense the Earth’s magnetic field, while some rely on a keen sense of smell or recognize physical landmarks like coastlines.
 - iii. (d) The Arctic Tern
 - iv. Migration is driven by the need for resources and suitable breeding conditions. Species move vast distances to escape harsh winters and find plentiful food supplies, or to reach hospitable climates and protected environments where they can safely give birth and raise their young.
 - v. (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - vi. (b) Infested
 - vii. Magnetic Sensing
 - viii. False.
 - ix. Africa
 - x. Exhaustion, starvation, predators, harsh weather (Any two).

19. Read the following passage carefully:

1. From the sour taste of a lemon to the slippery feel of soap, we encounter acids and bases every day. They are two fundamental classes of substances that play a vital role in chemistry, biology, and our daily lives. Understanding their properties and how they interact is key to understanding the chemical world around us. A special scale, known as the pH scale, is used to measure how acidic or basic a substance is.
2. Traditionally, acids and bases are identified by their distinct properties. Acids are known for their sour taste, their ability to be corrosive, and their reaction with certain metals to produce hydrogen gas. Common examples include citric acid in fruits and acetic acid in vinegar. Bases, also known as alkalis, often have a bitter taste and feel slippery to the touch. Soap and baking soda are familiar household bases. A simple way

to distinguish them is the litmus test: acids turn blue litmus paper red, while bases turn red litmus paper blue.

3. The pH scale provides a precise way to measure the concentration of hydrogen ions in a solution, which determines its acidity. The scale ranges from 0 to 14. A substance with a pH of 7 is considered neutral; pure water is the best example. A pH value less than 7 indicates an acid. The lower the number, the stronger the acid. For instance, lemon juice has a pH of about 2, making it quite acidic. A pH value greater than 7 indicates a base. The higher the number, the stronger the base. Bleach, a strong base, has a pH of around 13.
4. The importance of pH is evident in our own bodies. Our blood must be kept at a slightly basic pH of around 7.4 to function properly. Our stomach, on the other hand, contains strong hydrochloric acid with a pH of 1.5 to 3.5 to help digest food and kill harmful bacteria. When we get indigestion, it's often due to excess stomach acid. To relieve this, we take antacids, which are mild bases.
5. This brings us to a crucial chemical reaction: neutralization. When an acid and a base are mixed, they react to neutralize each other's properties. The products of this reaction are typically a salt and water. The use of a basic antacid to counteract excess stomach acid is a perfect real-world example of neutralization.
6. In conclusion, the concepts of acids, bases, and pH are not confined to the chemistry laboratory. They are a constant and vital part of our environment and our biology. From the soil in which our food grows to the intricate chemical balances within our own cells, the interplay of acids and bases is fundamental to life.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the primary function of the pH scale as described in the passage?
 - (a) To determine the specific temperature
 - (b) To measure acidity or basicity levels
 - (c) To calculate the weight of a substance
 - (d) To identify the exact chemical color
- ii. Based on Paragraph 3, explain how the pH scale is structured and how different values represent the strength of acids and bases.
- iii. Which of the following pH values represents the strongest base mentioned in the text?

Ans :

- (a) pH 7
- (b) pH 8
- (c) pH 3
- (d) pH 13

- iv. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:
Statement I: Acids react with certain metals to produce oxygen gas.
Statement II: The litmus test uses blue paper to identify acids by turning it red.
 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
 - (c) Both statements I and II are true.
 - (d) Both statements I and II are false.
- v. The word 'corrosive' in paragraph 2 most nearly means:
 - (a) Pleasant
 - (b) Destructive
 - (c) Soluble
 - (d) Slippery
- vi. What is a "neutralization" reaction, and how is it used practically to treat human indigestion?
- vii. Complete the following sentence:
 A substance with a pH of 7, such as pure water, is considered to be _____.
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
 The passage states that acids typically taste bitter and feel slippery to the touch.
- ix. Why is it biologically necessary for the human stomach to maintain a very low pH level?
- x. Give one example of a common household acid and one example of a household base mentioned in the text.

Ans :

- i. (b) To measure acidity or basicity levels
- ii. The pH scale ranges from 0 to 14, with 7 being neutral. Values less than 7 indicate an acid, where lower numbers represent stronger acidity. Values greater than 7 indicate a base, where higher numbers represent a stronger base.
- iii. (d) pH 13
- iv. (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
- v. (b) Destructive
- vi. Neutralization is a chemical reaction that occurs when an acid and a base are mixed, resulting in the production of a salt and water. Practically, when someone suffers from indigestion caused by excess stomach acid, they consume antacids (mild bases) to neutralize the acid and provide relief.

- vii. neutral
- viii. False.
- ix. A low pH (strong acid) is required in the stomach to help digest food effectively and kill harmful bacteria.
- x. Acid: Vinegar (or citric acid in fruits). Base: Soap (or baking soda).

20. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Our planet is home to a staggering variety of life, from the tiniest microbe in the soil to the giant blue whale in the ocean. This rich tapestry of life is known as biodiversity (short for biological diversity). It encompasses not just the millions of different species of plants, animals, and fungi, but also the genetic diversity within those species and the diversity of the ecosystems—like forests, deserts, and coral reefs—in which they live.
2. Why does this variety matter? A high level of biodiversity is a sign of a healthy, resilient ecosystem. Diverse ecosystems provide essential “ecosystem services” that are crucial for human survival. For example, forests act as the planet’s lungs, producing oxygen and absorbing carbon dioxide. Wetlands filter our water and protect coastal areas from storms. Insects like bees and butterflies pollinate a vast majority of the crops we eat. When biodiversity declines, these vital services are weakened.
3. All species in an ecosystem are interconnected in a complex “web of life.” The extinction of a single species can set off a chain reaction, affecting many others. Consider a keystone species, which is a species that has a disproportionately large effect on its environment relative to its abundance. A classic example is the sea otter. By preying on sea urchins, sea otters prevent the urchins from destroying kelp forests, which in turn provide a habitat for hundreds of other species. Removing the otters would cause the entire ecosystem to collapse.
4. Unfortunately, global biodiversity is currently facing a crisis, with species disappearing at an alarming rate. The primary driver of this loss is human activity. Habitat destruction, through deforestation and urbanization, is the leading cause. Pollution, from plastics in the ocean to pesticides on farmland, poisons ecosystems. Climate change is altering habitats faster than many species can adapt, and the introduction of invasive species to new environments can outcompete and wipe out native organisms.

5. Protecting our planet’s biodiversity is one of the most critical challenges of our time. Conservation efforts are crucial. This includes establishing protected areas like national parks and wildlife sanctuaries, where ecosystems can thrive without human interference. It also involves promoting sustainable practices in farming, fishing, and forestry that allow us to meet our needs without depleting natural resources. On an individual level, reducing waste, conserving water and energy, and supporting conservation organizations can all make a difference.
6. In conclusion, biodiversity is not just about saving charismatic animals like tigers or pandas. It is about maintaining the intricate, interwoven fabric of life that supports our planet’s health and our own survival. Every species, no matter how small or seemingly insignificant, has a role to play in this complex web.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the most comprehensive definition of biodiversity as described in the passage?
 - (a) The total count of all individual animals currently living
 - (b) The variety of species, genetic traits, and ecosystems
 - (c) The scientific study of a single species in its habitat
 - (d) The total number of national parks within a country
- ii. Based on the passage, define “ecosystem services” and provide two specific examples of how nature supports human survival.
- iii. Which of the following is an example of an ‘ecosystem service’ provided by wetlands?
 - (a) Producing factory goods
 - (b) Filtering water supplies
 - (c) Building new city roads
 - (d) Selling natural products
- iv. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:
Statement I: Biodiversity includes the genetic diversity found within a single species.
Statement II: The extinction of one species has no impact on the rest of the “web of life.”
 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - (b) Statement II is true and I is false.

- (c) Both statements I and II are true.
- (d) Both statements I and II are false.

v. **Assertion (A):** Habitat destruction is the leading cause of modern biodiversity loss.

Reason (R): Deforestation and urbanization are primary drivers of human-led habitat loss.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- (b) Both (A) and (R) are true but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (c) (A) is true but (R) is false.
- (d) (A) is false but (R) is true.

vi. Explain the concept of a “keystone species” using the specific example of the sea otter provided in the text.

vii. Complete the following sentence:
Establishing protected areas like _____ is one important method of conservation.

viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The passage uses the “web of life” analogy to suggest that all species are isolated and independent of each other.

ix. The word ‘resilient’ in paragraph 2 most nearly means:

- (a) Fragile
- (b) Complex
- (c) Trivial
- (d) Strong

x. Identify the three distinct levels of biodiversity mentioned in the first paragraph.

Ans :

- i. (b) The variety of species, genetic traits, and ecosystems
- ii. Ecosystem services are vital processes provided by healthy environments that are necessary for human life. Examples include forests acting as the planet’s lungs by producing oxygen and absorbing carbon dioxide, and insects like bees pollinating the majority of the crops humans consume.
- iii. (b) Filtering water supplies
- iv. (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- v. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- vi. A keystone species is one that has a disproportionately large impact on its environment relative to its population size. For example, sea otters are keystone species because they prey on sea urchins; without otters, urchins would destroy

kelp forests, leading to the collapse of the habitat for hundreds of other species.

vii. national parks/wildlife sanctuaries

viii. False.

ix. (d) Strong

x. Species diversity, genetic diversity, and ecosystem diversity.

21. Read the following passage carefully:

1. In our information-saturated world, we are constantly bombarded with facts, opinions, news, and advertisements. Simply accepting all this information at face value can be misleading and even dangerous. This is where critical thinking becomes an essential skill. Critical thinking is not about being negative or finding fault; it is the intellectually disciplined process of actively and skillfully analyzing, evaluating, and synthesizing information to form a judgment.
2. At the heart of critical thinking lies the art of asking questions. Instead of passively absorbing information, a critical thinker actively engages with it. They ask questions like: “Who is the source of this information?”, “What evidence is being presented to support this claim?”, “Is this source biased in any way?”, and “Are there alternative explanations or perspectives?”. This process of inquiry is what separates superficial understanding from deep, analytical thought.
3. This skill is our primary defense against the spread of misinformation and fake news. In the age of social media, false stories can travel around the globe in minutes. A critical thinker doesn’t immediately share a shocking headline. Instead, they pause to evaluate it. They check the credibility of the source, look for supporting evidence from other reliable news outlets, and are wary of content that is designed to provoke a strong emotional response, as this is a common tactic of misinformation.
4. The value of critical thinking extends far beyond spotting fake news. It is a crucial life skill that helps in everyday decision-making. When you are deciding which product to buy, you critically evaluate reviews and compare features. When you listen to a political debate, you analyze the arguments of each side rather than just accepting the one you initially agree with. It empowers you to solve problems more effectively by looking at them from multiple angles.
5. Critical thinking is not an innate talent that you are born with; it is a skill that must be practiced and developed. One of the best ways to cultivate

this skill is to read widely and expose yourself to diverse viewpoints. Practice identifying the main arguments in a text and the evidence used to support them. Engage in respectful debates where you are forced to defend your position and consider others'. Crucially, a good critical thinker is humble and open to changing their mind when presented with new, compelling evidence.

6. In conclusion, critical thinking empowers us to be independent thinkers rather than passive recipients of information. It is a tool that allows us to navigate the complexities of the modern world with clarity and confidence. By cultivating our ability to think critically, we take control of our own learning and our own beliefs.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the most accurate definition of critical thinking as described in the text?
 - (a) Being consistently negative and criticizing others
 - (b) Quickly accepting information from the internet
 - (c) Active analysis and evaluation to form a judgment
 - (d) Memorizing a large number of independent facts
- ii. According to Paragraph 2, describe the “art of asking questions” and explain how it differentiates a critical thinker from a passive recipient.
- iii. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:
Statement I: Critical thinking is an innate talent that individuals are born with.
Statement II: A good critical thinker is humble and open to changing their mind.
 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
 - (c) Both statements I and II are true.
 - (d) Both statements I and II are false.
- iv. What lies at the core of the critical thinking process according to the author?
 - (a) Questioning
 - (b) Sharing
 - (c) Agreeing
 - (d) Sticking
- v. How does critical thinking serve as a primary defense against the global spread of misinformation and fake news?

- vi. The word ‘innate’ in paragraph 5 most nearly means:

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| (a) Learned | (b) Complex |
| (c) Natural | (d) Trivial |

- vii. Complete the following analogy based on the passage:

Passive Recipient : Absorption :: Critical Thinker : _____

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The passage suggests that critical thinking is a skill that only needs to be used for academic subjects.

- ix. Complete the following sentence:

False information that is created and spread with the intent to deceive is often called _____.

- x. Identify one practical way mentioned in the text to develop and cultivate your critical thinking skills.

Ans :

- i. (c) Active analysis and evaluation to form a judgment
- ii. The heart of critical thinking is the active engagement with information through inquiry. While a passive recipient simply absorbs data, a critical thinker asks specific questions about the credibility of the source, the strength of the evidence, potential biases, and the existence of alternative perspectives to gain a deep, analytical understanding.
- iii. (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
- iv. (a) Questioning
- v. Critical thinking encourages individuals to pause rather than immediately share shocking content. By checking the credibility of sources, seeking supporting evidence from reliable outlets, and being wary of content designed to trigger strong emotions, a critical thinker can identify and halt the spread of false stories.
- vi. (c) Natural
- vii. Analysis
- viii. False.
- ix. fake news
- x. Reading widely to expose yourself to diverse viewpoints (or engaging in respectful debates).

22. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Gravity is the invisible force that governs the universe. It is the pull that keeps your feet firmly on the ground, the force that holds the Moon in orbit around the Earth, and the cosmic glue that binds galaxies together. While its effects are everywhere, making it the most familiar of nature's fundamental forces, it is also paradoxically the weakest.
2. Our classical understanding of gravity was formulated by Sir Isaac Newton in the 17th century. His law of universal gravitation was a revolutionary idea. He proposed that the same force that caused an apple to fall from a tree also kept the planets in their orbits. The law states that every object in the universe attracts every other object. The strength of this attraction depends on two factors: the mass of the objects (more massive objects have a stronger gravitational pull) and the distance between them (the force gets weaker as the objects get farther apart).
3. Newton's work helps us understand the crucial difference between mass and weight. An object's mass is the amount of matter it contains, and this value is constant no matter where the object is in the universe. Weight, on the other hand, is the measure of the force of gravity acting on an object's mass. This is why an astronaut would weigh much less on the Moon—about one-sixth of their Earth weight—because the Moon's gravitational pull is much weaker. Their mass, however, the amount of "stuff" they are made of, remains exactly the same.
4. In the early 20th century, Albert Einstein offered a new and more accurate description of gravity with his theory of General Relativity. Einstein reimagined gravity not as a force, but as a consequence of the curvature of spacetime. He proposed that massive objects like the Sun don't "pull" on the Earth; instead, they warp or bend the fabric of spacetime around them. Planets then follow these curves, much like a marble rolling around the dip created by a heavy bowling ball placed on a stretched rubber sheet.
5. On a cosmic scale, gravity is the master architect. It was gravity that pulled together clouds of dust and gas in the early universe to form the first stars and galaxies. It is gravity that dictates the orbits of planets, the dance of binary stars, and the majestic swirl of spiral galaxies. It is responsible for the large-scale structure of the entire cosmos.
6. From the simple act of dropping a pen to the grand motion of celestial bodies, gravity is the

omnipresent force that shapes our world. While our scientific understanding of it continues to evolve, its fundamental importance remains undisputed, a constant source of wonder and inquiry.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the primary subject explored in this passage?
 - (a) Comparisons between the planets and stars
 - (b) Scientific understanding of the force of gravity
 - (c) Detailed biography of the life of Isaac Newton
 - (d) Technical challenges of modern-day space travel
- ii. According to Paragraph 2, describe the two primary factors that determine the strength of gravitational attraction between two objects.
- iii. According to Newton's law, the force of gravity between two objects increases if:
 - (a) Their distance apart increases
 - (b) Their total masses increase
 - (c) Their temperature increases
 - (d) Their relative speed increases
- iv. Contrast the concepts of 'mass' and 'weight' as described in the third paragraph, using the example of an astronaut on the Moon.
- v. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:
Statement I: Einstein proposed that gravity is a result of the curvature of spacetime.
Statement II: Massive objects like the Sun exert a physical "pull" on the Earth.
 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
 - (c) Both statements I and II are true.
 - (d) Both statements I and II are false.
- vi. The word 'omnipresent' in paragraph 6 most nearly means:

(a) Weak	(b) Pervasive
(c) Complex	(d) Planetary
- vii. Complete the following analogy based on the passage:
 Newton : Universal Gravitation :: Einstein : _____

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The passage states that gravity is the strongest of the four fundamental forces of nature.

- ix. What specific analogy is used in the text to explain Einstein's theory of gravity in a simplified way?

- (a) An apple falling from a tree
- (b) A marble on a rubber sheet
- (c) The Moon orbiting the Earth
- (d) Two magnets attracting objects

- x. What is gravity's specific role in the formation of stars and galaxies in the early universe?

Ans :

- i. (b) Scientific understanding of the force of gravity
- ii. The strength of gravitational attraction depends on the mass of the objects and the distance between them. More massive objects exert a stronger pull, while the force significantly weakens as the distance between the two objects increases.
- iii. (b) Their total masses increase
- iv. Mass is the constant amount of matter within an object, while weight is a measure of the gravitational force acting upon that mass. Because the Moon's gravity is one-sixth of Earth's, an astronaut's weight would decrease significantly on the Moon, even though their physical mass remains exactly the same.
- v. (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- vi. (b) Pervasive
- vii. General Relativity
- viii. False.
- ix. (b) A marble on a rubber sheet
- x. Gravity acts as a master architect, pulling together vast clouds of dust and gas until they collapse to form stars and galaxies.

23. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Every great nation is built on a foundation of laws and principles. For India, this foundation is its Constitution. The Constitution of India is the supreme law of the land, a comprehensive document that lays down the framework of the country's political structure, procedures, powers, and duties of government institutions. More than just a rulebook for the government, it outlines the fundamental rights, principles, and duties of its citizens. Adopted on 26 November 1949, it came into full effect on 26 January 1950.

2. The creation of the Indian Constitution was a monumental task, undertaken by the Constituent Assembly, a body of representatives elected by the people of India. This assembly worked for nearly three years to draft a constitution for a nation of immense diversity, grappling with the challenges of poverty and the aftermath of partition. The Chairman of the Drafting Committee, Dr. B.R. Ambedkar, a brilliant legal scholar, is widely regarded as the chief architect of the Indian Constitution for his pivotal role in its creation.

3. The soul of the Constitution is encapsulated in its Preamble. The Preamble is a brief introductory statement that sets out the guiding purpose and principles of the document. It declares India to be a Sovereign, Socialist, Secular, and Democratic Republic, and it resolves to secure for all its citizens Justice, social, economic, and political; Liberty of thought, expression, belief, faith, and worship; and Equality of status and of opportunity.

4. One of the most remarkable features of the Indian Constitution is that it is a "living document." This means it is not a static and unalterable text. The makers of the Constitution were wise enough to know that society would evolve and face new challenges. Therefore, they included a provision for amendment, allowing the Constitution to be changed according to the needs and aspirations of the time. This flexibility has enabled it to remain relevant and effective for over seven decades.

5. Among its key features are the Fundamental Rights, which are the basic human rights guaranteed to every citizen. These include the Right to Equality, the Right to Freedom, and the Right to Constitutional Remedies, which allows citizens to go to court if their rights are violated. Complementing these rights are the Fundamental Duties, which were added later and serve as a moral compass, reminding citizens of their responsibilities towards the nation, such as upholding its unity and promoting harmony.

6. In conclusion, the Constitution of India is not merely a legal document but a testament to the ideals of the freedom struggle and the vision for a modern, democratic India. Its ability to adapt and grow with the nation makes it a truly dynamic framework that continues to guide and inspire.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the primary role of the Indian Constitution as described in the passage?
- (a) To serve as a history book of the freedom

struggle

- (b) To provide the supreme legal framework of the land
 - (c) To list the names of all citizens within the country
 - (d) To act as a temporary set of rules for the people
- ii.** Based on the information in Paragraph 2, describe the monumental task faced by the Constituent Assembly and identify its chief architect.
- iii.** According to the passage, the Indian Constitution is considered a “living document” because:
- (a) It is remarkably long and contains many details
 - (b) It was written by people who are currently alive
 - (c) It can be amended to suit the needs of the time
 - (d) It is stored in a special, climate-controlled case
- iv.** Explain the significance of the “provision for amendment” and how it has helped the Constitution remain effective for over seven decades.
- v.** Based on the Preamble, which of the following values does the Constitution resolve to secure for its citizens?
- I. Justice: social, economic, and political
 - II. Liberty of thought, expression, and belief
 - III. Absolute power for the central government
 - IV. Equality of status and of opportunity
- Choose the correct option:
- (a) I, II, and III only
 - (b) II, III, and IV only
 - (c) I, II, and IV only
 - (d) All of the above
- vi.** The word ‘static’ in paragraph 4 most nearly means:
- (a) Unchanging
 - (b) Evolving
 - (c) Detailed
 - (d) Democratic
- vii.** What is the Preamble of the Indian Constitution often referred to as?
- viii.** State whether the following statement is True or False:
The passage states that the Indian Constitution was drafted in less than a year.

- ix.** Complete the following sentence:
The basic rights guaranteed to every citizen, which are protected by the courts, are known as the _____.
- x.** What is the main difference between Fundamental Rights and Fundamental Duties as explained in the text?
- Ans :**
- i. (b) To provide the supreme legal framework of the land
 - ii. The Constituent Assembly, elected by the people, spent nearly three years drafting the Constitution while navigating immense national diversity and the challenges of poverty and partition. Dr. B.R. Ambedkar, the Chairman of the Drafting Committee, is recognized as the chief architect for his pivotal role in this process.
 - iii. (c) It can be amended to suit the needs of the time
 - iv. The provision for amendment allows the Constitution to be a flexible, “living document” rather than a static text. This enables the legal framework to evolve alongside society, adapting to new challenges and the changing aspirations of the people, which has kept it relevant for over seventy years.
 - v. (c) I, II, and IV only
 - vi. (a) Unchanging
 - vii. The soul of the Constitution.
 - viii. False.
 - ix. Fundamental Rights
 - x. Fundamental Rights are basic human rights protected by courts, whereas Fundamental Duties are moral responsibilities reminding citizens of their duties toward the nation.

24. Read the following passage carefully:

1. While we often focus on macronutrients like carbohydrates, proteins, and fats, there is another group of nutrients that are equally crucial for our health: micronutrients. This group consists of vitamins and minerals. They are called “micro” because our bodies only need them in tiny amounts. However, these small quantities are absolutely essential for a vast range of bodily functions, acting as the unsung heroes of our nutrition.
2. Vitamins are organic compounds that our bodies need to grow and develop normally. They often act as coenzymes, which are helper molecules

that enable the chemical reactions in our cells to happen efficiently. They are like the oil that keeps a complex machine running smoothly. Vitamins are generally categorized into two groups: fat-soluble (Vitamins A, D, E, and K), which can be stored in the body's fatty tissue, and water-soluble (Vitamin C and the B-complex vitamins), which are not stored and need to be replenished regularly.

3. Each vitamin has a specific job. For example, Vitamin A, found in carrots and sweet potatoes, is vital for good vision and a healthy immune system. Vitamin C, abundant in citrus fruits like oranges and lemons, is crucial for fighting infections and maintaining healthy skin. Vitamin D, often called the "sunshine vitamin" because our skin produces it in response to sunlight, is essential for bone health because it helps the body absorb calcium.
4. Minerals, unlike vitamins, are inorganic elements that the body needs for various functions. They are the building blocks of our bones, teeth, and blood, and they play a key role in regulating our body's processes, such as nerve function and muscle contraction.
5. Like vitamins, different minerals have different roles. Calcium, found in dairy products and leafy greens, is the primary mineral responsible for building and maintaining strong bones and teeth. Iron, present in foods like spinach and red meat, is a critical component of hemoglobin, the protein in red blood cells that carries oxygen from our lungs to the rest of the body. A deficiency in iron can lead to anemia, a condition characterized by fatigue. Potassium, found in bananas, is essential for maintaining proper fluid balance and nerve function.
6. In conclusion, while they may be needed in minuscule amounts, the role of vitamins and minerals is monumental. A deficiency in any one of them can lead to serious health problems. The best way to ensure an adequate intake of these essential micronutrients is not through supplements, but through a varied and balanced diet rich in fruits, vegetables, whole grains, and lean proteins.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. Why are vitamins and minerals specifically classified as 'micronutrients'?
 - (a) They are found only in microscopic organisms.
 - (b) They provide the body with very little energy.

- (c) The body requires them in very small amounts.
- (d) They are physically smaller than macronutrients.

- ii. Differentiate between fat-soluble and water-soluble vitamins based on how the body stores and processes them.

- iii. According to the passage, what is the primary biological function of iron?

- (a) Assisting with building strong human bones
- (b) Helping the eyes maintain a healthy vision
- (c) Fighting off various bacterial infections
- (d) Helping red blood cells carry vital oxygen

- iv. Explain the specific roles of Calcium and Iron as mentioned in the text, and identify the health condition that results from an iron deficiency.

- v. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:

Statement I: Vitamins often act as coenzymes that enable chemical reactions to happen efficiently.

Statement II: The passage suggests that supplements are the best way to ensure an adequate intake of nutrients.

- (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
- (c) Both statements I and II are true.
- (d) Both statements I and II are false.

- vi. The word 'minuscule' in paragraph 6 most nearly means:

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| (a) Enormous | (b) Moderate |
| (c) Tiny | (d) Vital |

- vii. Complete the following analogy based on the passage:

Macronutrients : Fuel :: Vitamins : _____

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The passage suggests that a deficiency in micronutrients has no major effect on our health.

- ix. Complete the following sentence:

Vitamin D is known as the "sunshine vitamin" because our skin can produce it in response to _____.

- x. What is the author's recommended method for ensuring a person receives enough vitamins and minerals?

Ans :

- i. (c) The body requires them in very small amounts.
- ii. Vitamins are categorized by their solubility. Fat-soluble vitamins (A, D, E, and K) are stored in the body's fatty tissues for future use. In contrast, water-soluble vitamins (C and the B-complex) are not stored in the body and must be replenished regularly through a person's diet.
- iii. (d) Helping red blood cells carry vital oxygen
- iv. Calcium is the primary mineral responsible for the construction and maintenance of strong bones and teeth. Iron is a critical component of hemoglobin, which allows red blood cells to transport oxygen. A lack of iron leads to anemia, a condition characterized by persistent fatigue.
- v. (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- vi. (c) Tiny
- vii. Coenzymes
- viii. False.
- ix. sunlight
- x. The best way is through a varied and balanced diet rich in fruits, vegetables, whole grains, and lean proteins.

25. Read the following passage carefully:

1. When you picture a desert, your mind probably conjures images of vast, sun-scorched sand dunes under a blazing sun—a barren and lifeless wasteland. While some deserts fit this description, this stereotype is a vast oversimplification. The defining characteristic of a desert is not heat, but aridity—a severe lack of precipitation. By this definition, a desert is any region that receives less than 250 millimetres (10 inches) of rain per year. This means deserts can be hot, like the Sahara, or bone-chillingly cold, like Antarctica.
2. Deserts are categorized based on their climate and location. Hot and dry deserts are what we typically imagine, with extreme temperature fluctuations between day and night. The Sahara in Africa is a prime example. Cold deserts, such as the Gobi Desert in Asia and the polar deserts of Antarctica, have long, frigid winters with precipitation falling mainly as snow. There are also coastal deserts, like the Atacama in Chile, which are located near the sea but remain arid due to specific wind and ocean currents that prevent rainfall.
3. Life in the desert is a masterclass in adaptation. Plants have evolved remarkable strategies to survive with minimal water. Succulents, such as

cacti, have thick, fleshy stems to store water and waxy skins to reduce evaporation. Other plants have incredibly deep taproots that can reach groundwater far below the surface, or widespread, shallow root systems to absorb moisture quickly after a rare rainfall.

4. Desert animals have also developed unique adaptations. Many are nocturnal, meaning they are active only during the cooler temperatures of the night and rest in burrows during the heat of the day. Some animals, like the camel, are famous for their ability to go long periods without drinking, conserving water with incredible physiological efficiency. Others, like the kangaroo rat, get all the water they need from the seeds they eat. The fennec fox of the Sahara has enormous ears that act like radiators to dissipate body heat.
5. Despite the resilience of the life found there, desert ecosystems are incredibly fragile. The slow rate of plant growth and the scarcity of water mean that these environments recover from damage very slowly. Human activities such as off-road vehicle use, which can damage the soil crust, mining operations, and the overuse of groundwater resources can cause irreversible harm to these delicate landscapes.
6. In conclusion, deserts are far from the empty wastelands they are often perceived to be. They are complex and diverse ecosystems, teeming with specialized life that has adapted to survive in some of the most extreme conditions on Earth. Understanding their unique beauty and fragility is the first step toward appreciating and protecting these remarkable parts of our planet.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the actual defining characteristic of a desert according to the passage?
 - (a) Constant high temperatures
 - (b) The presence of sand dunes
 - (c) A severe lack of precipitation
 - (d) A complete absence of all life
- ii. Based on Paragraph 3, explain the different structural adaptations plants have evolved to survive in arid desert environments.
- iii. An animal that is primarily active during the night to avoid heat is described as:

(a) Nocturnal	(b) Succulent
(c) Arid	(d) Fragile

iv. Describe the specific physiological and behavioral adaptations of desert animals like the camel, the kangaroo rat, and the fennec fox.

v. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:

Statement I: A region must be hot and sandy to be scientifically classified as a desert.

Statement II: Desert ecosystems are fragile because they recover very slowly from environmental damage.

- (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
- (c) Both statements I and II are true.
- (d) Both statements I and II are false.

vi. The word 'aridity' in paragraph 1 most nearly means:

- (a) Extreme heat (b) Severe dryness
- (c) Sandy quality (d) Lifeless state

vii. Complete the following analogy based on the passage:

Sahara : Hot :: Antarctica : _____

viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The passage states that Antarctica, despite being covered in ice, is classified as a desert.

ix. Complete the following sentence:

The Atacama in Chile is an example of a _____ desert.

x. Identify one specific human activity mentioned in the text that can cause irreversible harm to delicate desert landscapes.

Ans :

- i. (c) A severe lack of precipitation
- ii. Desert plants have evolved several strategies: succulents like cacti use thick, fleshy stems to store water and waxy skins to prevent evaporation. Other plants utilize extremely deep taproots to access underground water or widespread, shallow roots to absorb moisture immediately following rare rainfall events.
- iii. (a) Nocturnal
- iv. Desert animals use unique survival tactics: camels possess high physiological efficiency to go long periods without water, while kangaroo rats extract all necessary moisture from the seeds they consume. The fennec fox uses its large ears as radiators to dissipate body heat and maintain a

stable temperature.

- v. (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
- vi. (b) Severe dryness
- vii. Cold
- viii. True.
- ix. coastal
- x. Off-road vehicle use.

26. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Accidents and medical emergencies can happen at any time, in any place. In the critical moments between when an incident occurs and when professional medical help arrives, the actions of a bystander can make a life-or-death difference. This immediate assistance is known as First Aid. It is the initial care given to a victim of injury or sudden illness. The primary goal of first aid is not to be a substitute for a doctor, but to provide essential care to preserve life, prevent the condition from worsening, and promote recovery.
2. The core principles of first aid can be remembered by the "Three Ps": Preserve life, Prevent further harm, and Promote recovery. Preserving life is the ultimate aim, which includes critical actions like performing CPR if someone is not breathing. Preventing further harm involves making the area safe for both the victim and the rescuer and taking steps to ensure the injury doesn't become more severe. Promoting recovery includes providing initial treatment for injuries, reassuring the victim, and arranging for prompt emergency medical help.
3. One of the most common household injuries is a minor burn. Correct first aid can significantly reduce the pain and damage. The first and most important step is to cool the burn under cool (not ice-cold) running water for at least 10 to 20 minutes. This helps to draw heat out of the skin. It is crucial to avoid common myths like applying butter, oil, or toothpaste to a burn, as these can trap heat and increase the risk of infection.
4. For someone who is unconscious but breathing, a simple procedure called the recovery position can be lifesaving. By carefully rolling the person onto their side and tilting their head back, you ensure their airway remains open. This position prevents them from choking on their tongue or any fluid like vomit, which is a major risk when lying flat on their back.
5. Beyond any technical skill, one of the most important roles of a first aider is to remain calm and reassuring. Panic is contagious and can make

the injured person more distressed, which can worsen their condition. By speaking calmly and confidently, you can help the victim feel safe and reduce their anxiety, which is an important part of the healing process.

6. In conclusion, first aid is a vital skill that empowers individuals to act decisively in an emergency. It is the critical first link in the chain of survival. While it does not replace the need for professional medical services, the knowledge of basic first aid can prevent a minor incident from becoming a major tragedy and can equip anyone with the confidence to save a life.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the primary goal of First Aid as described in the passage?
 - (a) To replace the need for hospitals
 - (b) To provide initial life-saving care
 - (c) To perform complex medical surgery
 - (d) To only treat minor skin abrasions
- ii. According to Paragraph 2, explain the “Three Ps” of first aid and provide one specific action associated with each.
- iii. The “Three Ps” of first aid stand for:
 - (a) Protect, Provide, and Pacify
 - (b) Prepare, Practice, and Perfect
 - (c) Preserve, Prevent, and Promote
 - (d) Panic, Phone, and Pray
- iv. Explain the medical purpose of the ‘recovery position’ and how it specifically protects an unconscious person from life-threatening risks.
- v. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:

Statement I: Butter and toothpaste are effective treatments to draw heat out of a minor burn.

Statement II: A minor burn should be cooled under cool running water for at least 10 to 20 minutes.

 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
 - (c) Both statements I and II are true.
 - (d) Both statements I and II are false.
- vi. The word ‘decisively’ in paragraph 6 most nearly means:
 - (a) Hesitantly
 - (b) Slowly
 - (c) Effectively
 - (d) Panicked

- vii. What is one action included under “Promote recovery” in first aid?

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The passage recommends applying toothpaste to a burn to cool it down.

- ix. Complete the following sentence:
One of the most important, non-technical roles of a first aider is to remain calm and _____.

- x. Why is the emotional state of the first aider (remaining calm) considered a critical part of the healing process for the victim?

Ans :

- i. (b) To provide initial life-saving care
- ii. The “Three Ps” are: 1. Preserve life (e.g., performing CPR); 2. Prevent further harm (e.g., making the area safe to ensure injuries don’t worsen); and 3. Promote recovery (e.g., providing initial treatment and arranging for professional medical help).
- iii. (c) Preserve, Prevent, and Promote
- iv. The recovery position involves rolling a person onto their side and tilting their head back to ensure the airway remains open. This is vital because it prevents the unconscious victim from choking on their tongue or fluids like vomit, which is a high risk if they are left lying flat on their back.
- (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
- (c) Effectively
- vi. Reassuring the victim.
- viii. False.
- ix. reassuring
- x. Staying calm prevents panic from spreading to the victim, reducing their anxiety and preventing their physical condition from worsening due to distress.

27. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Deep beneath the Earth’s surface, immense heat and pressure create molten rock known as magma. Sometimes, this magma finds its way to the surface through a rupture in the crust, resulting in one of nature’s most spectacular and powerful events: a volcanic eruption. A volcano is a landform, typically a mountain, created by the accumulation of lava, ash, and other materials that escape from a magma chamber below the ground. These fiery mountains are both destructive forces and architects of our planet’s landscape.

2. The vast majority of volcanoes are located along the boundaries of the Earth's tectonic plates. The most active volcanic zone is the "Ring of Fire," a massive arc that encircles the Pacific Ocean. Volcanoes are formed when plates collide (converge) or pull apart (diverge). When two plates converge, one can slide beneath the other in a process called subduction. The subducted plate melts, creating magma that is less dense than the surrounding rock, causing it to rise to the surface and erupt.
 3. A typical volcano has several key parts. Below the surface is the magma chamber, a large reservoir of molten rock. This magma travels upwards through a central pipe called the main vent. At the summit of the volcano is a bowl-shaped depression called the crater, which is the primary opening for an eruption. Some volcanoes also have smaller, secondary vents on their flanks.
 4. Volcanic eruptions can vary dramatically in their intensity. Geologists broadly classify them into two types. Effusive eruptions involve the relatively gentle outflow of fluid lava. This type of eruption is common in Hawaiian volcanoes and creates broad, gently sloping shield volcanoes. In contrast, explosive eruptions are violent and catastrophic. They occur when thick, viscous magma traps a large amount of gas. The pressure builds until it is released in a massive explosion, ejecting hot gas, ash, and rock fragments high into the atmosphere.
 5. While eruptions can be incredibly destructive, volcanoes also have a creative side. The volcanic ash and lava that they deposit are rich in minerals. Over time, these materials break down to form extremely fertile soil, which is ideal for agriculture. This is why many civilizations have historically thrived in the shadow of volcanoes. Volcanic activity is also responsible for forming new land, such as the entire chain of the Hawaiian Islands, and is a source of geothermal energy.
 6. In conclusion, volcanoes are a profound reminder of the dynamic and powerful forces that shape our planet. They are a direct window into the fiery heart of the Earth. While they command respect for their destructive potential, they are also a fundamental part of the geological cycle that creates land, enriches soil, and has helped to sculpt the world we live in.
- (a) A mountain formed entirely by frozen ice
 - (b) A deep trench located on the ocean floor
 - (c) An opening for molten rock and ash to escape
 - (d) A type of earthquake occurring under the sea
 - ii. Based on Paragraph 3, identify and describe the primary structural parts of a typical volcano.
 - iii. The "Ring of Fire" is a major zone of volcanic activity located around the:
 - (a) Atlantic Ocean
 - (b) Indian Ocean
 - (c) Arctic Ocean
 - (d) Pacific Ocean
 - iv. Contrast 'Effusive' and 'Explosive' eruptions by explaining the role of magma viscosity and gas pressure in each.
 - v. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:

Statement I: Subduction occurs when one tectonic plate slides beneath another, creating magma.

Statement II: Volcanic ash is harmful to agriculture and prevents civilizations from thriving.

 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
 - (c) Both statements I and II are true.
 - (d) Both statements I and II are false.
 - vi. **Assertion (A):** Shield volcanoes, like those in Hawaii, have broad and gentle slopes.
Reason (R): These volcanoes are formed by explosive eruptions that eject thick, viscous magma.
 - (a) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - (b) Both (A) and (R) are true but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 - (c) (A) is true but (R) is false.
 - (d) (A) is false but (R) is true.
 - vii. Complete the following analogy based on the passage:
 Magma : Beneath the surface :: Lava : _____
 - viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
 The passage suggests that all volcanic eruptions are gentle and relatively harmless.
 - ix. The word 'viscous' in paragraph 4 most nearly means:
 - (a) Runny
 - (b) Fiery
 - (c) Thick
 - (d) Light

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the most accurate definition of a volcano based on the passage?

- x. Give one example of a creative or positive geological outcome of volcanic activity mentioned in the text.

Ans :

- i. (c) An opening for molten rock and ash to escape
- ii. A typical volcano consists of a magma chamber (a reservoir of molten rock underground), a main vent (a central pipe through which magma travels), and a crater (a bowl-shaped depression at the summit that serves as the primary opening). Some may also have secondary vents on their sides.
- iii. (d) The Pacific Ocean
- iv. Effusive eruptions involve the gentle flow of fluid, low-viscosity lava, creating shield-shaped mountains. Explosive eruptions occur when thick, viscous magma traps gas; the resulting high pressure leads to a violent explosion that ejects ash and rock fragments into the atmosphere.
- v. (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- vi. (c) (A) is true but (R) is false.
- vii. Above the surface
- viii. False.
- ix. (c) Thick
- x. The creation of extremely fertile soil for agriculture.

28. Read the following passage carefully:

1. In our fast-paced, 24/7 world, sleep is often viewed as a luxury or even a waste of time. We sacrifice it for work, study, or entertainment, believing we can function just fine on less. However, a growing body of scientific research reveals that sleep is not a passive state of rest but a crucial and active period for our physical and mental well-being. It is a fundamental biological necessity, as vital as breathing or eating.
2. During sleep, our bodies undertake critical repair and maintenance work. While we rest, the body increases the production of proteins that are essential for cell growth and repair. The immune system is also strengthened, producing protective proteins and antibodies that help us fight off infections. This is why when you are sick, your body naturally craves more sleep. Chronic sleep deprivation can weaken your immune defenses, making you more susceptible to common illnesses like the cold and flu.
3. The brain is particularly active during sleep, performing a vital task known as memory consolidation. Throughout the day, we acquire

countless new experiences and pieces of information. During sleep, the brain sifts through these, strengthening important memories and transferring them from fragile, short-term storage to more robust, long-term storage. It is like a librarian meticulously organizing the day's new books onto the correct shelves. Without adequate sleep, this process is disrupted, making it difficult to learn and retain new information.

4. Sleep also plays a critical role in emotional regulation. When you are sleep-deprived, the emotional centers of your brain, particularly the amygdala, can become hyperactive. This can lead to increased irritability, mood swings, and a reduced ability to cope with stress. A well-rested mind is calmer and better equipped to handle life's daily frustrations and challenges with a balanced perspective.
5. The amount of sleep required varies by age. While most adults need 7-9 hours of sleep per night, teenagers actually need more, typically between 8 and 10 hours, to support their rapidly developing brains and bodies. Equally important as the quantity of sleep is its quality and consistency. Maintaining a regular sleep schedule—going to bed and waking up around the same time each day, even on weekends—helps to regulate the body's internal clock, or circadian rhythm.
6. In conclusion, sleep should be treated as a non-negotiable pillar of a healthy lifestyle. It is not a sign of laziness but a biological imperative for physical healing, mental clarity, and emotional stability. Prioritizing a good night's sleep is one of the most effective things you can do to improve your overall health and quality of life.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the central argument presented by the author in this passage?
 - (a) Sleep is an unproductive waste of time in a busy world.
 - (b) Teenagers require much less sleep than average adults.
 - (c) Sleep is a vital process for physical and mental health.
 - (d) The sole purpose of sleep is to rest the body's muscles.
- ii. According to Paragraph 3, explain the "librarian" analogy of memory consolidation and why sleep is essential for a student's learning process.

iii. The process of strengthening memories and moving them to long-term storage during sleep is called:

- (a) Emotional regulation
- (b) Memory consolidation
- (c) Immune response
- (d) Circadian rhythm

iv. Explain the concept of the “circadian rhythm” and why maintaining a consistent sleep schedule is important for regulating the body’s internal clock.

v. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:

Statement I: Chronic sleep deprivation strengthens the body’s immune defenses.

Statement II: During sleep, the body increases protein production essential for cell growth and repair.

- (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
- (c) Both statements I and II are true.
- (d) Both statements I and II are false.

vi. **Assertion (A):** Sleep-deprived individuals often experience increased irritability and mood swings.

Reason (R): Lack of sleep causes the emotional centers of the brain, like the amygdala, to become hyperactive.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- (b) Both (A) and (R) are true but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (c) (A) is true but (R) is false.
- (d) (A) is false but (R) is true.

vii. Complete the following analogy based on the passage:

Adults : 7-9 hours :: Teenagers : _____

viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The passage describes sleep as a passive state in which the brain remains completely inactive.

ix. The word ‘susceptible’ in paragraph 2 most nearly means:

- (a) Resistant
- (b) Ignorant
- (c) Vulnerable
- (d) Drowsy

x. In the context of sleep, what is meant by “emotional regulation”?

Ans :

- i. (c) Sleep is a vital process for physical and mental health.
- ii. Memory consolidation is like a librarian organizing books; the brain sifts through the day’s experiences, moving them from fragile short-term storage to robust long-term storage. For a student, missing sleep disrupts this organization, making it significantly harder to retain and recall new information learned during study sessions.
- iii. (b) Memory consolidation
- iv. The circadian rhythm is the body’s natural internal clock that regulates the sleep-wake cycle. Maintaining a consistent schedule—waking and sleeping at the same time daily—helps keep this rhythm stable, ensuring the body performs its repair and maintenance tasks efficiently.
- v. (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
- vi. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- vii. 8-10 hours
- viii. False.
- ix. (c) Vulnerable
- x. It is the brain’s ability to manage and balance emotional responses and stress, a process governed by a well-rested amygdala.

29. Read the following passage carefully:

- 1. Communication, the act of sharing information, is a fundamental human need. Throughout history, our methods for communicating over long distances have undergone a dramatic evolution, from the simplest signals to the sophisticated devices we use today. This journey is not just a story of technological advancement; it is the story of how humanity has become more interconnected, making our world feel progressively smaller.
- 2. In ancient times, long-distance communication was slow and limited. Early methods included smoke signals, drum beats, and messenger pigeons. While ingenious for their time, these systems were rudimentary. A smoke signal could convey a simple, pre-arranged message like “danger” or “all is well,” but it could not be used for a complex conversation. Messages carried by runners or pigeons could take days or even weeks to reach their destination and were subject to the perils of the journey.
- 3. The 19th century heralded a revolution with the invention of the electrical telegraph. Developed by Samuel Morse, the telegraph allowed complex

messages to be sent almost instantaneously across continents and oceans using a system of electrical pulses known as Morse code. For the first time in history, information could travel faster than any human messenger. This dramatically changed journalism, business, and even warfare.

4. The next great leaps were the telephone and the radio. In 1876, Alexander Graham Bell's invention of the telephone personalized communication by allowing the human voice to be transmitted directly over wires. This was followed by the development of the radio, which enabled the wireless broadcast of sound to a mass audience. Radio transformed society by providing a shared source of news and entertainment, connecting entire nations in real-time.
5. The late 20th century brought the most profound change of all: the internet. It created a global network where vast amounts of information in any format—text, images, audio, video—could be shared instantly. The subsequent invention of the smartphone put this power into our pockets. A smartphone is a remarkable convergence of past technologies; it is a telegraph (texting), a telephone, a radio, and an internet portal all in one portable device, enabling instant global communication from almost anywhere.
6. In conclusion, the evolution of communication from a simple smoke signal to a feature-rich smartphone is a testament to human ingenuity. Each step in this journey has broken down the barriers of distance, fostering greater understanding and creating the global village we live in today. This ongoing evolution continues to shape how we interact with our world and with each other.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the central topic addressed by the author in this passage?
 - (a) The specific invention of the modern smartphone
 - (b) The historical evolution of long-distance communication
 - (c) The biography and personal life of Samuel Morse
 - (d) The technical challenges of ancient signal systems
- ii. According to Paragraph 2, describe the limitations of pre-electric communication methods such as smoke signals and carrier pigeons.

- iii. What was the primary advantage of the electrical telegraph over older methods of sharing information?

- (a) It provided a more personal form of communication
- (b) it was significantly faster than human messengers
- (c) It did not require any specialized training to use
- (d) It allowed for the transmission of detailed images

- iv. Explain how the telephone and radio further “personalized” and “transformed” society beyond the capabilities of the telegraph.

- v. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:

Statement I: Samuel Morse developed a system of electrical pulses known as Morse code.

Statement II: The smartphone is a convergence of past technologies like the telegraph and telephone.

- (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
- (c) Both statements I and II are true.
- (d) Both statements I and II are false.

- vi. The word ‘rudimentary’ in paragraph 2 most nearly means:

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| (a) Basic | (b) Complex |
| (c) Flawless | (d) Atmospheric |

- vii. Complete the following analogy based on the passage:

Telegraph : Morse Code :: Telephone : _____

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The passage suggests that the radio was primarily a form of one-to-one communication, similar to the telephone.

- ix. Which device is described in the text as a “convergence of past technologies”?

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| (a) Radio | (b) Telegraph |
| (c) Telephone | (d) Smartphone |

- x. In your own words, explain what the author means by the term “global village” in the concluding paragraph.

Ans :

- i. (b) The historical evolution of long-distance communication

- ii. Ancient methods like smoke signals were limited to very simple, pre-arranged messages (such as “danger”) and could not support complex dialogue. Methods like runners or pigeons were extremely slow, taking days or weeks, and were often interrupted by the physical dangers of the journey.
- iii. (b) It was significantly faster than human messengers
- iv. The telephone personalized communication by allowing the actual human voice to be transmitted over distances for the first time. The radio transformed society by acting as a mass broadcast tool, providing a shared source of real-time news and entertainment that connected entire nations simultaneously.
- v. (c) Both statements I and II are true.
- vi. (a) Basic
- vii. Human Voice
- viii. False.
- ix. (d) Smartphone
- x. The “global village” refers to a world where distance no longer acts as a barrier to interaction, making the entire planet feel small and interconnected through instant communication.

30. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Have you ever heard your parents or grandparents say that things were much cheaper in their day? This is not just a trick of memory; it is a real economic phenomenon known as inflation. In simple terms, inflation is the rate at which the general level of prices for goods and services in an economy rises, and as a consequence, the purchasing power of currency falls. It means that the same ₹100 note buys you less today than it did last year.
2. There are two primary causes of inflation. The first is “demand-pull” inflation. This occurs when the demand for goods and services in an economy outstrips the supply. When more people want to buy something than is available, sellers can raise prices. A simple way to think of this is “too much money chasing too few goods.” This often happens in a growing economy where people have more money to spend.
3. The second cause is “cost-push” inflation. This happens when the costs of production for businesses increase. For example, if the price of raw materials, energy (like electricity or petrol), or wages for workers goes up, it becomes more expensive for a company to make its product.

To maintain their profits, businesses pass these increased costs on to the consumer in the form of higher prices.

4. Governments and economists measure inflation by tracking the price of a standard “basket of goods and services.” This basket contains a representative sample of items that an average household consumes, such as food, clothing, housing, transportation, and healthcare. By monitoring the total cost of this basket over time, they can calculate the overall inflation rate, which is usually expressed as a percentage.
5. Inflation has a significant impact on our personal finances, especially our savings. If you keep your money in a savings account that earns an interest rate of 4% per year, but the annual inflation rate is 6%, the real value of your money is actually shrinking. Even though the amount of money in your account is growing, its purchasing power—its ability to buy things—is decreasing by 2% each year. Inflation erodes the value of savings over time.
6. In conclusion, inflation is a fundamental concept in economics that affects everyone. While a small, stable amount of inflation is generally considered a sign of a healthy economy, high or unpredictable inflation can create uncertainty and reduce the standard of living. Understanding how it works is a crucial part of being financially literate and making smart decisions with your money.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. What is the most accurate definition of inflation as described in the passage?
 - (a) A decrease in the general price of goods and services.
 - (b) An increase in the total purchasing power of money.
 - (c) A rise in price levels causing a fall in currency value.
 - (d) A government plan to make essential items cheaper.
- ii. Based on Paragraphs 2 and 3, differentiate between “Demand-pull” and “Cost-push” inflation.
- iii. “Demand-pull” inflation specifically occurs when:
 - (a) The cost of raw materials and energy increases
 - (b) Demand for goods exceeds the available supply
 - (c) Consumers decide to save more of their income

- (d) The government reduces the total money supply
- iv. How is the “basket of goods and services” used by economists to track the inflation rate over time?
- v. Read the two statements below and choose the correct option:
Statement I: Inflation is often described as “too much money chasing too few goods.”
Statement II: High or unpredictable inflation is generally a sign of a healthy economy.
- (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
 (c) Both statements I and II are true.
 (d) Both statements I and II are false.
- vi. The word ‘erodes’ in paragraph 5 most nearly means:
 (a) Builds (b) Destroys
 (c) Shields (d) Invests
- vii. What type of inflation occurs when production costs increase?
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
 The passage states that a small, stable amount of inflation is often considered a sign of a healthy economy.
- ix. Why does a 6% inflation rate pose a problem for a person whose savings account only earns 4% interest?
- x. Define the term “purchasing power” in the context of the provided text.

Ans :

- i. (c) A rise in price levels causing a fall in currency value.
- ii. Demand-pull inflation occurs when the demand for goods is higher than the supply—often described as “too much money chasing too few goods.” Cost-push inflation occurs when production costs (wages, raw materials, or energy) rise, forcing businesses to increase prices to maintain their profit margins.
- iii. (b) Demand for goods exceeds the available supply
- iv. The “basket” contains a representative sample of items an average household consumes, such as food, housing, and healthcare. Economists monitor the total cost of this specific basket over time; the change in the basket’s price is expressed

as a percentage to determine the overall inflation rate.

- v. (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 vi. (b) Destroys
 vii. Cost-push inflation.
 viii. True.
 ix. The real value of their money is shrinking because the cost of living is rising faster than the interest they are earning.
 x. Purchasing power is the ability of a specific amount of money to buy a certain quantity of goods and services.



CHAPTER 2

CASE-BASED PASSAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

A Case-Based Passage is a factual text that presents a specific scenario, report, or study through a logical sequence of information. Its primary goal is to provide an objective view of a subject—such as a survey or a scientific discovery—by using evidence rather than just narration. What makes these passages unique is the combination of written text with visual or verbal inputs, including Statistical Data, Charts and Graphs, Tables etc. By studying these passages, you learn to synthesize text and data to form a complete understanding of the subject and accurately compare different sets of information.

2. POINTS TO REMEMBER

To score well in this section, you must be precise and observant. Keep the following points in mind while solving a case-based passage:

1. Read the text quickly to understand the general subject matter and the main theme.
2. Carefully look at any provided charts, graphs, or tables. Pay close attention to titles, labels, and the units of measurement used.
3. Read the passage a second time and underline important facts, figures, and dates that act as evidence.
4. When a question is asked, check if the answer is in the written text, the visual data, or a combination of both.
5. Read the questions carefully to understand whether you need to identify a specific fact or interpret a trend.

3. SOME IMPORTANT EXAMPLES

1. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Air pollution is one of the most pressing environmental issues facing urban India. To monitor the level of pollution and communicate it to the public in a simple way, the government uses the Air Quality Index (AQI). The AQI is a tool for measuring the daily air quality. It tells you how clean or polluted your air is, and what associated

health effects might be a concern for you.

2. The AQI is calculated for major air pollutants and is categorized into different levels. An AQI between 0 and 50 is considered 'Good' with minimal health impact. 51 to 100 is 'Moderate', causing minor breathing discomfort to sensitive people. An AQI of 101 to 200 is 'Unhealthy for Sensitive Groups', while 201 to 300 is 'Poor' and can cause breathing discomfort to most people on prolonged exposure. Anything above 301 is considered 'Very Poor' to 'Severe', seriously impacting health.

3. The main sources of urban air pollution are vehicular emissions, industrial pollutants, dust from construction sites, and the burning of waste. These activities release harmful particles and gases into the atmosphere, leading to a high AQI.

The table below shows the average AQI recorded in five major Indian cities on a particular day, illustrating the scale of the challenge. The data highlights the varying levels of air pollution across the country and the potential health risks faced by their residents.

Air Quality Index (AQI) of Major Indian Cities

City	AQI Value	AQI Category
Delhi	285	Poor
Mumbai	165	Unhealthy for Sensitive Groups
Chennai	85	Moderate
Kolkata	190	Unhealthy for Sensitive Groups
Bengaluru	95	Moderate

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage and data table:

- i. Which of the following best describes the primary objective of the Air Quality Index (AQI) as discussed in the passage?
 - (a) To track the total number of urban vehicles.
 - (b) To forecast daily temperature and weather.
 - (c) To measure water purity in industrial zones.

- (d) To report air quality and related health risks.
- ii. Based on the data table provided, identify the correct chronological order of cities from the lowest (best) AQI to the highest (worst) AQI:
 (i) Chennai
 (ii) Bengaluru
 (iii) Kolkata
 (iv) Delhi
 Choose the correct option:
 (a) (i) - (ii) - (iii) - (iv)
 (b) (iv) - (iii) - (ii) - (i)
 (c) (ii) - (i) - (iii) - (iv)
 (d) (i) - (iii) - (ii) - (iv)
- iii. **Assertion (A):** The air quality in both Mumbai and Kolkata is classified as 'Unhealthy for Sensitive Groups'.
Reason (R): Both cities recorded an AQI value that falls within the range of 101 to 200.
 (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.
- iv. Which of the following is NOT a source of urban air pollution?
 (a) Waste burning (b) Construction
 (c) Farm drainage (d) Car emissions
- v. Calculate the numerical difference in the AQI values recorded for Delhi and Chennai, and explain what this difference indicates about the air quality of the two cities.
- vi. According to the passage and data table, what specific health impact would a resident of Delhi likely experience upon prolonged exposure to the atmosphere, and why?
- vii. Complete the following sentence:
 An AQI value between 0 and 50 is considered '_____' and has minimal health impact.
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the data table:
 Bengaluru's air quality is better than Mumbai's air quality.
- ix. What is the specific AQI value recorded for the city of Kolkata as shown in the table?
- x. According to the table, which city has the lowest

AQI value, indicating the best air quality among those listed?

Ans :

- i. (d) To report air quality and related health risks.
- ii. (a) (i) - (ii) - (iii) - (iv) [Chennai: 85, Bengaluru: 95, Kolkata: 190, Delhi: 285]
- iii. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- iv. (c) Farm drainage (Refers to 'Agricultural runoff' which is not mentioned as an urban source).
- v. The numerical difference between Delhi (285) and Chennai (85) is 200. This massive gap indicates that while Chennai enjoys 'Moderate' air quality with minor discomfort for sensitive groups, Delhi suffers from 'Poor' air quality, posing a significant health risk to most residents.
- vi. A resident of Delhi can expect to experience breathing discomfort. With an AQI of 285, the city falls into the 'Poor' category. According to the passage, exposure to this level for a prolonged duration negatively impacts the health of most people.
- vii. Good
- viii. True (95 is lower/better than 165).
- ix. 190
- x. Chennai

2. Read the following passage carefully:

1. The automobile industry in India is the world's fourth-largest. India was the world's fourth-largest manufacturer of cars and the seventh-largest manufacturer of commercial vehicles in 2019. The Indian automotive industry (including component manufacturing) is expected to reach 216.16–18.18 trillion (US \$ 251.4–282.8 billion) by 2026. The industry attracted Foreign Direct Investment (FDI) worth US \$ 24.21 billion from April 2000 to March 2020 according to the data released by the Department for Promotion of Industry and Internal Trade (DPIIT).
2. Two-wheelers and passenger vehicles dominate the domestic Indian auto market. Passenger car sales are dominated by small and mid-sized cars. Two-wheelers and passenger cars accounted for 80.8 percent and 12.9 percent market share, respectively, accounting for a combined sale of over 21.55 million vehicles in FY20. The CAGR during FYI 6-FY20 is 1.29 percent.
3. The government aims to develop India as global manufacturing and Research and Development (R and D) hub. It has set up National Automotive

CBSE CLASS 12

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Core

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Physics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Chemistry

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Biology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Physical Education

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Informatics Practice

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Computer Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Accountancy

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Business Studies

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Economics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Entrepreneurship

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Legal Studies

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Applied Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Hindi

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

History

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Geography

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Political Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Psychology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Sociology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF(NEET, JEE and CUET) visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 11

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Core

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Physics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Chemistry

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Biology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Physical Education

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Informatic Practice

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Computer Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Accountancy

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Business Studies

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Economics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Entrepreneurship

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Legal Studies

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Applied Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Hindi

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

History

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Geography

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Political Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Psychology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Sociology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF (NEET, JEE and CUET) visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 10

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English LL

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

English Comm

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics STD

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics Basic

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Social Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

IT (402)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

AI (417)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (419)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी अ

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी ब

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

संस्कृत

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

सामाजिक विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित मानक

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित आधार

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

NEET Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit

www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 9

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English LL

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

English Comm

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Mathematics STD

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Mathematics Basic

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Social Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

IT (402)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

AI (417)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Data Science (419)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

हिंदी अ

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

हिंदी ब

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

संस्कृत

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

सामाजिक विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

गणित मानक

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

गणित आधार

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

NEET Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

JEE Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

JEE Foundation Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit

www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 8

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Social Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

संस्कृत

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

IT (906)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

AI (901)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (911)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Coding (910)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

सामाजिक विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

NEET Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad General Aptitude

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 7

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Social Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



संस्कृत

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



IT (906)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



AI (901)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Data Science (911)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Coding (910)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



सामाजिक विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



NEET Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



JEE Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



JEE Foundation Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad General Aptitude

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF

WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 6

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Mathematics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Social Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

हिंदी

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

संस्कृत

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

IT (906)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

AI (901)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Data Science (911)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Coding (910)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

सामाजिक विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

गणित

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

NEET Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

JEE Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

JEE Foundation Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Olympiad Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Olympiad Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Olympiad General Aptitude

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 5 and 4

Worksheets

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

English 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 3 and 2

Worksheets

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

English 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 1 and KG

Worksheets

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

English KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

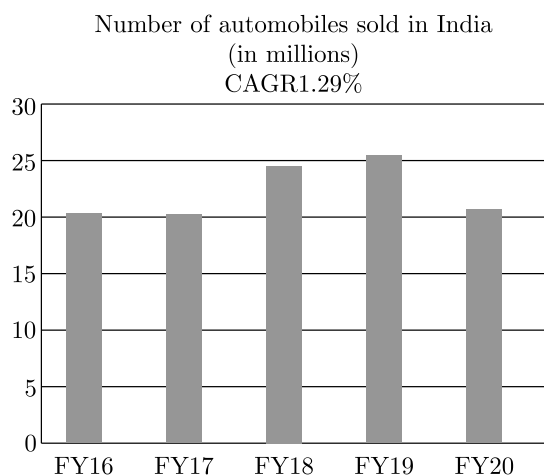
— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

Testing and R and D Infrastructure Project (NATRIP) centres as well as National Automotive Board to act as a facilitator between the government and the industry. Under (NATRIP), five testing and research centres have been established in the country since 2015. NATRIPs proposal for “Grant-In-Aid for test facility infrastructure for Electric Vehicle (EV) performance Certification from NATRIP Implementation Society” under FAME (Faster Adoption and Manufacturing of (Hybrid) and Electric Vehicles in India) scheme was approved by Project Implementation and Sanctioning Committee (PISC) on 3rd January, 2019.

4. The Indian Government has also set up an ambitious target of having only EVs sold in the country. The Ministry of Heavy Industries, Government of India, has shortlisted 11 cities in the country for the introduction of EVs in their public transport system under the FAME scheme. The first phase of the scheme was extended to March 2019 while in February 2019, the government approved the FAME-II scheme with a fund requirement of ₹10,000 crore (US \$ 1.39 billion) for FY20-22. Under Union Budget 2019-20, government announced providing an additional income tax deduction of ₹1.5 lakh (US \$ 2146) on the interest paid on the loans taken to purchase EVs.
5. EV sales, excluding e-rickshaws, in India witnessed a growth of 20 percent and reached 1.56 lakh units in FY20 driven by two-wheelers. The Government of India expects the automobile sector to attract US \$ 8-10 billion in local and foreign investment by 2023.



Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what was India's global ranking in terms of car manufacturing in 2019?
 - (a) Second
 - (b) Fourth
 - (c) Seventh
 - (d) Tenth
- ii. Based on the data in Paragraph 2, which of the following statements are correct?
 - (i) Two-wheelers hold over 80% of the market share.
 - (ii) Passenger cars account for 12.9% of the market.
 - (iii) FY19 recorded the lowest sales in the five-year period.
 - (iv) Small and mid-sized cars dominate passenger sales.

Choose the correct option:

 - (a) (i) and (ii)
 - (b) (ii) and (iii)
 - (c) (i), (ii), and (iv)
 - (d) (iii) and (iv)
- iii. Identify the two primary testing and R&D organizations established by the government to facilitate the automotive industry's growth.
- iv. Which of the following is the primary goal of the FAME and FAME-II schemes as described in the text?
 - (a) Increasing diesel car exports.
 - (b) Reducing mid-sized car prices.
 - (c) Promoting Electric Vehicle adoption.
 - (d) Funding rural road infrastructure.

Analyze the sales trend from FY18 to FY20 using the bar chart. What happened to the total number of automobiles sold during this period?

- vi. The word “facilitator” as used in Paragraph 3 most nearly means:
 - (a) An obstacle
 - (b) A competitor
 - (c) A helper
 - (d) A consumer
- vii. Complete the following Analogy based on the market data provided in Paragraph 2:
Two-wheelers : 80.8% :: Passenger vehicles : _____
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False based on the bar chart:
The total number of automobiles sold in India reached its peak in the fiscal year 2019 (FY19).
- ix. According to the final paragraph, how many units did EV sales (excluding e-rickshaws) reach in FY20?

- x. Name one of the financial incentives offered in the Union Budget 2019-20 to encourage the purchase of Electric Vehicles.

Ans :

- i. (b) Fourth.
- ii. (c) (i), (ii), and (iv) [FY19 recorded the highest sales, not the lowest].
- iii. The National Automotive Testing and R&D Infrastructure Project (NATRIP) and the National Automotive Board.
- iv. (c) Promoting Electric Vehicle adoption.
- v. Sales grew between FY18 and FY19 (peaking at over 25 million) but then saw a significant decline in FY20, dropping back to approximately 20.8 million units.
- vi. (c) A helper.
- vii. 12.9%
- viii. True (The chart shows it as the highest bar).
- ix. 1.56 lakh units.
- x. Income tax deduction of ₹1.5 lakh on loan interest.

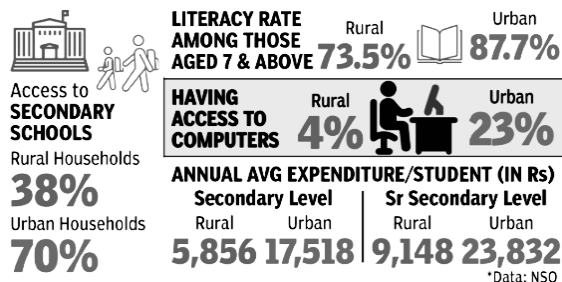
3. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Right from literacy, accessibility to schools and household expenditure on education, the rural-urban gap remains significant. There is a digital divide, too, with just 4% of rural households having access to computers as compared to 23% in urban areas. These and other trends in a rural-urban gap in education are revealed in the details of a survey conducted by the National Statistical Office (NSO).
2. The report on 'Household Social Consumption: Education' surveyed 1.13 lakh households spread across over 8,000 villages and 6,000 urban blocks between July 2017 and June 2018. The study involved 1.52 lakh students across different levels of study.
3. On accessibility, while 92.7% of the rural households have a primary school within 1 km as compared to 87.2% in urban areas, the situation gets skewed as only 38% of the rural households have access to secondary school as compared to 70% in the urban areas on similar parameters.
4. While accessibility to a neighbourhood school at the primary level is not an issue in rural areas, the gross attendance ratio is also satisfactory with nearly 100% of boys and girls in rural as well as urban areas attending classes. However, in sync with reduced accessibility, there is a gap at the secondary level between rural and urban settings. The all India literacy rate among persons aged 7

years and above is 77.7%. However, for the same age group, rural literacy is 73.5% and for urban areas it is, 87.7%.

5. The digital divide between rural and urban households is stark with just 4% of the rural population having access to computers. The report highlighted that while only 15% surveyed population in the rural cluster has internet access, 42% of the students in the urban areas have access to the internet.
6. At school level while the majority of the urban households had shown a preference for private schools, it's the opposite for rural households. The report highlights that 76.1% of the rural children are attending primary and middle school run by the government, while only 38% of the urban children are attending government schools. However, for graduate and above studies, 49.7% rural students are attending classes in government institutions as compared to 41% of the urban counterparts in government institutions.

STARK DIVIDE IN SECONDARY EDUCATION



Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, which organization revealed the trends in the rural-urban education gap?
 - (a) Ministry of Education
 - (b) National Statistical Office
 - (c) Digital India Council
 - (d) Rural Development Bank
- ii. Based on the data in Paragraph 6, which of the following statements about school preferences is correct?
 - (i) 76.1% of rural children attend government-run primary schools.
 - (ii) 38% of urban children attend government-run primary schools.
 - (iii) Rural students avoid government institutions for graduate studies.

- (iv) Urban households generally prefer private schools over government ones.

Choose the correct option:

- (a) (i) and (ii) (b) (ii) and (iv)
(c) (i), (ii), and (iv) (d) (iii) and (iv)

- iii. How does the accessibility of secondary schools in rural areas compare to that of primary schools, and what specific percentage represents rural secondary access?

- iv. Which of the following figures represents the annual average expenditure per student at the Secondary Level in urban areas?

- (a) ₹5,856 (b) ₹9,148
(c) ₹17,518 (d) ₹23,832

- v. **Assertion (A):** There is a significant “digital divide” between rural and urban education settings.

Reason (R): Internet access is available to 42% of urban students, whereas only 15% of the rural surveyed population has access.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
(b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
(c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
(d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

- vi. Complete the following Analogy based on the computer access data provided in the infographic:
Urban Households : 23% :: Rural Households : _____

- vii. Explain the change in the proportion of students attending government institutions when moving from the school level to graduate-level studies.

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the infographic:
The annual average expenditure for a student at the Senior Secondary level in a rural area is ₹9,148.

- ix. What is the all-India literacy rate among persons aged 7 years and above, as mentioned in Paragraph 4?

- x. According to the infographic, what is the literacy rate for the urban population aged 7 and above?

Ans :

- i. (b) National Statistical Office.
ii. (c) (i), (ii), and (iv) [Paragraph 6 states nearly half

of rural students stay in government institutions for graduate studies].

- iii. Primary school access is high in rural areas (92.7% within 1 km), but accessibility “gets skewed” at the secondary level, where only 38% of rural households have access compared to 70% in urban areas.

- iv. (c) ₹17,518.

- v. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).

- vi. 4%

- vii. At the school level, rural students heavily favor government institutions (76.1%) while urban students do not (38%). However, at the graduate level, the gap narrows significantly, with 49.7% of rural students and 41% of urban students attending government institutions.

- viii. True.

- ix. 77.7%.

- x. 87.7%.

4. Read the following passage carefully:

1. In 2023, India achieved a significant demographic milestone, surpassing China to become the world's most populous nation. This monumental shift brings both immense opportunities and formidable challenges. A large population is a powerful resource, but it also places significant strain on a nation's infrastructure and resources. How India navigates this reality will shape its future for decades to come.

2. A key concept in this discussion is the “demographic dividend.” This refers to the potential for accelerated economic growth when a country's working-age population is large and the dependency ratio—the proportion of non-working people (children and the elderly)—is low. A low median age, the age that divides the population into two equal halves, is often an indicator of a country's potential to benefit from this dividend.

3. The primary opportunity for India lies in its youthful population. A large, young, and aspirational workforce can drive innovation, boost consumption, and attract foreign investment, potentially turning India into a global economic powerhouse. This “youth bulge” provides a window of opportunity that many developed nations, with their ageing populations, no longer have.

4. However, the challenges are equally significant. The foremost challenge is generating sufficient employment for the millions of young people

entering the workforce each year. Without adequate jobs and the right skills, the demographic dividend can quickly turn into a demographic disaster, leading to unemployment and social unrest. Furthermore, a large population exerts immense pressure on essential resources like water, food, energy, and housing.

5. The table below provides a snapshot of the demographic landscape of five key countries, highlighting the unique position India holds with its combination of a massive population and a relatively low median age compared to other major economies.

Demographic Snapshot of Select Countries (2024 Estimates)

Country	Population (approx.)	Median Age (years)
India	1.44 billion	28.2
China	1.42 billion	39.0
USA	341 million	38.5
Nigeria	230 million	17.2
Japan	123 million	49.5

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage and data table:

- i. Which of the following statements about India's demographic shift in 2023 is true based on the passage?
 - (a) It surpassed the USA in total population.
 - (b) It became the world's most populous nation.
 - (c) It achieved a zero dependency ratio milestone.
 - (d) It solved its national infrastructure strain.
- ii. Based on the table, compare the demographic profiles of India and China. What is the approximate difference in their median ages, and what does this suggest about their workforces?
- iii. Complete the following sentence based on the definition provided in the text:
The "demographic dividend" is the potential for accelerated economic growth that occurs when the proportion of non-working people, also known as the _____, is low.
- iv. Which country from the data table represents the most extreme "ageing population" that developed nations are currently facing?
 - (a) USA
 - (b) Nigeria
 - (c) China
 - (d) Japan

- v. **Assertion (A):** A low median age is a critical indicator of a country's potential to benefit from a demographic dividend.

Reason (R): A lower median age represents a larger proportion of young people who can drive innovation and attract foreign investment.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

- vi. Explain the specific conditions under which a "youth bulge" might transition from an economic opportunity into a "demographic disaster."

- vii. Based on the 2024 Estimates table, which nation has a population of approximately 341 million?

- viii. Consider the following statements based on the data table:

- (i) Nigeria has the lowest median age among the listed countries.
- (ii) India's population is currently estimated at 1.44 billion.
- (iii) The USA has a younger median age than China.

Which of the above is/are correct?

- (a) Only (i)
- (b) (i) and (ii)
- (c) (ii) and (iii)
- (d) (i), (ii), and (iii)

- ix. State whether the following statement is True or False:

According to the passage, a large population is purely a strain on resources and does not offer any potential benefits to a nation.

- x. According to the passage, what is the primary challenge regarding the millions of young people entering the workforce annually?

Ans :

- i. (b) It became the world's most populous nation.
- ii. The difference in median age is approximately 10.8 years (39.0 for China vs 28.2 for India). This suggests that India has a much younger, more aspirational workforce, whereas China faces an ageing population that may hinder future economic growth.
- iii. dependency ratio
- iv. (d) Japan (with a median age of 49.5 years).
- v. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).

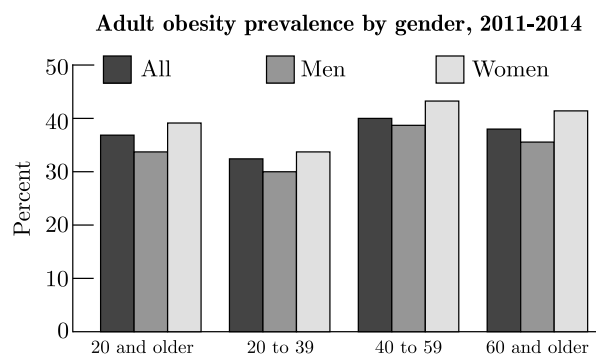
- vi. A youth bulge becomes a demographic disaster if the country fails to generate sufficient employment for the millions entering the workforce. Without adequate jobs and proper skill development, this can lead to widespread unemployment, poverty, and social unrest.
- vii. USA (United States of America).
- viii. (d) (i), (ii), and (iii) [Nigeria is 17.2; India is 1.44bn; USA (38.5) is younger than China (39.0)].
- ix. False (The passage mentions it is also a “powerful resource”).
- x. Generating sufficient employment and ensuring they have the right skills.

5. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Obesity has been defined as a Body Mass Index (BMI) greater than 30 kg/m², with extreme obesity defined as a BMI greater than 40 kg/m². Obesity is rapidly becoming the leading cause of preventable death in the United States, with obesity-related deaths projected to soon surpass deaths related to tobacco abuse. The incidence of obesity has doubled in the United States since 1960, with one-third of the adult population currently obese. Perhaps more alarming is the increase in overweight children; over the past 25 years, this rate has risen from 6% to 19%.
2. Obesity is the next major epidemiologic challenge facing today’s doctors, with the annual allocation of healthcare resources for the disease and related comorbidities projected to exceed \$150 billion in the United States. The incidence of obesity has risen in the United States over the past 30 years; 60% of adults are currently either obese or overweight. Obesity is associated with a higher incidence of a number of diseases, including diabetes, cardiovascular disease and cancer. Consumption of fast food, Trans Fatty Acids (TFAs), and fructose-combined with increasing portion sizes and decreased physical activity-has been implicated as a potential contributing factor in the obesity crisis.
3. The use of Body Mass Index (BMI) alone is of limited utility for predicting adverse cardiovascular outcomes, but the utility of this measure may be strengthened when combined with waist circumference and other anthropomorphic measurements. Certain public health initiatives have helped to identify and reduce some of the factors contributing to obesity.
4. In New York City and Denmark, for example, such initiatives have succeeded in passing legislation to reduce or remove TFAs from residents’ diets.

The obesity epidemic will likely change practice for gastroenterologists, as shifts will be seen in the incidence of obesity-related gastrointestinal disorders, disease severity and the nature of comorbidities. The experience gained with previous epidemiologic problems such as smoking should help involved parties to expand needed health initiatives and increase the likelihood of preventing future generations from suffering the consequences of obesity.

NODIA



Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what is the specific threshold for “extreme obesity” as measured by Body Mass Index (BMI)?
 - (a) Greater than 25 kg/m²
 - (b) Greater than 30 kg/m²
 - (c) Greater than 35 kg/m²
 - (d) Greater than 40 kg/m²
- ii. Based on the bar chart provided, which of the following statements about obesity prevalence is correct?
 - (i) The “20 to 39” age group has the lowest prevalence among all groups.
 - (ii) Women consistently show a higher prevalence of obesity than men.
 - (iii) Men in the “40 to 59” group have a higher prevalence than those in “60 and older.”
 - (iv) Prevalence for “All” adults is exactly 50% in the “20 and older” category.

Choose the correct option:

 - (a) (i) and (ii)
 - (b) (ii) and (iv)
 - (c) (i), (ii), and (iii)
 - (d) (iii) and (iv)
- iii. **Assertion (A):** BMI is considered a measure of limited utility when used alone to predict adverse cardiovascular outcomes.
Reason (R): The predictive power of BMI is significantly strengthened when it is combined with

waist circumference and other anthropomorphic measurements.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 - (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 - (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.
- iv. Complete the following Analogy based on the statistics provided in Paragraph 1:
Overweight Children (25 Years Ago) : 6% ::
Overweight Children (Current) : -----
- v. Analyze the contributing factors to the obesity crisis mentioned in Paragraph 2. How have portion sizes and physical activity levels changed?
- vi. Which of the following describes the successful public health initiative taken by New York City and Denmark?
- (a) Banning fast food outlets.
 - (b) Reducing Trans Fatty Acids.
 - (c) Mandatory daily exercise.
 - (d) Increasing portion costs.
- vii. Identify the three specific major diseases associated with a higher incidence of obesity as listed in the second paragraph.
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the bar chart:
In the “60 and older” age group, the obesity prevalence for women is approximately 42%.
- ix. According to the second paragraph, what is the projected annual allocation of healthcare resources for obesity and its comorbidities in the U.S.?
- x. According to the bar chart, what is the approximate percentage of obesity prevalence for men in the “40 to 59” age group?
- Ans :
- i. (d) Greater than 40 kg/m².
 - ii. (c) (i), (ii), and (iii) [The “20 and older” bar for “All” is well below the 40% mark, not 50%].
 - iii. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - iv. 19%
 - v. Portions have increased in size, while physical activity levels have decreased. These changes, alongside the consumption of fast food and trans fats, are implicated as major contributing factors

to the obesity crisis.

- vi. (b) Reducing Trans Fatty Acids (TFAs).
- vii. Diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and cancer.
- viii. True (The bar for women in that category sits just above the 40% line).
- ix. \$150 billion.
- x. Approximately 39% (The bar sits just below the 40% line).

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

6. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Literacy, the ability to read and write, is one of the most fundamental skills for an individual and a key indicator of a nation’s socio-economic development. A country’s literacy rate directly impacts its human development, economic growth, and public health. It empowers individuals, opens doors to opportunities, and enables them to participate fully in society.
2. The benefits of a literate population are immense. At an individual level, literacy is a gateway to further learning and securing better employment, leading to improved livelihoods. At the national level, a higher literacy rate is strongly correlated with a more skilled workforce, lower poverty levels, and better health and hygiene awareness. It is the foundation upon which a modern, progressive society is built.
3. A critical aspect of literacy analysis is the gender gap—the difference in literacy rates between men and women. In many societies, due to historical and social factors, girls have had less access to education than boys. Closing this gap is a crucial goal for development. Educating women has a powerful multiplier effect, as literate mothers are more likely to ensure their own children are educated and healthy, benefiting the entire community.
4. In India, significant progress has been made in improving literacy since independence through various government initiatives like the National Literacy Mission and Sarva Shiksha Abhiyan. However, the progress is not uniform across the country. There are wide disparities in literacy rates between different states, as well as between urban and rural areas.
5. The table below, based on census data, presents the literacy rates for five Indian states, highlighting these regional variations and the persistent gender gap.

Literacy Rates in Select Indian States (%)

State	Overall Literacy Rate	Male Literacy Rate	Female Literacy Rate
Kerala	94.0	96.1	92.1
Delhi	86.2	90.9	80.8
Maharashtra	82.3	88.4	75.9
Uttar Pradesh	67.7	77.3	57.2
Bihar	61.8	71.2	51.5

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage and data table:

- i. According to the first paragraph, how does a country's literacy rate influence its national development?
 - (a) It decreases the overall population count.
 - (b) It impacts economic growth and public health.
 - (c) It provides data on the nation's military strength.
 - (d) It primarily tracks the geographical expansion of cities.
- ii. **Assertion (A):** Literacy is considered the foundation of a modern and progressive society.
Reason (R): A literate population leads to a more skilled workforce, lower poverty levels, and better health awareness.
 - (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 - (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 - (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.
- iii. Based on the passage, explain the "multiplier effect" of educating women and why it is critical for community development.
- iv. Complete the following sentence based on the information in Paragraph 4:
 In India, regional disparities in literacy exist not only between different states but also between _____ areas.
- v. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the data table:
 In every state listed, the male literacy rate is numerically higher than the female literacy rate.
- vi. Which of the following represents the correct

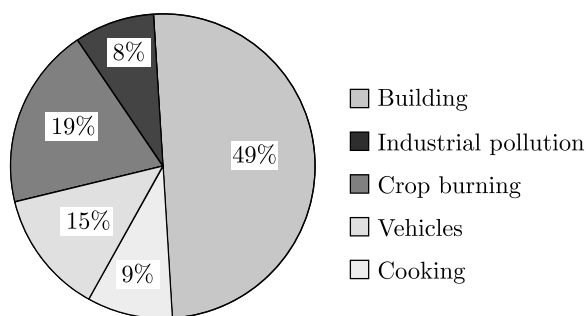
ranking of states from highest to lowest overall literacy rate?

- (a) Kerala > Maharashtra > Delhi > Bihar > Uttar Pradesh
 - (b) Kerala > Delhi > Maharashtra > Uttar Pradesh > Bihar
 - (c) Kerala > Delhi > Uttar Pradesh > Maharashtra > Bihar
 - (d) Bihar > Uttar Pradesh > Maharashtra > Delhi > Kerala
- vii. Analyze the data for Uttar Pradesh and Bihar. Which state has a larger "gender gap" (the difference between male and female literacy), and what does this indicate?
 - viii. According to the provided census data table, what is the specific overall literacy rate recorded for Maharashtra?
 - ix. Based on the table, which state has the lowest female literacy rate among the five listed?
 - x. Match the state with its Male Literacy Rate as per the table:
 Delhi : 90.9% :: Bihar : _____
 (a) 51.5% (b) 61.8%
 (c) 71.2% (d) 77.3%
 Ans :
 - i. (b) It impacts economic growth and public health.
 - ii. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - iii. Educating women creates a multiplier effect because literate mothers are significantly more likely to ensure their own children are educated and healthy. This chain reaction improves literacy and health standards across the entire community, leading to long-term socio-economic progress.
 - iv. urban and rural
 - v. True (Males have higher percentages in all listed rows).
 - vi. (b) Kerala (94.0) > Delhi (86.2) > Maharashtra (82.3) > Uttar Pradesh (67.7) > Bihar (61.8).
 - vii. Uttar Pradesh has a gender gap of 20.1% (77.3 - 57.2), while Bihar has a gap of 19.7% (71.2 - 51.5). The larger gap in Uttar Pradesh indicates more significant historical or social barriers preventing women from accessing education compared to men.
 - viii. 82.3%
 - ix. Bihar (51.5%)
 - x. (c) 71.2%

7. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Air pollution affects health seriously. Of the most polluted 30 cities in the world, 21 were in India in 2019. As per a 2016 study, at least 140 million Indians breathe air that is 10 times or more over the WHO safe limit and 13 of the world's 20 cities with the highest annual levels of air pollution are in India.
2. Air pollution kills 2 million Indians prematurely every year. Emissions come from vehicles and industry, whereas in rural areas, much of the pollution stems from biomass burning for cooking and keeping warm. In autumn and winter months, large scale crop residue burning in farms — a cheaper alternative to mechanical tilling — is a major source of smoke, smog and particulate pollution.
3. India has a low per capita emissions of greenhouse gases but the country as a whole is the third largest greenhouse gas producer after China and the United States. A 2013 study on non-smokers has found that have 30% have weaker lung function than Europeans.
4. The Air (Prevention and Control of Pollution) Act, 1981 has failed to reduce or regulate pollution because of poor enforcement of the rules

Sources of Air Pollution



5. In 2015, GOI, together with IIT Kanpur launched the National Air Quality Index. In 2019, India launched 'The National Clean Air Programme' with tentative national target of 20%–30% reduction in PM_{2.5} and PM₁₀ concentrations by 2024, considering 2017 as the base year for comparison. It will be rolled out in 102 cities that are considered to have air quality worse than the National Ambient Air Quality Standards.
6. There are other initiatives such as a 1,600 kilometre-long and 5 kilometre-wide The Great Green Wall of Aravalli-an ecological corridor along Aravalli range from Gujarat to Shivalik Hills with the planting of 1.35 billion native trees over 10 years to combat the pollution.
7. In 2019, IIT Bombay, in partnership with the McKelvey School of Engineering (USA), launched the Aerosol and Air Quality Research Facility to study air pollution in India.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what is the specific geographic challenge India faces regarding global air pollution statistics?
 - (a) It contains all of the world's 30 most polluted cities.
 - (b) It is home to 21 of the top 30 most polluted cities.
 - (c) It has the highest annual pollution levels in every city.
 - (d) It is the second-largest producer of greenhouse gases.
- ii. Based on the pie chart, which of the following statements about the sources of air pollution are correct?
 - (i) "Building" is the single largest contributor at 49%.
 - (ii) "Industrial pollution" contributes more than "Crop burning."
 - (iii) "Vehicles" and "Cooking" combined contribute 24%.
 - (iv) "Crop burning" is responsible for exactly 19% of pollution.

Choose the correct option:

 - (a) (i) and (ii)
 - (b) (i), (iii), and (iv)
 - (c) (ii) and (iv)
 - (d) (iii) and (iv)
- iii. **Assertion (A):** The National Clean Air Programme (NCAP) was launched with a tentative target to reduce particulate matter by 2024.
Reason (R): The program aims for a 20%–30% reduction in PM_{2.5} and PM₁₀ concentrations compared to the 2017 base year.
 - (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 - (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 - (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.
- iv. Identify the combined percentage of air pollution caused by "Vehicles" and "Industrial pollution" according to the chart, and explain one initiative mentioned in the text to combat such pollution.

- v. Which source of pollution shown in the pie chart accounts for exactly 15% of the total?
- (a) Crop burning (b) Industrial pollution
(c) Vehicles (d) Cooking

vi. Analyze the role of “The Great Green Wall of Aravalli.” How many native trees are planned for this project, and what is its total intended length?

vii. The passage notes that the Air Act of 1981 failed to reduce pollution primarily due to:

- (a) Lack of scientific data.
(b) Poor enforcement of rules.
(c) High costs of tilling.
(d) Lack of public awareness.

viii. Complete the following sentence based on the pie chart data:

According to the chart, “Building” activities contribute _____ of the total air pollution, which is the highest among all listed categories.

ix. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The pie chart shows that “Crop burning” causes a higher percentage of air pollution than “Vehicles” and “Cooking” combined.

x. According to the passage, how many premature deaths in India are attributed to air pollution annually?

Ans :

- i. (b) It is home to 21 of the top 30 most polluted cities.
- ii. (b) (i), (iii), and (iv) [Industrial pollution is 8%, while crop burning is 19%].
- iii. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- iv. According to the chart, the combined percentage is 17% (9% from vehicles + 8% from industrial pollution). One initiative mentioned to combat pollution is the National Clean Air Programme, which targets a significant reduction in particulate matter across 102 affected cities.
- v. (c) Vehicles.
- vi. The Great Green Wall of Aravalli is an ecological corridor spanning 1,600 kilometers. It involves the planting of 1.35 billion native trees over a 10-year period to create a green barrier against pollution.
- vii. (b) Poor enforcement of rules.
- viii. 49%

ix. False [Crop burning is 19%; Vehicles (15%) + Cooking (9%) = 24%].

x. 2 million.

8. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Diabetes is a chronic (long-lasting) health condition that affects how your body turns the food you eat into energy. Most of the food you eat is broken down into sugar, also called glucose, and released into your bloodstream. Your pancreas then releases a hormone called insulin, which acts like a key to let the blood sugar into your body's cells for use as energy. With diabetes, your body either doesn't make enough insulin or can't use the insulin it makes as well as it should.
2. There are mainly two types of diabetes. Type 1 diabetes is an autoimmune reaction where the body attacks itself by mistake and stops making insulin. It is usually diagnosed in children and young adults. Type 2 diabetes, the more common type, is where your body doesn't use insulin well and can't keep blood sugar at normal levels. It develops over many years and is usually diagnosed in adults, though it is now occurring more frequently in younger people.
3. The rise of Type 2 diabetes is closely linked to lifestyle factors. An unhealthy diet high in sugar and processed foods, a lack of regular physical activity, and obesity are major risk factors. This means that for a large number of people, Type 2 diabetes is a preventable condition.
4. Diabetes has become a global health epidemic, but its impact varies across the world. The table below, based on data from the International Diabetes Federation (IDF), shows the estimated number of adults with diabetes in some of the most affected countries, highlighting the scale of the public health challenge.

Estimated Diabetes Prevalence in Adults (2021)

Country	Estimated Number of Adults with Diabetes	Percentage of Adult Population (%)
China	141 million	13.0%
India	74 million	10.4%
Pakistan	33 million	26.7%
USA	32 million	12.3%
Brazil	15 million	9.9%

5. While there is no cure for diabetes, it can be managed effectively through a combination of a healthy lifestyle, regular monitoring of blood sugar levels, and medication or insulin therapy as prescribed by a doctor. The goal is to maintain blood sugar levels within a target range to prevent serious long-term health complications.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage and data table:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what is the specific biological role of insulin in the human body?
- It breaks down complex food into glucose molecules.
 - It acts as a key to let blood sugar into the body's cells.
 - It triggers the pancreas to release sugar into the blood.
 - It converts energy directly into processed food particles.
- ii. Differentiate between Type 1 and Type 2 diabetes based on their causes and the typical age groups they affect, as described in the passage.
- iii. **Assertion (A):** Type 2 diabetes is considered a preventable condition for a large number of people worldwide.
Reason (R): The development of Type 2 diabetes is closely linked to modifiable lifestyle factors like diet and physical activity.
- Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 - (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 - (A) is false, but (R) is true.
- iv. Complete the following sentence with reference to the risk factors mentioned in Paragraph 3:
 The rise of Type 2 diabetes is primarily driven by a lack of regular physical activity, obesity, and a diet high in sugar and _____.
- v. Based on the 2021 IDF data table, which of the following statements is/are correct?
- China has the highest absolute number of adults living with diabetes.
 - Pakistan has the highest percentage of its adult population affected by diabetes.
 - Brazil has more adults with diabetes than the USA.

- India's diabetes percentage is lower than that of the USA.

Choose the correct option:

- (i) and (ii)
- (ii) and (iv)
- (i), (ii), and (iv)
- (i), (iii), and (iv)

- vi. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the data table:
 According to the 2021 estimates, the percentage of the adult population with diabetes in India is higher than the percentage in the USA.
- vii. Based on the table, which country has approximately 32 million adults living with diabetes, representing 12.3% of its population?
- viii. Compare the diabetes prevalence in Pakistan and China using the data table. Why is it important to look at both the "Estimated Number" and the "Percentage" when assessing the health challenge?
- ix. According to the final paragraph, what is the primary goal of managing diabetes if a complete cure is currently unavailable?
- x. In the context of the passage, "glucose" is best defined as:
- A harmful toxin
 - A pancreatic hormone
 - Sugar used for energy
 - A type of medication
- Ans :
- It acts as a key to let blood sugar into the body's cells.
- ii. Type 1 diabetes is an autoimmune reaction where the body stops making insulin, usually diagnosed in children. Type 2 is more common, occurring when the body uses insulin poorly; it develops over years and is typically diagnosed in adults, though younger cases are rising.
- iii. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- iv. processed foods
- v. (c) (i), (ii), and (iv) [China: 141m; Pakistan: 26.7%; India: 10.4% vs USA: 12.3%].
- vi. False (India's percentage is 10.4%, which is lower than the USA's 12.3%).
- vii. USA (United States of America).
- viii. While China has the highest absolute number (141 million), Pakistan has a much higher percentage (26.7%). This highlights that while China has a larger total burden, the density of the crisis is more severe in Pakistan, where over a quarter of adults are affected.

- ix. To maintain blood sugar levels within a target range to prevent serious long-term complications.
- x. (c) Sugar used for energy (derived from the breakdown of food).

9. Read the following passage carefully:

1. The world's demand for energy is constantly growing, but the way we have traditionally produced it, by burning fossil fuels like coal, oil, and natural gas, has led to significant environmental problems like air pollution and climate change. These sources are non-renewable, meaning they are finite and will eventually run out. In response, the world is increasingly turning to renewable energy—energy derived from sources that are naturally replenished, such as sunlight, wind, and water.
2. There are several key types of renewable energy. Solar power is generated by capturing sunlight using photovoltaic (PV) panels. Wind power harnesses the kinetic energy of the wind using large turbines to spin a generator. Hydropower, one of the oldest forms of renewable energy, uses the force of flowing water, typically from a dam, to generate electricity. These sources are clean, producing little to no greenhouse gas emissions.
3. The transition to renewable energy is crucial for several reasons. Primarily, it is our most effective tool in the fight against climate change. By replacing fossil fuels, we can drastically reduce the carbon dioxide emissions that are warming our planet. This shift also leads to improved public health due to cleaner air and enhances a nation's energy security by reducing its dependence on a limited supply of imported fuels.
4. India has emerged as a global leader in the renewable energy sector, with ambitious goals and rapid expansion. The country's progress is a clear indicator of its commitment to a sustainable future. The table below shows the growth of India's installed renewable energy capacity over several years.

Growth of India's Installed Renewable Energy Capacity

Fiscal Year	Installed Capacity (in Gigawatts - GW)
2018-19	78 GW
2020-21	94 GW
2022-23	125 GW
2024-25 (Target)	175 GW

5. Despite this impressive growth, the transition is not without challenges. One of the biggest hurdles for solar and wind power is intermittency—the sun doesn't shine at night, and the wind doesn't always blow. This requires the development of better energy storage solutions, like batteries, and smarter power grids to ensure a consistent supply of electricity.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage and data table:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what is the most significant drawback of relying on fossil fuels for energy?
 - (a) They are too expensive to extract.
 - (b) They cause environmental problems.
 - (c) They are difficult to transport.
 - (d) They require very complex grids.
- ii. Based on the descriptions of renewable sources in Paragraph 2, which of the following are correctly matched with their energy source?
 - (i) Solar Power — Photovoltaic (PV) panels
 - (ii) Wind Power — Large spinning turbines
 - (iii) Hydropower — Kinetic energy of wind
 - (iv) Fossil Fuels — Naturally replenished
 Choose the correct option:
 - (a) (i) and (ii)
 - (b) (ii) and (iii)
 - (c) (i) and (iv)
 - (d) (iii) and (iv)
- iii. Identify the two primary reasons mentioned in the passage for the global transition toward renewable energy and explain how they benefit a nation.
- iv. Which of the following statements about India's renewable energy capacity is TRUE according to the data table?
 - (a) Capacity decreased in 2020.
 - (b) The 2018 capacity was 94 GW.
 - (c) The 2024 target is 175 GW.
 - (d) Growth has stopped after 2022.
- v. Complete the following sentence based on the technical challenges discussed in Paragraph 5:
The issue of solar and wind power not being available consistently at all times is known as _____.
- vi. Calculate the growth in India's installed capacity between the fiscal years 2020-21 and 2022-23. What does this trend indicate about India's energy goals?
Ans :

vii. The word “ambitious” as used in Paragraph 4 most nearly means:

- (a) Very difficult
- (b) Highly determined
- (c) Slowly evolving
- (d) Purely accidental

viii. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the passage:

Hydropower is considered a relatively new and modern invention in the field of renewable energy.

ix. According to the data table, what was the installed renewable energy capacity in India during the fiscal year 2018-19?

x. Name two specific types of energy storage solutions mentioned in the passage that help manage the problem of intermittency.

Ans :

- i. (b) They cause environmental problems.
- ii. (a) (i) and (ii) [Hydropower uses water, and fossil fuels are not naturally replenished].
- iii. The two primary reasons are fighting climate change and enhancing energy security. Reducing carbon emissions slows global warming and improves public health, while using domestic renewable sources reduces a nation's risky dependence on limited, expensive, and often imported fossil fuel supplies.
- iv. (c) The 2024 target is 175 GW.
- v. intermittency
- vi. The growth was 31 GW (125 GW minus 94 GW). This rapid upward trend indicates that India is aggressively pursuing its commitment to a sustainable future and is successfully expanding its green infrastructure to meet its high environmental targets.
- vii. (b) Highly determined.
- viii. False (The passage states it is “one of the oldest forms”).
- ix. 78 GW
- x. Batteries and smarter power grids.

10. Read the following passage carefully:

1. The Indian Railways is more than just a mode of transport; it is the lifeline of the nation and an integral part of India's history. Since its inception with the first passenger train journey in 1853 between Bori Bunder (Mumbai) and Thane, the railway network has been a powerful force for national integration and economic development, connecting the vast and

diverse corners of the country.

- 2. The sheer scale of the Indian Railways is staggering. It is one of the largest railway networks in the world, with a route length of over 68,000 kilometres. To put this in perspective, this is enough track to circle the Earth more than one and a half times. It is a colossal operation that runs more than 13,000 passenger trains and over 9,000 freight trains daily, making it a constant, pulsing artery of the nation.
- 3. Economically, the railways are a critical engine of growth. The freight service is indispensable for the country's industry and agriculture, transporting huge quantities of essential goods like coal, steel, cement, and food grains. Furthermore, Indian Railways is one of the largest employers in the world, providing livelihoods to millions of people, both directly and indirectly.
- 4. The social impact of the railways is equally profound. It is the most affordable and accessible mode of long-distance travel for the common person in India. Every day, it carries an astounding 23 million passengers—a number equivalent to the entire population of Australia. By enabling people from different regions, cultures, and economic backgrounds to travel and interact, the railways have played a vital role in weaving the social fabric of the nation.
- 5. Looking to the future, Indian Railways is undergoing a significant transformation. There is a massive push towards modernization, with a focus on electrification of its network to reduce its carbon footprint. The introduction of high-speed trains like the Vande Bharat Express and the implementation of advanced safety systems and better passenger amenities are all part of the vision to create a world-class, efficient, and sustainable railway system for a new India.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what is the historical significance of the Indian Railways beyond being a mode of transport?
 - (a) It was the first industry to use electricity.
 - (b) It acted as a force for national integration.
 - (c) It was designed solely for the Bori Bunder area.
 - (d) It replaced all other forms of local travel.
- ii. Based on the scale described in Paragraph 2, which of the following statements is TRUE?
 - (a) The route length is exactly 13,000 kilometres.

- (b) The network can circle the Earth five times.
- (c) Over 13,000 passenger trains run every day.
- (d) Freight trains outnumber passenger trains daily.

iii. Analyze the economic and social impact of the Indian Railways as described in Paragraphs 3 and 4. How does it serve as both an “engine of growth” and a “social fabric”?

iv. Consider the following statements regarding the passenger statistics of Indian Railways:

- (i) It carries approximately 23 million passengers every single day.
- (ii) Its daily passenger count is nearly equal to Australia’s population.
- (iii) High-speed travel is currently the only way to reach 23 million.
- (iv) Long-distance travel remains expensive for the common person.

Which of the above are correct based on the passage?

- (a) (i) and (iv) (b) (i) and (ii)
- (c) (ii) and (iii) (d) (iii) and (iv)

v. Identify the year of India’s first passenger train journey and name the specific goods mentioned in the text that are transported via the freight service.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

vi. The word “indispensable” as used in the third paragraph most nearly means:

- (a) Highly complicated
- (b) Absolutely necessary
- (c) Extremely expensive
- (d) Largely unimportant

vii. Complete the following sentence based on the modernization goals discussed in the final paragraph:

A major focus of the current transformation is the _____ of the network to help reduce its total carbon footprint.

viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The Indian Railways is one of the world’s largest employers, providing livelihoods both directly and indirectly.

ix. In which specific year did the first passenger train journey between Bori Bunder and Thane take place?

x. According to the passage, what is the total route length of the Indian Railways network in kilometres?

Ans :

- i. (b) It acted as a force for national integration.
- ii. (c) Over 13,000 passenger trains run every day.
- iii. Economically, the railways drive growth by acting as a major global employer and transporting essential industrial goods like coal and steel. Socially, it acts as a “social fabric” by providing affordable long-distance travel, allowing 23 million daily passengers from diverse backgrounds to interact and connect.
- iv. (b) (i) and (ii) [Paragraph 4 states travel is affordable, not expensive].
- v. The first passenger train journey occurred in 1853. The freight service is responsible for transporting essential goods such as coal, steel, cement, and food grains, which are vital for the nation’s industrial and agricultural sectors.
- vi. (b) Absolutely necessary.
- vii. electrification
- viii. True
- ix. 1853
- x. Over 68,000 kilometres.

11. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Tourism is the act of travelling to a place for pleasure, recreation, or business. It is one of the world’s largest industries and a significant driver of economic growth for many countries, including India. With its rich history, diverse cultures, and stunning natural landscapes, India offers a vast range of attractions for travellers. The tourism sector is a major source of employment and foreign exchange earnings for the nation.
2. The economic impact of tourism is profound due to its multiplier effect. When a tourist spends money on a hotel, that money doesn’t just benefit the hotel owner. The hotel uses it to pay its staff, buy supplies from local farmers, and hire local services. These employees and suppliers, in turn, spend their earnings in the local economy, creating a chain reaction that supports a wide array of jobs far beyond the core tourism industry.
3. India caters to a wide variety of tourist interests. Cultural and heritage tourism draws people to iconic monuments like the Taj Mahal and the ancient temples of the south. Eco-tourism offers experiences in national parks and wildlife sanctuaries. In recent years, medical tourism has

grown, with people travelling to India for high-quality, affordable healthcare, while religious tourism attracts millions of pilgrims to sacred sites.

4. Despite its benefits, the tourism industry is highly vulnerable to external shocks. Global events such as economic recessions, political instability, and public health crises can have an immediate and severe impact on travel. The table below shows the number of foreign tourist arrivals (FTAs) to India and starkly illustrates the effect of the COVID-19 pandemic, which brought global travel to a near standstill in 2020 and 2021.

Foreign Tourist Arrivals (FTAs) in India

Year	Foreign Tourist Arrivals (in millions)
2018	10.56
2019	10.93
2020	2.74
2021	1.52
2022	6.19

5. To boost this vital sector, the Government of India has run promotional campaigns like “Incredible India” to showcase the country’s attractions on a global stage. Efforts are also continuously made to improve infrastructure, such as airports and roads, and to ensure the safety and security of all tourists. The data for 2022 shows the beginning of a recovery as global travel restrictions eased.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage and data table:

- i. Based on the first paragraph, why is the tourism sector considered a vital industry for the Indian nation?
 - (a) It reduces the total population.
 - (b) It provides jobs and foreign exchange.
 - (c) It eliminates the need for airports.
 - (d) It prevents cultural diversity.
- ii. Which of the following statements about the “multiplier effect” is CORRECT according to the passage?
 - (i) It only benefits the owners of large hotels.
 - (ii) It creates a chain reaction in the local economy.
 - (iii) It supports jobs far beyond the core tourism industry.
 - (iv) It refers to the doubling of tourist arrivals annually.

Choose the correct option:

- (a) (i) and (iv)
- (b) (ii) and (iii)
- (c) (i) and (ii)
- (d) (iii) and (iv)

- iii. Explain the concept of the “multiplier effect” in tourism and how a single tourist’s expenditure reaches local farmers and service providers.

- iv. According to the data table, in which year did India experience the most significant decline in Foreign Tourist Arrivals (FTAs)?

- (a) 2019
- (b) 2020
- (c) 2021
- (d) 2022

- v. Identify the year in the table that recorded exactly 10.93 million arrivals and explain what the subsequent data for 2020 and 2021 suggests about the industry’s stability.

- vi. The word “vulnerable” as used in Paragraph 4 most nearly means:

- (a) Highly profitable
- (b) Easily affected
- (c) Widely popular
- (d) Extremely rare

- vii. Complete the following Analogy based on the types of tourism discussed in the passage:

National Parks : Eco-tourism :: Affordable Healthcare : _____

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

According to the data table, the tourism sector in 2022 showed a complete recovery to pre-pandemic levels seen in 2018.

- ix. According to the table, what was the total number of foreign tourists who arrived in India during the year 2021?

- x. Name the specific promotional campaign launched by the Government of India to showcase the country’s attractions globally.

Ans :

- i. (b) It provides jobs and foreign exchange.
- ii. (b) (ii) and (iii) [It benefits staff, farmers, and local suppliers through a chain reaction].
- iii. The multiplier effect describes how tourist spending circulates through the economy. When a tourist pays a hotel, that money is used to pay staff and purchase local supplies like food from farmers. Consequently, these employees and suppliers spend their earnings locally, supporting a wide array of secondary jobs.

- iv. (c) 2021 (The arrivals dropped to their lowest point of 1.52 million).
- v. 2019 recorded 10.93 million arrivals. The subsequent data for 2020 and 2021 shows a drastic drop to 2.74 and 1.52 million respectively, suggesting that the tourism industry is highly unstable and susceptible to external shocks like global health crises.
- vi. (b) Easily affected (Susceptible to harm).
- vii. Medical tourism
- viii. False (6.19 million in 2022 is still significantly lower than 10.56 million in 2018).
- ix. 1.52 million
- x. Incredible India.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

12. Read the following passage carefully:

1. In recent years, India has been undergoing a massive transformation in how its citizens handle money. The traditional cash-based economy is rapidly giving way to digital payments—transactions conducted using electronic mediums without the physical exchange of money. This shift has been driven by increased internet and smartphone penetration, government initiatives, and the development of user-friendly payment systems.
2. At the forefront of this revolution is the Unified Payments Interface (UPI). Launched in 2016, UPI is an instant real-time payment system that allows users to link multiple bank accounts into a single mobile application. It enables them to transfer funds, pay bills, and make purchases seamlessly using just their mobile phone. The convenience and security of UPI have made it incredibly popular across the country, from large urban malls to small village shops.
3. The benefits of a “less-cash” economy are numerous. For consumers, it offers unparalleled convenience and reduces the risks associated with carrying cash. For businesses, it streamlines transactions, provides a clear digital record, and broadens their customer base. For the national economy, it increases financial transparency, reduces the costs of printing and managing currency, and helps to curb the flow of unaccounted-for money.
4. The pace of this adoption has been nothing short of phenomenal. The data in the table below illustrates the exponential growth in the volume of UPI transactions, cementing its position as the backbone of India’s digital payment ecosystem.

Volume of UPI Transactions in India

Fiscal Year	Number of Transactions (in billions)
2018-19	5.35
2020-21	22.28
2022-23	83.75
2024-25 (Projected)	150.00

5. Despite this success, challenges remain. Bridging the digital divide between urban and rural areas is crucial to ensure everyone can participate. Improving digital literacy—the skills needed to use digital devices and services confidently—is another priority. Furthermore, as the volume of transactions grows, ensuring robust cybersecurity to protect users from fraud becomes increasingly important.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage and data table:

- i. According to the first paragraph, which of the following is a key driver behind India’s rapid shift toward a digital economy?
 - (a) Decreased use of mobile smartphones.
 - (b) Higher costs of internet data plans.
 - (c) Increased penetration of the internet.
 - (d) Reduction in user-friendly applications.
- ii. Based on the 2016 launch of the Unified Payments Interface (UPI) described in Paragraph 2, which of the following is TRUE?
 - (i) It allows linking multiple bank accounts to one app.
 - (ii) It is used exclusively in large urban shopping malls.
 - (iii) It requires a physical exchange of currency notes.
 - (iv) It functions as an instant, real-time payment system.

Choose the correct option:

 - (a) (i) and (ii)
 - (b) (ii) and (iii)
 - (c) (iii) and (iv)
 - (d) (i) and (iv)
- iii. **Assertion (A):** A “less-cash” economy is beneficial for a nation’s overall financial health.
Reason (R): Digital transactions increase financial transparency and help the government curb the flow of unaccounted money.
 - (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).

- (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.
- iv. Identify two major benefits of digital payments—one for a business owner and one for the national economy—as discussed in Paragraph 3.
- v. According to the data table, what was the recorded volume of UPI transactions in the fiscal year 2022-23?
 (a) 5.35 billion (b) 22.28 billion
 (c) 83.75 billion (d) 150.00 billion
- vi. Analyze the data table from 2018-19 to the 2024-25 projection. Describe the growth trend of UPI transactions and calculate the approximate increase between 2020-21 and 2022-23.
- vii. Complete the following sentence with reference to the challenges mentioned in the final paragraph: The gap in access to technology between different groups, such as urban and rural populations, is referred to as the _____.
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
 As the volume of digital transactions increases, the passage suggests that cybersecurity becomes a less significant priority for the government.

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



- ix. According to the table, what is the projected volume of UPI transactions for the fiscal year 2024-25?
- x. Define the term “digital literacy” as it is used in the context of the concluding paragraph.
 Ans :
 i. (c) Increased penetration of the internet.
 ii. (d) (i) and (iv) [UPI is used in both urban and rural areas and does not use physical cash].
 iii. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 iv. For businesses, digital payments provide a clear digital record and broaden the potential customer base. For the national economy, this shift reduces the high costs associated with printing and managing physical currency while increasing transparency.
- v. (c) 83.75 billion.
- vi. The data shows an exponential growth trend in UPI usage. Between 2020-21 (22.28 billion) and 2022-23 (83.75 billion), the volume increased by approximately 61.47 billion transactions, proving that UPI has become the backbone of India’s payment ecosystem.
- vii. digital divide
- viii. False (The passage states that robust cybersecurity becomes “increasingly important”).
- ix. 150.00 billion
- x. The skills and confidence needed to use digital devices and services effectively.

13. Read the following passage carefully:

- While the Earth is teeming with life, this life is not distributed evenly. Certain regions are exceptionally rich in species, many of which are found nowhere else on the planet. These irreplaceable areas are known as biodiversity hotspots. The concept was developed to identify regions that have high levels of biodiversity and are also under severe threat from human activities, thereby prioritizing them for conservation efforts.
- To qualify as a biodiversity hotspot, a region must meet two strict criteria. First, it must contain a high number of endemic plant species. An endemic species is one that is native to a particular geographic location and is not found anywhere else. Specifically, a hotspot must have at least 1,500 endemic vascular plant species. Second, the region must be threatened, having lost at least 70% of its original natural vegetation.
- These hotspots are critical for global conservation. Although the 36 recognized hotspots cover only 2.5% of the Earth’s land surface, they are home to more than half of the world’s plant species and nearly 43% of its bird, mammal, reptile, and amphibian species as endemics. This means that protecting these relatively small areas can have a disproportionately large impact on safeguarding the planet’s biodiversity.
- India is a country of immense biodiversity and is home to four of these global hotspots. The table below highlights two of them—the Himalayas and the Western Ghats—and compares them with other prominent hotspots around the world based on the richness of their endemic plant life.

Endemic Plant Species in Select Biodiversity Hotspots

Biodiversity Hotspot	Location	Number of Endemic Plant Species (approx.)
The Andes Mountains	South America	20,000
The Western Ghats & Sri Lanka	India/Sri Lanka	3,000
The Himalayas	South Asia (incl. India)	3,160
New Zealand	Oceania	1,865
The Mediterranean Basin	Europe/North Africa	13,000

5. The very reasons these areas are hotspots—high concentrations of unique life and significant habitat loss—also make their conservation a major challenge. They are under constant threat from deforestation, agricultural expansion, pollution, and climate change. Protecting these regions requires a concerted effort from governments, conservation organizations, and local communities.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage and data table:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what was the primary motivation behind the development of the “biodiversity hotspot” concept?
 - (a) To identify regions suitable for industrial growth.
 - (b) To list every existing species on the entire planet.
 - (c) To prioritize regions for global conservation efforts.
 - (d) To promote international tourism in tropical areas.
- ii. Based on the criteria mentioned in Paragraph 2, which of the following must a region possess to be officially classified as a hotspot?
 - (i) At least 1,500 endemic vascular plant species.
 - (ii) More than 70% of its original natural vegetation intact.
 - (iii) Significant loss of at least 70% of its original habitat.
 - (iv) A geographic location situated solely in South America.

Choose the correct option:

- (a) (i) and (ii)
- (b) (ii) and (iv)
- (c) (i) and (iii)
- (d) (iii) and (iv)

- iii. Explain why protecting the 36 recognized biodiversity hotspots is considered a highly efficient global conservation strategy despite their small size.
- iv. Which of the following hotspots listed in the data table has the highest number of endemic plant species?
 - (a) The Himalayas
 - (b) The Andes Mountains
 - (c) The Mediterranean Basin
 - (d) The Western Ghats
- v. Analyze the data for the two Indian hotspots—the Himalayas and the Western Ghats. Based on the table, which has a higher count of endemic plants, and how does this compare to the Mediterranean Basin?
- vi. Complete the following sentence based on the definition provided in the text:
A species that is native to a specific geographic location and is found nowhere else on Earth is known as an _____ species.
- vii. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the data table:
According to the table, New Zealand has a higher number of endemic plant species than the Western Ghats & Sri Lanka.
- viii. The word “concerted” in the final paragraph most nearly means:
 - (a) Coordinated
 - (b) Musical
 - (c) Individual
 - (d) Optional
- ix. According to the data table, what is the approximate number of endemic plant species found in the New Zealand hotspot?
- x. Name one major human-driven threat mentioned in the passage that contributes to the degradation of biodiversity hotspots.

Ans :

- (c) To prioritize regions for global conservation efforts.

- (c) (i) and (iii) [A hotspot must have lost at least 70% of its vegetation, not kept it].

- iii. Although these 36 hotspots cover only 2.5% of the Earth’s land, they house over half the

world's plants and 43% of terrestrial vertebrates as endemics. Protecting these small areas yields a disproportionately large impact on global biodiversity preservation.

- iv. (b) The Andes Mountains (20,000 species).
- v. The Himalayas (3,160) have a slightly higher count of endemic plants than the Western Ghats (3,000). However, both are significantly lower than the Mediterranean Basin, which contains approximately 13,000 endemic species, highlighting vast regional differences in plant richness.
- vi. endemic
- vii. False (New Zealand has 1,865, while the Western Ghats has 3,000).
- viii. (a) Coordinated.
- ix. 1,865
- x. Deforestation/agricultural expansion/pollution/climate change.

14. Read the following passage carefully:

1. The story of India's journey into space is one of ambitious dreams and remarkable achievements. The Indian Space Research Organisation (ISRO), formed in 1969, has grown from humble beginnings to become one of the world's leading space agencies. Its mission has always been to harness space technology for national development, and its success is a testament to the nation's scientific prowess.
2. India's space odyssey began with the launch of its first satellite, Aryabhata, in 1975 with the help of the Soviet Union. To achieve self-reliance, ISRO developed its own launch vehicles. The most successful of these has been the Polar Satellite Launch Vehicle (PSLV). Often called the "workhorse of ISRO," the PSLV has an impressive success rate, with over 50 successful missions. This reliability has made it a preferred choice for other countries, and as of early 2024, it had successfully launched over 400 foreign satellites, earning valuable foreign exchange.
3. ISRO is globally acclaimed for its cost-effective interplanetary missions. The Mars Orbiter Mission (Mangalyaan), launched in 2013, made India the first nation to succeed on its maiden attempt to reach Mars. The entire mission was accomplished at a cost of approximately ₹450 crore (about \$74 million), famously less than the budget of the Hollywood movie 'Gravity'.
4. More recently, the Chandrayaan-3 mission etched India's name in history. On August 23, 2023,

it successfully soft-landed on the lunar surface, making India the fourth country in the world to do so. More significantly, it became the very first country to land near the Moon's challenging south polar region, a feat of incredible precision and engineering.

5. Beyond these high-profile missions, ISRO's work has a direct impact on the lives of ordinary Indians. Its constellation of INSAT satellites is the backbone of the country's telecommunications, television broadcasting, and weather forecasting systems. Data from its remote sensing satellites is crucial for managing natural resources, disaster management, and urban planning. The NavIC satellite navigation system, India's own version of GPS, further enhances national security and self-reliance.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what has been the fundamental guiding mission of ISRO since its inception in 1969?
 - (a) To compete with the budget of Hollywood movies.
 - (b) To harness space technology for national development.
 - (c) To launch more satellites than the Soviet Union.
 - (d) To focus exclusively on lunar exploration.
- ii. Based on the details in Paragraph 2, which of the following statements about the PSLV are correct?
 - (i) It is frequently referred to as the "workhorse of ISRO."
 - (ii) It has successfully launched over 400 foreign satellites.
 - (iii) It was developed with the primary help of the Soviet Union.
 - (iv) It is recognized for its high reliability and success rate.

Choose the correct option:

 - (a) (i), (ii), and (iii)
 - (b) (ii), (iii), and (iv)
 - (c) (i), (ii), and (iv)
 - (d) (i) and (iii)
- iii. Contrast the Mangalyaan mission (2013) with the Chandrayaan-3 mission (2023) in terms of their specific historic achievements on the global stage.
- iv. The word "prowess" as used in the opening paragraph most nearly means:
 - (a) Strategic goals
 - (b) Great expertise
 - (c) Constant growth
 - (d) National pride

- v. **Assertion (A):** The Chandrayaan-3 mission is considered a feat of incredible precision and engineering.

Reason (R): India became the first country in the world to successfully soft-land near the Moon's challenging south polar region.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.
- vi. Identify the approximate cost of the Mangalyaan mission and explain how the passage highlights its cost-effectiveness in comparison to popular culture.
- vii. Complete the following sentence based on the societal applications discussed in Paragraph 5:
 The backbone of India's telecommunications and weather forecasting systems is the constellation of _____ satellites.
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
 The Aryabhata satellite was launched in 1975 using a launch vehicle developed entirely by ISRO.
- ix. As of early 2024, approximately how many foreign satellites had been successfully launched by the PSLV?
- x. On what specific date did Chandrayaan-3 successfully soft-land on the lunar surface?
- Ans :
- i. (b) To harness space technology for national development.
- ii. (c) (i), (ii), and (iv) [Aryabhata used Soviet help, but PSLV was an ISRO development].
- iii. Mangalyaan (2013) made India the first nation to reach Mars on its maiden attempt at a remarkably low cost. Chandrayaan-3 (2023) made India the fourth country to soft-land on the Moon and the very first to reach the Moon's difficult south polar region.
- iv. (b) Great expertise.
- v. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- vi. The Mangalyaan mission cost approximately ₹450 crore (\$74 million). The passage highlights its efficiency by noting that this total budget was famously less than the production budget of the

Hollywood space movie 'Gravity', showcasing ISRO's ability to achieve major scientific milestones economically.

- vii. INSAT
- viii. False (It was launched with the help of the Soviet Union).
- ix. Over 400.
- x. August 23, 2023.

15. Read the following passage carefully:

- Forests are the lungs of our planet, vital ecosystems that support a vast majority of the world's biodiversity and play a crucial role in regulating the global climate. However, these essential ecosystems are under threat from deforestation—the purposeful clearing of forested land on a massive scale. While humans have cleared forests for centuries, the rate of deforestation in the modern era has reached unsustainable levels, leading to severe environmental consequences.
- The primary driver behind global deforestation is agriculture. To feed a growing global population, vast areas of forest are cleared to make way for livestock grazing and to grow crops. In particular, cattle ranching for beef production and the cultivation of commodity crops like palm oil (used in everything from food to cosmetics) and soy (used mainly for animal feed) are major contributors.
- Other activities also play a significant role. Logging, both legal and illegal, fells millions of trees each year for timber and to make paper products. The expansion of cities and infrastructure, or urbanization, and mining operations also require the clearing of large forest areas. The table below breaks down the main global drivers of deforestation by their percentage contribution.

Primary Drivers of Global Deforestation

Cause	Global Percentage Contribution (%)
Beef Production	41%
Logging (for wood/paper)	13%
Palm Oil Production	10%
Soy Production	8%
Other (Urbanization, mining, etc.)	28%

4. The environmental impact of deforestation is profound. Forests act as massive "carbon sinks," meaning they absorb and store enormous amounts

of carbon dioxide (CO₂), a key greenhouse gas. When forests are cut down and burned, this stored carbon is released back into the atmosphere, contributing significantly to climate change.

5. Furthermore, deforestation is a leading cause of biodiversity loss. Forests are home to an estimated 80% of the world's terrestrial species of plants, animals, and insects. When their habitat is destroyed, countless species are pushed towards extinction. The loss of tree cover also leads to soil erosion, as tree roots no longer bind the soil, and disrupts local water cycles, which can lead to changes in rainfall patterns.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage and data table:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what is the primary reason the modern rate of clearing forested land is considered a major crisis?
- It has reached unsustainable levels.
 - It has occurred for many centuries.
 - It is done for purposeful reasons.
 - It only affects the local weather.
- ii. Based on the table and Paragraph 2, which of the following are correctly identified as primary agricultural drivers of deforestation?
- Beef Production (41%)
 - Palm Oil Production (10%)
 - Urbanization and Mining (13%)
 - Soy Production (8%)
- Choose the correct option:
- (i), (ii), and (iii)
 - (i), (ii), and (iv)
 - (ii) and (iii)
 - (iii) and (iv)
- iii. Identify the two major products mentioned in the text that are derived from logging, and explain how the expansion of infrastructure contributes to forest loss.
- iv. Which of the following statements about the drivers of deforestation is TRUE according to the data table?
- Soy production causes more damage than logging.
 - Beef production is the single largest driver at 41%.
 - Palm oil contributes to exactly 18% of forest loss.
 - Logging for wood is the least significant factor.

- v. **Assertion (A):** Forests are often referred to as “carbon sinks” that are vital for regulating the global climate.

Reason (R): Trees absorb and store enormous amounts of carbon dioxide (CO₂), preventing it from warming the atmosphere.

- Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 - (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 - (A) is false, but (R) is true.
- vi. Calculate the combined percentage of global deforestation caused by the production of Palm Oil and Soy. What does this combined figure suggest about commodity crops compared to Beef production?
- vii. The word “profound” as used in the fourth paragraph most nearly means:
- Very intense
 - Slightly visible
 - Hardly noticed
 - Easily reversed
- viii. Complete the following sentence based on the environmental consequences discussed in Paragraph 5:
- The loss of tree cover leads to _____ because tree roots are no longer present to bind the earth together.
- ix. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the data table:
- The category labeled “Other,” which includes urbanization and mining, contributes more to deforestation than logging and soy production combined.
- x. According to the passage, what percentage of the world's terrestrial species rely on forests as their primary habitat?
- Ans :
- (a) It has reached unsustainable levels.
 - (b) (i), (ii), and (iv) [Urbanization is part of “Other,” not 13%].
 - The two major products derived from logging are timber and paper products. Infrastructure expansion, known as urbanization, contributes to deforestation by requiring the clearing of large forest areas to build cities, roads, and other essential public facilities.
 - (b) Beef production is the single largest driver at 41%.

- v. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- vi. The combined percentage is 18% (10% + 8%). While significant, this figure suggests that commodity crops like palm oil and soy contribute less than half of the environmental damage caused by beef production alone (41%).
- vii. (a) Very intense.
- viii. soil erosion
- ix. True ["Other" is 28%; Logging (13%) + Soy (8%) = 21%].
- x. 80%

16. Read the following passage carefully:

- 1 Refrigeration is one of the most transformative technologies of the modern era, fundamentally changing how we store food, transport medicine, and live comfortably. At its core, refrigeration is not the creation of cold, but the process of removing heat from an enclosed space and transferring it to the outside environment. This simple principle is responsible for keeping our food fresh and our homes cool.
- 2 The magic behind this process lies in a special fluid called a refrigerant, which circulates through the refrigerator's system. The technology relies on a key law of physics: when a liquid turns into a gas (evaporation), it absorbs heat from its surroundings. The modern refrigeration cycle, first developed in a practical form by Jacob Perkins in 1834, uses this principle in a continuous loop.
- 3 This process, known as the vapor-compression cycle, has four main stages. First, a compressor squeezes the refrigerant gas, increasing its pressure and temperature. Second, this hot, high-pressure gas flows through coils on the back of the refrigerator (condensation), releasing its heat into the room and turning into a cool liquid. Third, this liquid passes through an expansion valve, where the pressure drops suddenly, causing it to become extremely cold. Finally, this cold liquid flows through coils inside the refrigerator compartment (evaporation), absorbing heat from the food and air, and turning back into a gas. This cycle then repeats.
- 4 This system is designed to maintain specific temperatures for optimal food preservation. The main refrigerator compartment is typically kept between 3°C and 4°C (37°F and 40°F), a temperature range that significantly slows the growth of harmful bacteria. The freezer compartment is maintained at a much colder

temperature, around -18°C (0°F), which stops bacterial growth almost completely, allowing for long-term storage.

- 5 The choice of refrigerant has had significant environmental implications. For much of the 20th century, Chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) were the most common refrigerants. However, in the 1980s, it was discovered that these chemicals were causing severe damage to the Earth's ozone layer. This led to an international ban on CFCs and a shift towards more environmentally friendly refrigerants, highlighting the ongoing challenge of balancing technological advancement with environmental protection.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what is the core scientific process that enables a refrigerator to function?
 - (a) Generating cold air particles internally.
 - (b) Transferring heat from inside to outside.
 - (c) Using electricity to freeze water vapor.
 - (d) Insulating the box from external sunlight.
- ii. Based on the details in Paragraph 2, which of the following statements about the development of refrigeration is TRUE?
 - (a) Jacob Perkins developed a practical system in 1834.
 - (b) The first cooling systems were invented in the 1980s.
 - (c) Refrigerants were first used to create electricity.
 - (d) The modern cycle was discovered by a team in 2024.
- iii. Describe the four main stages of the vapor-compression cycle as explained in Paragraph 3. How does the refrigerant change state during this process?
- iv. Which of the following correctly identifies the ideal temperature for a freezer compartment to stop bacterial growth?
 - (a) Between 3°C and 4°C
 - (b) Approximately 0°C
 - (c) Approximately -18°C
 - (d) Above 5°C
- v. **Assertion (A):** The choice of refrigerants shifted away from Chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) in the late 20th century.

Reason (R): Scientists discovered that CFCs were responsible for causing severe damage to the Earth's protective ozone layer.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 - (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 - (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.
- vi.** Explain why the main refrigerator compartment is specifically kept between 3°C and 4°C and what would happen if the temperature rose above this range.
- vii.** Complete the following sentence based on the condensation stage described in the text:
When hot, high-pressure gas flows through the coils on the back of the refrigerator, it releases heat and turns into a _____.
- viii.** The word “transformative” as used in the opening paragraph most nearly means:
(a) Minor change (b) Drastic change
(c) Temporary shift (d) Useful tool
- ix.** State whether the following statement is True or False:
The process of evaporation in the refrigeration cycle involves the refrigerant absorbing heat from its surroundings.
- x.** Name the specific mechanical component that drops the pressure of the liquid refrigerant, causing it to become extremely cold.
- Ans :**
- i. (b) Transferring heat from inside to outside.
 - ii. (a) Jacob Perkins developed a practical system in 1834.
 - iii. The cycle involves compression (squeezing gas), condensation (turning gas to liquid), expansion (dropping pressure), and evaporation (turning liquid back to gas). During these stages, the refrigerant constantly changes between liquid and gaseous states to move heat out of the refrigerator.
 - iv. (c) Approximately -18°C.
 - v. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - vi. The main compartment is kept at 3°C to 4°C because this specific range significantly slows the growth of harmful bacteria. If the temperature rises above this, bacteria would grow faster, causing food to spoil quickly and potentially posing a health risk.

- vii. cool liquid
- viii. (b) Drastic change.
- ix. True
- x. Expansion valve

17. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Poverty is one of the most significant challenges faced by independent India. It is a condition where a person or community lacks the financial resources and essential amenities for a minimum standard of living. Poverty is not just about a lack of money; it is a multi-faceted issue that includes hunger, malnutrition, limited access to education and healthcare, social discrimination, and a lack of participation in decision-making.
2. Poverty is measured in different ways. One common global benchmark is the international poverty line, set by the World Bank. As of the latest revision, this line is defined as living on less than \$2.15 per day. However, many analysts now prefer to use a broader measure called the Multidimensional Poverty Index (MPI), which captures various deprivations in health, education, and living standards, giving a more holistic view of poverty.
3. India has made remarkable strides in its fight against poverty. A 2023 report by the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) highlighted this success. It stated that India's multidimensional poverty rate plummeted from 55.1% in the period 2005-06 down to 16.4% in 2019-21. This translates to a historic achievement: a staggering 415 million people were lifted out of poverty within a span of just 15 years.
4. The causes of poverty are complex and include unemployment, unequal distribution of wealth, and social exclusion. Its consequences are severe and far-reaching. Poverty is closely linked to poor health outcomes, low literacy levels, and a high infant mortality rate. It creates a vicious cycle where a lack of opportunity prevents people from escaping their deprived conditions.
5. The government has adopted a two-pronged strategy to combat poverty: promoting economic growth and launching targeted anti-poverty programmes. One of the most significant schemes has been the Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act (MGNREGA), launched in 2005. This act aims to enhance livelihood security in rural areas by providing at least 100 days of guaranteed wage employment in a financial year to every household whose adult members volunteer to do unskilled manual work.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, why is poverty described as a “multi-faceted” issue rather than just a financial one?
- It only affects people living in rural villages.
 - It is caused exclusively by a lack of paper money.
 - It involves hunger, malnutrition, and social exclusion.
 - It is a condition that is easily solved by tourism.

- ii. Based on the measurement of poverty discussed in Paragraph 2, which of the following statements is/are correct?

- The World Bank sets the international poverty line at \$2.15 per day.
- The Multidimensional Poverty Index (MPI) only measures monthly income.
- Analysts prefer the MPI because it provides a more holistic view.
- Poverty is measured solely by the number of people in a household.

Choose the correct option:

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| (a) (i) and (ii) | (b) (i) and (iii) |
| (c) (ii) and (iv) | (d) (iii) and (iv) |

- iii. Analyze the progress India made in poverty reduction between 2005-06 and 2019-21. Use the specific percentages and population figures from the UNDP report to support your answer.

- iv. The word “holistic” as used in the second paragraph most nearly means:

- Narrowly focused
- Considering the whole
- Mathematically precise
- Financially unstable

- v. **Assertion (A):** Poverty often creates a “vicious cycle” that is difficult for individuals to escape.

Reason (R): A lack of basic opportunities in health and education prevents deprived people from improving their conditions.

- Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (A) is false, but (R) is true.

- vi. Explain the two-pronged strategy adopted by the Indian government to fight poverty and describe how the MGNREGA scheme specifically supports rural households.

- vii. Complete the following sentence based on the international benchmark mentioned in the text:
The World Bank defines the international poverty line as living on less than _____ per day.

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

According to the UNDP report, India’s multidimensional poverty rate increased significantly between 2005 and 2021.

- ix. In what specific year was the Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act (MGNREGA) launched?

- x. According to the passage, what was the exact multidimensional poverty rate in India during the 2019-21 period?

Ans :

- i. (c) It involves hunger, malnutrition, and social exclusion.

- ii. (b) (i) and (iii) [MPI captures health and education, not just income].

- iii. India achieved a historic milestone by lifting 415 million people out of poverty in 15 years. The multidimensional poverty rate plummeted from a high of 55.1% in 2005-06 to 16.4% in 2019-21, showcasing the remarkable strides made in improving national living standards.

- iv. (b) Considering the whole.

- v. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).

- vi. The government promotes economic growth while launching targeted anti-poverty programmes. MGNREGA, for instance, enhances rural livelihood security by guaranteeing 100 days of wage employment per year for unskilled manual work, providing a financial safety net for households in need.

- vii. \$2.15

- viii. False (It decreased from 55.1% to 16.4%).

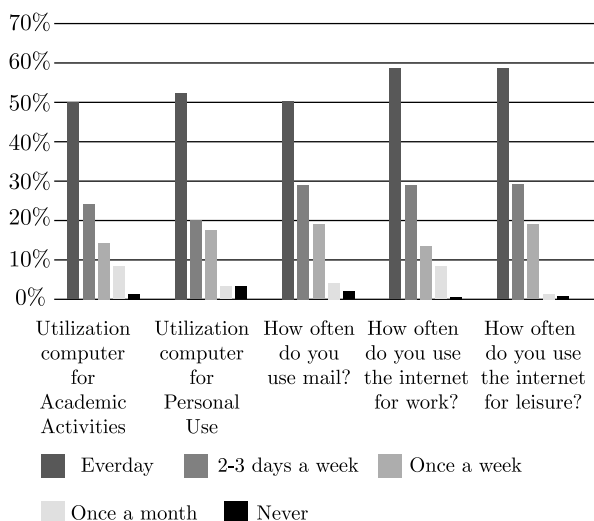
- ix. 2005

- x. 16.4%

18. Read the following passage carefully:

- The present generation is well updated with the use of internet and computers. The rapid development in computer technology and increase

in accessibility of the internet for academic purposes has changed the face of education for everyone associated with it. Let's look at the data arising out of a recent survey that was done to ascertain the time spent on utilisation of the computer and internet.



2. At present, many schools and universities have been implementing internet-based learning, as it supplements the conventional teaching methods. The internet provides a wide variety of references and information to academics as well as scientific researchers. Students often turn to it to do their academic assignments and projects.
3. However, research on Internet is very different from traditional library research, and the differences can cause problems. The Internet is a tremendous resource, but it must be used carefully and critically.
4. According to a 2018 Academic Student e-book Experience Survey, conducted by LJ's research department and sponsored by EBSCO, when reading for pleasure, almost 74% of respondents said they preferred print books for leisure whereas, 45% of respondents chose e-books rather than the printed versions, for research or assignments.
5. When asked what e-book features make them their favourite for research, the respondents were clear. Having page numbers to use in citations, topped the list (75%); followed by the ability to resize text to fit a device's screen (67%); the ability to bookmark pages, highlight text, or take notes for later reference (60%); downloading the entire e-book (57%); and allowing content to be transferred between devices (43%) were the varied responses.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what is the primary purpose of the recent survey mentioned in the text?
 - (a) To evaluate the cost of new laptops.
 - (b) To track the history of the internet.
 - (c) To determine time spent on technology.
 - (d) To promote specific social media apps.
- ii. Based on the 2018 Academic Student e-book Experience Survey, which of the following statements are correct?
 - (i) 74% of respondents prefer print books for leisure reading.
 - (ii) 45% of students prefer e-books for research purposes.
 - (iii) Highlighting text is the most valued e-book feature.
 - (iv) Page numbers for citations is the top-rated feature.

Choose the correct option:

- (a) (i) and (ii) (b) (ii) and (iii)
- (c) (i), (ii), and (iv) (d) (iii) and (iv)

- iii. Identify the two activities in the bar chart that share the highest "Everyday" usage percentage and state that approximate value.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

- iv. Which of the following e-book features was preferred by exactly 60% of the respondents in the 2018 survey?
 - (a) Resizing text for screens
 - (b) Downloading the entire book
 - (c) Transferring content to devices
 - (d) Bookmarking and highlighting text
- v. **Assertion (A):** Internet research is considered a tremendous resource but must be approached with caution.
Reason (R): Internet research differs significantly from traditional library research and can lead to potential problems.
 - (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 - (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 - (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

- vi. Complete the following Analogy based on the “Everyday” usage data provided in the bar chart:
Academic Activities : ~50% :: Internet for Work : _____
- vii. Analyze the bar chart data for the “Never” category. Which specific computer/internet activity has the highest percentage of non-users?
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the bar chart:
The percentage of students using the internet for leisure “2-3 days a week” is approximately 30%.
- ix. According to the 2018 survey, what percentage of respondents preferred using e-books rather than printed versions for research or assignments?
- x. Name one of the technical features of e-books mentioned in Paragraph 5 that makes them a favorite for student research.

Ans :

- i. (c) To determine time spent on technology.
- ii. (c) (i), (ii), and (iv) [Citations (75%) topped the list, not highlighting (60%)].
- iii. Using the internet for work and using the internet for leisure share the highest “Everyday” usage, both reaching approximately 58%.
- iv. (d) Bookmarking and highlighting text.
- v. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- vi. ~58%
- vii. According to the chart, “Utilization computer for Personal Use” has the highest percentage in the “Never” category (the black bar).
- viii. True.
- ix. 45%.
- x. Page numbers for citations/resizing text/bookmarking/downloading/transferring content.

19. Read the following passage carefully:

1. At the center of our circulatory system is the human heart, a muscular organ about the size of a clenched fist. This incredible pump works tirelessly from before we are born until the moment we die, ensuring that every cell in our body receives the oxygen and nutrients it needs to survive. It is the engine of life, a marvel of biological engineering.
2. The workload of the heart is truly astounding. On an average day, the heart beats approximately 100,000 times, pushing blood through a vast network of arteries, veins, and capillaries. This

network of blood vessels is so extensive that if it were laid out in a single line, it would stretch for more than 96,000 kilometres—long enough to circle the Earth almost two and a half times. Each day, this relentless organ pumps about 7,500 litres of blood throughout the body.

3. The heart is a four-chambered pump, composed of two upper chambers called atria and two lower, more powerful chambers called ventricles. This structure facilitates a “double circulation” system. The right side of the heart receives deoxygenated blood from the body and pumps it to the lungs to pick up oxygen. The left side of the heart receives this newly oxygenated blood from the lungs and pumps it out to the rest of the body.
4. The speed at which the heart pumps is known as the heart rate, measured in beats per minute (bpm). A normal resting heart rate for an adult typically falls between 60 and 100 bpm. Athletes and people who are very physically fit often have a lower resting heart rate because their heart muscle is stronger and more efficient, meaning it can pump the same amount of blood with fewer beats.
5. Maintaining the health of this vital organ is crucial for a long life. Cardiovascular diseases are a leading cause of death globally, but many are preventable. A heart-healthy lifestyle includes a balanced diet low in unhealthy fats and salt, regular aerobic exercise like walking or cycling, maintaining a healthy weight, and avoiding smoking. These simple habits can significantly reduce the risk of heart problems and keep the body’s engine running smoothly for years to come.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what is the primary purpose of the heart’s “tireless” work?
 - (a) To produce muscle cells.
 - (b) To digest heavy nutrients.
 - (c) To supply cells with oxygen.
 - (d) To measure the size of a fist.
- ii. Based on the workload described in Paragraph 2, which of the following statements is TRUE?
 - (a) The heart beats 96,000 times daily.
 - (b) It pumps about 7,500 litres of blood.
 - (c) Blood vessels are 100,000 km long.
 - (d) The network circles Earth ten times.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

iii. **Assertion (A):** Athletes and physically fit individuals often have a lower resting heart rate than the average adult.

Reason (R): A stronger and more efficient heart muscle can pump the required amount of blood with fewer total beats.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

iv. The word “astounding” as used in the second paragraph most nearly means:

- (a) Highly dangerous (b) Very impressive
- (c) Entirely normal (d) Quite insignificant

v. Explain the concept of the “double circulation” system. How do the right and left sides of the heart differ in the type of blood they handle?

vi. Identify the four chambers of the heart and differentiate between the roles of the atria and the ventricles in the pumping process.

vii. Complete the following sentence based on the heart rate statistics mentioned in the text:
A normal resting heart rate for a healthy adult typically falls between 60 and 100 _____.

viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
The vast network of arteries, veins, and capillaries in the human body stretches for more than 96,000 kilometres.

ix. According to the passage, approximately how many times does the human heart beat on an average day?

x. What is the approximate size of the human heart as described in the opening paragraph?

Ans :

- i. (c) To supply cells with oxygen.
- ii. (b) It pumps about 7,500 litres of blood.
- iii. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- iv. (b) Very impressive.
- v. Double circulation involves two distinct paths. The right side of the heart receives deoxygenated blood from the body and pumps it to the lungs. Conversely, the left side receives oxygenated blood from the lungs and pumps it out to serve the rest

of the body.

- 1. The heart has four chambers: two upper atria and two lower ventricles. The atria function as receiving chambers for blood returning to the heart, while the more powerful ventricles act as the main pumps that push blood out to the lungs and body.
- vii. beats per minute (bpm)
- viii. True
- ix. Approximately 100,000 times.
- x. About the size of a clenched fist.

20. Read the following passage carefully:

1. At the heart of every smartphone, laptop, car, and modern appliance is a tiny piece of engineered magic: the semiconductor chip. Semiconductors are materials, most commonly silicon, which have an electrical conductivity between that of a conductor (like copper) and an insulator (like glass). These materials are used to create microscopic switches called transistors, which are the fundamental building blocks of all digital electronics.
2. The digital age truly began with the invention of the first transistor at Bell Labs in 1947. This tiny device replaced bulky, unreliable, and power-hungry vacuum tubes, paving the way for smaller and more powerful electronics. Since then, the industry has been driven by Moore’s Law, an observation that the number of transistors on a chip doubles approximately every two years. This exponential progress is why a modern smartphone is more powerful than the supercomputers of a few decades ago; a single advanced chip today can contain over 50 billion transistors.
3. The process of creating these chips is one of the most complex manufacturing feats in human history. It begins with purifying silicon from common sand. The silicon is then grown into a large, flawless crystal, which is sliced into thin wafers. Through an intricate process called photolithography, patterns of circuits and transistors are etched onto these wafers. The scale is almost unimaginable, with the smallest features on a modern chip measuring just 3 to 5 nanometers—thousands of times smaller than the width of a human hair.
4. The semiconductor industry is a massive global enterprise, valued at over \$550 billion in 2023. However, the manufacturing is highly concentrated in a few locations. Taiwan is the undisputed world leader, accounting for over 60% of global semiconductor production and a staggering 90%

of the most advanced chips used in technologies like AI and high-performance computing. This geographical concentration makes the global electronics supply chain extremely vulnerable to disruptions.

5. Recognizing this dependency, many countries, including India, have launched ambitious missions to boost their domestic semiconductor manufacturing capabilities. The goal is to enhance national security, reduce reliance on imports, and capture a share of this critically important and rapidly growing global market.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what unique electrical property makes semiconductors like silicon so valuable for electronics?
 - (a) They are perfect insulators like glass.
 - (b) They conduct better than pure copper.
 - (c) Their conductivity is between conductors and insulators.
 - (d) They are completely resistant to all electrical flow.
- ii. Based on the historical context in Paragraph 2, which of the following is TRUE?
 - (a) The first transistor was invented at Bell Labs in 1947.
 - (b) Vacuum tubes are more reliable than modern transistors.
 - (c) Moore's Law states that chip size doubles every ten years.
 - (d) Modern chips contain fewer than one million transistors.
- iii. Identify the core material used in semiconductors and explain the "Moore's Law" observation, including its impact on modern device power.
- iv. The word "intricate" as used in the third paragraph most nearly means:
 - (a) Highly complex (b) Extremely fast
 - (c) Very fragile (d) Simply designed
- v. **Assertion (A):** The global electronics supply chain is considered extremely vulnerable to disruptions.
Reason (R): A single location, Taiwan, produces over 60% of the world's semiconductors and 90% of the most advanced chips.
 - (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).

- (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

- vi. Describe the manufacturing process of a semiconductor chip, from the raw material stage to the final etching of patterns on a wafer.

- vii. Complete the following sentence based on the market data mentioned in the text:

In 2023, the global semiconductor industry reached a massive valuation of over _____.

- viii. Consider the following statements regarding advanced semiconductor chips:

- (i) They are essential for AI and high-performance computing.
- (ii) Their smallest features measure between 3 to 5 nanometers.
- (iii) They are thousands of times wider than a human hair.
- (iv) India currently produces 90% of these advanced chips.

Which of the above are correct based on the passage?

- (a) (i) and (iv) (b) (i) and (ii)
- (c) (ii) and (iii) (d) (iii) and (iv)

- ix. State whether the following statement is True or False:

Many countries are boosting domestic manufacturing to reduce their reliance on imported chips and enhance security.

- x. What was the specific year in which the first transistor was invented, replacing bulky vacuum tubes?

Ans :

- i. (c) Their conductivity is between conductors and insulators.
- ii. (a) The first transistor was invented at Bell Labs in 1947.
- iii. The core material is silicon. Moore's Law is the observation that the number of transistors on a chip doubles roughly every two years. This exponential growth allows modern devices, like smartphones, to be significantly more powerful than the massive supercomputers of previous decades.
- iv. (a) Highly complex.
- v. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).

- vi. The process begins by purifying silicon from sand and growing it into a flawless crystal. This crystal is sliced into thin wafers. Finally, an intricate process called photolithography is used to etch microscopic patterns of circuits and transistors onto the wafers.
- vii. \$550 billion
- viii. (b) (i) and (ii) [Features are thousands of times 'smaller' than a hair; Taiwan produces 90%].
- ix. True
- x. 1947

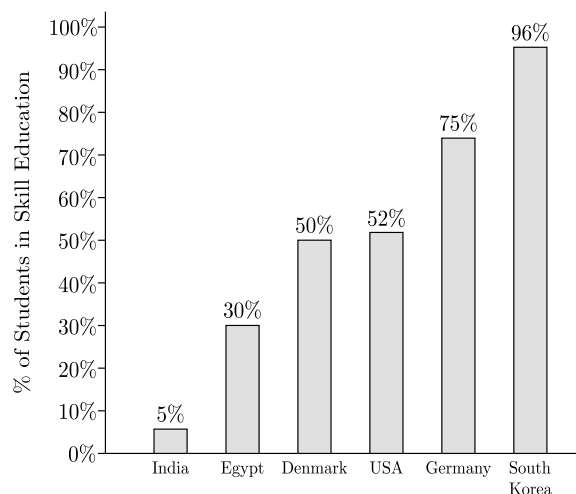
SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



21. Read the following passage carefully:

- The National Education Policy 2020 proposes the revision and revamping of all aspects of education, including the educational structure, regulations and governance, to create a new system which is aligned with the aspirational goals of 21st century students. According to the policy, by 2025, at least 50% of learners through the school and higher education system shall have exposure to skill education, for which a clear action plan with targets and timelines are to be developed.
- The policy aims to overcome the social status hierarchy associated with skill education and integration of skill education into mainstream education in all educational institutions in a phased manner. Beginning with skill exposure at early ages in middle and secondary school, quality skill education will be integrated smoothly into school and higher education.
- Every child will learn at least one skill and is exposed to several more. This would lead to emphasizing the dignity of labour and importance of various vocations involving Indian arts and artisanship.
- The development of skill capacities will go hand-in-hand with the development of 'academic' or other capacities. To achieve this objective, secondary schools will have to collaborate with Industrial Training Institutes (ITIs), Polytechnics, Local Industry, etc. Skill labs will also be set up and created in the schools in a Hub and Spoke model, which will allow other schools to use the facility. Higher education institutions will offer skill education either on their own or in partnership with industry and other institutions.

The Global Scenario of Students in Skill Education Sector.



Answer the following questions, based on the above passage :

- According to the first paragraph, what is the primary objective of the National Education Policy 2020?
 - To maintain the existing regulations.
 - To reduce the number of 21st-century goals.
 - To revamp all aspects of the education system.
 - To focus solely on school-level governance.
- Based on the chart provided, which of the following statements about the global scenario of skill education is correct?
 - India has the lowest participation at 5%.
 - South Korea has the highest participation at 96%.
 - Denmark has already reached the 50% threshold.
 - Egypt's participation is higher than that of the USA.
 - (i) and (iv)
 - (ii) and (iii)
 - (i), (ii), and (iii)
 - (ii), (iii), and (iv)
- Identify the specific percentage target for skill education exposure set for 2025 and explain the purpose of the "Hub and Spoke" model mentioned in the text.
- Which of the following countries shown in the chart has exactly 52% of its students in the skill education sector?
 - Denmark
 - Germany
 - USA
 - Egypt

- v. **Assertion (A):** The National Education Policy 2020 aims to integrate skill education into mainstream education in a phased manner.

Reason (R): The policy seeks to overcome the social status hierarchy traditionally associated with vocational or skill-based training.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.
- vi. Calculate the difference in percentage points between the country with the highest and lowest participation in the chart. What does this suggest about India's current position?
- vii. Complete the following sentence based on the collaborations required for secondary schools in Paragraph 4:
 To develop skill capacities, secondary schools must collaborate with ITIs, Polytechnics, and -----.
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
 The development of skill capacities is intended to replace the development of traditional 'academic' capacities.
- ix. As per the policy guidelines in the third paragraph, what is the minimum number of skills that every child is expected to learn?
- x. According to the bar chart, which specific country has a 30% participation rate in the skill education sector?

Ans :

- i. (c) To revamp all aspects of the education system.
 ii. (c) (i), (ii), and (iii) [USA (52%) is higher than Egypt (30%)].
 iii. The target for 2025 is to provide at least 50% of learners with exposure to skill education. The "Hub and Spoke" model involves setting up skill labs in specific schools (hubs) that allow other nearby schools (spokes) to share and utilize the facilities efficiently.
 iv. (c) USA.
 v. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 vi. The difference is 91 percentage points (96% – 5%). This massive gap highlights that India

currently has the lowest participation among the countries listed, indicating a significant need for the aggressive reforms proposed in the National Education Policy 2020.

- vii. Local Industry
 viii. False (The passage states they will go "hand-in-hand").
 ix. At least one skill.
 x. Egypt.

22. Read the following passage carefully:

- India is a country of many languages. The constitution recognises 22 languages officially, but over 121 unique languages have been identified in the country.
- To preserve and encourage the literary function of language, the government introduced 'classical languages' in 2004. According to the Ministry of Culture, a classical language is one that is at least 1,500 years old and has ancient, valuable literature recorded in it. Further, such a language is original and not derived from another language. Based on these guidelines, six languages have been classified as classical languages: Tamil, Sanskrit, Kannada, Telugu, Malayalam and Odia.
- The following graph shows the percentage of Indian people whose mother tongue is a classical language. This is as per data collected by the census of 2011. The census was not conducted in 2021 due to the pandemic.

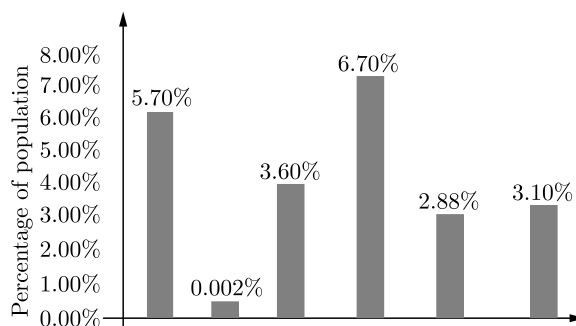


Figure : Tamil Sanskrit Kannada Telugu Malayalam Odia Languages

- According to the graph, around 6.7% of the Indian population are native speakers of Telugu, whereas Sanskrit has been identified as a mother tongue by only 0.002% of the population, which is around 24,821 people. Malayalam has the second lowest number of native speakers, making up about 2.9% of Indians.

5. The 2011 census data also noted that a majority of the native speakers reside in the area where their mother tongue originated. For example, 93% of Kannada speakers live in Karnataka. Similarly, 93% of Malayalam speakers live in Kerala.
6. Balancing the preservation of culture and inclusivity is a delicate equation for a heterogeneous country like India. With growing awareness, concepts like 'classical languages' may help us achieve harmony.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the second paragraph, what is a mandatory requirement for a language to be officially classified as 'classical' in India?
 - (a) It must be spoken by 10% of the total population.
 - (b) It must have an ancient history of 1,500 years.
 - (c) It must be a recent derivation of another language.
 - (d) It must be taught in every primary school nationwide.
- ii. Based on the 2011 census data presented in the bar chart, which of the following statements is correct?
 - (i) Telugu is the most spoken classical language at 6.70%.
 - (ii) Sanskrit has the lowest percentage of native speakers.
 - (iii) More people speak Odia than speak Kannada as a mother tongue.
 - (iv) Tamil is spoken by a higher percentage than Telugu.

Choose the correct option:

 - (a) (i) and (ii)
 - (b) (ii) and (iii)
 - (c) (i) and (iv)
 - (d) (iii) and (iv)
- iii. Explain the two-fold criteria set by the Ministry of Culture for a language to be recognized as 'classical' and why Sanskrit is unique in the data provided.
- iv. Which of the following classical languages has the second-lowest percentage of native speakers according to the chart?
 - (a) Odia
 - (b) Sanskrit
 - (c) Kannada
 - (d) Malayalam

v. Assertion (A): India is described in the passage as a "heterogeneous" country.

Reason (R): The nation possesses a vast diversity

of over 121 unique languages and a wide variety of cultural backgrounds.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

vi. Analyze the data regarding the geographic distribution of speakers. Using the examples of Kannada and Malayalam, explain the relationship between a language and its place of origin.

vii. Complete the following Analogy based on the 2011 census data provided in the chart:
Telugu : 6.70% :: Tamil : _____

viii. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the bar chart:
The percentage of the Indian population that speaks Odia as their mother tongue is exactly 3.10%.

ix. According to the first paragraph, how many unique languages in total have been identified in India?

x. In which specific year did the Government of India first introduce the concept of 'classical languages'?

Ans :

- i. (b) It must have an ancient history of 1,500 years.
- ii. (a) (i) and (ii) [Odia (3.10%) is lower than Kannada (3.60%); Tamil (5.70%) is lower than Telugu (6.70%)].
- iii. A classical language must be at least 1,500 years old with ancient, original literature not derived from another tongue. Sanskrit is unique because, despite its classical status, it is identified as a mother tongue by a mere 0.002% of the population.
- iv. (d) Malayalam (Sanskrit is the lowest at 0.002%, followed by Malayalam at 2.88%).
- v. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- vi. The 2011 census indicates that a vast majority of native speakers reside where their language originated. For instance, 93% of both Kannada and Malayalam speakers live in their respective home states of Karnataka and Kerala, showing a strong regional concentration.

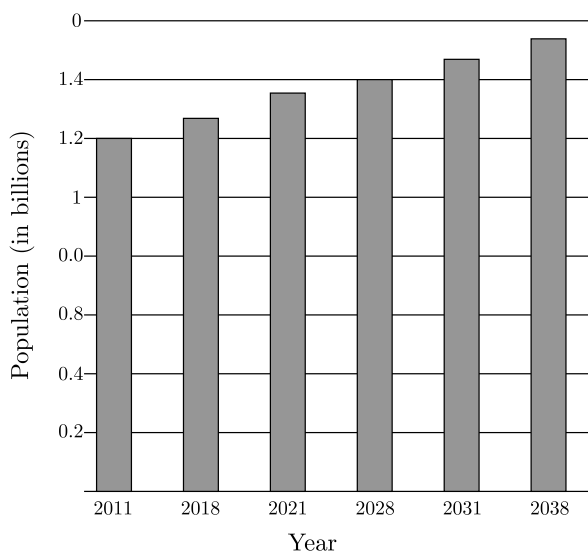
vii. 5.70%

viii. True

- ix. Over 121 unique languages.
- x. 2004.

23. Read the following passage carefully:

1. India's population is expected to grow by 25%, with reference to 2011, to 1.52 billion by 2036, according to the final report of the technical group on population projections dated July 2020. The group was constituted by the National Commission on Population (NCP) under the Ministry of Health and Family Welfare with the mandate to provide population projections for the period 2011 to 2036.
2. India's population growth rate is expected to decline to its lowest since the Independence in the 2011-2021 decade, with a decadal growth rate of 12.5%. It 0.0 will decline further to 8.4% in the 2021-2031 decade, as per the report, 0 0.8 which The Wire has seen. According to these projections, India will overtake. China as the world's most populous country around 2031-almost a decade later than the United Nations projection of 2022. India's population is projected to increase to 1.52 billion by 2036.



Source : Report of the technical group on population projections

3. The projections have been delayed quite significantly. "Ideally, they should have come by 2016. But there were delays in setting up the committee and then more delays at the government's end even after we submitted the report. We had submitted our report in November 2019," said a member of the committee wishing to remain anonymous. This was confirmed by two other members as well.

4. India's population was 1.21 billion as per the Census of 2011 and the projections now estimate that the population will grow by 311 million by 2036.
5. The report projects that as much as 70% of this increase will be in urban areas. India's urban population will increase from 377 million in 2011 to 594 million in 2036-a growth of 57%. So, while 31% of Indians were living in urban India in 2011, that will grow to 39% by 2036.
6. Consequently, the proportion of the rural population will decline from 69% to 61% as the urban population is projected to increase more than twice the projected increase in the rural population.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, which government body was responsible for providing the population projections for the 2011-2036 period?
 - (a) National Commission on Population
 - (b) United Nations Projection Group
 - (c) The Wire Technical Committee
 - (d) Ministry of Urban Development
- ii. Based on the projections in Paragraph 2, which of the following statements about India's growth rate and global standing are correct?
 - (i) The growth rate will decline to 8.4% in the 2021-2031 decade.
 - (ii) India is projected to overtake China as the most populous nation in 2022.
 - (iii) The 2011-2021 decade recorded a decadal growth rate of 12.5%.
 - (iv) India will overtake China around 2031, according to this specific report.

Choose the correct option:

 - (a) (i), (ii), and (iii)
 - (b) (ii) and (iv)
 - (c) (i), (iii), and (iv)
 - (d) (iii) and (iv)
- iii. Identify the projected total population of India by 2036 and explain what a "declining growth rate" implies for the total population size.
- iv. The word "mandate" as used in the first paragraph most nearly means:
 - (a) An optional suggestion
 - (b) An official commission
 - (c) A hidden disagreement
 - (d) A financial limitation

- v. Based on the bar chart, what is the approximate population of India for the year 2021?
(a) 1.2 billion (b) 1.28 billion
(c) 1.35 billion (d) 1.4 billion
- vi. Explain the projected shift in India's urban and rural population distribution by 2036. Use specific percentages from the report to illustrate this change.
- vii. Complete the following sentence based on the data regarding urban growth in Paragraph 5:
The report projects that the urban population will increase from 377 million in 2011 to 594 million by 2036, representing a growth of _____.
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
According to the bar chart, the projected population for the year 2038 is significantly lower than the projected population for 2031.
- ix. According to the fourth paragraph, what was India's total population as recorded in the Census of 2011?

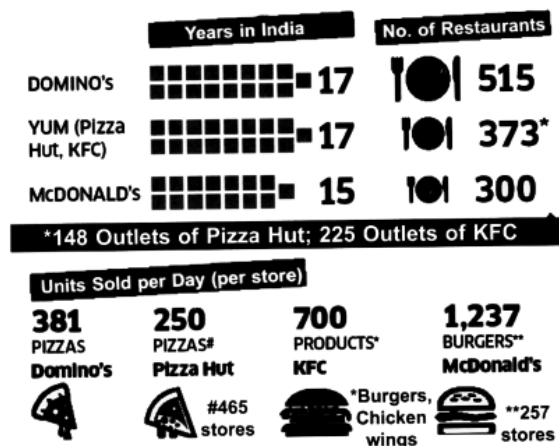
- x. According to the bar chart, what is the approximate projected population (in billions) for the year 2028?

Ans :

- (a) National Commission on Population.
- (c) (i), (iii), and (iv) [Paragraph 2 notes the UN projected 2022, but this report says 2031].
- The projected population by 2036 is 1.52 billion. A "declining growth rate" means the population is still increasing, but it is doing so at a slower speed than in previous decades; it does not mean the total population is shrinking.
- (b) An official commission.
- (c) 1.35 billion.
- By 2036, the urban population is expected to grow to 39% (up from 31% in 2011), while the rural population will decline to 61% (down from 69% in 2011). This happens because 70% of the total population increase is projected to occur in urban areas.
- 57%
- False (The chart shows a consistent upward trend, with 2038 being higher than 2031).
- 1.21 billion.
- Approximately 1.4 billion.

24. Read the following passage carefully:

- According to the National Institutes of Health (NHI), fast foods are a quick alternative to home-cooked meals. They are also high in saturated fat, sugar, salt and calories. Eating too much fast food has been connected to, among other things, obesity, colorectal cancer and high cholesterol. Still the traditional family dinner is increasingly being replaced by eating "on the run". As a result, the time invested in food preparation is getting lower and lower. 54% of the Indians are aged below 25 years and eating out is their favourite outdoor entertainment. Much of the retail boom in India could be attributed to these young consumers.
- Organized fast food service sector in India and elsewhere, busy lifestyles of people and dual-working families with children have provided the perfect platform for fast food companies to flourish, which offer quick meal solutions. As a result, the fast food industry has witnessed a tremendous growth rate. McDonald's alone serves 46 million people worldwide each day. Fast-food chains are still less than 5% of India's food services market-the global average rests at 20%.
- India's food services market was estimated at 24,236 billion in 2020. Fast food chains in India have a market size of 2348 billion and account for 54% of the total sales. This is estimated to reach 64% by 2025. Covid dealt a body blow to the food services industry because of long lockdowns. However, large players were quick to remedy the impact on business by scaling their existing delivery capabilities. Fortunately, these chains had the infrastructure and process for delivery services in place long before the spread of the pandemic, which enabled them to adapt swiftly to government regulations.



4. The large food chains are set to gain a bigger share of the food services market on the back of a young population, value pricing, and increased penetration in tier two and three cities. The more recent popularity of online food ordering and food delivery platforms has enabled food chains to reach more consumers. Fast food chain Burger King reported a blockbuster IPO last year; meanwhile, Domino pizza franchise in India recently revised its potential store opening target in India from the earlier 2,000 to 3,000. McDonald's, Burger King, Domino's plan to deepen their reach in India's smaller cities, and benefit from a younger demographic expecting to clock a compound annual growth rate of 23% between 2021 to 2025.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what is a major demographic factor contributing to the retail and fast-food boom in India?
 - (a) High percentage of people over 60.
 - (b) Large population of young consumers.
 - (c) Increase in rural agricultural workers.
 - (d) Growth in the number of stay-at-home parents.
- ii. Based on the infographic provided, which of the following statements about restaurant counts and years in India are correct?
 - (i) Domino's has the highest number of restaurants at 515.
 - (ii) McDonald's has been in India longer than Domino's.
 - (iii) Pizza Hut and KFC (Yum) combined have 373 outlets.
 - (iv) McDonald's currently operates 300 restaurants in India.

Choose the correct option:

 - (a) (i), (ii), and (iii)
 - (b) (ii) and (iv)
 - (c) (i), (iii), and (iv)
 - (d) (iii) and (iv)
- iii. Explain how major fast-food chains managed to "remedy the impact" of the Covid-19 pandemic on their business, as described in Paragraph 3.
- iv. Which of the following brands recorded a "blockbuster IPO" recently, according to the passage?
 - (a) Domino's
 - (b) Burger King
 - (c) Pizza Hut
 - (d) McDonald's
- v. **Assertion (A):** Fast-food companies are increasingly targeting tier two and tier three cities

in India.

Reason (R): These companies aim to benefit from a younger demographic and increased penetration in smaller urban centers.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 - (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 - (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.
- vi. Analyze the data in the "Units Sold per Day" section of the infographic. Compare the performance of Domino's and McDonald's in terms of their primary product sales.
 - vii. Complete the following Analogy based on the categories and brands provided in the infographic:
Domino's : 381 Pizzas :: McDonald's : _____
 - viii. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the infographic:
Pizza Hut sells more units per day per store than the "Burgers and Chicken wings" sold by KFC.
 - ix. According to the first paragraph, what specific percentage of the Indian population is aged below 25 years?
 - x. What is the projected compound annual growth rate (CAGR) for the Indian fast-food sector between 2021 and 2025?
- Ans :
- i. (b) Large population of young consumers.
 - ii. (c) (i), (iii), and (iv) [Infographic shows McDonald's has been in India for 15 years, while others have 17].
 - iii. Major players adapted quickly by scaling their existing delivery capabilities. Since these chains already had the necessary infrastructure and delivery processes in place before the pandemic, they were able to pivot seamlessly and comply with government lockdown regulations to sustain their business.
 - iv. (b) Burger King.
 - v. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - vi. Domino's sells an average of 381 pizzas per day per store. In contrast, McDonald's sells a significantly higher volume of its primary product, averaging 1,237 burgers per day per store, making it the leader in units sold per individual outlet according to the data.

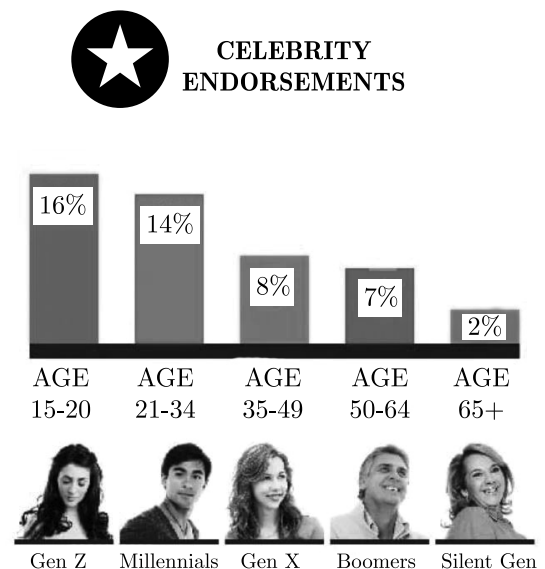
- vii. 1,237 Burgers
- viii. False (Pizza Hut sells 250 units; KFC sells 700 units).
- ix. 54%
- x. 23%

25. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Celebrities advertising products is nothing new, in fact, it has been part of our lives for years. Back in the 2000's, you couldn't sit through a commercial break without seeing the teen pop icon of that time, Britney Spears, endorsing Pepsi. The Pepsi legacy was later continued by the most famous celebrity Beyonce. She was paid millions to promote the carbonated drink, which outraged health advocacy groups. Many concerned people questioned her ethics, as to why she was supporting a drink that plays a major role in causing obesity.
2. With the growing importance of social media in a shopper's purchase journey, companies are evolving and stepping up the endorsement game across different channels. With celebrities vouching for promoting their products, brands can increase awareness, trust, and familiarity, which are important variables in the purchase decision-making process.
3. Consumers feel more sympathetic towards a brand if their products are promoted by a celebrity they admire or relate to. It's a simple psychological effect: people believe that purchasing a product that's promoted by a celebrity they admire, will allow them to emulate the celebrity's desired traits or attract similar people into their lives. They will associate the celebrities' success, beauty, athletic skill, etc. with a particular product.
4. Research by Nielson conducted in 2015 broke down the level of trust in advertising formats by different generations. It found that celebrity endorsements resonate more strongly with Generation Z (ages 15-20) and Millennial (ages 21-34) audiences. Brands are taking advantage of that by increasingly utilising the social media communities of celebrities. Social media is a way for consumers, in particular, those of younger demographics, to engage and build intimate connections with the celebrities they follow, making it the place for these celebrities to plug a company or a product on their personal social media accounts.
5. While celebrity endorsements certainly help to attract consumers, their direct influence on the

consumers' purchasing decisions is inconclusive. As consumers are becoming better educated and have faster access to information, blind faith in celebrity endorsement is beginning to wane. They will be attracted to a brand because of a celebrity but they will quickly move away if the product does not perform. It's the quality of your product that will keep consumers coming back, not a celebrity link.

6. A brand needs to tell the consumer why a product makes sense for them as individuals and what problem they can solve with it, not solely rely on a real-life Barbie doll, athlete or pop-culture icon. If they can't, their products will lose value over time and consumers will be the first ones to turn their backs.



Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what was the primary reason for the public outrage against Beyoncé's endorsement of a carbonated drink?
 - (a) She was paid significantly less than Britney Spears.
 - (b) The drink was considered too expensive for teens.
 - (c) The product was linked to causing childhood obesity.
 - (d) She refused to promote the drink on social media.
- ii. Based on the 2015 Nielsen research shown in the infographic, which of the following statements are correct?

- (i) Gen Z (ages 15-20) shows the highest trust at 16%.
- (ii) Boomers (ages 50-64) trust endorsements more than Gen X.
- (iii) Trust levels consistently decrease as the age of the audience increases.
- (iv) The Silent Gen (65+) has a trust level of exactly 5%.

Choose the correct option:

- (a) (i) and (ii) (b) (ii) and (iv)
- (c) (i) and (iii) (d) (iii) and (iv)

iii. Assertion (A): Brands are increasingly utilizing social media communities of celebrities to plug their products.

Reason (R): Younger demographics use social media to build intimate connections with celebrities, making them more receptive to endorsements.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

iv. Explain the psychological effect mentioned in Paragraph 3 that leads consumers to associate a celebrity's traits with a specific product.

v. Which of the following age groups shows exactly double the trust level of the "Gen X" category according to the chart?

- (a) Millennials (b) Boomers
- (c) Gen Z (d) Silent Gen

vi. According to the passage, how has the availability of information and education changed the way consumers interact with celebrity endorsements?

vii. Complete the following sentence based on the advice given to brands in the final paragraph:
A brand must explain why a product makes sense for the individual rather than relying solely on a pop-culture icon or an _____.

viii. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the infographic:
The combined trust percentage of the Boomers and Silent Gen categories is lower than the trust percentage of the Millennial group.

ix. According to the infographic, what is the specific percentage of trust in celebrity endorsements among Millennials (ages 21-34)?

x. Which teen pop icon is specifically mentioned as endorsing Pepsi during the commercial breaks of the 2000s?

Ans :

- i. (c) The product was linked to causing childhood obesity.
- ii. (c) (i) and (iii) [Boomers (7%) is lower than Gen X (8%); Silent Gen is 2%].
- iii. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- iv. Consumers often admire or relate to a celebrity and believe that by purchasing the endorsed product, they can emulate that celebrity's success, beauty, or athletic skill. This psychological association transfers the desired traits of the icon onto the product in the consumer's mind.
- v. (c) Gen Z (16% is double Gen X's 8%).
- vi. As consumers become better educated and have faster access to information, their blind faith in endorsements is waning. While a celebrity might initially attract them to a brand, they will quickly move away if the actual product quality does not meet their expectations.
- vii. athlete
- viii. True (Boomers 7% + Silent Gen 2% = 9%, which is less than Millennials' 14%).
- ix. 14%
- x. Britney Spears.

26. Read the following passage carefully:

1. The most characteristic feature of spiders is their ability to produce silken threads. Spiders normally have six finger-like silk glands, called 'spinnerets' located beneath their abdomen. To spin a web, the spider squeezes the silk out of its body through two small holes. The liquid silk is thicker than water and dries into a fine thread as soon as it comes in contact with air. Spider silk is much stronger than steel and resists breakage because of its elasticity. It can stretch up to 140 per cent of its original length. The diameter of these silken threads is about 10,000 of an inch. Spiders use this silk to make webs to trap their prey. The egg sacs of some spiders are also made of silk which pre-treats the unborn progeny. Sometimes the spider can also use its silk as a safety feature. A certain species of spider 'phidippus apacheanecs' trails a safety line of fine silk as it jumps. It uses the silk line to recover if it misses its target. The silk of 'N aphils Spider' is the strongest natural fiber known.

2. The spinning of webs is a remarkable example of instinctive behaviour. A spider does not have to learn how to make a web, although spinning itself can be adopted to unique circumstances. For example, 'orb' webs are circular in shape and take an hour to build. Funnel spiders pin a net-like entrance to their homes, which helps to trap food. Similarly, trap door spiders dig their homes and spin a trap door out of their silk for trapping insects.

Black and Yellow Garden Spider	Fisher Spider
	
Typically found in fields and gardens during daytime	Do not need webs to catch prey, track down insects and pounce on them.
Common House Spider	Woodlouse Hunting Spider
	
Found in houses, sheds and garages; Typically weave their webs in ceiling and window corners.	Spotted outside in leaves, wood or rock pill bugs,
Grass Spiders	
	
Webs are weaved in grass, visible in morning dew	

3. As integral components of our biosphere, spiders have an intrinsic existence value. They are efficient predators that play an important role in controlling the pests of cotton. They are also a source of food for other creatures such as birds and wasps. Thus, the presence of spiders is an ecological indicator signalling the health of natural ecosystem.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what physical process allows liquid silk to transform into a fine, solid thread?

- (a) It is compressed by the spider's legs.
 (b) It dries upon contact with the air.
 (c) It is mixed with water in the abdomen.
 (d) It is heated by the spider's body.

- ii. Based on the descriptions in the image, which of the following spiders are correctly matched with their hunting behavior?

- (i) Fisher Spider — Does not need webs; pounces on prey.
 (ii) Common House Spider — Weaves webs in ceiling corners.
 (iii) Woodlouse Hunting Spider — Spouts silk from a distance.
 (iv) Black and Yellow Garden Spider — Found in fields during daytime.

Choose the correct option:

- (a) (i), (ii), and (iii) (b) (i), (ii), and (iv)
 (c) (ii) and (iii) (d) (iii) and (iv)

- iii. **Assertion (A):** The spinning of webs by spiders is considered a remarkable example of instinctive behavior.

Reason (R): A spider does not have to learn how to make a web, although the process can be adapted to unique circumstances.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

- iv. Identify two specific safety or reproductive uses of silk mentioned in the text, apart from trapping prey in a standard web.

- v. Which of the following properties makes spider silk more resistant to breakage than steel?

- (a) Its extreme thickness
 (b) Its chemical acidity
 (c) Its finger-like shape
 (d) Its high elasticity

- vi. Analyze the ecological role of spiders. How do they contribute to agriculture and what does their presence indicate about an ecosystem's health?

- vii. Complete the following sentence based on the biological features described in Paragraph 1: Spiders produce silk through six specialized finger-like glands located beneath the abdomen called _____.

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:

According to the image, Grass Spiders weave webs that are most easily visible in the morning dew.

- ix. According to the passage, what is the strongest natural fiber known to man?
- x. As per the text, up to what percentage of its original length can spider silk stretch?

Ans :

- i. (b) It dries upon contact with the air.
- ii. (b) (i), (ii), and (iv) [The image notes the Woodlouse Hunter spots prey in leaves/rocks but doesn't mention spouting silk].
- iii. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- iv. Spiders use silk to create egg sacs to protect their unborn progeny and as a safety line (like the 'Phidippus apacheanecs') to recover if they miss a jump.
- v. (d) Its high elasticity (it can stretch up to 140% of its length).
- vi. Spiders act as efficient predators that help control pests in crops like cotton. Because they are vital to the food chain and pest control, their presence serves as an "ecological indicator" of a healthy, balanced natural ecosystem.
- vii. spinnerets
- viii. True
- ix. The silk of the 'Nephila' Spider.
- x. 140 per cent.

27. Read the following passage carefully:

1. India is home to an estimated 10% of the global Snow Leopard population spread across five Himalayan states of Jammu and Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Sikkim and Arunachal Pradesh which is only 5% of the available global habitat for the animal.
2. Project Snow Leopard was introduced in India by the Project Snow Leopard Committee instituted by the Ministry of Environment and Forests, Government of India, in the year 2009 to safeguard and conserve India's unique natural heritage of high-altitude wildlife populations and their habitats by promoting conservation through participatory policies and actions.
3. Project Tiger and Project Elephant are prevalent in India with the former introduced in 1973 garnering worldwide attention.

4. The Snow Leopard usually occurs at an altitude of >2700m above sea level and is the apex predator in the Himalayan Region along with the Tibetan Wolf. The project is not only to protect the Snow Leopard but as with Project Tiger, it is considered an umbrella species and with its protection, comes the protection of other species and the habitat of which they are all a part.
5. Top 3 National Parks in India where the Snow Leopard can likely be seen
 - i. Kibber Wildlife Sanctuary - Himachal Pradesh
 - ii. Ulley Valley - Ladakh
 - iii. Hemis National Park - Himachal Pradesh



6. The reasons for the introduction of Project Snow Leopard are as follows.
 - i. High altitudes of India > 3000m including the Himalayan and Trans-Himalayan biogeographic zones support a unique wildlife assemblage of global conservation.
 - ii. There has been relatively less attention on the region from the viewpoint of wildlife conservation.
 - iii. The region represents a vast rangeland system supporting important traditional pastoral economies and lifestyles.
 - iv. The region provides essential ecosystem services and harbours river systems vital for the nation's food security.
 - v. India has ratified international agreements promoting the conservation of high-altitude

wildlife species such as the snow leopard.

- vi. The region is important for the country's national security as well as international relations.
- vii. The high-altitude wildlife in India today faces a variety of threats.
- viii. The existing high-altitude protected areas in India require considerable strengthening.
- ix. Wildlife Management in the region needs to be made participatory.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what is the geographical distribution of the Snow Leopard population in India?
 - (a) It is found exclusively in the state of Sikkim.
 - (b) It is spread across five different Himalayan states.
 - (c) It covers 50% of the animal's global habitat.
 - (d) It is restricted to altitudes below 2700 meters.
- ii. Based on the infographic provided, which of the following statements are correct?
 - (i) The scientific name of the Snow Leopard is 'Uncia uncia'.
 - (ii) The world population is estimated to be between 400 and 600.
 - (iii) The IUCN status of the Snow Leopard is "Vulnerable."
 - (iv) Project Snow Leopard covers a protected area of 1,28,000 sq. km.

Choose the correct option:

 - (a) (i), (ii), and (iii) (b) (ii) and (iv)
 - (c) (i), (iii), and (iv) (d) (iii) and (iv)
- iii. Explain the concept of an "umbrella species" as applied to the Snow Leopard and describe the broader impact of its conservation on the ecosystem.
- iv. Which of the following is NOT mentioned in Paragraph 6 as a reason for the introduction of Project Snow Leopard?
 - (a) Support for traditional pastoral economies.
 - (b) Protection of vital river systems for food security.
 - (c) High levels of existing conservation attention.
 - (d) Strengthening of existing protected areas.
- v. **Assertion (A):** Project Snow Leopard was introduced to safeguard India's natural heritage of high-altitude wildlife.

Reason (R): High-altitude regions provide essential ecosystem services and are important for national security.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 - (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 - (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.
 - vi. Identify the three specific National Parks or regions listed where a traveler is likely to spot a Snow Leopard.
 - vii. Complete the following sentence based on the predatory hierarchy mentioned in the text:
In the Himalayan Region, the Snow Leopard serves as the apex predator alongside the _____.
 - viii. State whether the following statement is True or False:
Project Tiger was introduced in 1973, which is earlier than the introduction of Project Snow Leopard.
 - ix. According to the infographic, what is the estimated global population of Snow Leopards?
 - x. At what minimum altitude (in meters) does the Snow Leopard usually occur, according to Paragraph 4?
- Ans :**
- i. (b) It is spread across five different Himalayan states.
 - ii. (c) (i), (iii), and (iv) [The infographic shows 400–600 is the population in India, not the world].
 - iii. An "umbrella species" is one whose conservation automatically protects numerous other species and the entire habitat they share. Because the Snow Leopard is an apex predator at the top of the food chain, maintaining its population requires a healthy ecosystem, thereby safeguarding all the plants and animals below it.
 - iv. (c) High levels of existing conservation attention (The text actually states there has been less attention).
 - v. (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 - vi. The three locations are Kibber Wildlife Sanctuary (Himachal Pradesh), Ulley Valley (Ladakh), and Hemis National Park (Ladakh/Himachal border).
 - vii. Tibetan Wolf
 - viii. True

- ix. 4,500–7,500.
- x. Greater than 2,700m.

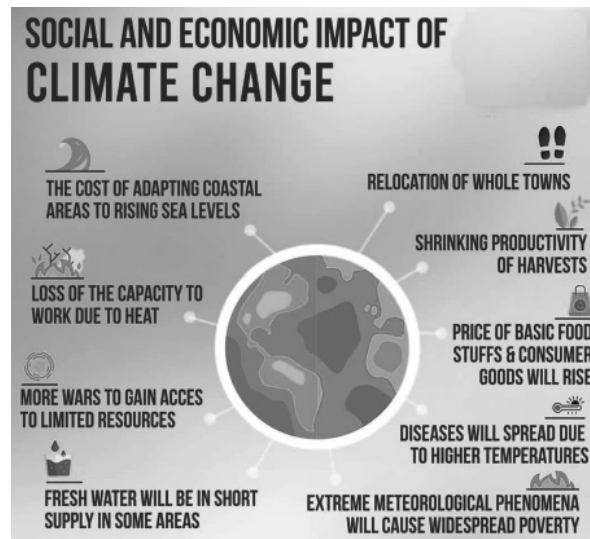
28. Read the following passage carefully:

1. India's average temperature has already increased by around 0.7 degrees Celsius during the 1901-2018 period due to Greenhouse gas emissions and by the end of 2100 it is expected to rise by approximately 4.4 degrees Celsius warns the first-ever climate change assessment report by the Indian government.
2. The report Assessment of Climate Change over the Indian Region prepared by the Union Ministry of Earth Sciences (MoES) warned that the rapid changes in the temperature would mean increasing stress on India's "natural ecosystems, agricultural output and freshwater resources, while also causing escalating damage to infrastructure." This ultimately means a serious impact on the 'country's biodiversity, food, water, energy security and public health.
3. It said that several regions in India are global biodiversity hotspots with numerous endemic species of plants and animals and with the "climate changing more rapidly than usual, they may face increasing threats on account of these changes."
4. The MoES report cautioned that by the end of 2100, the "frequency of summer (April-June) heat waves over India is projected to be 3 to 4 times higher" and the "average duration of heatwave events is also projected to approximately double." According to the report, the Sea Surface Temperature (SST) of the tropical Indian Ocean has also risen by one degree Celsius, on average, during 1951-2015.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

5. The rise in temperature is playing havoc with India's rainfall which is significant for India's agriculture sector. The report noted that the summer monsoon precipitation (June to September) over India has declined by around six per cent from 1951 to 2015, with notable decrease over the Indo-Gangetic Plains and the Western Ghats. It stressed that the overall decrease of seasonal summer monsoon rainfall during the last 6-7 decades has led to an increased propensity for droughts in India.
6. "In particular, areas over Central India, South-West coast, Southern peninsula and North-Eastern India have experienced more than two droughts per decade. The area affected by drought has also increased by 1.3 percent per decade over the

same period. Climate model projections indicate a high likelihood of an increase in the frequency, intensity and area under drought conditions in India by the end of the twenty-first century," said the MoES report.



Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what is the specific temperature increase recorded in India for the period 1901–2018, and what is the underlying cause mentioned?
 - (a) 4.4°C due to agricultural expansion.
 - (b) 0.7°C due to Greenhouse gas emissions.
 - (c) 1.0°C due to rising Sea Surface Temperatures.
 - (d) 6.0°C due to rapid industrialization.
- ii. Based on the infographic and Paragraph 2, which of the following are potential socio-economic impacts of climate change?
 - (i) Escalating damage to infrastructure and relocation of towns.
 - (ii) Increased productivity of harvests due to higher heat.
 - (iii) Short supply of fresh water and rising prices of basic goods.
 - (iv) Spread of diseases and loss of capacity to work due to heat.

Choose the correct option:

 - (a) (i), (ii), and (iii)
 - (b) (i), (iii), and (iv)
 - (c) (ii) and (iv)
 - (d) (iii) and (iv)
- iii. **Assertion (A):** India's biodiversity hotspots and endemic species are facing increasing threats by the end of the century.

Reason (R): The climate is changing more rapidly than usual, placing extreme stress on natural ecosystems.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 - (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 - (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.
- iv. Identify the projected increase in the frequency of summer heatwaves by 2100 and describe the impact on their average duration as stated in the MoES report.
 - v. According to the data in the infographic, which of the following is a direct consequence of “Extreme meteorological phenomena”?
 - (a) More wars for resources
 - (b) Widespread poverty
 - (c) Rising sea levels
 - (d) Relocation of towns
 - vi. Analyze the relationship between declining monsoon rainfall and droughts. Which specific regions in India have experienced more than two droughts per decade?
 - vii. The word “propensity” as used in the fifth paragraph most nearly means:
 - (a) A strong dislike
 - (b) A natural tendency
 - (c) A complete solution
 - (d) A sudden reversal
 - viii. Complete the following sentence based on the rainfall data in Paragraph 5:
The summer monsoon precipitation over India has declined by approximately _____ from 1951 to 2015.
 - ix. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the infographic:
The infographic suggests that the price of basic food stuffs and consumer goods will likely decrease as temperatures rise.
 - x. By how many degrees Celsius has the Sea Surface Temperature (SST) of the tropical Indian Ocean risen between 1951 and 2015?

Ans :

- i. (b) 0.7°C due to Greenhouse gas emissions.
- ii. (b) (i), (iii), and (iv) [Paragraph 2 and the

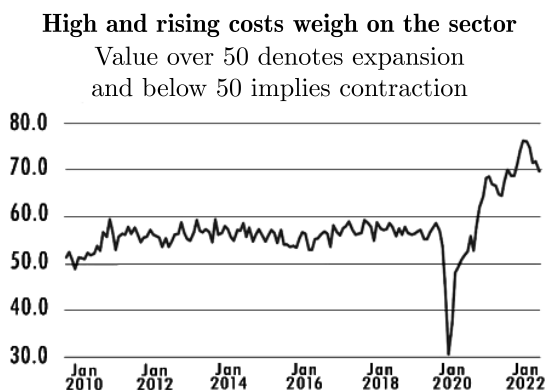
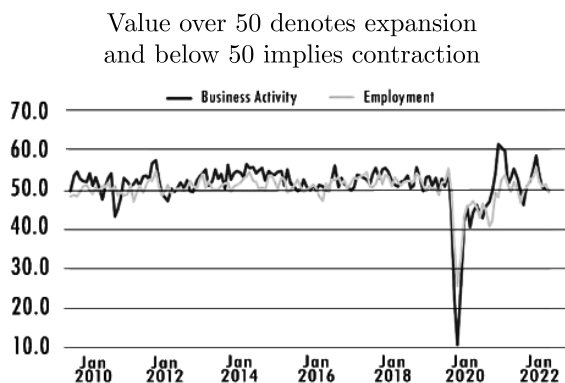
infographic both highlight stress on harvests/food prices, not increased productivity].

- iii. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- iv. By 2100, summer heatwaves are projected to be 3 to 4 times more frequent. Additionally, the average duration of these heatwave events is expected to approximately double compared to historical norms.
- v. (b) Widespread poverty.
- vi. The decline in summer monsoon rainfall has significantly increased the propensity for droughts. Specific regions affected include Central India, the South-West coast, the Southern peninsula, and North-Eastern India, all of which have experienced over two droughts per decade.
- vii. (b) A natural tendency.
- viii. six per cent (6%)
- ix. False (It suggests the prices will rise).
- x. One degree Celsius (1°C).

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

29. Read the following passage carefully:

1. Domestic tourism in India reached a peak in 2019, with more than 232 crores of domestic tourist visits and 3.14 crore international tourist visits, the highest since 2001 according to the tourism ministry. India moved to the 34th position on the World Economic Forum’s Travel & Tourism Competitiveness Index in 2019 from the 65th rank in 2013. Covid, however, halted the robust performance in its tracks, with domestic tourist visits falling to just 61 crore and international tourist visits to 71.7 lakh in 2020. However, tourism ministry data shows that while international visits to India dropped even further in 2021, to just 10.5 lakh, domestic visits increased by 11 per cent.
2. While rising costs are having an impact, all flights and hotels are fully booked, and prices for both are higher than they have been for some time. People who would otherwise have travelled abroad, are travelling within India instead. While branded and luxury hotels were among the earliest ones to recover their loyal clientele, small-scale and medium enterprises, which constitute more than 80 percent of the tourism industry, have not been able to recover fully yet. However, the domestic industry is gaining foothall.



3. Rajasthan, which has been heavily dependent on foreign visitors, saw much distress. Most of its luxury heritage Havelis and palaces that earlier saw occupancy throughout the winter months with foreign tourists, now remain available and within reach for domestic tourists. The prices went almost down 30 per cent from their 2019 peak numbers. Likewise, prices in some Goa and Kerala hotels, too, dropped to almost one-third. These are now starting to recover due to the increasing number of domestic as well as inbound tourists.
4. Prices of hotels at weekend destinations increased after the tourist rush, thanks to the techie crowd of Bengaluru and Hyderabad. In northern India, tourists flooded holiday destinations like Srinagar, Gulmarg, and Rishikesh. The young consumer is moving towards private and experiential stays and wellness experiences. The booking windows have become shorter and the length of stays is longer. Inbound tourism will recover by 2023 despite the hiccups.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, what was the total number of domestic tourist visits recorded

during the peak year of 2019?

- (a) 3.14 crore
- (b) 61 crore
- (c) 232 crore
- (d) 71.7 lakh

- ii. Based on the legends in both provided graphs, what does a data point plotted below the '50.0' line indicate?
 - (a) Economic expansion
 - (b) Market contraction
 - (c) Perfect stability
 - (d) Rapid inflation

- iii. **Assertion (A):** Small-scale and medium enterprises in the tourism sector have struggled to recover as quickly as branded luxury hotels.

Reason (R): These enterprises constitute more than 80 percent of the tourism industry and often lack a similarly loyal, high-end clientele.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- (b) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (c) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (d) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

- iv. Identify the two primary types of tourist visits mentioned in the text and compare their growth or decline between 2020 and 2021.

- v. According to the top graph, which two metrics saw a sharp, near-vertical drop to the '10.0' level around January 2020?

- (a) Tourism and Aviation Trends
- (b) Business Activity and Employment
- (c) Export and Import Statistics
- (d) Inflation and Rising Costs

- vi. The passage mentions that prices in Rajasthan's luxury heritage Havelis dropped significantly. By what percentage did these prices fall from their 2019 peaks?

- (a) 11 percent
- (b) 30 percent
- (c) 50 percent
- (d) 80 percent

- vii. Analyze the change in consumer behavior among young travelers after the pandemic. What are two specific stay-related trends mentioned in Paragraph 4?

- viii. Complete the following Analogy based on the "Costs" graph (bottom):

Pre-2020 : Relative Stability :: Post-2021 : _____

ix. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the top graph:
The 'Employment' line (yellow) remained consistently above the 'Business Activity' line (blue) throughout the entire 2010–2018 period.

x. According to the final sentence of the passage, by which year is inbound (international) tourism expected to fully recover?

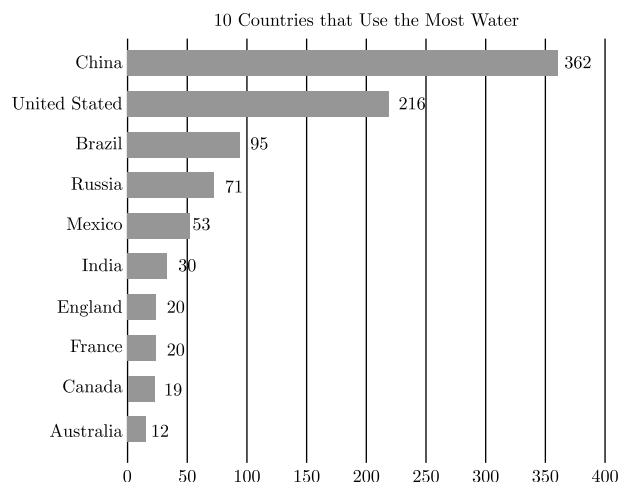
Ans :

- i. (c) 232 crore.
- ii. (b) Market contraction.
- iii. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- iv. The two types are domestic visits and international visits. In 2021, international visits dropped further to 10.5 lakh, whereas domestic visits showed resilience and increased by 11 percent.
- v. (b) Business Activity and Employment.
- vi. (b) 30 percent.
- vii. Young consumers are shifting toward private, experiential, and wellness stays. Additionally, their booking windows have become shorter while the total length of their stays has become longer.
- viii. Rising Costs (or High Costs).
- ix. False (The lines frequently intersect and overlap).
- x. 2023.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

30. Read the following passage carefully:

1. When we think of countries that are the major consumers of water resources we tend to think of the water used in our homes, such as water used for bathing and lawn sprinklers. However, studies have shown that home water use is only the tip of the iceberg and a large majority of the water consumed is hidden from plain view. The chart showing the largest water consuming countries of the world is thus an eye opener.
2. As India is an agricultural country, the most important crops of India are rice, wheat and sugarcane. Significantly these crops are the most water-consuming crops. Rice, a major crop export, consumes about 3,500 litres of water for a kilogram of grain produced. Punjab which is the 3rd largest producer of rice in India is completely dependent on groundwater for the production of its rice and consumes two to three times more water than Bihar and West Bengal to produce a kilogram of rice.



3. Sugarcane is another water-guzzling crop in India, which is a very popular crop among farmers in Maharashtra because they are assured of marketing by sugar mills. The primary source of water for growing this crop is groundwater, whereas states like Bihar which is more suitable for the production of sugarcane produces only 4% of the country's total sugar cane output.
4. Thus, measures need to be taken to ensure that crop production patterns within the country, across different states, are aligned to regional water availability.. Also, Agriculture policies should be put in place to limit the export of water-intensive crops. Emphasis should also be placed on the adoption of water- efficient technologies, management systems, farmer education, and advisory services to improve water consumption in agriculture.

NODIA

5. Crops in India are irrigated by several methods. Some farmers take to flooding the whole field. Others resort to channelling water between rows of plants while others resort to watering using large sprinklers. But the better method is to let water drop into plants using drip irrigation. Hence, India should consider investing in scaling up micro-irrigation to make India's agriculture more water-efficient. Drip irrigation is the most efficient and appropriate irrigation system. Instead of wetting the whole field surface, water is applied only to the plant root zone. The P.T.O Government of India's 'Per Drop More Crop' component under the Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchayee Yojana promotes the use of drip and sprinkler irrigation by farmers.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage:

- i. According to the first paragraph, why is the provided chart described as an “eye opener” regarding water consumption?
- It lists the most expensive water sources.
 - It focuses on household bathing habits.
 - It reveals water use that is hidden from view.
 - It explains how to build a lawn sprinkler.
- ii. Based on the data in Paragraph 2, which of the following statements about rice production in India is correct?
- Producing one kilogram of rice requires 3,500 litres of water.
 - Bihar uses three times more water than Punjab for rice.
 - Punjab is the 3rd largest producer of rice in India.
 - Rice is a major crop export for the country.
- Choose the correct option:
- (i) and (ii)
 - (ii) and (iii)
 - (i), (iii), and (iv)
 - (iii) and (iv)
- iii. Analyze the bar chart provided. Which country is the second-largest consumer of water, and what is its specific recorded value?
- iv. Which of the following is the primary goal of the “Per Drop More Crop” component of the Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchayee Yojana?
- Increasing the export of sugarcane.
 - Promoting drip and sprinkler irrigation.
 - Flooding fields to ensure root health.
 - Building sugar mills in Maharashtra.
- v. **Assertion (A):** Sugarcane remains a highly popular crop among farmers in the state of Maharashtra.
Reason (R): Farmers in this region are assured of marketing their produce through local sugar mills.
- Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 - (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 - (A) is false, but (R) is true.
- vi. Explain the technical advantage of drip irrigation over traditional flooding methods as described in the final paragraph.
- vii. Complete the following Analogy based on the water usage values in the bar chart:
 Russia : 71 :: Mexico : _____
- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the bar chart:
 The combined water usage of England (20) and France (20) is exactly equal to the water usage recorded for India (30).
- ix. According to the bar chart, which country has the lowest recorded water usage among the ten listed?
- x. Name one of the three “water-guzzling” crops specifically mentioned in the passage as being important to India’s agriculture.

Ans :

- (c) It reveals water use that is hidden from view.
- (c) (i), (iii), and (iv) [Punjab uses 2–3 times more than Bihar, not the other way around].
- The United States is the second-largest consumer of water, with a recorded value of 216.
- (b) Promoting drip and sprinkler irrigation.
- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- Drip irrigation is more efficient because it applies water directly to the plant’s root zone instead of wetting the entire field surface. This targeted application minimizes waste and makes agriculture more water-efficient.
- 53
- False (The sum is 40, while India is 30).
- Australia.
- Rice/wheat/sugarcane.



CHAPTER 1

TENSES

1. INTRODUCTION

The word **Tense** is a term of English grammar and refers to a form of the verb that indicates time. Time is a universal, non-linguistic concept with three divisions - Past, Present and Future; by tense we understand the correspondence between the form of the verb and our concept of time. When making a statement it is essential to indicate whether a situation exists now, existed in the past or is likely to exist in the future.

2. MEANING AND DEFINITION

Tense comes from Latin word tempus, meaning time. Tense is that form of a verb which shows time and state of an action or event.

Let us take three sentences:

- I sing this song to please you.
- I sang the song in her very presence.
- I shall sing another song for her tomorrow.

In the first sentence, the verb sing refers to present time. In the second sentence, the verb sang refers to past time. In the third sentence, the verb shall sing refers to future time. Thus, a verb may refer to present time or past time or future time.

Tense can be defined as follows :

A form of a verb which indicates the time and the state of an action or event.

3. KINDS OF TENSE

There are three main tenses corresponding to the three main divisions of time viz. Present, Past and Future.

Present Tense

The present tense indicates that the action is done at the present time; as,

- The sun rises in the east.
- I do not know him.

Past Tense

The past tense indicates that the action took place in the past; as,

- I went to Delhi last month.
- Mohan opened the door for me.

Future Tense

The future tense indicates that the action will take place in the future; as,

- I shall go to Delhi tomorrow.

Each of these three tenses has subdivisions to show continuity or completeness of the action and the time. These subdivisions are:

1. Indefinite (Simple)
2. Continuous (imperfect)
3. Perfect
4. Perfect Continuous

Indefinite (Simple)

It denotes present, past or future time in its simplest form; as,

- I write
- I wrote
- I shall write.
- The action in present, past or future time is mentioned simply without anything being said about the completeness or incompleteness of the action.

Continuous (Imperfect)

It shows that the event (in present, past or future) is still continuing or not yet completed; as,

- I am writing.
- I was writing.
- I shall be writing.

Perfect

It denotes that the event (in present, past or future) is in a completed or perfect state- present, past or future; as,

- I have written.
- I had written.
- I shall have written.

Perfect Continuous

It combines the meanings of the two preceding forms, Perfect and Continuous; as,

- I have been writing.
- I had been writing.
- I shall have been writing.

4. PRESENT SIMPLE TENSE**Rule 1**

This tense is used to express an action that takes or is actually taking place at the present time; as,

- He drives his car.

Rule 2

To express a habitual action; as,

- He drinks tea every morning.
- My watch keeps good time.

Rule 3

A universal truth; as,

- The sun rises in the east.
- Slow and steady wins the race.

Rule 4

In exclamatory sentences beginning with here and there to express what is actually taking place in the present

- Here comes the bus!
- There she goes!

Rule 5

In vivid narrative, as substitute for the simple past; as,

- Immediately the sultan hurries to his capital.
- Sohrab now rushes forward and deals a heavy blow to Rustam.

Rule 6

To express a future event that is part of a fixed timetable or fixed programme; as,

- The match starts at 9 o' clock.
- The train leaves at 5:20.

Rule 7

Discussing what happens in a book, play or film; as,

In **Lagaan** Amir Khan plays a central character.

Rule 8

Simple present tense is also used to talk about a physical feeling that is affecting you or someone

else; as,

- I feel heavy.
- His head aches.

But while physical perceptions such as hearing and seeing usually the modal **can** be is used; as,

- I can hear it.
- I can smell the food.

What is present, provided that present time is implied by the context; as,

- I understand what you say.

Rule 9

Used in Commentaries

While describing an event such as a sports match or a ceremony that is happening at the time; as,

- Prasad balls to Lara.
- Sachin takes a run.

Rule 10

Used in reporting

Reporting verb such as hear or tell we can report what someone said at some point in recent past by using simple present; as,

- I hear he is eating.

Rule 11

The simple present tense is often used with adverbs or adverb phrases such as; always, never, occasionally, often, sometimes, usually, every week, on Mondays, twice a year etc.; as,

- How often do you wash your hair?
- It rains in winter.

Or with time clauses expressing routine or habitual actions whenever and when (= whenever) are particularly useful; as,

- Whenever it rains the roof leaks.

Rule 12

It must be used instead of the present continuous with verbs which cannot be used in the continuous form, e.g. Love, see, believe etc. So that we can say; as,

- I love you but not I am loving you.

Affirmative Sentences**Pattern**

He/She/It/singular noun + verb (1st form) + s/es + ...

I/We/You/They/plural noun + verb (1st form) + ...

- He reads a book daily.

- Geeta plays football in the evening.
- I read a book daily.
- They play football in the evening.

Negative Sentences

Pattern

He/She/It/singular noun + does not + verb (Ist form) + ...

I/We/You/They/plural noun + do not + verb (Ist form) + ...

- He does not read a book.
- You do not play football.
- Tanu does not tell a lie.
- The boys do not go there.

Interrogative Sentences

Pattern

Do + subject + verb (Ist form) + ... ?

Does + subject + verb (Ist form) + ... ?

Q.W. + do/does + subject + verb (Ist form) + ... ?

- Does he live in Alwar?
- Do you know Mohan?
- Where does Geeta go daily?
- Why do you come late?

Interrogative Negative Sentence

Pattern

Does + subject + not + verb (Ist form) + ...?

Do + subject + not + verb (Ist form) + ...?

- Do you not read your book daily?
- Does he not help the poor?
- Do they not love their country?
- Does Sohan not take bath daily?

5. PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

Rule 1

This tense is used to express an action going on at the time of speaking; as,

- The boys are flying kites.
- I am doing my work.
- He is playing cricket.

Rule 2

This tense is used to express intention or likelihood. It refers to future time; as,

- I am going to Lucknow tomorrow. (Intention)
- Ramlal is going to die. (Likelihood)

Rule 3

This tense is also used for temporary action may not be actually happening at the time of speaking. It also some times expresses habit or custom; as,

- He is attending college very regularly. (Habit)
- I am reading William Shakespeare. (Temporary action)
- I am studying English novels these days.
- He is living in a rented house.
- Is she still modelling for Hindustan Lever?

Rule 4

This tense is used for fixed programme or plan of the nearest future; as,

- We are leaving for Mumbai tonight.
- Are you singing this evening.

Affirmative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + is/am/are + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A.

- Tanu and Gaurav are playing football.
- Mohan is reading a novel now.

Negative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + is/am/are + not + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A.

- She is not going to college today.
- Children are not playing now.
- I am not cooking food.

Interrogative Sentences

Pattern

Is/am/are + subject + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A.

Q.W. + is/am/are + subject + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A.

- Is he living in Delhi these days?
- Are you going to see him today?
- Where is your brother reading nowadays?
- Why are the boys making a noise?
- The present continuous tense is not normally used with the following verbs:

1. **Verbs of senses (involuntary actions)** : feel, hear, see, smell also notice and observe.
 2. **Verbs of expressing feelings and emotions** : admire, adore, appreciate, care for, desire, detest, dislike, fear, hate, like, loathe, love, mind, respect, value, want, with.
 3. **Verbs of mental activity** : agree, appreciate, assume, believe, expect, feel, feel sure/certain forget know, mean, perceive, realize, recall, recognize, recollect, remember, see (understand), see through (have an opinion), trust (= believe/have confidence) in, understand.
- Note** : But the continuous can be used with appreciate meaning to increase in value.
4. **Verbs of possession** : belong, owe, own, possess, e.g., How much do I owe you?
 5. The auxiliaries, except, be and have in certain uses.

6. PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

Rule 1

This tense is used to express an action that has been completed just now; as,

- I have written the letter.

Rule 2

A past action which is still continuing; as,

- He has served me for 5 years.
- She has been ill since Monday.

Note the difference:

- He has served me for 5 years (He is still serving).
- He served me for 5 years (He is no longer in my service).

Rule 3

To suggest the decision made in the past is still of importance in the present; as,

- The government has cut university budgets, consequently the dean has increased the size of most classes.

Rule 4

To express past action without a definite time; as,

- I have read the paper.

Rule 5

To express an action done in a space of time not yet exhausted; as,

- It has rained all the week.

Rule 6

To express something whose consequences still remain; as,

- I have been ill.

Rule 7

It denotes an action completed at the time of speaking; as,

- She has worked all the sums.

Affirmative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + has/have + verb (IIIrd form) + O/A.

- She has finished the task.
- I have read this report.

Negative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + has/have + not + verb (IIIrd form) + O/A.

- We have not met her so far.
- He has not learnt his lesson.

Interrogative Sentences

Pattern

Has/have + Subject + verb (IIIrd form) + O/A.
Q.W. + has/have + Subject + verb (IIIrd form) + O/A.

- Has Gopal milked the cow?
- Have you ever seen a white elephant?
- Why has the boy not come here yet?
- Which books have you purchased?

Adverbials

Just, already, yet, never, so far, lately, recently, etc.

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

Rule 1

This tense is used to refer to actions that began in past but are continuing to take place in the present and are expected to continue in the near future also; as,

- Tom has been working here since 1985.
- It has been raining here since yesterday.
- How long have you been working here?

Rule 2

This tense is used to refer to actions or situations that started in the past, Continued for sometime and have just stopped but have presented results;

as,

- Your shoes are dirty. It seems you have been walking in the fields.
- You look tired. Yes I have been working all day long.
- The gardener have been watering plants.
- The beggar has been crying.
- Why have her clothes been so wet?

Use of Since

Since is used for definite period of time/point of time:

1. Name of the days; as - Since Sunday/Monday.....
2. Name of the months; as - Since January/February.....
3. Name of the years; as - Since 1970/1980.....
4. Name of the parts of the day; as - Since morning/dawn/Sunset/Sunrise/dark/night/evening/afternoon.....
5. O' clock/am/pm; as - Since 4 o'clock, Since 8 pm, Since 7 am, Since 5:30 am etc.
6. Yesterday, last night, last week, last month, last year; as - Since last night, Since yesterday.
7. Name of the seasons; as - Since summer/winter/spring/autumn.....
8. Name of the festivals; as - Since Eid/Holi/Deepawali/Christmas etc.
9. Name of the events and stage of one's life; as - Since his arrival/departure/birth/marriage/death etc.

Use of For

For is used for indefinite/uncertain period of time (minutes, hours, seconds, days, weeks, months, year, decades, centuries); as,

- For three hours.
- For several minutes.
- For many weeks.
- For two months.
- For two years.

Affirmative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + has been/have been + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A + since/for + time.

- She has been living in Mumbai since 1992.
- Children are playing cricket for two hours.

Negative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + has not been/have not been + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A + since/for + time.

- Mohan has not been reading in this school for two years.
- They have not been playing football since 2 PM.

Interrogative Sentences

Pattern

Has/have + subject + been + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A + since/for + time.

Q.W. + has/have + subject + been + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A + since/for + time.

- Have you been living in Alwar since 2006?
- What has Geeta been doing for five months?

8. PAST SIMPLE TENSE

Rule 1

This tense is used to express actions which occurred in the past; as,

- Hira Lal bought two cups of tea.
- I bought this shirt in Mumbai.
- His aunt came back from Dubai.

Rule 2

Expressing past habitual actions; as,

- I went to the Cathedral on Sundays.
- He played badminton in his childhood.
- He always came to meet me.
- I always carried my identity card with me.

Rule 3

Referring to situation related to past time; as,

- My uncle was seriously ill.
- It was night.
- I was helpless that day.
- He was absent from the class that day.

Rule 4

We use Simple Past or Present Perfect tense when adverbs of time, as - today, this morning, this month, this year, recently etc. are used; as,

- I saw him today. (Past Indefinite)
- I have seen him today. (Present Perfect)
- I saw this movie this week. (Past Indefinite)
- I have seen this movie this week. (Present Perfect)

Rule 5

We use Simple Past tense after - It is high time, It is about time, It is time etc.; as,

- It is high time we left for the Railway Station.

Rule 6

Past Indefinite is used for the action which continues; as,

- While the mother cooked, the children played.
- While my wife cooked, I watched T.V.

Rule 7

Past Indefinite is used in sentences expressing Past habitual actions where - always, never, seldom, often, rarely, Used to/would, once a day/week/month, daily, every day/week/month/year etc. are used; as,

- My father used to get up early in the morning.
- Salim would wait for his beloved friend for hours.
- My mother used to take care of me.

Rule 8

When there are two clauses in a sentence i.e. two kinds of actions are going on with the previous action Past Perfect tense is used and with the subsequent action Past Indefinite tense is used; as,

- The bus had departed before we reached the bus station.
- We reached the bus station after the bus had departed.

Rule 9

If some action is going on in Past time and in the mean time another action occurs, in such situation, we use Past Continuous tense for the action going on and Past Indefinite for the subsequent action; as,

- I was having my lunch when Rustam came.
- When I was reading a book, Paragi arrived.
- While I was planting a sapling, an insect bit me.

Affirmative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + verb (IInd form) + O/A.

- He saw a lion in the forest.
- She wrote him a letter yesterday.

Negative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + did not + verb (Ist form) + O/A.

- I did not meet him yesterday.
- She did not complete her work in time.

Interrogative Sentences**Pattern**

Did + subject + verb (Ist form) + O/A?

Q.W. + did + subject + verb (Ist form) + O/A?

- Did you see a boy on the way?
- Why did you break the table?

9. PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE**Rule 1**

Past Continuous tense expresses an action going on at some time in the past; as,

- When she came into my room, I was studying.
- He was looking ill yesterday.
- I was reading all afternoon.
- When he came to me I was talking to my wife.

Rule 2

Past Continuous tense is used to refer to an event that was in progress at the time something else happened; as,

- The boy fell down while he was running.
- She was sitting in a Cafe when I saw her.
- We were having coffee when the lights went out.

Rule 3

This tense is used to refer to repeated action in the past; as,

- He was always telling me to do things I did not want to do.

Rule 4

This tense is used to refer to an action that was intended to be done in the past but was not done; as,

- Shirmila walked away, just as I was going to speak to her.

Rule 5

Past Continuous tense is used when two actions are going on Simultaneously in the past; as,

- While Ramu was playing, I was doing my work.
- While my wife was cooking food, I was writing book.

Rule 6

We use this tense in the following senses; as,

- He was becoming richer and richer.
- It was getting darker and darker.
- Anita was growing more and more beautiful.

Affirmative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + was/were + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A.

- The lion was sleeping under a tree.
- Mother was cooking food when I reached home.
- Boys were playing while girls were reading.

Negative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + was/were + not + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A.

- She was not reading her book when I saw her.
- The lion was not sleeping under the tree.

Interrogative Sentences

Pattern

Was/were + subject + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A?

Q.W. + was/were + subject + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A?

- Was he crying?
- Were the cattle grazing in your field?
- Were the police running after the thieves?
- Why was he disturbing you?
- Where were the boys going?
- What was she doing when you reached there?

Adverbials

1. While, at that time.
2. At that moment, etc.

10. PAST PERFECT TENSE

Rule 1

Past Perfect is used wherever we wish to say that an action had been completed before another commenced. The past of the sentence expressing previous action is put into Past Perfect and the part of the sentence expressing subsequent action is put into Past Indefinite (Simple Past); as,

- The ship was sunk by storm which had suddenly sprung up.
- Monu had been ill for two days when the doctor was sent for.

Rule 2

Past Perfect tense is used after - I wish, He/She wishes, they wish, as though, as if etc. ; as,

- I wish I had been born in London.
- She talks to me as if she had come from the USA.

Rule 3

If some action was hoped in the past but was not completed, we use words like - hope, think, expect, mean, intend, want, suppose etc. In such situation both clauses of the sentence will be in Simple Past tense; as,

- I had wanted to meet him but unfortunately I fell ill.
- I had hoped that he would come to attend my party.

Affirmative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + had + verb (IIIrd form) + O/A.

- She had seen the Taj Mahal.
- The patient had died before the doctor came.
- The Train had left before I reached the station.
- The peon rang the bell after we had reached school.

Negative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + had not + verb (IIIrd verb) + O/A.

- I had not seen the Red Fort.
- She had not completed her homework.
- The patient had not died before the doctor came.
- The farmers had not ploughed their fields before it rained.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

Interrogative Sentences

Pattern

Had + subject + verb (IIIrd form) + O/A?

Q.W. + Had + subject + verb (IIIrd form) + O/A?

- Had you seen the Taj Mahal?
- Had you reached school before the bell rang?
- Why had he not finished his work before the teacher came?

Adverbials

Before, after.

11. PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

The past perfect continuous bears the same relation to the past perfect as the present perfect continuous bears to the present perfect.

Rule 1

When the action began before the time of speaking in the past and continued up to that time, or stopped just before it, we can often use either past perfect or past perfect continuous; as,

- It was now six and he was tired because he had worked since dawn.
- It was now six and he was tired because he had been working since dawn.

Rule 2

To denote an action that had been going on for sometime before another action took place in the past; as,

- I had been solving problems of mathematics for hours when you come.

Rule 3

To express a repeated action in the past perfect as a continuous action; as,

- He had been trying to phone her.

Affirmative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + had been + verb (ing) + object + since/for.

- We had been studying in this college since 1990.
- They had been teaching there for ten years.

Negative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + had + not been + verb (ing) + object + since/for.

- He had not been working in this company for ten years.
- The washerman had not been washing clothes since 10 o'clock.

Interrogative Sentences

Pattern

Had + subject + been + verb (ing) + object + since/for?

Q.W. + had + subject + been + verb (ing) + object + since/for?

- Had they been working in that company for twenty years?
- Where had he been teaching them for four months?

12. FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE

Rule 1

It is used to talk about things which we cannot control. It expresses the future as fact. We use this tense to talk about what we think or believe will happen in the future; as,

- I think India will win the match.

Rule 2

It is used to express habitual action which will take place and which we cannot control; as,

- Spring will come again.

Rule 3

With adverbials such as tomorrow, day after tomorrow, next week, next month, on coming Saturday, in 2010 etc.; as,

- She will do this practice next month.

Rule 4

It is used to express the speaker's opinion or assumption about the future, the tense is used with: think, know, hope, suppose, believe, expect, perhaps, probably, surely; as,

- I think he will play.

Rule 5

Verbs not normally used in the continuous tenses, e.g. auxiliary verbs, verbs of the senses, of emotion, thinking, possessing etc usually express the future by the future simple, though **be going to** is sometime possible; as,

- He will be here at six.
- You will have time for tea.

Rule 6

It is used, chiefly in newspapers, news broadcasts, for formal announcement of future plans and for weather forecasts; as,

- The president will open the new heliport tomorrow.
- The fog will persist in all areas.

Affirmative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + will/shall + verb (1st form) + object.

- I shall meet Dr. Verma tomorrow.
- He will do his work honestly.
- She will always obey her parents.
- Zeenat and Jannat will win the competition.

Interrogative Sentences

Pattern

Will/Shall + subject + verb (1st form) + object?
Q.W. + will/shall + subject + verb (1st form) + object?

- Will you accept my advice?
- Will he attend the meeting on Sunday?
- Why will they do the work here?
- Who will come to meet you tomorrow?

Interrogative Negative Sentences

Pattern

Will/Shall + subject + not + verb (1st form) + object?
Q.W. + will/shall + subject + not + verb (1st form) + object?

- Will you not take the examination this year?
- Why will they not celebrate Holi this year?

13. FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE

Rule 1

It indicates an action that will be going on in the future. It is usually accompanied by another simultaneous action; as,

- I shall be sleeping when you will be going for a walk.

Rule 2

We use this tense to talk about actions in the future which are already planned or which are expected to happen in the normal course of things; as,

- I will be staying here till Sunday.

Note : With the future continuous we normally mention the future time (next Friday etc.).

Rule 3

This tense is used to indicate that a longer action in the future will be interrupted. The interruption is usually an action in the simple future; as,

- I will be sleeping when my sister arrives.

Rule 4

It is used to mention specific time as interruption; as,

- At midnight tonight, we will still be driving through the desert.

Affirmative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + will be/shall be + verb (ing) + object.

- I shall be seeing him next week.
- I shall be staying in this hotel tomorrow morning.
- They will be travelling at this time.
- The children will be doing their homework.

Negative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + will/shall + not + be + verb (ing) + object.

- They will not be having food this time.
- I shall not be doing my work that day.
- The children will not be learning their lesson.
- The boatman will not be rowing this boat.

Interrogative Sentences

Pattern

Will/Shall + subject + be + verb (ing) + object?
Q.W. + will/shall + subject + be + verb (ing) + object?

- Will you be coming here tomorrow?
- Who will be doing your work that day?
- How will you be doing this work?
- Will he be preparing for his examination there?

Interrogative Negative Sentences**Pattern**

Will/Shall + subject + not + be + verb (ing) + object?

Q.W. + will/shall + subject + not + be + verb (ing) + object?

- Will you not be playing ludo that time?
- Shall we not be having our food there?
- Why will they not be whitewashing the house today?
- Why will he not be talking to me.

NODIA

Interrogative Sentences**Pattern**

Will/Shall + subject + have + verb (IIIrd form) + object?

Q. w. + will/shall + subject + have + verb (IIIrd form) + object?

- Will you have completed your course before the examination begin?
- Will they have reached the station before the train departs.
- How will they have reached the field before it starts raining.

14. FUTURE PERFECT TENSE**Rule 1**

It indicates an action which will be finished before a certain time in the future; as,

- I shall have come back from office before you go out.

Rule 2

It is used to express the speaker's belief that something has taken place; as,

- You will have heard of Ashoka's victory.

Rule 3

Sometimes it is used to express a past possibility; as,

- She will have purchased a new sari.

Affirmative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + will/shall + have + verb (IIIrd form) + object.

- All the guests will have taken dinner.
- We shall have finished our work by then.
- Ramesh will have completed his studies by the time his father retires.

Negative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + will not/shall not + have + verb (IIIrd form) + object.

- The thief will not have fled before the police reach there.
- We shall not have finished our game before father comes here.
- They will not have written the essay before the teacher comes.

Interrogative Negative Sentences**Pattern**

Will/Shall + subject + not + have + verb (IIIrd form) + object?

Q.W. + will/shall + subject + not + have + verb (IIIrd form) + object?

- Will you not have reached the office before 10 o' clock?
- Shall we not have eaten food before the guests come?
- Why will he not have finished his work before Monday?

15. FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE**Rule 1**

The future perfect continuous tense is used for actions which will be in progress over a period of time that will end in the future; as,

- By next march we shall have been living here for four years.

Rule 2

We can use the future perfect continuous to emphasize how long something has been going on by a particular point in the future; as,

- On Saturday, we will have been living in this house for a year.

Affirmative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + will/shall + have been + verb (ing) + object + since/for.

- The girls will have been dancing since 4 o' clock.

- The shoe maker will have been repairing our shoes since morning.
- The gardener will have been watering the plants for two hours.

Negative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + will/shall + not + have been + verb (ing) + ...

- Golu will not have been driving bicycle for three hours.
- The labourers will not have been whitewashing the house for four days.

Interrogative Sentences

Pattern

Will/Shall + subject + have been + verb (ing)?
Q.W. + will/shall + subject + have been + verb (ing)?

- Why will the teacher have been teaching the students since 10 o' clock.
- Will they have been travelling for six hours?

Interrogative Negative Sentences

Pattern

Will/Shall + subject + not have been + verb (ing) + object?
Q.W. + will/shall + subject + not have been + verb (ing) + object?

- Will the farmers not have been ploughing the field since morning?
- Why will the tailor master not have been sewing any clothes for three days?

Pattern

All persons + might/would/could/should/must + have + been + Continuous form of verb

- I should have been writing a book by now.



16. OTHER TENSE

Future in the Past Tense

Pattern

All persons + might/would/could/should/must + have + Past Participle form of verb.

- I might have given him a pen.

All persons + was/were + going to + Present form of verb.

- I was going to give him a pen.

Future in the Past Continuous Tense

Future in the past continuous tense are used to talk about an action we wanted to do in some past time but the action itself did not take place.

EXERCISE

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete the sentence to update the result of the regional science fair :
We have exciting news to share!
Our school _____ first place in the regional science fair.

(a) awarded (b) was awarded
(c) had awarded (d) has been awarded

Ans :

(d) has been awarded

2. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete the part of the disclaimer given in a textbook:

The authors of the book _____ all reasonable care to ensure that the contents of the book do not violate any copyright or other intellectual property rights of any person in any manner.

(a) has been taking (b) have taken
(c) has taken (d) have been took

Ans :

(b) have taken

3. Complete the given narrative by filling in the blank with the correct option.

I _____ watching that programme every week since it started.

(a) has been (b) had
(c) have been (d) was been

Ans :

(c) have been

4. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete the weather warning given by the IMD.
IMD on Sunday _____ a 'thunderstorm' alert for some districts in coastal Maharashtra in view of the extremely severe cyclonic storm Biparjoy gushing over the Arabian Sea.

(a) will issue (b) will be issuing
(c) issued (d) is issuing

Ans :

(c) issued

5. Complete the slogan, by filling in the blank with the correct option :

Planting a tree is a very noble deed and _____ the earth from global warming!

(a) saves (b) saving
(c) had saved (d) should save

Ans :

(a) saves

6. Complete the line from a song by filling the blank with the correct option :

The morning dew captures your essence,
The flowers and grass _____ your colour,
The Sunrise embraces your arrival,
As the dawn welcomes a new day.

(a) reflect (b) reflects
(c) reflected (d) shall reflect

Ans :

(a) reflect

7. Complete the given narrative by filling in the blank with the correct option :

The internship at the tech startup had me _____ excited about the potential of innovation and entrepreneurial spirit.

(a) feeling (b) felt
(c) to feel (d) feels

Ans :

(a) feeling

8. Complete the given narrative, by filling in the blank with the correct option.

The opportunity to volunteer at the local food bank made me _____ the challenges faced by underprivileged communities.

(a) realizing (b) to realize
(c) realized (d) realize

Ans :

(d) realize

9. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete the update on the school's chess team.

It's a victorious day !

Our school's chess team _____ he interschool chess championship.

(a) has been won (b) will winning
(c) was winning (d) has won

Ans :

(d) has won

10. Complete the given narrative by filling in the blank with the correct option.

Now that many employees have shown high productivity working from home, will their bosses hereafter _____ them to take working vacations ?

(a) expecting (b) expected
(c) have expected (d) expect

Ans :

(d) expect

11. Complete the line from a song by filling in the blank with the correct option.

The whispering leaves tell your tale,
The silent stones _____ your journey,
The sun casts light on your path,
Leading you towards tomorrow's glory.

- (a) have echoed (b) echo
(c) echoes (d) shall echo

Ans :

(b) echo

12. Complete the line from a 'Save the Planet' song, by filling in the blank with the correct option.

Let's see what we can do
To save the planet for me and you
E is for environment, keep it clean
If we _____ together, we'll make the best team.

- (a) will be standing (b) stand
(c) had stood (d) are standing

Ans :

(b) stand

13. Fill in the blank by using the correct word in the bracket.

Anyas _____ (eat) all the chocolates kept in the tray.

- (a) ate (b) eating
(c) have eaten (d) eaten

Ans :

(a) ate

14. Complete the line from a self-awareness song, by filling the blank with the correct option.

The river runs through your veins
The trees and mountains _____ your name
The moon and stars watch over
You're guiding your way back home
To dream the night away.

- (a) will (b) call
(c) had called (d) calls

Ans :

(b) call

15. Select the correct option to fill the blank about Dipti's nature.

She always _____ every person.

- (a) trust (b) trusts
(c) trusting (d) have trusted

Ans :

(b) trusts

16. Complete the given narrative, by filling in the blank with the correct option :

Heena _____ from fever since last Sunday.

- (a) suffered (b) will suffer
(c) suffer (d) has been suffering

Ans :

(d) has been suffering

17. Fill in the blank by using the correct form of the word in the bracket.

In the depths of the enchanted forest, where time _____ (stand) still and mythical creatures roamed freely, a young adventurer embarked on a quest.

Ans :

stood

Directions : In the following questions, a part of the sentence is underlined. Choose the correct Tense Form from the given alternatives (a), (b) and (c) to correct that part of the sentence. In case no improvement is needed, your answer is (d).

18. I have received your letter yesterday.

- (a) had received (b) have to receive
(c) received (d) No improvement

Ans :

(c) received

19. The boys are listening to my lecture since 8 O'clock this morning.

- (a) were listening (b) have been listening
(c) had been listening (d) No improvement

Ans :

(b) have been listening

20. The workers are waiting for their pay packet since morning.

- (a) would be waiting (b) were waiting
(c) have been waiting (d) No improvement

Ans :

(c) have been waiting

21. They had left the village a few days ago.

- (a) have left (b) would have left
(c) left (d) No improvement

Ans :

(c) left

22. It is high time that we did something about it.

- (a) had done (b) would do
(c) have done (d) No improvement

Ans :

(d) No improvement

23. His father wrote to him, "It is high time you start preparing for the forthcoming examination."

(a) would start (b) started
(c) had started (d) No improvement

Ans :

(b) started

24. The sun set before we reached the village.

(a) would have set (b) would set
(c) had set (d) No improvement

Ans :

(c) had set

25. All important people of the country are having large houses in cities.

(a) have
(b) were having
(c) have been having
(d) No improvement

Ans :

(a) have

26. When he got off the train, he realized that a large gathering of his admirers was waiting for his arrival for a long time.

(a) is waiting (b) had been waiting
(c) has waited (d) No improvement

Ans :

(b) had been waiting

27. The bell is ringing for two minutes.

(a) has been (b) had been
(c) have been (d) No improvement

Ans :

(a) has been

28. The train left before I reached the station.

(a) will have left (b) leaves
(c) had left (d) No improvement

Ans :

(c) had left

29. Ashutosh had occupying this house for 25 years and has no intention of vacating it.

(a) is occupying
(b) will be occupying
(c) has been occupying
(d) No improvement

Ans :

(c) has been occupying

30. By this time tomorrow, I will reach my home.

(a) will be reaching (b) shall have reached
(c) can reach (d) No improvement

Ans :

(b) shall have reached

31. They are waiting for her since morning.

(a) were waiting (b) have been waiting
(c) wait (d) No improvement

Ans :

(b) have been waiting

Directions : In the following questions, sentences are given with blanks to be filled in with correct Tense Form. Four alternatives are suggested for each question. Choose the correct alternative out of the four alternatives.

32. They did not know where they _____ from.

(a) had come (b) have come
(c) has come (d) come

Ans :

(a) had come

33. She feared that she _____

(a) will fail (b) may fail
(c) might have fail (d) would fail

Ans :

(d) would fail

34. All the streets were flooded; it _____ all day long.

(a) is raining (b) would be raining
(c) has been raining (d) had been raining

Ans :

(d) had been raining

35. When the third entered the house, the inmates _____ in the hall.

(a) were slept (b) were sleeping
(c) slept (d) had been sleeping

Ans :

(b) were sleeping

36. The water tank _____ before it was filled.

(a) had been cleaned (b) have been cleaned
(c) has cleaned (d) had cleaned

Ans :

(a) had been cleaned

37. She _____ for a grocer's when I saw her.

(a) is looking (b) was looking
(c) will be looking (d) has been looking

Ans :

(b) was looking

38. He _____ hard since morning.

- (a) worked (b) had worked
(c) has been working (d) would work

Ans :

(c) has been working

39. I _____ my spectacles. Do help me find them.

- (a) lost (b) shall lose
(c) have lost (d) will have lost

Ans :

(c) have lost

40. The toothache is unbearable, I _____ my dentist this afternoon.

- (a) am seeing (b) have seen
(c) saw (d) was seen

Ans :

(a) am seeing

41. Tomorrow afternoon at this time we _____ over the Caribbean.

- (a) flying (b) were flying
(c) shall be flying (d) have been flying

Ans :

(c) shall be flying

42. It is already ten but he _____ as yet.

- (a) has not returned (b) would not return
(c) had not returned (d) will not return

Ans :

(a) has not returned

43. The teacher _____

- (a) is teaching (b) are teaching
(c) has teaching (d) have teaching

Ans :

(a) is teaching

44. While it _____ we saw the rainbow in the sky.

- (a) are raining (b) is raining
(c) were raining (d) was raining

Ans :

(d) was raining

45. The little girl confessed that she _____ the glass.

- (a) broke (b) had broken
(c) breaks (d) will break

Ans :

(b) had broken

46. He _____ the intermediate examination.

- (a) was passing (b) passed
(c) has passed (d) have passed

Ans :

(c) has passed

47. The engineers _____ this bridge since last year.

- (a) have repaired (b) have been repairing
(c) had repaired (d) are repairing

Ans :

(b) have been repairing

48. Solar Eclipse _____ next Monday.

- (a) will occur (b) occurred
(c) has occurred (d) had occurred

Ans :

(a) will occur

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. Fill in the blank by using the correct form of the word in the bracket, for the given portion of a letter :

Therefore, I request you to please consider this request of _____ (construct) a park in our society so that each and every person can benefit and we can enjoy a healthy environment amidst the concrete jungle.

Ans :

constructing

2. Fill in the blank by using the correct form of the word in the brackets, for the given portion of a letter.

Thank you for exceeding company expectations and _____ (inspire) your team with your spectacular work ethic.

Ans :

inspiring

3. Fill up the blanks by using the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

- We _____ (go) to Guwahati by Rajdhani Express last month.
- Rajdhani train _____ (be) a fully air-conditioned train.
- It _____ (provide) food, cold drinks, water, and the blankets at night.
- The journey _____ (be) cool. It imparted solace to the soul and mind.
- On the opposite, there _____ (be) a priest.
- He _____ (be) in the church of Patna for the past twenty years.

7. I was informed that he _____ (read) a book.
8. He did not say when he _____ (come).
9. I hope that you _____ (pardon) me soon.
10. He taught me that good deeds _____ (be) never lost.

Ans :

- | | |
|-------------|---------------------|
| 1. went | 6. has been |
| 2. is | 7. had been reading |
| 3. provides | 8. would come |
| 4. was | 9. will pardon |
| 5. was | 10. are |

4. Fill up the blanks by using the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

1. Arjun _____ (be) a good friend of Lord Krishna.
2. He never _____ (want) to fight with his brother Duryodhan.
3. It was Krishna who _____ (inspire) Arjun by giving him Upadesas of Gita.
4. Arjun _____ (bow) before his Guru and then he started fighting.
5. The Mahabharata _____ (write) by Ved Vyasji.
6. The Mahabharata _____ (be) an epic.
7. Malaria _____ (be) caused by female Anopheles mosquito.
8. They _____ (be) also called carriers.
9. When a Mosquito _____ (bite) a person, the microbes enter into the bloodstream.
10. We should _____ (keep) the surrounding clean to avoid the breeding of mosquitoes.

Ans :

- | | |
|----------------|----------|
| 1. was | 6. is |
| 2. wanted | 7. is |
| 3. inspired | 8. are |
| 4. bowed | 9. bites |
| 5. was written | 10. keep |

5. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs given in the brackets:

1. The hungry child _____ for ten minutes. (cry)
2. He _____ along the road when suddenly he _____ an old man. (walk, meet)
3. I praised him for what he _____ for the poor. (do)

4. When I was at school, I _____ part in cultural activities. (take)
5. The workers _____ (repair) the road for two weeks, but they haven't finished yet.
6. When I reached the house I _____ that thieves _____ into it. (find, break)
7. My mother food when she _____ a noise. (cook, hear)
8. There is going to be a buss strike. Everyone _____ for auto rickshaws and rickshaws next week. (look)
9. He is a very rude person. I _____ him. (not help)
10. When you reach there, he _____ a book. (read)

Ans :

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. has been crying | 6. found, had broken |
| 2. was walking, met | 7. was cooking, heard |
| 3. had done | 8. will be looking |
| 4. took | 9. shan't help |
| 5. have been repairing | 10. will be reading |

6. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs given in the brackets.

1. I was _____ food when he came in. (cook)
2. The police _____ four thieves last night. (catch)
3. It _____ since 9 o'clock. (rain)
4. By the time the fire brigade arrived, the villagers _____ (put out) the fire.
5. Stars _____ in the sky at night. (twinkle)
6. All the students _____ the classwork when the teacher came in. (do)
7. Mahesh _____ tomorrow from Patna. (come)
8. The patient _____ before the doctor came. (die)
9. I saw that the policemen _____ the thieves. (chase)
10. He is a very rude person, I _____ him. (not help)

Ans :

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1. cooking | 6. were doing |
| 2. caught | 7. will come |
| 3. has been raining | 8. had died |
| 4. had put out | 9. were chasing |
| 5. twinkle | 10. won't help. |

7. Fill up the blanks by using the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

Last week I (a) _____ (visit) the trade fair. It (b) _____ (inaugurate) by the President of India. I (c) _____ (accompany) by my friend who (d) _____ (come) from the U.S.A. last week. He (e) _____ (live) in the U.S.A. since last five years. He (f) _____ (do) his M.B.A. from the New York University.

Ans :

(a) visited, (b) was inaugurated, (c) was accompanied, (d) had come, (e) has been living, (f) is doing.

8. Fill up the blanks by using the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

Kate Middleton may (a) _____ (be) looked dainty and fairy-like in her wedding gown but (b) _____ (talk) doing the rounds (c) _____ (be) that the dress bore a striking similarity with Grace Kelly's wedding outfit. Royal wedding fans couldn't (d) _____ (help) noticing that both the brides (e) _____ (wear) dramatic gowns with similar V-shaped necklines and long white lace sleeves at their respective weddings, (f) _____ (report) the New York Daily.

Ans :

(a) have, (b) talks, (c) are, (d) help, (e) wore, (f) reports.

9. Fill up the blanks by using the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

Honey, amla, gums, resins, tubers and tamarind; all these and more (a) _____ (come) from forests and (b) _____ (find) their way into our lives. But the tribals who (c) _____ (pluck), dig and extract them get a pittance. Now, the government (d) _____ (decide) to provide a minimum support price (MSP) for some select forest produce on the lines of wheat and paddy. The step could (e) _____ (help) around 40 million tribal families which still (f) _____ (depend) part or whole year on income from forests.

Ans :

(a) come, (b) have found, (c) pluck, (d) has decided, (e) help, (f) depend.

10. Fill up the blanks by using the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

A new study has (a) _____ (find) that birds living in cities (b) _____ (be) larger brains while species with smaller brains (c) _____ (find) almost exclusively in rural locations. Researchers at Sweden's Uppsala University (d) _____ (look) at 82 bird species in central European cities and in the surrounding countryside and (e)

_____ (found) that birds with relatively large brains, such as crows and magpies (f) _____ (inhabit) urban areas.

Ans :

(a) found, (b) have, (c) are found, (d) have looked, (e) have found, (f) inhabit.

11. Fill up the blanks by using the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

When I (a) _____ (be) sixty years old, I (b) _____ (be) open a club. All the members (c) _____ (be) a share in it. It (d) _____ (be) comprise forty members who should be fifty-plus in age. Health centre, swimming pool, and a dancing floor (e) _____ (be) be the features of that club. Membership fees (f) _____ (be) 5 lacs.

Ans :

(a) will be, (b) will, (c) will have, (d) will, (e) will, (f) will be.

12. Fill up the blanks by using the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

Peddacheppalli (a) _____ (become) a habitation after Pakistani Kapu brothers who (b) _____ (come) from Northern India, (c) _____ (cut) down a forest and (d) _____ (level) it, and hence the village (e) _____ (name) Peddacheppalli after the eldest of the brothers. Sage Agastya (f) _____ (live) here for some time.

Ans :

(a) became, (b) came, (c) cut, (d) levelled, (e) was named, (f) lived.

13. Fill up the blanks by using the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

With the onset of Kaliyuga, none (a) _____ (perform) pooja and the area (b) _____ (turn) into a forest with wild shrubs and mud hills (c) _____ (form) on the Shivlingam. When chappals (d) _____ (get) trees cut down for (e) _____ (form) a village, a valmeekam (f) _____ (surface) and local people offered prayers.

Ans :

(a) performed, (b) turned, (c) formed, (d) got, (e) forming, (f) surfaced.

14. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option given below:

(a) _____ the beauty of nature not through right but through touch. She (b) _____ hundreds of things through mere touch. She (c) _____ the smoothness of the skin of a silver birth by (d) _____ her loving hands on it. She

(e) _____ the same thing and felt the rough and shaggy bark of a pine. She desired that men with sight and hearing power must (f) _____ full use of these powers.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| (a) (i) enjoyed | (ii) was enjoying |
| (ii) had enjoyed | (iv) enjoys |
| (b) (i) will find | (ii) finds |
| (iii) has found | (iv) found |
| (c) (i) had judged | (ii) judged |
| (iii) would judge | (iv) was judging |
| (d) (i) passing | (ii) passed |
| (iii) pass | (iv) passes |
| (e) (i) do | (ii) does |
| (iii) did | (iv) will do |
| (f) (i) have made | (ii) will make |
| (iii) made | (iv) make |

Ans :

- (a) (i) enjoyed, (b) (iv) found, (c) (ii) judged, (d) (i) passing, (e) (ii) did, (f) (iv) make.



CHAPTER 2

MODAL AUXILIARIES

1. INTRODUCTION

There are some modal auxiliaries in English grammar. Words like will, would, shall, should, can, could, may, might, must, ought to etc. when used with verbs (usually before the principal verb) expressing the mode or manner of the action denoted by the verb are known as modals or modal auxiliaries. Modals use such ideas as ability or capacity, probability or possibility, permission, command, compulsion, duty, obligation etc. In most of the cases modals indicate present or future times, however, sometimes they also represent past times.

2. USES OF MODALS

Uses of different modals are given below:

Will is used

To express the pure future :

- You will see me at the mall.
- The Chairman will deliver the speech.

To express willingness, intention, promise, determination with the first person (I, We) :

- I will write the letter for you. (Promise)
- I will help you. (Willingness/Intention)
- They will win the match. (Determination)

Note : will is never used with the first person in the interrogative.

Shall is used

To express pure future :

- We shall overcome someday.
- I shall help you.

To ask for advice, suggestion, request etc. with the first person (I, We) in the interrogative :

- Shall I bring a cup of coffee for you? (Request)
- Shall I open the door? (Advice)
- Shall we meet tomorrow? (Suggestion)

Would (past form of will) is used

To express a habit :

- He would rise early in the morning and go for a walk.
- He would sit for hours reading this book.

To express a polite request :

- Would you open the door, please?
- Would you mind standing here?

To express a wish, preference :

- I wish you would come with us.
- Would that (I wish) he were here.
- I would rather have a coffee than milk.
- I would like to come with you.

To express an imaginary condition :

- I would do it, if I were allowed.
- I would buy a bike if I won a lottery.

Should (Past form of shall) is used

To express duty/obligation or advise or desirability:

- We should obey our parents. (Duty)
- You should exercise daily. (Advise)

Should often implies a mild suggestion or advice. It is milder form of must and ought to.

To express purpose after lest (in expression of fear) :

- Work hard, lest you should fail.
- They hired a taxi lest they should miss the train.

May is used

To express possibility :

- Sophia may turn up today.
- It may rain today.

To express permission :

- You may go now.
- May I come in, Sir?

To express wish, faith, hope :

- May God bless you!
- May you live long!

To express a purpose :

- She is working hard so that she may win a scholarship.

Might (Past form of may) is used

To express less possibility :

- She might come today.
- It might rain tonight.

To express permission :

- Might I raise a question?

Can is used

To express permission :

- You can go now.
- He can stay here as long as he wishes.
- Can I smoke here?

To express possibility :

- This can be true.
- Anyone can make mistakes.

To express ability or capacity :

- I can climb this mountain.
- Hritik Roshan can dance very well.

NOTE :

Can never indicates past time. In the sense of ability, the past and the future tense forms are **was/were able to** and **shall/will be able to** :

- He was not able to cross the road. (Past)
- I hope I shall be able to solve this problem. (Future)

Could (past form of can) is used

To express ability/capacity in the past :

- She could dance very well in the youth.
- I could give him an answer if he had asked me.

To express a polite request :

- Could I borrow your book?
- Could you wait for some time?

To express possibility under certain conditions:

- If we had money, we could buy a car.
- It could not be true.

Must is used

To express obligation or duty :

- You must work hard.
- Soldiers must obey the orders of their officers.
- We must not cheat others.

To express necessity or compulsion :

- The letter must be written today.
- She must do as I say.

To express emphatic advice or determination :

- You must see a doctor at once.
- You must not leave before you finish your breakfast.

To express assumption, conclusion/inference, certainty/strong probability :

- The Postmaster must be in his office at this time.
- She must be twenty one.
- He must have reached by now.

Ought (always followed by a 'to' infinitive) is used

To express the subject's obligation or duty :

- We ought to respect our parents.
- We ought not to deceive anyone.

NOTE :

There is no external authority in **ought** as there is in **must** which expresses the speaker's authority. **Must** compels action on the part of the subject.

Ought expresses duty, inner conscience, a sensible action or advice. It has the same sense as **should**.

To give advice :

- You ought to mediate for mental peace.

NOTE :

Would, should, could, might, must, ought to before **have** refer to past.

3. MARGINAL AUXILIARY VERBS

Need (not) is used

Chiefly to show absence of necessity or compulsion in the negative or interrogative :

- The negative is formed by **need not** and the interrogative by inversion.

- He need not pay your fees right now.
- You need to take a sound sleep.
- Need I speak to him.

It does not take **s** in the third person singular present tense. Its past is **had to** in the affirmative, **need not have** in the negative and **need have** in the interrogative.

- You need not have wasted your time in this useless activity.
- Need I have to see my doctor?

Dare is used

In the negative and interrogative. The negative is formed by dare not and the interrogative by inversion. It does not take **s** in the third person singular present tense.

- I dare not kill this snake.
- How dare you come here?
- Dare we interrupt him?

Both **dare** and **need** can be used as main verbs. Then they take **s** in the third person singular present tense. They form their negative and interrogative with **do** and are followed by **to** infinitive.

Used (to) is used

To express past habit :

- I used to carry a lunch box to school. (I don't carry now)
- I used to sing in my young age. (I don't sing now)

To express the existence of something in the past :

- There used to be a big mansion over here.



EXERCISE

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Complete the slogan, by filling in the blank with the correct option.

When it gets really hot, rain _____ a blessing.

- (a) should be (b) will be
(c) must be (d) ought to be

Ans :

- (b) will be

2. Select the option that identifies the error and supplies the correction for the opening line, from a Terms and Conditions document.

Though all efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy of the content on this website, the same could not be construed as a statement of law or used for any legal purposes.

Option No.	Error	Correction
(a)	efforts	effort
(b)	ensure	ensuring
(c)	could	should
(d)	of	for

Ans :

- (c)

3. A modal verb is always followed by

- (a) V⁵ (b) V⁴
(c) V² (d) V¹

Ans :

- (d) V¹

4. Can you lift this box ? What does the underlined auxiliary **can** suggests ?

- (a) Capacity (b) Competence
(c) Ability (d) Skill

Ans :

- (c) Ability

5. The game should be finished by now. What does the underlined auxiliary **should** suggests ?

- (a) Probability (b) Conjecture
(c) Deduction (d) Prediction

Ans :

- (d) Prediction

Directions : In the following questions, sentences are given with blanks to be filled in with an appropriate and suitable Modal Auxiliary. Four alternatives are suggested for each question. Choose the correct alternative out of the four alternatives.

6. I _____ rather die than join the gang of terrorists.

(a) could (b) should
(c) would (d) can

Ans :

(c) would

7. I _____ go on with the work, cause what may.

(a) may (b) will
(c) shall (d) can

Ans :

(b) will

8. You _____ tell the truth.

(a) must (b) would
(c) might (d) can

Ans :

(a) must

9. _____ you post this letter for me, please ?

(a) Must (b) Will
(c) Shall (d) Need

Ans :

(b) Will

10. Your sister is seriously injured. You _____ consult a good doctor.

(a) can (b) would
(c) might (d) must

Ans :

(d) must

11. The teacher said to Hari, "you _____ go where you like."

(a) may (b) can
(c) shall (d) should

Ans :

(a) may

12. He prayed that God _____ give me prosperity.

(a) must (b) could
(c) should (d) might

Ans :

(d) might

13. _____ I go out, Sir ?

(a) Can (b) Will
(c) May (d) Should

Ans :

(c) May

14. _____ God help you.

(a) Might (b) Can
(c) Would (d) May

Ans :

(d) May

15. It _____ rain tonight.

(a) will (b) may
(c) should (d) can

Ans :

(b) may

16. Work hard lest you _____ fail.

(a) should (b) may
(c) would (d) will

Ans :

(a) should

17. _____ heaven protect you !

(a) Can (b) May
(c) Might (d) Should

Ans :

(b) May

18. My grand mother _____ read without glasses even now.

(a) should (b) must
(c) would (d) can

Ans :

(d) can

19. You have a large number of shirts. You _____ buy any more

(a) need not (b) can not
(c) would not (d) should not

Ans :

(a) need not

20. As you sow, so _____ you reap.

(a) will (b) can
(c) shall (d) may

Ans :

(c) shall

21. We _____ drink in a public place. It is a crime.

(a) must not (b) should not
(c) would not (d) could not

Ans :

(a) must not

22. How _____ you speak to me like that ?

- (a) can (b) dare
(c) will (d) may

Ans :

(b) dare

23. He said I _____ use his car whenever I wanted.

- (a) will (b) would
(c) could (d) can

Ans :

(c) could

24. You _____ start your work in right earnest.

- (a) must (b) can
(c) should (d) may

Ans :

(a) must

25. One _____ love one's neighbours.

- (a) used to (b) ought to
(c) dare (d) could

Ans :

(b) ought to

26. We _____ do as we are told.

- (a) must (b) should
(c) can (d) may

Ans :

(a) must

27. You _____ not feel sorry for this petty mistake.

- (a) dare (b) need
(c) used to (d) ought

Ans :

(b) need

28. She _____ have been ill.

- (a) must (b) dare
(c) need (d) ought

Ans :

(a) must

29. At Lahore I _____ walk by the Ravi.

- (a) ought to (b) used to
(c) need (d) dare

Ans :

(b) used to

30. He _____ not eat so much, he will fall ill.

- (a) dare (b) must
(c) need (d) used to

Ans :

(c) need

31. You _____ not enter my class. I forbid it.

- (a) will (b) may
(c) shall (d) dare

Ans :

(c) shall

32. I _____ not come yesterday since I was too busy.

- (a) dare (b) need
(c) could (d) should

Ans :

(c) could

33. _____ you open the gate, please ?

- (a) May (b) Might
(c) Will (d) Would

Ans :

(d) Would

34. My father is not well. Still he _____ come.

- (a) can (b) may
(c) would (d) might

Ans :

(d) might

35. He _____ not worry about me.

- (a) may (b) would
(c) need (d) could

Ans :

(c) need

36. He _____ not challenge me.

- (a) need (b) dare
(c) would (d) might

Ans :

(b) dare

37. The news I heard just now is so strange that you _____ not believe it.

- (a) will (b) could
(c) might (d) None of these

Ans :

(c) might

38. You will have to catch the morning flight, so you _____ better get ready.

- (a) may (b) had
(c) should (d) would

Ans :

(c) should

39. He _____ sometimes force himself to work on till late in the night only to find himself unable to do anything the next day.

- (a) could (b) used to
(c) would (d) should

Ans :

- (c) would

40. _____ our king live long !

- (a) May (b) Must
(c) Should (d) Can

Ans :

- (a) May

41. We eat so that we _____ live.

- (a) may (b) might
(c) can (d) could

Ans :

- (a) may

42. Mr. Sharma said that it was money that he _____ collect from him.

- (a) shall (b) will
(c) can (d) could

Ans :

- (d) could

43. The father divided his property among his three sons lest they _____ quarrel afterwards.

- (a) should (b) shall
(c) will (d) could

Ans :

- (a) should

44. Had I known about the agenda, I _____ have attended the meeting.

- (a) could (b) would
(c) will (d) might

Ans :

- (b) would

45. He _____ easily swim across this river.

- (a) may (b) could
(c) need to (d) might

Ans :

- (b) could

Directions : In the following questions, choose the correct alternative out of the four alternatives that closest to the idea conveyed by the sentence.

46. He may take the examination.

- (a) He will take the examination.
(b) He must take the examination.

(c) He can't take the examination.

(d) He has been permitted to take the examination.

Ans :

(d) He has been permitted to take the examination.

47. You must come in time.

- (a) You are likely to come in time.
(b) You are obliged to come in time.
(c) You have the option to come in time.
(d) You can't come in time.

Ans :

(b) You are obliged to come in time.

48. Shall we sit in the lawn ?

- (a) I suggest we sit in the lawn.
(b) We must sit in the lawn.
(c) We have to sit in the lawn.
(d) We can sit in the lawn.

Ans :

(a) I suggest we sit in the lawn.

49. The rupee may be devalued.

- (a) The value of the rupee has gone down.
(b) The value of the rupee is to go down.
(c) It is possible that the value of the rupee will go down.
(d) The value of the rupee can't go down.

Ans :

(c) It is possible that the value of the rupee will go down.

50. Need you work so hard ?

- (a) You must work so hard.
(b) You don't work so hard.
(c) You don't have to work so hard.
(d) You can't work so hard.

Ans :

(c) You don't have to work so hard.

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. Identify the error and supply the correction for the following advertisement of an antivirus software. A properly installed and maintained antivirus program may wipe out any malware attack, be it a bot, a virus, a Trojan or even ransomware. Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
may	should/will

2. Read the given sentence from an article on Yoga. Identify the error and supply the correction in the sentence :

Yoga should help lower blood pressure, cholesterol, and blood sugar, all of which are not good for your heart and blood vessels.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
Should	Can/may/might

3. Read the given sentence from a science journal. Identify the error and supply the correction in the sentence.

‘When nutrition therapy is provided by a qualified professional, people could learn how to make better food choices.’

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
could	can

4. Identify the error and supply the correction for the following note in a smart watch’s instruction manual.

When the watch is connected to the mobile phone, the watch may automatically calibrate and synchronize with the time of the mobile phone.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
may	will

5. Read the given dialogue carefully. Identify the error and supply the correction in the sentence. Sanya exclaims, “Look! My keys are in the refrigerator. I will have absent-mindedly put them here while putting away the groceries.”

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
will	must/might/could

6. Read the given sentence from a recipe review article. Identify the error and supply the correction in the sentence.

This delightful recipe must keep your hunger pangs at bay with its balanced spices and oriental flavour.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
must	will

7. Fill the blank to complete the cautionary declaration, given below.

The traffic police _____ penalize the law breakers strictly.

Ans :

will

8. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

My class teacher told me that I can work hard.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
can	should

9. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

He said I will use his car whenever I wanted.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
will	could

10. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

You have a large number of shirts. You can not buy any more.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
can not	need not

11. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

We could eat lots of fruit and vegetables every day.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
could	ought to

12. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

I remember my promise. I would help you in the hour of your need.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
would	will

13. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

The German force lost no time in retreat lest they might be cut off and surrounded.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
might	should

14. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

The news I heard just now is so strange that you could not believe it.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
could	might

15. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

You may be hungry after all that walking.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
may	must

16. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

The father divided his property among his three sons lest they will quarrel afterwards.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
will	should

17. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

You could not disturb him during his work.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
could not	must not

18. Fill in the blanks with correct modal.

- He knew that he _____ (would/must) be able to reach office in time.
- You _____ (dare/could) not enter my house again.
- I thought he _____ (should/would) be at school.
- Raman _____ (can/should) speak in two voices.
- I _____ (can't/couldn't) write what you spoke.
- You _____ (should/can) have told me earlier.
- _____ (Can/Should) i get something to drink, please? I am very thirsty.
- _____ (Can/Should) I use your car, please?
- You _____ (can/would) go in now and meet the doctor.
- I _____ (would/should) love to teach these children.

Ans :

- would
- dare
- would
- can
- couldn't
- should
- Can
- Can
- can
- would

19. Fill in the blanks with appropriate modals:

- We _____ obey our teachers, (have to/ must)
- She _____ pass this time, (ought to/has to)
- He _____ not buy a car. (has to/need)
- He works hard lest he _____ fail, (should/ must)
- Do you _____ cook your own meal? (should/have to)

- The villagers _____ use kerosene lamps a few years ago. (must/had to)
- The old lady _____ take a bath every day before taking meals, (ought to/should)
- She _____ finish this work before I go. (has to/must)
- Ramesh said that they _____ report for duty on Monday, (should/ought to)
- We _____ prepare our lessons well before the examination. (ought to/must)

Ans :

- must
- ought to
- need
- should
- have to
- had to
- should
- must
- should
- ought to

20. Fill in the blanks using appropriate modals.

- I _____ eat 5 bananas at a time when I was young.
- You _____ see the lawyer at once.
- _____ god protect you from the pain and agony.
- My mother _____ watch T.V. for hours even now.
- It _____ be cold in the evening, who knows?
- Avoid the offending allergen that _____ cause allergy. It may be a particular food, perfume, smoke or a cold environment.
- Today you _____ put your mind and talents to use. You should establish new contacts.
- He said that the inspector had not been removed. This _____ affect the investigation.
- He _____ fail to deliver goods.
- The company _____ rather prefer to buy the shares of other financial institutions.

Ans :

- could
- must
- May
- can
- may
- might
- should
- might
- may
- will

21. Rewrite the following sentences using the words given in the brackets.

- It's not necessary to buy the cap. (need)
- The hotels will be full, possibly. (might)

3. I'm sure it is the sun cream you are allergic to. (must)
4. It's not possible for us to change the weather. (can't)
5. Is it a good idea to take it with us this time? (should)

Ans :

1. We need not buy the cap.
2. The hotels might be full.
3. It must be the sun cream you're allergic to.
4. We can't change the weather.
5. Should we take it with us this time?

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

22. In the following passage, one modal needs to be inserted in each line. Write the missing modal along with the word that comes before and the word that comes after it.

1. I believe I get them all in this shop.
2. You see, I buy a present for my friend.
3. What we look at first?
4. Gloves . I think they be on this floor.
5. I see just the kind we want.
6. You try these on.

Ans :

	Before	Missing	After
1.	I	can	get
2.	I	have to	buy
3.	What	shall	we
4.	they	might	be
5.	I	can	see
6.	You	should	try

23. Meera has written a dialogue between two friends. But she has used the wrong modals. Find the incorrect modals and replace them with the correct ones in each line.

1. **Sonu** : Where's Vikas? He can have been here half an hour ago.
2. **Vicky** : He should have got lost. He is still new to this town.
3. **Sonu** : He can have forgotten all about the plan, I suppose.
4. **Vicky** : He may not have forgotten. We are talking about it this morning.
5. **Sonu** : Well, something can have delayed him.

Ans :

	Incorrect	Correct
1.	can	should
2.	should	may
3.	can	could
4.	may not	can't
5.	can	must

24. Complete the dialogue, filling in the blanks.

Frog : You (a) _____ practise for longer hours as it will make your voice grow stronger.

Nightingale : But I (b) _____ as the weather is bad.

Frog : If you don't then you (c) _____ lose your audience. You (d) _____ to make them happier.

Nightingale : No, I am leaving your Bingle Bog Jungle right now, I (e) _____ not sing at any cost.

Frog : You (f) _____ not or else I will kill you.

Ans :

(a) must, (b) can't, (c) shall, (d) ought, (e) would, (f) dare.

25. Complete the dialogue, filling in the blanks.

Kinshuk : Doctor, I am not feeling well, (a) _____ you please issue me a medical certificate?

Dr. Anil : Yes, certainly I (b) _____ if you (c) _____ tell me your ailment.

Kinshuk : Sir, I (d) _____ go to Simla as I am suffering from workaholism.

Dr. Anil : This is no ailment. Sorry, in that case I (e) _____ You (f) _____ leave now.

Ans :

(a) could, (b) will, (c) can, (d) need to, (e) cannot, (f) may.

26. Complete the dialogue, filling in the blanks.

Prachi : (a) _____ I remind you that tomorrow we (b) _____ go for a movie?

Rashmi : No, you (c) _____ I (d) _____ ask Namrata to remind me.

Prachi : I (e) _____ be happy if you bring your sister along.

Rashmi : OK. I (f) _____ certainly.

Ans :

(a) should, (b) have to, (c) need not, (d) shall, (e) would, (f) would.

27. Complete the dialogue, filling in the blanks.

Vedant : Mom, (a) _____ I go for a picnic tomorrow with my friends?

Mom : Yes, you (b) _____ but you (c) _____ be very careful to carry your water bottle along.

Vedant : Ma, I (d) _____ certainly do that.

Mom : I am a little perturbed about your health, (e) _____ you carry your mobile in case I (f) _____ communicate with your teacher?

Ans :

(a) can, (b) can, (c) should, (d) will, (e) could, (f) need to.

28. Fill in the blanks with appropriate modals.

Cross-Border terrorism (a) _____ increase if there is no check now. The prime cause is, anybody who enters the state illegally (b) _____ be permitted to stay. Our government (c) _____ undertake strong measures so that this act could be prevented. I hope the terrorists. (d) _____ realise their moral obligation. Kill the sin and not the sinner, hence the terrorists (e) _____ not be punished rather they (f) _____ to be rehabilitated.

Ans :

(a) will, (b) should not, (c) should, (d) would, (e) should, (f) ought/need.

29. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate modal.

Mohan is not keeping well nowadays. He (a) _____ see the doctor immediately. He (b) _____ get well unless he visits a doctor. He (c) _____ be suffering from viral fever. He (d) _____ take proper medicine and rest lest he (e) _____ fall seriously ill. It (f) _____ affect not only his health but studies also.

Ans :

(a) must, (b) can't/won't, (c) may, (d) should, (e) should, (f) may.

30. Fill in the blanks using suitable modals.

You (a) _____ help the teacher to maintain a neat and organised classroom. You (b) _____ regularly inspect classrooms and (c) _____ assign duties to class monitors to participate. You (d) _____ ensure drinking water is provided to all. You (e) _____ impose a fine on students found littering.

Ans :

(a) must, (b) should, (c) can, (d) must, (e) may.

31. Fill in the blanks using suitable modals.

How (a) _____ you say such a thing! You (b) _____ be ashamed of yourself. You never (c) _____ be so bold before. You (d) _____ behave from now.

Ans :

(a) dare, (b) ought to, (c) used to, (d) must.

32. Fill in the blanks using suitable modals.

If we sit in an incorrect posture, we (a) _____ strain our back. As far as possible, this (b) _____ be avoided. If the posture becomes a part of habit, a low back pain invariably develops. It (c) _____ be cured if we become conscious of our posture. We can also take time out to perform a few exercises. If the exercises are done regularly, the backache (d) _____ certainly be cured. It (e) _____ also improve the blood circulation within the spine.

Ans :

(a) might, (b) should, (c) can, (d) will, (e) will.

33. Fill in the blanks with appropriate modals.

Ram (a) _____ keep his word as he has to repay all his loan. He (b) _____ be seventeen next week. I am certain that you (c) _____ see that how successfully he has accomplished his mission. (d) _____ he live long ! You (e) _____ not worry. Your money is safe.

Ans :

(a) should, (b) will, (c) will, (d) May, (e) need.

34. Fill in the blanks with appropriate modals.

A person with a fragile ego (a) _____ take anything you say personally. They not only have a hard time ahead, but (b) _____ also feel insulted. They (c) _____ get hurt and in return they (d) _____ injure others. They are called sadists who (e) _____ certainly mar others' reputation.

Ans :

(a) would, (b) may, (c) can, (d) can, (e) can.

35. Fill in the blanks with appropriate modals.

In India, the death toll due to road accidents has increased drastically. Most of them (a) _____ have been averted. Wider road awareness among road users (b) _____ be taught. Separate lanes for heavy vehicles (c) _____ be made. More stringent laws (d) _____ be enforced while issuing licenses. If we do not follow this, the degrading society like ours (e) _____ fail the next day.

Ans :

(a) could, (b) ought to, (c) should, (d) must, (e) will.



CHAPTER 3

REPORTED SPEECH

1. INTRODUCTION

The art of reporting the words of a speaker is called Narration. If we report what another person has said, we usually do not use the speaker's exact words (direct speech), but reported (indirect) speech. Therefore, you need to learn how to transform direct speech. The structure is a little different depending on whether you want to transform a statement, question or request.

2. DIRECT NARRATION

Direct narration is a speech which is reported by some other person exactly in the words spoken by the speaker. The speech is placed within inverted commas; as,

- She said to him, "I shall give you money."
(Direct Narration)

Points to remember about Direct Narration:

1. It is put within inverted commas.
2. It always begins with a capital letter.
3. A comma separates it from the Reporting Verb.

3. INDIRECT NARRATION

Indirect narration is a speech which is reported by some other person by using certain conjunctions in place of commas and making necessary changes in the verbs and the pronoun of the reported speech.

- She told him that she would give him money. (Indirect Narration)

Points to remember about Indirect Narration:

1. No inverted commas are used.
2. No comma is required to separate it from the Reporting Verb.
3. The tense of the Reporting Verb is never changed.
4. A conjunction may be used after the Reporting Verb if necessary.
5. Tenses, pronouns and words denoting nearness of time and position undergo certain changes.

4. TRANSFORMATION OF DIRECT SPEECH INTO INDIRECT SPEECH

Unless any instructions are given to the contrary, it should be assumed that the report of a dialogue is to be given by a third person. The order of ideas and the language of the original should not be changed when direct speech is turned into indirect speech. Only the necessary logical changes in verb tenses, pronoun person, adjectives and adverbs are to be made. Let's study the transformation of direct speech into indirect speech.

Change of Tenses

Rule 1

If the Reporting Verb is in the present (says, is/are/ am saying etc.) or in the future tense (will/shall do, will/shall have done etc.) the tense of the verb in the indirect speech is not changed.

Direct She says, "I am reading".

Indirect She says that she is reading.

Rule 2

If Reporting Verb is in the past tense (said, had said, was saying, had been saying etc.) the tenses in the reported speech are changed into the past tense (Do/does is changed to did, Did is changed to had done, Can is changed to could, May is changed to Might, Will is changed to would, Shall is changed to should).

Direct He said, "There is a scarcity of raw material."

Indirect He said that there was a scarcity of raw material.

Rule 3

Present Indefinite (see) becomes Past Indefinite (saw). Present Continuous (is seeing) is changed to past Continuous (was seeing). Present Perfect (has seen) is changed to Past Perfect (had seen). Past Indefinite (saw) becomes Past Perfect (had seen). Past Continuous (was seeing) becomes Past Perfect Continuous (had been seeing).

NOTE :

Past Perfect (had seen) and Past Perfect Continuous (had been seeing) remain unchanged.

Exceptions to the Rule

In case of a universal truth or permanent fact expressed in the reported speech, the tense remains unchanged irrespective of the tense of the Reporting Verb.

Direct My father says, "The sun is a star."

Indirect My father says that the sun is a star.

If the reported speech prescribed a state of affairs which still exists when the speech is reported, its tense normally remains unchanged.

Direct He said, "Mohan wants to become rich by winning a lottery."

Indirect He said that Mohan wants to become rich by winning a lottery.

Change of Pronoun**Rule 1**

First person pronoun are changed into pronoun of the same person as the person of the subject of the Reporting Verb.

Direct I said, "I have done my work."

Indirect I said that I had done my work.

Direct You said, "I have done my work."

Indirect You said that you had done your work.

Direct He said, "I have done my work."

Indirect He said that he had done his work.

Rule 2

Pronouns of the second person are changed into pronouns of the same person as that of the object of the Reporting Verb.

Direct Mohan said to me, "You should do your work quietly."

Indirect Mohan told me that I should do my work quietly.

Direct Mohan said to him, "You should do your work quietly."

Indirect Mohan told him that he should do his work quietly.

Rule 3

Third person pronoun remain unchanged.

Direct I said to Ram, "She should not be trusted."

Indirect I told Ram that she should not be trusted.

Change of Words Denoting Time and Position

All pronoun, adjectives or adverbs denoting nearness of time or positions must be replaced by words denoting corresponding remoteness or distance.

Direct I said, "I am glad to be here this evening."

Indirect I said that I was glad to be there that evening.

Some common changes are given below :

Direct	Indirect
Now	Then
This	That
These	Those
Here	There
Today	That day
Yesterday	The previous day
Tomorrow	The next day
Ago	Before
Last night	The previous night
Next	The next, The following
Thus	So
Hence	Thence

NOTE :

When, however, words like here, this, now, today etc. used in the direct speech refer to the place or time at which the speech is made, they do not change, as for instance :

Direct Ram said, "I shall see him today."

Indirect Ram said that he would see him today.

Changing Assertive Sentences (Statements)**Rule 1**

Outside the inverted commas, the verb said remains said; says remains says : said to become told; says to become tells.

Rule 2

Verb such as inform, reply, remind, declare etc. be used instead of said and told to give clear meaning :

Direct The thief said, "Yes, I stole the money."

Indirect The thief confessed that he had stolen the money.

Rule 3

That is used as a conjunction when the inverted commas are removed.

Direct She said, "I am unwell."

Indirect She said that she was unwell.

However, in some cases **that** is not required.

Direct He said to me, "I fear you have failed."

Indirect He feared I had failed.

Rule 4

Tenses, pronouns and words denoting nearness should be changed according to the rules already stated.

The rules for changing direct speech into indirect speech should be reversed when changing indirect speech into direct speech,

1. Use **say** in place of **tell**, **inform**, **reply** etc.
2. Put the reported speech within inverted commas, separating it from the principal clause by a comma.
3. Appropriate changes should be made in tenses, pronouns and words denoting remoteness.

Changing Interrogative Sentences (Questions)

Rule 1

Change the reporting verb into **ask**, **enquire**, **demand**, **want to know** etc. (Note that **enquire** and **demand** take the preposition **of** before a personal object)

Rule 2

Remove the sign of interrogation (?) and convert the question inside the inverted commas into a statement.

Rule 3

Remove the inverted commas and use **if** or **whether** as conjunction if the question begins with a finite verb, including auxiliaries **is**, **are**, **am**, **was**, **were**, **do**, **does**, **did**, **has**, **have**, **shall**, **will** etc.

Rule 4

The place of the auxiliary verb and noun or pronoun are exchanged in those items where questions begin with **is**, **am**, **was**, **were**, **will** etc.

Direct I said to him, "Will you teach me?"

Indirect I asked him if he would teach me.

Rule 5

No conjunction is used when the question begins with word like **who**, **what**, **whose**, **when**, **why**, **how** etc.

Direct She said to Ram, "Where do you live?"

Indirect She asked Ram where he lived.

Rule 6

In case of questions beginning with **who**, **what**, **whose**, **when**, **where** etc. the place of interrogative pronouns and adverbs are not changed (see example given above).

Rule 7

Tenses, pronouns and words denoting nearness are changed according to the rules already stated.

Changing Imperative Sentences (Commands and Requests)

In imperative sentences we have orders, commands and requests.

Rule 1

The reporting Verb is changed into a verb signifying command, request or advice. Commands can be expressed by words such as **command**, **order**, **tell**, **charge**, **bid**, **require** etc. Requests can be expressed by words such as **request**, **beg**, **implore**, **ask**, **solicit** etc. Advice can be expressed by words such as **advice**, **exhort**, **urge** etc. Other words which may be of use in imperative sentences are : **forbid**, **persuade** etc.

Direct Ram said to me, "Help me carry my box."

Indirect Ram requested me to help him carry his box.

Direct The teacher said, "Sit quietly children, do not disturb me."

Indirect The teachers ordered the children to sit quietly and forbade them to disturb her.

Rule 2

The verb of the reported speech is changed into an infinitive (In the above examples, **help** becomes **to help** and **sit** becomes **to sit**).

Rule 3

If the reported speech is negative, the word **not** is placed before **to** :

Direct The teacher said, "Children, do not quarrel over trifles."

Indirect The teacher told the children not to quarrel over trifles.

Rule 4

Tenses, pronouns and words denoting nearness are changed according to the rules already discussed.

Rule 5

Using the word **Let** in changing imperative

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

sentences

1. **Let** is used to make proposals. In such cases, the Reporting Verb changes to suggest, propose etc.
Direct : She said, "Let us have some tea".
Indirect : She suggested that they should have some tea.
2. **Let** is often used as an ordinary verb signifying **allow**.
Direct : He said to Rita, "Let me go home."
Indirect : He requested Rita to let him go home.
3. **Let** is at times used to express a condition. In that case it should be changed to **might** and the sentence modified slightly.
Direct : She said, "Let it rain ever so hard, I shall go."
Indirect : She said that she would go however hard it might rain.



EXERCISE

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Read the dialogue between a librarian and a student.
 Librarian : Welcome back! It's good to see you, young man!
 Student : Thanks! I was overloaded with assignments, so I have not visited the library this week.
 Based on the conversation above, report the dialogue between a librarian and a student by completing the sentence.
 The librarian greeted the student warmly, expressing pleasure at his visit. The student thanked her and explained that _____ which had limited his recent visits to the library.
 Select the correct option from those given below :
 (a) he had been overloaded with assignments
 (b) he has been overloaded with assignments
 (c) he was overloaded with assignments
 (d) he is overloaded with assignments
Ans :
 (a) he had been overloaded with assignments
2. Read the dialogue between Karan and his teacher regarding his absence from school.
 Teacher : Karan, why were you absent yesterday ?
 Karan : Yesterday I had cold and fever, sir. I couldn't inform you beforehand.
 Teacher : That's okay. Take care of your health.
 Select the correct option to complete the reporting of the above dialogue.
 The teacher asked Karan _____.
 Karan replied that he had cold and fever the previous day and added that he couldn't inform the teacher beforehand. The teacher advised him to take care of his health.
 (a) why did he remain absent the previous day
 (b) why he had been absent the previous day
 (c) the reason he was absent
 (d) why was he absent yesterday
Ans :
 (b) why he had been absent the previous day
3. Read the dialogue between Shabnam and her mentor, Sara, regarding her summer internship programme.
 Sara : Why did you choose to participate in this internship programme?
 Shabnam : Ah! I am convinced this programme has the potential to enhance my abilities.

Sara asked Shabnam _____ in that internship programme. Shabnam sighed and exclaimed that she was convinced that programme had the potential to enhance her abilities.

Select the correct option to complete the reporting of the above dialogue:

- (a) why to choose to participate
- (b) to choose participation
- (c) why she had chosen to participate
- (d) with her choice in participating

Ans :

(c) why she had chosen to participate

4. Read the dialogue between Anil and Sanjeev.

Anil : Where are you going?

Sanjeev : To the airport.

Anil : May I drop you there as I'm going in that direction?

Anil asked Sanjeev where he was going and offered to drop him as _____.

Select the correct option to complete the reporting of the above dialogue :

- (a) he could be going in that direction.
- (b) he would be going in the direction.
- (c) he is going in the direction
- (d) he was going in that direction

Ans :

(d) he was going in that direction

5. Read the dialogue between Ramya and he dad.

Dad : "Ramya, I heard your school made some changes recently. What is going on?"

Ramya : "Yes, dad. The school administration _____ a revised attendance policy to ensure academic success."

Select the correct option to complete the reporting of the above dialogue :

- (a) will implement (b) is implementing
- (c) has implemented (d) was implementing

Ans :

(c) has implemented

6. Read the dialogue between Vilakshna and her physician, Dr. Sharnani, regarding the effectiveness of her medication.

Dr. Sharnani : How is your acid reflux problem now ?

Vilakshna : I'd tried everything without success, but this new medicine is great.

Select the correct option to complete the reporting of the above dialogue.

Dr. Sharnani asked Vilakshna about her acid

reflux problem to which Vilakshna replied that she'd tried everything without success, _____.

- (a) but she found the new medicine to be great
- (b) but she thought that this new medicine was great
- (c) but the new medicine was great
- (d) but that new medicine was great

Ans :

(d) but that new medicine was great

7. Read the dialogue between Adam and Emma about a career option.

Adam : Why did you opt for a career in journalism?

Emma : I couldn't resist my love for storytelling and my desire to expose the truth.

Select the option to complete the reporting of the above dialogue :

Adam asked Emma _____ in journalism Emma passionately expressed that she couldn't resist her love for storytelling and her desire to expose the truth.

- (a) why did she opt for a career
- (b) why had she opted for a career
- (c) why she opted for a career
- (d) why she had opted for a career

Ans :

(d) why she had opted for a career

SCAN QR CODE

JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



8. Read the dialogue between Meher and her mother, regarding Meher's dance classes.

Mother : Are you enjoying your dance classes ?

Meher : Oh Yes ! I am loving it. It is so refreshing to attend them after a long day.

Select the correct option to complete the reporting of the above dialogue.

Meher's mother asked her _____. In response, Meher exclaimed and said that she was loving it. She added that it was very refreshing to attend them after a long day.

- (a) whether the dance classes were being enjoyed by her
- (b) whether she is enjoying her dance classes
- (c) whether she was enjoying her dance classes
- (d) whether the dance classes are being enjoyed by her

Ans :

(c) whether she was enjoying her dance classes

Directions : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect form. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct form.

9. He says "I go for a walk every morning".
- He says that he goes for a walk every morning.
 - He said that he used to go for a walk every morning.
 - He said that he goes for a walk every morning.
 - He says he went for a walk every morning.

Ans :

- He says that he goes for a walk every morning.

10. He said to me, "You are getting lazy day by day."

- He informed me that I am getting lazy day by day.
- He told me that I have been getting lazy day by day.
- He told me that I was getting lazy day by day.
- He told me that you were getting lazy day by day.

Ans :

- He told me that I was getting lazy day by day.

11. He said, "Ravi, why are you sounding so depressed today ?"

- He asked Ravi why did he sound so depressed that day.
- He asked Ravi why he was sounding so depressed that day.
- He told Ravi why he sounded so depressed today.
- He asked Ravi that why was he sounding so depressed that day.

Ans :

- He asked Ravi why he was sounding so depressed that day.

12. He asked me "What time will the sun set tomorrow ?"

- He asked me what time does the sun set the next day.
- He asked me what time the sun would set tomorrow.
- He asked me what time the sun should set the next day.
- He asked me what time would the sun set the next day.

Ans :

- He asked me what time the sun should set the next day.

13. "Tinu, where have you been all these days ?" asked the principal.

- The principal asked Tinu where he had been all those days.
- The principal asked Tinu where he has been all those days.
- The principal asked Tinu where had he been all those days.
- The principal asked Tinu where was he all those days.

Ans :

- The principal asked Tinu where he had been all those days.

14. "Have you completed your assignment, Minu ?" said her brother.

- Minu's brother asked Minu if you have finished your assignment.
- Minu's brother said to Minu if she had finished her assignment.
- Minu's brother asked her if she had finished her assignment.
- Minu's brother asked Minu if she has finished her assignment.

Ans :

- Minu's brother asked her if she had finished her assignment.

15. She said, "When I was a child, I wasn't afraid of ghosts".

- She said that when she was a child she wasn't not afraid of ghosts.
- She said that when she was a child she hadn't been afraid of ghosts.
- She said that when she was a child she wasn't afraid of ghosts.
- She said that when she had been a child she wasn't afraid of ghosts.

Ans :

- She said that when she was a child she hadn't been afraid of ghosts.

16. I said to my friend, "Can I borrow your dictionary for one day ?"

- I asked my friend if I could borrow his dictionary for one day.
- I asked my friend if I could borrow your dictionary for one day.

- (c) I asked my friend if I can borrow his dictionary for one day.
- (d) I asked my friend that if I can borrow his dictionary for one day.

Ans :

(a) I asked my friend if I could borrow his dictionary for one day.

17. "No", said the child, "I won't kneel for if I do, I shall spoil my new pair of trousers".

- (a) The child said that he would not kneel for if he did so he will spoil his new pair of trousers.
- (b) The child said that he will not kneel for if he kneels he will spoil his new pair of trousers.
- (c) The child said that he would not kneel for if he did so he would spoil his new pair of trousers.
- (d) The child said that I will not kneel for if he did kneel, he should spoil his new pair of trousers.

Ans :

(c) The child said that he would not kneel for if he did so he would spoil his new pair of trousers.

18. He said to us, "Why are you all sitting about there doing nothing ?"

- (a) He asked us why are we all sitting about there doing nothing.
- (b) He asked us why we are all sitting about there doing nothing.
- (c) He asked us why we were all sitting about there doing nothing.
- (d) He asked us why were we all sitting about there doing nothing.

Ans :

(c) He asked us why we were all sitting about there doing nothing.

19. He requested the boss to let him go on with his project.

- (a) He said to the boss, "Let me go on with my project please."
- (b) He told the boss, "Go on with my project please."
- (c) He said to the boss, "You better let me go on with my project."
- (d) He told the boss, "Please go on with my project."

Ans :

(a) He said to the boss, "Let me go on with my project please."

20. Ashmita advised me to go and see a doctor.

- (a) "You should go and see a doctor," said Ashmita.
- (b) Ashmita asked me, "Will you go and see a doctor?"
- (c) Ashmita told me, "Go and see the doctor."
- (d) "Shouldn't you go and see a doctor?" asked Ashmita.

Ans :

(a) "You should go and see a doctor," said Ashmita.

21. Suresh asked Prasad whether he had watched the cricket match on television the previous night.

- (a) Suresh asked Prasad, "Did you watch the cricket match on television previous night ?"
- (b) Suresh asked Prasad, "Have you watched the cricket match on television last night ?"
- (c) Suresh said to Prasad, "Did you watch the cricket match on television last night ?"
- (d) Suresh said to Prasad, "Did you watched the cricket match on television last night ?"

Ans :

(c) Suresh said to Prasad, "Did you watch the cricket match on television last night ?"

22. Father said to me, "You are idling away your time."

- (a) Father told me that I was idling away my time.
- (b) Father told me that I am idling away my time.
- (c) Father told me that you are idling away your time.
- (d) Father told me that you were idling away your time.

Ans :

(a) Father told me that I was idling away my time.

23. He swore in the name of God that he was ignorant of the matter.

- (a) He said, "I'm ignorant by God!"
- (b) He declared, "God knows I was ignorant of the matter."
- (c) He said, "By God! I'm ignorant of the matter."
- (d) He said he was ignorant of God.

Ans :

(c) He said, "By God! I'm ignorant of the matter."

24. He proposed to his companions that they should not miss that chance to see the last show.

- (a) He said to his companions, 'Let us not miss the chance to see the last show.'
- (b) He said to his companions, 'Let us not miss that chance to see the last show.'
- (c) He said to his companions, 'We should not miss that chance to see the last show.'
- (d) He said to his companions, 'Let us not miss the chance to see the last show.'

Ans :

- (b) He said to his companions, 'Let us not miss that chance to see the last show.'

25. "Bring me an elephant with one golden tusk," the witch told her minion.

- (a) The witch requested her minion to bring her an elephant with one golden tusk.
- (b) The witch told her minion to bring her the elephant with one golden tusk.
- (c) The witch ordered her minion to bring her an elephant with one golden tusk.
- (d) The witch advised her minion to bring her an elephant with one golden tusk.

Ans :

- (c) The witch ordered her minion to bring her an elephant with one golden tusk.

26. She asked her brother if he could give her some money then.

- (a) She said to her brother, "Could I give you some money now ?"
- (b) She said to her brother, "Can you give me some money then ?"
- (c) She said to her brother, "Can you give me some money now ?"
- (d) She asked her brother, "Give me some money now."

Ans :

- (c) She said to her brother, "Can you give me some money now ?"

27. She said that she really liked the furniture.

- (a) "She really liked this furniture," she said.
- (b) She had really liked this furniture," she said.
- (c) "I really like this furniture," she said.
- (d) "I have really liked this furniture," she said.

Ans :

- (c) "I really like this furniture," she said.

28. The mother exclaimed admiringly that it was very clever of him to have solved the puzzle so quickly.

- (a) "You are a clever. That's why you solved the puzzle quickly," said the mother.
- (b) The mother said, "How cleverly you solved the puzzle."
- (c) The mother said, "You solved the puzzle very quickly !"
- (d) "How clever of you to have solved the puzzle so quickly!", said the mother.

Ans :

- (d) "How clever of you to have solved the puzzle so quickly!", said the mother.

29. "Please help me to find the way", she said.

- (a) She requested that she be found the way to help.
- (b) She requested to be shown the way.
- (c) She asked to find the way with help.
- (d) She asked for help in finding the way.

Ans :

- (b) She requested to be shown the way.

30. My friend said, "I bought the tickets yesterday."

- (a) My friend had bought the tickets yesterday.
- (b) My friend wanted to buy the tickets yesterday.
- (c) My friend told me to buy the tickets.
- (d) My friend said that he had bought the tickets the previous day.

Ans :

- (d) My friend said that he had bought the tickets the previous day.

31. He said, "My brother wants to be a doctor but I'd rather he attended our business."

- (a) He said that his brother would want to be a doctor but he would wish him to attend business.
- (b) He said that his brother wanted to be a doctor but he'd rather he attended their business.
- (c) His brother wanted to be a doctor but he said that he should attend business.
- (d) he wanted his brother to attend business and not become a doctor.

Ans :

- (b) He said that his brother wanted to be a doctor but he'd rather he attended their business.

32. The teacher said to the student, "Recite the poem loudly."

- (a) The teacher told the student that the poem may be recited loudly.
- (b) The teacher asked the student to recite the poem loudly.

- (c) The teacher commanded the student that he should recite the poem loudly.
- (d) The teacher expected that the student will recite the poem loudly.

Ans :

- (b) The teacher asked the student to recite the poem loudly.

33. The Prime Minister said that no one would be allowed to disturb the peace.

- (a) The Prime Minister said, "We shall not allow any one to disturb the peace."
- (b) The Prime Minister said, "We would not allow no one to disturb the peace."
- (c) The Prime Minister said, "No one will disturb the peace."
- (d) The Prime Minister said, "No one can disturb the peace."

Ans :

- (a) The Prime Minister said, "We shall not allow any one to disturb the peace."

34. The commander said to the army, "March forward".

- (a) The commander asked the army march forward.
- (b) The commander ordered the army to march forward.
- (c) The commander requested the army to go forward.
- (d) The army requested the commander to march.

Ans :

- (b) The commander ordered the army to march forward.

35. She exclaimed, "I'm afraid we are rather late !"

- (a) She exclaimed that they were frightened of being late.
- (b) She exclaimed that she was afraid that they were rather late.
- (c) She shouted that they were scared that they would be late.
- (d) She screamed that she was worried that they would all be late.

Ans :

- (b) She exclaimed that she was afraid that they were rather late.

36. "Who now", they had asked, "will listen to our troubles and protect us from the crocodiles ?"

- (a) They had wanted to know who then would listen to their troubles and protect them from

the crocodiles.

- (b) They had wanted to know who will now listen to their troubles and protect them from the crocodiles.
- (c) They wanted to know who will listen to their troubles and protect them from the crocodiles.
- (d) They had wanted to know who would listen to their troubles and protect them from the crocodiles.

Ans :

- (a) They had wanted to know who then would listen to their troubles and protect them from the crocodiles.

37. The mother urged the child to come on the footpath.

- (a) The mother said to the child, "Come on the footpath."
- (b) The mother said, "Come, child come. Come on the footpath."
- (c) The mother said, "Please come on the footpath, child."
- (d) The mother said to the child, "You should come on the footpath."

Ans :

- (b) The mother said, "Come, child come. Come on the footpath."

38. Sushma said, "We shall celebrate the festival of Janmashtami tomorrow."

- (a) Sushma said that we should celebrate the festival of Janmashtami the next day.
- (b) Sushma said that we shall celebrate the festival of Janmashtami the next day.
- (c) Sushma said that they should celebrate the festival of Janmashtami the next day.
- (d) Sushma said that they would celebrate the festival of Janmashtami the next day.

Ans :

- (d) Sushma said that they would celebrate the festival of Janmashtami the next day.

39. "I'm so tiny that I can't reach your branches," said the little boy to the tree.

- (a) The little boy said that the tree was so tiny that he couldn't reach its branches.
- (b) The little boy said that he was so tiny that he couldn't reach its branches.
- (c) The little boy told to the tree that he was so tiny that he couldn't reach its branches.
- (d) The little boy told the tree that he was so tiny that he couldn't reach its branches.

Ans :

(d) The little boy told the tree that he was so tiny that he couldn't reach its branches.

40. "I'm sorry I cannot stay," said the swallow. I'm waited for in Egypt."

- (a) The swallow told that he is sorry he cannot stay and added that he is waited for in Egypt.
- (b) The swallow said he was sorry he couldn't stay and added that someone was waiting for him in Egypt.
- (c) The swallow regretted he couldn't stay as he was waited for in Egypt.
- (d) The swallow regretted that he was waited for in Egypt and couldn't stay.

Ans :

(c) The swallow regretted he couldn't stay as he was waited for in Egypt.

41. He said, "Will you listen to such a man ?"

- (a) He asked them will you listen to such a man.
- (b) He asked them are you listening to such a man.
- (c) He asked them whether they would listen to such a man.
- (d) He asked them whether they will listen to such a man.

Ans :

(c) He asked them whether they would listen to such a man.

42. The traveller enquired of the farmer if he could tell him the way to the nearest inn.

- (a) The traveller said to the farmer, "Where is the nearest inn ?"
- (b) The traveller said to the farmer, "Which is the way to the nearest inn ?"
- (c) The traveller said to the farmer, "Can you tell me the way to the nearest inn ?"
- (d) The traveller said to the farmer, "What is the way to the nearest inn ?"

Ans :

(c) The traveller said to the farmer, "Can you tell me the way to the nearest inn ?"

43. "If you don't keep quiet I shall shoot you," he said to her in a calm voice.

- (a) He warned her to shoot if she didn't keep quiet calmly.
- (b) He said calmly that I shall shoot you if you don't be quiet.

(c) He warned her calmly that he would shoot her if she didn't keep quiet.

(d) Calmly he warned her that be quiet or else he will have to shoot her.

Ans :

(c) He warned her calmly that he would shoot her if she didn't keep quiet.

44. I said to her, "I am going to my town tomorrow."

- (a) I told her that she was going to her town the next day.
- (b) I told her if I was going to her town the next day.
- (c) I told her that I was going to my town the next day.
- (d) I told her if I was going to my town the next day.

Ans :

(c) I told her that I was going to my town the next day.

45. He said to me, "Let's play tennis."

- (a) He proposed me that we should play 'tennis.
- (b) He said to me to play tennis.
- (c) He suggested that tennis should be played.
- (d) He ordered me to play tennis.

Ans :

(a) He proposed me that we should play tennis.

46. He said to me, "Did you write a letter ?" I said, "Yes".

- (a) He asked me if I had written a letter. I said yes.
- (b) He asked me that I had written a letter. I replied in the affirmative.
- (c) He asked me that if I had written a letter.
- (d) He asked me if I had written a letter. I replied in affirmative.

Ans :

(d) He asked me if I had written a letter. I replied in affirmative.

47. Kiran asked me, "Did you see the cricket match on television last night ?"

- (a) Kiran asked me whether I saw the cricket match on television the earlier night.
- (b) Kiran asked me whether I had seen the cricket match on television the earlier night.
- (c) Kiran asked me did I see the cricket match on television last night.
- (d) Kiran asked me whether I had seen the cricket match on television last night.

Ans :

(d) Kiran asked me whether I had seen the cricket match on television last night.

48. The tailor said to him, "Will you have the suit ready by tomorrow evening?"

(a) The tailor asked him that he will have the suit ready by the next evening.

(b) The tailor asked him that he would have the suit ready by the next evening.

(c) The tailor asked him if he would have the suit ready by the next evening.

(d) The tailor asked him if he will like to have the suit ready by the next evening.

Ans :

(c) The tailor asked him if he would have the suit ready by the next evening.

49. He said to the interviewer, "Could you please repeat the question?"

(a) He requested the interviewer if he could please repeat the question.

(b) He requested the interviewer to please repeat the question.

(c) He requested the interviewer to repeat the question.

(d) He requested the interviewer if he could repeat the question.

Ans :

(d) He requested the interviewer if he could repeat the question.

50. Pawan said to me, "If I hear any news, I'll phone you."

(a) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he will phone me.

(b) Pawan told me that if he will hear any news, he will phone me.

(c) Pawan told me if he had heard any news, he would phone me.

(d) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he would phone me.

Ans :

(d) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he would phone me.

51. The captain said to the army, "March forward, now."

(a) The captain said to the army that march forward now.

(b) The captain ordered the army to march forward then.

(c) The captain ordered the army to march on that day.

(d) The captain ordered the army to attack the enemy.

Ans :

(b) The captain ordered the army to march forward then.

52. The lady said to the servant, "If you don't wash the clothes properly, I will dismiss you."

(a) The lady warned the servant that she would dismiss her if she didn't wash the clothes properly.

(b) The lady told the servant that she would dismiss her on the event of bad work.

(c) The lady cautioned the servant that she must wash the clothes properly.

(d) The lady advised the servant to wash the clothes properly.

Ans :

(a) The lady warned the servant that she would dismiss her if she didn't wash the clothes properly.

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. Report the dialogue between a vendor and his customer, by completing the sentence :

Vendor : You look a little different today!

Customer : Yes, I just got a new haircut.

The vendor noticed that his customer's appearance had changed and asked him about it. The customer admitted this, citing the fact that

_____.

Ans :

he had recently/just got a haircut

2. Report the dialogue between two friends, Nidhi and Neha, by completing the sentence :

Nidhi — Have you mastered the art of cooking Chinese food ?

Neha — Yes, indeed ! I have been cooking Chinese food for a month.

Nidhi asked Neha if she had mastered the art of cooking Chinese food. Neha answered in the affirmative and explained that _____.

Ans :

she had been cooking Chinese food for a month.

3. Report the following dialogue between two friends who are visiting a museum, by completing the sentence.

Auronima : What are you staring at ?

Soumitra : I am in awe of this beautiful painting! I have not seen anything like this before.

Auronima asked Soumitra what he was staring at. Soumitra exclaimed that he was in awe of the beautiful painting and that _____.

Ans :

he had not seen anything like that before

4. Manthan and Sonalika had a conversation about Sonalika's job interview.

Report Manthan's question.

How are you preparing for the interview ?

Ans :

Manthan asked Sonalika how she was preparing for the interview.

5. Raashi and Ratul had a conversation about volunteer work.

Report Raashi's question.

Raashi : What challenges have you faced while volunteering?

Ratul : The main challenge is dealing with different personalities, but it's also a great learning experience.

Ans :

Raashi asked Ratul what challenges he had faced while volunteering

6. Marie and Peter had a conversation about volunteer work.

Report Marie's question.

What kind of skills have you imbibed from this volunteer work ?

Ans :

Marie asked, "What kind of skills have you imbibed from this volunteer work?"

7. Sunanda and Pushkar had a conversation about their travels.

Report Pushkar's question.

Have you ever been to Peri Bagh ?

Ans :

Pushkar asked Sunanda if she had ever been to Peri Bagh.

8. Report the dialogue between a vendor and his customer, by completing the sentence :

Vendor : We missed your usual visits, sir.

Customer : I know, I had to travel for work.

The vendor expressed that the customer's regular visits were missed, reaching out to the customer. The customer acknowledged this and clarified that _____.

Ans :

he had had to travel for work

9. Report the following dialogue between a hawker and his customer, by completing the sentence.

Hawker : Do you want any tomatoes ?

Customer : Yes, indeed! Although they are a bit expensive, I like to add tomatoes to my diet.

The hawker asked the customer whether she wanted any tomatoes. The customer answered in the affirmative and explained that _____.

Ans :

although they are a bit expensive, she likes to add tomatoes to her diet.

10. Report the dialogue between a vendor and his customer, by completing the sentence :

Vendor : It is nice to see you, Sir!

Customer : Yes, indeed! Unlike last month, I have been away for quite some time this month.

The vendor greeted his customer respectfully and mentioned that he was pleased to see him. The customer answered in the affirmative and explained that _____.

Ans :

unlike the previous month, he had been away for quite some time that month.

11. Read the conversation between two friends Ravi and Reena. Complete the sentence by reporting Reena's reply correctly.

Ravi : "Reena, lend me hundred rupees'.

Reena : "I don't have it right now, but I will arrange it for you".

Ravi asked Reena to lend him hundred rupees, to which Reena replied that _____

Ans :

she did not have it right then, but she would arrange it for him.

12. Report the dialogue between a mother and a daughter by completing the sentence :

Mother : Why are you looking so worried?

Daughter : My exams are approaching.

In response to the question of the mother, the daughter replied that _____

Ans :

her exams were approaching

13. Two friends, Aarav and Ananya, are discussing their upcoming trip. How would Aarav report Ananya's dialogue?

Aarav : "I have already booked the hotel for our trip tomorrow."

Ananya : "Are you sure? Don't forget to confirm the reservation."

Ananya asked me _____.

Ans :

if I was sure I had booked the hotel for our trip the next day and reminded me not to forget to confirm the reservation

14. Abhilash and Neha had a conversation about the inauguration of Neha's Dance Academy. Report Abhilash's question.

Is your best friend helping you in this venture?

Ans :

Abhilash asked Neha whether/if her best friend was helping her in that venture.

15. Read the given conversation between two friends.
Sumit : What do you plan to do after your graduation?

Rahul : I have processed my admission at Harvard Business School. Very soon, I shall be leaving for London.

Report what Rahul told his friend by completing the following sentence.

Rahul replied that _____.

Ans :

he had processed his admission at Harvard Business School and added that very soon, he would be leaving for London.

16. Change the following into Indirect Speech:

1. Ramu said, "I saw a lion in the forest."
2. Satish said to me, "I am very happy here."
3. He said, "I can do this work."
4. Renu said to me, "I was washing the clothes."
5. She said, "I am not well."
6. He said to Sita, "I have passed the test."
7. I said to my friend, "He has been working very hard."
8. My friend said to me, "I shall go to Delhi tomorrow."
9. I said, "I agree to what he said."
10. The student said to the teacher, "I am

Ans :

1. Ramu said that he had seen a lion in the forest.
2. Satish told me that he was very happy there.
3. He said that he could do that work.
4. Renu told me that she had been washing the clothes.
5. She said that she was not well.
6. He told Sita that he had passed the test
7. I told my friend that he had been working very hard.
8. My friend told me that he would go to Delhi the next day.

9. I said that I agreed to what he had said.sorry that I am late."
10. The student told the teacher that he was sorry that he was late.

17. Change the following into Indirect Speech:

1. My brother asked me, "When will you return?"
2. Sita said to me, "Are you planning to visit Bengaluru Shortly?"
3. The beggar said to the old man, "Can you tell me the way to the nearest temple?"
4. The shopkeeper said to me, "Sir, can I help you now?"
5. Vijaya asked Seema, "When are you leaving for U.K.?"
6. My friend said to me, "Why have you kept me waiting?"
7. The doctor asked me, "How is your mother?"
8. Raman said to his friend, "Will you not help me in solving this problem?"
9. Ramesh said to the guest, "Do you want some more coffee?"
10. He said to me, "Will you go to Jaipur tomorrow?"

Ans :

1. My brother asked me when I would return.
2. Sita asked me if I was planning to visit Bengaluru shortly.
3. The beggar asked the old man if he could tell him the way to the nearest temple.
4. The shopkeeper asked me respectfully if he could help me then.
5. Vijaya asked Seema when she was leaving for U.K.
6. My friend asked me why I had kept him waiting.
7. The doctor asked me how my mother was.
8. Raman asked his friend if he would not help him in solving that problem.
9. Ramesh asked the guest if he wanted some more coffee.
10. He asked me if I would go to Jaipur the next day.

18. Change the following into Indirect Speech:

1. "Get out of the car!" said the policeman.
2. "Could you please be quiet," she said.
3. The man with the gun said to us, "Don't move!"
4. She said to me, "Open the window."

5. The captain said to the soldiers, "Attack the enemy."
6. I said to him, "Leave this place at once."
7. The teacher said to the students, "Listen to me attentively."
8. The Principal said to the peon, "Ring the bell."
9. The master said to the servant, "Fetch me a glass of water."
10. I said to him, "Please bring me a glass of water."

Ans :

1. The policeman ordered him to get out of the car.
2. She asked me to be quiet.
3. The man with the gun warned us not to move.
4. She ordered me to open the window.
5. The captain commanded the soldiers to attack the enemy.
6. I told him to leave that place at once.
7. The teacher asked the students to listen to him attentively.
8. The Principal ordered the peon to ring the bell.
9. The master ordered the servant to fetch him a glass of water.
10. I requested him to bring me a glass of water.



CHAPTER 4

CONDITIONAL CLAUSE - TYPE 1

1. INTRODUCTION

Conditional sentences are used to express that the action in the main clause (the result) can only take place if a certain condition (the if-clause) is fulfilled. Type 1 Conditionals (also known as the “First Conditional”) refer to real and possible situations. They are used to talk about things which might happen in the future if a specific condition is met today.

2. STRUCTURE AND PATTERN

A Type 1 conditional sentence consists of two parts:

1. **The If-Clause (Condition):** Uses the Simple Present Tense.
2. **The Main Clause (Result):** Uses the Simple Future Tense (or Modals like can/may).

Clause Type	Tense/Form	Example
If-Clause	If + Simple Present	If it rains,
Main Clause	Subject + Will + Verb (Base)	I will stay at home.

Note on Punctuation: If the “If-clause” comes first, use a comma. If the “Main clause” comes first, no comma is needed.

- If I study hard, I will pass.
- I will pass if I study hard.

3. FUNCTIONS AND USAGE

To Express Future Possibilities

We use Type 1 to predict the result of a future action that is very likely to happen.

- If you **work** hard, you **will get** good marks.
- If the bus **is** late, I **will take** a taxi.

To Give Warnings or Threats

Because Type 1 deals with real consequences, it is often used for warnings.

- If you **touch** that wire, you **will get** a shock.
- If you **don't hurry**, we **will miss** the train.

Using Modals instead of “Will”

Sometimes, instead of ‘will’, we use other modal auxiliaries to express different degrees of certainty or permission.

- **Ability:** If you have a passport, you **can** travel abroad.
- **Possibility:** If it clears up, we **may go** for a picnic.
- **Advice:** If you feel sick, you **should see** a doctor.

Using “Unless”

“Unless” means “If... not.” It is very common in Type 1 sentences to express a negative condition.

- **Unless** you study, you **will fail**.
- The car won't start **unless** you **turn** the key.

4. COMMON ERRORS TO AVOID

The “Double Will” Error

Never use “will” in the If-clause. Even though the condition refers to the future, the grammar must stay in the Simple Present.

Incorrect: If it will rain, I will stay home.

Correct: If it **rains**, I will stay home.

Subject-Verb Agreement

Remember to add ‘-s’ or ‘-es’ in the if-clause for third-person singular subjects (He, She, It, or Singular Nouns).

- If he **arrives** late, the teacher will be angry.



EXERCISE

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. If you have a license, you _____ drive the car. (Expressing Ability)

(a) will (b) can
(c) should (d) must

Ans :

(b) can

2. If the sky is clear, it _____ rain today. (Expressing Possibility)

(a) won't (b) might not
(c) can (d) may

Ans :

(d) may

3. Identify the mistake: "I will stay at home if it will snow."

(a) I will stay (b) at home
(c) if it (d) will snow

Ans :

(d) will snow (Correction: snows)

4. Teacher: "Submit your assignment today, or I will mark you absent."

Which conditional expresses this correctly?

(a) If you submit your assignment, I will mark you absent.
(b) Unless you submit your assignment, I will mark you absent.
(c) If you will submit your assignment, I mark you absent.
(d) Unless you won't submit your assignment, I mark you absent.

Ans :

(b) Unless you submit your assignment, I will mark you absent.

5. Rohan: "I am so tired."

Mahesh: "If you _____ (sleep) now, you _____ (feel) better."

(a) sleep / feel (b) will sleep / feel
(c) sleep / will feel (d) slept / would feel

Ans :

(c) sleep / will feel

6. Which sentence follows the Future in the Main Clause rule correctly?

(a) If he arrive, I go.

(b) If he arrives, I will go.

(c) If he will arrive, I will go.

(d) If he arrives, I went.

Ans :

(b) If he arrives, I will go.*

7. What does the "If-clause" in Type 1 represent?

(a) An impossible past event.
(b) An imaginary present situation.
(c) A real and possible future condition.
(d) A universal scientific truth only.

Ans :

(c) A real and possible future condition.

Which of the following is a correctly structured Type 1 Conditional sentence?

(a) If it will rain, the crops will grow.
(b) If it rains, the crops will grow.
(c) If it rains, the crops grow.
(d) If it rained, the crops would grow.

Ans :

(b) If it rains, the crops will grow.

9. Choose the correct negative conditional:

(a) Unless you don't call me, I will not come.
(b) If you call me, I will not come.
(c) Unless you call me, I will not come.
(d) Unless you will call me, I will not come.

Ans :

(c) Unless you call me, I will not come.

10. What is the correct main clause for: "If you study your notes tonight..."?

(a) you did well in the test.
(b) you will do well in the test.
(c) you would do well in the test.
(d) you do well in the test.

Ans :

(b) you will do well in the test.

11. If you don't eat, you will be hungry. (Rewrite using 'Unless')

(a) Unless you eat, you will be hungry.
(b) Unless you don't eat, you will be hungry.
(c) Unless you will eat, you will be hungry.
(d) Unless you are eating, you will be hungry.

Ans :

(a) Unless you eat, you will be hungry.

12. Unless she invites me, I won't go. (Rewrite using 'If')

- (a) If she invites me, I won't go.
- (b) If she doesn't invite me, I won't go.
- (c) If she will invite me, I won't go.
- (d) If she invited me, I wouldn't go.

Ans :

- (b) If she doesn't invite me, I won't go.

13. You will fall if you are not careful. (Rewrite using 'Unless')

- (a) You will fall unless you are careful.
- (b) You will fall unless you aren't careful.
- (c) Unless you will be careful, you fall.
- (d) Unless you were careful, you will fall.

Ans :

- (a) You will fall unless you are careful.

14. Which sentence expresses a warning using the Type 1 structure?

- (a) If you touch that, you get a shock.
- (b) If you touch that, you will get a shock.
- (c) If you touch that, you would get a shock.
- (d) If you touch that, you got a shock.

Ans :

- (b) If you touch that, you will get a shock.

15. Choose the correct "Unless" conversion:
"If you don't save water, there will be a shortage."

- (a) Unless you save water, there will be a shortage.
- (b) Unless you don't save water, there will be a shortage.
- (c) Unless you will save water, there will be a shortage.
- (d) Unless you save water, there would be a shortage.

Ans :

- (a) Unless you save water, there will be a shortage.

Choose the correct option to complete the Type 1 Conditional structure.

16. If you open this seal, the warranty _____ (be) void.

- (a) is
- (b) will be
- (c) was
- (d) would be

Ans :

- (b) will be

17. If it _____ (snow) tomorrow, we will go skiing.

- (a) snows
- (b) will snow
- (c) snowed
- (d) is snowing

Ans :

- (a) snows

18. You _____ (get) a discount if you pay in cash.

- (a) got
- (b) will get
- (c) gets
- (d) would get

Ans :

- (b) will get

19. If she _____ (not/hurry), she will miss the flight.

- (a) don't hurry
- (b) won't hurry
- (c) doesn't hurry
- (d) didn't hurry

Ans :

- (c) doesn't hurry

20. The plants will die if you _____ (not/water) them.

- (a) don't water
- (b) doesn't water
- (c) won't water
- (d) wouldn't water

Ans :

- (a) don't water

21. If I find your wallet, I _____ (call) you immediately.

- (a) shall call
- (b) called
- (c) calls
- (d) am calling

Ans :

- (a) shall call

22. If the government _____ (reduce) taxes, the economy will grow faster.

- (a) reduces
- (b) reduce
- (c) will reduce
- (d) reduced

Ans :

- (a) reduces

23. We _____ (be) late for the meeting if the traffic doesn't clear up soon.

- (a) are
- (b) will be
- (c) were
- (d) would be

Ans :

- (b) will be

24. If you _____ (not/wear) a coat, you will catch a cold in this weather.

- (a) doesn't wear
- (b) won't wear
- (c) don't wear
- (d) didn't wear

Ans :

(c) don't wear

25. You can borrow my camera _____ you promise to handle it carefully.

(a) unless (b) if
(c) until (d) whether

Ans :

(b) if

26. If she _____ (need) help with her project, she will let us know.

(a) needs (b) need
(c) will need (d) is needing

Ans :

(a) needs

27. If the alarm _____ (go) off, the security guards will arrive.

(a) goes (b) go
(c) will go (d) is going

Ans :

(a) goes

28. If the store _____ (not/open) soon, we will go to another market.

(a) don't open (b) won't open
(c) doesn't open (d) didn't open

Ans :

(c) doesn't open

29. You _____ (feel) much better if you take this medicine.

(a) feel (b) will feel
(c) felt (d) would feel

Ans :

(b) will feel

30. If you see Mr. Sharma, _____ (you/give) him this message?

(a) do you give (b) will you give
(c) did you give (d) would you give

Ans :

(b) will you give

31. Unless the principal _____ (sign) the document, the meeting will be cancelled.

(a) signs (b) sign
(c) will sign (d) signed

Ans :

(a) signs

32. If I have enough money, I _____ (buy) a new pair of shoes.

(a) bought (b) buy
(c) shall buy (d) had bought

Ans :

(c) shall buy

33. If she _____ (find) the information, she will email it to you.

(a) find (b) finds
(c) will find (d) found

Ans :

(b) finds

34. You _____ (not/be) able to sleep if you drink that much coffee.

(a) are not (b) won't be
(c) weren't (d) wouldn't be

Ans :

(b) won't be

35. If they _____ (not/arrive) in ten minutes, we will start the dinner without them.

(a) doesn't arrive (b) don't arrive
(c) won't arrive (d) didn't arrive

Ans :

(b) don't arrive

Select the part of the sentence that contains a grammatical error.

36. If (A) the weather **will be** (B) fine, we **will go** (C) for a **picnic** (D).

(a) A (b) B
(c) C (d) D

Ans :

(b) will be (Correction: is)

37. **Unless** (A) he **does not** (B) work hard, he **will** (C) fail the **exam** (D).

(a) A (b) B
(c) C (d) D

Ans :

(b) does not (Correction: Unless he works...)

38. **If** (A) she **practices** (B) daily, she **won't** (C) **won** (D) the trophy.

(a) A (b) B
(c) C (d) D

Ans :

(d) won (Correction: win)

39. The (A) machine **works** (B) if you **will** (C) press the **button** (D).

- (a) A (b) B
(c) C (d) D

Ans :

(c) will (Correction: press)

40. I (A) **am** (B) help you **if** (C) I **have** (D) time.

- (a) A (b) B
(c) C (d) D

Ans :

(b) am (Correction: will)

Very Short Answer Type Questions

31. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs given in brackets.

- If it _____ (rain), the match will be cancelled.
- We _____ (miss) the train if we don't hurry up.
- If she _____ (finish) her work on time, she can go to the cinema.
- Unless you _____ (study) regularly, you will not pass the examination.
- If the weather _____ (be) fine tomorrow, we shall go for a picnic.
- Your health _____ (improve) if you exercise every day.
- If he _____ (come) to the party, I will be very happy.
- We _____ (stay) at home if the guest arrives this evening.
- If you _____ (touch) that dog, it might bite you.
- Unless he _____ (work) hard, he cannot achieve his goals.

Ans :

- rains (Simple Present)
- will miss (Simple Future)
- finishes (Simple Present - 3rd person singular)
- study (Simple Present after 'unless')
- is (Simple Present form of 'be')
- will improve (Simple Future)
- comes (Simple Present)
- shall stay/will stay (Simple Future)
- touch (Simple Present)
- works (Simple Present)

32. Identify the error in the following sentences and write the correction.

	Sentence	Error	Correction
1.	If he will study, he will pass.	-----	-----
2.	Unless she does not hurry, she will be late.	-----	-----
3.	If you heated ice, it melts.	-----	-----
4.	We shall go out if the rain stopped.	-----	-----
5.	If they plays well, they will win.	-----	-----

Ans :

	Error	Correction
1.	will study	studies (No 'will' in If-clause)
2.	does not hurry	hurries ('Unless' already means 'if not')
3.	heated	heat (Simple Present required)
4.	stopped	stops (Simple Present required)
5.	plays	play (Subject-Verb agreement with 'They')

33. Complete the following dialogue using Type 1 Conditionals.

Father: If you _____ (score) above 90%, I _____ (buy) you a new laptop.

Son: That's great! But what _____ (happen) if I _____ (fail) to get that much?

Father: If you _____ (not/get) 90%, you _____ (have to) join the summer coaching classes.

Son: I understand. I _____ (work) very hard if you _____ (help) me with Math.

Ans :

Father: If you **score** above 90%, I **will buy** you a new laptop.

Son: That's great! But what **will happen** if I **fail** to get that much?

Father: If you **don't get** 90%, you **will have to** join the summer coaching classes.

Son: I understand. I **will work** very hard if you **help** me with Math.

34. Rewrite the following sentences using the word given in brackets without changing the meaning. Ensure you follow the Type 1 Conditional rules.

1. If you do not work hard, you will fail. (Unless)
2. Unless she invites me, I will not attend the party. (If)
3. If it does not rain, the crops will die. (Unless)
4. You will be sick unless you stop eating junk food. (If)
5. If he doesn't hurry, he will miss the bus. (Unless)
6. Unless we protect the forests, global warming will increase. (If)
7. If you don't pay the bill, they will cut the electricity. (Unless)
8. You cannot enter the hall unless you have a ticket. (If)
9. If she doesn't practice, she won't win the trophy. (Unless)
10. Unless the weather improves, the flight will be delayed. (If)

Ans :

1. **Unless** you work hard, you will fail.
2. **If** she does **not** invite me, I will not attend the party.
3. **Unless** it rains, the crops will die.
4. You will be sick **if** you do **not** stop eating junk food.
5. **Unless** he hurries, he will miss the bus.
6. **If** we do **not** protect the forests, global warming will increase.
7. **Unless** you pay the bill, they will cut the electricity.
8. You cannot enter the hall **if** you do **not** have a ticket.
9. **Unless** she practices, she won't win the trophy.
10. **If** the weather does **not** improve, the flight will be delayed.



CHAPTER 5

SUBJECT-VERB CONCORD

1. INTRODUCTION

Action is what comes to your mind as soon as you think of a verb. You **think** of something. You **tell** something. You **play** cricket. You **run**. All these bolder words tell about you and are called verbs. In fact, your identity is established by a verb, by what you **do**, by what you **are**. Note this **are**, which does not denote an action but a state of being. Nevertheless, it tells about you and hence also is a verb. Language has its base in logic and harmony. The subject and the verb are the essential parts of a sentence. It is imperative that the verb agree with the subject in number and person.

2. MEANING AND DEFINITION

Concord is the agreement which must occur between the subject and the verb in a sentence. The subject is the part of the sentence which does something. The verb tells what it does. Subject-verb concord or agreement can be defined as follows:

Subject-verb concord or agreement refers to the relationship between the subject and predicate of the sentence.

Subject-verb concord or agreement means that the subject and the verb must agree in case and in number.

3. SOME BASIC RULES

Some rules of subject-verb concord or agreement are given below:

Rule 1

Two or more singular subjects connected by **and** usually take a verb in the plural.

Incorrect Computer and telecommunication **has metamorphosed** information technology.

Correct Computer and telecommunication **have** metamorphosed information technology.

Note that computer and telecommunication are two distinct subjects. So they will take a plural verb.

Rule 2

If two singular nouns refer to the same person or thing, the verb must be singular.

Incorrect The poet and critic **have been** honoured.

Correct The poet and critic **has been** honoured.

In such sentences you have to be very cautious about the article **the**. When we say the poet and critic, we are referring to one person only who is both poet as well as critic. Say, someone like TS Eliot. When we say the poet and the critic, we are referring to two persons - one the poet and the other the critic. Since the given incorrect sentence uses **the** only once, we are talking of one person. Hence, the verb should be singular.

Rule 3

If two subjects together express one idea, the verb is in the singular.

Incorrect Bread and butter **are** essential for one's life.

Correct Bread and butter **is** essential for one's life.

Here we are not talking of bread and butter as separate food items. One can very well do without these. If you eat rice instead of bread and take no butter at all, even then life goes on. Here bread and butter means livelihood. Means of living is essential for one's life. Thus we see that the two nouns together convey a single idea. Hence, the verb should be singular.

Rule 4

If the singular subjects are preceded by each or every, the verb is usually singular.

Incorrect Every man and woman in a family **are** responsible for the upbringing of a child.

Correct Every man and woman in a family **is** responsible for the upbringing of a child.

Here it appears as if there were two subjects - man and woman. Hence the mistake of using the plural verb **are**. But mark the word **every**. The use of this word brings in the idea of one at a time. Hence, use singular verb.

Rule 5

Two or more singular subjects connected by or, nor, either ... or, neither ... nor take a verb in the singular.

Incorrect Either Manoj or Madhukar **have** the key to this problem.

Correct Either Manoj or Madhukar **has** the key to this problem.

The use of either ... or makes it clear that it is one of the two and should therefore take a singular verb.

Rule 6

When the subjects joined by or or nor are of different numbers, the verb must be plural and the plural subject must be placed next to the verb.

Incorrect Neither Rekha nor her friends **was** present at the party.

Correct Neither Rekha nor her friends **were** present at the party.

In such cases, we function on the principle 'plural includes singular'. The verb **was** may apply to Rekha but not to her friends. For the latter we need a plural verb. But can the plural verb apply to singular Rekha? Yes, because plural includes singular.

Rule 7

When the subjects joined by **or** or **nor** are of different persons, the verb agrees in person with the one nearest to it.

Incorrect Either she or I will pay the fees.

Correct Either she or I shall pay the fees.

Or

Either she will pay the fees, or I shall.

The verb here should agree with **I**, not she.

Rule 8

Error of Proximity : The verb is made to agree in number with a noun near it instead of with its proper subject. This is wrong and should be avoided.

Incorrect The behaviour of the students **were** not proper.

Correct The behaviour of the students **was** not proper.

The writer of the above sentence has a myopic (short-sighted) vision. His grammar functions jerkily. He sees students and immediately concludes - plural verb **were**. If we calmly put the

question what/who was/were not proper?, we see that it is the behaviour, not the students. Since the subject the behaviour is singular, the verb should be singular.

Rule 9

Words joined to a singular subject by with, as well as etc. are parenthetical. The verb should therefore be put in the singular.

Incorrect The guru as well as his disciples **are** committed to celibacy.

Correct The guru as well as his disciples **is** committed to celibacy.

Note that **as well as** is different from **and** or **or**. In the case of the latter conjunctions both parts - that is, the one before the conjunction **and** or **or**, and the one after the conjunction - carry equal weights. But in the case of **as well as**, the part that comes after it is merely supporting in nature - worthy of being put within brackets. The main part is the one that comes before it and the verb behaves in accordance with this part. In the given sentence; as, guru is singular.

Rule 10

Either, neither, each, everyone, many a must be followed by a singular verb.

Incorrect Many a man **have** resigned in crisis.

Correct Many a man **has** resigned in crisis.

The confusion is but natural. The moment one sees **many a**, the mind is filled with plural notions. In fact, the phrase does have a plural meaning. But in spite of its meaning, it behaves as a singular adjective. Look at the noun. It is man, not men. So the verb should be singular.

Rule 11

When a plural noun denotes some specific quantity or amount considered as a whole, the verb is generally singular.

Incorrect Five hours **are** too short a time to judge one's character.

Correct Five hours **is** too short a time to judge one's character.

Here **five hours** is being considered as **one** chunk. This is made clearer by the use of **a** time. So, the verb should be singular.



EXERCISE

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete the part of the grievance posted by a citizen on a social media platform.

Crossing this stretch at any time of the day is a challenge. Even during afternoons, there _____ ice cream vendors on the road with people crowding around their carts.

- (a) were (b) are
(c) have been (d) would be

Ans :

- (b) are

2. Complete Nelson Mandela's quote by filling in the blank with the correct option.

"The greatest glory in living _____ not in never falling, but in rising every time we fall." - Nelson Mandela

- (a) lie (b) lies
(c) lays (d) laying

Ans :

- (b) lies

3. In a sentence a verb must agree with its

- (a) subject (b) object
(c) second object (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) subject

4. In a sentence, a verb must agree with the subject

- (a) in person (b) in number
(c) both a and b (d) none of these

Ans :

- (c) both a and b

5. If the subject is singular, the verb will also be

- (a) singular (b) plural
(c) in third form (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) singular

6. If the subject is plural. The verb will also be

- (a) plural (b) singular
(c) in third form (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) plural

7. Only one of the following sentences has got a correct subject-verb agreement. Which one is that?

- (a) The typing of letters are over
(b) The typing of letters is over
(c) Both a and b
(d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) The typing of letters is over.

8. We use _____ with singular nouns and pronouns.

- (a) is (b) are
(c) they (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) is

9. We use _____ with plural nouns and pronouns.

- (a) are (b) is
(c) am (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) are

10. We use _____ with the singular pronoun I.

- (a) am (b) is
(c) are (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) am

11. We use **was** with _____ nouns and pronouns.

- (a) singular (b) plural
(c) both a and b (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) singular

12. We use **were** with _____ nouns and pronouns.

- (a) plural (b) singular
(c) both a and b (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) plural

13. The student _____ completed this chapter.

- (a) have (b) has
(c) is (d) are

Ans :

- (b) has

14. Mahesh and Suresh _____ business partners.

- (a) have (b) has
(c) are (d) had

Ans :

- (c) are

15. She _____ her office by 9 a.m. daily.

- (a) reach (b) reaches
(c) reached (d) reaching

Ans :

(b) reaches

16. Kamal and his friends _____ also invited to the party.

- (a) is (b) was
(c) had (d) were

Ans :

(d) were

17. Neither you nor your sister should _____ to them.

- (a) talk (b) talks
(c) talked (d) talking

Ans :

(a) talk

18. Twenty-five years _____ the minimum age to fill this form.

- (a) are (b) is
(c) has (d) have

Ans :

(b) is

19. A bouquet of flowers _____ required for the event.

- (a) are (b) have
(c) has (d) is

Ans :

(d) is

20. A pair of socks _____ been missing from my wardrobe.

- (a) have (b) has
(c) were (d) is

Ans :

(b) has

21. Much _____ been said in the news reports.

- (a) were (b) have
(c) has (d) was

Ans :

(c) has

22. The company _____ of its stakeholders.

- (a) think (b) thought
(c) thinks (d) thinking

Ans :

(c) thinks

23. Either of the two dresses shall _____ good.

- (a) looking (b) look
(c) looks (d) looked

Ans :

(b) look

24. Each and every member _____ to vote.

- (a) has (b) have
(c) having (d) are

Ans :

(a) has

25. A large number of soldiers _____ died for the country.

- (a) has (b) is
(c) are (d) have

Ans :

(d) have

26. Half of the class _____ empty.

- (a) were (b) was
(c) has (d) have

Ans :

(b) was

27. A lot of the money I had _____ gone.

- (a) is (b) are
(c) have (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) is

28. Mathematics _____ my favourite subject when I was in high school.

- (a) was (b) were
(c) is (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) was

29. The Sushi and the pasta _____ delicious.

- (a) look (b) looks
(c) looking (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) look

30. Chris, in addition to his brother Zack, _____ hockey on Saturday.

- (a) play (b) plays
(c) playing (d) none of these

Ans :

(b) plays

31. The box of toys _____ in the boy's bedroom.
 (a) is (b) are
 (c) am (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) is

32. The book of stories _____ \$10.
 (a) cost (b) costs
 (c) costes (d) none of these

Ans :

(b) costs

33. The Lions of the East _____ an interesting book.
 (a) is (b) are
 (c) am (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) is

34. Either Shobha or I _____ to blame.
 (a) is (b) am
 (c) are (d) none of these

Ans :

(b) am

35. Neither of them _____ wrong.
 (a) was (b) were
 (c) has (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) was

36. The council _____ chosen its president.
 (a) has (b) have
 (c) is (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) has

37. Two and two _____ four.
 (a) make (b) makes
 (c) are (d) none of these

Ans :

(b) makes

38. The cost of all these articles _____ risen.
 (a) has (b) have
 (c) are (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) has

39. The quality of the mangoes _____ not good.
 (a) was (b) were
 (c) are (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) was

40. No news _____ good news.
 (a) is (b) are
 (c) am (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) is

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

Directions: In the following questions, a sentence is given followed by four options. Select the option that replaces the given sentence or its part correctly.

41. Slow and steady win the race.
 (a) Slowly and steady wins the race.
 (b) Slow and steadily wins the race.
 (c) Slow and steady wins the race.
 (d) None of these

Ans :

(c) Slow and steady wins the race.

42. These news were broadcasted on Radio BBC.
 (a) These news were broadcast on Radio BBC.
 (b) This news was broadcast on Radio BBC.
 (c) This news was broadcasted on Radio BBC.
 (d) None of these

Ans :

(b) This news was broadcast on Radio BBC.

43. Every boy and girl were given a prize.
 (a) Every boy and girl were given prizes.
 (b) Every boy and girl was given prizes.
 (c) Every boy and girl was given a prize.
 (d) None of these

Ans :

(c) Every boy and girl was given a prize.

44. Everyone of them were clapping at the performance of the clown.
 (a) Everyone of them were clapping at the performance of the clowns.
 (b) Everyone of them was clapping at the performance of the clowns.
 (c) Everyone of them was clapping at the performances about the clowns.
 (d) None of these

Ans :

(b) Everyone of them was clapping at the performance of the clowns.

45. Law and order are to be maintained at all costs.
 (a) Law and orders are to be maintained at all costs.
 (b) Law and order is to be maintained at all costs.
 (c) Laws and orders are to be maintained at all costs.
 (d) None of these
Ans :
 (b) Law and order is to be maintained at all costs.

46. Five hundred rupees are a long sum.
 (a) Five hundred rupee is a long sum.
 (b) Five hundred rupee is a large sum.
 (c) Five hundred rupees is a big sum.
 (d) None of these
Ans :
 (c) Five hundred rupees is a big sum.

47. I knew that he will not respect his elders.
 (a) I knew that he would not respect his elders.
 (b) I knew that he shall not respect his elders.
 (c) I knew that he will not be respecting his elders.
 (d) None of these
Ans :
 (a) I knew that he would not respect his elders.

48. He is one of the greatest player who has participated in one day cricket matches.
 (a) He is one of the greatest players who has
 (b) He is one of the greatest players who have
 (c) He is one of the greatest players who have
 (d) None of these
Ans :
 (b) He is one of the greatest players who have

49. Many a boys were playing in the garden.
 (a) Many a boy were playing in the garden
 (b) Many a boys was playing in the garden.
 (c) Many a boy was playing in the garden.
 (d) None of these
Ans :
 (c) Many a boy was playing in the garden.

50. None of the ten pens are yours.
 (a) None of the ten pen are yours.
 (b) None of the ten pens is yours.
 (c) None of the ten pens are your
 (d) None of these
Ans :
 (b) None of the ten pens is yours.

Very Short Answer Type Questions

- Fill in the blank by using the correct form of the word in the bracket, for the given portion of a letter :
 Dear Sir
 In response to your query, the document that _____ (explain) our country's sustainability initiatives has been attached for your consideration.
Ans :
 explains
- Fill in the blank by using the correct form of the word in the brackets, for the given portion of a letter.
 Please keep me _____ (apprise) of your next step to address this matter. Thanks for your time.
Ans :
 apprised
- Fill in the blank by using the correct form of the word in the bracket, for the given portion of a letter.
 Sir
 Enclosed is the report that _____ (summarize) the study conducted on the impact of climate change on crop yield in the region.
Ans :
 summarizes
- Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete an issued circular by an organization, to its Managers.
 Please refer to the attached conference schedule and _____ (it/these/them) should be circulated among all attendees for their reference.
Ans :
 it
- Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option, to complete the line of a circular issued by an organization, to its stakeholders.
 In order to enable the stakeholders to _____ (access/assess/accnt) all the applicable circulars at one place, the provisions of the circulars issued till January 6, 2024, are incorporated in this master circular.
Ans :
 access
- Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete the line from an insurance company brochure.
 Suitable for someone who wishes to _____ (insure/assure/ensure) adequate financial backup. It is available to the family in case of his/her untimely death.

Ans :
ensure

7. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option in the bracket, to complete the sentence :
The revised meeting agenda is attached and _____ (this/those/it) needs to be emailed to all participants before the meeting.

Ans :
it

8. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.
Some guys like to fights on even playing grounds, and some guys like to cheat.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
fights	fight

9. Identify the error in the given sentence, from a school magazine report and supply the correction.
The heavy dose of chemicals that we ingest with every bite of fast food and carbonated drinks are a lethal combination for our health.

Use the given format for your response

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
are	is

10. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.
A good business letter is one that get results.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
get	gets

11. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

The movie, including all the previews, take about two hours to watch.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
take	takes

12. Identify the error in the given sentence, from an e-magazine report and supply the correction.

In the last decade, conservationists and academics have turned his attention to studying the best ways to install these natural features in the North.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
his	their

13. Identify the error in the given sentence, from a school magazine report and supply the correction.

A group of students were invited to come on stage and play a drama scene. The drama they presented was funny and interesting.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
were	was

14. Choose the correct form of the verbs given in the brackets in the following sentences:

- Each of these producers _____ his own advantage, (has, have)
- Ten miles _____ long distance, (is, are)
- Many a student _____ hard to pass his entrance exam, (try, tries)

- For a talk
- For a visit

Rule 11

Before certain phrases; as,

- In a hurry
- Take a fancy
- Make a noise
- Tell a lie

Rule 12

Before the words denoting numbers; as,

- A Hundred, A dozen, A million

Rule 13

Before the adjectives **little** and **few** to give the sense of **some**.

- A little - Some (Quantity)
- A few - Some (Number); as,
- I have little money to buy a house. (hardly any)
- Please give me a little sugar. (some)
- He has spent the little money that he had. (some but all)
- There are few boys in the class. (hardly anyone)
- I met a few students in the university. (some)
- The few students that were in the class were sitting idle. (some but all)

Rule 14

There is no plural of **a**, **an**. **Some** or **Any** is the equivalent of the plural.

- A horse - Some horses/any horses
- An orange - Some oranges/any oranges

Uses of Definite Article 'The'

Rule 1

When we talk of the particular person or a thing as already mentioned, known or under discussion; as,

- The book (which you mentioned) is not available in the market.
- Let us study the lesson carefully. (lesson in hand)

Rule 2

Before proper noun (unique objects) when they refer to the names of historical buildings, mountain

ranges, planets, rivers, oceans, gulfs, groups of islands, holy books, ordinals, descriptive names of countries, states, newspapers, magazines, deserts, superlative degree, names of trains, hotels, shops; as,

- The Persian Gulf
- The Indian Ocean
- The Ranjit
- The Himalayas
- The Ramayana
- The Vedas
- The Earth
- The Taj Mahal
- The best picture
- The first man
- The Sahara
- The Bay of Bengal
- The Rajdhani Express
- The Times of India
- The Frontline
- The North Pole
- The Netherland
- The Sudan
- The USA
- The Maurya Sheraton

NOTE :

'The' is not used before Aravali and Everest because they are not mountain ranges.

Rule 3

When a singular noun expresses a class of animal or things. But **the** is avoided with their plural forms and persons to express a class; as,

- The dog is a faithful animal.
- The rose is a sweet flower.
- The cow is economically useful.
- Dogs are faithful.

Indefinite article **A** is used in the sense of **any** to single out a person, a thing or an animal as a representative of a class; as,

- A son should be obedient.
- A cow is a useful animal.
- A mango is a sweet fruit.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

4. She _____ (love) to look after the poor children.
5. Her children _____ (be) abroad.
6. She _____ (be) a staunch devotee of Lord Krishna.

Ans :

1. lives 2. has 3. is
4. loves 5. are 6. is

21. Complete the passage using correct form of verb.
Climatic change (a) _____ one of the hotly contested debates. India and Antarctica (b) _____ once the part of the same landmass. To visit Antarctica now (c) _____ to be a part of history. 90 percent of the Earth's total ice volumes (d) _____ stored there, Antarctica (e) _____ her simple ecosystem. Therefore to study the earth, Antarctica (f) _____ the place to go. Antarctica (g) _____ devoid of any human markets. It (h) _____ no trees, buildings or billboards.

Ans :

(a) is, (b) were, (c) is, (d) was, (e) has, (f) is, (g) is, (h) has.

22. Complete the passage using correct form of verb.
Keeping a pet (a) _____ the best way to fight loneliness. But clean and comfortable housing for them (b) _____ essential. If they (c) _____ carnivores a high protein diet (d) _____ required. Veterinary appointments (e) _____ a must. They (f) _____ wonderful pets and (g) _____ quite affectionate. They (h) _____ you entertained for hours.

Ans :

(a) is, (b) is, (c) are, (d) is, (e) are, (f) make, (g) are, (h) keep.

23. Complete the passage using correct form of verb.
Today road accidents (a) _____ earned India a dubious distinction. She (b) _____ the worst road traffic accident rate. The various factors to be blamed (c) _____ drunk-driving and carelessness in the use of helmets. The total number of deaths (d) _____ now passed the 135,000 marks. Trucks and two-wheelers (e) _____ responsible earlier. Evening rush hours (f) _____ the most dangerous time to be on the road. Today drunken-driving (g) _____ become a major cause for road accidents. Think today. The time for action (h) _____ now.

Ans :

(a) have, (b) has, (c) are, (d) has, (e) were, (f) are, (g) has, (h) is.



- He was listening to the radio.

Rule 19

Before the name of professions used collectively; as,

- The Press.
- The Bench.

Rule 20

Before a noun, qualified by adjectives; as,

- The former President Abdul Kalam
- The immortal Shakespeare.
- The late Shri S.C. Bose.

Rule 21

Before the case in apposition; as,

- Netaji, the hero of Modern India, ought to be remembered.
- Who can underestimate Mr. Vajpayee, the former Prime Minister?

Rule 22

Before the dates; as,

- The 10th of May.
- The 5th of September.

Rule 23

Before the organs of government; as,

- The Judiciary
- The legislature

Rule 24

Before the parts of a body of a person in place of possessive adjectives; as,

- He hit me on the back.
- She caught me by the arm.

Rule 25

Before the political parties; as,

- The BJP.
- The Labour Party
- The Janta Party.

Rule 26

Before the armed forces; as,

- The Army.
- The Police.
- The Air force.

Rule 27

Before the dynasties, empires, wars, revolutions, centuries; as,

- The Gupta dynasty.

- The British empire.
- The Red revolution.
- The Middle Ages.
- The Civil war.
- The Vedic ages.
- The Sixth century.

Rule 28

Before language to signify nationality; as,

- The Chinese are hard working.
- The Japanese are patriots out and out.

Rule 29

Before nationality (plural); as,

- The Greeks.
- The Indians.
- The Asians.

Note : But we say An Indian, An Asian, A Greek.

Rule 30

Before little and few.

- The little - some but all
- The few - some but all

Omission of Articles

Articles are omitted in a number of places. Zero article specifically refers to absence of articles before plural countable and uncountable nouns. Instances where the articles are left out are listed below.

Rule 1

The article is not used when unlimited numbers or quantities are being referred to, or numbers are not being thought of at all; as,

- Kangaroos are found in Australia. (generic reference to kangaroos)
- Sugar is an essential commodity.

Rule 2

There is no article where the implication is **some** or **a few** and not the entire class; as,

- They want to buy old paintings.

Rule 3

Names of persons do not carry articles, irrespective of whether or not they are used with a title; as,

- Dr. Sharma
- Raj Mehra
(except as specified under the use of a/an/the)

Uses of Indefinite Articles ‘A, An’

Indefinite article **A/An** is used when we talk of a thing or a person that is indefinite or that is mentioned for the first time (in the sense of **one**). Indefinite article is also used to express a class (in the sense of **any**).

Rule 1

A student must note that the choice between **A** and **An** is determined primarily by sound.

‘A’ is used before a word beginning

1. With consonant; as, a boy, a child, a student, a book etc.
2. With a vowel giving the sound of a consonant; as, a one eyed man, a university student, a European, a unique book, a uniform, a universal problem etc.

‘An’ is used before a word beginning

1. With a vowel; as, an elephant, an apple, an ass, an umbrella etc.
2. With a mute **h**; as, an hour, an heir, an honourable person, an honest man, an honorary post, an hourly visit etc.
3. With a consonant pronounced with the sound of a vowel; as, an L.L.B. student, an M.P., an M.L.A., an S.P., an X-ray, an F.I.R. etc.

Rule 2

Before a singular/countable common noun when it is mentioned for the first time representing no particular person or a thing; as,

- I need a book.
- Twelve inches make a foot.
- A beggar came to my door.
- Please get me a scooter.
- She gave her a note book.

Rule 3

Before a singular countable noun which is used to single out some person/something as a representative of a class of a thing, animals and persons; as,

- A cow is useful animal.
- A beggar cannot be chooser.
- A rose is a beautiful flower.
- A son should be obedient.

Rule 4

To make a common noun of a proper noun to express quality; as,

- A Shylock is living in my neighbourhood.
- He is a Vikramaditya known for his fairness.

Rule 5

In certain expressions of quantity with certain numbers and expressions of Price/rate, speed, ratio; as,

- Rupees ten a kilo.
- A dozen mangoes.
- Half a dozen.

Rule 6

When **A/An** represents a weakened form of preposition **in**; as,

- He earns fifty thousand rupees a year.
- We should brush our teeth two times a day.

Rule 7

In exclamations with **what** or **how** before singular countable nouns; as,

- What a hot day!
- What a pretty girl!
- What a naughty child!
- How fine a day!
- What a fool he is.

Rule 8

Note the position of indefinite article in the following adverbs : **Rather, very, much, quite, so, too, much, as**; as,

- It is rather a nuisance.
- It is rather a good step (or a rather good step).
- He is a very good person.
- He is a much hated character.
- He is such a nice man that everybody likes him.
- It is quite an interesting story.
- She is as intelligent a student as her brother is.
- She is too weak a student to pass.
- She is so weak a student that she can't pass.

Rule 9

Before a person not known to the speaker; as,

- A Mr. Gupta - Some Mr. Gupta
- A Mrs. Sharma - Some Mrs. Sharma

Rule 10

Before the verbs used as nouns; as,

- For a swim
- For a rest

CHAPTER 6

DETERMINERS

1. INTRODUCTION

Most of us know what a noun or verb is in the English language. However, there's a key article of speech that's just as important to learn: the determiner. Essentially, these words explain whether you're speaking about something general or something specific. In addition, it can tell your reader or listener how much or how many of something you're referring to. Let's discuss these clarifying words, learn why they're necessary, and discover how to use them properly.

2. MEANING AND DEFINITION

Determiners are words which come before nouns determining or limiting the use of the noun by giving some additional information. They indicate the singularity or the plurality of a noun, amount or quantity of a noun, possessive aspect of a noun, the number and order of a noun or the distributive or demonstrative aspect of a noun. A determiner is used to limit the application of a noun without describing it. We don't know anything about the quality of the noun from a determiner.

Determiners can be defined as follows:

Determiners are those words that are prefixed before nouns to determine their meaning.

A determiner is a word that introduces a noun or provides information about the quantity of a noun.

3. TYPES OF DETERMINERS

Determiners can be divided into the following types:

1. **Articles** - a, an, the
2. **Demonstratives** - this, that, these, those
3. **Possessives** - my, your, our, his, her, its, their
4. **Quantifiers** - some, any, few, little, more, much, many, each, every, either, neither, both, all, enough
5. **Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers** - one, two, three..., first, second, third...

7. **Difference Words** - another, other
8. **Interrogatives** - whose, what, which

4. ARTICLES

A, an and **the** are the three articles in the English language. Articles belong to the group of noun determiners, that is, they determine the noun in terms of its definiteness. They are used before nouns or noun groups and indicate whether the noun they precede is uniquely identifiable by the speaker/writer or listener/reader of the expression or not; as,

- Arun, an engineer, gave a fifth of his property to the city museum.

Kinds of Articles

There are two kinds of articles.

1. **Indefinite Articles** - A, An (in the sense of **one** and **any**)
2. **Definite Articles** - The (in the sense of **this** and **that**)

Indefinite Article

A or **An** is called the indefinite article because it leaves indefinite the person or thing spoken of; as,

- There shall come a day when everyone will be rich.

The writer of the above sentence is indefinite about the day. He cannot specify a particular day. It could be any day.

Definite Article

The is called the definite article because it points out some particular person or thing; as,

- The day was hot.

The writer of the above sentence is definite about the day. He specifies the day. There must have been some sentence before which made a mention of the day. It is a particular day.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

Man/Woman/Mankind used in general sense to represent human race are used without article; as,

- Man is mortal. (Used in general sense)

Rule 4

Before an adjective when it represents a class of persons; as,

- The rich should help the poor.
- The old are respected by the young.

Rule 5

Before musical instruments; as,

- He can play the flute.
- She is fond of playing the harmonium.

Rule 6

As an adverb with a comparative sense (Double comparison); as,

- The sooner, the better.
- The higher you go, the colder it is.

Rule 7

Before comparative degree in case of a choice; as,

- She is the weaker of the two sisters.
- Which is the more beautiful of the two sisters?

Rule 8

Before proper noun for the sake of comparison; as,

- Surdas is the Milton of India.
- Kalidas is the Shakespeare of India.

Rule 9

Before the sports cups and trophies; as,

- India won the Singer Cup last year.
- A number of teams are taking part in the World Cup.

Rule 10

Before physical positions; as,

- The top of the mountain.
- The back of the house.
- The centre of the market.
- The front of the house.

Rule 11

With the cardinal points; as,

- The sun rises in the east.
- The Himalayas are to the north of India.

Rule 12

Before a unit of measurement; as,

- Cloth is sold by the metre.
- Eggs are sold by the dozen.

Rule 13

Before caste and communities; as,

- The Rajputs are brave people.
- The Marathas are hard working.

Rule 14

Before the adjectives **same & whole** and after the adjective **all & both** used with plural nouns; as,

- This is the same book that you gave me.
- The whole class was absent.
- All the boys were present there.
- Both the brothers were honest.
- All sugar is wasted.

Rule 15

In certain idiomatic phrases; as,

- In the wrong.
- On the contrary.
- In the town.
- The benefit of the doubt.
- In the air.
- Speak the truth.
- Out of the question.
- In the right.

Rule 16

Before a common noun to give it the force of a superlative; as,

- She is the woman.
- Netaji was the leader.
- He is the man for this job.

Rule 17

Before a common noun to give it the sense of an abstract noun (feelings, qualities etc.); as,

- The judge in him.
- The mother in her.
- The beast in him.

Rule 18

Before inventions; as,

- The telephone.
- The wireless.
- The television. (as an invention)
- He was watching television. (**television** is used just as a set.)

7. QUANTIFIERS

Quantifiers indicate how much or how little of the noun is being discussed. Quantifiers are commonly used before either countable or uncountable nouns. They include words such as some, any, few, little, more, much, many, each, every, both, all, enough etc.

Some

Rule 1

The indefinite adjective 'Some' is generally used in affirmative sentences with uncountable and plural countable nouns.

- There is some proof that he is guilty.
- I have some good ideas on the project.

Rule 2

It can also be used in questions where 'Yes' is expected as an answer.

- Would you like some tea?
- Could you give me some food?

Any

Rule 1

It is used in questions when you want to ask whether something exists or not. It is also used in negative sentences where we want to say that something does not exist.

- I don't need any help.
- Do you have any advice on the matter?

Rule 2

It is also used in affirmative sentences before plural nouns and uncountable nouns when it refers to a quantity of something which may or may not exist.

- You can stop at any point you like.

Little and Much

These are used to refer to amount or quantity. Little is used to emphasize that there is a small amount of something whereas 'Much' is used for emphasizing on large quantities. Both of them are used with uncountable nouns. Little is also used in reference to small amount of something without any emphasis.

- I want to spend a little time in Dubai.
- I have studied very little for my exam.
- Do you like to watch much television?

Few and Many

These are mostly used to refer to a number. They are used before plural countable nouns. Few emphasizes a smaller number and many refer to more numbers.

- Few students came for the class today.
- Many people went to welcome the Indian Cricket team.
- They stayed in the U.S.A for a few days.

More, Less and Fewer

They are mostly used as comparative determiners. 'More' is used before plural and uncountable nouns (with than) to refer to a quantity or amount which is greater than another quantity or amount. It is also used to refer to an additional quantity of something. Less is used to refer to an amount that is less than another amount. Fewer is used where we refer to a group of things that are smaller than another group before plural nouns.

- He does much more cardio than I do.
- The poor have less access to cleanliness.
- There are fewer cars here.

All

All is mostly used with a plural verb when followed by a countable plural noun. It includes all the persons or things of a particular kind. Another rule for it is that it requires a singular verb when it is followed by an uncountable noun.

- All children cannot be treated in the same manner.

Both

This determiner is mostly used to talk about two things of the same kind. It is used to show that two persons or things are involved rather than one and is often followed by 'and'.

- Both Raman and Raghav went out for a movie.
- He held oranges in both his hands.

Either and Neither

These determiners usually refer to two persons or things but show that one out of the two is or is not involved in a situation. Neither is used mostly with singular nouns and by either, it can mean both of two things especially when it is used with 'end' or 'side'.

Rule 4

Names in the possessive do not carry articles; as,

- Harrods
- McDonald's

Rule 5

Names of businesses and chains of shops do not carry articles; as,

- He is working for Tata Motors. (not the/a Tata Motors)

Rule 6

The article is omitted when only one person can occupy a position; as,

- They appointed him president.

Rule 7

Articles are not used with months and days of the week when the meaning is **the day/month before or after this one**; as,

- He will come on Tuesday. (next Tuesday)

Rule 8

Names of illnesses do not carry articles; as,

- He was hospitalised for appendicitis.

Rule 9

When meals are being talked about as regular meals of the day, they are used without articles; as,

- What did you have for dinner today?

Rule 10

The noun **man**, when used to mean mankind or the human race, does not have an article; as,

- Man is mortal.

Rule 11

Articles are not used if possessive pronouns are part of the noun phrase; as,

- He stays in my house. (not **the my house**)

Rule 12

When two or more adjectives refer to the same person/thing and are joined together by **and**, an article may be used only before the first noun.

- **The orator and poet** arrived on time. (will mean there are one person)
- **The orator and the poet** arrived on time. (will mean there are two persons)
- I saw **a black and white dog**. (a dog part black and part white)
- I saw **a black and a white dog**. (two dogs, one black and one white)

Rule 13

When two or more nouns refer to closely-related different things, **the** article is not used before the second noun.

- I need a fork and knife to eat this.

5. DEMONSTRATIVES

Demonstratives are pronouns which point out to something. However, when they are followed by nouns, they act as determiners. The demonstrative determiners in the English language are this, that, these, those.

Rule 1

The demonstrative determiner 'That' (Plural-Those) is used to avoid repetition of a preceding noun.

- My shorts are better than those of my brother.
- Our defence academies are better than those of Afghanistan.

Rule 2

The demonstrative determiner 'This (Plural-These)' is used to refer to a person/ persons or thing/ things near to the speaker.

- This is the best coffee I have had.
- These magazines are very good.

Rule 3

The demonstrative determiner 'That (Plural-Those)' refers to a person/ persons or thing/ things far from the speaker.

- Get that dog out of the house.
- Throw away those shoes in the garbage.

6. POSSESSIVES

The possessive determiners in the English language are my, your, our, his, her, its, and their. These are used to show or determine the ownership of a certain thing.

- Where is your car?
- The dog growled and showed its teeth.
- My best friend is a cat.
- Which one is his house?
- It's our secret recipe.
- Their house was just around the corner.

4. The furniture in his house _____ impressive, (look, looks)
5. Few students _____ present in the class today, (is, are)
6. Ritesh, my best friend _____ leaving for Japan next week, (is, are)
7. Most of my friends _____ government employees, (is, are)
8. The level of intoxication _____ from subject to subject, (vary, varies)
9. Either boys or girls _____ telling lies, (is, are)
10. A number of people _____ reported to be missing in the train accident at Jhansi. (was, were)

Ans :

- | | | |
|----------|-----------|----------|
| 1. has | 2. is | 3. tries |
| 4. looks | 5. are | 6. is |
| 7. are | 8. varies | 9. are |
| 10. were | | |

15. In each of the lines below, one verb does not agree with the subject. Write it correctly.

1. Gauri and Tamanna is visiting the Jaisalmer Fort.
2. The Jaisalmer Fort are one of the largest forts in the world.
3. The fort stand in the middle of the Thar Desert.
4. Several tales of valour is attached to this fort.
5. Many warriors has tried to capture this fort.
6. A few has succeeded.

Ans :

	Incorrect	Correct
1.	is	are
2.	are	is
3.	stand	stands
4.	is	are
5.	has	have
6.	has	have

16. Fill in the blanks with the correct verb given in the bracket:

1. Mathematics _____ (is/are) my favourite subject.
2. Politics _____ (is/are) not my cup of tea.

3. The poet and philosopher, Rahim _____ (has/have) died.
4. Mohan no less than you _____ (is/are) guilty.
5. This news _____ (is/are) false.
6. Bread and butter _____ (is/are) my favourite breakfast.

Ans :

1. is, 2. is, 3. has, 4. are, 5. is, 6. is.

17. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of verb:

1. It is Ram who _____ to blame.
2. The whole class _____ absent.
3. The jury _____ different opinion.
4. Neither you nor I _____ invited.
5. All the boys of the class _____ absent today.
6. Two and two _____ four.

Ans :

1. is, 2. is, 3. has, 4. am, 5. are, 6. make.

18. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of verb:

1. The majority of the applicants _____ girls.
2. Neither of these two boys _____ scored well.
3. A pair of shoes _____ been stolen.
4. The quality of these apples _____ not good.
5. A black and white cow _____ grazing outside.
6. A black and a white cow _____ grazing outside.

Ans :

1. are, 2. has, 3. has, 4. is, 5. is, 6. are.

19. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of verb:

1. One thousand rupees _____ a big amount for me.
2. If I _____ a bird, I would fly.
3. Each of the girls _____ received an award.
4. Four weeks _____ a good holiday.
5. My father _____ not like reading comics.
6. He walks as if he _____ lame.

Ans :

1. is, 2. were, 3. has, 4. is, 5. does, 6. were.

20. Fill up the blanks by using the correct form of the verbs given in brackets.

1. Mrs Talwar _____ (live) in a village.
2. She _____ (be) three children.
3. Her hobby _____ (be) singing and praying in solitude.

- Take either side of the bed, both are the same.
- Neither of them is speaking the truth.

Each and Every

These determiners are used to refer to all members of a group, persons or things. When we talk about members as individuals, we use 'each' and when we make a statement about all of them we use 'every'. They are to be prefixed before a singular countable noun and the verb attached with them should be singular.

- Each and every board member was present in the meeting.
- Today a laptop and air conditioner can be seen in each house.
- Every child is said to have his/ her own special abilities.

Several

It is usually used to indicate an imprecise number that is not very large but more than two.

- There were several deaths during the floods in U.P.
- There were several cases of fraud pending against him in the court.

Most

'Most' is used to indicate nearly all of an amount or of a group.

- Most of the people do not recover from this fatal disease.
- Most of the people in India are working class.

Enough

The determiner 'enough' is used before uncountable nouns or plural nouns to say that there is something that is sufficient and enough as much as needed.

- The hotel had enough rooms for all the guests.
- They did not have enough storage to store all that they had ordered for.

A lot

It means very often or very much. It is used as an adverb. It often comes at the end of a sentence and never before a noun.

- I like basketball a lot.
- She's a lot happier now than she was.
- I don't go there a lot anymore.

A lot of, lots of

We use a lot of and lots of in informal styles. Lots of is more informal than a lot of. A lot of and lots of can both be used with plural countable nouns and with singular uncountable nouns for affirmatives, negatives, and questions:

- We've got lots of things to do.
- That's a lot of money.
- There weren't a lot of choices.
- Can you hurry up? I don't have a lot of time.
- Are there a lot of good players at your tennis club?
- Have you eaten lots of chocolate?

8. CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMBERS

The cardinal numbers (one, two, three, ...) are adjectives referring to quantity, and the ordinal numbers (first, second, third, ...) refer to distribution.

- There are twenty-five beds available in a hospital.
- Geeta won second prize in painting competition.

9. DIFFERENCE WORDS

Another

It can be used with a singular countable noun to talk about an additional person or thing of the same type.

- Can I have another cup of coffee?
- He opened another branch last month.

Other

This determiner is used with plural nouns or sometimes with uncountable nouns.

- Other people might not have thought like this.
- The students are busy in other activities rather than participating in the math class.

CHAPTER 7

CLAUSES

1. INTRODUCTION

A group of words that includes a subject and a finite verb, and forms part of a sentence, is called a clause. A clause is more than a phrase (which has no subject-verb combination) and less than a sentence.

They came in time.

Here *in time* is a phrase. It makes some sense but not a complete sense.

2. TYPES OF CLAUSES

Based on their ability to stand alone, clauses are divided into two main types:

1. **Main (Principal) Clause:** Can stand alone as a complete sentence.

Example: I know the man.

2. **Subordinate (Dependent) Clause:** Cannot stand alone; it depends on the Main Clause for its meaning.

Example: ...who lives next door.

Subordinate clauses are classified by the function they perform. They function as nouns, adjectives and adverbs. So there are three kinds of subordinate clauses. They are noun clauses, adjective clauses (Relative Clause) and adverb clauses. In your syllabus, you are required to focus on Noun Clauses and Relative Clauses.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

3. NOUN CLAUSES

A Noun Clause is a subordinate clause that does the work of a noun. It usually answers the question "What?"

Common Connectors (Subordinators):

- That (used for statements)
- If/Whether (used for Yes/No questions)
- Wh- words (Who, What, Where, When, Why, How)

Functions of a Noun Clause:

1. As the Object of a Verb (Most Common):
 - I fear **that I shall fail**. (I fear what? → that I shall fail)
 - Tell me **where you live**. (Tell me what? → where you live)
2. As the Subject of a Verb:
 - **What he said** was true.
 - **That she is honest** is known to all.
3. In Apposition to a Noun/Pronoun:
 - The news **that he died** shocked us. (The news = that he died)

In a Noun Clause, the word order is always Subject + Verb, never Verb + Subject (like a question).

Incorrect: I don't know where **is he**.

Correct: I don't know **where he is**.

4. RELATIVE CLAUSES

A Relative Clause is a subordinate clause that does the work of an adjective. It describes or identifies a noun (called the 'Antecedent') that comes immediately before it.

Relative Pronouns and Adverbs

- Who/Whom: For people.
- Which: For things and animals.
- That: For people, things, and animals.
- Whose: For possession.
- Where/When/Why: For place, time, and reason.

Types of Relative Clauses

There are two types of relative clauses:

1. **Defining (Restrictive) Clauses:** These provide essential information to identify the noun. Without this clause, the sentence is incomplete or unclear. No commas are used.
 - The book **that you gave me** is lost. (Which book? The one you gave me.)
2. **Non-Defining (Non-Restrictive) Clauses:** These provide extra information about a noun that is already identified. Commas are mandatory

8. M. S. Dhoni is one of _____ best captains cricket has seen.

(a) The (b) A
(c) An (d) That

Ans :

(a) The

9. _____ apple _____ day keeps _____ doctor away.

(a) A, an, the (b) The, an, a
(c) An, a, the (d) An, the, a

Ans :

(c) An, a, the

10. I don't want _____ coffee, thank you.

(a) Some (b) Any
(c) Little (d) Few

Ans :

(b) Any

11. How _____ money do you spend on new clothes?

(a) Many (b) Few
(c) Much (d) Little

Ans :

(c) Much

12. Only _____ people came to watch the new film.

(a) A few (b) Many
(c) Much (d) A some

Ans :

(a) A few

13. Could you give me _____ money, please?

(a) Little (b) A little
(c) A few (d) Few

Ans :

(b) A little

14. We had _____ money left, so we went out for a meal. We decided to abandon our trip as we had _____ money left.

(a) a little, a little (b) little, a little
(c) a few, few (d) a little, little

Ans :

(d) a little, little

15. She spent _____ amount of money she had.

(a) little (b) much
(c) the few (d) the little

Ans :

(d) the little

16. _____ tact would have saved the situation.

(a) The little (b) A little
(c) Little (d) Very little

Ans :

(b) A little

17. I can't eat _____ more bananas, but I should like _____ more apples.

(a) any, any (b) some, some
(c) some, any (d) any, some

Ans :

(d) any, some

18. Put _____ sugar in your tea; I haven't put _____

(a) some, any (b) any, any
(c) some, some (d) any, some

Ans :

(a) some, any

19. He is very lucky. He has _____ friends to stand by him in times of need.

(a) little (b) few
(c) a few (d) a little

Ans :

(c) a few

20. I gave a dinner for a _____ close friends.

(a) many (b) more
(c) the few (d) few

Ans :

(d) few

21. There is _____ water left, so drink only if you must.

(a) some (b) little
(c) few (d) much

Ans :

(b) little

22. There isn't _____ point at all in getting upset about it.

(a) few (b) several
(c) any (d) many

Ans :

(c) any

23. According to the studies, dolphins, whales and _____ other sea creatures use highly sophisticated navigation systems.

(a) any (b) a little
(c) many (d) much

Ans :

(c) many

24. The dietary habits of a child often have _____ to do with that child's eating habits as an adult.

(a) little (b) every
(c) most (d) None of these

Ans :

(a) little

25. In the United States of America, there are literacy classes for workers, _____ of whom never graduated from high school.

(a) a little (b) much
(c) any (d) many

Ans :

(d) many

26. In the first _____ months of life, an infant learns how to lift its head, how to smile and how to recognize its parents.

(a) many (b) any
(c) few (d) None of these

Ans :

(c) few

27. Serving _____ terms in Congress, Shirley Chisholm became an important United States politician.

(a) several (b) much
(c) a lot of (d) None of these

Ans :

(a) several

28. The storm continued for _____ of the days when we were in New Orleans, but fortunately there wasn't _____ damage in the city.

(a) a few, many (b) all, a little
(c) most, much (d) some, few

Ans :

(c) most, much

29. Heavy fines and jail sentences have made _____ difference in preventing elephant poaching for their tusks.

(a) a few (b) little
(c) many (d) None of these

Ans :

(b) little

30. Although the language learning abilities of apes have surprised _____ scientists, they generally agree that apes do not progress beyond the

linguistic abilities of a two-year-old child.

(a) few (b) a little
(c) many (d) much

Ans :

(c) many

31. Though it is a densely populated city, there are surprisingly _____ people seen on the streets.

(a) few (b) a few
(c) little (d) a little

Ans :

(a) few

32. With hard work and _____ luck nothing can stop you in your way to success.

(a) little (b) a little
(c) few (d) a few

Ans :

(b) a little

33. I know _____ of the book is not worth reading but most of the readers like the end of the book.

(a) much (b) many
(c) a few (d) several

Ans :

(a) much

34. We only spent _____ days in Istanbul; on the first day we visited the famous mosques and on the other days we just shopped.

(a) a few (b) many
(c) little (d) the little

Ans :

(a) a few

35. The expedition through the old Mayan city was held up because of _____ delays in the delivery of food supplies.

(a) any (b) several
(c) every (d) much

Ans :

(b) several

36. Although _____ of the lawn is open to the sun, there are plenty of shade trees to make it comfortable.

(a) each (b) every
(c) most (d) none

Ans :

(c) most

37. Although there were many politicians that were honest and decent, there were just as _____ who were not.

(a) some (b) much
(c) many (d) a little

Ans :

(c) many

38. Surveys say anti-war protests and incidents in _____ of Europe are at their most frequent since World War II.

(a) each (b) much
(c) many (d) a few

Ans :

(b) much

39. The news was _____ good to be true.

(a) very (b) too
(c) so (d) as

Ans :

(b) too

40. _____ of the two sisters is married.

(a) Both (b) Every
(c) Each (d) Any

Ans :

(c) Each

41. _____ of you should attend the conference.

(a) Both (b) Each
(c) Every (d) Many

Ans :

(a) Both

42. Which one of the following sentences shows a correct use of Article

(a) He lived in the three hundred year old house in Delhi.
(b) He lived in a three hundred year old house in Delhi.
(c) both a and b above
(d) None of these

Ans :

(b) He lived in a three hundred year old house in Delhi.

43. Which one of the following sentences shows a correct use of Article

(a) The teacher called the last boy standing in the queue.
(b) The teacher called a last boy standing in the queue.

(c) both a and b above

(d) None of these

Ans :

(a) The teacher called the last boy standing in the queue.

44. Which one of the following sentences shows a correct use of Article

(a) His mother forbade him to go to the circus late at night.

(b) His mother forbade him to go to circus late at night.

(c) both a and b above

(d) None of these

Ans :

(a) His mother forbade him to go to the circus late at night.

45. Which one of the following sentences shows a correct use of Article

(a) Ganga is a holy river for Hindus.

(b) The Ganga is a holy river for Hindus.

(c) both a and b above

(d) None of these

Ans :

(b) The Ganga is a holy river for Hindus.

46. Which one of the following sentences shows a correct use of Article

(a) God is merciful to all of us.

(b) The God is merciful to all of us.

(c) A God is merciful to all of us.

(d) None of these

Ans :

(a) God is merciful to all of us.

47. Which one of the following sentences shows a correct use of Article

(a) We went to see a Taj Mahal in Agra.

(b) We went to see the Taj Mahal in Agra.

(c) We went to see the Taj Mahal in the Agra.

(d) None of these

Ans :

(b) We went to see the Taj Mahal in Agra.

48. Which one of the following sentences shows a correct use of Article

(a) The Book which you demand is out of print.

(b) Book which you demand is out of print.

(c) A Book which you demand is out of print.

(d) None of these

Ans :

(a) The Book which you demand is out of print.

49. Which one of the following sentences shows a correct use of Article

(a) A black and a white cow is grazing in the field.

(b) A black and white cow is grazing in the field.

(c) A black and the white cow is grazing in the field.

(d) None of these

Ans :

(b) A black and white cow is grazing in the field.

50. Which one of the following sentences shows a correct use of Article

(a) Shri Shanker Dayal Sharma was the President of India.

(b) Shri Shanker Dayal Sharma was President of India.

(c) Shri Shanker Dayal Sharma was a President of India.

(d) None of these

Ans :

(a) Shri Shanker Dayal Sharma was the President of India.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. Fill the blank by choosing the correct option, to complete the concluding line of an issued circular by an Organisation, to its Managers.

A copy of the plan is enclosed and _____ (that/then/this) may be communicated to all Team Leaders for compliance.

Ans :

this

2. Identify the error and supply the correction, for the following sentence:

Every people went to welcome the Indian Cricket team.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
Every	Many

3. Identify the error and supply the correction, for the following sentence:

Every trees have a single woody stem called a trunk which supports a mass of branches carrying leaves.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
Every	Most

4. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

At the age of seventeen, Galileo know that he had discovered an important law- a law of a pendulum.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
a	the

5. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

Our defence academies are better than that of Afghanistan.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
that	those

6. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

There are a little countries in the world where the population is not growing fast.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
a little	a few

7. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

Have you got some proof that he committed the crime?

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
some	any

8. Identify the error in the given description about sachin tendulkar and supply the correction.
Sachin Tendulkar is the best cricketer in India. He has played for many than twenty years for the Country.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
many	more

9. Identify the error and supply the correction for the following sentence:
Countries near on equator are some warmer than countries farther to the North and South.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
some	much

10. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.
We can expect few more mosquitoes after continued falls of rain.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
few	some

11. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

I walk 3 kilometres each day to reach my school.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
each	every

12. Fill in the blanks with a, an, the :

- He is studying at _____ University in U.K.
- Have you found _____ pen you lost yesterday?
- Please give me _____ one rupee note.
- All _____ boys run away.
- I have bought _____ umbrella.
- Neil Armstrong was _____ first man to land on the moon.
- Yesterday _____ European visitor came to our school.
- The camel is _____ ship of the desert.
- Nasir is _____ honourable man.
- I don't expect _____ reward.
- _____ island is a piece of land surrounded by water on all sides.
- Give me _____ book to read.
- Christmas falls on _____ 25th of December every year.
- These are _____ students who have broken the chair.
- The teacher asked _____ easy question.
- He is _____ able man.
- Ramesh is _____ best of all.
- He has applied for _____ post of a lecturer.
- I have lost _____ pen you gave me.
- Life is not _____ bed of roses.

Ans :

- | | | | |
|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. a | 6. the | 11. An | 16. an |
| 2. the | 7. a | 12. a | 17. the |
| 3. a | 8. the | 13. the | 18. the |
| 4. the | 9. an | 14. the | 19. the |
| 5. an | 10. the | 15. an | 20. a |

13. Fill in the blanks with a, an, the:

- _____ Sun rises is _____ east and sets in _____ west.
- _____ apple _____ day, keeps _____ doctor away.
- Akash is Dara Singh of our school.
- _____ Rajdhani Express is _____ fast and comfortable train for _____ rich.
- _____ Himalayas are _____ highest mountains in _____ world.
- _____ dogs is _____ faithful animal.
- _____ postman put _____ letter under _____ front door just _____ hour after you had left.
- _____ man you saw here yesterday is _____ uncle of mine and _____ great lover of _____ Ramayana.
- She is _____ M.A. in Geography.
- _____ cow is _____ useful animal.

Ans :

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. The, the, the | 6. The, a |
| 2. An, a, the | 7. The, a, the, an |
| 3. the | 8. The, an, a, the |
| 4. The, a, the | 9. an |
| 5. The, the, the | 10. The, a |

14. Fill in the blanks with suitable determiners:

- _____ books are missing from the library. (Any/Some)
- She has not solved _____ sums, (many/any)
- This book is mine but _____ is yours, (that/any)
- _____ boys have done their work. (That/These)
- He didn't make _____ progress, (much/many)
- He has forgotten _____ of the details, (some/many)
- The District Magistrate visited _____ flood affected area, (every/either)

- _____ villa is this? (Whose/What)
- He is the _____ boy who has joined this gym. (first/whose)
- I met her _____ week, (this/those)

Ans :

- | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. Some | 2. many | 3. that |
| 4. These | 5. much | 6. some |
| 7. every | 8. Whose | 9. first |
| 10. this | | |

15. Fill in the blanks with suitable determiners:

- Could you bring me _____ books I left in the garden?
- _____ sun rises from the east.
- The doctor advised me to eat _____ apple every morning.
- There aren't _____ students in the library.
- I haven't got _____ pictures in my bedroom.
- She gave a cookie to _____ child.
- I've got to solve _____ math problems before I go to sleep.
- _____ cherries are delicious! (With a bowl of cherries on your lap)
- My mother doesn't drink _____ coffee.
- I always keep _____ money in my wallet for emergencies.

Ans :

- | | | |
|----------|----------|---------|
| 1. those | 2. The | 3. an |
| 4. many | 5. any | 6. each |
| 7. some | 8. These | 9. much |
| 10. some | | |

16. Fill in the blanks with suitable determiners:

- They were bored because there was _____ to do.
- We invited _____ friends over to our house for a barbecue.
- _____ of the cakes had been baked the day before.
- Sally didn't take _____ photos when she went on holiday.
- The teacher gave _____ of the students a piece of paper.
- Every one of _____ friends sent me a birthday card, but none of them bought me a present.

7. Henry had _____ idea what the answer to the question was.
8. I like _____ of her songs, but not all of them are good.
9. They waited for a bus for half _____ hour.
10. _____ table is made of wood.

Ans :

- | | | |
|-----------|----------|---------|
| 1. little | 2. a few | 3. most |
| 4. many | 5. each | 6. my |
| 7. no | 8. many | 9. an |
| 10. a | | |

17. Choose the correct determiner from the brackets:

1. Let us save _____ (a little/the little) for a rainy day.
2. Won't you have _____ (many/some) tea? Yes, I'll have _____ (a little/a few).
3. Don't you have _____ (any/some) match at all? Of course we have _____ (any/some).
4. He is mischievous, like _____ (many/a good many) boys.
5. _____ (Many a/A good many) persons have made the same mistake.
6. _____ (Every/Many) boy is keen on gymnastics.
7. Generally, Mr Jones doesn't have _____ (many/much) money with him. But whenever he goes to visit his grandchildren, he has _____ (many/much) coins in his pocket.
8. _____ (Lot of/A lot of) petrol leaked from the tank.
9. "How _____ (much more/many more) strength must I exert", the mechanic asked.
10. There is _____ (lots of/a lot of) marbles here, Andy told Mark. "Let's take _____ (few/a few)".

Ans :

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. the little | 6. Every |
| 2. some, a little | 7. much, many |
| 3. any, some | 8. A lot of, |
| 4. a good many | 9. much |
| 5. A good many | 10. a lot of, a few |

NODIA



10. INTERROGATIVES

Interrogative determiners formulate direct or indirect questions and exclamations. The three interrogative determiners in English are what, which, and whose.

Whose

Whose means “belonging to which person”. Whose functions both as an interrogative and a possessive determiner, so technically whose is an interrogative possessive determiner. Whose is the only interrogative possessive determiner in English.

- They didn't know whose car it was.
- Whose iPhone was stolen?
- He couldn't remember whose car keys they were.

What

What is for asking for information specifying something.

- What time did you arrive?
- I wonder what reason he gave.
- What idiot told you that?

Which

Which is for asking for information specifying one or more people or things from a definite set.

- Which table would you prefer?
- I wonder which teacher told him that.
- I asked them which Italian car was best.



EXERCISE

Multiple Choice Type Questions

- Fill the blank with the correct option to complete the note of appreciation by the Head of an organisation.
It is good to know that _____ registration forms were received this time for our event, as compared to the previous year.

- (a) many (b) most
(c) much (d) more

Ans :

- (d) more

- There was _____ major accident near the railway station.

- (a) an (b) a
(c) the (d) none of these

Ans :

- (b) a

- Sri Lanka is _____ island.

- (a) a (b) an
(c) the (d) none of these

Ans :

- (b) an

- He is _____ honour to his profession.

- (a) an (b) a
(c) the (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) an

- The cow is _____ sacred animal.

- (a) a (b) an
(c) the (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) a

- I saw a woman with _____ umbrella over her head.

- (a) a (b) an
(c) the (d) none of these

Ans :

- (b) an

- _____ European visited our town yesterday.

- (a) A (b) An
(c) The (d) None of these

Ans :

- (a) A

before and after the clause.

- My father, **who is a doctor**, is 50 years old. (The information “who is a doctor” is extra; the main point is his age.)

5. NOUN CLAUSE VS. RELATIVE CLAUSE

The key to distinguishing between these two clauses lies in identifying the part of speech they are connected to and the specific role they play in the sentence.

Feature	Noun Clause	Relative Clause
Position	Usually follows a Verb.	Always follows a Noun.
Function	Acts as a thing/fact.	Acts as a description.
Test	Can be replaced by the word “something”.	Cannot be replaced by “something”.

Noun Clause: I know **that he is coming**. (I know ‘something’.)

Relative Clause: I know the place **where he lives**. (Describes the ‘place’.)

6. COMBINING SENTENCES (SYNTHESIS)

You can combine two separate sentences into one complex sentence by turning one of them into a Noun Clause or a Relative Clause.

Using a Noun Clause

Focus on merging a fact or statement as the object or subject of the main idea.

- Separate:** He is a thief. Everyone knows it.
Combined: Everyone knows **that** he is a thief.
- Separate :** She will win a scholarship. This is certain.
Combined : This is certain **that** she will win a scholarship.
- Separate :** The servant informed Phatik. He was wanted by his mother.
Combined : The servant informed Phatik **that** he was wanted by his mother.
- Separate :** I have seen many ups and downs in life. This is a fact.
Combined : This is a fact **that** I have seen many ups and downs in life.
- Separate :** The prisoner made good his escape somehow. Nobody knows how.
Combined : Nobody knows **how** the prisoner made good his escape.

Using a Relative Clause

Focus on using a relative pronoun like who, which, or whom to describe a noun in the first sentence

- Separate:** This is the boy. He won the gold medal.
Combined: This is the boy **who** won the gold medal.
- Separate :** Her mother keeps a bitch. I am very afraid of that bitch.
Combined : I am very afraid of the bitch **which** her mother keeps.
- Separate :** She met her old classmate. Her classmate is a doctor now.
Combined : She met her old classmate **who** is a doctor now.
- Separate :** The children were now adults. The children had bought kites from him ten years ago.
Combined : The children **who** had bought kites from him ten years ago were now adults.
- Separate:** The man is my uncle. You met him at the station.
Combined: The man **whom** you met at the station is my uncle.



4. SOME IMPORTANT EXAMPLES

EDITING

1. The following passage has not been edited. Choose the correct option for the underlined words.
The Earth (i) have many beautiful animals. However, human activities (ii) are a threat to them. If we (iii) will not protect forests, many species will disappear soon. A person (iv) which loves nature must work to save it.

- i. (a) had (b) is having
(c) has (d) are
- ii. (a) was (b) shall
(c) must (d) would
- iii. (a) do (b) does
(c) would (d) shall
- iv. (a) what (b) whom
(c) whose (d) who

Ans :

(i) (c), (ii) (a), (iii) (a), (iv) (d)

2. The following passage has not been edited. Choose the correct option for the underlined words.
Last week, our class (i) go to the National Museum. Our teacher said that we (ii) can see ancient coins there. If the rain (iii) stops, we will visit the park nearby too. Every student (iv) were carrying a notebook to take notes.

- i. (a) goes (b) went
(c) going (d) was go
- ii. (a) could (b) will
(c) must (d) shall
- iii. (a) stop (b) stops
(c) will stop (d) stopped
- iv. (a) was (b) are
(c) being (d) am

Ans :

(i) (b), (ii) (a), (iii) (b), (iv) (a)

3. The following passage has not been edited. Choose the correct option for the underlined words.
One of the most important (i) thing is to stay healthy. We (ii) may exercise daily to keep our body fit. A balanced diet (iii) who includes fruits is necessary. If you (iv) ate junk food, your health will suffer.

- i. (a) thought (b) things'
(c) think (d) things
- ii. (a) might (b) can
(c) should (d) could
- iii. (a) whom (b) which
(c) whose (d) what
- iv. (a) eat (b) eats
(c) will eat (d) eating

Ans :

(i) (d), (ii) (c), (iii) (b), (iv) (a)

4. The following passage has not been edited. Choose the correct option for the underlined words.
Rohan asked his mother (i) that where his bag was. She replied that she (ii) has kept it in the cupboard. He (iii) must find it easily if he looks there. The bag, (iv) who is blue in color, contains his books.

- i. (a) if (b) why
(c) Omit 'that' (d) whether
- ii. (a) had (b) is having
(c) have (d) was
- iii. (a) will (b) would
(c) can (d) shall
- iv. (a) what (b) whose
(c) whom (d) which

Ans :

(i) (c), (ii) (a), (iii) (c), (iv) (d)

5. The following passage has not been edited. Choose the correct option for the underlined words.
(i) Much people are now aware of pollution. The government (ii) should pass strict laws to control it. The river (iii) that flows through our city is dirty. If we (iv) cleaned it, the water will become safe for use.

- i. (a) Some (b) Little
(c) Any (d) Many
- ii. (a) could (b) may
(c) can (d) might
- iii. (a) who (b) whose
(c) whom (d) what
- iv. (a) cleans (b) clean
(c) will clean (d) cleaning

- (c) I bought yesterday
(d) The book that I bought

Ans :

(b) that I bought yesterday

16. Mr. Sharma, _____ is our neighbor, is a doctor.

- (a) who (b) which
(c) that (d) whom

Ans :

(a) who

17. I have found the pen _____ I lost in the playground.

- (a) who (b) whose
(c) whom (d) that

Ans :

(d) that

18. The reason _____ he left the job is unknown.

- (a) where (b) why
(c) when (d) who

Ans :

(b) why

19. The flowers _____ grow in this garden are beautiful.

- (a) who (b) whose
(c) that (d) whom

Ans :

(c) that

20. Meet the student _____ the principal praised.

- (a) who (b) whose
(c) which (d) whom

Ans :

(d) whom

21. Identify the clause: "I know **that he is coming.**"

- (a) Noun Clause (b) Relative Clause
(c) Main Clause (d) None of these

Ans :

(a) Noun Clause

22. Identify the clause: "I know the man **who is coming.**"

- (a) Noun Clause (b) Relative Clause
(c) Main Clause (d) None of these

Ans :

(b) Relative Clause

23. Identify the clause: "I wonder **where she lives.**"

- (a) Noun Clause (b) Relative Clause
(c) Main Clause (d) None of these

Ans :

(a) Noun Clause

24. Identify the clause: "This is the place **where she lives.**"

- (a) Noun Clause (b) Relative Clause
(c) Main Clause (d) None of these

Ans :

(b) Relative Clause

25. Identify the clause: "The news **that he won** is true."

- (a) Noun Clause (b) Relative Clause
(c) Main Clause (d) None of these

Ans :

(a) Noun Clause

26. Identify the clause: "The news **that he heard** is true."

- (a) Noun Clause (b) Relative Clause
(c) Main Clause (d) None of these

Ans :

(b) Relative Clause

27. Identify the clause: "She told me **what she wanted.**"

- (a) Noun Clause (b) Relative Clause
(c) Main Clause (d) None of these

Ans :

(a) Noun Clause

28. Identify the clause: "This is the doll **which she wanted.**"

- (a) Noun Clause (b) Relative Clause
(c) Main Clause (d) None of these

Ans :

(b) Relative Clause

29. Identify the clause: "**Whoever arrives first** gets the prize."

- (a) Noun Clause (b) Relative Clause
(c) Main Clause (d) None of these

Ans :

(a) Noun Clause

30. Identify the clause: "The student **who arrives first** gets the prize."

- (a) Noun Clause (b) Relative Clause
(c) Main Clause (d) None of these

Ans :

(b) Relative Clause

EXERCISE

Multiple Choice Type Questions

- I don't know _____ he is so upset today.
(a) who (b) why
(c) whose (d) which
Ans :
(b) why
- _____ he said at the meeting was quite inspiring.
(a) That (b) Which
(c) What (d) Whom
Ans :
(c) What
- Identify the Noun Clause: "The teacher asked if we had finished the homework."
(a) The teacher asked if we had
(b) if we had finished the homework
(c) we had finished the homework
(d) The teacher asked if
Ans :
(b) if we had finished the homework
- I believe _____ honesty is the best policy.
(a) what (b) that
(c) if (d) whether
Ans :
(b) that
- Can you tell me _____ the principal is in his office?
(a) if (b) which
(c) whose (d) whom
Ans :
(a) if
- In the sentence "How he solved the puzzle is a secret," the noun clause acts as:
(a) Object of the verb
(b) Subject of the verb
(c) Object of a preposition
(d) Complement to a verb
Ans :
(b) Subject of the verb
- I am not sure _____ the results will be announced.
(a) that (b) when
(c) what (d) which

Ans :

(b) when

- No one knows _____ the keys are hiding.

(a) where (b) who
(c) whose (d) that

Ans :

(a) where

- Correct the word order: "Tell me what is your name."

(a) Tell me what your name is.
(b) Tell me your name is what.
(c) Tell what your name is me.
(d) What is your name tell me.

Ans :

(a) Tell me what your name is.

- My hope is _____ he will recover soon.

(a) whether (b) that
(c) if (d) what

Ans :

(b) that

- The boy _____ sits next to me is very helpful.

(a) which (b) whom
(c) who (d) whose

Ans :

(c) who

- This is the house _____ my grandfather built.

(a) who (b) whom
(c) whose (d) which

Ans :

(d) which

- The woman _____ purse was stolen went to the police.

(a) who (b) whose
(c) which (d) whom

Ans :

(b) whose

- The city _____ I was born is very famous.

(a) when (b) why
(c) where (d) which

Ans :

(c) where

- Identify the Relative Clause: "The book that I bought yesterday is lost."

(a) The book is lost
(b) that I bought yesterday

7. **Noun Clause Logic:** Does the clause “what you need” act as a Subject or Object in: “What you need is a long vacation”?
8. **Punctuation Check:** Should there be commas in: “My brother who lives in London is coming home”? (Assume I have only one brother).
9. **Combine using ‘Whose’:** This is the man. His son won the marathon.
10. **Test the ‘Something’ Rule:** In “I forgot that I had a meeting,” can the underlined part be replaced by “something”? (Yes/No).

Ans :

1. I asked the teacher **why the lesson was** so difficult. (Noun clauses use statement order).
 2. which/that (Relative pronoun for things).
 3. Subject to the verb ‘is’.
 4. if (Used for uncertainty/questions in noun clauses).
 5. who (Correction: which/that; ‘who’ is only for people).
 6. The cake (The noun immediately before the clause).
 7. Subject (It is the “thing” the sentence is about).
 8. Yes (If you have only one brother, it is extra information/Non-defining, so commas are needed).
 9. This is the man **whose son won the marathon**.
 10. Yes (I forgot something).
2. Combine each pair of sentences into one complex sentence using a Noun Clause or a Relative Clause.
1. He is innocent. I am sure of it.
 2. This is the house. I was born here.
 3. You have made a mistake. That is obvious.
 4. I met a woman. Her son is a famous actor.
 5. Why is the baby crying? Can you tell me?
 6. The parcel arrived today. My brother sent it.
 7. He told a story. It was very exciting.
 8. Honesty is the best policy. My father taught me this.
 9. Who broke the window? It remains a mystery.
 10. I know the boy. He won the debate competition.

Ans :

1. I am sure **that he is innocent**. (Noun Clause)
2. This is the house **where I was born**. (Relative Clause)
3. **That you have made a mistake** is obvious. (Noun Clause)
4. I met a woman **whose son is a famous actor**. (Relative Clause)

5. Can you tell me **why the baby is crying?** (Noun Clause)
6. The parcel **which my brother sent** arrived today. (Relative Clause)
7. The story **that he told** was very exciting. (Relative Clause)
8. My father taught me **that honesty is the best policy**. (Noun Clause)
9. **Who broke the window** remains a mystery. (Noun Clause)
10. I know the boy **who won the debate competition**. (Relative Clause)

3. Fill in the blanks with the most suitable connector from the box. Some words can be used more than once.

that, who, whose, where, what, why, if, which

1. I don't understand _____ he is so angry with me.
2. The boy _____ sits next to me in class is very helpful.
3. Can you tell me _____ the principal is in his office?
4. This is the town _____ my parents first met.
5. _____ he said at the meeting was quite inspiring.
6. The old lady _____ house was damaged in the storm is staying with her daughter.
7. I have a feeling _____ it is going to rain today.
8. The mobile phone _____ I bought last week has a great camera.
9. Do you know _____ the keys are? I can't find them anywhere.
10. The reason _____ she left early is still unknown to us.

Ans :

1. why, 2. who, 3. if/whether, 4. where, 5. What,
6. whose, 7. that, 8. which/that, 9. where, 10. why.

4. Fill in the gaps in the passage below using appropriate clause connectors (that, who, which, whose, where, why, what).
- Yesterday, I met an old explorer (1) _____ has traveled to the most remote corners of the world. He told me a fascinating story about a hidden temple (2) _____ he discovered in the Amazon rainforest. The temple, (3) _____ walls were covered in ancient gold, was located in a valley (4) _____ no map had ever shown.

31. Combine: "Someone stole my bike. I don't know who."

- (a) I don't know who stole my bike.
- (b) Who stole my bike I don't know.
- (c) I don't know the person who stole my bike.
- (d) Both (a) and (c)

Ans :

- (a) I don't know who stole my bike.

32. Combine: "This is the path. It leads to the forest."

- (a) This is the path that it leads to the forest.
- (b) This is the path which leads to the forest.
- (c) This is the path leads to the forest.
- (d) The path leading to the forest.

Ans :

- (b) This is the path which leads to the forest.

33. Combine using Noun Clause: "He is a thief. Everyone knows it."

- (a) Everyone knows that he is a thief.
- (b) Everyone knows him who is a thief.
- (c) Everyone knows a thief is he.
- (d) That he is a thief is known by everyone.

Ans :

- (a) Everyone knows that he is a thief.

34. Combine using Relative Clause: "I met a boy. His father is a pilot."

- (a) I met a boy whose father is a pilot.
- (b) I met a boy who's father is a pilot.
- (c) I met a boy pilot's father.
- (d) I met a boy that father is a pilot.

Ans :

- (a) I met a boy whose father is a pilot.

35. Combine: "What does he want? I don't care."

- (a) I don't care what he wants.
- (b) I don't care what does he want.
- (c) I don't care he wants what.
- (d) What he wants I don't care.

Ans :

- (a) I don't care what he wants.

36. Find the error: "The car who I bought yesterday is red."

- (a) car
- (b) who
- (c) bought
- (d) red

Ans :

- (b) who

37. Find the error: "I don't know where does he go every evening."

- (a) where
- (b) does he go
- (c) every evening
- (d) don't know

Ans :

- (b) does he go

38. Which connector is best for possession in a relative clause?

- (a) Whom
- (b) Who
- (c) Whose
- (d) Which

Ans :

- (c) Whose

39. Relative clauses that give "extra information" and use commas are called:

- (a) Defining Clauses
- (b) Non-defining Clauses
- (c) Noun Clauses
- (d) Object Clauses

Ans :

- (b) Non-defining Clauses

40. Which of these acts as a Noun Clause?

- (a) The boy who is singing.
- (b) The song which he is singing.
- (c) What he is singing.
- (d) Sing a song for me.

Ans :

- (c) What he is singing.

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. Follow the specific instruction given for each question to test your deep understanding of Noun and Relative Clauses.

1. **Correct the word order:** I asked the teacher why was the lesson so difficult.
2. **Fill the gap with a Relative Pronoun:** This is the museum _____ we visited last summer.
3. **Identify the Function:** In the sentence "How he solved the puzzle is a secret," what is the role of the underlined Noun Clause?
4. **Choose the correct connector:** I am not sure (if/which) she will arrive on time.
5. **Spot the Error:** The car, who I bought last week, has already broken down. (Identify the wrong word).
6. **Relative Clause Logic:** Which word does the clause describe in: "The cake that my mother baked was delicious"?

CHAPTER 8

EDITING AND OMITTING

1. INTRODUCTION

Editing and Omitting questions test a student's ability to identify and correct errors in a given passage. These questions check your understanding of grammar, sentence structure, and accuracy of language. In the Editing part, you are required to find incorrect words and replace them with the correct ones. In the Omitting part, you need to identify missing words and choose the correct word to complete the sentence meaningfully. According to the CBSE Class 9 pattern, this is a 4-mark section where you choose the correct replacement from four given options (MCQs). This section helps students improve their accuracy, attention to detail, and command over grammar.

2. CORE CONCEPTS

The errors in your exam will be strictly limited to the following sub-topics. When you read a line, check for these “Thematic Errors”:

Sequence of Tenses

A passage usually follows a single timeline. If the story begins in the past, the verbs that follow should generally remain in the past.

Rule: If the main verb is in the Past Tense, the subordinate verbs should also be in the Past Tense.

- She said she is busy.
(Error: ‘is’ should be ‘was’)

Subject-Verb Concord (Agreement)

A verb must agree with its subject in number.
Singular Subject → Singular Verb (e.g., He plays)
Plural Subject → Plural Verb (e.g., They play)

Watch out for: Collective nouns (Team/Class) and phrases like “one of the...” or “as well as.”

Modal Auxiliaries

Modals express the “mood” of the action. You must choose the modal that fits the context:

- **Can/Could:** Ability.

- **Should/Must:** Advice or Obligation.
- **May/Might:** Permission or Possibility.

Reported Speech

When a passage reports what someone said, look for changes in:

- **Tense:** Present becomes Past.
- **Pronouns:** “I” becomes “he/she”.
- **Time:** “Today” becomes “that day”.

Determiners

Check if the quantity or reference word is correct.

- **Much/Little:** Used with uncountable nouns (water, time).
- **Many/Few:** Used with countable nouns (books, students).
- **Articles:** A, An, The.

Clauses (Noun & Relative)

Check if the connector (who, which, that, where) matches the word it describes.

- **Who:** For people.
- **Which/That:** For objects.
- **Where:** For places.

Conditional Clauses (Type 1)

Ensure the “If-clause” follows the “If + Simple Present, Will + V1” pattern.

3. THE EDITING PROCESS

In the exam, you will follow the “Search and Select” method:

1. **Read the Context:** Read the first two lines to determine the “base tense” of the passage.
2. **Locate the Verb:** 80% of errors are related to verbs (Tense or Subject-Verb Concord). Check them first.
3. **Analyze Options:** If you find an error, look at the options. Pick the one that fits the tense of the previous and next sentences.
4. **Verification:** Read the corrected line aloud in your head. It should sound logically and grammatically consistent with the rest of the text.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

- i. (a) precious/and/we (b) save/all/it
(c) we/surely/must (d) Water/which/is
- ii. (a) waste/all/it (b) we/will/suffer
(c) suffer/a/later (d) If/ever/we
- iii. (a) water/the/which (b) flows/down/here
(c) here/it/is (d) which/usually/flows
- iv. (a) said/that/he (b) needed/him/some
(c) some/fresh/water (d) he/really/needed

Ans :

(i) (a), (ii) (b), (iii) (d), (iv) (a).



EXERCISE

EDITING

1. The following passage has not been edited. Choose the correct option for the underlined words.
Education (i) provide us with knowledge. It (ii) could be our duty to learn. If we (iii) studied hard, we will succeed. A person (iv) which is educated is respected by all.

- i. (a) provides (b) provided
(c) providing (d) provide
- ii. (a) can (b) is
(c) shall (d) must
- iii. (a) study (b) studies
(c) will study (d) had studied
- iv. (a) whom (b) who
(c) whose (d) what

Ans :

(i) (a), (ii) (d), (iii) (a), (iv) (b).

2. The following passage has not been edited. There is an error in each line. Choose the correct option from the given choices to correct the underlined words.

Success (i) depend on how we manage our time. If we (ii) wasted it, we will regret it. A person (iii) who is hardworking can achieve anything. However, one (iv) may not forget to stay humble.

- i. (a) depending (b) depends
(c) depended (d) was depend
- ii. (a) wasting (b) wastes
(c) will waste (d) waste
- iii. (a) which (b) whose
(c) whom (d) what
- iv. (a) might (b) can
(c) should (d) could

Ans :

(i) (b), (ii) (d), (iii) (a), (iv) (c).

3. The following passage has not been edited. There is an error in each line. Choose the correct option from the given choices to correct the underlined words.

Last night, I (i) see a strange light in the sky. I asked my father (ii) that if it was a plane. He told

Ans :

(i) (d), (ii) (a), (iii) (a), (iv) (b)

OMITTING

1. In the following passage, one word has been omitted in each line. Choose the correct option that indicates the **word before**, the **missing word**, and the **word after** respectively.

Health is the greatest all blessings. (i) _____
 We should exercise daily keep fit. (ii) _____
 If we eat healthy food, we be strong. (iii) _____
 A person is disciplined lives long. (iv) _____

- i. (a) greatest/of/all (b) Health/is/a
 (c) all/the/blessings (d) is/very/greatest
- ii. (a) exercise/and/daily (b) daily/to/keep
 (c) keep/our/fit (d) should/always/exercise
- iii. (a) we/will/be (b) food/and/we
 (c) eat/the/healthy (d) If/only/we
- iv. (a) lives/a/long (b) is/very/disciplined
 (c) disciplined/and/lives (d) person/who/is

Ans :

(i) (a), (ii) (b), (iii) (a), (iv) (d).

2. In the following passage, one word has been omitted in each line. Choose the correct option that indicates the **word before**, the **missing word**, and the **word after** respectively.

The students told the teacher they were ready. (i) _____
 They must study hard if they to pass. (ii) _____
 One of the girls lost her book. (iii) _____
 The book which she bought lost. (iv) _____

- i. (a) teacher/that/they (b) told/to/the
 (c) ready/for/test (d) students/had/told
- ii. (a) hard/only/if (b) they/want/to
 (c) must/surely/study (d) if/they/will
- iii. (a) One/out/of (b) of/the/girls
 (c) girls/had/lost (d) her/new/book
- iv. (a) she/had/bought (b) bought/was/lost
 (c) which/that/she (d) book/the/which

Ans :

(i) (a), (ii) (b), (iii) (c), (iv) (b).

3. In the following passage, one word has been omitted in each line. Choose the correct option that indicates the **word before**, the **missing word**, and the **word after** respectively.

If you work hard, you succeed. (i) _____
 Success depends on how much effort put in. (ii) _____
 The man won the prize is my friend. (iii) _____
 He said he would help me. (iv) _____

- i. (a) you/will/succeed (b) work/very/hard
 (c) hard/then/you (d) succeed/in/life
- ii. (a) much/an/effort (b) effort/you/put
 (c) put/it/in (d) depends/only/on
- iii. (a) prize/it/is (b) won/the/first
 (c) man/who/won (d) is/a/friend
- iv. (a) said/that/he (b) he/surely/would
 (c) help/to/me (d) would/always/help

Ans :

(i) (a), (ii) (b), (iii) (c), (iv) (a).

4. In the following passage, one word has been omitted in each line. Choose the correct option that indicates the **word before**, the **missing word**, and the **word after** respectively.

Each student given a task today. (i) _____
 They can do it if they try. (ii) _____
 The girl bag is red is my sister. (iii) _____
 I don't have many time left. (iv) _____

- i. (a) student/was/given (b) given/him/a
 (c) task/for/today (d) Each/and/student
- ii. (a) can/easily/do (b) they/only/try
 (c) try/it/out (d) do/it/now
- iii. (a) girl/whose/bag (b) bag/which/is
 (c) red/she/is (d) my/own/sister
- iv. (a) don't/even/have (b) have/much/time
 (c) time/is/left (d) many/of/time

Ans :

(i) (a), (ii) (b), (iii) (a), (iv) (b).

5. In the following passage, one word has been omitted in each line. Choose the correct option that indicates the **word before**, the **missing word**, and the **word after** respectively.

Water is precious we must save it. (i) _____
 If we waste it, we suffer later. (ii) _____
 The water which flows here is clean. (iii) _____
 The boy said he needed some water. (iv) _____

The explorer explained (5) _____ he had spent years searching for this site. He believed (6) _____ the temple held a secret message from a lost civilization. (7) _____ he found inside the central chamber surprised him deeply. It was a stone tablet (8) _____ described how the ancient people lived in harmony with nature.

I asked him (9) _____ he would ever return to that mysterious place. He replied (10) _____ the location must remain a secret to protect the forest from destruction.

Ans :

1. who, 2. which/that, 3. whose, 4. where, 5. why,
6. that, 7. What, 8. which/that, 9. if/whether,
10. that.



me that it (iii) is probably a satellite. The light, (iv) who was very bright, moved quickly.

- i. (a) saw (b) seen
(c) seeing (d) was see
- ii. (a) why (b) Omit 'that'
(c) when (d) what
- iii. (a) was (b) had been
(c) will be (d) am
- iv. (a) whom (b) which
(c) whose (d) what

Ans :

(i) (a), (ii) (b), (iii) (a), (iv) (b).

4. The following passage has not been edited. There is an error in each line. Choose the correct option from the given choices to correct the underlined words.

(i) Few water is left in the bottle. We (ii) must drink only clean water. If the water (iii) will be dirty, we will fall sick. The filter (iv) who we bought yesterday is not working.

- i. (a) Some (b) Many
(c) Much (d) Little
- ii. (a) can (b) should
(c) may (d) might
- iii. (a) is (b) was
(c) were (d) being
- iv. (a) which (b) whom
(c) whose (d) what

Ans :

(i) (d), (ii) (b), (iii) (a), (iv) (a).

5. The following passage has not been edited. There is an error in each line. Choose the correct option from the given choices to correct the underlined words.

Each of the boys (i) have a separate desk. They (ii) can finish their work on time. The teacher asked them (iii) if they had any doubts. The student (iv) whose was confused raised his hand.

- i. (a) are (b) were
(c) having (d) has
- ii. (a) should (b) must
(c) could (d) may

- iii. (a) that (b) which
(c) why (d) what

- iv. (a) which (b) who
(c) whom (d) that

Ans :

(i) (d), (ii) (c), (iii) (a), (iv) (b).

6. The following passage has not been edited. There is an error in each line. Choose the correct option from the given choices to correct the underlined words.

Yoga (i) benefit the mind and the body. Experts say that we (ii) must practice it for at least thirty minutes. If you (iii) started today, you will feel the difference. A person (iv) which practices yoga stays calm.

- i. (a) benefits (b) benefited
(c) benefiting (d) was benefit

- ii. (a) can (b) should
(c) might (d) could

- iii. (a) start (b) starts
(c) will start (d) starting

- iv. (a) what (b) whom
(c) whose (d) who

Ans :

(i) (a), (ii) (b), (iii) (a), (iv) (d).

7. The following passage has not been edited. There is an error in each line. Choose the correct option from the given choices to correct the underlined words.

Last year, I (i) visit the mountains with my family. My father told me that we (ii) will go trekking. He said that the view (iii) is breathtaking from the top. The guide (iv) which led us was very experienced.

- i. (a) visits (b) visited
(c) visiting (d) was visit

- ii. (a) shall (b) would
(c) can (d) must

- iii. (a) was (b) had been
(c) will be (d) being

- iv. (a) whose (b) whom
(c) who (d) that

Rule 3 : Look for Connecting Words and Transition Words

Connecting words and transition words show the relationship between sentences. They act as strong clues for arranging sentences in the correct order.

Type	Words/Phrases
Sequence	first, then, next, after that, finally, eventually, subsequently
Addition	also, moreover, furthermore, besides, in addition
Contrast	but, however, on the other hand, nevertheless, although
Cause and Effect	so, therefore, thus, as a result, consequently, hence
Conclusion	in conclusion, to sum up, ultimately, thus
Time	later, soon, afterwards, meanwhile, previously

Rule 4 : Follow the Pronoun Reference

Pronouns (he, she, it, they, his, her, their, etc.) always refer to a noun that has already been mentioned. Therefore, a sentence containing a pronoun must always come after the sentence that introduces the noun it refers to.

Example:

“Raju woke up early.” must come before “He had a bath.” because ‘he’ refers to ‘Raju’ who was introduced first.

Rule 5 : Follow the Logical and Chronological Order

Sentences must follow a natural and logical sequence of events, ideas, or time. Actions that happen first must come before actions that happen later. Ideas that are general must come before ideas that are specific.

Example:

Waking up → Getting dressed → Eating breakfast → Leaving for school

This is the natural chronological order of morning activities.

Rule 6 : Look for Demonstrative Words

Demonstrative words (this, that, these, those, such) refer to something already mentioned. A sentence beginning with ‘this’ or ‘that’ must come after the sentence it is referring to.

Example:

“This discovery changed the world of science.”

This sentence must come after a sentence that describes the discovery.

Rule 7 : Look for Cause and Effect Relationships

In a paragraph, one sentence often describes a cause and the next describes its effect. The cause always comes before the effect.

Example:

“It rained heavily throughout the day.” (Cause)

“As a result, the match was cancelled.” (Effect)

Solved Examples

- Arrange the following sentences in the correct order to form a meaningful paragraph :
 - He studied hard every day without wasting any time.
 - Mohan was a sincere and dedicated student.
 - As a result, he topped the examination and made his parents proud.
 - He set a fixed timetable and followed it strictly.

Ans :

Step-by-step Approach

- Step 1 :** Find the opening sentence.
Sentence (b) introduces Mohan for the first time with a general description. It is the opening sentence.
- Step 2 :** Find what logically follows.
Sentence (a) describes his habit of studying hard — follows (b) naturally.
- Step 3 :** Continue the sequence.
Sentence (d) gives more detail about his method — follows (a).
- Step 4 :** Find the closing sentence.
Sentence (c) begins with “As a result” and describes the outcome — it is the closing sentence.

Correct Order : b → a → d → c

Mohan was a sincere and dedicated student. He studied hard every day without wasting any time. He set a fixed timetable and followed it strictly. As a result, he topped the examination and made his parents proud.

- Arrange the following sentences in the correct order to form a meaningful paragraph :
 - She watered it every day and took great care of it.
 - One day, Priya found a small seed in her garden.
 - The plant grew into a beautiful rose bush over time.

- i. (a) told/that/he (b) me/that/he
(c) man/had/told (d) was/very/lost

- ii. (a) He/had/ask (b) ask/me/if
(c) He/asked/if (d) help/to/him

- iii. (a) One/of/the (b) roads/they/was
(c) the/main/roads (d) was/being/blocked

- iv. (a) fell/was/very (b) which/had/fell
(c) very/much/old (d) tree/was/which

Ans :

(i) (b), (ii) (c), (iii) (a), (iv) (a).

3. In the following passage, one word has been omitted in each line. Choose the correct option that indicates the **word before**, the **missing word**, and the **word after** respectively.

Each student brought own lunch. (i) _____
They can eat they finish their work. (ii) _____
If teacher allows them, they will go out. (iii) _____
The girl bag was stolen cried a lot. (iv) _____

- i. (a) brought/their/own (b) student/had/brought
(c) own/tiffin/lunch (d) student/his/own

- ii. (a) eat/after/they (b) finish/all/their
(c) can/easily/eat (d) work/is/finished

- iii. (a) If/the/teacher (b) allows/to/them
(c) will/all/go (d) out/to/play

- iv. (a) cried/out/a (b) bag/which/was
(c) stolen/she/cried (d) girl/whose/bag

Ans :

(i) (d), (ii) (a), (iii) (a), (iv) (d).

4. In the following passage, one word has been omitted in each line. Choose the correct option that indicates the **word before**, the **missing word**, and the **word after** respectively.

I have many work to do today. (i) _____
My mother said I should finish it first. (ii) _____
If I complete it, I go for a movie. (iii) _____
The movie which I want see is a comedy. (iv) _____

- i. (a) work/to/be (b) many/of/work
(c) have/much/work (d) do/it/today

- ii. (a) said/that/I (b) mother/had/said
(c) finish/up/it (d) first/of/all

- iii. (a) If/only/I (b) complete/it/then
(c) go/out/for (d) I/will/go

- iv. (a) want/to/see (b) which/that/I
(c) see/it/is (d) movie/the/which

Ans :

(i) (c), (ii) (a), (iii) (d), (iv) (a).

5. In the following passage, one word has been omitted in each line. Choose the correct option that indicates the **word before**, the **missing word**, and the **word after** respectively.

Trees are useful they give us oxygen. (i) _____
We must plant more trees save the earth. (ii) _____
A forest area where many trees is a home. (iii) _____
People live near forests are healthy. (iv) _____

- i. (a) useful/because/they (b) give/to/us
(c) they/always/give (d) are/very/useful

- ii. (a) save/the/whole (b) must/always/plant
(c) trees/to/save (d) more/and/more

- iii. (a) area/where/there (b) trees/grow/is
(c) many/green/trees (d) trees/grow/in

- iv. (a) People/who/live (b) near/the/forests
(c) are/very/healthy (d) live/right/near

Ans :

(i) (a), (ii) (c), (iii) (b), (iv) (a).

6. In the following passage, one word has been omitted in each line. Choose the correct option that indicates the **word before**, the **missing word**, and the **word after** respectively.

Pollution is a major problem affects us all. (i) _____
The government says we plant more trees. (ii) _____
If we do not stop it, we suffer a lot. (iii) _____
The smoke which comes from cars harmful. (iv) _____

- i. (a) is/a/major (b) major/the/problem
(c) us/very/all (d) problem/which/affects

- ii. (a) says/that/we (b) we/should/plant
(c) more/and/trees (d) plant/the/more

- iii. (a) we/will/suffer (b) not/to/stop
(c) suffer/very/a (d) If/only/we

- iv. (a) cars/is/harmful (b) smoke/the/which
(c) from/the/cars (d) which/always/comes

Ans :

(i) (d), (ii) (b), (iii) (a), (iv) (a).

Rule 5 : The Adverb is Placed Correctly

Adverbs of manner (quickly, slowly, carefully) usually come after the verb or object. Adverbs of frequency (always, never, often, usually) come before the main verb but after the auxiliary verb.

Example:

Jumbled: carefully/she/her/does/always/homework

Correct: She always does her homework carefully.

Rule 6 : The Auxiliary Verb Comes Before the Main Verb

When a sentence has both an auxiliary verb (is, are, was, were, has, have, will, can, etc.) and a main verb, the auxiliary verb always comes before the main verb.

Example:

Jumbled: been/have/waiting/we/long/for

Correct: We have been waiting for long.

Rule 7 : Question Words Come First in Questions

In interrogative sentences, the question word (what, where, when, why, how, who) comes at the very beginning, followed by the auxiliary verb and then the subject.

Example:

Jumbled: going/where/you/are

Correct: Where are you going?

Rule 8 : Prepositions Come Before Their Objects

A preposition (in, on, at, under, beside, between, etc.) always comes before the noun or pronoun it is related to. This group of words is called a prepositional phrase.

Example:

Jumbled: sat/the/cat/table/under/the

Correct: The cat sat under the table.

Rule 9 : Conjunctions Join Two Parts

Conjunctions (and, but, or, because, although, since, when, if, etc.) are used to join two parts of a sentence. They are placed between the two parts they connect.

Example:

Jumbled: went/she/unwell/school/was/to/although/she

Correct: Although she was unwell, she went to school.

Rule 10 : The Sentence Must Begin with a Capital Letter and End with Correct Punctuation

Every rearranged sentence must begin with a capital letter. It must end with a full stop (.), a question mark (?), or an exclamation mark (!) depending on the type of sentence.

Example:

Jumbled: is/what/name/your

Correct: What is your name?

Standard Word Order for Different Sentence Types

Affirmative Sentence

Subject + Auxiliary Verb + Main Verb + Object + Adverb

- She has written a letter carefully.

Negative Sentence

Subject + Auxiliary Verb + not + Main Verb + Object

- He did not complete his homework.

Interrogative Sentence (Yes/No)

Auxiliary Verb + Subject + Main Verb + Object ?

- Has she written the letter?

Interrogative Sentence (Wh-Question)

Question Word + Auxiliary Verb + Subject + Main Verb + Object ?

- Where have you kept the book?

Imperative Sentence

Verb (base form) + Object + Adverb

- Close the door quietly.

Exclamatory Sentence

What/How + Adjective + Noun + Subject + Verb!

- What a beautiful painting it is!

Solved Examples

- Rearrange the following words/phrases to form a meaningful sentence:

Jumbled: early/to/she/gets/up/every/morning

Ans :

- **Step 1 :** Find the subject — 'she'
- **Step 2 :** Find the verb — 'gets up'
- **Step 3 :** Find the adverb of time — 'every morning'
- **Step 4 :** Find the adverb of manner — 'early'
- **Step 5 :** Arrange — Subject + Verb + Adverb of manner + Adverb of time

Correct: She gets up early every morning.

- Rearrange the following words/phrases to form a meaningful sentence:

Jumbled: the/playing/are/field/children/on/the

CHAPTER 9

SENTENCE REARRANGEMENT

1. INTRODUCTION

In the English language, every sentence follows a specific order and pattern. When the words of a sentence or the sentences of a paragraph are mixed up or jumbled, they lose their meaning and clarity. Sentence Rearrangement is the skill of arranging these jumbled words or sentences into a correct and meaningful order. A student who understands the basic rules of sentence formation and paragraph organisation can easily attempt rearrangement questions with confidence and accuracy.

Sentence Rearrangement appears in two forms:

- **Word Rearrangement:** arranging jumbled words to form a meaningful sentence.
- **Sentence Rearrangement:** arranging jumbled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph.

Mastering this skill not only helps in examinations but also improves overall writing ability and communication skills in daily life.

2. WORD REARRANGEMENT

Word Rearrangement means arranging a group of jumbled or mixed-up words in the correct grammatical order to form a complete and meaningful sentence.

Example:

Jumbled: quickly/the/ran/boy/to/school

Correct: The boy ran quickly to school.

The Basic Structure of an English Sentence

To rearrange words correctly, a student must first understand the basic structure of an English sentence. Every English sentence generally follows this order :

S + V + O + (Complement/Adverb)

Part	Full Form	Role in Sentence
S	Subject	The doer of the action
V	Verb	The action performed
O	Object	The receiver of the action

C	Complement	Additional information
A	Adverb/ Adverbial	Tells how, when, where

Example:

She (S) wrote (V) a letter (O) carefully (A).

Rules for Word Rearrangement

The following rules must be carefully followed while rearranging jumbled words into a correct sentence :

Rule 1 : The Subject Comes First

Every sentence must have a subject. The subject is the person, place, thing, or idea that the sentence is about. It is usually a noun or pronoun and comes at the beginning of the sentence.

Example:

Jumbled: playing/children/are/the/garden/in

Correct: The children are playing in the garden.

Rule 2 : The Verb Follows the Subject

The verb always follows the subject. It tells us what the subject is doing. The verb must agree with the subject in number and person.

Example:

Jumbled: sings/she/beautifully/always

Correct: She always sings beautifully.

Rule 3 : The Article Comes Before the Noun

Articles (a, an, the) always come before the noun they refer to. They are never placed after the noun.

Example:

Jumbled: dog/a/street/the/on/sat

Correct: A dog sat on the street.

Rule 4 : The Adjective Comes Before the Noun

An adjective always comes before the noun it describes. It is never placed after the noun in a basic sentence.

Example:

Jumbled: beautiful/garden/the/flowers/has

Correct: The garden has beautiful flowers.

7. In the following passage, one word has been omitted in each line. Choose the correct option that indicates the **word before**, the **missing word**, and the **word after** respectively.

My brother said he would arrive soon. (i) _____
 He asked if I could him at the station. (ii) _____
 One the trains was delayed due to fog. (iii) _____
 The train which he taking is fast. (iv) _____

- i. (a) said/that/he (b) brother/had/said
 (c) would/surely/arrive (d) arrive/very/soon
- ii. (a) could/meet/him (b) ask/me/if
 (c) meet/at/the (d) station/to/him
- iii. (a) One/of/the (b) trains/they/was
 (c) delayed/by/fog (d) was/being/delayed
- iv. (a) he/is/taking (b) which/was/he
 (c) taking/was/fast (d) train/the/which

Ans :

(i) (a), (ii) (a), (iii) (a), (iv) (a).

8. In the following passage, one word has been omitted in each line. Choose the correct option that indicates the **word before**, the **missing word**, and the **word after** respectively.

Each student brought own project. (i) _____
 They can submit if they are ready. (ii) _____
 If the teacher checks them, they be happy. (iii) _____
 The student project is best will get a prize. (iv) _____

- i. (a) student/his/own (b) brought/their/own
 (c) own/science/project (d) student/had/brought
- ii. (a) they/really/are (b) submit/it/if
 (c) can/easily/submit (d) ready/for/it
- iii. (a) they/will/be (b) checks/all/them
 (c) If/the/teacher (d) happy/to/get
- iv. (a) get/a/big (b) project/which/is
 (c) is/the/best (d) student/whose/project

Ans :

(i) (a), (ii) (b), (iii) (a), (iv) (d).

9. In the following passage, one word has been omitted in each line. Choose the correct option that indicates the **word before**, the **missing word**, and the **word after** respectively.

I have little milk left in the fridge. (i) _____
 My sister said she drink it. (ii) _____
 If she drinks it, she feel better. (iii) _____
 The milk which she wants is cold. (iv) _____

- i. (a) in/the/fridge (b) little/of/milk
 (c) milk/is/left (d) have/a/little
- ii. (a) said/that/she (b) she/would/drink
 (c) drink/all/it (d) sister/had/said
- iii. (a) she/will/feel (b) drinks/all/it
 (c) feel/much/better (d) If/only/she
- iv. (a) which/she/always (b) milk/the/which
 (c) she/really/wants (d) is/very/cold

Ans :

(i) (d), (ii) (b), (iii) (a), (iv) (c).

10. In the following passage, one word has been omitted in each line. Choose the correct option that indicates the **word before**, the **missing word**, and the **word after** respectively.

Books are useful they give us information. (i) _____
 We must read books expand our knowledge. (ii) _____
 A library where many books are kept is quiet. (iii) _____
 The person reads many books is wise. (iv) _____

- i. (a) useful/because/they (b) give/to/us
 (c) books/are/very (d) they/always/give
- ii. (a) must/always/read (b) read/many/books
 (c) expand/all/our (d) books/to/expand
- iii. (a) library/is/where (b) many/new/books
 (c) books/are/usually (d) kept/is/very
- iv. (a) books/and/is (b) reads/many/good
 (c) person/who/reads (d) is/very/wise

Ans :

(i) (a), (ii) (d), (iii) (a), (iv) (c).



Ans :

- **Step 1 :** Find the subject — ‘the children’
- **Step 2 :** Find the verb phrase — ‘are playing’
- **Step 3 :** Find the prepositional phrase — ‘on the field’
- **Step 4 :** Arrange — Subject + Verb Phrase + Prepositional Phrase

Correct: The children are playing on the field.

13. Rearrange the following words/phrases to form a meaningful sentence:

Jumbled: never/I/such/have/seen/beautiful/a/flower

Ans :

- **Step 1 :** Identify negative adverb — ‘never’ (comes first for emphasis)
- **Step 2 :** Find subject — ‘I’
- **Step 3 :** Find auxiliary + main verb — ‘have seen’
- **Step 4 :** Find object with adjective — ‘such a beautiful flower’

Correct: Never have I seen such a beautiful flower.

14. Rearrange the following words/phrases to form a meaningful sentence:

Jumbled: did/complete/he/why/not/homework/his

Ans :

- **Step 1 :** Identify question word — ‘why’
- **Step 2 :** Find auxiliary — ‘did’
- **Step 3 :** Find subject — ‘he’
- **Step 4 :** Find negative — ‘not’
- **Step 5 :** Find verb + object — ‘complete his homework’

Correct: Why did he not complete his homework?

15. Rearrange the following words/phrases to form a meaningful sentence:

Jumbled: kindly/poor/help/always/the

Ans :

- **Step 1 :** Identify sentence type — Imperative (command/advice)
- **Step 2 :** Base verb comes first — ‘help’
- **Step 3 :** Add adverb of manner — ‘kindly’
- **Step 4 :** Add object — ‘the poor’
- **Step 5 :** Add adverb of frequency — ‘always’

Correct: Always help the poor kindly.

3. SENTENCE REARRANGEMENT

Sentence Rearrangement means arranging a group of jumbled sentences in the correct logical and sequential order to form a meaningful and coherent paragraph.

Example:

Arrange the following sentences in the correct order to form a meaningful paragraph:

- (a) After that he ate his breakfast quietly.
- (b) Finally he left for school.
- (c) Raju woke up early in the morning.
- (d) He then had a bath and got dressed.

Ans :

Correct Order : c → d → a → b

Raju woke up early in the morning. He then had a bath and got dressed. After that he ate his breakfast quietly. Finally he left for school.

Rules for Sentence Rearrangement

The following rules must be carefully followed while arranging jumbled sentences into a correct paragraph :

Rule 1 : Identify the Opening Sentence

The first sentence of a paragraph is called the topic sentence or opening sentence. It introduces the main idea of the paragraph. It is usually a general statement and does not begin with pronouns like he, she, they, it, or connective words like however, therefore, then, but, also, finally.

Clues to identify the opening sentence:

- It introduces a person, place, or topic for the first time
- It does not refer to anything mentioned before it
- It uses a proper noun or full name rather than a pronoun
- It is a broad or general statement

Example:

“Raju woke up early in the morning.” — This is clearly the opening sentence as it introduces Raju for the first time.

Rule 2 : Identify the Closing Sentence

The last sentence of a paragraph is called the concluding sentence or closing sentence. It brings the paragraph to an end and gives a sense of completion.

Clues to identify the closing sentence:

- It often uses words like *finally, at last, thus, therefore, in conclusion, eventually, ultimately*
- It gives a result, conclusion, or summary of the events
- No other sentence logically follows it

Example:

“Finally he left for school.” — This is clearly the closing sentence as it ends the sequence of events.

Ans :

(i) (b), (ii) (b), (iii) (a), (iv) (c).

8. The following passage has not been edited. There is an error in each line. Choose the correct option from the given choices to correct the underlined words.

(i) Much animals in the zoo were rescued from the wild. The caretaker (ii) can feed them at specific times. If the visitors (iii) fed the animals, they will be fined. The lion, (iv) who is the king of the forest, was sleeping.

- i. (a) Many (b) Little
(c) Any (d) Some
- ii. (a) should (b) must
(c) has to (d) might
- iii. (a) feeding (b) feeds
(c) will feed (d) feed
- iv. (a) whose (b) whom
(c) which (d) what

Ans :

(i) (a), (ii) (b), (iii) (d), (iv) (c).

9. The following passage has not been edited. There is an error in each line. Choose the correct option from the given choices to correct the underlined words.

Each of the stories (i) were very interesting. The teacher asked the students (ii) that if they liked them. She said that reading (iii) had been a good habit. The boy (iv) whom stood first explained the moral of the story.

- i. (a) being (b) are
(c) was (d) having
- ii. (a) Omit 'that' (b) why
(c) how (d) what
- iii. (a) is (b) was
(c) will be (d) being
- iv. (a) whose (b) who
(c) which (d) that

Ans :

(i) (c), (ii) (a), (iii) (a), (iv) (b).

10. The following passage has not been edited. There is an error in each line. Choose the correct option from the given choices to correct the underlined

words.

If you (i) will study, you will score good marks. My friend, (ii) whose is a topper, gave me some tips. He told me that I (iii) can follow a strict schedule. (iv) Any the toppers follow this routine.

- i. (a) studies (b) study
(c) studied (d) studying
- ii. (a) which (b) whom
(c) who (d) that
- iii. (a) should (b) could
(c) might (d) may
- iv. (a) Few (b) Each
(c) Much (d) All

Ans :

(i) (b), (ii) (c), (iii) (a), (iv) (d).

OMITTING

1. In the following passage, one word has been omitted in each line. Choose the correct option that indicates the **word before**, the **missing word**, and the **word after** respectively.

Reading is a good habit keeps us informed. (i) _____
It said that books are our best friends. (ii) _____
If you read daily, you gain knowledge. (iii) _____
A book which interesting is never boring. (iv) _____

- (a) is/the/good (b) good/very/habit
(c) us/well/informed (d) habit/which/keeps
- (a) It/is/said (b) books/the/are
(c) said/then/that (d) our/very/best

- iii. (a) daily/so/you (b) you/will/gain
(c) read/it/daily (d) gain/much/knowledge
- iv. (a) which/is/interesting (b) book/the/which
(c) is/always/never (d) interesting/and/is

Ans :

(i) (d), (ii) (a), (iii) (b), (iv) (a).

2. In the following passage, one word has been omitted in each line. Choose the correct option that indicates the **word before**, the **missing word**, and the **word after** respectively.

The man told me he was lost. (i) _____
He ask if I could help him. (ii) _____
One the roads was blocked by a fallen tree. (iii) _____
The tree which fell very old. (iv) _____

- (d) She planted it carefully in a pot filled with soft soil.

Ans :

Step-by-step Approach

- **Step 1 :** Find the opening sentence.
Sentence (b) introduces Priya and the seed for the first time. It is the opening sentence.
- **Step 2 :** Find what logically follows.
Sentence (d) — she plants the seed next. Follows (b).
- **Step 3 :** Continue the sequence.
Sentence (a) — she waters it daily after planting. Follows (d).
- **Step 4 :** Find the closing sentence.
Sentence (c) — the plant grows eventually. It is the result and the closing sentence.

Correct Order : b → d → a → c

One day, Priya found a small seed in her garden. She planted it carefully in a pot filled with soft soil. She watered it every day and took great care of it. The plant grew into a beautiful rose bush over time.

3. Arrange the following sentences in the correct order to form a meaningful paragraph :
- Furthermore, it helps in building a wide vocabulary.
 - Reading is one of the most beneficial habits a person can develop.
 - Therefore, everyone should make reading a part of their daily routine.
 - It improves concentration and sharpens the mind.

Ans :

Step-by-step Approach

- **Step 1 :** Find the opening sentence.
Sentence (b) is a broad general statement introducing the topic of reading. It is the opening sentence.
- **Step 2 :** Find what follows.
Sentence (d) gives the first benefit of reading. Follows (b).
- **Step 3 :** Continue the sequence.
Sentence (a) begins with “Furthermore” adding another benefit. Follows (d).
- **Step 4 :** Find the closing sentence.
Sentence (c) begins with “Therefore” and gives a conclusion. It is the closing sentence.

Correct Order : b → d → a → c

Reading is one of the most beneficial habits a person can develop. It improves concentration and sharpens the mind. Furthermore, it helps in

building a wide vocabulary. Therefore, everyone should make reading a part of their daily routine.



EXERCISE

1. Rearrange the following groups of words/phrases to form meaningful and grammatically correct sentences. Pay attention to word order, auxiliaries, adverbs, and sentence type. Use correct punctuation.

- never/I/such/have/seen/an/interesting/book
- why/you/did/not/complete/your/work
- has/already/the/train/left/the/station
- always/we/should/respect/our/elders
- have/been/they/for/waiting/hours/two
- what/you/are/doing/at/the/moment
- can/I/how/you/help
- rarely/he/such/makes/mistakes
- the/problem/how/you/solved/have
- should/not/we/waste/time/our

Ans :

- I have never seen such an interesting book.
- Why did you not complete your work?
- The train has already left the station.
- We should always respect our elders.
- They have been waiting for two hours.
- What are you doing at the moment?
- How can I help you?
- He rarely makes such mistakes.
- How have you solved the problem?
- We should not waste our time.

2. Rearrange the following words to form meaningful sentences. Identify the correct structure and place adverbs, auxiliaries, and modifiers appropriately.

- hardly/had/reached/station/the/train/when/left/we
- no sooner/started/than/it/rain/did/heavily
- seldom/such/seen/have/we/a/performance/brilliant
- only/realise/did/mistake/he/his/later
- not only/is/intelligent/she/but/also/hardworking
- had/I/known/truth/the/would/I/not/agreed
- little/he/did/know/about/the/danger
- so/was/tired/he/that/he/fell/asleep
- unless/you/work/hard/you/will/succeed/not
- what/would/you/do/if/you/were/in/my/place

Ans :

- We had hardly reached the station when the train left.
- No sooner did it start than it rained heavily.
- We have seldom seen such a brilliant performance.
- Only later did he realise his mistake.

- She is not only intelligent but also hardworking.
- Had I known the truth, I would not have agreed.
- Little did he know about the danger.
- He was so tired that he fell asleep.
- Unless you work hard, you will not succeed.
- What would you do if you were in my place?

3. Rearrange the following groups of words/phrases to form meaningful and grammatically correct sentences. Pay attention to clauses, connectors, and proper sentence structure. Use correct punctuation.

- although/was/he/tired/very/continued/working/he
- if/you/work/hard/you/will/surely/succeed/in/life
- the/teacher/expained/lesson/the/clearly/tha t/students/understood/it
- when/reached/we/station/the/had/already/train/left/the
- because/he/ill/was/he/not/attend/could/meeting/the
- she/said/tha t/would/she/help/me/in/my/work
- after/finishing/homework/his/he/went/play/to/outside
- unless/you/follow/rules/the/you/will/face/problems
- the/boy/who/is/playing/outside/my/brother/is
- as/it/raining/was/heavily/match/cancelled/the/was

Ans :

- Although he was very tired, he continued working.
- If you work hard, you will surely succeed in life.
- The teacher explained the lesson so clearly that the students understood it.
- When we reached the station, the train had already left.
- Because he was ill, he could not attend the meeting.
- She said that she would help me in my work.
- After finishing his homework, he went outside to play.
- Unless you follow the rules, you will face problems.
- The boy who is playing outside is my brother.
- As it was raining heavily, the match was cancelled.

4. Rearrange the following words/phrases to form meaningful and grammatically correct sentences. Focus on complex sentence formation, conditionals, and connectors.

1. no sooner/had/reached/I/home/than/it/started/raining
2. if/I/were/you/I/would/accept/offer/the
3. so/was/he/tired/that/he/could/not/walk/further
4. not only/is/he/intelligent/but/also/very/hardworking
5. had/known/I/truth/the/would/not/have/trusted/him
6. as soon as/bell/rang/the/students/classroom/the/left
7. the/book/which/you/gave/me/very/interesting/is
8. even though/was/difficult/task/the/they/completed/it
9. unless/you/study/regularly/you/will/not/perform/well
10. what/would/you/do/if/you/faced/such/situation/a

Ans :

1. No sooner had I reached home than it started raining.
2. If I were you, I would accept the offer.
3. He was so tired that he could not walk further.
4. He is not only intelligent but also very hardworking.
5. Had I known the truth, I would not have trusted him.
6. As soon as the bell rang, the students left the classroom.
7. The book which you gave me is very interesting.
8. Even though the task was difficult, they completed it.
9. Unless you study regularly, you will not perform well.
10. What would you do if you faced such a situation?

5. Rearrange the following sentences to form meaningful and coherent paragraph.
- (a) However, many people ignore its importance in daily life.
 - (b) Physical exercise is essential for maintaining good health.
 - (c) As a result, they suffer from various lifestyle diseases.
 - (d) It helps in improving both physical and mental well-being.

Ans :

Correct Order : b → d → a → c

6. Rearrange the following sentences to form meaningful and coherent paragraph.

- (a) This invention changed the way people communicated.
- (b) Before this, communication was slow and difficult.
- (c) The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell.
- (d) It made communication faster and more convenient.

Ans :

Correct Order : c → b → a → d

7. Rearrange the following sentences to form meaningful and coherent paragraph.

- (a) As a result, many species are becoming extinct.
- (b) Human activities are causing serious environmental damage.
- (c) Deforestation and pollution are the main reasons for this.
- (d) This has disturbed the balance of nature.

Ans :

Correct Order : b → c → d → a

8. Rearrange the following sentences to form meaningful and coherent paragraph.

- (a) Therefore, students should develop good reading habits.
- (b) Reading enhances knowledge and improves concentration.
- (c) It also helps in developing vocabulary and language skills.
- (d) Many students, however, prefer spending time on gadgets.

Ans :

Correct Order : b → c → d → a

9. Rearrange the following sentences to form meaningful and coherent paragraph.

- (a) This made him realise the importance of time management.
- (b) Rahul missed the bus because he woke up late.
- (c) Consequently, he decided to follow a strict routine.
- (d) He reached school late and was scolded by the teacher.

Ans :

Correct Order : b → d → a → c

Example

1. He is too dull for a sportsman.
He is so dull that he cannot be a sportsman.
2. It is too much for us.
It is so bad/shocking that we can't bear it.

3. DEGREES OF COMPARISON

Degrees of Comparison is an essential part of sentence transformation. It involves changing a sentence from one degree of comparison (positive, comparative, or superlative) to another without altering its meaning.

Positive Degree : It shows a quality without comparison.

Example : She is as tall as her brother.

Comparative Degree : It compares two things or persons.

Example : She is taller than her brother.

Superlative Degree : It shows the highest degree of a quality among three or more.

Example : She is the tallest in the class.

While transforming, ensure the meaning remains the same. For example :

1. Positive : No other boy is as smart as John.
Comparative : John is smarter than any other boy.
Superlative : John is the smartest boy in the class.
2. Positive : This book is as interesting as that one.
Comparative : This book is not more interesting than that one.
Superlative : This book is one of the most interesting books.
3. Positive : No other animal is as fast as the cheetah.
Comparative : The cheetah is faster than any other animal.
Superlative : The cheetah is the fastest animal.
4. Positive : Few cities are as beautiful as Paris.
Comparative : Paris is more beautiful than most other cities.
Superlative : Paris is one of the most beautiful cities.
5. Positive : This problem is as challenging as that one.
Comparative : This problem is not more challenging than that one.

Superlative : This problem is among the most challenging ones.

6. Positive : No other student is as hardworking as Rahul.

Comparative : Rahul is more hardworking than any other student.

Superlative : Rahul is the most hardworking student.

7. Positive : This painting is as colorful as the other one.

Comparative : This painting is not more colorful than the other one.

Superlative : This painting is one of the most colorful ones.

8. Positive : Few mountains are as high as Mount Everest.

Comparative : Mount Everest is higher than most other mountains.

Superlative : Mount Everest is the highest mountain.

9. Positive : She is as kind as her sister.

Comparative : She is not kinder than her sister.

Superlative : She is one of the kindest people I know.

10. Positive : No other river is as long as the Nile.

Comparative : The Nile is longer than any other river.

Superlative : The Nile is the longest river.

4. ACTIVE TO PASSIVE VOICE

The concept of Active and Passive Voice plays an essential role in English grammar. Transforming a sentence from active voice to passive voice involves changing the focus of the sentence from the subject (the doer of the action) to the object (the receiver of the action). While the meaning of the sentence remains the same, the structure changes.

Active Voice : In the active voice, the subject of the sentence performs the action.

Structure : Subject + Verb + Object

Example :

The boy (subject) is playing (verb) football (object).

Passive Voice : In the passive voice, the focus shifts to the object of the action. The object in the active voice becomes the subject in the passive voice.

Structure : Object + Auxiliary Verb (to be) + Past Participle + (by Subject)

CHAPTER 10

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION

1. INTRODUCTION

Transformation of sentences means changing a sentence from one grammatical form to another without altering its meaning. This process helps to express ideas in different ways while keeping the original sense intact. For example, a statement can be turned into a question or a negative sentence, and vice versa. Transformation enhances language skills and improves sentence variety in writing. It includes changes like converting active voice to passive voice, direct speech to indirect speech, or simple sentences to complex ones. Understanding this concept is essential for effective communication and mastering English grammar.

2. SENTENCES WITH ADVERB 'TOO'

Removal of Too without Infinitive

This concept focuses on eliminating the word “too” from a sentence and restructuring it using a comparative degree adjective, followed by appropriate phrases to retain the intended meaning. The steps are :

1. Remove **too** from the sentence
2. Change adjective given after **too** in Comparative Degree.
3. Use than proper/than it is proper/than desirable/than necessary/that it should be, after Comparative degree Adjective in the end.

Example

1. He is too weak.
He is weaker than proper.
2. The wind is too chill.
The wind is more chill than it is proper.
3. The news is too exciting.
The news is more exciting than it should be.
4. The weather is too hot.
The weather is hotter than desirable.
5. The water was too cold.
The water was colder than required.

Removal of 'Too' with Infinitive

This theory applies when “too” is followed by “to” or “for,” making the sentence negative in meaning. It involves restructuring the sentence into two clauses, using the following steps :

1. Use **so** in place of **Too**.
2. Before infinitive/after adjective use **that**.
3. After **that** use Personal Pronoun as per original subject.
4. After Personal Pronoun according to the reference use **Can not/Will not** (Present tense) and **could not/did not** (Past tense). This use depends upon original Principle Clause.

Example

1. He is too weak to walk.
He is so weak that he cannot walk.
2. She is too proud to beg.
She is so proud that she cannot beg.
3. He was too slow to achieve the target.
He was so slow that he could not achieve the target.
4. The news is too good to be true.
The news is so good that it cannot be true.
5. Children were too tired to run races.
Children were so tired that they could not run races.

Removal of 'Too' in 'For+Noun/Pronoun' Pattern

This theory handles sentences where “too” is followed by “for” and a noun or pronoun, often denoting an excessive condition. The restructuring involves creating an adverbial clause to preserve the meaning. The steps are :

1. Use **so** in place of **Too**.
2. Use **that** + clause (adv. clause) after the above step. In this clause use verb very carefully because No verb is used after for + noun/pronoun in the sentence.
3. If **much** is given after **Too** in the sentence then use **so bad/so shocking**.

7. INDIRECT TO DIRECT NARRATION

Transforming sentences from indirect speech to direct speech involves reversing the changes made while converting from direct to indirect speech. The focus shifts back to quoting the speaker's exact words within quotation marks.

Steps to Convert Indirect to Direct Speech

- Reintroduce Quotation Marks :** Add quotation marks around the exact words of the speaker.
Example :
Indirect : He said that he was happy.
Direct : He said, "I am happy."
- Adjust Pronouns :** Reverse the pronoun changes based on the context of the speaker and listener.
Example :
Indirect : She said that she liked chocolate.
Direct : She said, "I like chocolate."
- Restore the Original Tense :** Change the verb tense back to its original form, keeping in mind the tense rules of direct speech.
Example :
Indirect : He said that he was writing a letter.
Direct : He said, "I am writing a letter."
- Adjust Time and Place Words :** Convert time and place words back to their original forms.

Indirect Speech	Direct Speech
then	now
that day	today
the next day	tomorrow
the previous day	yesterday
there	here
that	this
those	these

Example :

Indirect : She said that she would go there the next day.

Direct : She said, "I will go here tomorrow."

- Reintroduce Question or Exclamation Marks :** Restore the punctuation for questions or exclamatory sentences.

Example :

Indirect : He asked if I was coming.

Direct : He asked, "Are you coming?"

Tense Changes Table

Indirect Speech	Direct Speech
Past Simple	Present Simple
"He said that he went home."	"He said, 'I go home.'"
Past Continuous	Present Continuous
"She said that she was reading."	"She said, 'I am reading.'"
Past Perfect	Past Simple
"He said that he had finished his work."	"He said, 'I finished my work.'"
Past Perfect Continuous	Past Continuous
"She said that she had been sleeping."	"She said, 'I was sleeping.'"
Conditional (would)	Future Simple
"He said that he would help me."	"He said, 'I will help you.'"

Special Cases

- Questions :** Restore the question format using the appropriate question words or auxiliary verbs.

Yes/No Questions :

Indirect : He asked if I was coming.

Direct : He asked, "Are you coming?"

Wh-Questions :

Indirect : She asked where I was going.

Direct : She asked, "Where are you going?"

- Imperative Sentences :** Reintroduce commands or requests using the appropriate verb.

Indirect : The teacher told me to sit down.

Direct : The teacher said, "Sit down."

Indirect : She requested me to help her.

Direct : She said, "Please help me."

- Exclamatory Sentences :** Reintroduce the exclamation and the punctuation mark.

Indirect : He exclaimed with joy that it was a beautiful day.

Direct : He said, "What a beautiful day it is!"

Indirect : She exclaimed with sorrow that she had failed the test.

Direct : She said, "Alas! I have failed the test."

Example :

Football (subject) is being played (verb) by the boy (object).

Steps to Convert Active to Passive Voice

1. Identify the Subject, Verb, and Object :
Locate the doer (subject), the action (verb), and the receiver of the action (object) in the active sentence.

Example : The chef (subject) cooked (verb) a delicious meal (object).

2. Interchange Subject and Object : The object of the active sentence becomes the subject of the passive sentence.

Active : The chef cooked a delicious meal.

Passive : A delicious meal was cooked by the chef.

3. Use the Correct Auxiliary Verb : Add the correct form of the verb 'to be' based on the tense of the active sentence.

Example :

Active : She is painting a picture.

Passive : A picture is being painted by her.

4. Change the Verb to its Past Participle (V3) : Always use the past participle form of the main verb in the passive voice.

Example :

Active : The teacher teaches the students.

Passive : The students are taught by the teacher.

5. Add 'by' (Optional) : Use "by" to introduce the original subject (doer). If the doer is unknown or not important, it can be omitted.

Example :

Passive : The car was repaired (by the mechanic).

Passive (without doer) : The car was repaired.

2. Past Tense

Tense	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Past Simple	He wrote a letter.	A letter was written by him.
Past Continuous	He was writing a letter.	A letter was being written by him.
Past Perfect	He had written a letter.	A letter had been written by him.

3. Future Tense

Tense	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Future Simple	He will write a letter.	A letter will be written by him.
Future Perfect	He will have written a letter.	A letter will have been written by him.

Special Cases of Transformation

1. Interrogative Sentences : For questions, the structure changes slightly to match the question format.

Yes/No Questions :

Active : Did she complete the project?

Passive : Was the project completed by her?

Wh-Questions :

Active : Who wrote this book?

Passive : By whom was this book written?

2. Imperative Sentences : Commands, requests, or advice are converted by adding "Let" or rephrasing.

Active : Close the door.

Passive : Let the door be closed.

Active : Please help me.

Passive : You are requested to help me.

3. Sentences with Modal Verbs : Use the modal verb + "be" + past participle in passive sentences.

Active : She can solve the problem.

Passive : The problem can be solved by her.

Active : They must complete the assignment.

Passive : The assignment must be completed by them.

5. PASSIVE TO ACTIVE VOICE

Transforming a sentence from passive voice to active voice involves changing the focus from the receiver of the action (object) to the doer (subject). The structure of the sentence changes, but the meaning remains the same.

Tense-Wise Conversion

1. Present Tense

Tense	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present Simple	He writes a letter.	A letter is written by him.
Present Continuous	He is writing a letter.	A letter is being written by him.
Present Perfect	He has written a letter.	A letter has been written by him.

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



10. Rearrange the following sentences to form meaningful and coherent paragraph.

- (a) As a result, he failed to achieve his goal.
- (b) Ramesh had a clear aim in life.
- (c) However, he lacked dedication and consistency.
- (d) He often wasted time on unimportant activities.

Ans :

Correct Order : $b \rightarrow c \rightarrow d \rightarrow a$

11. Rearrange the following sentences to form meaningful and coherent paragraph.

- (a) This discovery opened new possibilities in science.
- (b) Scientists worked hard for many years on the experiment.
- (c) Finally, they achieved success after repeated failures.
- (d) It proved to be a turning point in scientific research.

Ans :

Correct Order : $b \rightarrow c \rightarrow a \rightarrow d$

12. Rearrange the following sentences to form meaningful and coherent paragraph.

- (a) Therefore, it is important to use technology wisely.
- (b) Technology has made life easier and more convenient.
- (c) However, excessive use can lead to several problems.
- (d) It can affect health and reduce social interaction.

Ans :

Correct Order : $b \rightarrow c \rightarrow d \rightarrow a$

13. Rearrange the following sentences to form meaningful and coherent paragraph.

- (a) This act of honesty impressed everyone.
- (b) Instead of keeping it, he decided to return it.
- (c) One day, Aman found a wallet on the road.
- (d) The owner thanked him and praised his honesty.

Ans :

Correct Order : $c \rightarrow b \rightarrow a \rightarrow d$

14. Rearrange the following sentences to form meaningful and coherent paragraph.

- (a) Consequently, people should take steps to conserve it.
- (b) Water is one of the most valuable natural resources.
- (c) It is essential for all forms of life on Earth.

(d) However, it is being wasted in many parts of the world.

Ans :

Correct Order : $b \rightarrow c \rightarrow d \rightarrow a$



Direct Speech : In Direct Speech, the exact words of the speaker are quoted within quotation marks (“ ”).

Example : He said, “I am happy.”

Indirect Speech : In Indirect Speech, the words of the speaker are reported without using quotation marks. The structure of the sentence changes, often requiring changes in pronouns, tense, and other words.

Example : He said that he was happy.

Rules for Transforming Direct to Indirect Speech

1. **Remove Quotation Marks :** Replace the quoted speech with ‘that,’ ‘if,’ ‘whether,’ or a question word.

Example :

Direct : She said, “I like chocolate.”

Indirect : She said that she liked chocolate.

2. **Change the Pronouns :** Adjust pronouns according to the speaker and listener.

Example :

Direct : He said, “I will help you.”

Indirect : He said that he would help me.

3. **Change the Tense :** If the reporting verb (e.g., said, told) is in the past tense, the verb in the reported speech changes to a corresponding past tense.

Example :

Direct : She said, “I am tired.”

Indirect : She said that she was tired.

Exception : If the reported speech expresses a universal truth or fact, the tense remains unchanged.

Example :

Direct : The teacher said, “The sun rises in the east.”

Indirect : The teacher said that the sun rises in the east.

4. **Adjust Time and Place Words :** Change words indicating time and place to reflect the perspective of the reporter.

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
now	then
today	that day
tomorrow	the next day
yesterday	the previous day
here	there
this	that
these	those

Tense Changes Table

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
Present Simple	Past Simple
“I go to school.”	He said that he went to school.
Present Continuous	Past Continuous
“I am reading a book.”	He said that he was reading a book.
Present Perfect	Past Perfect
“I have finished my work.”	He said that he had finished his work.
Past Simple	Past Perfect
“I ate lunch.”	He said that he had eaten lunch.
Past Continuous	Past Perfect Continuous
“I was sleeping.”	He said that he had been sleeping.
Future Simple	Conditional (would)
“I will call you.”	He said that he would call me.

Special Rules

1. **Questions :** For interrogative sentences, use ‘if’ or ‘whether’ for Yes/No questions, and retain the question word (e.g., what, why, how) for other questions.

Examples :

Direct : She said, “Are you coming?”

Indirect : She asked if I was coming.

Direct : He asked, “What is your name?”

Indirect : He asked what my name was.

2. **Imperatives :** For commands, requests, or advice, use ‘to’ + verb.

Examples :

Direct : He said, “Close the door.”

Indirect : He told me to close the door.

Direct : She said, “Please help me.”

Indirect : She requested me to help her.

3. **Exclamations :** For exclamatory sentences, use words like exclaimed with joy, sorrow, surprise, etc.

Examples :

Direct : He said, “Wow! This is amazing.”

Indirect : He exclaimed with joy that it was amazing.

Direct : She said, “Alas! I failed the exam.”

Indirect : She exclaimed with sorrow that she had failed the exam.

2. **Use Opposites** : Replace negative expressions with their opposite positive expressions.
Example :
Negative : He is not a fool.
Affirmative : He is wise.
3. **Use Synonyms** : Replace the negative structure with a synonym that conveys the same meaning.
Example :
Negative : He does not lack confidence.
Affirmative : He is confident.
4. **For Universal Truths** : Express the positive equivalent directly.
Example :
Negative : The sun does not set in the east.
Affirmative : The sun sets in the west.
5. **For “No” or “None”** : Replace “no” or “none” with words like “some” or equivalent positive phrases.
Example :
Negative : There is no hope.
Affirmative : There is some hope.
6. **Avoid Double Negatives** : If the sentence contains two negatives, transform them into a single positive statement.
Example :
Negative : He is not unkind.
Affirmative : He is kind.

Types of Conversions

1. **Simple Sentences**
Example :
Negative : He is not late.
Affirmative : He is punctual.
2. **Sentences with “Never”** : Replace “never” with “always” or an equivalent positive phrase.
Example :
Negative : She never tells lies.
Affirmative : She always tells the truth.
3. **Sentences with “No”** : Rephrase using positive expressions.
Example :
Negative : There is no one in the room.
Affirmative : Someone is in the room.
4. **Sentences with “Too”** : Rephrase “not too” with positive phrases.
Example :
Negative : He is not too weak to lift the box.
Affirmative : He is strong enough to lift the box.
5. **Sentences with “Not Only”** : Rephrase using “both” or “as well as.”

Example :

Negative : She is not only intelligent but also hardworking.

Affirmative : She is both intelligent and hardworking.

10. ASSERTIVE TO INTERROGATIVE

Transforming assertive sentences (statements) into interrogative sentences involves restructuring a statement into a question. While the sentence’s meaning remains the same, the format is altered to seek information or confirmation.

Assertive Sentence : An assertive sentence is a declarative sentence that makes a statement, either affirmative or negative.

Example : She is a good dancer.

Interrogative Sentence : An interrogative sentence asks a question, either to gather information or confirm a fact. It ends with a question mark (?).

Example : Is she a good dancer?

Rules for Conversion

1. **Identify the Helping Verb (Auxiliary Verb)**:
If the assertive sentence has a helping verb (is, are, was, were, has, have, will, can, etc.), bring it to the beginning of the sentence.
Example :
Assertive : He is your friend.
Interrogative : Is he your friend?
2. **For Sentences Without a Helping Verb** : Use Do/Does/Did at the beginning for present or past tense sentences.
Example :
Assertive : She likes chocolates.
Interrogative : Does she like chocolates?
3. **Convert Negative Sentences** : Maintain the negative meaning while transforming.
Example :
Assertive : He does not like tea.
Interrogative : Does he not like tea?
4. **For Universal Truths or Facts** : Use the auxiliary verb or “Do/Does” while keeping the universal fact intact.
Example :
Assertive : The sun sets in the west.
Interrogative : Does the sun set in the west?
5. **Add Question Words (If Applicable)** : For interrogative sentences with question words (what, why, how, when, etc.), rephrase the sentence to incorporate them.

8. AFFIRMATIVE TO NEGATIVE

Transforming a sentence from affirmative to negative involves changing the sentence structure to negate its meaning, without altering the essence or the message.

Affirmative Sentence : An affirmative sentence states a fact, idea, or action positively, without any negation.

Example : She is a good dancer.

Negative Sentence : A negative sentence states that something is not true or does not happen. It often includes negative words like not, no, never, none, nobody, nothing, neither, nor.

Example : She is not a good dancer.

Rules for Conversion

1. **Add a Negative Word** : Use words like not, never, no, none, etc. to negate the sentence.
Example :
Affirmative : He is a kind person.
Negative : He is not an unkind person.
2. **Use Opposite Words** : Replace the affirmative word with its antonym and include a negative word.
Example :
Affirmative : She is intelligent.
Negative : She is not unintelligent.
3. **Use “Without” or “No” in Certain Cases** : For sentences with actions or conditions, replace positive phrases with their negative equivalents.
Example :
Affirmative : He solved the problem easily.
Negative : He solved the problem without difficulty.
4. **Avoid Double Negatives** : Do not use two negatives in a sentence, as it makes the meaning positive.
Example :
Incorrect : He is not unkind. (This actually means he is kind.)
Correct : He is not kind.
5. **For Universal Truths** : Use negative phrases without altering the universal truth.
Example :
Affirmative : The sun rises in the east.
Negative : The sun does not rise in the west.

Types of Conversions

1. **Simple Sentences**
Example :
Affirmative : She speaks the truth.
Negative : She does not tell lies.
2. **Sentences with “Always”** : Replace “always” with “never” and rephrase.
Example :
Affirmative : She always helps others.
Negative : She never fails to help others.
3. **Sentences with “Too”** : Replace “too” with “so...that...not.”
Example :
Affirmative : He is too tired to walk.
Negative : He is so tired that he cannot walk.
4. **Sentences with “All” or “Every”** : Replace “all” or “every” with “not...any” or “no.”
Example :
Affirmative : Everyone liked the movie.
Negative : No one disliked the movie.
5. **Sentences with “Must”** : Convert “must” to “cannot avoid” or “cannot but.”
Example :
Affirmative : You must work hard.
Negative : You cannot avoid working hard.

9. NEGATIVE TO AFFIRMATIVE

Transforming a sentence from negative to affirmative involves removing negation while keeping the meaning of the sentence unchanged. This process improves sentence variety and enhances writing clarity.

Negative Sentence : A negative sentence states that something is not true, does not happen, or does not exist. It uses words like not, never, no, none, nobody, nothing, neither, nor, etc.

Example : He is not a lazy boy.

Affirmative Sentence : An affirmative sentence expresses a positive statement, fact, or idea without negation.

Example : He is a hardworking boy.

Rules for Conversion

1. **Remove Negation** : Replace negative words like not, never, no with their positive equivalents.
Example :
Negative : She is not unhappy.
Affirmative : She is happy.

Steps for Conversion

1. Identify the Subject, Verb, and Object :
In the passive voice, the subject is usually mentioned after “by,” and the object is the main focus of the sentence.
Example :
Passive : The cake was baked by Sarah.
Subject : Sarah, Verb : baked, Object : the cake.
2. Interchange Subject and Object : Make the doer (subject) the focus of the sentence. The object in the passive voice becomes the subject in the active voice.
Passive : The cake was baked by Sarah.
Active : Sarah baked the cake.
3. Remove Auxiliary Verb (‘to be’) : Eliminate the form of “to be” used in the passive voice and adjust the verb to its appropriate tense.
Example :
Passive : A letter is being written by him.
Active : He is writing a letter.
4. Retain the Tense : Ensure the tense of the sentence remains the same. Only the structure changes, not the tense.
Example :
Passive : The homework has been completed by the students.
Active : The students have completed the homework.
5. Omit “by” (Optional) : In some cases, especially when the doer is not mentioned or important, infer the subject from context.
Example :
Passive : The room was cleaned yesterday.
Active : Someone cleaned the room yesterday.

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



Tense-Wise Conversion

1. Present Tense

Tense	Passive Voice	Active Voice
Present Simple	A letter is written by him.	He writes a letter.
Present Continuous	A letter is being written by him.	He is writing a letter.
Present Perfect	A letter has been written by him.	He has written a letter.

2. Past Tense

Tense	Passive Voice	Active Voice
Past Simple	A letter was written by him.	He wrote a letter.
Past Continuous	A letter was being written by him.	He was writing a letter.
Past Perfect	A letter had been written by him.	He had written a letter.

3. Future Tense

Tense	Passive Voice	Active Voice
Future Simple	A letter will be written by him.	He will write a letter.
Future Perfect	A letter will have been written by him.	He will have written a letter.

Special Sentence Types

1. Interrogative Sentences : Convert the question format along with the voice.
Yes/No Questions :
Passive : Was the project completed by her?
Active : Did she complete the project?
Wh-Questions :
Passive : By whom was the book written?
Active : Who wrote the book?
2. Imperative Sentences : Commands or requests are converted by making the subject clear.
Passive : Let the door be closed.
Active : Close the door.
Passive : You are requested to help me.
Active : Please help me.
3. Sentences with Modal Verbs : Use the modal verb directly in the active voice.
Passive : The problem can be solved by her.
Active : She can solve the problem.
Passive : The assignment must be completed by them.
Active : They must complete the assignment.

6. DIRECT TO INDIRECT NARRATION

Direct and Indirect Narration is a method of reporting what someone has said. The meaning of the sentence remains unchanged, but the structure and format are altered. This topic is vital in English grammar and is commonly used in both writing and speaking.

Example :

Assertive : She is crying because she is sad.

Interrogative : Why is she crying?

6. **Use “Not” Carefully** : For negative assertive sentences, ensure the interrogative form maintains the negation.

Example :

Assertive : They are not ready yet.

Interrogative : Are they not ready yet?

Types of Conversions

1. **Yes/No Questions** : These questions begin with auxiliary verbs like is, are, was, were, do, does, did, will, can, etc. The auxiliary verb is moved to the beginning of the sentence to create a question.

Examples :

Assertive : She knows you.

Interrogative : Does she know you?

Assertive : The book was interesting.

Interrogative : Was the book interesting?

2. **Wh-Questions** : These questions begin with words like what, why, where, when, how, etc. Add a question word to rephrase the assertive sentence into a question form.

Examples :

Assertive : They are late.

Interrogative : Why are they late?

Assertive : Your brother is here.

Interrogative : Where is your brother?

3. **Negative Assertive Sentences** : For negative sentences, retain the negation while converting the statement into a question. Auxiliary verbs like doesn't, isn't, aren't, wasn't, didn't, etc., are used.

Examples :

Assertive : She does not know the answer.

Interrogative : Doesn't she know the answer?

Assertive : He has not completed the task.

Interrogative : Hasn't he completed the task?

4. **Rhetorical Statements** : Rhetorical statements can be transformed into questions for effect, especially when expressing universal truths or commonly accepted ideas.

Examples :

Assertive : Everyone loves success.

Interrogative : Who doesn't love success?

Assertive : There is no doubt about her honesty.

Interrogative : Can there be any doubt about her honesty?

11. INTERROGATIVE TO ASSERTIVE

Transforming interrogative sentences into assertive sentences involves converting questions into statements while keeping the meaning intact. The sentence structure is altered to make a declaration rather than posing a query.

Interrogative Sentence : An interrogative sentence asks a question and ends with a question mark (?).

Example : Is she your friend?

Assertive Sentence : An assertive sentence makes a positive or negative statement. It does not ask a question but declares a fact or idea.

Example : She is your friend.

Rules for Conversion

1. **Remove the Question Format** : Eliminate question words (e.g., Is, Are, Do, Does, etc.) from the beginning and rephrase the sentence into a statement.

Example :

Interrogative : Is she a good singer?

Assertive : She is a good singer.

2. **Rearrange the Subject and Verb** : Change the word order to follow the typical subject-verb-object structure of an assertive sentence.

Example :

Interrogative : Are they coming to the party?

Assertive : They are coming to the party.

3. **Remove Question Words (if applicable)** : Replace question words like Why, What, When, Where with the information implied in the question, if needed.

Example :

Interrogative : Why is he upset?

Assertive : He is upset.

4. **Handle Negative Interrogative Sentences Carefully** : Retain the negative meaning while converting.

Example :

Interrogative : Isn't she a good student?

Assertive : She is a good student.

5. **For Rhetorical Questions** : Rewrite rhetorical questions (which do not expect an answer) as statements that declare the implied meaning.

Example :

Interrogative : Who doesn't like chocolate?

Assertive : Everyone likes chocolate.

5. Herbert did not accept the job offer without consulting his parents.
6. Put your tools away, lest the children fall over them.
7. Never again did he see his wife.
8. There was a face-to-face meeting with our accuser.
9. Ramesh was given some excellent advice by Arun.
10. Have you heard from Alia?



BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

Example : The painting is very beautiful.

Rules for Conversion

1. **Identify the Emotion** : Understand the emotion (joy, surprise, sorrow, etc.) expressed in the exclamatory sentence to rephrase it meaningfully.
2. **Remove the Exclamatory Words** : Replace words like what, how, oh, alas, hurray, bravo, etc. with phrases such as very, extremely, truly, certainly, unfortunately, or equivalent expressions.
Example :
Exclamatory : What a beautiful flower it is!
Assertive : The flower is very beautiful.
3. **Replace “What” and “How”**
What : Replace with “very” or “truly.”
Example :
What a clever boy he is! → He is a very clever boy.
How : Rephrase to include “very” or “extremely.”
Example :
How kind you are! → You are very kind.
4. **Change the Tone of the Sentence** : Convert the exclamation into a statement, adjusting the word order if necessary.
Example :
Exclamatory : Hurray! We won the match.
Assertive : We are very happy that we won the match.
5. **For Sorrow or Regret** : Use words like unfortunately, sadly, or it is a pity to express the emotion in a statement.
Example :
Exclamatory : Alas! He failed the exam.
Assertive : It is a pity that he failed the exam.

form of the verb.

Example : Study hard for your exams.

Rules for Conversion

1. **Omit the Subject** : Imperative sentences often have an implied subject (you), so the subject is usually omitted.
Example :
Assertive : You should listen to your teacher.
Imperative : Listen to your teacher.
2. **Use the Base Verb** : Begin the sentence with the base form of the verb to express the action directly.
Example :
Assertive : You must complete your work on time.
Imperative : Complete your work on time.
3. **Add Politeness for Requests** : Include words like please or kindly to make the imperative sentence polite, especially if the assertive sentence conveys a request.
Example :
Assertive : You are requested to submit the form.
Imperative : Please submit the form.
4. **Negative Sentences** : Use do not or never to express prohibition or advice.
Example :
Assertive : You should not waste your time.
Imperative : Do not waste your time.
5. **Use “Let” for Suggestions or Permissions** : For assertive sentences giving permission or making suggestions, begin the imperative sentence with let.
Example :
Assertive : We should allow him to speak.
Imperative : Let him speak.

14. ASSERTIVE TO IMPERATIVE

An assertive sentence expresses a statement, either positive or negative, while an imperative sentence gives a command, request, advice, or suggestion. Transforming assertive sentences into imperative sentences involves restructuring the sentence to directly address the listener.

Assertive Sentence : An assertive sentence states a fact, idea, or opinion.

Example : You should study hard for your exams.

Imperative Sentence : An imperative sentence expresses a command, request, suggestion, or advice and often begins with the base

15. IMPERATIVE TO ASSERTIVE

An imperative sentence gives a command, request, advice, or suggestion, while an assertive sentence states the same meaning in a declarative format. Transforming imperative sentences into assertive sentences requires rephrasing them as statements while retaining their intent.

Imperative Sentence : An imperative sentence expresses a command, request, advice, suggestion, or instruction. It often begins with the base form of the verb and has an implied subject (you).

Example : Close the door.

Assertive Sentence : An assertive sentence makes a statement, either positive or negative.

Example : You should close the door.

Rules for Conversion

1. **Use Modal Verbs (Should, Must, Ought to, etc.)** : Replace the imperative tone with modal verbs like should, must, ought to, or requested to convert the sentence into a statement.
Example :
Imperative : Follow the rules.
Assertive : You must follow the rules.
2. **For Requests, Use “Requested to” or “Kindly Asked to”** : Polite requests are converted into assertive sentences using requested to or kindly asked to.
Example :
Imperative : Please help the poor.
Assertive : You are requested to help the poor.
3. **For Negative Imperatives, Use “Should Not” or “Must Not”** : Replace negative commands with modal verbs like should not or must not in the assertive form.
Example :
Imperative : Do not waste your time.
Assertive : You should not waste your time.
4. **For Suggestions or Permissions, Use “Let Us” or “We Should”** : Use let us or we should for imperative sentences giving suggestions or permissions.
Example :
Imperative : Let us solve this problem.
Assertive : We should solve this problem.
5. **General Commands** : Add the subject (you or we) to make the statement declarative.
Example :
Imperative : Complete your work.
Assertive : You should complete your work.

16. SIMPLE TO COMPLEX

Transforming a simple sentence into a complex sentence involves adding a dependent clause (subordinate clause) to the sentence. A complex sentence has one independent clause and one or more dependent clauses.

Simple Sentence : A simple sentence contains only one subject and one predicate. It expresses a single idea.

Example : She completed her homework.

Complex Sentence : A complex sentence contains one main clause (independent clause) and one or more subordinate clauses (dependent clauses) connected by subordinating conjunctions like because, although, since, when, while, etc.

Example : She completed her homework before she went to bed.

Rules for Conversion

1. **Introduce a Subordinating Conjunction** : Add a subordinating conjunction (because, since, when, if, although, etc.) to create a dependent clause.
Example :
Simple : She left early.
Complex : She left because she had an urgent meeting.
2. **Replace Phrases with Clauses** : Transform a phrase (group of words without a subject and verb) into a subordinate clause.
Example :
Simple : Seeing the rain, he stayed indoors.
Complex : When he saw the rain, he stayed indoors.
3. **Use Relative Pronouns (who, which, that)** : Add a relative clause to provide additional information about a noun.
Example :
Simple : She is a writer of great talent.
Complex : She is a writer who has great talent.
4. **Add Adverbial Clauses** : Use adverbial clauses to express time, reason, condition, contrast, or manner.
Example :
Simple : He worked hard to succeed.
Complex : He worked hard so that he could succeed.
5. **Expand Infinitive Phrases into Clauses** : Replace an infinitive phrase with a dependent clause using that or another conjunction.
Example :
Simple : He decided to leave.
Complex : He decided that he would leave.
6. **Add Conditional Clauses** : Introduce conditional clauses using if, unless, provided that, etc.
Example :
Simple : Work hard to succeed.
Complex : If you work hard, you will succeed.

17. COMPLEX TO SIMPLE

Transforming a complex sentence into a simple sentence involves removing dependent clauses and replacing them with phrases or concise expressions. The sentence must retain the same meaning while reducing its complexity.

Complex Sentence : A complex sentence consists of one independent clause (main clause) and one or more dependent clauses (subordinate clauses) connected by subordinating conjunctions like because, although, since, when, if, etc.

Example : She stayed home because she was unwell.

Simple Sentence : A simple sentence contains only one subject and one predicate. It expresses a single idea.

Example : She stayed home due to illness.

Rules for Conversion

1. **Replace Subordinate Clauses with Phrases :**
A dependent clause can often be converted into a phrase using prepositions or participles.
Example :
Complex : He left because he was tired.
Simple : He left due to tiredness.
2. **Use Infinitive Phrases :** Dependent clauses indicating purpose can be replaced with infinitive phrases.
Example :
Complex : He worked hard so that he could pass.
Simple : He worked hard to pass.
3. **Convert Relative Clauses into Adjectival Phrases :** Relative clauses introduced by who, whom, whose, which, or that can be rephrased into participial phrases.
Example :
Complex : The boy who won the race is my friend.
Simple : The boy winning the race is my friend.
4. **Use Gerunds for Adverbial Clauses :** Adverbial clauses expressing time, reason, or condition can often be replaced by gerunds.
Example :
Complex : After she finished her homework, she went out to play.
Simple : After finishing her homework, she went out to play.
5. **Replace Conjunctions with Prepositions :**
Subordinating conjunctions like because,

since, when, while can be replaced by prepositions.

Example :

Complex : She stayed back since it was raining.

Simple : She stayed back due to the rain.

6. **Condense Ideas :** Combine multiple clauses into a single thought using precise words or phrases.

Example :

Complex : He was angry because his friend betrayed him.

Simple : He was angry at his friend's betrayal.

18. SIMPLE TO COMPOUND

Transforming a simple sentence into a compound sentence involves splitting the sentence into two or more independent clauses joined by a coordinating conjunction. A compound sentence makes the sentence more elaborate and clear.

Simple Sentence : A simple sentence contains only one subject and one predicate, expressing a single idea.

Example : She ran fast to catch the bus.

Compound Sentence : A compound sentence consists of two or more independent clauses joined by a coordinating conjunction (e.g., and, but, or, nor, so, yet, for).

Example : She ran fast, and she caught the bus.

Rules for Conversion

1. **Use Coordinating Conjunctions :** Combine two ideas using conjunctions like and, but, or, nor, so, yet, for to create a compound sentence.
Example :
Simple : She worked hard to succeed.
Compound : She worked hard, and she succeeded.
2. **Split Actions into Two Clauses :** Separate two actions or ideas in the simple sentence into two independent clauses.
Example :
Simple : He studied well to pass the exam.
Compound : He studied well, and he passed the exam.
3. **Replace Phrases with Independent Clauses :** Turn descriptive phrases into full clauses to form a compound sentence.

Types of Conversions

1. **Yes/No Questions** : These begin with auxiliary verbs like is, are, was, were, do, does, did, will, can, etc.
Examples :
Interrogative : Does she know you?
Assertive : She knows you.
Interrogative : Was the book interesting?
Assertive : The book was interesting.
2. **Wh-Questions** : These begin with question words like what, why, where, when, how, etc.
Examples :
Interrogative : Why are they late?
Assertive : They are late.
Interrogative : Where is your brother?
Assertive : Your brother is here.
3. **Negative Interrogative Sentences** : These contain negation (not) in the question.
Examples :
Interrogative : Isn't this a wonderful opportunity?
Assertive : This is a wonderful opportunity.
Interrogative : Don't they care about their work?
Assertive : They care about their work.
4. **Rhetorical Questions** : These are asked for effect and do not expect an actual answer.
Examples :
Interrogative : Who doesn't want success?
Assertive : Everyone wants success.
Interrogative : Can there be any doubt about her honesty?
Assertive : There is no doubt about her honesty.

NODIA

Rules for Conversion

1. **Add Exclamatory Words** : Use words like what, how, oh, alas, bravo, hurrah, etc. to emphasize emotion.
Example :
Assertive : She is a very intelligent girl.
Exclamatory : What an intelligent girl she is!
2. **For "Very" or "Truly"** : Replace very or truly with what or how to express strong feelings.
Example :
Assertive : It is a very beautiful day.
Exclamatory : What a beautiful day it is!
3. **Adjectives with "How"** : Use how for sentences with adjectives describing qualities.
Example :
Assertive : She is extremely kind.
Exclamatory : How kind she is!
4. **For Negative Sentences** : Retain the negative meaning while expressing emotions.
Example :
Assertive : It is a pity that he failed.
Exclamatory : Alas! He failed the exam.
5. **Replace Neutral Words with Stronger Ones** : For assertive sentences expressing admiration or joy, use exclamatory phrases like hurrah, bravo, alas, oh to convey the appropriate emotion.
Example :
Assertive : We won the match.
Exclamatory : Hurrah! We won the match.
6. **Rearrange the Word Order** : Place the subject and verb after the exclamatory word to form the correct structure.
Example :
Assertive : He is a brave soldier.
Exclamatory : What a brave soldier he is!

12. ASSERTIVE TO EXCLAMATORY

Transforming assertive sentences into exclamatory sentences involves rephrasing a statement to express strong emotions like joy, surprise, anger, sorrow, or admiration. The meaning of the sentence remains the same, but the structure changes to convey heightened emotion.

Assertive Sentence : An assertive sentence makes a simple declaration, either positive or negative, without strong emotion.

Example : She is a very talented singer.

Exclamatory Sentence : An exclamatory sentence expresses strong feelings or emotions and ends with an exclamation mark (!).

Example : What a talented singer she is!

13. EXCLAMATORY TO ASSERTIVE

An exclamatory sentence expresses strong emotion such as surprise, joy, anger, or sorrow. Transforming such sentences into assertive sentences involves removing the exclamatory format while preserving the meaning and emotion.

Exclamatory Sentence : An exclamatory sentence conveys strong emotions and ends with an exclamation mark (!).

Example : What a beautiful painting it is!

Assertive Sentence : An assertive sentence makes a positive or negative statement in a declarative tone. It does not convey emotions as strongly as an exclamatory sentence and ends with a period (.).

Example :

Complex : Although he worked hard, he failed.

Compound : He worked hard, but he failed.

3. **Use Coordinating Conjunctions for Conditions** : Subordinate clauses indicating conditions can be rephrased using *or* or *and* to create a compound sentence.

Example :

Complex : If you study, you will pass the exam.

Compound : Study, or you will fail the exam.

4. **Join with Cause and Effect Conjunctions** : Replace subordinating conjunctions indicating reason (*because*, *since*) with *so* or *for* to show cause and effect.

Example :

Complex : He was late because he missed the bus.

Compound : He missed the bus, so he was late.

5. **Simplify Relative Clauses** : Replace relative clauses (*who*, *which*, *that*) with coordinating conjunctions to connect ideas.

Example :

Complex : The man who helped us was very kind.

Compound : The man helped us, and he was very kind.

21. COMPOUND TO COMPLEX

Transforming a compound sentence into a complex sentence involves replacing coordinating conjunctions (e.g., *and*, *but*, *or*, *so*) with subordinating conjunctions (e.g., *because*, *although*, *since*, *when*, *if*) to create dependent clauses.

Compound Sentence : A compound sentence consists of two or more independent clauses connected by coordinating conjunctions like *and*, *but*, *or*, *so*, *for*, *yet*, *nor*.

Example : He studied hard, and he passed the exam.

Complex Sentence : A complex sentence consists of one main (independent) clause and one or more dependent (subordinate) clauses connected by subordinating conjunctions like *because*, *although*, *since*, *when*, *if*, etc.

Example : He passed the exam because he studied hard.

Rules for Conversion

1. **Replace Coordinating Conjunctions with Subordinating Conjunctions** : Substitute conjunctions like *and*, *but*, *or*, *so* with subordinating conjunctions like *because*, *although*, *since*, *if*, *unless*, *while*, *when*, etc.

Example :

Compound : He worked hard, and he succeeded.

Complex : He succeeded because he worked hard.

2. **Introduce Subordinate Clauses** : Turn one of the independent clauses into a dependent clause.

Example :

Compound : The bell rang, and the students left the classroom.

Complex : When the bell rang, the students left the classroom.

3. **Express Cause and Effect Using “Because” or “Since”** : Replace *so* or *for* with *because* or *since* to show cause and effect.

Example :

Compound : He was tired, so he went to bed early.

Complex : He went to bed early because he was tired.

4. **Use “Although” or “Though” for Contrasts** : Replace *but* or *yet* with *although* or *though* to introduce a subordinate clause expressing contrast.

Example :

Compound : She was unwell, but she attended the meeting.

Complex : Although she was unwell, she attended the meeting.

5. **Use Conditional Clauses** : Replace *or* with *if* or *unless* to indicate conditions.

Example :

Compound : Work hard, or you will fail.

Complex : If you do not work hard, you will fail.

6. **Use “While” or “When” for Simultaneous Actions** : Replace *and* with subordinating conjunctions like *while* or *when* for actions happening at the same time.

Example :

Compound : She cooked dinner, and he set the table.

Complex : While she cooked dinner, he set the table.

EXERCISE

1. Re-write the following sentences according to the instructions given after each. Make other changes that may be necessary, but do not change the meaning of each sentence.

- The Librarian orders books for the school library every year. (Begin: Books...)
- No one will deny that the children have worked very hard this year. (Begin: Everyone...)
- As soon as the teacher enters, she is greeted by her students. (Begin: No sooner...)
- She is so busy that she finds no time to entertain her friends. (Rewrite using 'too')
- In spite of the very hot weather, Kevin stepped out to buy some bread. (Begin: Despite...)
- Sheela will be selected for the competition only if she goes for the auditions. (Begin: Unless...)
- I would rather eat fruit than a lot of unhealthy junk food. (Begin: I prefer...)
- The tree was cut down ruthlessly. (Begin: They...)
- Rahul could not attend the meeting because he was unwell. (Begin: Being...)
- He is too honest to accept a bribe. (Rewrite using 'so...that')

Ans :

- Books are ordered by the Librarian for the school library every year.
- Everyone will agree that the children have worked very hard this year.
- No sooner does the teacher enter than she is greeted by her students.
- She is too busy to entertain her friends.
- Despite the very hot weather, Kevin stepped out to buy some bread.
- Unless Sheela goes for the auditions, she will not be selected for the competition.
- I prefer eating fruit to eating a lot of unhealthy junk food.
- They cut down the tree ruthlessly.
- Being unwell, Rahul could not attend the meeting.
- He is so honest that he cannot accept a bribe.

2. Re-write the following sentences according to the instructions given after each. Make other changes that may be necessary, but do not change the meaning of each sentence.

- The old woman said to Arun, "Can you help me to cross the street?" (Begin: The old woman asked Arun...)

- As soon as the sun rose over the hills, the fog disappeared. (Begin: No sooner...)
- It rained so heavily that they could not go for the picnic. (Rewrite using 'too...to')
- If your friends get here before 7 o'clock, we can take them out for dinner. (Rewrite using 'unless')
- The school captain was elected by the students of classes IX and X. (Begin: The students...)
- Greenland is the largest island in the world. (Rewrite using 'larger')
- How cruel Shylock was to demand his pound of flesh! (Begin: It was cruel...)
- Arun was asked by his mother to explain the missing buttons on his shirt. (Rewrite using 'explanation')
- This is the most exciting trip I have ever been on. (Begin: Never...)
- The athlete ran too slowly to qualify for the finals. (Rewrite using 'so...that')

Ans :

- The old woman asked Arun if he could help her to cross the street.
- No sooner had the sun risen over the hills than the fog disappeared.
- It rained too heavily for them to go for the picnic.
- Unless your friends get here before 7 o'clock, we cannot take them out for dinner.
- The students of classes IX and X elected the school captain.
- No island in the world is larger than Greenland.
- It was cruel of Shylock to demand his pound of flesh.
- Arun was asked by his mother for an explanation of the missing buttons on his shirt.
- Never have I been on a more exciting trip than this.
- The athlete ran so slowly that he could not qualify for the finals.

3. Re-write the following sentences according to the instructions given after each. Make other changes that may be necessary, but do not change the meaning of each sentence.

- She laid the table after she had finished cooking. (Begin: When...)
- He is old, but still works hard. (Begin: Despite...)
- The delivery boy was requested to bring the parcel the next day. (Rewrite using direct

speech)

4. I prefer playing a game to watching television. (Begin: I would rather...)
5. Every family has a black sheep. (Begin: There is no...)
6. I have never worn a more ill-fitting suit. (End: ...ever worn.)
7. Anil is too fast a runner to not come first in the race. (Begin: Anil is so...)
8. As soon as the sports meet ended, the children ran on the field. (Begin: Hardly...)
9. Despite his wealth, he is not happy. (Begin: Although...)
10. Father said to Sunil, "I can help you with your homework." (Begin: Father told Sunil...)

Ans :

1. When she had finished cooking, she laid the table.
 2. Despite being old, he still works hard.
 3. The delivery boy said, "I will bring the parcel tomorrow."
 4. I would rather play a game than watch television.
 5. There is no family without a black sheep.
 6. A more ill-fitting suit has never been worn.
 7. Anil is so fast a runner that he always comes first in the race.
 8. Hardly had the sports meet ended when the children ran on the field.
 9. Although he is wealthy, he is not happy.
 10. Father told Sunil that he could help him with his homework.
4. Re-write the following sentences according to the instructions given after each. Make other changes that may be necessary, but do not change the meaning of each sentence.
1. Not many people read for pleasure these days. (Begin: Few...)
 2. Since her childhood, Meera has been good in Mathematics. (End: ...childhood)
 3. "We have had no rain since January," Ramu said. (Begin: Ramu said that they...)
 4. It is dangerous as well as illegal to drive a motorcycle without a helmet. (Begin: It is not...)
 5. He had plenty of wealth, but he was not happy. (Begin: In spite...)
 6. He was so tired that he could not stand. (Use: 'too')
 7. Every one of them was an experienced mountaineer. (Begin: There was no...)

8. I have never seen a film as bad as this. (Begin: This is...)
9. The monsoon is the best season in our country. (Rewrite using 'good')
10. Naresh goes to a school which has over a thousand students. (Begin: There...)

Ans :

1. Few people read for pleasure these days.
 2. Meera has been good in Mathematics since her childhood.
 3. Ramu said that they had had no rain since January.
 4. It is not only dangerous but also illegal to drive a motorcycle without a helmet.
 5. In spite of having plenty of wealth, he was not happy.
 6. He was too tired to stand.
 7. There was no one among them who was not an experienced mountaineer.
 8. This is the worst film I have ever seen.
 9. No other season in our country is as good as the monsoon.
 10. There are more than a thousand students in Naresh's school.
5. Re-write the following sentences according to the instructions given after each. Make other changes that may be necessary, but do not change the meaning of each sentence.
1. We had not even walked one kilometre when they stopped us. (Begin: Hardly...)
 2. The memory is so vivid that I will never forget it. (Use 'too' in place of 'so')
 3. That need not happen. (Rewrite using 'does')
 4. Food and sleep were all we cared about. (Begin: All...)
 5. Herbert consulted his parents before accepting the job offer. (Begin: Herbert did not...)
 6. Put your tools away; the children may fall over them. (Use: lest...)
 7. It was the last time he saw his wife. (Begin: Never...)
 8. We sat with our accuser, face to face. (Begin: There...)
 9. Arun gave Ramesh some excellent advice. (Begin: Ramesh was...)
 10. Has Alia written to you? (Begin: Have you...)
- Ans :
1. Hardly had we walked one kilometre when they stopped us.
 2. The memory is too vivid for me to forget it.
 3. That does not need to happen.
 4. All we cared about was food and sleep.

Example :

Simple : Despite his hard work, he failed.

Compound : He worked hard, but he failed.

4. **Use Correlative Conjunctions** : Use pairs like not only...but also, either...or, neither...nor for more sophisticated compound sentences.

Example :

Simple : She likes dancing and singing.

Compound : She not only likes dancing but also likes singing.

5. **Use "So" for Cause and Effect** : Express the effect of an action using so.

Example :

Simple : He was tired after running.

Compound : He ran, so he was tired.

19. COMPOUND TO SIMPLE

A compound sentence can be simplified into a simple sentence by condensing the two or more independent clauses into a single idea. This involves using phrases, participles, or infinitives to express the same meaning more concisely.

Compound Sentence : A compound sentence contains two or more independent clauses joined by a coordinating conjunction (and, but, or, so, for, yet, nor).

Example : He worked hard, and he achieved success.

Simple Sentence : A simple sentence contains only one subject and one predicate, expressing a single thought.

Example : By working hard, he achieved success.

Rules for Conversion :

1. **Replace Coordinating Conjunctions with Phrases** : Convert the two clauses into one clause by using participial phrases or prepositions like by, with, in, for, to, etc.
Example :
Compound : He worked hard, and he achieved success.
Simple : By working hard, he achieved success.
2. **Use Participles** : Replace one of the independent clauses with a participial phrase.
Example :
Compound : He saw the thief, and he raised an alarm.
Simple : Seeing the thief, he raised an alarm.
3. **Use Infinitives** : Express purpose or intent using an infinitive phrase.

Example :

Compound : She studied hard, so she could pass the exam.

Simple : She studied hard to pass the exam.

4. **Condense into a Prepositional Phrase** : Use prepositional phrases to combine the clauses into one concise idea.

Example :

Compound : The sun set, and darkness fell.

Simple : With the setting of the sun, darkness fell.

5. **Replace with Adverbs** : Use adverbs to condense the meaning into a single clause.

Example :

Compound : He tried many times, but he failed.

Simple : He failed despite trying many times.

20. COMPLEX TO COMPOUND

A complex sentence can be converted into a compound sentence by replacing the dependent clause (subordinate clause) with an independent clause. This involves restructuring the sentence to include two or more independent clauses joined by a coordinating conjunction.

Complex Sentence : A complex sentence has one main (independent) clause and one or more dependent (subordinate) clauses connected by subordinating conjunctions like because, although, when, if, since, etc.

Example : She stayed home because she was sick.

Compound Sentence : A compound sentence has two or more independent clauses joined by a coordinating conjunction (and, but, or, nor, so, for, yet).

Example : She was sick, so she stayed home.

Rules for Conversion :

1. **Replace Subordinating Conjunctions with Coordinating Conjunctions** : Subordinating conjunctions like because, although, when, since, if, etc. can often be replaced by coordinating conjunctions (and, but, so, or, for, yet).
Example :
Complex : She stayed home because she was sick.
Compound : She was sick, so she stayed home.
2. **Split Dependent Clauses into Independent Clauses** : Convert the subordinate clause into an independent clause and connect it with the main clause using a coordinating conjunction.

CHAPTER 11

NOTICE WRITING

1. INTRODUCTION

A notice is an important written communication tool that is used by both individuals and organizations to announce upcoming events or to provide information about upcoming functions, events, and occasions. It is formal in tone. A notice is usually affixed on the noticeboard by an organization or institution to announce an event, celebration or some important information, etc.

2. PURPOSE OF NOTICE

The primary purposes of notice writing are as follows:

1. **Informing a Group :** Notices are written to inform a large group of people about important announcements, events, or updates in a concise manner.
2. **Conveying Official Information :** They serve as an official medium to communicate rules, policies, or changes within an organization, school, or institution.
3. **Generating Awareness :** Notices are used to spread awareness about specific causes, programs, or activities.
4. **Providing Instructions :** They often include specific instructions or guidelines that the audience needs to follow.
5. **Creating Formal Records :** Notices act as written proof or formal documentation for announcements or decisions.

3. TYPES OF NOTICE

1. Notice for Meeting
2. Notice for events like Competition/Tour/Celebration/Annual Sports/Cultural event, etc.
3. Notice for Lost or Found
4. Notice for Exhibition/Campaigns/Seminar/Workshop/Debate/Other Literary Event

5. Notice for Appeal/Warning/Guideline/Message in Public Interest
6. Notice for Change of Name/Residence/Company/Bank/Account/Timings, etc.
7. Notice for Miscellaneous

4. POINTS TO REMEMBER

General points to be remembered while writing a notice are as follows :

1. A notice is always written in a box.
2. It must be dated.
3. It should have the title, which is not a complete sentence.
4. It should always have the name, the designation and the signature of the issuing authority.
5. A notice is generally written in complete sentences, but at time phrases are also acceptable.
6. As a notice usually announces an upcoming event/celebration, etc., so future time reference is used while writing a notice.
7. A notice should have all the details related to the event. It must have an answer to what, when, where, why, how.
8. The information should be presented accurately and concisely.
9. The language should be formal.
10. It must be in third person, i.e. pronouns like I, me, you, mine, your, etc. should not be used.
11. Use present tense or future tense.
12. Adhere to the word limit, if mentioned in the question.

NODIA

SCAN QR CODE

JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



CHAPTER 12

INFORMAL INVITATION

1. INTRODUCTION

An invitation is a polite and warm request made to a person or a group of people to attend a special occasion or event. It expresses the sender's genuine desire to have the presence of the recipient on a particular occasion. Invitations are written for events such as birthday celebrations, weddings, house-warming ceremonies, inaugurations, farewell parties, picnics, and other social gatherings.

A well-written invitation must clearly mention the following essential details:

- **What** the occasion is
- **When** the event is taking place (date and time)
- **Where** the event is being held (venue)
- **Who** is inviting (the sender)

2. TYPES OF INVITATION

Invitations are broadly classified into two types:

1. **Formal Invitations:** Written for official or public occasions. They are printed on cards and written in the third person. They follow a fixed and impersonal format.
2. **Informal Invitations:** Written to close friends or family members for personal occasions. They are written in the style of a short personal letter and use warm, friendly language.

NOTE :

As per the CBSE Class 9 syllabus, only Informal Invitation is included in the course. Formal Invitation is not a part of the Class 9 syllabus. Therefore, this chapter will focus entirely on Informal Invitations only.

3. INFORMAL INVITATION

An informal invitation is a short, friendly, and personal written request sent to close friends or family members inviting them to attend a special occasion. Unlike formal invitations, informal invitations are conversational in tone and express personal feelings and emotions of the sender.

Examples of occasions for informal invitations

- Birthday party
- Wedding ceremony
- House-warming ceremony
- Inauguration of a shop or institute
- Silver or Golden Jubilee celebration
- Picnic or outing with friends
- Festival celebrations such as Diwali or Holi

4. FORMAT OF AN INFORMAL INVITATION

An informal invitation follows the same basic format as a short informal letter. The following is the standard format:

Sender's Address

Date

Salutation (Dear + Name),

Body of the invitation :

- Mention the occasion
- Mention the date, time, and venue
- Express a warm request to attend
- Any other relevant detail

Subscription (Yours affectionately/lovingly),
Sender's Name

5. PARTS OF AN INVITATION

Understanding each individual section of an invitation helps you include all the necessary information in the right order:

1. **Sender's Address:** The address of the person writing the invitation is written on the top left side of the page. It includes the house number, street, city, and state.
2. **Date:** The date is written just below the address. It is written in full — day, month, and year.
Example: 15th October, 20xx
3. **Salutation:** The greeting used in an informal invitation is warm and personal. It begins

3. Water supply will be suspended for eight hours (10 am to 6 pm) on 6th of March for cleaning of the water tank. Write a notice in about 50 words advising the residents to store water for a day. You are Karan Kumar/Karuna Bajaj, Secretary, Janata Group Housing Society, Palam Vihar, Kurnool.

Ans :

**JANATA GROUP HOUSING SOCIETY
PALAM VIHAR, KURNOOL**

NOTICE

4th March, 20xx

SUSPENSION OF WATER SUPPLY

Residents are hereby informed that water supply will be suspended for eight hours (10 am to 6 pm) on 6th March for cleaning of the water tank. Residents are advised to make necessary arrangements to store water for a day. We regret the inconvenience caused.

Karan Kumar
Secretary

4. You are Mahender, Sports Captain, St. John's School, Lucknow. Write a notice in 50 words for the school notice board informing students about an Inter School Football match to be played in your school. Invite them to watch and cheer the teams.

Ans :

ST. JOHN'S SCHOOL, LUCKNOW

NOTICE

20 Aug., 20xx

INTER-SCHOOL FOOTBALL MATCH

An Inter-school football match will be held on Friday 25th August, 20xx, 9:00 a.m. onwards at our school playground. All students are requested to be present at the venue to cheer and encourage the participants. Contact the under signed for further query.

Mahender
Sports Captain

5. You are Amit/Amita, Head Boy/Girl of your school (Zenith Public School). Write a notice for your school notice board requesting for entries from students for Britannia Quiz Contest to be held in your school.

Ans :

ZENITH PUBLIC SCHOOL, AGRA

NOTICE

20 February 20xx

SELECTION FOR QUIZ CONTEST

The students of classes from IX to XII may give their names for participating in Britannia Quiz Contest to be held on 25 March 20xx. The applicants should have participated in the inter-house Quiz Contest. The selection will be held on 28 February 20xx.

R.K. Singh
Vice Principal

6. Your school is celebrating Grandparents' Day next week. Write a notice in 50 words to be put up on the school notice board informing students of the celebration and requesting them to be present with their grandparents. You are Samir/Suman, Head Boy/Head Girl ABC Sen. Sec. School, Delhi.

Ans :

ABC SEN. SEC. SCHOOL, DELHI

NOTICE

January 29, 20xx

**GRANDPARENT'S DAY
CELEBRATION**

We are glad to notify you that we have planned to celebrate Grandparent's day in our school premises on February 9, 20xx at 5 pm. So, we request all the students of the school to take part in the celebration with their grandparents. Our school correspondent Mrs Menaka Suresh will honour the function. For more details, contact

Samir
Head Boy
ABC Sen. Sec. School, Delhi

7. You are the president of the Malviya Nagar Residents' Welfare Association, Block A and you are organising a "New Year Party" in your area. Draft a notice as Dharam Sethi informing the residents of your block of the same. Include details which you deem necessary for the purpose.

Ans :

Ans :

**K.V. SENIOR SECONDARY SCHOOL,
BADODHRA**

NOTICE

5 April 20xx

RAJASTHAN TOUR

This is to inform the students of classes IX and X of a trip to Rajasthan from 12 to 17 May 20xx. The trip will cover Jaipur, Udaipur, Jaisalmer and Bikaner.

Those who wish to join the trip should submit written permission from their parents and a draft for ₹3000 latest by 12 April 20xx to the Vice Principal.

Mani
Secretary, History Club

14. Your school is organising a Bal Mela on 'Children's Day' in the school. The primary wing of the school is going to put up various stalls in the mela. Draft a notice giving details of the mela as well as inviting the senior students to attend the same. Sign your name as Rajesh Roshan, Secretary, Cultural Society.

Ans :

XYZ School

NOTICE

4 November 20xx

BAL MELA

We are pleased to inform that the primary wing of our school is organising a Bal Mela on 14 November 20xx. There will be attractive stalls for eatables and games. Moreover, there will be joyrides and a lively musical band too. The students from classes VI-XII are invited to attend the Mela along with their parents.

The schedule is as follows:
 Date : 14 November 20xx
 Time : 8:30 a.m. - 1:30 p.m.
 Venue : School Playground

Looking forward to your active participation.
 For details contact the undersigned:
 Rajesh Roshan
 Secretary
 (Cultural Society)

15. As the librarian of your school, write a notice in about 50 words informing the students of the penalty for losing or damaging the books issued to them.

Ans :

NEW AGE SCHOOL, ROHINI

NOTICE

10 July 20xx

**PENALTY FOR LOSING OR
DAMAGING THE BOOKS**

This is to inform all the students that

- a fine of n per day will be charged if a book is not returned on the due date;
- the library card will be withdrawn if the returned book is found torn or damaged;
- the full price will be recovered from the student if a book is lost.

Shalini Singh
Librarian

16. You are Joseph Mathew, Vice Principal of Sr. Aloysius Higher Secondary School. Write a notice for the school noticeboard informing the students about the audition schedule for the Annual Play Festival to be organised soon.

Ans :

**ST. ALOYSIUS HIGHER SECONDARY
SCHOOL, AGRA**

NOTICE

2 September 20xx

PLAY FESTIVAL AUDITION

All four Houses will conduct auditions for the Annual Play Festival from 7th to 14th September 20xx, after school hours from 2:00 p.m. to 4:00 p.m.

Those interested should give their names to their House Captains. Previous experience of acting is not necessary.

Joseph Mathew
Vice Principal

17. Neelam/Neelesh is the head girl/boy of Surya Public School, Agra. She/He decides to call a meeting of all house appointments for prize distribution function on Annual Day. Draft a meeting notice on her/his behalf.

EXERCISE

1. You are Manak/Meera, the Head Boy/Girl of St. Giri Public School, Mathura. Write a notice in about 50 words informing the students about the debate competition in the school on the topic 'School Uniforms Should be Banned'.

Ans :

ST. GIRI PUBLIC SCHOOL, MATHURA

NOTICE

25 April 20xx

DEBATE COMPETITION

All the students are hereby informed that an English Debate competition of the Zonal Level will be held in the school as per the details given below :

Date : 7 May 20xx
Time : 10:00 a.m.
Venue : School Auditorium
Topic : School uniforms should be banned.
Time limit : 3-4 mins. One each in favour and against.
Interested students may give their name in pair to the undersigned by 2 May.
For further details, contact the undersigned.
Manak
(Head Boy)

2. You are Health Secretary, Students Council Citizens Public School, Ram Bagh, Varanasi. The Council has decided to start from the second of October a week-long cleanliness drive around the school. Draft a notice in about 50 words asking the Class IX students to enrol for the drive.

Ans :

STUDENTS COUNCIL CITIZENS
PUBLIC SCHOOL, RANI BAGH

NOTICE

25 September 20xx

CLEANLINESS DRIVE

The Students Council of the school has decided to start a week-long cleanliness drive around the school from 2 October. It is in keeping with the spirit of Prime minister's initiative "Swachh Bharat Abhiyaan". Students of class IX are requested to enrol for the drive as volunteers. Registration is open for two days, 28 September and 29 September, from 9 a.m. to 10:30 a.m.
Vinay Kapoor
(Health Secretary)

3. You lost your wrist watch in your school auditorium. Write a notice in not more than 50 words for your school notice board giving a detailed description of the watch. You are Anirudh/Arundhati of class IX of Springfield School, Pune.

Ans :

SPRING FIELD SCHOOL, PUNE

NOTICE

5 November, 20xx

LOST WRIST WATCH

I lost my Fastrack wristwatch today in our school auditorium. It's an analogue watch with a white case, white dial, colourful numerals and white silicon strap. A suitable reward will be given to the one who finds and returns it to the undersigned.

Anirudh Roy
Class IX-B

4. As the Director, Primary Section, write a notice in about 50 words for the children announcing the programme for the Children's Day.

Ans :

RAMJAS SCHOOL, R.K. PURAM

NOTICE

2 November 20xx

CHILDREN'S DAY PROGRAMME

The school is arranging a special programme for you on Children's Day, i.e. November 14. You can come in fancy dress and win a prize. There will be games for you. Kindly give the circular to your parents so that they can dress you beautifully for the Fancy Dress Competition. Do not bring your books on November 14.

Monisha Mohanty
Director
Primary School

NODIA

Recently there has been an increase in the cases of kidnappings, especially of children. On closer investigation it has been found that domestic helps or some persons familiar with the family were involved in most cases. You are the Secretary of the Residents' Welfare Association. Write a notice in about 50 words to be put up on the noticeboard of the colony informing the citizens about the following:

- Police verification of servants, identity cards to be made

- Register entry of visitors at the gate
- Installation of CCTV in the premises

Ans :

**RESIDENTS' WELFARE ASSOCIATION,
GREEN PARK, NEW DELHI**

NOTICE

17th July 20xx

ALERT FOR KIDNAPPING

In view of recent kidnapping cases involving domestic staff, all residents are requested to take these safety measures:

- Complete Police Verification for all servants.
- Ensure every visitor registers at the Security Gate.
- Install CCTV cameras in your homes.

Everyone is requested to co-operate so that such incidents do not happen.

ABC
(Secretary, RWA)

6. As librarian of Crescent International School, Gwalior, draft a notice in not more than 50 words asking all students and teachers to return the library books they have borrowed, two days before the commencement of the examination.

Ans :

**CRESENT INTERNATIONAL SCHOOL,
GWALIOR**

NOTICE

5 March 20xx

RETURN OF LIBRARY BOOKS

All students are hereby requested to deposit their library books with the librarian at least two days before the commencement of the examinations. Otherwise, they will not be permitted to appear in the exam. This must be given topmost priority.

R.Gupta
Librarian

7. Gandhi Education Society, a charitable organization, is coming to your school to distribute books for the needy students. As Head Boy/Head Girl, write a notice asking such students to drop the list of books they need in the box kept outside the Principal's office. You are Akhilesh/Abhilasha of Modern Public School, Ghaziabad. Give all necessary details.

Ans :

**MODERN PUBLIC SCHOOL,
GHAZIABAD**

NOTICE

5 July 20xx

**DISTRIBUTION OF BOOKS FOR
STUDENTS**

This is for the information of all students that a charitable organization, Gandhi Education Society is coming to the school at 11 a.m. on 15 July 20xx to distribute books to the needy students. Such students are requested to drop the list of the books they need into the box kept outside principal's office latest by 10 July 20xx.

Abhilasha
(Head Girl)

8. You are Shikha Kapoor, General Secretary of Sports Club of Meera Bai School, Dehradun. Your school has decided to celebrate the Silver Jubilee function of the school in the form of Annual Sports Day. Write a notice on the school notice board inviting the names of the students who want to participate in any of the sports activity or to put up any show on the stage.

Ans :

MEERA BAI SCHOOL, DEHRADUN

NOTICE

1 December 20xx

SILVER JUBILEE-CUM-SPORTS DAY

This is to inform all the students that the school is celebrating its silver jubilee soon. Students/volunteers are invited to submit their names for participating in sports activities or wishing to organise/participate in the cultural programme.

Annual Sports Day on December 15 between 4 p.m. and 6:30 p.m.

Names should reach the undersigned latest by December 7 at the club, between 10 a.m. - 1 p.m.

Shikha Kapoor
General Secretary, Sports club

9. While walking in a park in your neighbourhood you found a small plastic bag containing some documents and some cash. Write a notice in about 50 words to be put on the park noticeboard asking the owner to identify and collect it from you. You are Amar/Amrita 943912xxxx.

Ans :

CHILDREN'S PARK NOTICE 10 March 20xx FOUND Found a small black plastic bag containing some documents and cash today morning. It was lying in the corner bench of the park. The owner may please contact the undersigned and collect the bag after identifying the documents and details of the cash. Please contact at 943912xxxx. Amrita (A concerned citizen)
--

10. You are Shalini/ Shailesh, in charge of the NSS Club of St. Andrew's School, Bhopal. Write a notice about a charity show being organized by the club to collect articles and money for people affected by earthquake in Uttarakhand. Write the notice in about 50 words. Include relevant details such as purpose of the show, kind of events, tickets and show timing, etc.

Ans :

ST. ANDREW'S SCHOOL, BHOPAL NOTICE 10th July 20xx AN EVENING FOR A CAUSE All are informed that our school is going to organize a charity show to collect articles and money for people affected by earthquake in Uttarakhand. The details are as follows: Date : 15th July 20xx Time : 10 a.m. to 4 p.m. Events : Puppet Show, Magic Show, Rock Band Stalls : Books and Handicrafts Venue : Playground Tickets are available at the reception. Invite your family and friends and help in raising funds for the noble cause. Shalini Incharge, NSS Club

11. As the Sports Captain of your school, write a notice in about 50 words informing budding cricketers to attend trials for Under-16 and Under-18 for final selection to the school teams. Sign off as Sunny Arora. Invent all necessary details as required.

Ans :

MODERN PUBLIC SCHOOL NOTICE 3 May 20xx FINAL TRIALS FOR UNDER-16 AND UNDER-18 All the budding cricketers must attend the final trials in the school ground on 7 May, 20xx 9 a.m. to 4 p.m. Eighteen players will be shortlisted for each team. You must carry your cricket kit and be in sports attire. Sunny Arora Sports Captain
--

12. You are Sapna Singh, the Secretary of Cultural Committee of your school. Write a notice in about 50 words inviting students to participate in the Annual Day of the school to be organized next month.

Ans :

GALT PUBLIC SCHOOL, AGRA NOTICE 20 September 20xx ANNUAL DAY FUNCTION The school is going to organize a cultural programme on Annual Day to be held on 12 October. The students willing to participate are invited to take part in theme song, group dance and instrumental music programmes. They should submit details (along with cultural achievements) to the undersigned latest by 28 September 20xx. Sapna Singh Secretary (Cultural Committee)

13. You are Man/Mani, secretary of the History Club of K.V. Sr. Sec. School, Badodhra. Draft a notice in not more than 50 words informing the students of class IX and X about a proposed tour to Rajasthan during the coming summer vacations.

MALVIYA NAGAR RESIDENTS' WELFARE ASSOCIATION, BLOCK A
NOTICE

15 December 20xx

NEW YEAR BASH 20xx

Malviya Nagar Residents' Welfare Association, Block A is organising a grand New Year Party in the colony on 31 December 20xx. The celebrations will begin by 6 pm onwards. The residents are requested to join enthusiastically and make it a grand bash.

Sumptuous food, games, music, dance, prizes, and surprises are on the cards.

Kindly deposit 500 per head with Mr. Krishnakant Kalra (Treasurer).

Sd/-

Dharam Sethi

President

Residents' Welfare Association, Block A

8. You are Vijay Dhawan, a student of Florence Nightingale Convent, Rohtas Nagar, Aurangabad. Your school is planning an Inter-House poster making competition to conclude the week-long Environment Week. As the secretary of the school's cultural association, write a notice in about 50 words informing students of classes IX-XII about the competition.

Ans :

FLORENCE NIGHTINGALE CONVENT
NOTICE

20 October, 20xx

INTER-HOUSE POSTER MAKING COMPETITION

Sanskriti, the school's cultural association invites students of classes IX to XII to participate in the Inter-House poster making competition to round off the week-long Environment Week on 27 October, 20xx at 10 am. The participants will bring their own material. The topics will be declared on the spot. The best entries will be rewarded. Those interested should register their names with the undersigned by Saturday, this week.

Sd/-

Vijay Dhawan

Secretary

9. In a few days, the country will be celebrating its Independence Day. The Prime Minister will hoist the national flag of the country from the ramparts of the Red Fort and address the nation. Massive arrangements for seating and security are in the offing. The Delhi Traffic Police will be making traffic diversions on the big day in order to avoid inconvenience to the travellers and commuters, it has issued a public notice about the same. Reproduce the notice. You are Jayram Patil of Chanakya Puri, New Delhi.

Ans :

DELHI TRAFFIC POLICE
NOTICE

14 August 20xx

TRAFFIC DIVERSION

This is to inform the citizens of Delhi that the route from ISBT to Red Fort via Kashmere Gate will remain closed in view of security arrangements for the Independence Day Celebrations at the Red Fort on 15 August 20xx. No vehicles will be allowed on this route from 7 a.m. to 2 p.m. All the commuters and travellers should use the Outer Ring Road to reach the ISBT. Inconvenience is regretted.

Issued in public interest by

Sd/-

The Chief Commissioner

Delhi Traffic Police

10. You are the Secretary of your School Literary Association. Write a notice in not more than 50 words for your school notice board, giving details of the proposed inauguration of the Literary Association of your school. You are 'XYZ' of Jain Vidyashram, Cuddalore.

Ans :

JAIN VIDYASHRAM, CUDDALORE
NOTICE

1 March, 20xx

SCHOOL LITERARY ASSOCIATION
INAUGURATION

All students and staff are cordially invited to the inauguration of the school's Literary Association on Monday, 10 March 20xx in the school library, 11 a.m. onwards. Our Chief Guest, renowned writer, Ms. Arundhati Roy, shall speak to the students on the importance of reading and writing.

XYZ

(Secretary, Literary Association)

Ans :

SURYA PUBLIC SCHOOL, AGRA
NOTICE

22 January 20xx

URGENT MEETING

All House Captains, Vice Captains and House Prefects are requested to attend a meeting at 12:30 p.m. on 23 January 20xx in the Conference Room to discuss prize distribution on Annual Day to be held on 29 January 20xx. All should submit their proposals as well as give suggestions.

Neelam
Head Girl

18. Your school is going to organize a blood donation camp next week. Write a notice in about 50 words to invite volunteers for this camp. You are the Head Boy of Prakriti International School, Delhi.

Ans :

**PRAKRITI INTERNATIONAL SCHOOL,
DELHI**
NOTICE

4 October 20xx

BLOOD DONATION CAMP

It is a matter of pride that our school is organizing a blood donation camp from 10:30 a.m. to 5 p.m. on 9 October 20xx. For this camp, we need volunteers who can devote their time to making the camp a success. The interested students are requested to give their names to the undersigned within three days.

Kamal
Head Boy

19. As the Principal, write a notice in about 50 words informing the prefects, monitors and other discipline in-charge students of a Leadership Training Camp being organised by the school.

Ans :

A.P.J. SCHOOL, VASANT KUNJ
NOTICE

10 April 20xx

LEADERSHIP TRAINING CAMP

A leadership training camp is being organised on 15 April 20XX from 9:00 a.m. to 1:00 p.m. All prefects, class monitors, bus and line monitors shall attend this camp.

The programme will include the following :
Leadership Training Workshop
9 : 00 a.m. to 11 : 00 a.m.
Refreshment Break
11 : 00 a.m. to 11 : 30 a.m.
Question and Answer Session with Experts
11 : 30 a.m. to 12 : 00 p.m. S.K. Gulati
Principal

20. You, as the School Secretary of the Social Service Club, have to write a notice to be put up on the school noticeboard regarding the need to raise funds for lepers in your city. Funds collected will be sent to the Red Cross, New Delhi. Each donor will be issued a formal receipt for the donation. The Red Cross will award a Red Cross to the donor donating more than ₹500.

Ans :

XYZ SCHOOL, NEW DELHI
NOTICE

5 September 20xx

DONATION FOR RED CROSS

Donations are invited for raising funds for lepers in the city. Funds collected will be sent to the Red Cross, New Delhi. Donors will be issued a formal receipt for the donation. A Red Cross will be awarded to the donor donating more than ₹500. You can leave your donation with the School Secretary.

Date : 6 September - 10 September 20xx
Time : 8:00 a.m. (zero period)
Place : Social Service (Lab Room 4)
The undersigned may be contacted for further queries.

Anju Puri
(School Secretary)
Social Service Club



5. FORMAT OF NOTICE

NAME AND ADDRESS OF INSTITUTION/ ORGANIZATION NOTICE Date of Issue HEADING/TITLE Body of the Notice (including details like date, day, time, venue, name of the concerned person, etc.) Full name (Designation)

6. PARTS OF A NOTICE

A well-structured notice includes specific components that ensure clarity and effective communication. Below are the essential parts of a notice:

1. Heading/Title

The title indicates the purpose of the notice. It should be concise and written in capital letters (e.g., "ANNUAL SPORTS DAY" or "LOST/FOUND").

2. Name of the Organization/Institution

The name of the issuing organization or institution is placed at the top, above or below the heading, to specify the authority behind the notice.

3. Date

The date of issue is written below the heading or in the top left/right corner to indicate when the notice was released.

4. Body of the Notice

The main content provides all necessary details such as:

What : The purpose of the notice.

When : The date and time of the event.

Where : The venue or location.

Why : The reason or objective.

How : Additional instructions or procedures.

The language should be formal, concise, and written in complete sentences or phrases.

5. Signature and Designation

The notice must include the signature, name, and designation of the person or authority issuing the notice. This ensures authenticity and credibility.

6. Box Format

The entire notice should be enclosed within a rectangular box for a neat and professional appearance. Each part plays a significant role in making the notice clear, structured, and effective.

7. SOME IMPORTANT EXAMPLES

1. You lost your wallet in the school playground. Write a notice for your school notice board giving all the necessary details.

Ans :

APJ SCHOOL, DELHI NOTICE 24th October, 20xx LOST WALLET This Information is about a wallet which I, Abhinay Gupta of class IX-A, has lost. It went missing in or around the playground of the school, in recess hour. The wallet is chocolate-brown in color. It is an Eskee wallet and contains my school id and multiple other essential documents. If the wallet is found by any staff or student, he/she is humbly requested to submit it in the school office. Abhinay Gupta Student of IX-A

2. As Teacher Co-ordinator of the Quiz Club of AMM School, Pune, draft a notice in not more than 50 words informing students of the inter-class quiz contest asking them to register their names with the Secretary of the Club within a week.

Ans :

A.M.M. SCHOOL, PUNE NOTICE 21 April, 20xx REGISTER FOR QUIZ COMPETITION This is to inform all students of classes VI-XII that an interclass quiz competition will be held this Friday, 25 April, 20xx in the audio - visual room from 8:00 am to 11:00 pm. Maximum number of students representing per class is three. Those interested can give their names to the secretary of the Quiz Club for registration. XYZ (Teacher Co-ordinator, Quiz Club)
--

**SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL**



with “Dear” followed by the first name of the recipient.

Example: Dear Priya, Dear Rahul, Dear Anjali

4. **Body of the Invitation:** The body is the most important part. It must be written in a friendly and warm tone. It should clearly mention:

- The occasion being celebrated
- The date, time, and venue of the event
- A warm and genuine request to attend
- Any special detail if required

Since the word limit is up to 50 words, the body must be precise, clear, and complete. Every word must carry meaning. Avoid unnecessary phrases.

5. **Subscription:** The closing of an informal invitation uses warm and affectionate expressions such as:
 - Yours affectionately
 - Yours lovingly
 - Yours sincerely
6. **Sender’s Name:** The full name or first name of the sender is written below the subscription.

6. POINTS TO REMEMBER

Points to Remember While Writing Informal Invitations are as follows:

1. An informal invitation is written like a short personal letter.
2. It is always written in the first person (I, We, My, Our).
3. The tone must be warm, friendly, and personal.
4. All essential details — occasion, date, time, and venue — must be clearly mentioned.
5. The language must be simple and natural, not formal or stiff.
6. The word limit for CBSE Class 9 is up to 50 words. Count carefully and stay within the limit.
7. Personal feelings and emotions may be expressed to make the invitation genuine and warm.
8. The salutation and subscription are the same as in an informal letter.
9. Do not use third person references like “Mr. and Mrs. Sharma request the pleasure...” — that is the style of formal invitations.
10. Always invent necessary details such as name, address, date, and venue if they are not given in the question.

7. HOW TO ATTEMPT INFORMAL INVITATION IN EXAM

Follow these simple steps during the examination:

Step 1 — Read the Question Carefully

Identify the following from the question:

- Who is writing the invitation? (Your name and address)
- Who is being invited? (Recipient’s name)
- What is the occasion?
- What details are given — date, time, venue?
- What details need to be invented?

Step 2 — Plan Before Writing

Spend one minute organising the details mentally. Decide what to include in the body to stay within 50 words.

Step 3 — Write the Format First

Write the address, date, and salutation correctly before beginning the body.

Step 4 — Write the Body Precisely

Use simple and warm language. Mention all essential details — occasion, date, time, venue, and a request to attend. Do not add unnecessary sentences.

Step 5 — Count the Words

Count the words in the body of your invitation. The address, date, salutation, and subscription are generally not counted in the word limit. Adjust if needed.

Step 6 — End with Correct Subscription and Name

Use an appropriate closing like ‘Yours lovingly’ or ‘Yours affectionately’ and sign with your name.

8. USEFUL EXPRESSIONS FOR INFORMAL INVITATIONS

The following phrases can be used to make your informal invitation warm and natural:

To Announce the Occasion

- I am delighted to inform you that...
- I am thrilled to share that...
- It gives me great pleasure to invite you to...
- You will be glad to know that...
- I am happy to let you know that...

5. You are Kritika/Karan of 9, Model Town, New Delhi. Your mother has started her own bakery and it is being inaugurated on 30th March, 20xx. Write an informal invitation to your friend Pooja/Puneet inviting him/her to attend the inauguration. Invent any other necessary details.

Inauguration — “Sweet Moments Bakery” — 30th March, 20xx — 11:00 a.m. — Shop No. 3, Model Town Market, New Delhi — Special discount on opening day

Ans :

9, Model Town,
New Delhi
23rd March, 20xx

Dear Pooja,

You will be glad to know that my mother is inaugurating her bakery “Sweet Moments” on 30th March, 20xx at 11:00 a.m. at Shop No. 3, Model Town Market, New Delhi. There is a special discount on all items on the opening day. Please do come and celebrate.

Yours affectionately,
Kritika

6. You are Rohan/Roshni of 21, Mayur Vihar Phase 1, New Delhi. Your grandparents are celebrating their Golden Jubilee — 50 years of married life — on 15th December, 20xx. Write an informal invitation to your friend Mohit/Mohini inviting him/her to join this special family celebration. Use the following cues :

Golden Jubilee — 50 years — 15th December, 20xx — 6:30 p.m. — Celebrations Club, Mayur Vihar, New Delhi — Dinner and cultural programme

Ans :

21, Mayur Vihar Phase 1,
New Delhi
8th December, 20xx

Dear Mohit,

I am happy to inform you that my grandparents are celebrating their Golden Jubilee — 50 wonderful years together! The celebration is on 15th December, 20xx at 6:30 p.m. at Celebrations Club, Mayur Vihar. There will be dinner and a cultural programme. Please come and bless them.

Yours affectionately,
Rohan

7. You are Ananya/Anil of 77, Pitampura, New Delhi. You have adopted a stray puppy and your friends are throwing a small welcome party for the puppy at your place. Write an informal invitation to your friend Shreya/Shrey inviting him/her to attend the fun gathering. Use the following cues :

Welcome party — New puppy “Bruno” — 20th September, 20xx — 4:00 p.m. Games and snacks

Ans :

77, Pitampura,
New Delhi
14th September, 20xx

Dear Shreya,

I am thrilled to share that I have adopted an adorable stray puppy and named him Bruno! We are hosting a small welcome party on 20th September, 20xx at 4:00 p.m. at my place. There will be games and snacks. Please come and meet Bruno!

Yours lovingly,
Ananya

8. You are Roshan/Roshni, a resident of Rajasthan. Invite your friend Ritika Agarwal who lives in Delhi to spend a part of her winter vacation with you at your farm house near outskirts of Udaipur.

Ans :

Shivaji Farm
Ramjas Road, Udaipur
Rajasthan
23 November 20xx

Dear Ritika

I will be spending this winter vacation at my farm house which is situated at the outskirts of Udaipur. It is a pollution free place with lots of trees and greenery. Horse riding would be another activity. The soothing environment will really refresh you. Please join me for this vacation. Hoping for a positive reply.

Your lovingly
Roshan

9. You are Tanvi/Tanishq, residing at 4, Lotus Villa, Janakpuri, New Delhi. You have recently started practicing yoga and have experienced its amazing health benefits. On the occasion of International Yoga Day, you have organized a professional-led yoga session for your close friends in the local park to promote a healthy lifestyle.

Ans :

56, Mount View,
Nainital
15th December, 2026

Dear Arpit,
I'm spending this winter break at my Nainital home. The hills are covered in beautiful snow, and I'd love to have you join us from 24th to 28th December. We'll enjoy sightseeing and nightly bonfires. It would be incomplete without you. Please let me know your plan soon.

Yours lovingly,
Yash

5. You are Mihir of 33, Shyam Nagar, Delhi. You have recently joined a painting class and your art teacher has organised an exhibition of students' paintings on 20th August, 20xx. Write an informal invitation to your friend Aditya inviting him to visit the exhibition.

Ans :

33, Shyam Nagar,
Delhi
14th August, 20xx

Dear Aditya,
My art teacher is organising a painting exhibition of our class on 20th August, 20xx from 11:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. at Silver Bell Art Studio, Ashok Vihar, Delhi. I would be truly delighted to have you visit and admire our artwork. Please do come.

Yours affectionately,
Mihir

SCAN QR CODE**JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL**

6. You are Ankit of 24, Civil Lines, Jaipur. You are going for a picnic to Nahargarh Fort with your friends this Sunday. Write an informal invitation to your friend Rohan inviting him to join you.

Ans :

24, Civil Lines,
Jaipur
10th November, 20xx

Dear Rohan,
Our friend group is planning a picnic to Nahargarh Fort this Sunday, 16th November, 20xx. We will assemble at my place at 8:00 a.m. and return by evening. It will be great fun. Please join us and confirm by Friday.

Yours affectionately,
Ankit

7. You are Rohan, residing at 42, Heritage Lane, Pune. Your childhood friend and neighbor, Amit, is moving to Canada next month for higher studies. You and your common friends have decided to organize a surprise farewell lunch to give him a memorable send-off. You need to invite your friend, Sarthak, who is part of the same group.

Cues:

- **Occasion:** Farewell lunch for Amit
- **Date & Time:** Sunday, 15th June, at 1:30 PM
- **Venue:** Food Court, City Mall, Pune
- **Activity:** Sharing memories and a group lunch

Ans :

42, Heritage Lane,
Pune
8th June, 2026

Dear Sarthak,
Our friend Amit is leaving for Canada soon. We've planned a surprise farewell lunch on Sunday, 15th June, at 1:30 PM at City Mall Food Court. I would love to have you join us to share some memories. Please keep it a secret! Looking forward to your company.

Yours affectionately,
Rohan

8. You are Ishita/Ishan of 43, Dwarka Sector 6, New Delhi. You are organising a farewell party for your friend Naina/Navin who is moving to Canada next month. Write an informal invitation to another friend Riya/Rishi inviting him/her to be a part of the farewell. Use the following cues :

Farewell party — Naina moving to Canada
— 10th April, 20xx — 5:00 p.m. — Gifts and dinner

organized a traditional housewarming ceremony (Griha Pravesh) and a lunch for close relatives and friends.

Cues:

- **Occasion:** Housewarming Ceremony (Griha Pravesh)
- **Date & Time:** Sunday, 24th May, at 10:00 AM
- **Venue:** New Residence (12-B, Hemkunt Tower, Nehru Place)
- **Highlights:** Traditional puja followed by a celebratory lunch.
- **Expression to include:** "Your presence would mean a great deal to me" and ask for a confirmation.

Ans :

12-B, Hemkunt Tower,
New Delhi
18th May, 2026

Dear Rahul,

We are moving into our new apartment! I'm happy to invite you to our housewarming ceremony on Sunday, 24th May, at 10:00 AM. There will be a puja followed by lunch. Your presence would mean a great deal to me. Please confirm your attendance by Friday.

Yours affectionately,
Ayush

14. You are Seema Singh. The wedding of your elder brother Jivitesh Singh is going to be held on 17th December 20xx at Hotel Lake View, Udaipur. Write out an informal invitation to your friend Rohini requesting her to attend the function.

Ans :

C-16/361 Hansraj Road
Sector 5, Agra
30 November 20xx

Dear Rohini,

You will be glad to know that my elder brother Jivitesh is getting married next month. You are cordially invited to attend the wedding on 17 December at Hotel Lake View, Udaipur. I invite you to join us for lunch at 1:30 p.m. in the hotel. The wedding ceremony will take place at 9 p.m. Hoping for your presence on this auspicious occasion.

Yours lovingly
Seema

15. Write an invitation to your friend inviting him on the inauguration ceremony of your new house. Use the information given below.

Inauguration of home - Hawan ceremony - Lunch

Ans :

753-L Defence Colony
Roorkee

25th August 20xx

Dear Reena

I invite you at the inauguration ceremony of our new house in Defence Colony, Roorkee. It would be a real pleasure to have your presence on this auspicious occasion.

The Hawan Ceremony is at 10 a.m. and lunch at 1:30 p.m. Please grace the occasion with your presence and give us your blessings.

Yours faithfully
Radha Mehra

16. Invite your class fellows and friends on the wedding of your elder sister. Invent necessary details. (50 words).

Ans :

16, Nai Sarak

New Delhi

15 August 20xx

Dear Reena

I invite you to grace the occasion of my elder sister Riya's marriage on 30th august 20xx. Please grace the occasion at 4 p.m. The marriage party will leave for Hotel Park, New Delhi at 5 p.m. Kindly join us on the auspicious day and oblige

Yours faithfully
Rita

17. You are Sameer/Sanjana, residing at A-45, Lajpat Nagar, New Delhi. You have recently won the first prize in the Zonal Science Exhibition for your working model on "Renewable Energy." You want to celebrate this achievement with your best friend by hosting a small treat.

Cues:

- **Occasion:** Celebration of first prize in Zonal Science Exhibition.
- **Date & Time:** Friday, 18th July, at 4:30 PM.
- **Venue:** Your residence (A-45, Lajpat Nagar, New Delhi).
- **Highlights:** Viewing the winning model, followed by music and snacks.

EXERCISE

1. Your friend Antriksh is staying in the school hostel. You wish to invite him at your house for Diwali celebration. Write an informal invitation in not more than 50 words. Invent necessary details.

Ans :

C-11/171 Sector 5
Sagar Enclave
Sagar
Madhya Pradesh
25 October 20xx

Dear Antriksh

It gives me great pleasure to invite you to my home for Diwali celebration. I know your parents have gone to Canada and you would all be alone in the hostel. It would give me tonnes of happiness. I'm sure you will enjoy yourself with my parents and younger sister.

Please come one day before so we can plan out how we will celebrate. Looking forward for your company.

Yours affectionately
Rajini

2. You are Tanisha of 45, Tagore Nagar, Delhi. Your cousin Rohan has secured the first rank in the Class 10 CBSE Board Examination. Your family is organising a small felicitation ceremony on 25th June, 20xx. Write an informal invitation to your friend Diya inviting her to attend. Use the following cues :

Felicitations ceremony — First rank — CBSE Board — 25th June, 20xx — 5:30 p.m. — 45, Tagore Nagar, Delhi

Ans :

45, Tagore Nagar,
Delhi
18th June, 20xx

Dear Diya,

I am happy to inform you that my cousin Rohan has secured the first rank in the CBSE Class 10 Board Examination. We are organising a felicitations ceremony on 25th June, 20xx at 5:30 p.m. at our residence. Please come and bless him.

Yours affectionately,
Tanisha

3. You are opening a coaching institute for students of classes IX-XII. Write an informal invitation, inviting your best friend for its inauguration. Do not exceed more than 50 words. Invent necessary details.

Ans :

13-C.P.,
Mission Compound
Gwalior
7 March 20xx

Dear Shalini

Finally my dreams of opening a coaching Institute has come true. This project had been in my mind for a long time and by God's grace the time has come.

The inauguration is on 10th March 20xx at 10 am. My Guruji is going to inaugurate the institute followed by hawan and lunch. The address is 20-CP, Mission Compound, Gwalior. Please come and give me your best wishes.

Yours affectionately
Rajini

4. You are Vivek, a resident of 18, Peace Colony, New Delhi. Concerned about the rising pollution in the city, you and your local friends have decided to organize a "Van Mahotsav" (Tree Plantation Drive). You want to invite your friend, Jatin, to participate in this green initiative to help make the neighborhood cleaner and greener.

Cues:

- **Occasion:** Van Mahotsav/Tree Plantation Drive.
- **Date & Time:** This Saturday at 8:00 AM.
- **Venue:** Neighborhood Park, Peace Colony, New Delhi.
- **Highlights:** Saplings provided by the local nursery; refreshments for volunteers.
- **Expression to include:** "Your presence would mean a great deal to me."

Ans :

18, Peace Colony,
New Delhi
10th July, 20xx

Dear Jatin,

To combat pollution, we are organizing a tree plantation drive this Saturday at 8:00 AM in our Neighborhood Park. We'll be planting various saplings to green our colony. Your presence would mean a great deal to me and the environment. Please join us for this noble cause.

Yours affectionately,
Vivek

To Extend the Invitation

- I would love to have you join us...
- Your presence would mean a great deal to me...
- It would be incomplete without you...
- Please do come and celebrate with us...
- I earnestly request you to grace the occasion...

To Request Confirmation

- Please confirm your presence by...
- Looking forward to your company...
- Please let me know by...
- Do confirm your attendance at the earliest...

9. SOME IMPORTANT EXAMPLES

1. You are Divya/Dev of B-4/72, Janakpuri, New Delhi. Your elder brother Arjun has secured admission in IIT Delhi. Your family is organising a small get-together to celebrate this achievement. Write an informal invitation to your best friend Isha/Ishaan. Use the following cues :

Celebration — IIT Delhi admission — Arjun — 5th July, 20xx — 7:00 p.m. — Dinner and music

Ans :

B-4/72, Janakpuri,
New Delhi
29th June, 20xx

Dear Isha,

It gives me great pleasure to share that my elder brother Arjun has secured admission in IIT Delhi! We are celebrating this achievement on 5th July, 20xx at 7:00 p.m. at our residence with dinner and music. It would be incomplete without you. Please do come.

Yours lovingly,
Divya

2. You are Kavya of 12, Rose Garden, Chandigarh. Your parents are celebrating your younger sister Diya's first birthday on 5th February, 20xx. Write an informal invitation to your friend Shreya inviting her to attend the birthday celebration. Use the following cues :

Birthday celebration — 5th February, 20xx — 4:00 p.m. — Home — Cake cutting and snacks

Ans :

12, Rose Garden,
Chandigarh
28th January, 20xx

Dear Shreya,

I am delighted to share that my little sister Diya is turning one! We are celebrating her first birthday on 5th February, 20xx at 4:00 p.m. at our residence. There will be cake cutting and snacks. Please come and make this day special for her.

Yours affectionately,
Kavya

3. You are Aryan of B-7/14, Sector 12, Noida. Your school cricket team has won the Inter-School Cricket Championship. Your family is hosting a small celebration party on 18th March, 20xx. Write an informal invitation to your friend Kabir inviting him to join the celebration.

Ans :

B-7/14, Sector 12,
Noida
12th March, 20xx

Dear Kabir,

You will be thrilled to know that our school cricket team has won the Inter-School Cricket Championship! My family is hosting a celebration on 18th March, 20xx at 6:00 p.m. at our residence. Do come and share this joyful moment with us.

Yours affectionately,
Aryan

4. You are Yash/Yashika, living at 56, Mount View, Nainital. With the winter break approaching, the hills are covered in beautiful snow. You want your best friend, who lives in the dusty plains, to experience the magic of a mountain winter. You decide to invite them to stay with you for a few days to enjoy the scenery and some local activities.

Cues:

- **Occasion:** Winter vacation stay
- **Date:** 24th to 28th December
- **Venue:** Your home in Nainital
- **Activities:** Sightseeing, playing in the snow, and nightly bonfires
- **Expression to include:** "It would be incomplete without you."

Cues:

- **Occasion:** International Yoga Day Celebration
- **Date & Time:** 21st June at 6:00 AM
- **Venue:** District Park, Janakpuri, New Delhi
- **Highlights:** Guided session by an expert, peaceful environment, and herbal tea/snacks afterwards.
- **Use the phrase:** "I would love to have you join us."

Ans :

4, Lotus Villa,
New Delhi
15th June, 2026

Dear Riya,
I've organized a special yoga session on 21st June at 6:00 AM in the District Park to celebrate International Yoga Day. There will be an expert guide and healthy refreshments. I would love to have you join us! Please wear comfortable white clothes. Looking forward to your company.

Yours lovingly,
Tanvi

10. You are Naman of 8, Rajpur Road, Dehradun. You and your friends are planning a trek to Robber's Cave this coming Sunday. Write an informal invitation to your friend Ishaan inviting him to join the group. Use the following cues :

Trek — Robber's Cave — Sunday, 14th July, 20xx — Assemble at 7:00 a.m. — Carry water and snacks

Ans :

8, Rajpur Road,
Dehradun
10th July, 20xx

Dear Ishaan,
Our group is planning a trek to Robber's Cave this Sunday, 14th July, 20xx. Please assemble at my place by 7:00 a.m. It will be a thrilling experience. Carry sufficient water and snacks. Your company would make the trip even more enjoyable. Please confirm by Friday.

Yours affectionately,
Naman

11. You are Prachi/Pratham of D-9/41, Paschim Vihar, New Delhi. Your school football team has qualified for the State Level Championship.

To cheer the team before the match, your friend group is organising a small get-together. Write an informal invitation to your friend Manan/Mansi. Use the following cues :

Cheer gathering — Football team — State Championship — 8th March, 20xx — 6:00 p.m. — D-9/41, Paschim Vihar, New Delhi — Snacks and music

Ans :

D-9/41, Paschim Vihar,
New Delhi
2nd March, 20xx

Dear Manan,
You will be excited to know that our school football team has qualified for the State Championship! We are organising a cheer gathering on 8th March, 20xx at 6:00 p.m. at my place with snacks and music. Come and boost their confidence. Please confirm by 6th March.

Yours affectionately,
Prachi

12. You are Liza. You are going for a picnic with a group of your friends to Rang Mahal Lake near Ghaziabad. Write an informal invitation to your friend to join you on that day. Invent necessary details.

Ans :

273 Urban Colony
Sector 9 Ghaziabad
23 September 20xx

Dear Rehana
You will be glad to know that we have decided to go for a picnic to Rang Mahal Lake this coming Saturday, i.e. 30 September 20xx. We will be going by my car and our entire group is accompanying us. We will depart from my place at 7:30 a.m. Please confirm your presence by 25 September.

Looking forward to your company.

Yours lovingly
Liza

13. You are Ayush/Ananya, residing at 12-B, Hemkunt Tower, Nehru Place, New Delhi. Your family has recently purchased a new apartment and you are moving in this weekend. To seek blessings and celebrate this new beginning, your parents have

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

Ans :

43, Dwarka Sector 6,
New Delhi
3rd April, 20xx

Dear Riya,

As you know, our dear friend Naina is moving to Canada next month. I am organising a farewell party for her on 10th April, 20xx at 5:00 p.m. at my residence. Please bring a small gift. Let us give her a memorable send-off together.

Yours affectionately,
Ishita

Ans :

7, Gandhi Road,
Pune
2nd January, 20xx

Dear Asha,

My parents are celebrating their Silver Jubilee on 10th January, 20xx at 6:30 p.m. at our residence. The entire family is gathering to bless the couple on this wonderful occasion. It would be incomplete without you. Please come and celebrate with us.

Yours affectionately,
Meera

9. You are Sneha of C-9/22, Ashok Vihar, Delhi. Your family is hosting a Diwali celebration at your residence on 1st November, 20xx. Write an informal invitation to your friend Pooja inviting her and her family to join the festivities. Use the following cues :

Diwali celebration — 1st November, 20xx —
7:00 p.m. — C-9/22, Ashok Vihar, Delhi —
Dinner and fireworks

Ans :

C-9/22, Ashok Vihar,
Delhi
25th October, 20xx

Dear Pooja,

The festive season is here and we would love to celebrate Diwali with you! Please join us on 1st November, 20xx at 7:00 p.m. at our residence for dinner and fireworks. Do bring your family along. Your presence will make our celebration truly memorable.

Yours lovingly,
Sneha



SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



10. You are Meera of 7, Gandhi Road, Pune. Your parents are celebrating their Silver Jubilee on 10th January, 20xx. Write an informal invitation to your cousin Asha inviting her to join the celebration.

- **Expression to include:** “I am thrilled to share that...” and ask for confirmation.

Ans :

A-45, Lajpat Nagar,
New Delhi
12th July, 2026

Dear Rahul,
I am thrilled to share that I won the first prize in the Zonal Science Exhibition! To celebrate, I'm hosting a small party this Friday at 4:30 PM at my home. Your presence would mean a lot to me. Please confirm your attendance by Thursday evening.

Yours affectionately,
Sameer

18. You are Rahul/Richa of 14, Lajpat Nagar, New Delhi. Your school has organised an Inter-School Debate Competition and you have won the first prize. Your family is hosting a small celebration on 12th October, 20xx. Write an informal invitation to your friend Sameer/Sameera inviting him/her to join the celebration.

Ans :

14, Lajpat Nagar,
New Delhi
6th October, 20xx

Dear Sameer,
You will be glad to know that I have won the first prize in the Inter-School Debate Competition! My family is hosting a celebration on 12th October, 20xx at 6:00 p.m. at our residence. Do join us for dinner. Please confirm your presence by 10th October.

Yours affectionately,
Rahul

19. You are Aman/Amaira of 32, Vasant Vihar, New Delhi. You and a group of friends are planning to visit Qutub Minar and Lodhi Garden this Sunday for a heritage walk. Write an informal invitation to your friend Kabir/Kavya inviting him/her to join. Use the following cues :

Heritage walk — Qutub Minar and Lodhi Garden — Sunday, 18th August, 20xx — Assemble at 7:30 a.m. — Carry water bottle and comfortable shoes

Ans :

32, Vasant Vihar,
New Delhi
13th August, 20xx

Dear Kabir,
Our group is planning a heritage walk to Qutub Minar and Lodhi Garden this Sunday, 18th August, 20xx. Please assemble at my place by 7:30 a.m. Do carry a water bottle and comfortable shoes. It will be a wonderful experience. Please confirm by Friday.

Yours affectionately,
Aman

20. You are Riya of 15, Shanti Nagar, Bhopal. Your brother Vivek is getting married on 20th December, 20xx. Write an informal invitation to your friend Neha inviting her to attend the wedding.

Ans :

15, Shanti Nagar,
Bhopal
5th December, 20xx

Dear Neha,
I am delighted to inform you that my brother Vivek is getting married on 20th December, 20xx at 7:00 p.m. at Hotel Grand, Bhopal. I would love to have you celebrate this joyous occasion with us. Please do come.

Yours lovingly,
Riya

NODIA

SCAN QR CODE

JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



21. You are Tanya/Tarun of 56, Defence Colony, New Delhi. Your school's Annual Cultural Fest is being organised on 14th February, 20xx and your dance group is performing. Write an informal invitation to your cousin Simran/Siddharth who lives in the same city, inviting him/her to watch the performance.

Ans :

56, Defence Colony,
New Delhi
8th February, 20xx

Dear Simran,

I am thrilled to share that our dance group is performing at the Annual Cultural Fest on 14th February, 20xx from 4:00 p.m. to 8:00 p.m. at Springdales School Auditorium, Defence Colony. Entry is free. I would love to have you cheer for us. Please come.

Yours affectionately,
Tanya

SCAN QR CODE

JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



22. You are Gaurav/Gauri of 15, Saket, New Delhi. You have started a book club in your neighbourhood and the first meeting is being organised on 5th May, 20xx. Write an informal invitation to your friend Kartik/Karishma who loves reading, inviting him/her to join the club. Use the following cues :

Book club — First meeting — 5th May, 20xx
— 5:00 p.m. — Discussion on favourite books
— Tea and snacks

Ans :

15, Saket,
New Delhi
28th April, 20xx

Dear Kartik,

I have started a book club in our neighbourhood and our first meeting is on 5th May, 20xx at 5:00 p.m. at my residence. We will discuss our favourite books over tea and snacks. Knowing your love for reading, your presence would truly enrich our gathering. Please do join us.

Yours affectionately,
Gaurav

23. You are Priya of C-4/15, Sector 9, Lucknow. You are opening a boutique on 25th March, 20xx. Write an informal invitation to your best friend Simran inviting her to attend the inauguration.

Ans :

C-4/15, Sector 9,
Lucknow
18th March, 20xx

Dear Simran,

I am thrilled to share that my boutique “Priya’s Creations” is being inaugurated on 25th March, 20xx at 11:00 a.m. at Shop No. 5, Mall Road, Lucknow. Your presence on this special day would mean a great deal to me. Please do come.

Yours lovingly,
Priya

24. You are Sonal/Soham of 8, Greater Kailash Part II, New Delhi. Your school is organising a Diwali Mela on 20th October, 20xx with food stalls, games, and cultural performances. You are in charge of inviting friends and classmates. Write an informal invitation to your friend Megha/Mehul. Use the following cues :

Diwali Mela — Food stalls — Games —
Cultural performances — 20th October, 20xx
— 3:00 p.m. to 8:00 p.m. — School Grounds,
GK II, New Delhi — Entry free

Ans :

8, Greater Kailash Part II,
New Delhi
13th October, 20xx

Dear Megha,

Our school is organising a Diwali Mela on 20th October, 20xx from 3:00 p.m. to 8:00 p.m. at the school grounds, GK II. There will be food stalls, exciting games, and cultural performances. Entry is absolutely free. Do come and enjoy the festive spirit with us. Looking forward to your company.

Yours lovingly,
Sonal

25. You are Aryan/Ananya, residing at B-12, Green Park, New Delhi. Your close friend, Kabir, is moving to another city as his father has been transferred. You and your friends have decided to organize a small farewell party to give him a warm send-off and spend some quality time together before he leaves. Write an invitation to your friend, Rohan, asking him to join.

Cues:

- **Occasion:** Farewell party for Kabir.
- **Date & Time:** Saturday, 10th October, at 5:00 PM.
- **Venue:** Your residence (B-12, Green Park, New Delhi).
- **Highlights:** Music, snacks, and a surprise gift presentation.
- **Expression to include:** “It would be incomplete without you.”

Ans :

B-12, Green Park,
New Delhi
2nd October, 2026

Dear Rohan,

Our friend Kabir is moving to Mumbai next week. We’ve planned a small farewell party for him this Saturday at 5:00 PM at my home. We’ll have music, snacks, and a surprise gift. This send-off would be incomplete without you. Please do join us to say goodbye!

Yours affectionately,
Aryan



NODIA

3. You are Shreya/Shreyas of 24, Green Park, New Delhi. You feel that the current education system focuses too much on bookish knowledge and ignores practical skills like coding, gardening, or basic repair work. Write a letter to the Editor of The Pioneer suggesting the inclusion of vocational training in the school curriculum.

Outline: Skill-based learning—employability—all-round development—National Education Policy (NEP) goals—practical workshops.

Ans :

24, Green Park,
New Delhi
12th January, 2026
To,
The Editor
The Pioneer
New Delhi

Subject: Importance of vocational skills in school curriculum

Sir,

I am a regular reader of your newspaper and wish to draw attention to the need for a shift in our education system toward vocational training.

The situation has become extremely serious as students graduate with degrees but lack practical, real-world skills. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of the youth who struggle to find employment. Despite the focus on theory, no action has been taken to introduce hands-on workshops for skills like digital literacy or craftsmanship in many schools.

It is high time that proper steps were taken to resolve this problem by including skill-based subjects in the curriculum. Regular inspection of school facilities for vocational training can help curb this menace of unemployment.

Kindly give space to this letter in your esteemed publication.

Yours faithfully,
Shreya

4. You are Ishan/Ishita of 10, Lajpat Nagar, New Delhi. Recently, a viral rumor on a messaging app caused unnecessary panic in your colony regarding a child-lifting gang, which turned out to be completely false. Write a letter to the Editor of The Hindustan Times about the dangers of spreading unverified information.

Cues:

- Panic and fear
- Mob mentality
- Lack of fact-checking

- Social media responsibility
- Need for digital ethics in schools.

Ans :

10, Lajpat Nagar,
New Delhi
22nd May, 2026
To,
The Editor
The Hindustan Times
New Delhi

Subject: Dangers of unverified news and rumors on social media

Sir,

With your kind permission, I wish to highlight a growing problem regarding the unchecked spread of fake news through social media platforms.

The residents of our area have been facing this problem for a long time, but a recent incident of a false kidnapping rumor caused widespread panic. The condition is deteriorating with each passing day as people forward messages without fact-checking. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of people, creating a sense of fear and even leading to mob violence in some cases.

It is high time that proper steps were taken to resolve this problem. I urge the authorities to look into the matter and launch awareness campaigns on digital ethics. Strict enforcement of laws against those who create such rumors is essential.

I trust that your newspaper will take up this cause for the benefit of the public.

Yours faithfully,
Ishan

5. You are Aryan/Ananya of 55, Preet Vihar, New Delhi. You have observed that many of your classmates suffer from extreme stress and anxiety due to the pressure of competitive exams, yet there is a stigma attached to seeking help. Write a letter to the Editor of The Hindu suggesting the need for mandatory counseling in schools.

Begin like this: Through the columns of your esteemed newspaper, I wish to voice a concern that is often hidden behind...

Ans :

55, Preet Vihar,
New Delhi
10th June, 2026
To,
The Editor
The Hindu
New Delhi

4. **Subject Line:** The subject is a single line that clearly summarises the main point of the letter. It begins with “Subject :” and should be brief and specific.

Example :

Subject : Increasing menace of waterlogging in residential areas

5. **Salutation:** The letter begins with “Sir,” or “Madam,” depending on the gender of the editor. When the gender is not known, “Sir/Madam,” is used.
6. **Body of the Letter:** The body is divided into three parts:
- Opening Paragraph :** Introduce yourself briefly and state the purpose of writing the letter. Mention through which medium you wish to draw attention to the issue.
 - Middle Paragraph(s) :** Describe the problem or issue in detail. Use facts, personal observations, or experiences to make your point convincing. Explain the impact of the problem on people.
 - Closing Paragraph :** Suggest possible solutions or measures. Appeal to the concerned authorities for immediate action. Request the editor to publish the letter so that the issue reaches a wider audience.
7. **Subscription:** The letter always ends with “Yours faithfully,” since this is a formal letter to someone the writer does not personally know.
8. **Sender’s Name:** The full name of the sender is written below the subscription.

5. POINTS TO REMEMBER

The following are some important points to remember while writing a letter to the editor:

- A letter to the editor is always a formal letter. The tone must be serious, polite, and respectful throughout.
- The letter must focus on only one issue or topic. Do not mix multiple problems in a single letter.
- The language must be simple, clear, and concise. Use short sentences and short paragraphs.
- Always begin the letter by introducing yourself and stating your purpose clearly.
- The subject line must be specific and clearly reflect the content of the letter.

- Always suggest solutions or appeal for action in the closing paragraph. Do not merely complain.
- The word limit for CBSE Class 9 is 120 to 150 words. Stay within this limit strictly.
- Use “Yours faithfully” as the subscription — never “Yours affectionately” or “Yours lovingly.”
- If you are criticising something, begin with a balanced and constructive tone rather than an angry or aggressive one.
- Always close with a polite request to the editor to publish the letter so the issue reaches the concerned authorities and the public.
- Do not use casual or informal language. Avoid slang, contractions, or conversational phrases.
- The sender’s name given in the question must be used. If a male/female option is given (e.g., Priya/Priyanshu), choose one and use it consistently throughout.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

6. USEFUL EXPRESSIONS FOR A LETTER TO THE EDITOR

The following are some useful expressions that can be used while writing a letter to the editor:

To Begin the Letter

- Through the columns of your esteemed newspaper, I wish to draw attention to...
- I am writing to express my deep concern over...
- I would like to bring to your notice a serious issue regarding...
- With your kind permission, I wish to highlight a growing problem...
- I am a regular reader of your newspaper and wish to draw attention to...

To Describe the Problem

- The situation has become extremely serious and requires immediate attention...
- The residents of our area have been facing this problem for a long time...
- Despite repeated complaints to the authorities, no action has been taken...
- This problem has severely affected the daily lives of the people...
- The condition is deteriorating with each passing day...

To Suggest Solutions

- I earnestly request the concerned authorities to take immediate action...
- The government must take strict measures to address this issue...
- I urge the authorities to look into the matter without further delay...
- It is high time that proper steps were taken to resolve this problem...
- Regular inspection and strict enforcement of rules can help curb this menace...

To Close the Letter

- I hope you will publish this letter and bring it to the notice of the authorities...
- I trust that your newspaper will take up this cause for the benefit of the public...
- Kindly give space to this letter in your esteemed publication...
- I sincerely hope that the concerned authorities will take note and act promptly...

7. SOME IMPORTANT EXAMPLES

1. You are Amit/Amita, a student living at 12, Rajpur Road, Civil Lines, New Delhi. With the onset of the wedding and festival season, the residents of your locality are suffering from sleepless nights due to the loud music from nearby banquet halls and late-night processions. This is severely affecting your preparation for the upcoming final exams. Write a letter to the Editor of The Hindustan Times drawing attention to the violation of noise pollution norms.

Cues:

- Loudspeakers beyond 10 p.m.
- Lack of police patrolling
- Health issues for senior citizens
- Impact on student concentration
- Need for strict penalties.

Ans :

12, Rajpur Road, Civil Lines,
New Delhi

15th September, 20xx

To,

The Editor

The Hindustan Times

New Delhi

Subject: Growing menace of noise pollution in residential areas

Sir,

Through the columns of your esteemed newspaper, I wish to draw the attention of the concerned

authorities to the alarming rise in noise pollution in our locality.

With the arrival of the festival season, the peace of our residential area has been completely shattered. Banquet halls and wedding processions continue to use high-decibel loudspeakers well past midnight, openly flouting the 10 p.m. deadline. This constant noise is causing immense distress to senior citizens and patients. As a student, I find it impossible to concentrate on my studies for the upcoming board examinations.

I urge the local police to strictly enforce the existing laws and penalize those who violate noise limits. Regular patrolling after 10 p.m. is essential to ensure a quiet environment.

I hope you will publish this letter to awaken the authorities to this serious problem.

Yours faithfully,
Amit

2. You are Aman/Ananya of 15, Sector 12, Dwarka, New Delhi. Look at the visual prompt below, which illustrates a major intersection in Delhi showing chaotic traffic, a minor accident, and two drivers arguing angrily. Based on this image, in 120-150 words, write a letter to the Editor of The Hindustan Times on the lack of road discipline and the growing menace of road rage. Suggest remedial measures.



Ans :

15, Sector 12, Dwarka,
New Delhi

14th February, 20xx

To,

The Editor

The Hindustan Times

New Delhi

Subject: Increasing incidents of road rage and lack of traffic discipline

Sir,

Through the columns of your esteemed newspaper, I wish to draw the attention of the authorities to the disturbing rise in road rage and chaotic traffic conditions in New Delhi.

The streets of our city have become a battlefield where commuters have lost all patience. A minor brush-up between vehicles instantly escalates into heated arguments, blocking other road users for hours. Drivers frequently violate traffic rules, break signals, and engage in reckless driving. This lack of discipline not only causes severe traffic jams but is also a major cause of fatal accidents, as the recent visuals near Dwarka crossing have shown.

The government must take strict measures to address this issue by deploying more traffic police at busy intersections and installing high-resolution CCTV cameras. Strict penalties for violators can help curb this menace significantly. Public awareness drives are also essential.

I hope you will publish this letter to bring it to the notice of the traffic department.

Yours faithfully,
Aman

3. You are Karan/Kavita of 7, Shastri Nagar, New Delhi. The main connecting road in your area was dug up for pipeline work six months ago and has not been repaired since. The road is now full of potholes and loose gravel, leading to frequent skidding of two-wheelers and massive traffic jams during peak hours. Write a letter to the Editor of The Hindu in 120–150 words appealing for urgent repairs.

Cues:

- Unfinished work
- Risky for commuters
- Dust pollution
- Heavy traffic congestion
- Request for PWD intervention.

Ans :

7, Shastri Nagar,
New Delhi
5th November, 20xx
To,
The Editor
The Hindu
New Delhi

Subject: Deplorable condition of roads in Shastri Nagar
Sir,

I am writing to express my deep concern over the extremely poor condition of the roads in our locality, which has become a nightmare for the residents.

The main road was dug up months ago for pipeline repairs but was never properly restored. It is now riddled with deep potholes and loose stones. This has led to several minor accidents, especially involving two-wheeler riders who skid on the gravel. During peak hours, the broken road causes long traffic jams, making it difficult for school buses and ambulances to pass. Furthermore, the constant dust is causing respiratory issues among the residents.

I urge the Public Works Department (PWD) to prioritize the repair of this road before a major accident occurs. Regular maintenance must be ensured for public safety.

I hope you will give space to this letter in your publication to prompt the authorities to act.

Yours faithfully,
Karan

4. You are Meena/Mohan, a resident of 33, Civil Lines, New Delhi. You have observed that children in your neighborhood spend most of their evenings staring at smartphone screens rather than playing in the parks. You feel this is leading to a lack of physical fitness and social skills. Write a letter to the Editor of The Deccan Chronicle discussing the harmful effects of excessive screen time and suggesting ways to encourage outdoor activities.
Outline: Decline in physical health—social isolation—eye strain—role of parents—need for digital-free hours.

Ans :

33, Civil Lines,
New Delhi
12th January, 2026
To,
The Editor
The Deccan Chronicle
New Delhi

Subject: Harmful effects of excessive mobile phone use among children
Sir,

Through the columns of your respected newspaper, I wish to share my concern regarding the growing addiction to smartphones among the youth.

It is disheartening to see that parks, which used to be full of children playing, are now mostly empty. Instead, teenagers spend hours scrolling through social media or playing online games.

and open spaces in Hauz Khas.

The residents of our area have been facing this problem as our only local park is now being used for parking and private functions. The situation is deteriorating with each passing day, leaving children with no choice but to stay indoors and lead a sedentary lifestyle. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of the youth, contributing to physical and mental health issues.

The government must take strict measures to address this issue and ensure that parks are reserved only for recreation. I urge the authorities to look into the matter without further delay.

I hope you will publish this letter and bring it to the notice of the authorities.

Yours faithfully,
Kabir

8. You are Tanmay/Tanvi of 15, Chandni Chowk, New Delhi. During a school heritage walk, you were shocked to see that several historical monuments in your area are covered in graffiti and surrounded by litter. Many local shops have also encroached upon the monument walls. Write a letter to the Editor of The Times of India expressing your concern over the neglect of our cultural heritage.

Begin like this: I would like to bring to your notice a serious issue regarding the deteriorating condition of...

Ans :

15, Chandni Chowk,
New Delhi
15th April, 2026
To,
The Editor
The Times of India
New Delhi

Subject: Neglect and vandalism of historical monuments

Sir,

I would like to bring to your notice a serious issue regarding the deteriorating condition of our local heritage sites in Chandni Chowk.

The situation has become extremely serious and requires immediate attention. It is disheartening to see our historical monuments covered in graffiti and surrounded by heaps of trash. The residents of our area have been facing this problem for a long time as local vendors have encroached upon the monument premises. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of those who value our history and discourages

tourism in our city.

The government must take strict measures to address this issue by deploying security guards and installing CCTV cameras at these sites. I urge the authorities to look into the matter without further delay and impose heavy fines for vandalism.

I hope you will publish this letter and bring it to the notice of the authorities.

Yours faithfully,
Tanmay

9. You are Ridhima/Rohan of 42, Pitampura, New Delhi. Recently, many residents in your colony fell ill after consuming loose milk and spices bought from a local vendor. You suspect food adulteration is becoming rampant in the city. Write a letter to the Editor of The Hindustan Times highlighting the need for regular food safety checks.

Cues:

- Health hazards
- Harmful chemicals
- Lack of regular inspection
- Unscrupulous traders
- Need for consumer awareness and strict FSSAI enforcement.

Ans :

42, Pitampura,
New Delhi
20th April, 2026
To,
The Editor
The Hindustan Times
New Delhi

Subject: Growing menace of food adulteration in the city

Sir,

I am writing to express my deep concern over the alarming rise in food adulteration cases in our locality.

The situation has become extremely serious as several residents have fallen ill due to contaminated food products. Despite repeated complaints to the local authorities, no action has been taken against the dishonest vendors. The condition is deteriorating with each passing day, posing a grave threat to the health of children and senior citizens. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of the people who now live in constant fear for their safety.

I earnestly request the concerned authorities to take immediate action by conducting regular inspections and food quality tests. The government

EXERCISE

1. You are Kavita/Karan of 20, Rajouri Garden, New Delhi. Observe the visual given below, highlighting the vulnerability of children on the internet. As digital classes and social media use increase, so do the risks of cyberbullying and online fraud. In 120-150 words, write a letter to the Editor of The Hindu emphasizing the need for 'digital safety' education in schools and at home.



Ans :

20, Rajouri Garden,
New Delhi
8th March, 20xx
To,
The Editor
The Hindu
New Delhi

Subject: Urgent need for cyber safety education among teenagers

Sir,

I am writing to express my deep concern over the vulnerability of children in the online world, as depicted by the increasing reports of cyberbullying and fraud.

In today's digital age, children are exposed to the internet at a very young age for education and entertainment. Unfortunately, the web is also full of dangers. Young users, often unaware of privacy settings, are easy targets for online predators and identity theft. The constant pressure of social media can lead to anxiety, and cases of severe cyberbullying are on the rise, causing immense distress to teenagers.

Schools must introduce compulsory digital ethics classes to teach students responsible use of technology. Parents must also monitor screen time and educate children about online safety. It is high time that proper steps were taken to protect our future generation.

I trust that your newspaper will take up this cause for the benefit of the public.

Yours faithfully,
Kavita

2. You are Rohan/Raveena of 12, Karol Bagh, New Delhi. While volunteering at a local NGO, you noticed that many bright children from low-income families are falling behind because they lack smartphones and internet access for their hybrid classes. Write a letter to the Editor of The Times of India highlighting this 'Digital Divide' and suggesting how the community can help bridge this gap.

Cues:

- Online learning a luxury for many
- Unequal access to resources
- Need for community gadgets donation
- Setting up free Wi-Fi zones in clusters
- Role of NGOs.

Ans :

12, Karol Bagh,
New Delhi
15th April, 2026
To,
The Editor
The Times of India
New Delhi

Subject: Addressing the digital divide in our education system

Sir,

I am writing to you today to highlight a digital gap that is silently affecting the future of thousands of underprivileged children in our city.

The situation has become extremely serious and requires immediate attention. While most students in New Delhi have shifted to digital learning, children from low-income families are struggling due to a lack of smartphones and data connections. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of these students, as they feel excluded from the modern education system.

The government must take strict measures to address this issue by setting up community learning centers with free Wi-Fi. I earnestly request the concerned authorities to encourage gadget donation drives. Regular inspection of government schools to ensure digital infrastructure is also necessary.

I hope you will publish this letter and bring it to the notice of the authorities and the public.

Yours faithfully,
Rohan

CHAPTER 13

LETTER TO THE EDITOR

1. INTRODUCTION

A Letter to the Editor is a formal letter written to the editor of a newspaper or magazine. It is written by a reader to express opinions, share information, raise concerns, suggest solutions, or respond to something published. Newspapers have a wide readership and influence public opinion. Such letters give ordinary citizens a chance to voice their views and bring important issues to the attention of the public and authorities. It is an effective way of communicating with society through print media. It also helps in creating awareness and encouraging action on important issues.

2. PURPOSE OF LETTER TO THE EDITOR

A letter to the editor may be written for any of the following purposes:

1. To draw attention to a problem or issue in the community
2. To suggest solutions to a civic or social problem
3. To appreciate or criticise a policy or decision
4. To correct wrong or incomplete information published in a newspaper
5. To increase awareness about an important social issue
6. To appeal to the authorities for action

3. FORMAT OF A LETTER TO THE EDITOR

A letter to the editor follows a specific formal format. Every part of the letter must be written carefully and in the correct order.

NODIA

Sender's Address

Date

Receiver's Designation and Address

Subject [One line stating the main topic of the letter]

Salutation [Sir/Madam,]

Body of the Letter:

Opening Paragraph [State the purpose of writing the letter clearly and concisely.]

Middle Paragraph(s) [Describe the problem or issue in detail. Give facts, examples, or personal experiences to support your point.]

Closing Paragraph [Request the editor to publish the letter. Appeal to the concerned authorities for action.]

Subscription [Yours faithfully,]

Sender's Name

4. PARTS OF A LETTER TO THE EDITOR

The following are the main parts of a letter to the editor, which should be written in a proper and correct format:

1. **Sender's Address:** The full address of the person writing the letter is written on the top left side of the page. It includes the house number, locality, city, and state.
2. **Date:** The date is written just below the sender's address. It must be written in full.
Example : 15th October, 20xx
3. **Receiver's Address:** The designation and address of the editor is written after the date. It begins with "To," and includes:
 - The Editor
 - Name of the Newspaper or Magazine
 - City

Subject: Need for mandatory mental health counseling in schools

Sir,

Through the columns of your esteemed newspaper, I wish to voice a concern that is often hidden behind the high academic expectations placed on students today.

The situation has become extremely serious as the pressure to score high marks is leading to anxiety and depression among teenagers. Despite repeated complaints to school boards about the heavy syllabus, no action has been taken to provide emotional support. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of students, making them feel isolated and overwhelmed.

I earnestly request the concerned authorities to make full-time counselors mandatory in every school. Regular inspection of the students' mental well-being is as important as their grades. I sincerely hope that the concerned authorities will take note and act promptly.

Yours faithfully,
Ananya

6. You are Deepak/Deepika of 10, Civil Lines, New Delhi. Look at the infographic below which compares a clean public park to one that has been left littered after an event. It reflects a poor civic sense. In 120-150 words, write a letter to the Editor of The Pioneer on the lack of public responsibility and the need to impose heavy fines to maintain cleanliness in public spaces.



Ans :

10, Civil Lines,
New Delhi
22nd April, 20xx
To,
The Editor
The Pioneer
New Delhi

Subject: Lack of civic sense and public littering in parks and public spaces

Sir,

Through the columns of your esteemed newspaper, I wish to draw attention to the disappointing lack of public responsibility towards maintaining cleanliness, especially after events in public parks.

We often enjoy the greenery and peace that our local parks offer, yet we completely fail to protect them. The shocking “before and after” state of our green spaces shows that after any gathering, people routinely leave behind heaps of plastic waste and food wrappers. This not only spoils the natural beauty but also creates unhygienic conditions, turning a place of relaxation into a breeding ground for diseases.

I urge the municipal authorities to ensure that strict fines are imposed on anyone found littering. Organizers of public events must be held accountable for the post-event cleanup. Regular inspection can help curb this menace significantly.

Kindly give space to this letter in your esteemed publication to highlight this important issue.

Yours faithfully,
Deepak

7. You are Kabir/Kriti of 88, Hauz Khas, New Delhi. You find that the few open spaces and playgrounds left in your locality are being used for commercial parking or wedding functions, leaving children with no place to play. Write a letter to the Editor of The Indian Express expressing your concern.

Cues:

- Encroachment of public land
- Sedentary lifestyle
- Obesity in children
- Violation of city planning
- Need for “Play Zones.”

Ans :

88, Hauz Khas,
New Delhi
5th September, 2026
To,
The Editor
The Indian Express
New Delhi

Subject: Encroachment of playgrounds affecting children's health

Sir,

I would like to bring to your notice a serious issue regarding the rapid disappearance of playgrounds

This sedentary lifestyle is causing poor eyesight, obesity, and a lack of real-life social skills. Many students are also losing sleep, which directly affects their concentration in school.

I believe parents should lead by example and strictly monitor their children's screen time. Schools should also organize more sports events and awareness talks on "Digital Detox." It is high time we encourage our children to reconnect with the physical world.

I hope your newspaper will highlight this issue to create awareness among parents and students.

Yours faithfully,
Meena

leakages in the underground pipes to prevent contamination.

Kindly publish this letter to draw the attention of the higher authorities to our grievance.

Yours faithfully,
Rekha



NODIA

5. You are Rekha/Rajan of 18, Sector 9, Rohini, New Delhi. Your colony has been receiving water supply for only twenty minutes a day for the last two weeks. The pressure is too low to reach the first floor, and the water is often dirty. Write a letter to the Editor of The Tribune highlighting the plight of the residents and the lack of response from the local water board.

Begin like this: I wish to use the platform of your esteemed daily to bring to light the severe hardship...

Ans :

18, Sector 9, Rohini,
New Delhi
10th May, 2026

To,
The Editor
The Tribune
New Delhi

Subject: Acute water shortage and supply of contaminated water

Sir,

I wish to use the platform of your esteemed daily to bring to light the severe hardship faced by the residents of Rohini due to a major water crisis.

For the past fifteen days, our locality has been receiving water for barely twenty minutes a day. The pressure is so low that the water does not even reach the storage tanks. To make matters worse, the water supplied is often brownish and foul-smelling, making it unfit for drinking or cooking. Despite several complaints to the Delhi Jal Board, no corrective measures have been taken.

I request the concerned authorities to ensure a regular and clean water supply to our area immediately. They must also check for any

must take strict measures to penalize those who play with public health. Regular inspection and strict enforcement of rules can help curb this menace.

Kindly give space to this letter in your esteemed publication.

Yours faithfully,
Ridhima

10. You are Aryan/Ananya of 20, Rajouri Garden, New Delhi. You noticed that a classmate who uses a wheelchair finds it impossible to access the school library and the local park because there are no ramps. Write a letter to the Editor of The Hindu regarding the need for “Inclusive Infrastructure” for the differently-abled in public spaces.

Begin like this: Through the columns of your esteemed newspaper, I wish to highlight the silent struggles of...

Ans :

20, Rajouri Garden,
New Delhi
12th May, 2026
To,
The Editor
The Hindu
New Delhi

Subject: Need for inclusive infrastructure for the differently-abled

Sir,

Through the columns of your esteemed newspaper, I wish to highlight the silent struggles of the differently-abled citizens in our city due to a lack of inclusive infrastructure.

The residents of our area have been facing this problem as most public buildings, parks, and even schools lack basic ramp facilities. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of many bright individuals who are denied their right to equal access. Despite various policies, no action has been taken on the ground to make our city truly “barrier-free.”

It is high time that proper steps were taken to resolve this problem. I urge the authorities to look into the matter and ensure that all public spaces are equipped with ramps and tactile paths. Regular inspection of new construction projects should be made mandatory to ensure they follow accessibility norms.

I trust that your newspaper will take up this cause for the benefit of the public.

Yours faithfully,
Ananya

11. You are Kabir/Kriti of 10, Lajpat Nagar, New Delhi. You have witnessed people in your neighborhood treating stray animals cruelly—throwing stones at them or displacing new-born puppies. You feel that a society is judged by how it treats its animals. Write a letter to the Editor of The Indian Express advocating for animal compassion and local shelters.

Cues:

- Animal rights violation
- Fear-based aggression
- Importance of sterilization over cruelty
- Role of NGOs
- Need for community feeding zones.

Ans :

10, Lajpat Nagar,
New Delhi
5th June, 2026

To,
The Editor
The Indian Express
New Delhi

Subject: Increasing instances of cruelty toward stray animals

Sir,

I am a regular reader of your newspaper and wish to draw attention to the growing problem of animal cruelty in our residential areas.

The condition is deteriorating with each passing day as residents often resort to violence against stray dogs instead of seeking humane solutions. This situation has become extremely serious as puppies are being displaced, and animals are being beaten without cause. Such behavior reflects a poor civic sense and a lack of empathy in our society.

I earnestly request the concerned authorities to take immediate action by collaborating with NGOs for sterilization and vaccination drives. It is high time that proper steps were taken to educate the public on animal rights. Strict enforcement of rules against animal cruelty can help curb this menace.

I sincerely hope that the concerned authorities will take note and act promptly.

Yours faithfully,
Kabir

The residents of our area have been facing this problem for a long time. Since there are no dustbins, shoppers and vendors throw garbage on the road. The situation has become extremely serious as the waste attracts flies and smells very bad. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of the people who visit the market for their daily needs.

I earnestly request the concerned authorities to take immediate action and install large dustbins at every corner of the market. Regular inspection and strict enforcement of rules can help keep our market clean.

I trust that your newspaper will take up this cause for the benefit of the public.

Yours faithfully,
Sonu

17. You are Vicky/Vinita of 12, Palam Enclave, New Delhi. In your colony, there is no playground, so children are forced to play cricket and football on the busy streets. This is dangerous and causes trouble for drivers. Write a letter to the Editor of The Times of India requesting the authorities to develop a vacant plot into a children's park.

Begin like this: I would like to bring to your notice a serious issue regarding...

Ans :
12, Palam Enclave,
New Delhi
15th August, 2026
To,
The Editor
The Times of India
New Delhi

Subject: Need for a dedicated children's park in Palam Enclave

Sir,
I would like to bring to your notice a serious issue regarding the lack of a safe playing area for children in our colony.

The residents of our area have been facing this problem for a long time. Since there is no park, children are forced to play on the busy streets. The situation has become extremely serious as it leads to frequent minor accidents and disturbs the traffic. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of the children who have no space for physical exercise.

I earnestly request the concerned authorities to take immediate action and convert the vacant plot in our block into a beautiful park. It is high time that proper steps were taken to provide a

safe environment for our kids.

I hope you will publish this letter and bring it to the notice of the authorities.

Yours faithfully,
Vinita

18. You are Rohan/Riya, a resident of Block-C, Janakpuri, New Delhi. Look at the visual prompt provided below, which shows a tangled mess of overhead electricity and internet wires hanging dangerously low in a narrow street. This situation is a major fire hazard and has caused several minor accidents in your locality. In 120-150 words, write a letter to the Editor of The Times of India drawing the attention of the authorities to this life-threatening issue.



Ans :
Block-C, Janakpuri,
New Delhi
13th April, 2026
To,
The Editor
The Times of India
New Delhi

Subject: Danger posed by low-hanging overhead wires in Janakpuri

Sir,
I would like to bring to your notice a serious issue regarding the death traps hanging over the streets of Janakpuri in the form of tangled electricity and internet wires.

The situation has become extremely serious and requires immediate attention. As seen in our locality, a massive web of loose wires hangs so low that it is almost within reach of pedestrians. The residents of our area have been facing this problem for a long time, but the condition is deteriorating with each passing day. These wires pose a severe risk of short circuits and fires, especially during the monsoon season. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of the people, who live in constant fear of a fatal accident.

14. You are Rahul/Rina of 10, Adarsh Nagar, New Delhi. You notice that children in your colony spend all their time on mobile phones because there is no library or reading room nearby. Write a letter to the Editor of The Times of India suggesting that the government should open a public library in your area.

Begin like this: I am a regular reader of your newspaper and wish to draw attention to...

Ans :

10, Adarsh Nagar,

New Delhi

15th May, 2026

To,

The Editor

The Times of India

New Delhi

Subject: Need for a public library in Adarsh Nagar

Sir,

I am a regular reader of your newspaper and wish to draw attention to the lack of a public library in our locality.

The residents of our area have been facing this problem for a long time. Children and students have no quiet place to sit and read. Since books are very expensive, many students cannot afford to buy them. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of the youth, as they spend most of their time on mobile phones instead of reading.

I earnestly request the concerned authorities to take immediate action and open a small public library or a reading room. It is high time that proper steps were taken to promote reading habits.

I hope you will publish this letter and bring it to the notice of the authorities.

Yours faithfully,

Rahul

15. You are Aman/Amita of 25, Rohini, New Delhi. You are worried because many trees are being cut down in your colony to make more space for parking cars. Write a letter to the Editor of The Hindustan Times about the importance of planting trees.

Cues:

- Cutting trees for parking
- Less shade
- Increase in heat
- Birds losing homes
- Request to plant more saplings.

Ans :

25, Rohini,

New Delhi

20th June, 2026

To,

The Editor

The Hindustan Times

New Delhi

Subject: Concern over cutting of trees for parking space

Sir,

I am writing to express my deep concern over the continuous cutting of trees in our colony to create more space for parking.

The situation has become extremely serious and requires immediate attention. Trees are our lifeline, but they are being cut down blindly. The condition is deteriorating with each passing day as the temperature in our area is rising and birds are losing their nests. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of the people who now miss the cool shade of the trees.

The government must take strict measures to address this issue. I urge the authorities to look into the matter and start a tree-plantation drive in our locality. Regular inspection can help curb this menace of illegal tree cutting.

I sincerely hope that the concerned authorities will take note and act promptly.

Yours faithfully,

Aman

16. You are Sonu/Soni of 5, Karol Bagh, New Delhi. When you go to the local market, you see that people throw fruit peels and plastic bags on the road because there are no dustbins. Write a letter to the Editor of The Hindu asking the municipal department to install dustbins.

Begin like this: I would like to bring to your notice a serious issue regarding...

Ans :

5, Karol Bagh,

New Delhi

12th July, 2026

To,

The Editor

The Hindu

New Delhi

Subject: Lack of dustbins in the local market area

Sir,
I would like to bring to your notice a serious issue regarding the lack of dustbins in the Karol Bagh main market.

12. You are Shreya/Shreyas of 88, Vasant Kunj, New Delhi. You find that your classmates are using AI tools to write their essays and solve their homework, leading to a decline in original thinking and creativity. Write a letter to the Editor of The Pioneer regarding the ethical use of technology in education.

Outline: Impact on critical thinking—risk of plagiarism—loss of problem-solving skills—need for balanced use of AI—importance of teacher guidance.

Ans :

88, Vasant Kunj,
New Delhi
10th July, 2026

To,
The Editor
The Pioneer
New Delhi

Subject: Ethical use of AI and its impact on students' creativity

Sir,

I would like to bring to your notice a serious issue regarding the increasing over-dependence on Artificial Intelligence tools among school students.

The situation has become extremely serious as students have started using AI to complete their assignments without understanding the concepts. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of learners, leading to a significant decline in original thinking and creativity. The condition is deteriorating as students lose their ability to solve problems independently.

The government and educational boards must take strict measures to regulate the use of these tools in schools. It is high time that proper steps were taken to teach students the difference between using technology as a help and using it as a shortcut. Regular inspection of students' progress through traditional methods should be encouraged.

I hope you will publish this letter to create awareness among parents and teachers.

Yours faithfully,
Shreyas

13. You are Rohan/Raveena, a resident of B-Block, Gazipur, New Delhi. Look at the visual given below showing the towering landfill near your locality. It is a health hazard, causes groundwater pollution, and emits foul gas. In 120-150 words, write a letter to the Editor of The Times of India drawing the attention of the authorities to this

serious environmental crisis and the urgent need for a scientific waste management plan.



Ans :

B-Block, Gazipur,
New Delhi
25th January, 20xx

To,
The Editor
The Times of India
New Delhi

Subject: Towering Gazipur landfill posing severe health and environmental risks

Sir,

I would like to bring to your notice a serious issue regarding the massive garbage landfill near our residential locality in Gazipur, New Delhi.

As you are aware, this “garbage mountain” has far exceeded its capacity and has become a dangerous health hazard. The rotting waste emits a constant foul stench and toxic gases, making it difficult for the residents to even breathe. It is also contaminating the groundwater in the area. Frequent fires at the landfill contribute significantly to Delhi's air pollution.

I earnestly request the concerned authorities to take immediate action by prioritizing the scientific management of waste. There is a critical need to implement segregation at the source and set up modern waste-to-energy plants. We cannot afford to ignore this deteriorating situation any longer.

Kindly publish this letter to create awareness and ensure public safety.

Yours faithfully,
Rohan

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



I earnestly request the concerned authorities to take immediate action to fix these wires. The government must take strict measures to shift these cables underground to ensure public safety. Regular inspection of electric poles can help curb this menace.

I hope you will publish this letter and bring it to the notice of the authorities.

Yours faithfully,
Rohan

19. You are Rahul/Rani of 44, Anand Vihar, New Delhi. You see that everyone in your colony uses a private car even for short distances, which leads to huge traffic jams and pollution. Write a letter to the Editor of The Hindustan Times about the benefits of using the Metro and buses.

Cues:

- Too many private cars
- Heavy traffic
- High pollution
- Metro is cheaper and faster
- Saving fuel and environment.

Ans :

44, Anand Vihar,
New Delhi
10th September, 2026
To,
The Editor
The Hindustan Times
New Delhi

Subject: Promoting the use of public transport to reduce pollution

Sir,

Through the columns of your esteemed newspaper, I wish to draw attention to the increasing number of private vehicles on our roads.

The situation has become extremely serious and requires immediate attention. People use their cars even for very short distances, which leads to massive traffic jams every day. The condition is deteriorating with each passing day as the smoke from these cars makes the air unfit to breathe. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of people who spend hours stuck in traffic.

The government must take strict measures to address this issue by improving the frequency of buses. I urge the authorities to look into the matter and encourage people to use the Delhi Metro. Regular inspection of vehicle emissions can also help curb this menace of pollution.

I trust that your newspaper will take up this cause for the benefit of the public.

Yours faithfully,
Rahul

20. You are Sunny/Sonia of 8, Janakpuri, New Delhi. You are upset to see that the clean walls of your colony and school have been defaced with advertisements and political posters. Write a letter to the Editor of The Hindu about the importance of keeping our city's walls clean.

Begin like this: With your kind permission, I wish to highlight a growing problem regarding...

Ans :

8, Janakpuri,
New Delhi
22nd October, 2026
To,
The Editor
The Hindu
New Delhi

Subject: Defacement of public walls by posters and advertisements

Sir,

With your kind permission, I wish to highlight a growing problem regarding the defacement of public and private walls in Janakpuri.

The residents of our area have been facing this problem for a long time. People paste colorful advertisements and posters on every clean wall they find. The situation has become extremely serious as it makes our beautiful colony look very ugly and dirty. This problem has severely affected the daily lives of residents who take pride in keeping their surroundings clean.

I earnestly request the concerned authorities to take immediate action and remove these posters. The government must take strict measures to penalize those who ruin public property. Regular inspection and strict enforcement of rules can help curb this menace.

I sincerely hope that the concerned authorities will take note and act promptly.

Yours faithfully,
Sonia

NODIA



buildings with undertrained staff and no digital resources. This inequality is creating a widening gap in opportunities and outcomes between urban and rural youth.

I strongly believe that the government must prioritize increasing the number of trained teachers in rural schools, provide digital infrastructure under schemes like Digital India, and involve NGOs in monitoring educational quality at the grassroots level. Scholarships and mid-day meal programmes must also be strengthened to reduce dropout rates.

Kindly publish this letter to encourage public debate and policy action on this pressing issue.

Yours sincerely,

Tara Sharma

Class 9-A, Kendriya Vidyalaya

8. Write a formal e-mail to the director of a local NGO requesting them to conduct a career guidance workshop for students of Classes 9 and 10 at your school. Explain why such a workshop is needed at this stage of students' academic lives, provide details about the proposed date and venue, and mention the topics you would like to be covered during the session.

Ans :

To	director.futurefoundation@gmail.com
Subject	Request to Conduct a Career Guidance Workshop at XYZ School
Dear Ms. Priya Agarwal, I hope this e-mail finds you well. I am writing on behalf of the Student Welfare Committee of XYZ School to request your esteemed organization to conduct a Career Guidance Workshop for students of Classes 9 and 10. We propose to hold the workshop on Saturday, 15th March 2025, at our school auditorium from 10:00 a.m. to 1:00 p.m. Many of our students feel uncertain about their future academic and career paths, and expert guidance at this stage would help them make informed and confident decisions. We would be deeply grateful if your team could cover topics such as career options after Class 10, the importance of skill development, and emerging career fields. Kindly let us know your availability and any requirements from our side. Thanking you. Yours sincerely, Meera Kapoor Head Girl, XYZ School	

9. Write a formal e-mail to the principal of your school requesting permission to celebrate World Environment Day on 5th June in the school premises. The event is being organized by the Science Club and will include simple activities like making posters, planting saplings, and giving short speeches. Mention how this event will help create awareness about environmental issues among students.

Ans :

To	principal.xyzschool@gmail.com
Subject	Request for Permission to Celebrate World Environment Day
Dear Dr. Ramesh Gupta, I hope this e-mail finds you well. I am writing on behalf of the Science Club to seek your kind permission to celebrate World Environment Day on Friday, 5th June 2025, in the school premises during the morning assembly period. The event will include simple activities such as poster making, planting of saplings in the school garden, and short speeches by students on topics related to environmental protection. No special arrangements or extra resources will be required, as everything will be managed by the club members themselves. We believe this celebration will help create meaningful awareness about pressing environmental issues among students and encourage them to adopt eco-friendly habits in their daily lives. Kindly grant us your approval for the same. Thanking you. Yours sincerely, Rohan Mehta Secretary, Science Club XYZ School	

SCAN QR CODE

JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



10. Write a formal e-mail to your class teacher requesting her to issue a character certificate for you as it is required for admission to a hobby class at a local community centre. Mention your name, class, and section clearly, explain why the certificate is needed, and request her to issue it at the earliest convenience.

5. POINTS TO REMEMBER

To draft a professional and high-scoring e-mail, it is essential to keep the following points in mind:

1. **Subject Line Clarity:** The subject must immediately tell the reader what the e-mail is about. A vague subject like “Regarding Something” is unacceptable.
2. **Appropriate Salutation:** Use “Dear Sir/Madam” when the name is unknown; use “Dear Mr./Ms. [Surname]” when the name is known.
3. **Word Limit:** For your examination, a formal e-mail must be written within 120–150 words. Every word must count.
4. **No Informal Language:** Words like “hey,” “gonna,” “btw,” or exclamation marks used casually are strictly prohibited.
5. **Proper Closing:** “Yours sincerely” is used when you know the recipient’s name; “Yours faithfully” is used when you don’t.
6. **Complete Information:** Always include all necessary details such as date, time, venue, and purpose so the recipient does not need to follow up for basics.
7. **Professional E-Mail Address:** In exam format questions, use realistic e-mail addresses (e.g., principal.abcschool@gmail.com).

6. TYPES OF FORMAL E-MAILS

Based on your syllabus, formal e-mails are written on a given issue for presenting views and suggestions. The most common types you will encounter are:

1. **E-Mail to a Principal :** Requesting permission for events, competitions, drives, workshops, or fundraisers.
2. **E-Mail to an Editor:** Presenting views, raising concerns, or offering suggestions about a social, environmental, or community issue. This type requires a clear opinion backed by relevant points.
3. **E-Mail to an Authority or Organization:** Written to municipal bodies, NGOs, companies, or institutions for collaboration, complaints, requests, or information.
4. **E-Mail Making a Request:** Seeking sponsorship, guidance, discount, or assistance from a person in an official capacity.

7. SOME IMPORTANT EXAMPLES

1. Write a formal e-mail to the principal of your school requesting permission to organize a tree plantation drive on the school campus. The drive is being planned by the Green Earth Club to promote environmental awareness and encourage students to actively contribute toward a greener and healthier environment. Mention the proposed date and activities planned.

Ans :

To	principal.sunriseschool@gmail.com
Subject	Request for Permission to Organize a Tree Plantation Drive
Dear Dr. Sunita Sharma, I hope this e-mail finds you in good health. I am writing on behalf of the Green Earth Club of our school to seek your kind permission to organize a Tree Plantation Drive on Saturday, 22nd March 2025, on the school campus. The initiative aims to raise awareness about environmental conservation and encourage students to actively contribute toward a greener environment. We plan to plant saplings along the school boundary, and all necessary tools and plants will be arranged by the club members. We believe this drive will instill a sense of responsibility toward nature among students. Kindly grant us your approval and share any suggestions for the smooth conduct of the event. Thanking you. Yours sincerely, Ritika Mehta Secretary, Green Earth Club Sunrise School	

NODIA

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



Write a formal e-mail to the editor of a local newspaper expressing your concern about the rising problem of noise pollution in your city. Highlight how it is affecting the daily lives of residents, particularly students and the elderly, and suggest at least three effective measures that authorities and citizens can take to bring this issue under control.

CHAPTER 14

FORMAL E-MAIL

1. INTRODUCTION

A formal e-mail is a professional written communication sent through electronic mail for official, academic, or business purposes. Unlike informal e-mails written to friends and family, formal e-mails follow a structured format, use polished language, and maintain a respectful tone throughout. They are commonly written to principals, teachers, editors, managers, government authorities, and organizations.

2. WHEN DO WE WRITE FORMAL E-MAILS?

Formal e-mails are written in situations such as:

1. Requesting permission from a school principal or authority
2. Writing to the editor of a newspaper to present views or suggestions on an issue
3. Applying for leave or making official requests at a workplace
4. Corresponding with NGOs, businesses, or government bodies
5. Seeking information, sponsorship, or collaboration from organizations

3. FORMAT OF A FORMAL E-MAIL

A formal e-mail must follow a precise structure. Each component serves a specific purpose.

To	Recipient's official e-mail address
Cc	Optional – copies sent to additional recipients
Bcc	Optional – hidden copies to other recipients
Subject	A clear, concise line stating the purpose

Salutation

[Dear Sir/Madam or Dear Mr./Ms. (Surname)]

Body:

Introduction

.....
.....

Main Content

.....
.....
.....

Conclusion

.....
.....

Closing

[Yours sincerely/Yours faithfully/Regards]

Sender's Name

[Full name of the writer]

Designation

[Role/class of the sender (if applicable)]

Attachments (if any)

4. STRUCTURE OF THE BODY

The body of a formal e-mail is divided into three clear parts:

1. **Introduction** : Begin by stating who you are and the purpose of your e-mail. Keep it brief and direct.
Example: "I am writing on behalf of the Science Club to request your permission to organize..."
2. **Main Content** : Provide all relevant details (dates, times, venues, reasons) and any supporting information the recipient needs to make a decision or take action.
3. **Conclusion** : End politely by expressing hope for a positive response, offering to provide further information, and thanking the recipient.
Example: "I look forward to your kind approval. Please feel free to contact us for any further details."

5. Write a formal e-mail to the municipal commissioner of your city requesting urgent action to address the serious problem of garbage being illegally dumped near a residential area. Explain how this is affecting the health and safety of residents and suggest specific measures that the authorities should take to resolve the issue permanently.

Ans :

To	commissioner.municipal@gmail.com
Subject	Request for Urgent Action Against Illegal Garbage Dumping in Greenwood Colony
Dear Mr. Rakesh Sharma, I am writing on behalf of the residents of Greenwood Colony to draw your attention to the serious problem of garbage being illegally dumped near the main entrance of our locality on MG Road. The accumulated waste has been lying unattended for over three weeks, emitting foul odours and attracting stray animals and insects. This poses a significant health hazard, especially for children and senior citizens residing nearby. The risk of waterborne diseases spreading in the area is also a grave concern. We request you to kindly arrange for the immediate clearance of the dumped waste, install proper garbage bins in the area, and deploy sanitation workers on a regular schedule. Strict action against those dumping garbage illegally would also serve as a strong deterrent. We hope for your prompt response to this urgent matter. Yours faithfully, Rohit Sharma Resident Representative, Greenwood Colony	

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

6. Write a formal e-mail to the principal of your school requesting permission to launch a school magazine that will serve as a creative platform for students. The magazine will showcase student writing, artwork, and achievements, and will be managed entirely by a student editorial team under teacher supervision. Explain how this initiative will benefit the school community.

Ans :

To	principal.stjosephschool@gmail.com
Subject	Request for Permission to Launch a School Magazine
Dear Dr. Anita Nair, I hope this e-mail finds you well. I am writing on behalf of the students of Classes 9 and 10 to seek your kind permission to launch a School Magazine titled *The Young Voices*, which will serve as a platform for students to showcase their creative writing, artwork, and academic achievements. The magazine will be published termly and will include student poems, short stories, illustrations, school news, and inspiring student profiles. A dedicated editorial team of students, under the guidance of our English teachers, will manage all aspects of the publication. We believe this initiative will greatly boost the confidence and creativity of students while building a sense of pride in the school community. Kindly grant us your approval and guidance to proceed. Thanking you. Yours sincerely, Ananya Sen Editor-in-Chief (Proposed) St. Joseph School	

7. Write a formal e-mail to the editor of a newspaper presenting your views on the importance of making quality education accessible to children in rural areas of India. Highlight the existing gap between urban and rural education, and suggest specific steps that the government, NGOs, and communities can take to bridge this divide and create equal opportunities for all children.

Ans :

To	editor.nationaltimes@gmail.com
Subject	Bridging the Education Gap — Quality Learning for Rural Children
Dear Mr. Pawan Joshi, I am writing to share my views on an issue that deserves far greater attention than it currently receives — the lack of access to quality education for millions of children in rural India. While urban schools boast smart classrooms, well-trained teachers, and modern facilities, children in villages often study in dilapidated	

Ans :

To	editor.citychronicle@gmail.com
Subject	Urgent Need to Address Rising Noise Pollution in Our City
Dear Mr. Suresh Verma, I am writing to express my deep concern about the alarming rise in noise pollution in our city. Blaring horns, construction activities, and loud loudspeakers in public spaces have made daily life extremely stressful for residents, particularly students and the elderly. Excessive noise pollution leads to serious health issues such as hearing impairment, increased stress levels, sleep disturbances, and difficulty concentrating. Students preparing for examinations are among the worst affected. I would like to suggest that authorities strictly enforce noise pollution laws, impose fines for unnecessary honking, regulate construction timings in residential areas, and organize public awareness campaigns. Citizens too must cooperate by using loudspeakers responsibly. I kindly request you to publish this letter to draw the attention of concerned authorities toward this growing menace. Yours sincerely, Aarav Mishra Class 9-A, ABC School	

3. Write a formal e-mail to the principal of your school requesting permission to conduct an inter-class debate competition on the topic “Technology Does More Harm Than Good.” The competition is being organized by the Literary and Debate Club and is aimed at developing critical thinking and public speaking skills among students of Classes 9 and 10. Provide details about the proposed date, venue, and time.

Ans :

To	principal.delhipublicschool@gmail.com
Subject	Request for Permission to Conduct Inter-Class Debate Competition
Dear Dr. Rajiv Kapoor, I hope this message finds you well. I am writing on behalf of the Literary and Debate Club to request your permission to organize an Inter-Class Debate Competition on the topic “Technology Does More Harm Than Good” on Friday, 7th February 2025, in the school auditorium from 10:00 a.m. to 12:00 p.m.	

The competition aims to develop critical thinking, public speaking, and research skills among students of Classes 9 and 10. All arrangements, including a panel of judges and certificates for participants, will be managed by the club.

We are confident this event will be both intellectually stimulating and enriching for the participants. Kindly grant us your approval and advise us regarding any formalities to be completed.

Thanking you.

Yours sincerely,
Priya Sinha
President, Literary and Debate Club
Delhi Public School

4. Write a formal e-mail to the editor of a national magazine sharing your views on how the lack of physical activity among teenagers is seriously affecting their physical and mental health. Discuss the reasons behind this growing trend and suggest practical measures that schools, parents, and the government can take to encourage a more active and healthy lifestyle among young people.

Ans :

To	editor.youthmag@gmail.com
Subject	The Growing Health Crisis Due to Physical Inactivity Among Teenagers
Dear Ms. Kavita Bose, I am writing to bring to your attention a serious yet often overlooked concern — the alarming decline in physical activity among teenagers in our country. With increasing academic pressure and excessive use of digital devices, most young people today lead largely sedentary lifestyles. The consequences are deeply worrying. Rising cases of obesity, poor posture, weakened immunity, and mental health issues such as anxiety and depression are being increasingly observed among teenagers. Doctors warn that this generation may face serious lifestyle diseases at an unusually young age. I strongly suggest that schools make sports a compulsory daily activity, parents limit recreational screen time, and the government invest in public playgrounds. Communities should also organize regular fitness events to motivate young people. I request you to publish this letter to spark a much-needed national conversation on this issue. Yours sincerely, Meera Kapoor Class 9-B, XYZ School	

Ans :

To	teacher.class9@xyzschool.gmail.com
Subject	Request for Issuance of Character Certificate
Dear Ms. Neha Sharma, I hope this e-mail finds you well. I am writing to request you to kindly issue a character certificate in my name for official purposes. I, Aryan Kapoor, a student of Class 9-A at XYZ School, require the certificate for my admission to a painting hobby class at the Greenwood Community Centre. The centre has made it mandatory for all applicants below the age of 18 to submit a character certificate issued by their respective schools. I would be grateful if you could issue the certificate at your earliest convenience, as the last date for submission of documents at the centre is 20th April 2025. I assure you that it will be used solely for the above-mentioned purpose. Thank you for your time and kind support. Yours sincerely, Aryan Kapoor Class 9-A, XYZ School	



EXERCISE

- Write a formal e-mail to the principal of your school requesting permission to organize a health and hygiene awareness campaign for students of the junior classes. The campaign is being planned by the Health and Wellness Club and aims to teach younger students about the importance of cleanliness, healthy eating, and personal hygiene through interactive activities and demonstrations.

Ans :

To	principal.modernschool@gmail.com
Subject	Request for Permission to Organize a Health and Hygiene Awareness Campaign
Dear Dr. Ramesh Gupta, I hope this message finds you in good health. I am writing on behalf of the Health and Wellness Club to seek your permission to organize a Health and Hygiene Awareness Campaign for students of Classes 5 to 8 on Wednesday, 5th April 2025, in the school hall. The campaign aims to educate younger students on the importance of handwashing, healthy eating habits, personal cleanliness, and staying physically active. We plan to conduct interactive activities, demonstrations, and a short quiz to make the session engaging and impactful. We believe this initiative will help build lifelong healthy habits among young students. Kindly grant us your approval and any guidance you deem necessary. Thanking you. Yours sincerely, Riya Sen President, Health and Wellness Club Modern School	

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

- Write a formal e-mail to the editor of a newspaper expressing your concern about the rampant misuse of social media by teenagers in today's digital age. Discuss the various harmful effects this misuse is having on their mental health, academic performance, and personal safety, and suggest concrete steps that parents, schools, and the government can take to promote responsible and safe online behaviour.

entrepreneur and founder of an award-winning start-up, on Friday, 11th April 2025, in the school auditorium.

The session aims to broaden students' perspectives on career options beyond engineering and medicine, and inspire them to think innovatively, embrace risk, and develop entrepreneurial skills. Ms. Jain has graciously agreed to address students of Classes 9 and 10. We are confident this talk will be an inspiring and eye-opening experience for our students. Kindly grant us your approval at your earliest convenience.

Thanking you.

Yours sincerely,
Kabir Singh
Secretary, Career Awareness Society
Progressive School

- 13.** Write a formal e-mail to the editor of a newspaper sharing your views on the harmful impact of junk food consumption on the health of school children in India. Discuss how the easy availability and aggressive marketing of unhealthy food products is contributing to this problem, and suggest measures that schools, parents, and the government should take to promote healthier eating habits among children.

Ans :

To	editor.healthymatters@gmail.com
Subject	Junk Food and School Children — Time to Take Decisive Action
Dear Ms. Vandana Iyer, I am writing to express my concern about the widespread consumption of junk food among school children in India and its severe impact on their health. Chips, sugary drinks, and fast food have become a staple for many young people, replacing nutritious home-cooked meals. This trend is leading to a sharp rise in childhood obesity, dental problems, nutritional deficiencies, and conditions such as Type 2 diabetes that were once associated only with adults. Poor diet also negatively affects concentration and academic performance. I urge schools to ban junk food in canteens and replace it with healthy options, parents to pack nutritious meals, and the government to regulate misleading food advertisements targeting children. Nutrition education must	

also be included in school curricula to help children make informed dietary choices.

I request you to kindly publish this letter to encourage community-wide action.

Yours sincerely,
Aditi Verma
Class 9-B, City International School

- 14.** Write a formal e-mail to the principal of your school requesting permission to form an eco-club that will work throughout the year on various environmental conservation projects. Describe the specific activities the club plans to undertake, explain how student participation will be organized, and highlight the long-term benefits this club will bring to the school and the surrounding community.

Ans :

To	principal.greenwoodschool@gmail.com
Subject	Request for Permission to Establish an Eco-Club at School
Dear Dr. Kavita Sharma, I hope this message finds you in good health. I am writing to seek your kind permission to establish an Eco-Club at our school, which will work throughout the year on meaningful environmental conservation projects. The club proposes to undertake activities such as composting kitchen waste, setting up a rainwater harvesting model, conducting monthly cleanliness drives, maintaining a school garden, and organizing awareness campaigns on issues such as plastic pollution and climate change. The club will be entirely student-run, with voluntary participation open to all classes. We believe it will not only improve the environmental footprint of our school but also develop a strong sense of ecological responsibility among students. Kindly grant us your approval and guidance to set the club in motion. Thanking you. Yours sincerely, Ritika Mehta Class 9-A Greenwood School	

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

particularly vulnerable, and hospital admissions for pollution-related illnesses have increased significantly in recent years.

I urge the government to enforce stricter vehicular emission norms, promote electric public transport, ban crop burning, and increase urban green cover. Citizens must also do their part by reducing private vehicle use and adopting cleaner fuels.

I request you to publish this letter and help amplify this critical message.

Yours sincerely,

Rahul Sharma

Class 9-A, Kendriya Vidyalaya

5. Write a formal e-mail to the head of a local sports academy requesting them to consider providing free coaching to underprivileged children in your locality who show exceptional talent in sports but cannot afford professional training. Explain the importance of this initiative for the community and describe the kind of support your organization is willing to provide to make this collaboration successful.

Ans :

To	head.championssportsacademy@gmail.com
Subject	Request to Provide Free Coaching to Underprivileged Talented Children
Dear Mr. Vikram Singh, I hope this e-mail finds you well. I am writing on behalf of the Youth Empowerment Society to request your esteemed academy to consider offering free sports coaching to underprivileged children in our locality who demonstrate exceptional talent but lack financial resources. We have identified several children aged between 10 and 15 years who show remarkable potential in athletics, football, and cricket but are unable to afford professional coaching. With the right guidance and training, these children could excel at state and national levels. Your academy's outstanding reputation and expertise make it the ideal platform to nurture such talent. We would be happy to assist with identification, documentation, and coordination. Kindly consider this humble request and let us know your decision. Thanking you. Yours sincerely, Meera Kapoor Coordinator, Youth Empowerment Society	

6. Write a formal e-mail to the principal of your school requesting permission to organize a first-aid and emergency response training session for senior students. The session is proposed to be conducted in collaboration with a local hospital and aims to equip students with life-saving skills. Provide details about the proposed date, venue, and the topics to be covered during the training.

Ans :

To	principal.brightfutureschool@gmail.com
Subject	Request for Permission to Organize First-Aid Training Session
Dear Dr. Priya Nair, I hope this message finds you well. I am writing on behalf of the Student Safety Committee to seek your permission to organize a First-Aid and Emergency Response Training Session for students of Classes 9 and 10, in collaboration with the City Care Hospital. The session is proposed for Saturday, 29th March 2025, from 9:00 a.m. to 12:00 p.m. in the school gymnasium. Trained medical professionals from the hospital will demonstrate techniques such as CPR, handling fractures, treating burns, and responding to choking incidents. This training will equip students with life-saving skills that could prove invaluable in real emergencies. The hospital has confirmed their availability. Kindly grant us your approval to proceed with the planning. Thanking you. Yours sincerely, Aarav Sharma Head Boy Bright Future School	

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



7. Write a formal e-mail to the editor of a newspaper presenting your views on the urgent need to modernize public libraries in your city to make them more appealing and accessible to young people. Discuss why public libraries are losing their relevance today and suggest specific improvements that authorities can make to revive a culture of reading among the youth.

Ans :

To	editor.sundaytribune@gmail.com
Subject	Reviving the Reading Culture — The Need to Modernize Public Libraries
Dear Mr. Rajan Mehta, I am writing to draw attention to the urgent need for modernizing public libraries in our city to reignite a love for reading among the youth. In an age dominated by smartphones and streaming platforms, traditional libraries are largely being ignored due to their outdated infrastructure and limited resources. A thriving reading culture is essential for intellectual growth, improved language skills, and the development of empathy and critical thinking. However, most young people today find public libraries unappealing due to limited book collections, poor lighting, absence of digital resources, and inconvenient timings. I suggest that authorities invest in digital catalogues, e-book sections, comfortable reading spaces, and extended operational hours. Schools could also organize regular library visits to build reading habits from a young age. Kindly publish this letter to initiate a wider discussion on this important matter. Yours sincerely, Priya Sinha Class 9-A, St. Mary's School	

8. Write a formal e-mail to the principal of your school requesting permission to organize a fundraiser to collect donations for the victims of a recent devastating flood in a neighbouring state. Explain the purpose of the fundraiser, how the collected funds will be used, and describe the method through which donations will be collected from students, teachers, and parents.

Ans :

To	principal.xyzschool@gmail.com
Subject	Request for Permission to Organize a Flood Relief Fundraiser
Dear Dr. Ramesh Gupta, I hope this message finds you well. I am writing on behalf of the Social Service Club to seek your kind permission to organize a Flood Relief Fundraiser at our school from 10th to 12th April 2025 to support the victims of the recent devastating floods in Assam. We plan to collect monetary donations from students, teachers, and parents through	

donation boxes placed in each classroom and the school foyer. The entire amount collected will be transferred to the Prime Minister's Relief Fund on behalf of our school.

We believe this initiative will cultivate compassion and a sense of social responsibility among our students. Kindly grant us your approval and any guidance you may wish to share.

Thanking you.

Yours sincerely,

Riya Mehta

President, Social Service Club

XYZ School

9. Write a formal e-mail to the editor of a newspaper sharing your views on the urgent need to make roads safer for pedestrians and cyclists in Indian cities. Highlight the dangers they face daily due to poor infrastructure and reckless driving, and recommend specific measures that municipal authorities and the government should implement immediately to protect the lives of the most vulnerable road users.

Ans :

To	editor.dailypost@gmail.com
Subject	Making Indian Roads Safer — An Urgent Need for Pedestrians and Cyclists
Dear Mr. Suresh Pillai, I am writing to highlight a matter of serious public concern — the alarming lack of safe infrastructure for pedestrians and cyclists on Indian roads. Despite being the most vulnerable road users, they are routinely ignored in urban planning and traffic management. Broken footpaths, encroached pavements, absence of dedicated cycling tracks, and reckless driving by motorists put the lives of pedestrians and cyclists at risk every single day. Tragic accidents are reported regularly, yet little systemic change follows. I strongly recommend that municipal authorities build wide, unobstructed footpaths, dedicate lanes for cyclists, install proper pedestrian crossings with signals, and enforce strict penalties for vehicles parking on pavements. Campaigns promoting road safety etiquette must also be conducted regularly. I hope this letter encourages the concerned authorities to act swiftly. Yours sincerely, Tara Kapoor Class 9-B, DAV School	

10. Write a formal e-mail to the principal of your school requesting permission to install a student suggestion box in the school corridor. Explain why such a platform is necessary for student well-being, how it will function, and how the feedback collected will be used constructively to improve various aspects of school life for all students.

Ans :

To	principal.newhorizonsschool@gmail.com
Subject	Request for Permission to Install a Student Suggestion Box
Dear Dr. Anand Verma, I hope this e-mail finds you in good health. I am writing to propose and seek your permission to install a Student Suggestion Box in the school corridor, through which students can anonymously share feedback, concerns, and creative ideas for improving various aspects of school life. Many students hesitate to voice their opinions directly due to shyness or fear of judgement. A suggestion box would provide a safe and inclusive channel for all students to contribute meaningfully to school improvement. Suggestions collected could be reviewed monthly by the student council and relevant staff. We believe this initiative will strengthen student-administration trust and create a more student-friendly environment. Kindly consider our proposal and grant your approval. Thanking you. Yours sincerely, Ananya Mehta Head Girl New Horizons School	

Ans :

To	editor.expresstimes@gmail.com
Subject	Food Wastage in India — A Crisis That Demands Immediate Attention
Dear Mr. Arun Joshi, I am writing to draw attention to the deeply troubling issue of food wastage in our country. India wastes millions of tonnes of food every year, even as a significant portion of its population goes to bed hungry. This paradox demands urgent reflection and action. Food is wasted at every stage — from farms where unsold produce rots, to lavish weddings and events where enormous quantities are discarded. This not only represents a moral failure but also strains water, land, and energy resources used in food production. I suggest that the government introduce policies incentivizing food donation, restaurants be required to package leftover food for redistribution, schools conduct awareness programmes, and community refrigerators be established in public spaces. Each one of us must also commit to wasting less food daily. I request you to publish this letter to raise awareness on this pressing issue. Yours sincerely, Rohan Sharma Class 9-A, Greenfield School	

12. Write a formal e-mail to the principal of your school requesting permission to organize a motivational talk by a young and successful entrepreneur for students of Classes 9 and 10. Explain how this talk will help students broaden their understanding of career options beyond traditional fields and inspire them to think creatively and develop an entrepreneurial mindset from an early age.

Ans :

To	principal.progressiveschool@gmail.com
Subject	Request for Permission to Organize a Motivational Talk by a Young Entrepreneur
Dear Dr. Sunita Mehta, I hope this e-mail finds you well. I am writing on behalf of the Career Awareness Society to seek your permission to organize a Motivational Talk by Ms. Rhea Jain, a successful young	

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



11. Write a formal e-mail to the editor of a newspaper expressing your deep concern about the shocking amount of food that is wasted in India every year. Highlight the moral, economic, and environmental dimensions of this problem, and suggest practical steps that individuals, restaurants, event organizers, and the government can take to significantly reduce food wastage in the country.

Ans :

To	editor.morningherald@gmail.com
Subject	Misuse of Social Media by Teenagers — A Growing Concern
Dear Mr. Anil Sharma, I am writing to express my concern regarding the rampant misuse of social media platforms by teenagers in our society. Cyberbullying, spreading misinformation, excessive usage leading to addiction, and exposure to inappropriate content have become disturbingly common problems. This misuse is not only affecting the mental health and academic performance of young people but also creating dangerous situations involving privacy breaches and online predators. Many teenagers are unaware of the long-term consequences of their digital footprint. I suggest that schools introduce mandatory digital literacy programmes, parents actively monitor their children's online activity, and social media companies strengthen age verification and content moderation. Government regulations regarding harmful online content must also be strictly enforced. I request you to kindly publish this letter to raise awareness among parents, educators, and policymakers. Yours sincerely, Aryan Kapoor Class 9-B, XYZ School	

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



3. Write a formal e-mail to the principal of your school requesting permission to set up a peer tutoring programme where senior students voluntarily help junior students with subjects they find difficult. Explain how the programme will be structured, why it will be beneficial for both senior and junior students, and how it will be conducted without disrupting regular school activities.

Ans :

To	principal.lakeviewschool@gmail.com
Subject	Request for Permission to Establish a Peer Tutoring Programme
Dear Dr. Meena Iyer, I hope this e-mail finds you well. I am writing to propose and seek your permission to establish a Peer Tutoring Programme at our school, wherein students of Classes 10 and 11 would voluntarily assist students of Classes 6 to 8 in subjects they find challenging. The programme would operate during free periods and lunch breaks, ensuring no disruption to regular classes. It will benefit both parties — junior students will receive personalized academic support, while senior students will strengthen their own understanding and develop leadership skills. We are prepared to submit a detailed plan, including a schedule and list of volunteer tutors, upon your approval. Kindly consider this proposal and guide us accordingly. Thanking you. Yours sincerely, Sneha Mehta School Prefect Lakeview School	

4. Write a formal e-mail to the editor of a magazine sharing your views on how the rapidly increasing air pollution in Indian cities is causing serious damage to public health and the environment. Using specific examples of its impact, suggest at least three concrete measures that the government, industries, and ordinary citizens must urgently adopt to tackle this growing crisis.

Ans :

To	editor.greenearthmag@gmail.com
Subject	The Devastating Impact of Air Pollution on Public Health
Dear Ms. Nandita Roy, I am writing to share my deep concern over the rapidly worsening air quality in our cities and its devastating impact on public health. According to recent reports, several Indian cities consistently rank among the most polluted in the world, making clean air a luxury rather than a right. Rising air pollution is causing a sharp increase in respiratory diseases such as asthma, bronchitis, and lung cancer. Children and the elderly are	

15. Write a formal e-mail to the editor of a national newspaper presenting your views on the critical importance of introducing financial literacy as a part of school education in India. Explain what financial literacy means, why most young people lack it despite completing their schooling, and suggest practical ways in which schools and educational authorities can address this serious gap in the current curriculum.

Ans :

To	editor.financialtimes@gmail.com
Subject	Financial Literacy in Schools — An Investment in Our Children's Future
Dear Mr. Deepak Malhotra, I am writing to put forward my strong views on the urgent need to introduce financial literacy as a part of school education in India. Most young people today enter adulthood with little or no understanding of budgeting, saving, investing, or managing debt, leading to poor financial decisions later in life. Basic concepts such as the value of savings, how interest works, the importance of insurance, and the dangers of impulsive spending are not currently taught in schools. As a result, many adults remain financially vulnerable despite earning reasonable incomes. I urge educational boards to include a dedicated financial literacy module in the curriculum from Class 6 onwards. Schools could also invite banking professionals to conduct workshops. Developing financially informed citizens will directly contribute to a stronger and more stable economy. I hope this letter encourages action from policymakers and educators alike. Yours sincerely, Kabir Sharma Class 9-A, National Public School	

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

16. Write a formal e-mail to the director of a city museum requesting them to organize a special guided educational visit for students of your school. Provide details about the number of students, proposed date, and the grade levels involved, and explain how such a visit will enrich the students' understanding of history and culture beyond what is taught in the classroom.

Ans :

To	director.citymuseum@gmail.com
Subject	Request for an Educational Visit for School Students
Dear Mr. Ashok Trivedi, I hope this e-mail finds you well. I am writing on behalf of XYZ School to request your kind permission to organize a special educational visit to the City Museum for students of Classes 9 and 10. We propose the visit for Saturday, 5th April 2025, between 10:00 a.m. and 1:00 p.m. Approximately 80 students accompanied by six teachers will be visiting. We would greatly appreciate it if a knowledgeable guide could be arranged to walk students through the exhibits and explain their historical and cultural significance. We believe such a visit will greatly enrich students' understanding of our region's heritage beyond the classroom. Kindly confirm the feasibility of this visit and let us know any entry requirements or booking procedures. Thanking you. Yours sincerely, Riya Sharma Class 9 A, XYZ School	

17. Write a formal e-mail to the editor of a magazine expressing your views on how the current examination system in India causes excessive and unnecessary stress among school students. Discuss the drawbacks of a purely marks-based evaluation system and suggest alternative, more holistic methods of assessing student learning that focus on understanding, creativity, and overall development.

Ans :

To	editor.educationtoday@gmail.com
Subject	Rethinking Examinations — Reducing Stress and Measuring Learning Effectively
Dear Ms. Anita Bose, I am writing to share my views on a concern that affects millions of students across the country — the overwhelming stress caused by the current examination system. High-stakes annual examinations that test memorization rather than understanding have created	

CHAPTER 15

FACTUAL DESCRIPTION

1. INTRODUCTION

A factual description is a piece of writing that presents real, accurate, and objective information about a person, place, object, event, or process. Unlike creative or imaginative writing, a factual description does not include personal opinions, feelings, or exaggerations. It relies entirely on facts, data, and observable details to give the reader a clear and complete picture of the subject being described. For example, describing a railway station by mentioning its location, facilities, number of platforms, and daily passenger footfall is a factual description. It tells the reader exactly what the place is like based on real information.

2. KEY FEATURES OF A FACTUAL DESCRIPTION

A good factual description has the following important characteristics:

1. **Accuracy** : All information included must be correct and based on real facts. There is no room for guessing, exaggerating, or making things up.
2. **Objectivity** : The writer must present facts without letting personal opinions or emotions influence the writing. The tone remains neutral and informative throughout.
3. **Clarity** : The language used must be simple, direct, and easy to understand. The reader should be able to form a clear mental picture of the subject without any confusion.
4. **Logical Order** : Information should be presented in a well-organized manner — either from general to specific, from the most important detail to the least, or in a sequence that makes the description easy to follow.
5. **Relevant Details** : Only information that is directly related to the subject should be included. Unnecessary or irrelevant details must be avoided to keep the description focused and within the word limit.

6. **Formal Language** : A factual description uses formal, standard language. Slang, casual expressions, and emotional language are avoided.

WHAT CAN BE DESCRIBED?

A factual description can be written about a wide variety of subjects. For your examination, the most common subjects are:

1. **A place** : a monument, market, railway station, park, school, hospital, hill station
2. **A person** : a historical figure, a sports personality, a scientist, a freedom fighter
3. **An object** : a gadget, a machine, a building, an instrument
4. **An event** : a festival, a sports meet, an annual day, a natural disaster
5. **A process** : how something works or how something is made

4. FORMAT OF A FACTUAL DESCRIPTION

A factual description must follow a clear and organized structure.

Title (A short, specific title that clearly identifies the subject)

Introduction (One short paragraph introducing the subject — what it is, where it is located, and why it is significant)

Body (One or two paragraphs covering all important factual details about the subject — history, features, functions, significance, statistics, etc.)

Conclusion (One short paragraph summarizing the importance of the subject or ending with a relevant factual remark)

5. POINTS TO REMEMBER

Before you begin writing a factual description, go through these important points carefully to avoid common mistakes:

20. Write a formal e-mail to the principal of your school requesting permission to conduct a photography exhibition in the school premises. The exhibition, organized by the Photography Club, will display students' photographs on the theme "Life in Our City" and aims to celebrate visual storytelling and artistic expression among students. Provide relevant details about the proposed dates, venue, and the nature of the photographs to be displayed.

Ans :

To	principal.creativemindsschool@gmail.com
Subject	Request for Permission to Organize a Student Photography Exhibition
Dear Dr. Rekha Pillai, I hope this message finds you in good health. I am writing on behalf of the Photography Club to seek your kind permission to organize a Student Photography Exhibition on the theme "Life in Our City" on Friday and Saturday, 25th and 26th April 2025, in the school corridor and main hall. Students from Classes 8 to 10 have captured compelling photographs depicting everyday urban life — markets, festivals, street scenes, architecture, and people — over the past two months. The exhibition will display approximately 60 photographs, with short captions written by the photographers themselves. We believe this event will celebrate student creativity, encourage visual storytelling, and provide an inspiring experience for the entire school community. Kindly grant us your approval and any suggestions to make the exhibition a success. Thanking you. Yours sincerely, Aryan Mehta President, Photography Club Creative Minds School	



enormous pressure on students, adversely affecting both their mental health and genuine learning.

Incidents of exam-related anxiety, depression, and in extreme cases, self-harm, underscore the urgent need to rethink how we evaluate students. The current system often rewards rote learning over creativity, problem-solving, and critical thinking.

I recommend that schools adopt continuous assessment methods, project-based evaluations, and open-book tests to measure real understanding. Counselling support must also be made readily available in all schools, and parents must be educated to prioritize learning over marks.

I request you to publish this letter to encourage a national dialogue on meaningful educational reform.

Yours sincerely,
Priya Mehta
Class 9-B, Scholars Academy

18. Write a formal e-mail to the principal of your school requesting permission to organize a workshop on cybersecurity and online safety for students of Classes 8 to 10. Explain why this topic is especially relevant and important for today's school students, describe what the workshop will cover, and mention the expert who will be conducting the session.

Ans :

To	principal.techsmartschool@gmail.com
Subject	Request for Permission to Organize a Cybersecurity and Online Safety Workshop

Dear Dr. Suresh Nair,
I hope this e-mail finds you well. I am writing on behalf of the Technology Club to seek your permission to organize a Cybersecurity and Online Safety Workshop for students of Classes 8 to 10 on Saturday, 19th April 2025, in the computer laboratory.

The workshop, to be conducted by a certified cybersecurity professional, will cover essential topics such as identifying phishing scams, creating strong passwords, protecting personal data online, and recognizing the dangers of sharing private information on social media.

Given the increasing amount of time students spend online, we believe this session is not

only timely but essential. Kindly grant us your approval and let us know if any specific arrangements are required.

Thanking you.

Yours sincerely,
Aryan Singh
President, Technology Club
TechSmart School

19. Write a formal e-mail to the editor of a newspaper presenting your views on how rapid and unplanned urban development across Indian cities is leading to the destruction of green spaces, parks, and natural habitats. Highlight the serious environmental and health consequences of this trend and suggest measures to ensure that future urban development follows a more sustainable and nature-friendly approach.

Ans :

To	editor.urbanwatch@gmail.com
Subject	Vanishing Green Spaces — The Hidden Cost of Unplanned Urban Development

Dear Mr. Ravi Chandra,

I am writing to raise concern about the rapid and largely unplanned urban development that is systematically destroying the green spaces and natural habitats of our cities. Parks, forests, wetlands, and open grounds are being continuously replaced by concrete structures, leaving urban residents and wildlife with no breathing space.

The consequences are severe — rising urban temperatures, increased flooding due to reduced water absorption, worsening air quality, and the disappearance of local flora and fauna. Mental health research also consistently links the loss of green spaces to increased stress and anxiety among urban dwellers.

I urge city planners to make green space preservation a non-negotiable part of all development approvals, increase tree cover along roads, restore urban wetlands, and involve communities in maintaining neighbourhood parks. Sustainable development must be our guiding principle, not unchecked construction.

I hope this letter draws the attention of both citizens and authorities to this growing crisis.

Yours sincerely,
Sneha Sharma
Class 9-A, Eco Scholars School

1. A factual description is based only on real facts — never use expressions like “I think” or “I feel.” Do not include personal opinions or exaggerated statements of any kind.
2. Always start with a short, underlined title. Your first sentence should directly introduce the subject — never begin with “In this description I will write about...”
3. Write in clear paragraphs — an introduction, two or three body paragraphs, and a conclusion. Never write everything together in one big block.
4. End with a short conclusion that tells the reader why the subject is important or significant. A good ending makes the description feel finished and complete.
5. Write your information in a proper order — start with general details and then move to specific ones. Do not jump from one unrelated point to another.
6. Always include exact details like dates, years, heights, distances, and numbers wherever possible. Writing “stands 73 metres tall” is always better than writing “is very tall.”
7. Keep your description within 120–150 words. Do not repeat the same information — every sentence should add something new.
8. Use simple present tense for places and things that exist today, and simple past tense for historical events or people who are no longer alive.
9. Do not use informal words like “awesome,” “cool,” or “amazing.” Use proper words like “remarkable,” “significant,” or “well-known” instead.
10. Use linking words like ‘furthermore, moreover, however,’ and ‘in addition’ to connect your sentences. This makes your writing smooth and easy to read.

6. USEFUL PHRASES FOR FACTUAL DESCRIPTION

These phrases will help you write smoothly and professionally:

- ...is located in/situated in/found in...
- ...was established/built/founded in...
- ...covers an area of/spans over...
- ...is known for/is famous for/is renowned for...
- ...attracts thousands of visitors every year...
- ...is one of the most important/significant/well-known...

- ...serves as a major center for...
- ...is visited by people from all parts of the country...
- ...has been recognized/declared as...
- ...plays a vital role in...

7. SOME IMPORTANT EXAMPLES

1. Your school social science club is preparing a biography wall of world leaders. Write a factual description of Narendra Modi, the Prime Minister of India, in 120-150 words.



Hints: Born 17 September 1950 in Vadnagar, Gujarat — 14th Prime Minister of India — previously Chief Minister of Gujarat (2001–2014) — known for “Digital India” and “Swachh Bharat Abhiyan” — longest-serving non-Congress Prime Minister.

Ans :

Narendra Modi: The 14th Prime Minister of India

Narendra Damodardas Modi is a prominent Indian statesman currently serving as the 14th Prime Minister of India. Born on 17 September 1950 in Vadnagar, Gujarat, he rose from a humble background to become one of the most significant political figures in contemporary India.

Before assuming his role as Prime Minister in May 2014, he served as the Chief Minister of Gujarat for four consecutive terms from 2001 to 2014. His administration is marked by major national initiatives such as “Digital India,” aimed at increasing technological access, and the “Swachh Bharat Abhiyan,” a nationwide cleanliness campaign. He is also recognized for economic reforms like the implementation of the Goods and Services Tax (GST).

Mr. Modi holds the distinction of being the

EXERCISE

1. Your school has asked students to submit a write-up for the annual school magazine. You have been asked to write a factual description of the Taj Mahal, one of the Seven Wonders of the World, for this purpose. Using the hints provided below and your own knowledge, write a factual description of the Taj Mahal in 120–150 words.

Hints: Located in Agra, Uttar Pradesh — built by Emperor Shah Jahan — in memory of Mumtaz Mahal — construction completed in 1653 — white marble — UNESCO World Heritage Site — symbol of love — millions of tourists annually

Ans :

The Taj Mahal

The Taj Mahal is one of the most celebrated architectural wonders of the world, situated on the southern bank of the river Yamuna in Agra, Uttar Pradesh. It was commissioned by the Mughal Emperor Shah Jahan in memory of his beloved wife, Mumtaz Mahal, who passed away in 1631.

Construction of the Taj Mahal began in 1632 and was completed in 1653, employing over twenty thousand skilled artisans and craftsmen from across India and Central Asia.

The monument is built entirely of pristine white marble, which changes its appearance subtly with the shifting light of the sun and moon. Its central dome rises to a height of 73 metres and is surrounded by four elegant minarets.

The Taj Mahal was designated a UNESCO World Heritage Site in 1983 and is widely regarded as the finest example of Mughal architecture. It attracts more than seven million visitors every year, making it one of the most visited monuments in the world.

2. A national newspaper is running a series of articles on important rivers of India and their significance. You have been invited to contribute a factual description of the River Ganga for this series. Using the hints given below and your own knowledge, write a factual description of the River Ganga in 120–150 words.

Hints: Originates from Gangotri Glacier, Uttarakhand — 2,525 km long — flows through Uttarakhand, UP, Bihar, West Bengal — holy river — Varanasi, Haridwar, Allahabad — Ganga Action Plan — pollution — National River of India — Namami Gange programme

Ans :

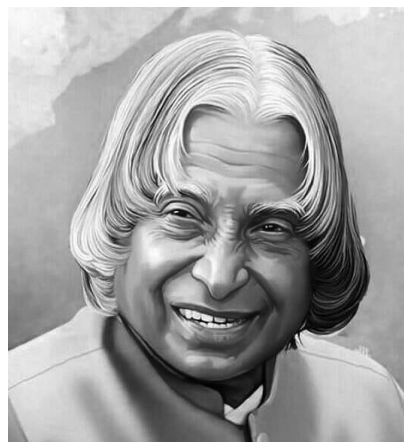
The River Ganga

The River Ganga, declared the National River of India, is one of the most important and sacred rivers in the country. It originates from the Gangotri Glacier in the Uttarkashi district of Uttarakhand, at an altitude of approximately 3,892 metres above sea level. Stretching over a length of 2,525 kilometres, the Ganga flows through the states of Uttarakhand, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Jharkhand, and West Bengal before emptying into the Bay of Bengal near Sagar Island.

The Ganga basin is home to more than 400 million people, making it one of the most densely populated river basins in the world. The river is of immense religious significance to Hindus, who consider it sacred and purifying. Major pilgrimage cities such as Haridwar, Varanasi, and Prayagraj are situated on its banks and attract millions of pilgrims every year.

The Ganga supports a rich aquatic ecosystem, including the endangered Gangetic River Dolphin, which is also the National Aquatic Animal of India. However, the river faces severe pollution from industrial waste, sewage, and religious activities. The Government of India has launched the Namami Gange Programme to restore and conserve this vital river for future generations.

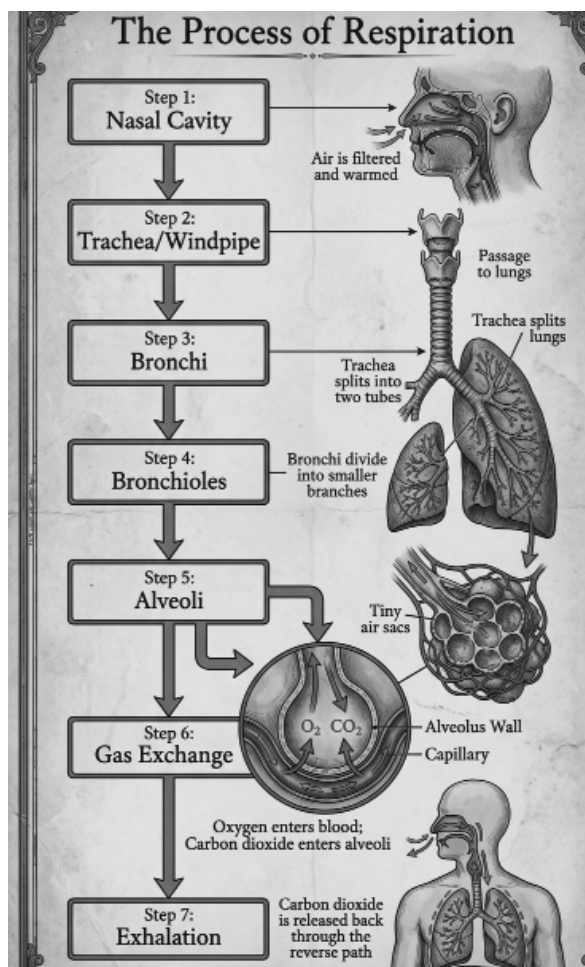
3. Your school is organizing an inter-school quiz competition on famous Indian scientists. As part of the preparation material, your teacher has asked you to write a factual description of Dr. A.P.J. Abdul Kalam for the school notice board. Using the hints given below and your own knowledge, write a factual description of Dr. Kalam in 120–150 words.



entries based on creativity, scientific accuracy, and practical utility.

The event provided a platform for young scientists to share ideas and discuss solutions for environmental challenges. It culminated in a prize-winning ceremony where the “Clean Energy Project” from Silver Oaks School was awarded the first prize for its scalability and cost-effectiveness.

- Study the flowchart illustrating the process of human respiration. Write a factual, step-by-step description of how humans breathe, using the present tense and passive voice (120–150 words).



Ans :

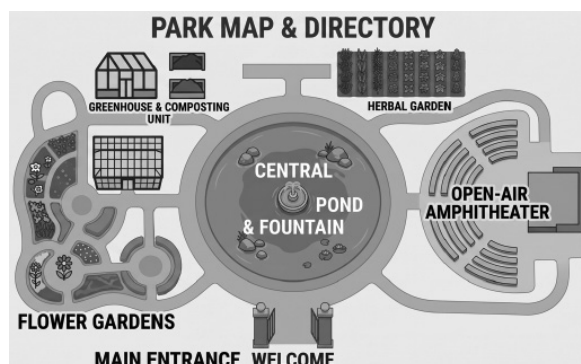
The Process of Respiration in Humans

Respiration is a vital biological process that involves the exchange of gases between the human body and the environment. The process is initiated when air is inhaled through the nasal cavity, where it is filtered and warmed. This filtered air is then transported through the trachea, or windpipe, into the thoracic cavity.

The trachea subsequently splits into two primary tubes called the bronchi, one entering each lung. Inside the lungs, the bronchi further divide into smaller branches known as bronchioles, which terminate in tiny air sacs called alveoli. At this stage, the crucial gas exchange takes place: oxygen is absorbed from the inhaled air into the bloodstream, while carbon dioxide is transferred from the blood into the alveoli.

The process is completed during exhalation, when the carbon dioxide is expelled from the body following the reverse pathway.

- You are the School Captain. Below is the layout map of the newly inaugurated “School Eco-Park.” Write a factual description of the park for the school newsletter.



Ans :

Layout and Features of the School Eco-Park

The newly inaugurated School Eco-Park is a multi-functional green space designed for both education and recreation. As per the layout map, the park is rectangular and features a centrally located circular pond, which serves as the focal point of the campus.

From the main entrance at the southern end, paths lead to the western and eastern wings. The western side is occupied by a dense Botanical Garden featuring diverse plant species, while the eastern side houses an Open-air Amphitheater for school gatherings. The northern section of the park is dedicated to sustainability and research, containing a Composting Unit and a specialized Herbal Garden. All sections are interconnected by a network of paved walking tracks.

In conclusion, the Eco-Park is logically organized to balance environmental conservation with student activities. The placement of the composting unit at the rear and the amphitheater near the entrance ensures a functional flow for visitors and students alike.

longest-serving non-Congress Prime Minister of India. His leadership style focuses on development and global diplomacy, making him a central figure in international politics today.

2. You visited the India Gate in New Delhi during your school trip. Your teacher has asked you to write a factual description of India Gate for the school magazine. Using the details given below and your own knowledge, write a factual description of India Gate in 120–150 words.

Hints: Located in New Delhi — war memorial — built in 1931 — designed by Sir Edwin Lutyens — 42 metres tall — made of sandstone — Amar Jawan Jyoti — dedicated to soldiers — Rajpath — popular tourist spot

Ans :

India Gate

India Gate is one of the most iconic landmarks of New Delhi, located at the eastern end of the Rajpath, in the heart of the capital city of India. It is a magnificent war memorial built in the memory of approximately 70,000 Indian soldiers who sacrificed their lives during the First World War and the Third Anglo-Afghan War.

Designed by the renowned British architect Sir Edwin Lutyens, India Gate was completed and inaugurated in the year 1931. Standing at an impressive height of 42 metres, the structure is built entirely of red and yellow sandstone. The names of thousands of fallen soldiers are inscribed on its walls as a mark of respect and remembrance.

At the base of India Gate burns the Amar Jawan Jyoti, an eternal flame lit in 1972 to honour the soldiers who died in the Indo-Pakistani War of 1971. India Gate attracts millions of tourists and visitors every year and serves as a symbol of national pride and sacrifice.

3. You are writing a review for a consumer electronics magazine. Write a factual description of a modern Chronograph Wristwatch.



Hints: Purpose and significance — physical components (dial, casing, straps) — internal mechanism (quartz/automatic) — additional features (stopwatch, water resistance) — utility.

Ans :

The Chronograph Wristwatch

A wristwatch is a portable timepiece designed to be worn around the wrist, serving as both a functional tool for timekeeping and a personal accessory. Among various types, the chronograph is a specific model that combines the functions of a standard display watch with those of a stopwatch.

The object consists of a circular stainless-steel casing that houses the internal movement, which is typically powered by a battery-operated quartz crystal or a self-winding mechanical system. The face, or dial, is protected by scratch-resistant sapphire glass and features three smaller sub-dials for measuring elapsed seconds, minutes, and hours. Two push-buttons on the side of the case control the timer functions. Most modern chronographs are equipped with luminescent hands for visibility in low light and are water-resistant up to a depth of 50 meters.

In conclusion, the chronograph wristwatch remains a highly valued instrument due to its precision and multi-functional capabilities. It serves as an essential tool for professionals who require accurate interval timing in various fields.

4. Your school hosted an Inter-School Science Exhibition. Write a factual description based on the event's proceedings.

Hints: Date and participants — theme: “Sustainable Future” — types of models (robotics, green energy) — judging criteria — importance of the event.

Ans :

Inter-School Science Exhibition: Sustainable Future

An Inter-School Science Exhibition was hosted at XYZ Global School on 22nd January. The event brought together 30 schools from across the city to showcase innovative projects under the theme “Sustainable Future.”

The exhibition featured over 100 models, focusing primarily on robotics, renewable energy sources, and waste management systems. Participants demonstrated working prototypes, such as solar-powered purifiers and AI-based crop monitoring tools. A panel of three professors from the local Institute of Technology judged the

Ans :

Shimla — The Queen of Hill Stations

Shimla, the capital city of Himachal Pradesh, is one of the most popular and picturesque hill stations in India. Situated at an altitude of approximately 2,206 metres above sea level in the lower Himalayas, the city enjoys a pleasant climate during summers and experiences heavy snowfall during the winter months, making it a year-round tourist destination.

During the British colonial period, Shimla served as the summer capital of British India, a status that greatly influenced its architecture and urban character. Many of its buildings, including the elegant Christ Church and the grand Viceregal Lodge, are fine examples of colonial Gothic architecture and continue to attract history enthusiasts from across the country.

The Mall Road, lined with shops, restaurants, and colonial-era buildings, is the social and commercial heart of the city. The famous Jakhu Temple, dedicated to Lord Hanuman, is another major landmark. Shimla is also well connected to Kalka by the UNESCO-recognized Kalka-Shimla Toy Railway, which winds through tunnels and bridges offering breathtaking views of the mountains. Adventure activities such as skiing, trekking, and ice skating further add to its charm.

The school campus is spread over five acres and is equipped with modern, well-ventilated classrooms, a well-stocked library containing over 15,000 books, fully equipped science laboratories, and a state-of-the-art computer centre. A large playground, a covered sports hall, and facilities for basketball, cricket, and athletics provide ample opportunity for physical development.

The school has consistently produced outstanding results in CBSE board examinations and has won numerous awards at inter-school competitions in academics, sports, and cultural activities. Beyond academics, the school places strong emphasis on value-based education, leadership development, and community service, nurturing students into responsible and compassionate citizens.



NODIA

10. Your English teacher has asked you to write a factual description of your school for a brochure being prepared to welcome new students and their parents in the upcoming academic session. Using the hints given below and your own knowledge, write a factual description of a school in 120–150 words.

Hints: Established school — location — number of students and teachers — well-equipped classrooms — library — science and computer labs — sports facilities — annual events — academic results — value-based education

Ans :

XYZ Senior Secondary School

XYZ Senior Secondary School is one of the most reputed educational institutions in the city, located at 45, Green Park Avenue, in the heart of the town. Established in 1985 and affiliated to the Central Board of Secondary Education (CBSE), the school has grown steadily over the decades and today caters to over 2,000 students from Classes 1 to 12, guided by a dedicated staff of 120 trained teachers.

Feature	Specification
Model	Class-Sync Educational Tablet
Display	10.1-inch IPS LCD, 1920x1200 resolution
Processor	Octa-Core 2.0 GHz
RAM/Storage	4GB RAM / 64GB Internal (expandable to 256GB)
Operating System	Android 13 (with restricted student interface)
Connectivity	Wi-Fi 6, Bluetooth 5.0
Battery	7000 mAh Li-Ion (approx. 10 hours battery life)
Camera	5MP Front (for online classes), 8MP Rear
Special Feature	Pre-loaded NCERT content; Anti-glare screen coating

Ans :

Technical Specifications of the Class-Sync Educational Tablet

The Class-Sync Educational Tablet is a device designed for digital learning, featuring a 10.1-inch IPS LCD display with a resolution of 1920x1200 pixels and an anti-glare screen coating. It operates on a 2.0 GHz Octa-Core processor supported by 4GB of RAM and 64GB of internal storage, which is expandable to 256GB.

The tablet runs on the Android 13 operating system, customized with a restricted student interface. Connectivity is provided through Wi-Fi 6 and Bluetooth 5.0. It is equipped with dual cameras: a 5MP front camera optimized for online classes and an 8MP rear camera. A 7000 mAh Li-Ion battery powers the device, offering approximately 10 hours of usage.

Additionally, the tablet comes pre-loaded with NCERT content, making it a specialized educational tool.

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



6. Your school music club is creating an educational pamphlet. Write a factual description of the Acoustic Guitar.



Hints: Definition — structural parts (hollow body, neck, fretboard, strings) — material (wood, steel/nylon) — mechanism of sound production — significance in music.

Ans :

The Acoustic Guitar

The acoustic guitar is a popular stringed musical instrument that produces sound through the vibration of its strings, amplified mechanically by a hollow wooden body. It is widely used across various genres of music, including folk, classical, and rock.

The instrument is primarily composed of three sections: the headstock, the neck, and the body. The hollow body, usually made of tonewoods like spruce or mahogany, acts as a resonating chamber. Stretched across the length of the guitar are six strings made of steel or nylon, which are attached to tuning pegs at the headstock and a bridge on the body. When a string is plucked, the vibration is transferred through the bridge to the soundboard, creating audible sound waves that exit through a central sound hole. The fretboard on the neck allows the player to change the pitch by pressing strings at different intervals.

Ultimately, the acoustic guitar is recognized for its portability and versatile range. It remains a fundamental instrument in both solo performances and orchestral arrangements worldwide.

7. Your school recently celebrated its Annual Sports Day. As the Sports Captain, write a factual description of the event for the school's archives.
Hints: Date and venue — inauguration by Chief Guest — march past — track and field events — prize distribution — Principal's closing speech.

Ans :

Annual Sports Day Celebration

The Annual Sports Day of ABC Public School was held on 15th October 2025 at the school's sprawling sports complex. The event was organized to promote physical fitness and sportsmanship

Hints: Born 15th October 1931 — Rameswaram, Tamil Nadu — aerospace scientist — ISRO and DRDO — Pokhran nuclear tests 1998 — Missile Man of India — 11th President of India — Bharat Ratna 1997 — passed away 27th July 2015*

Ans :

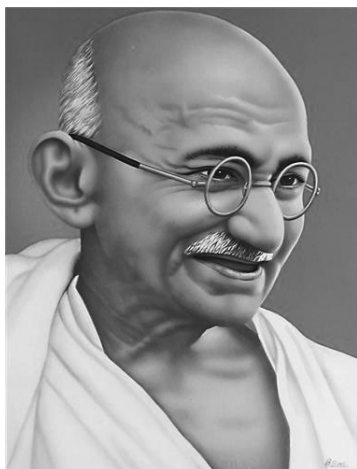
Dr. A.P.J. Abdul Kalam — The Missile Man of India

Dr. Avul Pakir Jainulabdeen Abdul Kalam, popularly known as the Missile Man of India, was one of the most distinguished scientists and statesmen the country has ever produced. He was born on 15th October 1931 in Rameswaram, a small town in Tamil Nadu, into a humble family.

Dr. Kalam dedicated the early decades of his career to India's space and defence research programmes. He made invaluable contributions to the Indian Space Research Organisation (ISRO) and the Defence Research and Development Organisation (DRDO), playing a pivotal role in the development of India's first satellite launch vehicle and its ballistic missile programme. He was also a key figure in India's Pokhran nuclear tests conducted in 1998.

Dr. Kalam served as the 11th President of India from 2002 to 2007 and was awarded the Bharat Ratna, India's highest civilian honour, in 1997. He passed away on 27th July 2015 and continues to inspire millions of young Indians through his life and vision.

4. Your class teacher has asked you to prepare a factual description of Mahatma Gandhi for a special assembly being organized on the occasion of Gandhi Jayanti. Using the hints given below and your own knowledge, write a factual description of Mahatma Gandhi in 120–150 words.



Hints: Born 2nd October 1869 — Porbandar, Gujarat — studied law in London — South Africa — non-violence and truth — Satyagraha — Non-Cooperation Movement — Salt March 1930 — Father of the Nation — assassinated 30th January 1948 — inspiration worldwide

Ans :

Mahatma Gandhi — The Father of the Nation

Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi, reverently known as Mahatma Gandhi and the Father of the Nation, was one of the greatest leaders and freedom fighters in the history of the world. He was born on 2nd October 1869 in Porbandar, a coastal town in the present-day state of Gujarat. After completing his early education in India, he travelled to London to study law and was called to the Bar in 1891.

Gandhi's journey as a social and political activist began in South Africa, where he spent over two decades fighting against racial discrimination. It was here that he first developed and practised Satyagraha, his powerful philosophy of non-violent resistance based on truth and peaceful protest.

Upon returning to India, Gandhi led several landmark movements against British colonial rule, including the Non-Cooperation Movement, the Civil Disobedience Movement, and the historic Salt March of 1930.

His unwavering commitment to non-violence and justice inspired millions across India and the world. Mahatma Gandhi was tragically assassinated on 30th January 1948. His teachings continue to inspire leaders, activists, and peacemakers around the globe to this day.

5. You are writing a report comparing technological tools for digital learning. Use the data in the chart to write a factual description of the "Class-Sync Tablet" in 120–150 words.



scholars, students, and bibliophiles.

The event served as a major center for cultural exchange and the promotion of reading habits. It concluded with a valedictory ceremony where publishers were recognized for their contributions to digital and print media.

11. The table below compares the features of two popular library apps used by students. Write a factual description highlighting the similarities and differences.

Feature	E-Lib App	BookWorm App
Monthly Subscription	₹150	₹200
Book Database	50,000+	80,000+
Offline Reading	Available	Available
Audiobooks	Not Available	Available
User Rating	4.2/5	4.7/5

Ans :

Comparative Analysis of E-Library Applications

The provided table offers a comparative study of two digital reading platforms: E-Lib App and BookWorm App, based on five key parameters.

While both applications provide the essential feature of offline reading, they differ significantly in cost and content. E-Lib is the more economical option with a monthly subscription of ₹150, compared to ₹200 for BookWorm.

However, BookWorm offers a much larger database of over 80,000 books, whereas E-Lib hosts approximately 50,000 titles. A major distinction is the availability of audiobooks, which is exclusive to the BookWorm App.

Furthermore, the user experience seems to favor BookWorm, which holds a higher rating of 4.7/5 against E-Lib's 4.2/5. In summary, while E-Lib serves as a budget-friendly choice for standard reading, BookWorm provides a more comprehensive and highly-rated service including multimedia features, justifying its higher price point.

12. As the editor of the school sports magazine, write a factual description of the former Indian cricket captain, Mahendra Singh Dhoni, in 120-150 words.

NODIA



Hints: Born 7 July 1981 in Ranchi — right-handed batsman and wicket-keeper — led India to 2007 T20 World Cup and 2011 ODI World Cup victories — known as “Captain Cool” — retired from international cricket in 2020 — recipient of Padma Bhushan and Major Dhyan Chand Khel Ratna.

Ans :

Mahendra Singh Dhoni: The Iconic Cricketer

Mahendra Singh Dhoni, popularly known as M.S. Dhoni, is a former Indian international cricketer who captained the Indian national team in limited-overs formats from 2007 to 2017. Born on 7 July 1981 in Ranchi, Bihar (now in Jharkhand), he is widely regarded as one of the greatest wicket-keeper-batsmen and captains in the history of the sport.

Under his leadership, India achieved significant milestones, including winning the inaugural 2007 ICC World Twenty20, the 2011 ICC Cricket World Cup, and the 2013 ICC Champions Trophy. Known for his calm temperament under pressure, he earned the nickname “Captain Cool.” Over his career, he scored over 10,000 runs in One Day Internationals (ODIs) and holds numerous records for wicket-keeping dismissals.

In recognition of his contributions to sports, he was awarded the Padma Bhushan, the Padma Shri, and the Major Dhyan Chand Khel Ratna. Although he retired from international cricket in August 2020, he continues to be a massive influence in the Indian Premier League (IPL).

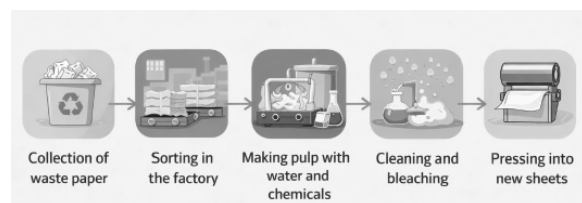
13. During your summer vacation, you visited the Jim Corbett National Park in Uttarakhand with your family. After returning, your English teacher asked you to write a factual description of Jim Corbett National Park for the school magazine. Using the hints given below and your

among students from Classes 6 to 12.

The day commenced at 9:00 AM with the arrival of the Chief Guest, a renowned national athlete, followed by the traditional lighting of the torch. This was followed by an impressive march past by the four school houses. The core of the event included various track and field competitions, such as the 100-meter sprint, long jump, and relay races.

In the concluding session, the Chief Guest distributed trophies and certificates to the winners, with “Blue House” securing the Overall Championship trophy. The event ended at 4:00 PM with a vote of thanks by the Principal, followed by the National Anthem.

8. Study the flowchart below showing the stages of a “Paper Recycling Process” and write a factual description of the procedure.



Ans :

The Process of Paper Recycling

The provided flowchart outlines the systematic procedure involved in recycling waste paper to create new, usable sheets. The process consists of five primary stages, starting from collection to final production.

Initially, waste paper is collected from various sources and transported to a recycling facility. In the second stage, the paper is sorted to remove contaminants like plastic or metal. Following this, the sorted paper is shredded and mixed with water and specific chemicals to create a “pulp.” This mixture then undergoes cleaning and bleaching to remove ink and impurities, ensuring the quality of the recycled material.

In the final stage, the refined pulp is spread onto large screens and pressed through rollers to remove moisture, eventually drying into new sheets of paper.

This industrial process is a vital example of sustainable manufacturing. It demonstrates how waste material is converted into a valuable resource through mechanical and chemical interventions.

9. You volunteered at a Relief Camp organized after a natural disaster (cyclone). Write a factual description of the camp’s operations for a local NGO report.

Hints: Location and duration — number of displaced people — facilities (food, medical aid, shelter) — role of volunteers — government support.

Ans :

Cyclone Relief Camp Operations

Following the recent cyclone in the coastal district, a state-level relief camp was established at the Government Senior Secondary School building from 10th to 20th November. The camp was set up to provide immediate shelter and essential services to approximately 500 displaced residents.

The facility was divided into three main sections: a dormitory for sleeping, a community kitchen serving three meals daily, and a 24-hour medical desk. A team of twenty volunteers, along with government health officials, managed the distribution of clean drinking water, dry rations, and basic medicines.

To maintain hygiene, regular sanitation drives were conducted within the premises. The camp successfully provided a safe environment until the water levels receded, after which the inhabitants were assisted in returning to their homes with rehabilitation kits provided by the local administration.

10. You visited the International Book Fair at Pragati Maidan. Write a factual description of the event for your school magazine.

Hints: Venue and theme — number of stalls/publishers — special segments (children’s corner, seminars) — footfall — significance.

Ans :

International Book Fair - New Delhi

The International Book Fair was organized at Pragati Maidan, New Delhi, from 5th to 13th February. The event, themed “Indigenous Voices,” saw participation from over 600 national and international publishers, spanning various languages and genres.

The fair was spread across five massive halls, with Hall 1 dedicated specifically to children’s literature and educational technology. Key features of the event included daily seminars by prominent authors, book launches, and interactive workshops for students. Statistics indicated a daily footfall of nearly 50,000 visitors, including

7. As the Cultural Secretary, you need to write a factual report for the school archives on the “Inter-School English Debate Competition.” Use the schedule provided below to write your description (120–150 words).

Time	Activity	Venue	participants
09:00	Inauguration & Lamp Lighting	Auditorium	Principal, Judges, Coordinators
09:30	Announcement of Motion (Topic)	Main Hall	all 20 teams (40 participants)
09:30–10:00 AM	Preparation Time	Library/ Classrooms	Teams (restricted internet use)
10:00	Commencement of Debate	Auditorium	Participants, Audience, Judges
13:00	Lunch Break	Cafeteria	all attendees
14:00	Judges’ Feedback & Q&A Session	Auditorium	Participants & Judges
15:00	Valedictory Ceremony & Prize Distribution	Auditorium	all attendees

Ans :

Report on the Inter-School English Debate Competition

The Inter-School English Debate Competition was conducted methodically in the school auditorium on [Insert Date]. The event commenced at 09:00 AM with the inauguration and traditional lamp-lighting ceremony led by the Principal and the panel of judges.

A total of 20 teams, comprising 40 participants, assembled in the Main Hall at 09:30 AM for the announcement of the motion. Immediately following this, the teams were given 30 minutes of preparation time, utilization of the library and assigned classrooms with restricted internet access. The debate formally began at 10:00 AM in the main auditorium. After a lunch break at 01:00 PM, the session resumed at 02:00 PM with judges providing critical feedback and conducting a Q&A session. The event concluded with the Valedictory Ceremony and Prize Distribution at 03:00 PM.

8. Your school is participating in a state-level science exhibition and your team has been asked to create an informative display board on the topic of the Indian Space Research Organisation (ISRO). You

have been assigned to write a factual description of ISRO for the display board. Using the hints given below and your own knowledge, write a factual description of ISRO in 120–150 words.

Hints: Established 1969 — headquarters in Bengaluru — founded by Dr. Vikram Sarabhai — satellite launch vehicles — PSLV and GSLV — Chandrayaan missions — Mangalyaan 2013 — most cost-effective space agency — 104 satellites in one launch 2017 — serves communication, weather, navigation needs

Ans :

Indian Space Research Organisation (ISRO)

The Indian Space Research Organisation, popularly known as ISRO, is India’s national space agency and one of the most respected space organizations in the world. It was established on 15th August 1969, under the visionary leadership of Dr. Vikram Sarabhai, who is widely regarded as the father of the Indian space programme. ISRO’s headquarters are located in Bengaluru, Karnataka.

Over the decades, ISRO has achieved several remarkable milestones that have placed India firmly on the global space map. Its Polar Satellite Launch Vehicle, known as the PSLV, is internationally recognized for its reliability and precision. In February 2017, ISRO created a world record by successfully launching 104 satellites in a single mission. India’s Mars Orbiter Mission, known as Mangalyaan and launched in 2013, made India the first country in the world to reach Mars orbit in its very first attempt.

ISRO’s satellites serve vital national needs in the areas of communication, weather forecasting, disaster management, and navigation. The Chandrayaan missions have significantly advanced our understanding of the Moon. ISRO continues to be a source of immense pride for the nation.

9. The editor of your school’s annual magazine has requested students to contribute factual write-ups on famous hill stations of India. You have decided to write about Shimla, the capital of Himachal Pradesh. Using the hints given below and your own knowledge, write a factual description of Shimla in 120–150 words.

Hints: Capital of Himachal Pradesh — altitude 2,206 metres — former summer capital of British India — Kalka-Shimla railway — Mall Road — Christ Church — Jakhu Temple — pleasant summers, snowy winters — popular tourist destination — adventure sports

own knowledge, write a factual description of Jim Corbett National Park in 120–150 words.

Hints: Located in Nainital district, Uttarakhand — established 1936 — first national park of India — named after Jim Corbett — Project Tiger 1973 — Bengal tigers — elephants, leopards, deer — Ramganga River — eco-tourism

Ans :

Jim Corbett National Park

Jim Corbett National Park, located in the Nainital district of Uttarakhand, holds the distinction of being the oldest national park in India. Established in 1936, it was originally named Hailey National Park and was later renamed in honour of the legendary hunter and naturalist Jim Corbett, who played a significant role in its creation.

Spread over an area of approximately 520 square kilometres, the park is nestled in the foothills of the Himalayas and is drained by the Ramganga River, which flows through its heart. The park is home to a rich variety of wildlife, including the Royal Bengal Tiger, Asian elephants, leopards, sloth bears, and over 600 species of birds.

Jim Corbett National Park was one of the first reserves to come under Project Tiger, the Government of India's flagship wildlife conservation programme launched in 1973. Today, it serves as one of the most important tiger habitats in the country and attracts thousands of eco-tourism enthusiasts from across the world every year.

14. Your school's science club is publishing a special newsletter on the theme "Wonders of the Natural World." You have been asked to contribute a factual description of the Sundarbans, the world's largest mangrove forest. Using the hints given below and your own knowledge, write a factual description of the Sundarbans in 120–150 words.

Hints: Located in West Bengal and Bangladesh — delta of Ganga, Brahmaputra, and Meghna — world's largest mangrove forest — Royal Bengal Tiger — Irrawaddy dolphins — UNESCO World Heritage Site — Biosphere Reserve — rising sea levels — threat of climate change

Ans :

The Sundarbans

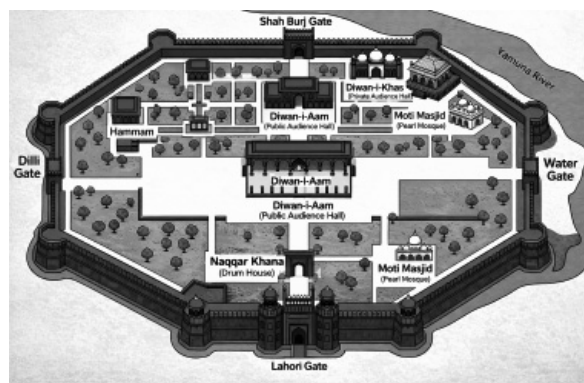
The Sundarbans is the world's largest mangrove forest, straddling the delta formed by the Ganga, Brahmaputra, and Meghna rivers as they flow into the Bay of Bengal. The forest is shared

between the Indian state of West Bengal and the neighbouring country of Bangladesh, with the Indian portion covering approximately 4,260 square kilometres.

The Sundarbans is celebrated for its extraordinary biodiversity. It is home to the Royal Bengal Tiger, the Irrawaddy dolphin, saltwater crocodiles, and a vast array of bird species. The dense network of tidal waterways, mudflats, and mangrove trees creates a unique and complex ecosystem that supports life found nowhere else on Earth.

The Indian portion of the Sundarbans was designated a UNESCO World Heritage Site in 1987 and is also recognized as a Biosphere Reserve. The forest serves as a vital natural barrier protecting the coastal population from cyclones and tidal surges. However, rising sea levels caused by climate change, increasing human activity, and deforestation pose serious and growing threats to this irreplaceable natural treasure.

15. The school is planning a history trip. Based on the provided layout map of the Red Fort in Delhi, write a factual description of the monument for the trip brochure. (120–150 words)



Ans :

Layout and Key Structures of the Red Fort

The Red Fort, an iconic historical monument located on the western bank of the Yamuna River in Delhi, is a massive, octagonal fortress built of red sandstone. Its main entrance, known as the Lahori Gate, is positioned at the southern end of the complex.

According to the architectural layout, a central pathway leads from the gate through the Naqqar Khana (Drum House) and culminates at the Diwan-i-Aam, the Hall of Public Audience. This building is a large, pillared hall made of red sandstone.

EXERCISE

1. You are Isha/Ishaan of Sun Rise School, Pune. You feel that the contribution of teachers to a student's life and to society as a whole is immense and often goes unrecognized. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the occasion of Teacher's Day on the topic "A Teacher — The True Nation Builder" expressing your gratitude and appreciation for the role teachers play.

Hints: Shaping young minds — beyond books — values and discipline — encouragement — lifelong impact — challenges faced by teachers — respect and recognition — Teacher's Day

Ans :

A Teacher — The True Nation Builder

By Isha

Every scientist who made a discovery, every leader who changed the world, every artist who moved hearts — behind each one of them stood a teacher. Teachers are the quiet architects of civilization, shaping minds and souls long before the world ever notices the results of their work.

A good teacher does far more than deliver lessons from a textbook. They inspire curiosity, build confidence, teach values, and sometimes change the direction of a student's entire life with a single encouraging word. They see potential in students before the students see it in themselves.

Yet teachers are among the most underappreciated professionals in our society. On this Teacher's Day, let us pause to genuinely reflect on the debt we owe to every teacher who believed in us, pushed us, and helped us become better versions of ourselves.

A nation that respects its teachers respects its own future.

2. You are Arjun/Anjali of Green Valley School, Hyderabad. You are concerned about the increasing problem of food wastage in India, especially at weddings and large events, while millions of people in the country continue to go hungry. Write an article in 120–150 words for a local newspaper on the topic "Stop Wasting Food — Someone is Hungry" urging people to be more responsible about food consumption and wastage.

Stop Wasting Food — Someone Is Hungry

By Arjun

India is a country of extraordinary contradictions. On one hand, lavish weddings and events produce

tonnes of wasted food every single day. On the other hand, millions of people — including children — go to sleep hungry every night. This gap is not just shocking, it is shameful.

According to reports, India wastes millions of tonnes of food annually at a time when nearly 190 million people in the country remain undernourished. Food is wasted at every stage — from farms, to supermarkets, to restaurants, to our own homes.

Changing this requires both individual responsibility and collective action. We must serve only what we can eat, avoid over-ordering, and store leftovers properly. Community initiatives like food banks and community refrigerators where surplus food can be left for those in need must be encouraged across cities.

NGOs working to redistribute food from events to the homeless deserve our full support. Wasting food is not just careless — it is a moral failure.

3. You recently read a report about the declining number of trees in your city due to rapid urbanization and construction. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic "Plant a Tree, Plant Hope" emphasizing the importance of trees for human survival and urging students and citizens to actively participate in tree plantation drives.

Ans :

Plant a Tree, Plant Hope

By XYZ

A city without trees is like a body without lungs — it simply cannot survive. Yet across India, thousands of trees are being cut down every day to make way for roads, buildings, and flyovers. The consequences of this silent destruction are becoming impossible to ignore.

Trees are the foundation of life on Earth. They provide oxygen, clean the air, prevent soil erosion, reduce flooding, provide shade, and support the survival of countless birds and animals. A single mature tree can absorb hundreds of kilograms of carbon dioxide every year.

As urbanisation speeds up, every citizen must take responsibility. Planting even one tree and caring for it can make a meaningful difference. Schools, housing societies, and local authorities must organise regular plantation drives and ensure that every road has adequate tree cover.

A tree planted today is shade, oxygen, and hope for tomorrow.

CHAPTER 16

ARTICLE WRITING

1. INTRODUCTION

An article is a meaningful piece of writing meant to be published in a school magazine or a journal to share information with a large group of people. It allows you to express your personal thoughts, ideas, and suggestions on a specific topic in a clear and organized way. By writing an article, you can influence your readers, raise awareness about social issues, or simply provide interesting facts about a subject you care about.

2. FORMAT OF AN ARTICLE

An article must adhere to the prescribed format. The format of an article is as mentioned below:

Title/Heading	Byline
Body:	
Opening Paragraph	
.....	
Middle Paragraph 1	
.....	
Middle Paragraph 2 (if needed)	
.....	
Closing Paragraph	
.....	

3. ELEMENTS OF AN ARTICLE

The essential parts of an article are as follows:

1. **Title/Heading:** This is the most important part because it tells the reader what the article is about. It should be short (4-6 words) and catchy.
2. **Byline:** This is where you write the name of the person who wrote the article. In your

exam, always use the name given in the question. If no name is provided, use “By XYZ.”

3. **Body Paragraphs:** This is the main part of your article, usually divided into three or four paragraphs:

- **Opening Paragraph:** Introduce the topic clearly and grab the reader’s attention.
- **Middle Paragraph 1:** Explain the causes, background, or current situation related to the topic.
- **Middle Paragraph 2 (if needed):** Discuss the effects, arguments, advantages, or disadvantages in more detail.
- **Closing Paragraph:** Give your final opinion, offer solutions, and end with a strong message. Do not introduce any new information here.

4. POINTS TO REMEMBER

General points to be remembered while writing an article are as follows :

1. Read the question carefully at least twice to understand the topic, the main issue, and all the hints provided before you begin writing.
2. Spend a minute planning your points in a logical order before you start. A little planning makes your article flow smoothly from beginning to end.
3. Divide your article into clear paragraphs — the opening should introduce the topic, the middle paragraphs should cover the main facts such as causes, effects, or arguments, and the final paragraph should give a proper conclusion.
4. Every sentence should connect logically to the next. Use linking words like ‘however, therefore, similarly,’ and ‘in conclusion’ to keep your writing smooth and well-joined.
5. Keep your language simple, direct, and grammatically correct. You do not need difficult or fancy words — clear and accurate English is always better.

ignoring lane discipline are the most common causes of accidents. Many drivers, especially young ones, treat traffic rules as suggestions rather than laws, putting their own lives and the lives of others at serious risk.

Strict enforcement of traffic laws, heavier penalties for violations, and the installation of more speed cameras can help reduce accidents significantly. Schools and colleges should conduct regular road safety awareness programmes so that responsible driving habits are built from an early age.

A few minutes saved by reckless driving are not worth a lifetime of regret. Drive safe — for yourself and for everyone on the road.

6. You are Tara/Tarun of Lakeview School, Bengaluru. You are deeply concerned about the rising problem of cyberbullying among teenagers and its impact on their mental health. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “Cyberbullying — The Invisible Threat” creating awareness about this issue and suggesting ways to deal with it.

Hints: Social media misuse — hurtful comments — trolling — mental health — anxiety and depression — reporting mechanisms — role of parents and schools — digital literacy

Ans :

Cyberbullying — The Invisible Threat

By Tara

The internet has made the world smaller, but it has also opened the door to a new and dangerous form of bullying — cyberbullying. Unlike traditional bullying, cyberbullying follows its victims everywhere, even into the safety of their own homes, through phones and screens.

Hurtful comments, trolling, spreading rumours, and sharing private images without consent are common forms of cyberbullying. Teenagers are the most affected group, and the impact on their mental health can be devastating — leading to anxiety, depression, low self-esteem, and in extreme cases, even self-harm.

Students must remember that every social media post has consequences. They should report abusive content and never engage with bullies online. Schools must introduce digital literacy programmes that teach responsible online behaviour. Parents should maintain open communication with their children about their online experiences.

The internet should be a space of learning and connection — not a platform for cruelty.

7. You are Rohan/Roshni of Modern Public School. India is a country with an extraordinarily rich cultural and natural heritage that attracts millions of tourists every year. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “Tourism in India — Incredible and Unexplored” highlighting the potential of tourism in India and how promoting it benefits the country.

Ans :

Tourism in India — Incredible and Unexplored

By Rohan

From the snow-capped peaks of the Himalayas to the serene backwaters of Kerala, from the ancient temples of Varanasi to the modern marvels of modern cities — India offers a travel experience unlike any other destination in the world.

Tourism is not just about sightseeing — it is a powerful driver of economic growth. It generates employment for millions, from hotel workers and tour guides to craftsmen and local vendors. It is also one of India’s most important sources of foreign exchange earnings.

The government’s “Incredible India” campaign has done much to promote the country globally. Initiatives like e-visa facilities, development of heritage sites, and the growth of medical and eco-tourism have further boosted India’s appeal as a travel destination.

However, tourists and citizens alike must practise responsible tourism — preserving monuments, avoiding littering, and respecting local cultures. A cleaner, better-maintained India will attract even more visitors and further strengthen our economy.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

8. You are Arjun/Arya of National Public School, Delhi. The bar graph given below shows the main causes of road accidents in India in the year 2023. The data is deeply alarming and highlights the need for urgent action on road safety. Using the information provided in the graph and your own ideas, write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “Road Accidents in India — Who Is Responsible?” discussing the major causes shown in the data and suggesting measures to make Indian roads safer.

in cities, taps are left running without a second thought. Droughts are becoming more frequent, and the shortage of clean drinking water is already causing disease and hardship for millions.

Every citizen must take responsibility. Simple steps like fixing leaking taps, using buckets instead of pipes for washing, and harvesting rainwater can make a significant difference. The government's schemes like Jal Jeevan Mission must be supported by active citizen participation.

Water saved today is life secured tomorrow.

3. You are deeply disturbed by the growing problem of air pollution in Indian cities and its impact on public health, especially children. Write an article in 120–150 words for a national magazine on the topic “Breathe Free — The Fight Against Air Pollution” suggesting steps that citizens and the government can take to tackle this crisis.

Ans :

Breathe Free — The Fight Against Air Pollution

By XYZ

Every morning, millions of Indians wake up and breathe air that is slowly poisoning them. Air pollution has become one of the most serious public health crises in our country, and yet it continues to worsen every year.

The main causes of air pollution are vehicular emissions, industrial waste, burning of crop stubble, and construction dust. Cities like Delhi consistently rank among the most polluted in the world. Children, the elderly, and people with respiratory conditions are the worst affected, with cases of asthma, bronchitis, and lung disease rising sharply.

The government must enforce stricter emission norms, promote electric vehicles, and expand public transport. Industries must be held accountable for the pollution they cause. Citizens too have a role — planting trees, carpooling, and reducing the use of firecrackers can collectively make a significant difference.

Clean air is not a luxury — it is a basic right that every citizen deserves.

4. You are Kabir/Kavya of Kendriya Vidyalaya, Pune. Your school recently organized a special assembly to mark World Environment Day, after which your principal asked you to write an article for the school magazine. Write an article in 120–150 words on the topic “Protect Our Planet — It Is Our Only Home” highlighting the

environmental challenges the Earth faces today and what young people can do to help.

Hints: Global warming — deforestation — melting glaciers — rising sea levels — plastic pollution — reduce, reuse, recycle — tree plantation — awareness among youth

Ans :

Protect Our Planet — It Is Our Only Home

By Kabir

Our planet is in trouble, and the signs are impossible to ignore. Rising temperatures, melting glaciers, frequent floods, devastating wildfires, and choking plastic pollution — Earth is sending us an urgent warning, and it is time we listened.

Human activities such as deforestation, burning fossil fuels, and dumping plastic waste have pushed our planet to the edge. Global warming has already caused the Earth's temperature to rise significantly, threatening ecosystems, food supply, and the very survival of countless species.

Young people have both the power and the responsibility to bring about change. We can begin with small but meaningful actions — planting trees, reducing plastic use, saving electricity, and spreading awareness among our friends and families. Schools and communities must organize regular environmental drives.

We did not inherit this planet from our ancestors — we are borrowing it from our children. Let us return it better than we found it.

5. You are Sneha/Sanjay of Bright Future School, Mumbai. You believe that road accidents in India are largely caused by careless and reckless driving. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “Drive Safe, Arrive Safe” stressing the importance of following traffic rules and responsible behaviour on the road.

Hints: Rising accident numbers — over-speeding — drunk driving — mobile phone use — ignoring traffic signals — road safety rules — strict enforcement — awareness campaigns

Ans :

Drive Safe, Arrive Safe

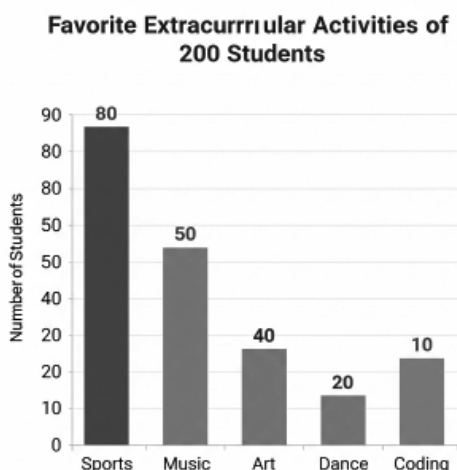
By Sneha

Every hour, several precious lives are lost on Indian roads due to careless driving. Road accidents have become one of the leading causes of death in our country, and the saddest part is that most of them are completely avoidable.

Over-speeding, drunk driving, using mobile phones while driving, jumping red lights, and

Positioned further north are the private royal chambers. These include the elegant white marble Diwan-i-Khas, used for private audience, and the Rang Mahal, which serves as the Palace of Colors. The Moti Masjid, or Pearl Mosque, is a small marble structure located adjacent to the Diwan-i-Khas.

16. The following bar graph shows the preference for extracurricular activities among 200 students of Class 9 at Global International School. Write a factual description interpreting the data.



Ans :

Analysis of Student Preferences in Extracurricular Activities

The provided bar graph illustrates the distribution of extracurricular preferences among a sample of 200 students in Class 9 at Global International School. The data categorizes interests into five distinct areas: Sports, Music, Art, Dance, and Coding.

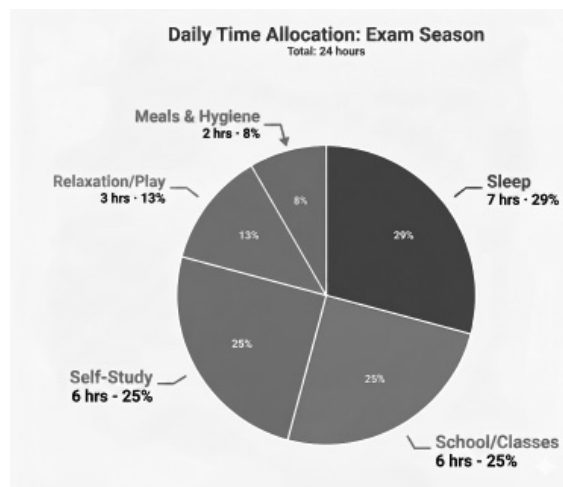
According to the graph, Sports is the most dominant preference, chosen by 80 students, which accounts for 40% of the total group. Music and Art follow as the next most popular choices, with 50 and 40 students respectively.

In contrast, performing arts like Dance see a significant drop, with only 20 students participating. Technical interests, represented by Coding, are the least preferred, with only 10 students opting for it.

In conclusion, the data indicates a strong inclination toward physical and creative fields over technical or performing arts. The preference for Sports is double that of Art and eight times

higher than Coding, highlighting a traditional trend in student engagement.

17. Below is a pie chart representing the daily time management of a typical Class 9 student during exam season. Write a factual description in 120–150 words.



Ans :

Daily Time Allocation of Students During Examinations

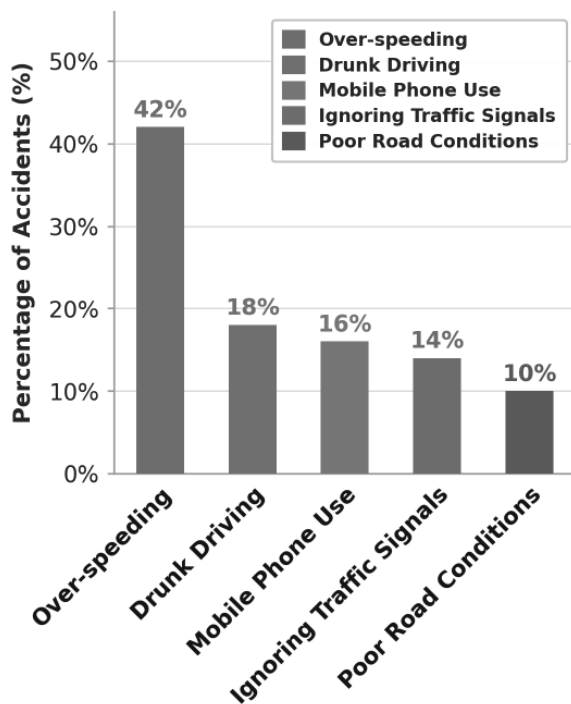
The provided pie chart illustrates the daily time management strategy for a typical Class 9 student during examination season. The 24-hour day is allocated across five distinct categories: Sleep, School/Classes, Self-Study, Relaxation/Play, and Meals & Hygiene.

According to the data, the largest single time allocation is for Sleep, which accounts for 7 hours, or 29.2% of the day. Academic activities dominate the schedule, with School/Classes and Self-Study each being assigned 6 hours (25% each), totaling 12 hours of academic engagement. For non-academic needs, 3 hours (12.5%) are dedicated to Relaxation/Play, while 2 hours (8.3%) are utilized for Meals & Hygiene.

In conclusion, the chart highlights that exactly half of the student's day (12 hours) is dedicated to formal and self-directed learning, while nearly a third is allocated to essential rest, resulting in a structured and intensive routine.



**Main Causes Of Road Accidents
In India (2023)**



Ans :

Road Accidents in India — Who Is Responsible?

By Arjun

Every year, thousands of precious lives are lost on Indian roads — and the data tells us exactly why. According to a 2023 report, over-speeding alone accounts for 42 percent of all road accidents in India, making it by far the single biggest cause of road fatalities. Drunk driving and mobile phone use while driving contribute a further 18 and 16 percent respectively, together claiming nearly one-third of all accident victims.

What is most troubling about these figures is that every single one of these causes is entirely preventable. Ignoring traffic signals and poor road conditions account for the remaining accidents, pointing to a failure of both individual discipline and government maintenance.

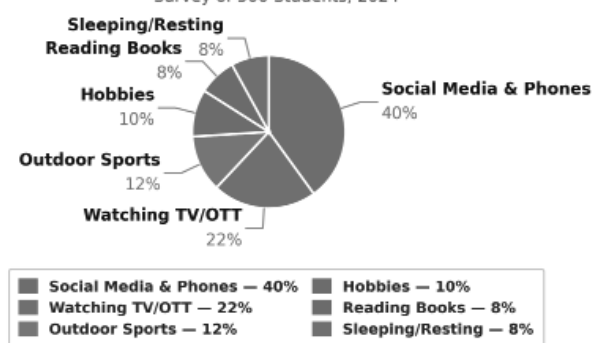
Stricter enforcement of traffic laws, heavier penalties for drunk driving and over-speeding, and mandatory road safety education in schools are urgently needed. Roads will only become safer when every driver takes personal responsibility.

A statistic is just a number — until it becomes someone's family member.

9. You are Sneha/Siddharth of Sunrise Academy, Delhi. The pie chart below is based on a survey of 500 school students conducted in 2024, showing how Indian students spend their free time. The results are a cause for serious concern. Using the data given in the chart and your own ideas, write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “How Are We Spending Our Free Time?” analysing what the data reveals about students' habits and suggesting how students can make better use of their leisure time.

**How Indian Students Spend
Their Free Time**

Survey of 500 Students, 2024



Ans :

How Are We Spending Our Free Time?

By Sneha

A recent survey of 500 school students reveals a deeply worrying picture of how Indian teenagers spend their leisure hours. A staggering 40 percent of free time is spent on social media and mobile phones, while another 22 percent goes to watching television and OTT platforms. Together, screens are consuming nearly two-thirds of every student's free time.

In sharp contrast, only 12 percent of free time is spent on outdoor sports and physical activity, and a mere 8 percent on reading books. Hobbies like art, music, and dance account for just 10 percent. These numbers reflect a generation that is increasingly passive, sedentary, and disconnected from the activities that truly develop the mind and body. The consequences — poor health, reduced creativity, and shorter attention spans — are already becoming visible.

Students must consciously reclaim their free time. Put down the phone, pick up a book, step outside, and rediscover the joy of living fully.



BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

The good news is that every student can contribute meaningfully. Switching off lights and fans when leaving a room, using public transport, unplugging chargers when not in use, and supporting solar energy initiatives are small habits that together create enormous change.

Renewable energy is the future — but conservation is the bridge that gets us there.

7. You are Rekha/Rajat of Modern Academy, Delhi. You feel that India's rich cultural heritage — its monuments, traditions, art forms, and languages — is not being valued and preserved adequately by the younger generation. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic "Our Heritage — Our Identity" urging young people to take pride in and responsibility for preserving India's extraordinary cultural legacy.

Hints: Ancient monuments — folk arts and music — classical dance — regional languages — UNESCO heritage sites — neglect and vandalism — school trips — awareness — digital documentation

Ans :

Our Heritage — Our Identity

By Rekha

Walk through the corridors of the Red Fort, stand before the carved pillars of Hampi, or watch a Bharatanatyam performance — and you will feel a connection to something ancient, something larger than yourself. India's cultural heritage is one of the greatest gifts humanity has ever produced. Yet it is a gift we are slowly failing to protect.

Monuments are vandalized, ancient art forms are dying for lack of patronage, regional languages are being abandoned, and generations of young Indians are growing up with little knowledge of their own extraordinary history and traditions.

Our heritage is not just about the past — it is the foundation of our identity. Schools should organize regular heritage walks and cultural programmes. Students should explore local history and traditional arts with genuine curiosity.

Digital documentation, community preservation efforts, and responsible tourism can all help protect what centuries have built. What we do not protect today will be lost forever.

8. India has immense potential in the field of sports, but lack of infrastructure, proper coaching, and recognition at the grassroots level is preventing

talented young athletes from reaching their true potential. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic "Sports in India — Unleashing the Potential" discussing the current state of sports in India and what needs to be done to help young athletes succeed.

Ans :

Sports in India — Unleashing the Potential

By XYZ

India is a nation of over a billion people, and yet our Olympic medal tally remains modest compared to countries far smaller in population. The reason is not a lack of talent — it is a lack of opportunity.

Across India's villages and small towns, there are young athletes of extraordinary ability who may never be discovered simply because they have no access to good coaches, proper equipment, or sports facilities. Financial constraints force many talented youngsters to give up their sporting dreams before they even begin.

The government has taken positive steps through schemes like the Khelo India initiative, but much more is needed. Schools must give sports equal importance alongside academics. Talent identification programmes must reach every district and village. Sponsors and the media must support athletes in lesser-known sports beyond cricket.

India has the talent to stand at the top of every podium — what it needs is the system to support that talent.

9. India is a country where the gap between the rich and the poor remains deeply troubling. You feel that quality education is the most powerful tool to bridge this gap and create equal opportunities for every child. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic "Education — The Great Equaliser" highlighting how access to quality education can transform lives and society.

Ans :

Education — The Great Equaliser

By XYZ

Imagine a child born in a small village, the first in her family to ever attend school. She has no books at home, no tuition, and no one to help with homework. And yet, with the right teacher and the right opportunity, she could grow up to be a doctor, a judge, or a scientist. This is the transformative power of education.

Education is the most powerful force we have to break the cycle of poverty and create a

4. You are Simran/Sumit of National Public School, Chandigarh. You believe that physical fitness and regular exercise are being neglected by today's young generation due to sedentary lifestyles and excessive screen time. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic "Fitness is Not a Choice — It is a Necessity" encouraging students to make exercise and outdoor activities a daily part of their lives.

Hints: Sedentary lifestyle — obesity among children — screen time — lack of outdoor play — benefits of exercise — mental health — sports facilities in schools — daily routine

Ans :

Fitness Is Not a Choice — It Is a Necessity

By Simran

A generation ago, children spent their afternoons playing cricket in the park, cycling down lanes, and running around with friends. Today, most children spend those same hours sitting in front of screens. The result is a generation that is increasingly unfit, unhealthy, and at risk.

Childhood obesity, poor posture, weak immunity, and rising rates of anxiety are all linked to physical inactivity. Medical experts warn that today's children may be the first generation to have a shorter life expectancy than their parents — and our sedentary habits are largely to blame.

Exercise is not just about losing weight or building muscles. It improves mood, sharpens concentration, reduces stress, and boosts overall energy levels. Even thirty minutes of physical activity every day can bring dramatic improvements in health and wellbeing.

Schools should ensure daily physical education and encourage participation in outdoor sports. And students must make the choice — step away from the screen and step outside.

5. You are Kavya/Kartik of Wisdom School, Bhopal. You are deeply concerned about the problem of drug abuse among teenagers in India and feel that it is a crisis that demands urgent attention from parents, schools, and the government. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic "Say No to Drugs — Choose Life" warning students about the dangers of drug abuse and how to stay away from it.

Ans :

Say No to Drugs — Choose Life

By Kavya

Drug abuse among teenagers is one of the most

heartbreaking problems facing India today. Young people who should be full of dreams and energy are instead destroying their health, their futures, and the happiness of their families by falling prey to addiction.

The road to drug abuse often begins with peer pressure — a friend saying "just try it once." That one time can change everything. Drugs damage the brain, weaken the body, destroy relationships, and lead to a cycle of dependence that is extremely difficult to break. Families are torn apart, careers are ruined, and lives are cut short.

Students must have the courage to say no — firmly and without hesitation. Schools should conduct regular awareness programmes and create safe spaces where students can speak about peer pressure without fear. Parents should maintain open and trusting relationships with their children.

Your life is precious — do not trade it for a moment of weakness.

6. You are Ankit/Ankita of Sunrise Academy, Jaipur. You recently attended an awareness programme on the importance of energy conservation and were alarmed by the facts shared about the rapid depletion of natural energy resources across the world. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic "Save Energy Today, Secure Tomorrow" explaining why energy conservation is essential and suggesting practical ways in which students can contribute.

Hints: Depleting natural resources — coal, petrol, gas running out — electricity wastage — renewable energy — solar and wind power — simple habits — switching off lights — public transport — Earth Hour

Ans :

Save Energy Today, Secure Tomorrow

By Ankit

The lights in our homes, the fans in our classrooms, the buses we travel in — all of this runs on energy. And most of that energy comes from natural resources like coal, oil, and gas that took millions of years to form and are now running out faster than we can imagine.

Energy conservation is not a distant concern — it is an urgent reality. Wasteful use of electricity, over-dependence on private vehicles, and the burning of fossil fuels are pushing our planet towards a serious energy crisis that future generations will have to face.

6. Articles are generally written in the third person. Avoid using “I” or “my” unless the question specifically asks for a personal account.
7. Stick to the word limit of 120 to 150 words. Writing too much increases the chances of making unnecessary mistakes.

5. SOME IMPORTANT EXAMPLES

1. You are Rahul/Riya of Greenfield Public School. You feel deeply concerned about the increasing consumption of junk food among school children and its harmful effects on their health. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “Junk Food — A Silent Enemy” urging students to adopt healthy eating habits. You may use the following hints along with your own ideas.

Hints: Easy availability — cheap and attractive — causes obesity — heart problems — diabetes — unhygienic preparation — ban in school canteens — healthy alternatives

Ans :

Junk Food — A Silent Enemy

By Riya

Junk food has quietly become one of the biggest health threats facing school children today. It is cheap, easily available, and attractively packaged, which makes it almost irresistible for young people. However, behind its tempting appearance lies a dangerous reality.

Regular consumption of junk food leads to serious health problems such as obesity, diabetes, high blood pressure, and heart disease — conditions that were once associated only with adults. Most junk food is prepared in unhygienic conditions, making it even more harmful. It is also high in trans fats and sugar, which drain energy levels and reduce concentration in class.

Schools must take the initiative by banning junk food in their canteens and replacing it with healthy, nutritious alternatives. Parents should encourage children to carry home-cooked meals. Remember — a healthy body leads to a healthy mind, and only healthy young people can build a strong nation.

Ans : You are Meera/Mohan of Sunrise Public School, Jaipur. You strongly believe that the habit of reading books is gradually dying among young people due to the excessive use of smartphones and social media. Write an article in 120–150 words

for your school magazine on the topic “Books vs Screens — Choose Wisely” encouraging students to develop a reading habit.

Hints: Declining reading habits — smartphones and social media — short attention spans — benefits of reading — vocabulary — imagination — knowledge — libraries — suggestions

Ans :

Books vs Screens — Choose Wisely

By Meera

In today’s world, where everything is available at the tap of a screen, the habit of reading books is slowly disappearing among young people. Students today prefer scrolling through social media over opening a book, and this shift is having serious consequences.

Excessive screen time is reducing attention spans, weakening memory, and making students restless and impatient. Social media, though entertaining, provides little real knowledge or intellectual growth.

Books, on the other hand, are a treasure of knowledge. Reading regularly improves vocabulary, sharpens concentration, develops imagination, and builds empathy. Great books have shaped the thinking of scientists, leaders, and writers across centuries.

Students should make it a habit to read at least one book every month. Schools should organize regular library sessions and book clubs to rekindle the love of reading. A student who reads grows — in mind, in thought, and in character.

2. You recently participated in a week-long workshop on water conservation and were deeply moved by the alarming facts shared about the scarcity of clean water across the world. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “Save Water, Save Life” highlighting the importance of water conservation and suggesting practical steps people can take.

Ans :

Save Water, Save Life

By XYZ

Water is the most precious natural resource on Earth, and yet it is treated as though it will never run out. The reality, however, is deeply alarming. Water levels across the country are falling rapidly due to overuse, wastage, and increasing pollution of rivers and lakes.

In many parts of India, people walk miles every day just to fetch a pot of clean water, while

more equal society. When a child — regardless of their background — is given access to quality education, their potential becomes limitless.

The Right to Education Act was a historic step, but implementation gaps remain. Government schools need better infrastructure, trained teachers, and digital resources. Mid-day meal schemes and scholarships must be strengthened to keep children in school.

Every child who gets an education is a step towards a stronger, fairer India.

10. You are Prerna/Pranav of Kendriya Vidyalaya, Bhopal. You are deeply concerned about the problem of unemployment among educated youth in India and feel that the current education system is not preparing students adequately for the job market. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “Degrees Are Not Enough — Skills Are the Future” arguing that skill development must be made a central part of education in India.

Hints: Rising unemployment — gap between education and industry — skill shortage — vocational training — internships — practical knowledge — National Skill Development Mission — attitude and soft skills

Ans :

Degrees Are Not Enough — Skills Are the Future

By Prerna

Every year, millions of graduates enter the Indian job market armed with degrees — and struggle to find employment. This is not because jobs do not exist. It is because there is a growing gap between what our education system teaches and what the real world requires.

Employers today are looking for people who can think critically, communicate clearly, solve problems creatively, and adapt quickly to change. A degree certificate, on its own, guarantees none of these things.

India urgently needs to shift its focus from rote learning and examination scores to skill development, vocational training, and practical experience. Internships, apprenticeships, and industry exposure must become a standard part of every student’s education. Soft skills like teamwork, communication, and leadership must be taught alongside academic subjects.

The National Skill Development Mission is a step in the right direction — but every school and college must make skill-building central to what

they do.

A skilled India is an employed India.

11. You feel that the problem of corruption in India remains one of the biggest obstacles to the country’s progress and development. You believe that young people have a crucial role to play in fighting corruption. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “Youth Against Corruption — Time to Act” urging students to stand up against corruption in their daily lives.

Hints: Corruption in daily life — bribery — effect on development — loss to government resources — role of youth — refusing bribes — right to information — vigilance and reporting

Ans :

Youth Against Corruption — Time to Act

By XYZ

Corruption is not just a headline in a newspaper — it is the extra money paid to get a driving licence, the bribe given to jump a queue, the funds meant for a village school that disappear into someone’s pocket. It is everywhere, and it is costing India enormously — in money, in trust, and in human lives.

Corruption diverts resources away from schools, hospitals, and roads — directly harming the poorest and most vulnerable citizens. It breeds inequality, rewards dishonesty, and discourages hardworking and honest people.

Young people are the most powerful force for change in this fight. We must refuse to pay or accept bribes, even when it seems easier to give in. We must use tools like the Right to Information Act to hold authorities accountable. We must speak up rather than look away.

A generation that refuses to tolerate corruption will build an India worth being proud of.

12. You are Alisha/Alok of Greenfield Academy, Jaipur. You are concerned about the declining quality of air and water in Indian cities due to rapid industrialization and population growth. Write an article in 120–150 words for a local newspaper on the topic “Clean City, Healthy Life” discussing the environmental problems faced by Indian cities today and suggesting ways in which citizens and authorities can work together to make cities cleaner and healthier.

Hints: Air pollution — water contamination — garbage disposal — open drains — Swachh Bharat

CHAPTER 17

ESSAY WRITING

1. INTRODUCTION

An essay is a piece of writing in which the writer expresses thoughts, ideas, and feelings about a topic in a well-organised manner. The word ‘essay’ comes from the French word ‘essai’, meaning ‘an attempt’ — it is your attempt to say something meaningful and interesting about a given topic in your own words. Essay writing is an important part of the Writing Skills section, and you are expected to write essays that are clear, organised, well-expressed, and within the given word limit. A good essay reveals not just what you know about a topic, but how thoughtfully and clearly you can express yourself.

2. TYPES OF ESSAYS

Essays can be written in many different styles and for many different purposes:

1. **Descriptive Essay** : Describes a person, place, object, event, or experience in vivid detail. The goal is to paint a picture with words so the reader can see, hear, and feel what is being described.
Examples: A Village Fair, A Rainy Day, My School Library.
2. **Narrative Essay** : Tells a story — real or imaginary — with a sequence of events. It has characters, a setting, a problem, and usually a lesson or moral at the end.
Examples: An Unforgettable Journey, The Day I Got Lost, A Day I Helped Someone.
3. **Expository Essay** : Explains or informs the reader about a topic in a factual, straightforward manner. It presents facts, definitions, and explanations without personal opinion.
Examples: How Photosynthesis Works, Causes of Climate Change.
4. **Argumentative/Persuasive Essay** : Presents the writer’s argument or opinion on a topic and tries to convince the reader. It uses facts, logic, and examples to support a point of view.

Examples: Should Mobile Phones Be Allowed in Schools?, Capital Punishment.

5. **Reflective Essay** : The writer reflects deeply on a personal experience or idea, exploring what it meant to them and what they learnt from it. More philosophical in tone.

Examples: What Failure Has Taught Me, My Relationship with Books.

6. **Analytical Essay** : Analyses a text, event, or concept in detail — breaking it down into parts and examining how they work together. Common in higher classes.

Examples: An Analysis of a Poem, The Causes and Effects of the French Revolution.

NOTE :

As per the CBSE Class 9 syllabus, only Descriptive and Narrative essays are required. The other types have been mentioned above for your general awareness only. This chapter will focus on these two types only.

3. STRUCTURE OF AN ESSAY

Every good essay — whether descriptive or narrative — follows the same basic three-part structure. Understanding and using this structure will make your essay organised, readable, and score-worthy.

- A. **Introduction (1 paragraph)**: This is the opening paragraph. It introduces the topic to the reader and sets the mood or tone of the essay. A good introduction is interesting enough to make the reader want to read further. You can begin with a striking statement, a question, a short description, or a quote.
- B. **Body (2–4 paragraphs)**: This is the main section of the essay where you develop your ideas in detail. Each paragraph should focus on one main idea. In a descriptive essay, describe different aspects of the subject. In a narrative essay, narrate the events in sequence. The body should flow smoothly from one paragraph to the next.

15. You are Ankush/Anisha of Progressive School, Agra. You are concerned about the increasing problem of noise pollution in Indian cities and its harmful effects on the health and wellbeing of residents, especially in densely populated areas. Write an article in 120–150 words for a local newspaper on the topic “Silence Please — Noise Pollution is a Real Threat” highlighting the causes and effects of noise pollution and suggesting ways to control it.

Hints: Vehicular horns — loudspeakers — construction noise — firecrackers — health effects — hearing loss — sleep disturbance — stress — enforcement of noise laws — awareness

Ans :

Silence Please — Noise Pollution Is a Real Threat

By Ankush

The moment you step outside in any Indian city, you are assaulted by sound — blaring horns, roaring construction machinery, booming loudspeakers at religious events, and the endless rumble of traffic. Noise pollution is so constant that most people have simply stopped noticing it. But our bodies have not stopped suffering.

Prolonged exposure to high levels of noise leads to serious health problems — permanent hearing damage, disturbed sleep, high blood pressure, increased stress hormones, poor concentration, and even cardiovascular disease. Children and the elderly are particularly vulnerable.

Strict enforcement of existing noise pollution laws is urgently needed. Unnecessary honking must attract heavy fines. The use of loudspeakers must be regulated, especially during night hours. Festivals involving firecrackers must be managed responsibly.

Citizens too have a role. The simplest and most powerful step anyone can take is to reduce the noise they personally create. A quieter city is a healthier and happier city.

16. You are Nandini/Nakul of St. Francis School, Kochi. You feel that travel and exploring new places is one of the best ways to learn about the world, understand different cultures, and develop as a person. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “Travel — The Best Teacher” arguing that travelling broadens the mind and enriches life in ways that no classroom can.

Hints: Meeting new people — learning new cultures — stepping out of comfort zone —

historical places — natural wonders — tolerance and understanding — school trips — budget travel — memories for life

Ans :

Travel — The Best Teacher

By Nandini

No textbook can teach you what it feels like to stand at the edge of the Grand Canyon, walk through the narrow alleys of Varanasi at dawn, or share a meal with a family in a remote Rajasthani village. Some lessons can only be learned by stepping out of your comfort zone and into the world.

Travel is one of life’s greatest educators. It teaches history more vividly than any classroom, because you are standing inside it. It builds tolerance and empathy, because you meet people whose lives are completely different from your own and discover how much you have in common. It teaches adaptability, problem-solving, and confidence — because every journey brings unexpected challenges.

School trips to historical sites, nature reserves, and cultural destinations should be an essential part of education, not an optional extra. And students should seize every opportunity — even within their own city or state — to explore, discover, and learn.

The world is the greatest classroom there is — and it is always open.

17. You are Aditi/Aditya of Ryan International School. You feel that the excessive use of smartphones and digital devices is seriously affecting the physical and mental health of teenagers in India. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “Smartphone Addiction — When Technology Becomes a Trap” warning students about the dangers of excessive screen time.

Ans :

Smartphone Addiction — When Technology Becomes a Trap

By Aditi

A decade ago, a teenager’s biggest distraction was the television. Today, it is the smartphone — and it is far more powerful, far more addictive, and far more difficult to put down.

Studies show that the average teenager spends over six hours a day on their phone. This excessive screen time is causing serious damage — disturbed sleep patterns, poor posture, weakened eyesight, reduced physical activity, and increasing levels of

anxiety and depression. Many young people are so absorbed in their virtual lives that they are losing the ability to have real conversations and build genuine relationships.

Technology itself is not the enemy — it is how we use it that matters. Students should set daily screen time limits, keep phones away during meals and bedtime, and replace at least one hour of screen time with an outdoor activity every day.

A phone is a tool — do not let it become your master.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

18. You are Meghna/Mohit of Scholars Academy. You strongly feel that women in India are still not given the equal opportunities they deserve in education, employment, and society. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “Women Empowerment — Still a Dream or a Reality?” discussing the progress made and the challenges that still remain.

Hints: Increasing literacy rates — women in leadership — gender inequality — education — workplace discrimination — domestic violence — government schemes — Beti Bachao Beti Padhao

Ans :

Women Empowerment — Still a Dream or a Reality?

By Meghna

India has come a long way in the journey towards women empowerment. Today, women are astronauts, judges, army officers, entrepreneurs, and athletes. Female literacy rates are rising and more girls than ever before are attending school. These are signs of genuine progress that must be acknowledged and celebrated.

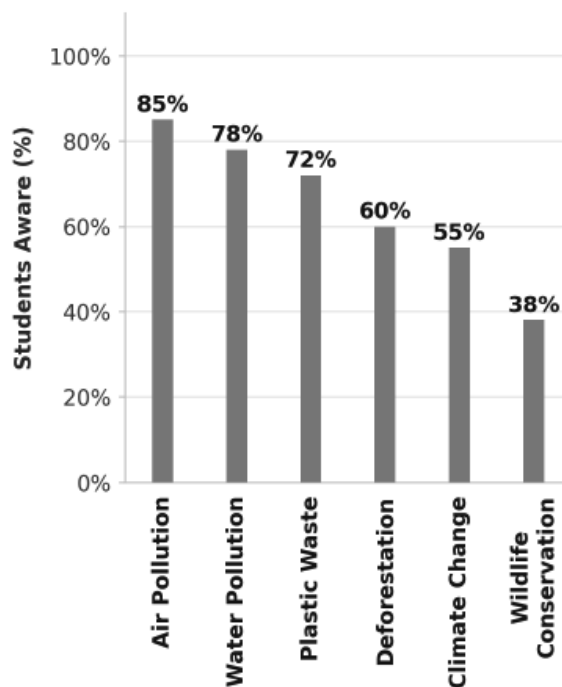
However, beneath this progress lie uncomfortable truths. Gender inequality, workplace discrimination, unequal pay, domestic violence, and child marriage continue to affect millions of women across the country, particularly in rural areas. A girl's right to education and a safe life is still not guaranteed everywhere.

Government schemes such as Beti Bachao Beti Padhao, Sukanya Samridhi Yojana, and free education for girls are steps in the right direction. But real empowerment goes beyond schemes — it requires a change in mindset, in families, in schools, and in society.

Women do not need sympathy — they need opportunity, respect, and equality.

19. The bar graph given below is based on a survey of 1,000 school students conducted in 2024, showing the level of awareness among Indian youth about various environmental issues. While the results show some encouraging signs, they also reveal serious gaps that need to be addressed. Using the data given in the graph along with your own ideas, write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “How Aware Are We About Our Environment?” analysing what the data suggests and urging students to become more informed and active about environmental protection.

**Awareness of Environmental Issues
Among Indian Youth**
Survey of 1,000 Students, 2024



Ans :

How Aware Are We About Our Environment?

By XYZ

A 2024 survey of 1,000 school students offers an interesting and important insight into how aware Indian youth are about the environmental challenges facing our planet. The results are a mixed picture — encouraging in some areas, but deeply concerning in others.

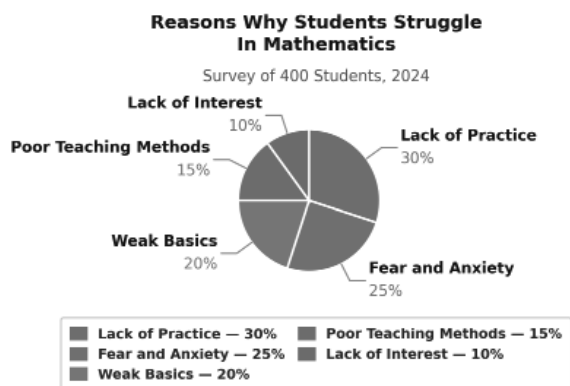
Encouragingly, 85 percent of students are aware of air pollution and 78 percent are aware of water pollution — issues they encounter daily. Plastic waste awareness stands at a reasonable 72 percent. However, awareness drops significantly

when it comes to deforestation at 60 percent, climate change at 55 percent, and most alarmingly, wildlife conservation at just 38 percent.

These gaps are worrying. Climate change and wildlife conservation are among the most serious long-term threats to our planet, yet they remain poorly understood by more than half of young people surveyed.

Schools must go beyond textbooks and bring environmental education to life through field trips, awareness campaigns, and student-led green initiatives. An aware youth is the planet's greatest hope.

20. The pie chart given below shows the findings of a survey conducted among 400 school students in 2024, which asked them about the main reasons they find Mathematics difficult. The results highlight both personal habits and systemic issues that need to be addressed. Using the data provided in the chart along with your own ideas, write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “Why Do Students Fear Mathematics — And How Can We Change That?” analysing the key reasons shown in the data and suggesting practical solutions to help students overcome their difficulties with the subject.



Ans :

Why Do Students Fear Mathematics — And How Can We Change That?

By XYZ

Mathematics is often called the queen of all sciences, yet for many students it is the subject they dread most. A 2024 survey of 400 students sheds light on exactly why this fear exists — and the findings are both revealing and fixable.

The survey shows that lack of regular practice is the single biggest reason students struggle, accounting for 30 percent of responses.

Close behind is fear and anxiety at 25 percent — a problem that feeds on itself, as fear leads to avoidance, and avoidance deepens fear. Weak basics and poor foundations account for 20 percent, while poor teaching methods and lack of interest contribute 15 and 10 percent respectively.

What these numbers tell us is that most students do not lack the ability to do Mathematics — they lack consistent practice, confidence, and proper foundational support.

Teachers must make classrooms safe spaces for making mistakes. Students must practice daily, however briefly. And parents must encourage rather than pressurize. Mathematics is not a wall — it is a door. With the right key, anyone can open it.



Mission — green spaces — citizen responsibility
— waste segregation — public awareness

Ans :

Clean City, Healthy Life

By Alisha

A clean city is not just aesthetically pleasing — it is a matter of life and health. Yet across India, millions of citizens wake up every day to choked roads, polluted rivers, overflowing garbage dumps, and air so thick with smog it burns the eyes. Our cities are sick, and the consequences for public health are severe.

Air pollution, contaminated drinking water, and poor waste management are responsible for a significant proportion of diseases in urban India. Children, the elderly, and the economically disadvantaged suffer the most, as they have the least ability to escape these environments.

The Swachh Bharat Mission has made a difference, but the work is far from over. Citizens must take responsibility — segregating waste, avoiding plastic, using public dustbins, and reporting illegal dumping. Local authorities must maintain drains, increase green cover, and strictly enforce pollution norms.

A clean city is every citizen's right — and every citizen's responsibility.

13. You are Rishabh/Riya of Bright Star School, Indore. You feel that the habit of reading newspapers every day is declining among young people and that this is having a negative effect on their awareness, knowledge, and ability to form opinions. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “Read a Newspaper — Know Your World” encouraging students to develop the daily habit of reading newspapers.

Hints: Declining newspaper reading — social media as news source — misinformation — benefits of newspapers — current affairs — vocabulary — general knowledge — competitive exams — disciplined habit

Ans :

Read a Newspaper — Know Your World

By Rishabh

In an age of instant notifications and social media feeds, most teenagers get their “news” from a ten-second video or a forwarded message on a chat group. The daily newspaper, once a fixture in every Indian home, is increasingly being ignored by the younger generation — and this is a loss far greater than it might seem.

Reading a newspaper every day builds a habit of disciplined thinking. It exposes students to a wide range of topics — politics, science, sports, culture, economics — presented with depth and accuracy that social media rarely offers. It improves vocabulary, sharpens reading comprehension, and is invaluable preparation for competitive examinations.

Equally important, newspapers help students develop the ability to question, analyse, and form their own informed opinions — a skill that is critical in today's world of rampant misinformation.

Spend fifteen minutes with a newspaper every morning — and watch how your world grows larger.

14. You are Tanvi/Tarun of Sunrise School, Jaipur. You recently noticed that a large number of students in your school are under enormous pressure during examination time and are adopting unhealthy coping methods. Write an article in 120–150 words for your school magazine on the topic “Beat Exam Stress the Right Way” offering practical and healthy advice to students on how to manage examination pressure effectively.

Hints: Causes of exam stress — irregular sleep — skipping meals — cramming — time management — regular breaks — exercise — talking to someone — positive thinking — preparation starts early

Ans :

Beat Exam Stress the Right Way

By Tanvi

As examinations approach, a familiar kind of panic sets in. Sleep becomes irregular, meals are skipped, textbooks pile up, and panic replaces preparation. For many students, exam time feels less like a test of knowledge and more like a test of survival. It does not have to be this way.

Exam stress, when managed well, can actually sharpen focus and motivate better performance. The key is to handle it in healthy and constructive ways rather than giving in to panic.

Start preparing early — do not leave everything for the last week. Make a realistic timetable and stick to it. Take short breaks every hour to let your brain rest. Sleep for at least seven to eight hours — a rested brain performs far better than an exhausted one. Eat nutritious meals and drink enough water.

Most importantly, talk to a friend, teacher, or parent if the pressure feels overwhelming. You are not alone — and asking for help is always a sign of strength, not weakness.

- C. **Conclusion (1 paragraph):** This is the final paragraph that brings the essay to a satisfying close. It summarises the main idea, gives a final thought, feeling, or lesson, and leaves the reader with something to think about. Never introduce any new idea in the conclusion.

To keep your writing seamless, use transition words to glue your ideas together. If you ever feel lost, just remember the simple “Tell” formula: Tell them what you will say (Introduction) → Say it (Body) → Tell them what you said (Conclusion).

4. HOW TO WRITE A DESCRIPTIVE ESSAY

A descriptive essay paints a picture with words. The goal is to use language so vividly that the reader feels they are actually experiencing the person, place, object, or event you are describing. The key is to appeal to the five senses: sight, sound, smell, touch, and taste.

1. **Decide Your Focus:** You cannot describe everything. Choose the most important or interesting aspects of your topic and describe those in depth. For example, if describing a fair, focus on the atmosphere, a few specific sights, and one or two experiences rather than trying to mention everything.
 2. **Use the Five Senses:** For every aspect you describe, ask: What does it look like? What sounds are there? What does it smell like? Is there a taste or texture? Specific sensory details make your description come alive. Avoid vague words like ‘nice’ or ‘beautiful’ — use specific words like ‘golden’, ‘sharp’, ‘fragrant’, ‘velvety’, or ‘thundering’.
 3. **Use Figurative Language:** Similes (as bright as the sun), metaphors (the road was a silver ribbon), and personification (the trees danced in the wind) make descriptions richer and more interesting. Use them naturally — do not force them in.
 4. **Organise Your Description Logically:** Move from general to specific, or from far to near, or from outside to inside. For example, when describing a place, first give a general view, then focus on specific details.
 5. **End with a Feeling or Reflection:** Always conclude with how the subject made you feel or what it made you think about. This gives the essay an emotional depth.
- Read your descriptive essay aloud. If it sounds flat or repetitive, replace ordinary words

with more precise and vivid ones. A thesaurus is your best friend!

5. HOW TO WRITE A NARRATIVE ESSAY

A narrative essay tells a story. It should have a clear beginning, middle, and end. The story should be engaging, personal, and should end with a lesson, reflection, or change in the narrator. Narrative essay questions often give a starting line, a theme, or a situation to build the story around.

1. **Choose a Meaningful Incident:** Whether the question gives you a starting line or a free topic, choose an incident that has a clear conflict, turning point, and resolution. Even a simple event can make a powerful essay if it has a strong message.
2. **Arrange Events in Chronological Order:** Narrative essays generally follow the order in which events happened. Use time markers like ‘first’, ‘then’, ‘soon after’, ‘suddenly’, ‘finally’, ‘by the time’, and ‘looking back’ to guide the reader.
3. **Show, Don’t Just Tell:** Instead of writing ‘I was nervous’, write ‘My hands trembled and I kept reading the same line of my notes without understanding a word.’ This technique — called ‘showing’ — makes the reader feel the emotion rather than just being told about it.
4. **Build to a Climax:** Every strong narrative has a most important moment — the climax — where the main event or conflict reaches its peak. Give this moment its due attention. The writing before it should build up to it naturally.
5. **End with Reflection:** A narrative essay always ends with what you learnt, how the experience changed you, or what message it carries. This final paragraph transforms a simple story into a meaningful essay.

Write narrative essays in the first person (I, we, my). Use one or two short lines of dialogue to make the story feel real and lively. For example: My grandfather looked at me and said, ‘Failure is not the end, my dear.’

6. POINTS TO REMEMBER

Keep the following important points in mind every time you write an essay in class or in the examination:

1. Always read the question carefully before you begin. Identify whether it is a descriptive

Ans :

A Visit to a Historical Monument

History can sometimes feel boring when we read it in textbooks. But when you actually stand in front of a historical monument, everything changes. Our school organised a trip to the Qutub Minar in Delhi last year, and it turned out to be one of the most interesting trips I have ever been on.

When our bus entered the complex, the first sight of the tall tower made all of us go quiet. The Qutub Minar is a very tall structure made of red sandstone. It is about 73 metres high and gets narrower as it goes up. The surface of the tower is covered with beautiful carvings and patterns. I could not believe that something so detailed and so large had been built so many hundreds of years ago without any modern machines.

We walked around the complex with our guide. He told us about the kings who had built the tower and the mosque nearby. He also showed us the famous Iron Pillar standing in the courtyard. He told us that this pillar has not rusted even after more than one thousand six hundred years. That fact amazed all of us.

Standing at the base of the Minar and looking up at it, I felt very proud. The afternoon sunlight was falling on the red stone and making it look even more beautiful.

When we got back on the bus, everyone was talking about what they had seen. That trip taught me that India has a very rich and great history. Reading about it in books is one thing, but seeing it with your own eyes is something else entirely.

5. Every person has a favourite season that they look forward to every year. Write a descriptive essay on 'My Favourite Season' in 200–250 words. Describe how the season looks, sounds, and smells, what changes it brings to nature and daily life, what activities or festivals you associate with it, and why it is your favourite. Use vivid and interesting language to bring the season to life for the reader.
Hints: crisp air, foggy mornings, warm woolens, golden sunlight, bare trees, bonfires, peanuts, Lohri / Makar Sankranti / Christmas, marigold flowers, hot cocoa, stars at night

Ans :

My Favourite Season

Every season has something special about it, but winter is my favourite season of all. There is

something about the cold air, warm clothes, and foggy mornings that makes me feel happy and comfortable.

Winter in my city starts around October and becomes colder through December and January. The mornings are the best part of winter for me. The sun rises late and a thick fog covers the streets and fields. Everything looks quiet and still. Trees have lost most of their leaves and their bare branches stand out clearly against the pale sky.

By afternoon, the sun comes out and the weather becomes pleasant and warm. People come out of their homes and sit in parks and open spaces to enjoy the sunshine. Children play outside in colourful sweaters and jackets. The smell of roasted peanuts and bonfires floats through the air in the evenings. It is a very familiar and comforting smell.

Winter is also the time of many festivals. Lohri, Makar Sankranti, and Christmas all fall in winter and bring with them lights, sweets, and celebrations. Markets are full of fresh vegetables like peas, carrots, and cauliflower. Marigold flowers bloom in gardens and add colour to the cold grey days.

At night, the cold becomes stronger. The sky is very clear and full of bright stars. I love lying under a warm quilt on winter nights with a cup of hot cocoa and a good book.

Winter makes me feel peaceful and happy. It is the season I look forward to the most every year.

NARRATIVE ESSAYS

6. Everyone has at least one journey that has stayed with them — not just because of where they went, but because of what they discovered along the way. Write a narrative essay on 'An Unforgettable Journey' in 200–250 words. Narrate where you went, what happened during or after the journey, what or whom you encountered, and most importantly what you learnt or how you changed as a result of the experience.

Hints: train journey, changing landscapes, grandfather's village, simple life, stories from the past, hard work, morning mist, birdsong, peace, new perspective

Ans :

An Unforgettable Journey

I have been on many trips with my family, but there is one journey that I will always remember. Last summer, my father and I travelled by train

and resources available, and what the library means to you personally. Make your description vivid and interesting for the readers.

Hints: large room, bookshelves, natural light, smell of books, silence, wooden tables, librarian, fiction and non-fiction sections, reference books, peaceful feeling

Ans :

Our School Library

Our school library is one of my favourite places in the whole school. Whenever I step inside, I feel calm and peaceful. All the noise and rush of the school corridors seems far away the moment I walk through its door.

The library is a large, well-lit room on the first floor of our school building. It has big windows on both sides that let in plenty of natural light. The room is lined with tall bookshelves on all sides. The books are arranged neatly and labelled clearly — fiction, science, history, geography, and many more sections. The smell of books fills the air and makes the place feel warm and comfortable.

In the centre of the room there are long wooden tables and chairs where students sit and read quietly. Everyone speaks in low voices or not at all. The only sounds you can hear are the soft turning of pages and the occasional scratch of a pencil. A friendly librarian sits at the front desk and helps students find the books they are looking for.

The library has a large collection of storybooks, reference books, magazines, and encyclopedias. Whether I want to read an adventure story or find information for a school project, I always find what I need here.

I try to visit the library during my free periods as often as I can. Reading here is a different experience from reading at home. It is quiet, focused, and enjoyable.

To me, our school library is not just a room full of books. It is a place where I can learn, imagine, and grow.

3. Last monsoon, you experienced a particularly heavy and memorable rainy day. Your class teacher has asked everyone to write a descriptive essay on 'A Rainy Day' in 200–250 words. Describe the weather, the sights and sounds around you, what you and your family did that day, and what made the day special or memorable. Use vivid sensory details to bring the day to life.

Hints: grey clouds, drumming rain, fresh earthy smell, streams in the street, paper boats, hot tea

and pakoras, school holiday, sparrows, rainbow, cosy feeling

Ans :

A Rainy Day

Rain always brings a special feeling with it. Last monsoon, there was one particularly heavy rainy day that I still remember very clearly.

I woke up that morning to the sound of heavy rain falling on the window. The sky outside was dark grey and covered with thick clouds. It looked more like evening than morning. Water was flowing down the road and collecting in puddles everywhere.

The air smelled fresh and earthy — the way it always does after rain. The trees outside were swaying in the wet wind and their leaves were shining with raindrops. A few small sparrows were sitting together under the roof of a nearby house, chirping quietly.

That day, our school was declared closed because of the heavy rainfall. My brother and I were very happy to hear this. We made small paper boats and put them in the puddles near our gate. We watched them float and race each other in the flowing water. Our mother made hot tea and crispy pakoras for us. We sat near the window, ate our snacks, and listened to the sound of the rain. It was one of the most cosy and enjoyable mornings I can remember.

By the afternoon, the rain had slowed down. The sky became a little brighter. Then we noticed a beautiful rainbow stretching across the sky in seven colours. Our neighbours also came out of their houses to look at it and everyone was smiling.

That rainy day was simple but very special. It reminded me that sometimes the best days are the ones that arrive without any planning.

4. Your school organised an educational trip to a famous historical monument in your city or state. You have been asked to write a descriptive essay on 'A Visit to a Historical Monument' in 200–250 words for the school newsletter. Describe what the monument looked like, what you learnt from your guide, how you felt standing before it, and what impression it left on you. Choose any monument you have visited or know about.

Hints: tall structure, red sandstone or white marble, carvings, guide's explanation, ancient history, Iron Pillar, pride, wonder, afternoon sunlight

or narrative essay and note any specific instructions.

2. Spend 2–3 minutes planning before writing. Jot down 3–4 main ideas in the margin. This prevents you from going off-topic.
3. Write in clear paragraphs — introduction, body, and conclusion. Do not write your essay as one long paragraph.
4. Every paragraph must have one main idea. Begin each paragraph with a topic sentence that tells the reader what the paragraph will be about.
5. Stay within the word limit of 200–250 words. Too short means you have not developed your ideas. Too long may mean you have gone off-topic.
6. Use a variety of sentence lengths. Mix short, punchy sentences with longer, descriptive ones for a natural and engaging flow.
7. Avoid repeating the same word too many times in the essay. Use synonyms to keep your language fresh and varied.
8. Use proper punctuation — full stops, commas, question marks, and exclamation marks — correctly. Poor punctuation makes even good ideas hard to read.
9. Do not use very informal language, slang, or text-message abbreviations in an essay.
10. Always write a conclusion. Many students run out of time and leave the essay without an ending — this always results in loss of marks.
11. Use linking words to connect sentences and paragraphs: however, therefore, as a result, on the other hand, in addition, for instance, above all.
12. Check your essay for spelling mistakes, grammatical errors, and missing words before submitting. A re-read of 1–2 minutes can save valuable marks.
13. The opening line of your essay is very important — it sets the tone. Avoid starting with ‘In this essay, I will write about...’ — instead, begin with an interesting statement, image, or question.
14. The CBSE examiner awards marks for content, organisation, and language. Work on all three, not just the content.

7. SOME IMPORTANT EXAMPLES

DESCRIPTIVE ESSAYS

1. You recently attended a colourful village fair during your winter holidays. Your English teacher has asked you to write a descriptive essay on ‘A Village Fair’ for the school magazine. Write the essay in 200–250 words describing the sights, sounds, smells, and the overall atmosphere of the fair. Also mention what you enjoyed most and how you felt when you left.

Hints: colourful stalls, balloons, food smells, giant wheel, puppet show, crowd, festive atmosphere, earthen toys, evening lights, feeling of joy

Ans :

A Village Fair

Last winter, I got the chance to attend a village fair in a small village near my hometown. It was a wonderful experience that I will not forget for a long time.

The fair was set up in a large open field. As soon as I entered, I saw bright red and yellow tents, colourful balloons, and flags moving in the cool breeze. The air was filled with the sweet smell of jalebi and roasted groundnuts. Vendors sat on both sides of the path and called out loudly to attract customers. They were selling everything from earthen pots to small toys.

In the centre of the fair there was a giant wheel. Children screamed and laughed with joy as it went round and round. Nearby, a crowd had gathered around a puppet show. The puppeteer made his puppets dance and talk in funny voices. Everyone watching was laughing and clapping.

Women in bright sarees and children in their best clothes moved from stall to stall. I bought a small clay doll and a bag of popcorn. In the evening, the fair became even more beautiful. Small lights were switched on everywhere and the whole ground glowed with colour. It looked very festive and cheerful.

When I walked home that night, I was tired but very happy. I realised that a village fair is not just a place to buy things. It is a place where people come together, enjoy themselves, and share happy moments with each other.

2. Your school magazine is publishing a special edition on school life. You have been asked to write a descriptive essay on ‘Our School Library’ in 200–250 words. Describe the physical appearance of the library, its atmosphere, the kind of books

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



to visit my grandfather who lives in a small village in the hills.

The train journey itself was very enjoyable. It was almost twelve hours long. I sat by the window and watched the scenery change slowly outside. First there were flat fields and small towns. Then the land started rising and I could see green forests and hills on both sides. The air coming through the window became cooler and fresher as we went further.

We reached my grandfather's village in the evening. He lives in a small, simple house on the side of a hill. That night, we sat together near a fire and he told me stories from his younger days. He told me how he used to walk several kilometres to school every day. He talked about how hard life was and how he worked very hard to give his family a better future. I listened quietly and felt very impressed by him.

The next morning I woke up early and stepped outside. There was mist on the hills and birds were singing all around. I stood there for a long time just looking at the view. I had never felt so calm and peaceful before.

When I came back home after a week, I felt different. I had learnt that a simple life can also be a happy life. I had a new respect for hard work and for the people who live quietly but honestly. That journey taught me more than I expected.

7. We are often too busy to notice the people around us who may need our help. Write a narrative essay in 200–250 words on 'A Day When I Helped Someone in Need'. Describe the situation you came across, who the person was and what they needed, what you did to help them, how the person reacted, and what the entire experience taught you. Make your narrative personal and honest.

Hints: old woman lost at market, confusion and fear, asking questions, finding address, auto-rickshaw, pocket money, her words of gratitude, lesson about kindness

Ans :

A Day When I Helped Someone in Need

I have always been told that helping others gives you a satisfaction that nothing else can. I truly understood this one ordinary Tuesday afternoon last November.

I was walking home from school, tired and thinking about lunch, when I noticed an old woman sitting on the pavement outside the market. She was holding a small bag and looking confused.

People walked past her without a second glance. Something made me stop.

I went up to her and asked if she was all right. She spoke in a trembling voice, telling me that she had come to the market to buy medicines but had lost her way and could not remember her house address. She seemed frightened. I sat with her and gently asked her questions — the name of her locality, any landmarks near her home. Slowly, with her help, I figured out where she lived.

I called my mother, told her I would be late, and walked the old woman to a nearby auto-rickshaw stand. I explained her address to the driver and paid the fare from my pocket money. She held my hand, smiled warmly, and said, "God bless you, son."

That simple sentence stayed with me all evening. That day, I understood that helping someone does not always require great resources or heroic acts. Sometimes, all it takes is stopping when everyone else walks on.

8. Your school has asked students to contribute to a creative writing contest on the theme 'A Decision That Changed My Life'. Using the opening line — 'One decision changed everything.' — write a narrative essay in 200–250 words. Develop the story from this opening, describing what situation you faced, what the decision was, how difficult it was to make, what happened after you made it, and what it ultimately taught you about yourself.
Hints: fear of public speaking, class debate, teacher's encouragement, two weeks of practice, mirror practice, father's support, stage fright, second place, confidence, courage

Ans :

A Decision That Changed My Life

One decision changed everything. It was the day I chose to participate in the school debate competition, even though I was terrified of speaking in front of people.

I had always sat in the audience during school events, watching others speak, clap, and win prizes, telling myself I could never do the same. My hands would tremble and my voice would vanish at the mere thought of standing on a stage. When my class teacher encouraged me to enter the debate, my first instinct was to say no.

But something made me say yes.

The next two weeks were difficult. I practised alone in my room, in front of the mirror, in the bathroom, on the way to school. I made notes, crossed them out, rewrote them. My father

I walked home that day with a heavy heart but also a happy one. I realised that we never truly value the time we have until it is gone. That was the most important lesson that last day of school taught me.

2. Write a narrative essay in 200–250 words on ‘The Best Gift I Ever Received’. This gift need not be expensive or bought from a shop — it could be a kind word, a book, a letter, or something handmade. Describe who gave you the gift, on what occasion, what the gift was, how you felt when you received it, and why it is still important to you.

Hints: unexpected gift, occasion it was given, your reaction, the meaning behind it, lesson about love being more valuable than money

Ans :

The Best Gift I Ever Received

I have received many gifts in my life — toys, games, books, and clothes. But the gift I treasure the most did not come wrapped in paper or tied with a ribbon. It was a simple handwritten letter from my grandfather, which I found under my pillow on the morning of my twelfth birthday.

That year had not been a good one for me. I had done very badly in my mid-term exams and was feeling ashamed and low. I did not want to talk to anyone, not even my grandfather who lived in another state.

When I found the letter and opened it, I read something I did not expect. My grandfather wrote about a time when he himself had failed an important examination. He wrote about how sad and embarrassed he had felt. And then he wrote, “Failure is not the end of the road, my dear. It is just a bump on it.”

I read those words again and again. I felt as if a heavy weight had been lifted from my shoulders. That evening, I opened my books and started studying — something I had not done in weeks.

That letter gave me something far more valuable than any toy or gadget ever could. It gave me hope and confidence when I needed it most. I still keep it safely in my drawer. It is, without any doubt, the best gift I have ever received.

3. ‘Mistakes are our best teachers.’ Write a narrative essay of 200–250 words based on this idea. Narrate a personal incident where you made a mistake, what happened as a result, how others reacted, and most importantly what the experience taught you about yourself and about life.

Hints: overconfidence, wrong decision, unexpected result, regret, reflection, changed behaviour, doing better next time

Ans :

Mistakes Are Our Best Teachers

The night before my Social Science test, I sat on my bed feeling very confident. “I already know this chapter well,” I told myself. “I do not need to revise.” I switched off my study lamp, watched television for an hour, and went to sleep early.

The next morning, I sat in the exam hall and opened the question paper. My confidence disappeared in seconds. There were questions on diagrams I had never looked at carefully and dates I had completely forgotten. I tried my best but I knew I had not done well.

When the answer sheets were returned, I saw the number written in red at the top — 11 out of 30. My teacher had written next to it, “You can do much better than this.”

Those words hurt more than the marks. I went home quietly and sat alone in my room for a long time. I thought about what had gone wrong. The answer was simple and uncomfortable — I had been too lazy and too proud. I had thought that listening in class was enough. It was not.

After that day, I changed the way I studied. I started revising every chapter before every test, even the ones I thought I already knew. In the next term, I scored very well in the same subject.

That one bad result taught me more than ten good ones ever had. Mistakes are painful, but they are also our best teachers — if we are willing to learn from them.

4. Write a narrative essay in 200–250 words on ‘An Act of Bravery I Witnessed’. Describe the situation clearly, who the brave person was, what they did, what the result was, how people around you reacted, and what the incident made you think about courage.

Hints: accident or emergency, people standing and watching, one person who acted quickly, result of the action, crowd’s reaction, your thoughts on real bravery

Ans :

An Act of Bravery I Witnessed

I always thought that brave people were special — that courage was something only certain people were born with. One afternoon last winter, a boy from my neighbourhood showed me that I was completely wrong.

EXERCISE

DESCRIPTIVE ESSAYS

1. Every year, your school organises a Science and Technology Exhibition in which students from all classes display their projects and experiments. This year, you were part of the organising committee. Write a descriptive essay on 'Our School Science Exhibition' in 200–250 words for your school newsletter. Describe the various exhibits and experiments on display, the atmosphere in the hall, how students and teachers reacted, and what you personally enjoyed or learnt from the event.

Hints: decorated hall, working models, students explaining projects, electricity experiments, robots, volcano model, curious visitors, teacher appreciation, pride and excitement

Ans :

Our School Science Exhibition

Science has always been one of my favourite subjects, but our school's Annual Science Exhibition last month showed me just how talented and creative my classmates are. It was truly a memorable event.

The school hall looked completely different that day. Colourful charts and posters decorated the walls. Tables were arranged neatly in rows, and each one had a working model or experiment on display. As soon as I walked in, I could hear the hum of machines and see blinking lights everywhere. The atmosphere was full of energy and excitement.

Our class had made a working model of a hydroelectric dam. My friend Rajat explained to the visitors how flowing water can be used to produce electricity. People stopped and listened with great interest. In another section, students from Class 10 had built a small robot that could pick up objects. Almost everyone crowded around it.

Other exhibits were also very impressive. There was a model of the solar system with small lights for each planet, a chemistry experiment using vinegar and baking soda, and a model of a volcano that erupted with red foam. That volcano attracted the most visitors of all.

Teachers walked around the hall asking questions and praising students. Everyone looked proud of their work.

When I walked out at the end, I felt very happy and inspired. The exhibition taught me

that science is not just about reading from books. It is about thinking, creating, and experimenting with the world around us.

2. You recently visited a busy street market in your city or town — either alone or with your family. This could be a vegetable market, a weekly bazaar, a handicraft market, or any busy shopping area. Write a descriptive essay titled 'A Busy Street Market' in 200–250 words. Use sensory details — what you saw, heard, smelled, and felt — to help the reader experience the market along with you. Describe the types of goods sold, the vendors, the crowd, and what impression the market left on you.

Hints: colourful stalls, shouting vendors, smell of spices and flowers, bargaining, fruits and vegetables, clothes and bangles, narrow lanes, crowded, noise and energy, lively atmosphere

Ans :

A Busy Street Market

Last Sunday, I went with my mother to the weekly market near our locality. I had been there before, but that day I paid more attention to everything around me — and I realised what a lively and interesting place it truly is.

The market was set up along both sides of a narrow lane. Vegetable sellers sat behind large piles of fresh produce — green peas, bright orange carrots, tomatoes, spinach, and coriander. The smell of fresh vegetables mixed with the smell of flowers and spices in the air. It was a pleasant and familiar smell.

The vendors called out loudly to attract customers. "Fresh tomatoes, only five rupees!" shouted one man. "Best brinjals here!" answered his neighbour. There was a constant noise of bargaining, chatting, and the clinking of bangles from a nearby stall.

Customers moved from stall to stall, picking up vegetables, checking prices, and bargaining. Women carefully compared the quality of goods before buying. Children held on to their mothers and looked around with wide eyes. An old man quietly bargained for a bunch of bananas.

On one side, cloth sellers had spread out colourful sarees and dupattas. On another, a man was selling plastic toys and small household items.

By the time we finished our shopping and started walking home, I felt that the market was much more than just a place to buy things. It was a busy, noisy, colourful slice of everyday life.

3. Trees are one of the most important gifts of nature to mankind. Your school has started a 'Save Our Trees' campaign and has asked every student to write an essay for the campaign poster board. Write a descriptive essay on 'The Importance of Trees in Our Life' in 200–250 words. Describe the various ways in which trees are essential to our survival and well-being, what would happen if trees disappeared, and what we as individuals can do to protect them.

Hints: oxygen, shade and shelter, rainfall, preventing soil erosion, fruits and medicines, home for birds and animals, reducing pollution, planting drives, emotional and spiritual value

Ans :

The Importance of Trees in Our Life

Trees are one of the greatest gifts that nature has given us. We see them every day — on roadsides, in gardens, in forests — but we rarely stop to think about how important they truly are. Without trees, life on earth would simply not be possible.

The most important thing trees give us is oxygen. Every tree absorbs carbon dioxide from the air and releases fresh oxygen in return. In cities where there is a lot of pollution from vehicles and factories, trees help to clean the air and make it safer to breathe.

Trees also give us shade, fruit, and wood. Their roots hold the soil firmly in place and stop it from being washed away by rain. Forests help bring rainfall to nearby areas. Many medicines used to treat diseases are also made from the leaves, bark, and roots of trees. Birds and animals depend on trees for their food and shelter.

However, today trees are being cut down at a very fast rate to make space for buildings, roads, and farms. This is causing serious problems — temperatures are rising, rainfall is decreasing, and many animals are losing their homes.

We must all do our part to protect trees. We should plant trees in our gardens, schools, and neighbourhoods. We should avoid wasting paper. We should support campaigns that work to save forests.

A tree takes years to grow but can be cut down in minutes. Let us value what we have before it is too late.

4. Your school magazine is publishing a special edition on 'Technology in Our Daily Life'. You have been asked to write a descriptive essay on 'Mobile Phones — A Blessing or a Curse?' in 200–250 words. Describe how mobile phones

have become part of everyday life, what benefits they offer, what problems they cause especially for young people, and what the right way to use them is.

Hints: communication, internet, online learning, entertainment, social media, distraction from studies, health problems, eye strain, addiction, cyberbullying, responsible use, screen time, balance

Ans :

Mobile Phones — A Blessing or a Curse?

It is hard to imagine life today without a mobile phone. Whether it is a student checking his school timetable, a mother video-calling her son in another city, or a farmer looking up the weather, mobile phones have become part of almost everyone's daily life. But are they always good for us? That is the real question.

Mobile phones have many benefits. They help us stay in touch with family and friends no matter how far away they are. Students can use them to search for information, watch educational videos, and prepare for exams. During the Covid lockdown, mobile phones and the internet kept studies going when schools were closed. In an emergency, a phone can help us reach a doctor, the police, or our family very quickly.

But mobile phones also cause problems, especially for students. Many young people spend hours every day watching videos, playing games, or scrolling through social media instead of studying or playing outside. This harms their studies and wastes their time. Looking at a screen for too long causes eye strain, headaches, and poor sleep. Some students also face cyberbullying online, which can be very stressful and upsetting.

The answer is not to stop using mobile phones altogether. The answer is to use them carefully. We should decide how much time we spend on our phones each day, avoid using them during study time, and use them mainly for learning and communication.

A mobile phone is a very useful invention. Whether it helps us or harms us depends completely on how we choose to use it.

5. Your school has organised a poster-making and essay-writing competition on 'Water Pollution — A Growing Threat' as part of Environment Week. Write a descriptive essay in 200–250 words. Describe what water pollution is, what causes it, what effects it has on humans, animals, and the environment, and what steps can be taken to

reduce it.

Hints: industrial waste in rivers, plastic and garbage dumping, untreated sewage, dying fish and aquatic life, diseases in humans, contaminated drinking water, banning plastic, treatment plants, individual responsibility

Ans :

Water Pollution — A Growing Threat

Water is one of the most important things needed for life. We drink it, cook with it, and use it every day. But today, the water in our rivers, lakes, and ponds is becoming more and more polluted. This is a very serious problem that we cannot ignore.

Water pollution happens when harmful things are mixed into water and make it dirty and unsafe. Factories release chemical waste directly into rivers. Cities dump large amounts of untreated sewage into water bodies. Farmers use fertilisers and pesticides on their fields, and these chemicals slowly seep into the groundwater. People also throw plastic bags, bottles, and garbage into rivers and ponds without thinking about the damage they cause.

The effects of water pollution are very harmful. Fish and other water animals die when their water becomes poisonous. When people drink or use polluted water, they fall ill with diseases like typhoid, cholera, and diarrhoea. Children are affected the most. In many parts of India, people do not even have access to clean drinking water.

We need to act quickly to solve this problem. Factories should be made to treat their waste properly before releasing it. Cities need better sewage treatment systems. The use of plastic should be reduced. Each one of us should stop throwing garbage near water bodies.

Clean water is not just our need. It is our right. We must protect it for ourselves and for the generations that will come after us.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

6. Imagine you are standing alone at the edge of a dense forest early one morning as part of a school nature trip. Write a descriptive essay titled 'A Morning in the Forest' in 200–250 words. Describe what you see, hear, smell, and feel. Describe the mood of the forest and what thoughts or feelings it creates in you.

Hints: early morning mist, tall trees, birdsong, rustling leaves, damp soil smell, sunlight through branches, distant waterfall, deer or wildlife, silence and peace, feeling of wonder

Ans :

A Morning in the Forest

Our school had organised a nature trip to a forest area near the city. On the first morning, I woke up early and walked to the edge of the forest alone. What I experienced in the next hour was something I had never felt before.

The forest was very quiet at that time. The sun had just begun to rise and a light mist covered the ground between the trees. The air was cool and fresh, and it smelled of wet soil and leaves. It was a clean, earthy smell that felt very different from the air in the city.

Slowly, the forest began to wake up. Birds started to call out from the branches above. Some had sweet, musical calls and others had short, sharp ones. I stood still and just listened. Somewhere in the distance I could hear the faint sound of water, probably a small stream.

As I walked slowly along the path, the leaves rustled gently in the breeze. Suddenly I heard a sound in the bushes nearby. I stopped. A spotted deer stepped out carefully, looked at me for a moment with its large calm eyes, and then quietly walked back into the trees.

After some time, the sun rose higher and rays of light began to come through the leaves and fall on the ground.

I felt very peaceful standing there. The forest showed me that nature has a beauty and a silence that cannot be found anywhere else.

7. Mobile phones and the internet have completely changed the way people live, learn, and communicate. Your class teacher has asked you to write a descriptive essay on 'The Internet — A Window to the World' in 200–250 words. Describe what the internet has made possible, how it has changed daily life, what its advantages and disadvantages are, and how students can use it responsibly.

Hints: online learning, video calls, news from around the world, shopping, entertainment, social media, false information, addiction, screen time, using it wisely

Ans :

The Internet — A Window to the World

Just a few years ago, if you wanted to find information about something, you had to go to a library and search through many books. If you wanted to talk to a relative living far away, you had to wait for a letter or make an expensive

shoulder and said quietly, “We are very proud of you.”

I had not won the competition, but those words meant more to me than any trophy. I had worked hard, faced my fear, and given my best. That, I realised, is what truly makes a parent proud.

7. Write a narrative essay in 200–250 words based on the following opening line: “I never believed in second chances — until that afternoon when my neighbour knocked on our door with a request I could not refuse.” Describe who your neighbour was, what they wanted, why it was difficult for you to say yes, what happened after you helped, and what you learnt.

Hints: old conflict with neighbour, unexpected request, difficulty in agreeing, helping despite feelings, positive outcome, lesson about forgiving and letting go

Ans :

The Power of a Second Chance

I never believed in second chances — until that afternoon when my neighbour knocked on our door with a request I could not refuse.

My neighbour, Mr Tiwari, was an elderly man I had been avoiding for nearly a year. The previous summer, a cricket ball had accidentally broken his window. He had spoken very rudely to my father about it, and I had never forgotten that.

So when I opened the door and saw him standing there with his young grandson, I was not happy. He looked uncomfortable. He explained politely that his grandson needed help with his English homework and there was no one at home who could assist him. He had heard that I was good at English.

I wanted to say no. But the little boy was looking at me with such hopeful eyes that I could not turn him away.

“Come in,” I said.

We sat together and finished the homework in about an hour. The boy was happy and kept saying thank you. Mr Tiwari sat quietly nearby. When we were done, he cleared his throat and said, “I was rude to your father last year. I am sorry for that.”

It was clearly not easy for him to say those words.

I felt the anger I had been carrying for a year simply go away. I learnt that day that forgiving

someone is not a sign of weakness. It actually makes you feel much lighter inside.

8. Your class teacher has asked students to write a narrative essay for English Week on the theme ‘The Moment I Discovered My Talent’. Describe when and how you found out you had a special ability, who encouraged you, how it made you feel, and what it has meant for you since then.

Hints: ordinary situation where talent appeared unexpectedly, teacher’s or friend’s encouragement, surprise at yourself, exploring the talent more, growth in confidence

Ans :

The Moment I Discovered My Talent

For a long time, I believed I had no special talent. My friends were good at cricket, drawing, singing, or maths. I was average at everything and had accepted that about myself.

Then one day in Class 7, our English teacher Mrs Das gave us an unusual task. She asked us to write a short story on any topic in less than one page. Most students finished quickly and handed it in. I sat staring at the blank page for a while, and then I started writing. I wrote a story about a boy who finds out that the old tree in his garden is hiding a secret.

Two days later, Mrs Das read a story out to the whole class without saying whose it was. Everyone listened quietly. When she finished, students laughed and said they had really enjoyed it. Then she asked who had written it. I slowly raised my hand.

After class, Mrs Das called me aside. She said, “You write very well. You should keep writing.”

Those words changed something in me. That evening I wrote two more stories. Then a poem. Then an essay. I realised I had been sitting on a talent without even knowing it was there.

I learnt that day that we often do not discover what we are good at until someone gives us the chance to try. A single kind word from a teacher can open a door that changes your life.

9. Write a narrative essay in 200–250 words on ‘How I Overcame My Fear’. Describe what your fear was and where it came from, how it affected your life, what made you decide to face it, what happened when you confronted it, and how you feel now.

Hints: origin of the fear, avoiding situations because of it, turning point, step by step facing the fear, feeling of pride and relief afterwards

without them, more gas stays in the air.

The effects of global warming are very serious. Glaciers in the Himalayas and other mountain ranges are melting fast. This is causing sea levels to rise, which can flood cities near the coast. Weather has also become more extreme — summers are hotter, rains are heavier, and droughts last longer. Many animals and birds are losing their homes as forests and habitats change.

We can all do something to help. Governments should use more solar and wind energy instead of coal and petrol. Industries must reduce the smoke and gases they release. Each one of us can help by saving electricity, planting trees, and using public transport.

Global warming is a problem that affects every living thing on earth. If we act now, we can still make a difference.

10. A dream home means different things to different people. Some dream of a mansion in a city, others dream of a small cottage in the hills or a house by the sea. Write a descriptive essay on 'My Ideal Home' in 200–250 words. Describe where your ideal home would be, what it would look like from the outside and inside, what special features it would have, and why this kind of home appeals to you.

Hints: location, size and appearance, garden or courtyard, reading corner or library, open windows and natural light, kitchen, peaceful surroundings, feeling of comfort and belonging

Ans :

My Ideal Home

Everyone has a dream home in their mind. When I close my eyes and imagine mine, I do not see a big mansion or a luxury apartment. I see a simple, comfortable house on a hillside, surrounded by trees and fresh air.

My ideal home would be a small stone house with a sloping roof. It would have a wide open porch at the front where I could sit in the morning with a cup of tea and look at the green valley below. There would be a small garden with flowers like roses, marigolds, and jasmine. A large shady tree in the garden would be perfect for sitting under on a warm afternoon.

Inside, the house would be simple but cosy. Every room would have large windows to let in plenty of sunlight and fresh air. The living room would have a small bookshelf, a comfortable sofa, and a fireplace for cold winter evenings. There would be a small quiet corner with a reading lamp

and a few shelves of books — my favourite place in the whole house.

The kitchen would always smell of fresh food being cooked. The bedrooms would be peaceful and simple, with soft quilts and a view of the trees outside.

What I want most in my ideal home is not expensive furniture or fancy decoration. I want a place that feels warm, peaceful, and truly mine. A place where I can read, rest, and feel completely at home.

NARRATIVE ESSAYS

1. Your school magazine is running a special column called 'Memories That Matter', where students are invited to share meaningful stories from their lives. Write a narrative essay in 200–250 words beginning with the following line: "It was the last day of school, and none of us knew just how much things were about to change..." Describe the events of that day, the emotions you felt, what made the day special, and the lesson you carried home with you.

Hints: farewell atmosphere, friends and laughter, teacher's emotional speech, signing diaries, uncertainty about future, promise to stay in touch, value of time

Ans :

Memories That Matter : The Final Bell

It was the last day of school, and none of us knew just how much things were about to change.

I got ready that morning just like any other day. But the moment I reached school, I could feel that something was different. Students were standing in small groups, talking softly. There was laughter, but everyone also looked a little sad.

Our class teacher, Mr Verma, came in and stood quietly in front of us for a moment. Then he said, "I have taught many students, but this class will always be special to me." A few students started crying. I felt a lump in my throat too.

We spent the rest of the day signing each other's notebooks and diaries. Even students who had fought with each other were shaking hands and smiling. We took photographs near the playground, in the corridors, and under the big peepal tree in the school garden.

When the final bell rang, no one moved for a few seconds. Then slowly, one by one, we walked out. I stopped at the gate and looked back at the school building. I had spent five years of my life here.

phone call. Today, both of these things can be done in seconds, thanks to the internet.

The internet has changed almost every part of our lives. Students can now watch lessons taught by good teachers from anywhere in the world. They can read books, take part in online competitions, and find information on any topic within minutes. During the Covid lockdown, the internet made it possible for students to continue their studies from home.

The internet has also changed the way we communicate. Families separated by thousands of kilometres can see and talk to each other through video calls. News from around the world reaches us instantly. We can shop, pay bills, and even consult doctors online.

However, the internet also has a negative side. A lot of false information spreads online, and it is not always easy to tell what is true. Many students waste hours on social media and online games instead of studying. Spending too much time on screens is also bad for our eyes and our health.

The internet is a very powerful tool. If we use it carefully and wisely, it can help us learn and grow. But if we misuse it, it can waste our time and harm us.

8. Your physical education teacher has asked you to write a descriptive essay on 'The Importance of Exercise and Sports in a Student's Life' in 200–250 words. Describe the physical, mental, and social benefits of regular exercise and sport, what happens when young people avoid physical activity, and why schools and parents should encourage active lifestyles.

Hints: strong body and bones, stress relief, better concentration in studies, teamwork and discipline, obesity and laziness from inactivity, outdoor games vs screen time, morning exercise, role models in sport

Ans :

The Importance of Exercise and Sports in a Student's Life

We have all heard the saying — “A healthy body has a healthy mind.” This is completely true. Regular exercise and participation in sports are very important for every student, not just for the body but also for the mind.

When we exercise regularly, our body becomes stronger. Our muscles and bones develop well, our heart stays healthy, and we fall ill less often. Students who play outdoor sports have

more energy and can concentrate better in class. Exercise also reduces stress and improves our mood. After a good game of cricket or football, most students feel relaxed and happy.

Sports also teach us important life skills. When we play in a team, we learn to work together and support each other. We learn how to handle both winning and losing. We learn discipline, because sports require regular practice and commitment. These are qualities that help us not just in school but throughout our lives.

On the other hand, students who do not exercise and spend all their time sitting in front of screens often become unfit and lazy. They put on weight, feel tired easily, and find it hard to focus on their studies. Health problems like obesity and back pain, which were once seen only in adults, are now becoming common in teenagers too.

Schools should make sure that sports and physical education are taken seriously. Parents should encourage their children to play outside every day. A student who is fit and active will always perform better — in school and in life.

9. Your school is observing 'Environment Awareness Week' and has asked every student to write an essay for the school notice board. Write a descriptive essay on 'Global Warming — A Threat to Our Planet' in 200–250 words. Describe what global warming is, what causes it, what effects it is having on nature and human life, and what steps can be taken to control it.

Hints: greenhouse gases, burning of fuels, rising temperatures, melting glaciers, rising sea levels, floods and droughts, cutting of trees, solar energy, planting trees, individual responsibility

Ans :

Global Warming — A Threat to Our Planet

We have all heard the phrase “global warming” many times, but do we truly understand how serious it is? Global warming means the slow rise in the temperature of the Earth. Over the past hundred years, the earth has been getting warmer, and the effects of this are now clearly visible all around us.

The main cause of global warming is the increase of harmful gases like carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. These gases are released when we burn coal, petrol, and wood. They rise into the sky and form a layer that traps the heat of the sun, making the earth warmer than it should be. Cutting down forests also makes the problem worse, because trees absorb carbon dioxide and

I was walking home from school when I heard shouting near the pond at the edge of our colony. A little girl of about six years had fallen into the water. She was splashing and crying, clearly panicking. The water was not very deep, but she could not stand up.

Several adults were standing on the bank. They were shouting and pointing but no one was moving. Then a boy named Arjun, who was in Class 10 in my school, dropped his school bag, took off his shoes, and jumped into the pond without saying a word. He was not a trained swimmer. He just acted.

He reached the girl quickly, held her firmly, and brought her to the edge. People on the bank pulled them both out. The girl cried and held on to her mother. Arjun sat on the grass, completely wet, looking more embarrassed than proud.

Everyone clapped and thanked him. He just shrugged and said, "Somebody had to do it."

Those five simple words stayed with me for a long time. I understood that day that bravery is not about being fearless. It is about doing what needs to be done, even when others are standing still.

5. You have been invited to contribute to your school's annual magazine under the theme 'A Journey Worth Taking'. Write a narrative essay of 200–250 words on 'A Journey That Changed My Perspective'. Describe where you went, what you saw or experienced, who you met, and how the journey changed the way you think.

Hints: unexpected experience, simple village life, people without many comforts, contrast with city life, moment of realisation, returning home differently

Ans :

A Journey That Changed My Perspective

Last summer, my family visited a small village in the hills for four days. I was not very excited about the trip. I was used to the city — malls, fast food, and the internet. I could not imagine enjoying a place with none of these things. But that trip turned out to be one of the most eye-opening experiences of my life.

The village had no cinema, no big shops, and electricity for only a few hours each day. When I first arrived, I felt sorry for the people living there. I thought they must be unhappy without the things I considered so important.

But I was completely wrong.

The children played in the open fields from morning until dark, laughing and running freely. Neighbours cooked together and shared food without being asked. An old woman walked a long distance every morning to collect water and sang to herself while doing it. Nobody was in a hurry. Nobody looked stressed or unhappy.

One evening I asked the old man whose house we were staying in whether he ever wished he lived in a city. He smiled warmly and said, "Why would I? Everything I need is right here."

I kept thinking about those words on the entire journey back home.

That trip taught me that happiness does not come from having more things. It comes from being satisfied with what you have. It was a lesson no classroom had ever taught me so clearly.

6. Write a narrative essay in 200–250 words on 'The Day I Made My Parents Proud'. It does not have to be about winning a prize. It could be about an honest act, a performance, or simply doing the right thing. Describe what you did, how you felt, and the moment you realised your parents were proud of you.

Hints: a challenge you faced, effort and preparation, the day of the event, parents' words or expression, achievement that felt truly earned

Ans :

The Day I Made My Parents Proud

I had always dreamed of making my parents proud. But I never imagined it would happen the way it did — not by coming first in class, but by simply having the courage to try.

I was asked to take part in an inter-school elocution competition at very short notice because another student had fallen ill. The topic was 'The Importance of Honesty'. I had only one week to prepare.

Every evening I practised in the living room. My father listened carefully and helped me with difficult words. My mother told me to speak slowly and look at the audience. Some nights I felt like giving up because I was sure the other participants would be far better than me.

On the day of the competition, my hands were shaking as I walked up to the microphone. I took a deep breath and began. I did not forget a single line. My voice was steady. When I finished, the audience clapped.

I did not win first place. I came third.

But when I came out of the hall, my mother hugged me tightly. My father put his hand on my

listened patiently to my arguments each evening and told me where I could improve.

On the day of the competition, my heart was pounding as I stood at the podium. But the moment I spoke my first sentence, something shifted. My voice steadied. The words came. I spoke with a confidence I did not know I had.

I did not win first place — I came second. But standing there, holding that certificate, I felt like a champion. That day, I discovered that courage is not the absence of fear. It is choosing to act despite it.

9. Getting lost, even for a short while, can be a frightening and eye-opening experience. Write a narrative essay in 200–250 words titled ‘The Day I Got Lost’. Describe clearly where you got separated from your family or group, what you felt in those moments, how you stayed calm or tried to get help, how the situation was resolved, and what two important lessons the experience taught you for life.

Hints: railway station, toy shop distraction, parents not visible, panic, loud announcement system, policeman/railway official, reunion with mother, tight hug, lesson about safety

Ans :

The Day I Got Lost

I was eight years old when I got lost at a railway station, and even today, more than seven years later, that memory sends a chill down my spine.

My family was travelling to my aunt’s house by train. The station was crowded and noisy. At one point, I got distracted by a toy shop near the platform entrance and wandered off without telling anyone. When I turned around, my parents were nowhere to be seen.

Panic set in immediately. The station seemed enormous — rushing passengers, blaring announcements, clattering trolleys. I stood frozen, not knowing which way to go. Tears blurred my vision. I thought I had lost my family forever.

Then I remembered what my father had once told me: if you are lost, go to a railway official or a policeman. I spotted a uniformed man near the inquiry counter and ran to him. He was kind and calm. He took me to the Station Master’s office and made an announcement over the public address system.

Within ten minutes, my mother came running, her face pale with worry. She hugged me so tightly that I could barely breathe.

That experience taught me two important

lessons. First, never wander off from your family in crowded places. Second, in moments of fear, the right action is always better than panic. I have never forgotten either lesson.

10. Starting at a new school mid-year can be one of the most nervous and challenging experiences for a student. Write a narrative essay on ‘My First Day at a New School’ in 200–250 words. Describe why you had to change schools, how you felt on the morning of your first day, what happened during the day — both the difficult parts and the pleasant surprises — and what the day finally taught you about people and new beginnings.

Hints: father’s transfer, new uniform, unfamiliar campus, kind teacher’s introduction, sitting alone at lunch, a classmate’s kindness, sharing a joke, certificate of first day courage, hopeful feeling

Ans :

My First Day at a New School

My father was transferred when I was in Class 6, and I had to change schools mid-session. I still remember my first day at the new school as one of the most nerve-wracking days of my life.

That morning, I woke up with a knot in my stomach. I barely touched my breakfast. The new uniform felt stiff and unfamiliar. As my mother dropped me at the school gate, I looked at the large, busy campus and felt very small and alone.

My class teacher, Mrs Sharma, was warm and welcoming. She introduced me to the class and asked everyone to make me feel at home. Some students nodded politely; others barely looked up from their notebooks. I sat at an empty desk near the window, not knowing what to do with my hands.

During the lunch break, I sat alone, watching other children laugh and run around. Then a girl from my class, Ananya, walked up to me and asked if I wanted to sit with her group. That small act of kindness changed my entire day.

By the time the final bell rang, I had laughed at a joke, borrowed a pencil, and been told about the best teacher and the worst canteen food. I walked out feeling lighter than I had in the morning.

My first day taught me that courage and one act of kindness from a stranger can turn a frightening beginning into a hopeful one.



Ans :

How I Overcame My Fear

Ever since I was six years old, I had been terrified of water. It had started at a birthday party when I accidentally slipped into the deep end of a swimming pool. I was pulled out immediately and was not hurt, but the fear of that moment stayed with me for years.

After that, I avoided swimming pools completely. On school trips to water parks, I sat on a bench and watched while my friends enjoyed themselves. I made up excuses every time. Deep inside, I was ashamed of my fear, but I did not know how to get over it.

In Class 8, our school made swimming classes compulsory. I had no choice but to go.

On the first day, I stood at the edge of the pool gripping the railing, my heart beating fast. Our swimming coach saw that I was scared. He did not push me in or make fun of me. He just asked me to sit on the steps and let the water touch my feet. That was all.

Day by day, he helped me go a little deeper. He was always patient and always nearby. After three weeks, I swam across the width of the pool on my own. I could not stop smiling.

I learnt that fear does not go away by running from it. The only way to beat a fear is to face it — slowly, one small step at a time.

10. Write a narrative essay in 200–250 words on ‘A Surprising Discovery I Made About Myself’. Describe the situation that led to the discovery, what you found out about yourself, how others reacted, and how it has changed the way you see yourself.

Hints: unexpected situation, a hidden quality revealed, others’ surprise and encouragement, new confidence, change in how you think about yourself

Ans :

A Surprising Discovery I Made About Myself

I had always been a quiet student who stayed in the background. In group projects and school activities, I was happy to follow instructions and let others take charge. I never thought of myself as a leader. Not even close.

That changed during the preparations for our Class 9 Annual Day.

Our group leader fell ill just two days before our skit was to be performed. Our costumes were not ready, the backdrop was not painted, and we

had not fully rehearsed. Everyone in the group looked at each other not knowing what to do.

I am not sure what happened in that moment, but something made me step forward. I picked up the rehearsal schedule and called everyone together. I divided the work — two people for costumes, two for the backdrop, and the rest to rehearse the lines. I made sure everyone was doing their part and helped solve disagreements when they came up.

On the day of the performance, our skit went smoothly. It was not perfect, but it was done. The audience clapped.

After it was over, my friend Priya said to me, “You should lead every time. Why have you never done this before?”

I did not have an answer.

But I understood something important that day. I had always told myself I was not a leader simply because I had never tried. The ability had been inside me all along. I just needed the right moment to find it.



37. Interested – curious, attentive, engaged
38. Insist – demand, urge, press
39. Courtyard – open space, enclosed area, patio
40. Gather – collect, assemble, come together
41. Discuss – talk about, debate, converse
42. Understood – comprehended, grasped, realized
43. Debate – discussion, argument, dispute
44. Neighbouring – nearby, adjacent, bordering
45. Event – occurrence, occasion, happening
46. Thoroughly – completely, entirely, fully
47. Endlessly – without stopping, continuously, boundlessly
48. Savouring – enjoying it to the fullest
49. Freedom – independence, liberty
50. Surprised – astonished, amazed, startled
51. Situations – circumstances, conditions, states
52. Worried – anxious, concerned, troubled
53. Nodded – moved the head in agreement, signaled
54. Reply – answer, respond
55. Terrace – flat roof, open balcony
56. Affectionate – loving, caring, warm
57. Forehead – upper part of the face, brow
58. Realised – understood, recognized, perceived
59. Matter – issue, problem, situation
60. Guide – direct, lead, mentor
61. Considered – thought, believed, regarded
62. Essential – necessary, crucial, vital
63. Regret – feel sorry about, repent, lament
64. Immensely – extremely
65. Expression – look, appearance, indication
66. Leaned – bent, inclined, slanted
67. Accompanies – goes with, comes alongside, complements
68. Rubbed – massaged, stroked, wiped
69. Wishing – hoping, desiring, longing
70. Possible – achievable, doable, feasible
71. Educated – literate, taught, learned
72. Embarrassed – ashamed, self-conscious, awkward
73. Dependent – reliant, needing support
74. Helpless – powerless, weak, vulnerable
75. Well-off – wealthy, rich, affluent
76. Independent – self-reliant, free, self-sufficient
77. Alphabet – letters, characters, script
78. Onwards – forward in time, starting from
79. Deadline – time limit, target date, due date
80. Determination – firmness of purpose, resolve, willpower
81. Wrinkled – creased, lined, folded
82. Spectacles – glasses, eyewear
83. Childishly – immaturity, foolishly, playfully

84. Cause – purpose, reason, objective
85. Determined – resolute, steadfast, firm
86. Overcome – conquer, defeat, surmount
87. Obstacle – hurdle, barrier, block
88. Tuition – teaching, instruction, lessons
89. Amazing – astonishing, incredible, surprising
90. Recite – say aloud, repeat from memory, narrate
91. Secretly – privately, quietly, confidentially
92. Published – printed, issued, released
93. Unusual – uncommon, strange, rare
94. Taken aback – surprised by something unexpected
95. Youngsters – youth, children, teenagers
96. Tradition – custom, belief, practice
97. Reverse – opposite, contrary, backward
98. Confidently – boldly, surely, positively
99. Scriptures – sacred texts, holy writings, religious books
100. Irrespective – regardless, notwithstanding, ignoring

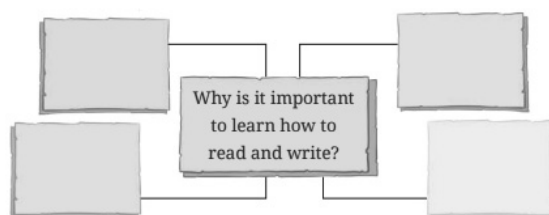
5. MESSAGE

In this heartwarming story, author Sudha Murty shares the beautiful message that there is no age limit for learning. The grandmother's strong desire to read proves that with determination and hard work, anyone can achieve their goals. The story also highlights the importance of education in making a person truly independent. It teaches us that where there is a will, there is a way, and we are never too old to learn something new.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Reflect and Respond

I. Complete the given word web.



Ans :

1. It makes an individual self-reliant and independent in daily life.
2. It allows a person to gain knowledge, stay informed, and understand the world better.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

The Incident That Changed Everything

One day, the narrator had to leave the village for a week to attend a wedding. During her absence, the weekly magazine arrived, but the grandmother could not read it because she had never been to school. She opened the magazine and rubbed her hands over the pictures, but she could not understand what was written.

Though she was from a well-off family, she felt entirely helpless and dependent. She was too embarrassed to ask anyone else in the village to read it to her. When the narrator finally returned from the wedding, she was shocked to find her usually strong and happy grandmother in tears.

A Firm Determination to Learn

Later that night, the grandmother poured her heart out to her granddaughter. She explained that when she was a little girl, education for women was not considered important, and she had lost her mother early, so she never went to school. She expressed her deep regret over being illiterate.

She then announced a life-changing decision: she wanted to learn the Kannada alphabet starting the very next day. She set a strict deadline for herself, vowing to read a novel on her own by Saraswati Puja day during the Dassara festival. Initially, the 12-year-old narrator childishly made fun of her grandmother, laughing at the idea of a 62-year-old woman with grey hair and spectacles trying to learn the alphabet. However, the grandmother simply smiled and said, "For learning, there is no age bar."

The Journey of Teaching and Learning

The young narrator took on the role of a teacher, and her grandmother became her most dedicated student. The grandmother worked incredibly hard to achieve her goal. She spent hours doing her homework—reading, writing, and repeatedly reciting the alphabet. Her intense willpower and dedication proved her own belief that if someone is determined for a good cause, they can overcome any obstacle.

A Heartwarming Resolution

When the day of the Dassara festival finally arrived, the grandmother called the narrator to the puja room. To the young girl's absolute surprise, the grandmother bent down and touched her granddaughter's feet. In Indian tradition, youngsters touch the feet of their elders, so this was highly unusual.

The grandmother beautifully explained

that she was not touching the feet of her young granddaughter, but rather paying respect to her teacher who had helped her become independent. As a reward, the narrator gifted her grandmother a newly published copy of the novel 'Kashi Yatre'. The grandmother looked at it and confidently read the title out loud, proving that her hard work had paid off and she had passed her test with flying colours.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Transport – conveyance, vehicles for moving goods or people
2. Magazine – periodical publication, journal
3. Eagerly – impatiently, enthusiastically, keenly
4. Popular – well-liked, famous, renowned
5. Wonderful – excellent, marvelous, fantastic
6. Style – manner of expression, approach
7. Convincing – believable, persuasive, credible
8. Dealt – handled, managed, coped with
9. Complex – complicated, intricate, difficult
10. Psychological – relating to the mind, mental
11. Ordinary – normal, usual, common
12. Interesting – engaging, captivating, fascinating
13. Unfortunately – unluckily, sadly, regrettably
14. Literature – written works, books, writings
15. Appreciate – value, admire, cherish
16. Novels – fictional books, full-length stories
17. Serial – a story published in installments, sequence
18. Ardent – keen
19. Desire – strong wish, longing, craving
20. Worshipping – praying to, showing reverence
21. Ultimate – final, highest, supreme
22. Punya – spiritual merit, virtue, good deed
23. Struggle – fight, effort, battle
24. Described – explained, detailed, narrated
25. Orphan – a child without parents
26. Savings – collected money, reserved funds
27. Happiness – joy, delight, cheerfulness
28. Important – crucial, significant, vital
29. Episode – part, chapter, installment
30. Forget – fail to remember, overlook
31. Greatest – highest, maximum
32. Concentration – deep focus, attention, absorption
33. Repeat – say again, iterate, echo
34. Entire – whole, complete, full
35. Identified – related to, connected with, empathized
36. Protagonist – main character, central figure

CHAPTER 1

HOW I TAUGHT MY GRANDMOTHER TO READ

NODIA

1. INTRODUCTION

Written by acclaimed author Sudha Murty, “How I Taught My Grandmother to Read” is set in a remote village in North Karnataka. The narrative revolves around a twelve-year-old girl and her sixty-two-year-old grandmother, Krishtakka. In an era where village transport was slow, the weekly arrival of a popular Kannada magazine was an eagerly anticipated event. The young granddaughter regularly reads a serialized novel to her illiterate grandmother. However, a temporary separation leaves the elderly woman unable to follow her favorite story, sparking a profound realization about her dependency. Consequently, she humbly requests her young granddaughter to become her teacher.

2. CHARACTERS

The Narrator

A helpful 12-year-old girl who enjoys reading. She becomes her grandmother’s first teacher, patiently helping her learn the Kannada alphabet.

Krishtakka (The Grandmother)

A determined, hardworking 62-year-old woman. She regrets missing school but bravely overcomes her age to learn to read independently.

Triveni

A very popular Kannada writer. She wrote engaging, easy-to-read stories that explored the complex psychological problems of ordinary people.

The Old Lady

The selfless protagonist of the novel ‘Kashi Yatre’. She sacrifices her lifelong dream of visiting Kashi to fund an orphan’s wedding.

The Orphan Girl

A young character in ‘Kashi Yatre’ who falls in love but lacks the money needed for her wedding.

The Narrator’s Cousins

Relatives who accompany the narrator to a neighbouring village to attend a wedding and enjoy playing freely.

The Grandfather

Briefly mentioned as living with the narrator and Krishtakka in their north Karnataka village.

Krishtakka’s Mother

She passed away when Krishtakka was just a young girl, leaving her without maternal guidance.

Krishtakka’s Father

A busy man who remarried after his first wife died. He did not consider education essential for his daughter.

3. SUMMARY

A Village, A Magazine, and a Bond

The story, written by Sudha Murty, revolves around a 12-year-old girl (the narrator) and her 62-year-old grandmother, Krishtakka. They live in a small village in North Karnataka. In those days, the transport system was quite slow, so the morning newspapers and weekly magazines always arrived a day late.

The village people eagerly waited for a weekly magazine called ‘Karmaveera’, which published a serialised novel named ‘Kashi Yatre’, written by a famous Kannada writer, Triveni. The novel was about an old woman who deeply wished to visit Kashi (Varanasi) but eventually gave up her life savings to help a poor orphan girl get married. The grandmother identified strongly with the novel’s main character, as she too had never been to Kashi. Every week, the narrator would read the next episode of the story aloud to her grandmother, who would then discuss it joyfully with her friends.

3. It opens up opportunities for better jobs, careers, and financial security.
4. It helps in maintaining privacy (like reading one's own letters/documents) and prevents exploitation by others.

II. Read the questions given below and share your answers with your classmates and teacher.

1. Which language(s) do your grandparents or elderly relatives speak?

Ans :

My grandparents mostly speak our mother tongue, Hindi, and their regional dialect, Bhojpuri. My grandfather also speaks a little bit of English which he learned during his working years.

(Note: Students should answer this based on their own personal experience).

2. How do they spend their time? How do you spend time with them?

Ans :

They spend their time reading the newspaper, gardening, visiting the nearby temple, and watching television in the evening. I spend time with them by listening to their stories from the past, helping my grandmother with her smartphone, and going for evening walks with my grandfather.

3. What is your favourite experience with them?

Ans :

My favourite experience with them is during the summer holidays when we all sit together on the terrace at night. My grandmother tells me fascinating mythological stories and shares anecdotes from her childhood, which makes me feel very closely connected to her.

4. What is something that the elderly in your family cannot do easily but enjoy watching you do?

Ans :

The elderly in my family find it difficult to use modern technology, like navigating through social media apps or playing video games. However, they thoroughly enjoy watching me play games on the tablet or easily make video calls to our distant relatives.

III. Read the following passage. Match the highlighted words with their meanings given in the box below.

1. excitedly
2. believable
3. people living in one particular area

4. discussion
5. a part of a story
6. focus
7. main character
8. directed

The casting for the **(i) protagonist** of our school's annual play was done after a lot of **(ii) debate** as many good actors had auditioned for the role. We had decided to present an **(iii) episode** from an inspirational story. It was a life story of a group of children who worked with the **(iv) community** to spread literacy. Every day, we reached school early to practise with **(v) concentration**. We waited **(vi) eagerly** for the final presentation. All of us played our roles in a very **(vii) convincing** manner as our theatre teacher had **(viii) guided** us well.

Ans :

i.	protagonist	7.	main character
ii.	debate	4.	discussion
iii.	episode	5.	a part of a story
iv.	community	3.	people living in one particular area
v.	concentration	6.	focus
vi.	eagerly	1.	excitedly
vii.	convincing	2.	believable
viii.	guided	8.	directed

Check Your Understanding

- I. Complete the cause and effect table given below based on Part I of the story. Share your answers with your classmates and teacher.

	Cause		Effect
1.		i.	The morning papers arrived late in the day and weekly magazines would come one day late.
2.	The grandmother, Krishtakka, never went to school.	ii.	
3.		iii.	She was deeply interested in the story and discussed it with her friends.

4.	The narrator went to a wedding for a week.	iv.	
5.		v.	The grandmother never went to school.
6.	The grandmother regretted not going to school.	vi.	

Ans :

	Cause		Effect
1.	The transport system to the village was not very good.	i.	The morning papers arrived late in the day and weekly magazines would come one day late.
2.	The grandmother, Krishtakka, never went to school.	ii.	She could not read or write independently.
3.	The grandmother identified herself with the novel's protagonist (the old lady).	iii.	She was deeply interested in the story and discussed it with her friends.
4.	The narrator went to a wedding for a week.	iv.	The grandmother could not find out what happened next in Kashi Yatre as she could not read the magazine herself.
5.	In those days, people never considered education essential for girls.	v.	The grandmother never went to school.
6.	The grandmother regretted not going to school.	vi.	She made sure that her children and grandchildren studied well.

- II. Do you think the narrator expected to see her grandmother in tears when she returned to the village? If yes, why? If no, why not?**

Ans :

No, the narrator did not expect to see her grandmother in tears. She states that she was surprised because she had never seen her grandmother cry, even in the most difficult situations. Her grandmother was usually a happy, smiling lady, so seeing her in tears was completely unexpected and worrying for the twelve-year-old narrator.

- III. How might the narrator help her grandmother to fulfil her desire to learn to read and write?**

Ans :

The narrator might help her grandmother by becoming her teacher. She could patiently teach her the Kannada alphabet, assign her homework, and help her practice reading, writing, and reciting every day until the grandmother reaches her goal of reading a novel independently.

Check Your Understanding

- I. State whether the following sentences are true or false. Share your answers with your classmates and teacher.**

- The grandmother wanted to learn the Kannada alphabet to gain independence.
- The grandmother asked someone in the village to read *Kashi Yatre* to her while the narrator was away.
- The narrator was the grandmother's first teacher and taught her how to read Kannada.
- The grandmother believed that there was no age limit for learning.
- The grandmother touched the narrator's feet as a mark of respect for her as a teacher.
- The narrator was disappointed with the progress her grandmother made in learning to read.

Ans :

- True, 2. False, 3. True, 4. True, 5. True, 6. False.

Critical Reflection

- I. Read the extracts given below and answer the questions that follow.**

- When I came back to my village, I saw my grandmother in tears. I was surprised, for I had never seen her cry even in the most difficult situations. What had happened? I was worried. 'Avva, is everything all right? Are you okay?' I used to call her Avva, which means mother in the Kannada spoken in north Karnataka.

She nodded but did not reply. I did not understand and forgot about it. In the night, after dinner, we were sleeping in the open terrace of our house. It was a summer night and there was a full moon. Avva came and sat next to me. Her affectionate hands touched my forehead.

- i. Complete the following sentence with the appropriate option.
The phrase ‘never seen her cry in the most difficult situations’ tells us that the grandmother was _____.

A. strong-willed
B. understanding
C. considerate
D. bold

- ii. Complete the following with the correct option from those given in the brackets.

Grandmother did not reply when the narrator asked if she was alright because she might have been too _____ (emotional/tired) to respond.

- iii. Identify the clue from the extract that indicates a rural setting with traditional customs.

- iv. Which lines of the extract establish a tender atmosphere?

- v. Which of the following aspect is NOT emphasised in the given extract?

A. the emotional turmoil of the grandmother
B. the affectionate bond between the narrator and her grandmother
C. the grandmother’s regret over her lack of education
D. the narrator’s concern for her grandmother

Ans :

- i. A. strong-willed
ii. emotional
iii. The clues indicating a rural setting with traditional customs are sleeping on the “open terrace of our house” on a summer night and the use of the regional traditional term “Avva” (meaning mother in north Karnataka) to respectfully address the grandmother.
iv. The lines that establish a tender atmosphere are: “Avva came and sat next to me. Her affectionate hands touched my forehead.”
v. C. the grandmother’s regret over her lack of education

2. ‘I have decided I want to learn the Kannada alphabet from tomorrow onwards. I will work

very hard. I will keep Saraswati Puja day during Dassara as the deadline. That day I should be able to read a novel on my own. I want to be independent.’

I saw the determination on her face. Yet I laughed at her.

‘Avva, at this age of sixty-two you want to learn the alphabet? All your hair is grey, your hands are wrinkled, you wear spectacles and you work so much in the kitchen...’

Childishly I made fun of the old lady. But she just smiled.



‘For a good cause if you are determined, you can overcome any obstacle. I will work harder than anybody but I will do it. For learning there is no age bar.’

- i. What does the grandmother’s statement, “I want to be independent,” reveal about her character?

A. She wanted to be literate.
B. She desires self-sufficiency.
C. She wants to prove her intelligence to others.
D. She feels pressured by society to learn.

- ii. Fill in the blank with the appropriate option from those given in brackets.

The grandmother’s determination shows that learning has no _____ (age limit/gender bias/cultural barriers)

- iii. Complete the following with a suitable reason.
The narrator laughs at her grandmother’s decision to learn the alphabet at the age of sixty-two because _____.

- iv. List any two qualities displayed by the grandmother.

- v. How can we say that the narrator is making assumptions about her grandmother?

Ans :

- i. B. She desires self-sufficiency.
ii. age limit
iii. because she childishly believed that her grandmother was too old to learn, focusing

8.	ordinary	viii.	extraordinary
9.	interesting	ix.	uninteresting
10.	possible	x.	impossible

III. Identify any five words with prefixes from the story and make sentences using each.

Ans :

1. **Unfortunately** : **Unfortunately**, our train was delayed by three hours due to heavy fog.
2. **Dependent** : (The text uses **independent**, the prefix is 'in'). Sentence: Avva wanted to become **independent** by learning how to read.
3. **Unhappy** : The little boy was **unhappy** because he lost his favourite toy.
4. **Unusual** : It is highly **unusual** for elders to touch the feet of youngsters.
5. **Unable** : (Prefix 'un' added to able). Sentence: I was **unable** to finish the exam within the given time.

IV. In the sentence, "I knew, then, that my student had passed with flying colours", the phrase "passed with flying colours" is an idiom. It means outstanding performance.

Now, match the idioms related to 'learning' given in Column 1 with their meanings in Column 2. You may refer to a dictionary.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	to hit the books	i.	to memorise something
2.	to draw a blank	ii.	to think very hard
3.	to learn the ropes	iii.	to study seriously
4.	to rack one's brain	iv.	to study or work late into the night
5.	to learn by heart	v.	to be unable to remember
6.	burn the midnight oil	vi.	to understand how to do an activity

Now, use these idioms in sentences of your own.

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	to hit the books	iii.	to study seriously
2.	to draw a blank	v.	to be unable to remember
3.	to learn the ropes	vi.	to understand how to do an activity

4.	to rack one's brain	ii.	to think very hard
5.	to learn by heart	i.	to memorise something
6.	burn the midnight oil	iv.	to study or work late into the night

1. **to hit the books** : With the final exams only a week away, it is time **to hit the books**.
2. **to draw a blank** : When the teacher asked me a question suddenly, I **drew a blank** and couldn't answer.
3. **to learn the ropes** : It will take a few weeks for the new employee **to learn the ropes** of this department.
4. **to rack one's brain** : I had **to rack my brain** for hours to solve the difficult math puzzle.
5. **to learn by heart** : The director asked the actors **to learn their dialogues by heart** before the dress rehearsal.
6. **burn the midnight oil** : She had to **burn the midnight oil** to finish her science project on time.

V. Read the following sentences from the text and underline the verbs.

1. Secretly, I bought *Kashi Yatre* which had been published as a novel by that time.
2. I knew, then, that my student had passed with flying colours.

In sentence 1, verb 'bought' is in simple past tense. In sentence 2, verb 'had passed' is in past perfect tense.

Ans :

1. Secretly, I bought *Kashi Yatre* which had been published as a novel by that time.
2. I knew then that my student had passed with flying colours.

- i. Fill in the blanks with simple past and past perfect tense form of the verbs given in brackets.
 - A. When the delegates _____ (arrive) at the conference, the keynote speaker _____ (already begin) the session.
 - B. After the students _____ (learn) how to identify fake news online, they _____ (start) verifying information before sharing it.
 - C. Before Kiran _____ (start) using digital payment platforms, she _____ (ensure) her understanding of online fraud prevention.
 - D. By the time Varun _____ (recognise) the importance of budgeting, he _____ (exhaust) most of his savings.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	sink or swim	i.	put different things together to get a range of possibilities
2.	on and off	ii.	complete part of or belong to
3.	mix and match	iii.	choose only the best (things, people, etc.)
4.	all or nothing	iv.	at sometime in the future
5.	part and parcel	v.	sometimes, occasionally
6.	pick and choose	vi.	increase or develop very quickly
7.	sooner or later	vii.	succeed or fail without help
8.	leaps and bounds	viii.	something to be done completely or not at all

Now, use any five of the above binomials in sentences of your own.

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	sink or swim	vii.	succeed or fail without help
2.	on and off	v.	sometimes, occasionally
3.	mix and match	i.	put different things together to get a range of possibilities
4.	all or nothing	viii.	something to be done completely or not at all
5.	part and parcel	ii.	complete part of or belong to
6.	pick and choose	iii.	choose only the best (things, people, etc.)
7.	sooner or later	iv.	at sometime in the future
8.	leaps and bounds	vi.	increase or develop very quickly

- on and off** : It has been raining **on and off** since yesterday morning.

- part and parcel** : Making mistakes is **part and parcel** of the learning process.
- sooner or later** : She will realise her mistake **sooner or later**.
- leaps and bounds** : Since he started reading daily, his vocabulary has improved by **leaps and bounds**.
- pick and choose** : In a large buffet, you have the luxury to **pick and choose** your favourite dishes.

II. Read the following words from the text given in the box below.

unhappy	unusual	unfortunately
irrespective	independent	

These words are made by adding suitable prefixes ('un', 'ir', and 'in') to give an opposite or negative meaning to the words.

Now, make words by adding the suitable prefixes given in the box to the words from the text in Column 1. Write the prefixed words in Column 2. One example has been done for you.

un	im	dis	in	mis	extra
----	----	-----	----	-----	-------

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	popular	i.	unpopular
2.	belief	ii.	
3.	important	iii.	
4.	respect	iv.	
5.	correct	v.	
6.	continue	vi.	
7.	understand	vii.	
8.	ordinary	viii.	
9.	interesting	ix.	
10.	possible	x.	

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	popular	i.	unpopular
2.	belief	ii.	disbelief
3.	important	iii.	unimportant
4.	respect	iv.	disrespect
5.	correct	v.	incorrect
6.	continue	vi.	discontinue
7.	understand	vii.	misunderstand

on her physical traits like grey hair, wrinkled hands, and spectacles, rather than her willpower.

- iv. 1. Determined
2. Hardworking
- v. We can say the narrator is making assumptions because she immediately judges her grandmother's ability to learn based purely on her advanced age and physical appearance (grey hair, wrinkled hands, spectacles), falsely assuming that education is restricted only to the young.

II. Answer the following questions.

1. Why do you think the grandmother felt embarrassed to ask someone else to read to her while the narrator was away?

Ans :

The grandmother felt embarrassed because asking someone else would expose her inability to read, making her feel heavily dependent and helpless despite being from a well-off family. It hurt her dignity and self-respect to beg others for a simple task like reading a magazine.

2. Why does the narrator initially laugh at her grandmother's determination to learn at the age of sixty-two?

Ans :

The narrator initially laughs because she is just a twelve-year-old child who associates learning and school exclusively with young children. Seeing her sixty-two-year-old grandmother—who has grey hair, wrinkled hands, and spends most of her time in the kitchen—wanting to learn the alphabet seemed funny and out of place to her.

3. What significance does the story of **Kashi Yatre** have in both the grandmother's life and the story?

Ans :

The story of **Kashi Yatre** acts as a mirror to the grandmother's life. Just as the old lady in the novel had an unfulfilled ardent desire to visit Kashi, the grandmother had a deep, unfulfilled desire to be educated and independent. Furthermore, the protagonist's sacrifice in the novel deeply resonated with the grandmother's selfless nature. Ultimately, it was her intense urge to read the next episode of **Kashi Yatre** independently that pushed her to learn the Kannada alphabet.

4. What does the grandmother's desire to learn the Kannada alphabet reflect about her?

Ans :

Her desire reflects her immense willpower, determination, and progressive mindset. It shows that she values independence and believes that age is not a barrier to acquiring new knowledge. It also highlights her self-discipline and readiness to work hard to achieve her goals.

5. What lessons can we infer from the grandmother's action of touching the narrator's feet?

Ans :

The grandmother touching her granddaughter's feet teaches us the true meaning of respect and humility. It shows that a teacher should be respected regardless of their age or gender. It breaks conventional age hierarchies, highlighting that knowledge and the one who imparts it are worthy of the highest reverence.

6. What does the following line tell us about the broader theme of the story?

'For a good cause if you are determined, you can overcome any obstacle.'

Ans :

This line is the central theme of the story. It conveys that true determination and a noble purpose can conquer all barriers, be it age, physical limitations, or societal norms. It teaches that one is never too old to learn and improve oneself.

7. How effectively does the story highlight the value of education in supporting personal independence?

Ans :

The story highlights this very effectively by showcasing the grandmother's deep anguish when she cannot read the magazine in her granddaughter's absence. Her wealth was of no use in giving her independence; only the ability to read could do that. Her journey from feeling helpless to confidently reading the novel on her own proves that education is the ultimate tool for true personal independence.

Vocabulary and Structures in Context

- I. The expression 'hide and seek' is used in the text. This is called a binomial.

Binomials are expressions consisting of two words, usually linked by a conjunction like 'and' or 'or', that are commonly used together in a fixed order. For example: odds and ends, right or wrong.

Match the binomials in Column 1 with their meanings in Column 2. You may refer to a dictionary.

- E. When Raghu _____ (log in) to the cybersecurity webinar, the instructor _____ (already discuss) the importance of strong passwords.

Ans :

- A. When the delegates **arrived** (arrive) at the conference, the keynote speaker had **already begun** (already begin) the session.
 B. After the students **had learned** (learn) how to identify fake news online, they **started** (start) verifying information before sharing it.
 C. Before Kiran **started** (start) using digital payment platforms, she **had ensured** (ensure) her understanding of online fraud prevention.
 D. By the time Varun **recognised** (recognise) the importance of budgeting, he **had exhausted** (exhaust) most of his savings.
 E. When Raghu **logged in** (log in) to the cybersecurity webinar, the instructor **had already discussed** (already discuss) the importance of strong passwords.

- ii. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of verbs given in brackets.

Last year, my parents and I A. _____ (take) a financial planning course. When we B. _____ (review) our expenses, we realised we C. _____ (spend) too much on unnecessary purchases. After my parents D. _____ (discuss) ways to save, I E. _____ (open) a savings account. By the time we F. _____ (set) our budget, the course G. _____ (already introduce) investment strategies. We H. _____ (hurry) to take notes, but many participants I. _____ (complete) their financial plans. Despite that, we J. _____ (enjoy) learning how to manage money wisely.

Ans :

Last year, my parents and I A. **took** a financial planning course. When we B. **reviewed** our expenses, we realised we C. **had spent** too much on unnecessary purchases. After my parents D. **had discussed** ways to save, I E. **opened** a savings account. By the time we F. **set** our budget, the course G. **had already introduced** investment strategies. We H. **hurried** to take notes, but many participants I. **had completed** their financial plans. Despite that, we J. **enjoyed** learning how to manage money wisely.

Listen and Respond

- I. You will listen to a speaker talk about digital literacy. As you listen, complete the following sentences with one to three exact words that you hear. (Transcript for teacher on page 259)

- Literacy these days includes the ability to use _____.
- Digital literacy is also about protecting _____.
- Digital literacy enables the elderly to _____.
- Digital literacy encourages using the internet safely by helping us recognise _____ and _____.
- The National Digital Literacy Mission helps people across the country by imparting _____.

Ans :

- Literacy these days includes the ability to use **digital technology/smart devices**.
- Digital literacy is also about protecting **personal information/online privacy**.
- Digital literacy enables the elderly to **stay independent**.
- Digital literacy encourages using the internet safely by helping us recognise **fake news** and **online scams/cyber threats**.
- The National Digital Literacy Mission helps people across the country by imparting **digital skills/training**.

Speaking Activity

Turncoat is a type of solo debate where the speaker argues **for** and **against** a topic, switching sides after a certain period of time.

Choose your topic and speak 'for' and 'against' for not more than one minute each.

Topic 1 : It is important to learn a new language apart from your mother tongue.

Topic 2 : Learning can happen only when you are young.

Use the guidelines given below.

- Begin with speaking 'for' the topic for one minute.
- Your teacher will signal that it is time to switch sides.
- Then speak 'against' the topic for one minute.

15. Assertion (A): The grandmother identified strongly with the novel's main character.

Reason (R): The grandmother had also never been to Kashi.

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.
- (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation.
- (c) A is true, but R is false in this specific context.
- (d) A is false, but R is true in this specific context.

Ans :

(a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.

16. Every week, the narrator would read the next episode of the story aloud to her _____.

- (a) Mother
- (b) Grandmother
- (c) Sister
- (d) Friend

Ans :

(b) Grandmother

17. Who did the grandmother joyfully discuss the story with?

- (a) Her cousins
- (b) Her siblings
- (c) Her children
- (d) Her friends

Ans :

(d) Her friends

18. Why did the narrator have to leave the village?

- (a) Attend a wedding
- (b) Visit a hospital
- (c) Go to a college
- (d) See a festival

Ans :

(a) Attend a wedding

19. How long was the narrator absent from the village?

- (a) Two weeks
- (b) One week
- (c) Three weeks
- (d) Four weeks

Ans :

(b) One week

20. Why was the grandmother unable to read the magazine?

- (a) She lacked glasses
- (b) She felt too tired
- (c) She was illiterate
- (d) She was quite busy

Ans :

(c) She was illiterate

21. What did the grandmother rub over the pictures in the magazine?

- (a) Her face
- (b) Her eyes
- (c) Her cloth
- (d) Her hands

Ans :

(d) Her hands

22. What was the financial status of the grandmother's family?

- (a) Very poor
- (b) Well-off
- (c) Struggling
- (d) Bankrupt

Ans :

(b) Well-off

23. How did the grandmother feel about her inability to read the magazine?

- (a) She felt completely proud and deeply satisfied.
- (b) She felt entirely helpless and very dependent.
- (c) She felt extremely angry and highly rebellious.
- (d) She felt utterly careless and completely aloof.

Ans :

(b) She felt entirely helpless and very dependent.

24. Why didn't the grandmother ask anyone else in the village to read to her?

- (a) Too angry
- (b) Too scared
- (c) Too embarrassed
- (d) Too arrogant

Ans :

(c) Too embarrassed

25. When the narrator finally returned from the wedding, she was shocked to find her grandmother in _____.

- (a) Joy
- (b) Pain
- (c) Anger
- (d) Tears

Ans :

(d) Tears

26. Which of the following statements is correct regarding the grandmother's childhood?

- I. She lost her mother early.
- II. Education for women was highly important.
- III. She never went to school.

- (a) Only statements I and II are correct.
- (b) Only statements I and III are correct.
- (c) Only statements II and III are correct.
- (d) All statements I, II, and III are correct.

Ans :

(b) Only statements I and III are correct.

Ans :

12, Sunrise Apartments,
M.G. Road,
Bengaluru - 560001

15 October 2024

The Editor,
The Deccan Herald,
Bengaluru - 560001

Subject: Emphasising Student Participation in
Adult Literacy Camps

Sir/Madam,

This is with reference to the article about the 'Rising Need for Adult Education' dated 12 October 2024 in your esteemed newspaper. As a concerned citizen, I would like to draw your attention towards the immense potential of student participation in adult literacy camps to eradicate illiteracy from our community.

The issue at hand affects a large section of society. Millions of adults still lack basic reading and writing skills, which hampers their independence and limits their opportunities. It is imperative that we encourage the youth, especially school and college students, to actively volunteer in literacy campaigns conducted by various NGOs. It would be highly beneficial if students step forward, as they possess fresh knowledge, enthusiasm, and the patience required to teach. By engaging in these programmes, students will not only uplift the illiterate adults but also develop a strong sense of empathy, communication skills, and social responsibility.

A possible solution to this issue could be implementing 'Each One Teach One' programmes in schools, where volunteering hours count towards extra-curricular credits. Authorities could consider organising awareness seminars in educational institutions to highlight the joy of teaching adults. I trust this matter will be considered seriously for the benefit of all, and I hope this letter gets published in the columns of your esteemed daily to inspire the youth.

Yours truly,
Kaveri / Karan

Learning Beyond the Text

- I. India has 22 major languages according to the Eighth Schedule of the Indian Constitution. Each language has its own unique identity. Talk to your classmates and teacher and complete the given table with words from any five Indian languages.

Language	1. Kannada	2.	3.	4.	5.
Grandmother	Avva				
Grandfather					
Mother					
Father					
Sister					
Brother					

Ans :

Language	1. Kannada	2. Hindi	3. Bengali	4. Marathi	5. Tamil
Grandmother	Avva	Dadi/ Nani	Thakurma/ Didima	Aaji	Paati
Grandfather	Ajja	Dada/ Nana	Dadu	Ajoba	Thatha
Mother	Amma	Maa/ Mata	Ma	Aai	Amma
Father	Appa	Pitaji/ Papa	Baba	Baba	Appa
Sister	Akka	Behen	Bon/Didi	Tai	Akka/ Thangai
Brother	Anna	Bhai	Bhai/Dada	Bhau	Anna/ Thambi

II. Do you know?

1. National Literacy Mission Authority (NLMA) is responsible to design, develop, and implement the Adult Education Programme in India. Directorate of Adult Education (DAE), under the Department of School Education and Literacy, Ministry of Education, Government of India, functions to facilitate the implementation of adult education programmes in the country. Find more information on it with the help of the link given below:
https://dsel.education.gov.in/adult_education
2. Financial literacy refers to the ability to understand and effectively apply various financial skills, including personal financial management, budgeting, and investing.

The National Centre for Financial Education (NCFE), plays a pivotal role in implementing financial education programmes. The NCFE conducts surveys to assess financial awareness and collaborates with educational institutions to integrate financial management concepts into the curricula. Additionally, it organises annual financial literacy tests to gauge and improve the financial knowledge of individuals.

Through these concerted efforts, the Government of India aims to empower its citizens with the knowledge and skills necessary

admit her illiteracy to the other villagers, which amplified her feelings of dependency.

9. What shocked the narrator when she finally returned from the wedding?

Ans :

Upon returning, the narrator was completely shocked to find her grandmother crying. She had never seen her grandmother shed a tear, even in the most difficult situations, making the sight of her in such deep emotional pain incredibly alarming.

10. What historical context did the grandmother give regarding her inability to read?

Ans :

The grandmother explained that she lost her mother at a very young age. Since her father was busy and formal education for girls was not considered essential in those traditional days, she never went to school and was married off early.

11. What painful realization hit the grandmother when she could not read the magazine independently?

Ans :

She realized the profound agony of being dependent. Despite having money and a comfortable life, she felt completely paralyzed by her illiteracy. She understood that true independence comes from education and decided she no longer wanted to rely on anyone.

12. What strict deadline did the grandmother set to learn the Kannada alphabet?

Ans :

The grandmother set the upcoming Dassara festival as her strict deadline. Specifically, she aimed to read a novel independently by Saraswati Puja day, seeing it as an auspicious time to conquer her illiteracy and prove her absolute determination.

13. How did the twelve-year-old narrator initially react to her grandmother's decision to study?

Ans :

Being a child, the narrator found the idea highly amusing. She laughed childishly and playfully mocked her grandmother, pointing out her sixty-two years of age, grey hair, spectacles, and wrinkled hands, questioning how she could possibly learn to read now.

14. How did the grandmother thoughtfully respond to her granddaughter's playful mockery?

Ans :

The grandmother responded calmly but with immense conviction. She smiled and stated that for a good cause, one can overcome any obstacle. She firmly declared that when it comes to true learning, there is absolutely no age bar at all.

15. How did the grandmother behave as a student during her learning journey?

Ans :

The grandmother was an incredibly dedicated and hardworking student. She spent countless hours reading, repeating, writing, and reciting the Kannada alphabet. Her determination was absolute, and she diligently completed any homework assigned by her twelve-year-old granddaughter.

16. Why did the grandmother call the narrator to the puja place on Dassara?

Ans :

On the day of Saraswati Puja, the grandmother called the narrator to the puja room to ceremonially acknowledge her as her teacher. She wanted to formally express her deep gratitude and perform a traditional gesture of respect.

17. What highly unusual gesture did the grandmother perform in the puja room?

Ans :

Breaking deeply rooted traditional cultural norms, the sixty-two-year-old grandmother bent down and touched the feet of her twelve-year-old granddaughter. This gesture was highly unusual because, in Indian tradition, elders do not touch the feet of youngsters.

18. How did the grandmother beautifully justify touching the feet of a young child?

Ans :

She explained that she was not touching the feet of her little granddaughter, but rather paying profound respect to her teacher. She believed a teacher who imparts knowledge with such affection deserves absolute reverence, regardless of age or gender.

19. What special gift did the narrator present to her grandmother on this festival day?

Ans :

As a reward for her hard work and relentless dedication, the narrator gifted her grandmother a newly published copy of Triveni's novel, Kashi Yatre. It was the perfect gift to celebrate her newly acquired independence and literacy.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

- Who is the author of the story?
(a) Sudha Murty (b) Triveni Devi
(c) Kamala Mehta (d) Anita Deshmukh
Ans :
(a) Sudha Murty
- What is the young narrator's age in the story?
(a) Ten years (b) Twelve years
(c) Fourteen years (d) Sixteen years
Ans :
(b) Twelve years
- What is the name of the grandmother?
(a) Saraswati (b) Triveni
(c) Krishtakka (d) Karmaveera
Ans :
(c) Krishtakka
- What is the grandmother's age in the story?
(a) Sixty years (b) Fifty years
(c) Seventy years (d) Sixty-two years
Ans :
(d) Sixty-two years
- In which region did the narrator and her grandmother live?
(a) North Karnataka (b) South Karnataka
(c) East Karnataka (d) West Karnataka
Ans :
(a) North Karnataka
- How was the transport system described in those days?
(a) Very rapid (b) Quite slow
(c) Highly fast (d) Very modern
Ans :
(b) Quite slow
- The morning newspapers and weekly magazines always arrived a _____ late.
(a) Week (b) Month
(c) Year (d) Day
Ans :
(d) Day

- What was the name of the eagerly awaited magazine?
(a) Kashi Yatre (b) Karmaveera
(c) Saraswati (d) Triveni
Ans :
(b) Karmaveera
- How frequently was the magazine published?
(a) Every week (b) Every day
(c) Every month (d) Every year
Ans :
(a) Every week
- What was the name of the serialised novel?
(a) Karmaveera (b) Triveni
(c) Krishtakka (d) Kashi Yatre
Ans :
(d) Kashi Yatre
- Who was the famous writer of the serialised novel?
(a) Sudha Murty (b) Krishtakka
(c) Triveni (d) Saraswati
Ans :
(c) Triveni
- In which language was the novel written?
(a) Telugu (b) Kannada
(c) Marathi (d) English
Ans :
(b) Kannada
- What was the main plot of the novel Kashi Yatre?
(a) An old woman taking her entire family to Kashi.
(b) A young girl traveling to Kashi for an education.
(c) An old woman giving up savings to help an orphan.
(d) A famous writer documenting her journey to Kashi.
Ans :
(c) An old woman giving up savings to help an orphan.
- Which holy city did the old woman in the novel deeply wish to visit?
(a) Mathura (b) Ayodhya
(c) Tirupati (d) Varanasi
Ans :
(d) Varanasi

to make informed financial decisions, thereby promoting economic stability and growth.

3. The Early Literacy Project (ELP) is an integrated, intensive, and culturally sensitive early literacy-training programme. The ELP primarily targets out-of-school children and youth as well as under-achieving school-going children (in Grades 1, 2, and 3) attending rural government primary schools. Most of the targeted children come from the most marginalised communities (such as migrants and ethnic minorities), with high illiteracy rates. In addition, they also have different socio-cultural, linguistic, and economic traditions and experiences.
4. Cultural literacy refers to the awareness, understanding, and appreciation of the country's diverse traditions, languages, arts, and social practices. Given India's rich cultural heritage, it involves the ability to engage meaningfully with various customs and historical narratives while navigating modern influences. Government initiatives and educational programmes through organisations like the Centre for Cultural Resources and Training (CCRT) promote cultural literacy by integrating regional languages, arts, and traditions into learning frameworks. The training programmes provide an understanding and appreciation of the philosophy, aesthetics, and beauty inherent in Indian art and culture; and focus on formulating methodologies for incorporating a cultural component in curriculum teaching. The role of culture in science and technology, housing, agriculture, sports, etc., in all aspects of development and growth is emphasised.

Ans :

1. National Literacy Mission Authority (NLMA)
 - NLMA designs, develops and implements adult education programmes in India.
 - The Directorate of Adult Education (DAE) helps in carrying out these programmes.
 - It works under the Ministry of Education, Government of India.
 - Its aim is to improve literacy among adults across the country.
2. Financial Literacy
 - Financial literacy means understanding how to manage money, budgeting and investing.

- The National Centre for Financial Education (NCFE) promotes financial education.
- It conducts surveys to check financial awareness.
- It works with schools to include financial education in studies.
- It also organizes tests to improve financial knowledge.
- Its goal is to help people make better financial decisions and support economic growth.

3. Early Literacy Project (ELP)
 - ELP is a programme for early literacy training.
 - It focuses on children who are out of school or weak in studies (Classes 1–3).
 - It mainly helps children from poor and marginalised communities.
 - It is sensitive to different cultures, languages, and backgrounds.
4. Cultural Literacy
 - Cultural literacy means understanding and appreciating different traditions, languages and arts.
 - It helps people connect with India's rich cultural heritage.
 - Organisations like CCRT promote cultural learning.
 - It includes learning about art, culture, and traditions in education.
 - It also shows the importance of culture in areas like science, technology, and development.

III. Talk to your grandparents and find out which book or magazine they enjoy reading. Buy a copy of it and present it to them as a gift.

Ans :

(This is a practical activity for the student. A sample response demonstrating the outcome of the activity is provided below).

Self-Reflection Note : I spoke to my grandfather and found out that he loves reading spiritual and historical magazines. I bought him a copy of 'Kalyan' magazine from a local bookstore. When I presented it to him, his face lit up with a huge smile. We spent the entire evening reading a few articles from it together. It was a wonderful bonding experience!

27. When did the grandmother pour her heart out to her granddaughter?
 (a) The next morning
 (b) The following week
 (c) The next evening
 (d) Later that night

Ans :

(d) Later that night

28. What did the grandmother deeply regret about her life?
 (a) Being poor (b) Being sick
 (c) Being illiterate (d) Being alone

Ans :

(c) Being illiterate

29. Which alphabet did the grandmother decide to learn?
 (a) English alphabet (b) Hindi alphabet
 (c) Telugu alphabet (d) Kannada alphabet

Ans :

(d) Kannada alphabet

30. When did the grandmother vow to start learning the alphabet?
 (a) Next week (b) Next month
 (c) The very next day (d) After the festival

Ans :

(c) The very next day

31. What was the grandmother's strict deadline to read a novel independently?
 (a) Diwali day (b) Saraswati Puja day
 (c) Holi festival day (d) New Year's day

Ans :

(b) Saraswati Puja day

32. During which festival did the grandmother's deadline fall?
 (a) Dassara (b) Diwali
 (c) Pongal (d) Ugadi

Ans :

(a) Dassara

33. How did the 12-year-old narrator initially react to the grandmother's decision?
 (a) She cried loudly
 (b) She felt inspired
 (c) She laughed childishly

(d) She remained silent

Ans :

(c) She laughed childishly

34. Which of the following physical traits of the grandmother did the young narrator make fun of?
 I. Her grey hair
 II. Her spectacles
 III. Her walking stick
 (a) Only statements I and II are correct.
 (b) Only statements II and III are correct.
 (c) Only statements I and III are correct.
 (d) All statements I, II, and III are correct.

Ans :

(a) Only statements I and II are correct.

35. What profound statement did the grandmother make about learning?
 (a) "Learning is only meant for the young and wealthy."
 (b) "For learning, there is absolutely no age bar at all."
 (c) "Reading is completely impossible for older people."
 (d) "Education brings only deep sorrow and many regrets."

Ans :

(b) "For learning, there is absolutely no age bar at all."

36. Who took on the role of the teacher in this story?
 (a) The grandmother
 (b) The village head
 (c) The school master
 (d) The young narrator

Ans :

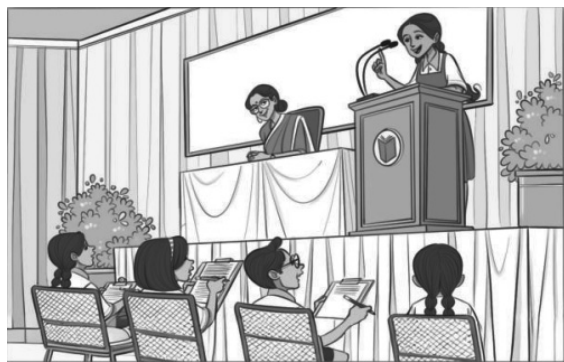
(d) The young narrator

37. The young narrator took on the role of a teacher, and her grandmother became her most _____ student.
 (a) Lazy (b) Dedicated
 (c) Stubborn (d) Reluctant

Ans :

(b) Dedicated

38. What did the grandmother spend hours doing to achieve her goal?
 (a) Cooking food (b) Singing songs
 (c) Stitching clothes (d) Doing homework



You may use the following sentence prompts.
Here is the same table rewritten in text format:

	‘For’		‘Against’
1.	To begin with, I would like to speak ‘for’ the topic...	i.	On the contrary / On the other hand...
2.	My first argument in favour of...	ii.	There are two sides to this topic...
3.	Most importantly I want to mention that...	iii.	There’s no doubt that...
4.	In addition to that... / Moreover, I feel...	iv.	If I could make a point here...
5.	I strongly feel...	v.	I am pretty sure that...
6.	I have a reason to believe...	vi.	Well, I am not sure whether you can really...
7.	There’s no doubt that...	vii.	So, to put it in a few words...

Ans :

Topic 1 : It is important to learn a new language apart from your mother tongue

For the Topic

Learning a new language is very important in today’s global world. It helps us communicate with people from different countries and cultures. Knowing more than one language improves our thinking ability and memory. It also opens better career opportunities, as many jobs require communication skills in different languages. Moreover, learning a new language helps us understand different cultures and perspectives, making us more open-minded. Therefore, learning another language apart from our mother tongue is

highly beneficial.

Against the Topic

Although learning a new language has benefits, it is not necessary for everyone. Many people can succeed in life using only their mother tongue. Learning a new language requires time and effort, which may not be possible for everyone. In many cases, translation tools and technology can help us communicate easily without learning a new language. Also, focusing too much on other languages may reduce our connection with our own culture and language. Hence, learning a new language is not always essential.

Topic 2 : Learning can happen only when you are young

For the Topic

It is often said that learning happens best at a young age. Children have sharper memory and faster understanding abilities. They can easily learn languages, skills, and concepts compared to adults. Young minds are more flexible and open to new ideas. Early learning also builds a strong foundation for future success. Therefore, learning is easier and more effective when we are young.

Against the Topic

Learning is a lifelong process and does not stop with age. Adults can also learn new skills, languages, and ideas with dedication and practice. In fact, older people often have better focus, discipline, and real-life experience, which helps in understanding things more deeply. Many successful people have achieved great things later in life. So, learning is not limited to youth; it can happen at any stage of life.

Writing Task

- I. **As a socially responsible citizen, you strongly believe that students can contribute significantly in promoting adult literacy. Write a letter to the Editor of a local newspaper emphasising the importance of student participation in adult literacy camps conducted by various organisations. Discuss the benefits of such initiatives for both students and society. Suggest effective ways to spread awareness and encourage more students to volunteer for this noble cause.**

A letter to the editor is a formal letter in which the writer gives suggestions and creates awareness on an issue of public interest or an issue already raised in an article/write-up/published letter

49. Which of the following statements is correct regarding the grandmother's homework routine?

- I. She spent hours reading.
- II. She repeatedly recited.
- III. She avoided writing entirely.
- (a) Only statements I and II are correct.
- (b) Only statements II and III are correct.
- (c) Only statements I and III are correct.
- (d) All statements I, II, and III are correct.

Ans :

- (a) Only statements I and II are correct.

50. What ultimate message is demonstrated by the grandmother's journey in the story?

- (a) Financial wealth can easily solve all the major problems of village life.
- (b) Formal education is mostly irrelevant for those living in rural villages.
- (c) Firm determination and willpower can conquer any learning obstacle.
- (d) Youngsters should always assume the role of teachers for older relatives.

Ans :

- (c) Firm determination and willpower can conquer any learning obstacle.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Why was the transport system in the narrator's village considered quite slow, and how did it affect daily life?

Ans :

The narrator lived in a remote village in North Karnataka where the transport system was quite primitive. Consequently, morning newspapers and weekly magazines like Karmaveera always arrived a day late, making the village folk eagerly wait for their reading materials.

2. Why was the author Triveni highly popular among the Kannada-reading audience?

Ans :

Triveni was incredibly popular because her writing style was easy to understand and highly convincing. She skillfully dealt with the complex psychological problems in the lives of ordinary people, making her stories deeply relatable to the common village readers.

3. What was the central plot of Triveni's serialised novel, Kashi Yatre?

Ans :

The novel Kashi Yatre revolved around an old woman deeply desiring to visit Kashi to worship Lord Shiva. However, she ultimately sacrifices her lifelong savings to fund the wedding of a young orphan girl, realizing that helping a human is superior.

4. Why did the grandmother identify so strongly with the protagonist of Kashi Yatre?

Ans :

Just like the old woman in the novel, the grandmother had never visited Kashi, which is considered the ultimate pilgrimage for Hindus. She emotionally connected with the protagonist's devotion, struggles, and her ultimate act of selfless sacrifice.

5. What weekly routine did the narrator and her grandmother follow regarding the magazine?

Ans :

Every Wednesday, when the Karmaveera magazine arrived, the narrator would read the latest episode of Kashi Yatre aloud. The grandmother would listen with utmost concentration, memorize the plot, and later discuss it passionately with her friends in the temple courtyard.

6. Why did the narrator leave the village, and how long was her absence?

Ans :

The twelve-year-old narrator went to a neighboring village with her cousins to attend a wedding. Because weddings in those days were grand, prolonged events full of fun and freedom, she thoroughly enjoyed herself and stayed there for a whole week.

7. What did the grandmother do with the magazine when it arrived during the narrator's absence?

Ans :

Desperate to know the ongoing plot of the story, the illiterate grandmother repeatedly rubbed her hands over the magazine's pictures. She hoped the images would somehow reveal the story, feeling utterly helpless because she could not read the text herself.

8. Why didn't the grandmother ask anyone else in the village to read the magazine to her?

Ans :

Although she was desperate to read the serialised story, the grandmother felt too deeply embarrassed to ask anyone else for help. She was too proud to

Ans :

(d) Doing homework

39. **Assertion (A):** The grandmother proved her belief that one can overcome any obstacle.

Reason (R): She had intense willpower and dedication to learn for a good cause.

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.
 (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation.
 (c) A is true, but R is false in this specific context.
 (d) A is false, but R is true in this specific context.

Ans :

(a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.

40. Where was the narrator called when the festival day finally arrived?

- (a) The living room (b) The kitchen area
 (c) The puja room (d) The front porch

Ans :

(c) The puja room

41. What surprising action did the grandmother take towards her granddaughter?

- (a) Hugged her tightly
 (b) Kissed her forehead
 (c) Touched her feet
 (d) Held her hands

Ans :

(c) Touched her feet

42. Why was the grandmother touching the granddaughter's feet highly unusual?

- (a) Because typically only youngsters are supposed to touch their elders' feet.
 (b) Because touching feet is strictly forbidden during a festive puja ceremony.
 (c) Because only male teachers are allowed to have students touch their feet.
 (d) Because grandparents are never historically allowed inside the puja room.

Ans :

(a) Because typically only youngsters are supposed to touch their elders' feet.

43. Who did the grandmother beautifully explain she was paying respect to?

- (a) Her deity (b) Her teacher
 (c) Her mother (d) Her friend

Ans :

(b) Her teacher

44. The grandmother was grateful because her teacher helped her become _____.

- (a) Independent (b) Very wealthy
 (c) Highly famous (d) Very spiritual

Ans :

(a) Independent

45. What special reward did the narrator gift her grandmother?

- (a) A new saree
 (b) A silver coin
 (c) A weekly magazine
 (d) A novel copy

Ans :

(d) A novel copy

46. Which newly published book was given to the grandmother?

- (a) Karmaveera (b) Saraswati
 (c) Kashi Yatre (d) Triveni

Ans :

(c) Kashi Yatre

47. What part of the gifted novel did the grandmother confidently read out loud?

- (a) The title (b) The preface
 (c) The chapters (d) The conclusion

Ans :

(a) The title

48. **Assertion (A):** The grandmother passed her reading test with flying colours.

Reason (R): She confidently read the title of the gifted novel out loud.

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.
 (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation.
 (c) A is true, but R is false in this specific context.
 (d) A is false, but R is true in this specific context.

Ans :

(a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.

20. How did the grandmother finally prove that she had achieved her ultimate goal?

Ans :

Upon receiving the novel, the grandmother immediately opened the book and confidently read the title, Kashi Yatre, along with the publisher's name, aloud. This clearly proved that she had successfully overcome her illiteracy and achieved true independence.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Triveni's novel Kashi Yatre acts as a powerful catalyst in the story. Analyze how this fictional piece of literature profoundly impacted the grandmother's real-life choices.

Ans :

In the story, literature serves as a powerful instrument of change. Triveni's novel, Kashi Yatre, follows an old woman who sacrifices her pilgrimage to help an orphan. Krishtakka, the grandmother, deeply resonated with this protagonist because she too had never visited Kashi. Her emotional investment in the serialised novel was so profound that her inability to read it during her granddaughter's absence caused her intense agony. The psychological distress of rubbing her hands over the unreadable pages sparked a crucial realization. She recognized the crippling nature of illiteracy. Thus, a fictional story became the ultimate catalyst, igniting her fierce determination to learn the Kannada alphabet and transforming her into an independent, literate woman at the age of sixty-two.

2. Analyze the character of Krishtakka. How does she evolve from a dependent old woman to an empowered and independent reader?

Ans :

Krishtakka is portrayed as a loving, traditional, yet strong-willed woman. Initially, she represents many women of her generation who were deprived of education due to early marriage and prevailing social norms. Though financially secure, she depends on her twelve-year-old granddaughter to read her favorite magazine.

However, her character undergoes a remarkable transformation when she faces helplessness. Instead of giving in to self-pity, she shows great determination and proves that age is not a barrier to learning. She humbly accepts her young granddaughter as her teacher and begins to

learn reading and writing.

By the end of the story, Krishtakka becomes an empowered and self-reliant individual. Her journey shows that strong willpower and determination can break personal and societal barriers.

3. Imagine you are the twelve-year-old narrator. Write a diary entry expressing your shock and confusion on the day you found your strong grandmother crying, and her surprising request to teach her to read.

Ans :

Wednesday, 14th April 2026

Dear Diary,

I am still reeling from what happened today. When I returned from the wedding, I found Ajji in tears. I was completely terrified! I have seen her face the toughest situations without blinking, so seeing her cry was unimaginably shocking. When she poured her heart out later that night, I realized how utterly helpless she felt just because she couldn't read Karmaveera. I felt a deep pang of guilt for staying away so long. But then, she surprised me even more. She asked me to teach her the Kannada alphabet! I childishly laughed at her grey hair and spectacles, but her fierce determination silenced me. I am now officially a teacher to my own grandmother!

Sudha

4. "For learning, there is absolutely no age bar at all." Discuss how this profound theme is established in the story, with reference to the grandmother's actions.

Ans :

The story beautifully dismantles the stereotype that education is strictly meant for the young. When Krishtakka declares her intention to learn the Kannada alphabet at the age of sixty-two, her twelve-year-old granddaughter playfully mocks her physical aging—her grey hair, spectacles, and wrinkled hands. However, the grandmother responds with absolute conviction, stating that for a good cause, willpower can conquer any obstacle, regardless of age. She proves this philosophy through her rigorous routine. She studies tirelessly, doing homework and reciting alphabets with the obedience of a primary school child. By successfully learning to read before the Dassara deadline, she establishes the core theme: the thirst for knowledge and the capacity to learn remain alive at every stage of human life.

Ans :

Based on the pictures provided, the vocations are:

1. Basket weaving / Bamboo crafting
2. Pottery / Pot making
3. Handloom weaving
4. Carpentry / Woodworking

Five more vocations are:

1. Blacksmithing
2. Tailoring
3. Goldsmithing
4. Masonry
5. Cobbling

II. Work in pairs. Discuss the following questions and share your answers with your classmates and teacher.

1. What is common among these pictures?

Ans :

The common factor among all these pictures is that they depict people engaged in traditional, skill-based manual labor and handicrafts. They are all creating products using their hands and specialized tools.

2. We refer to such skill-based work as

v _ _ a _ _ o _ s.

Ans :

vocations

3. Mention a few differences between handmade and machine-made products.

Ans :

Handmade products : These are unique, as slight variations occur naturally when made by hand. They require a lot of time, patience, and specialized skill to create. They often carry cultural significance and a personal touch from the artisan.

Machine-made products : These are uniform and identical. They are mass-produced at a much faster rate and are usually cheaper to buy. They lack the personal touch and unique character of handmade items.

Check Your Understanding

- I. Do you think pot making is easy? If yes, why? If no, why not?

Ans :

No, pot making is not easy. Based on the text, it involves strenuous physical labor, such as trekking long distances to find the right clay, carrying

heavy loads uphill, and tediously pounding stubborn clay to soften it. It also requires immense patience, precision, and skill to shape the clay perfectly without it collapsing.

- II. Would Sentila be able to fulfil her dream of becoming a pot maker? Explain.

Ans :

Yes, it is highly likely that Sentila would be able to fulfill her dream. She is deeply passionate about the craft, highly observant, and determined enough to sneak out to watch experts and practice on her own. Despite her mother's initial reluctance and her own early clumsiness, her dedication suggests she will eventually succeed.

- III. Do you think Mesoba and Arenla would support Sentila? Give a reason.

Ans :

Mesoba is supportive of Sentila, as evidenced by his respectful defense of her potential in front of the village council, stating she would soon make the best pots. Arenla initially does not support her because she views pot making as an exhausting job with very little financial reward. However, given Sentila's passion and the village's strict cultural expectation to pass on traditional skills, Arenla will likely be pressured or persuaded to support her eventually.

NODIA

Check Your Understanding

- Do you think Onula's support helped Sentila? If yes, why? If no, why not?

Ans :

Yes, Onula's support immensely helped Sentila. When Sentila was struggling and tense, Onula provided a calm, encouraging environment. By kindly demonstrating the correct technique and offering words of reassurance, Onula helped Sentila gain the confidence she had never felt before, which allowed her to finally shape a beautiful pot.

- II. Sentila observes her mother making pots. What does this tell us about her?

Ans :

Sentila's keen observation of her mother tells us that she is a highly dedicated, focused, and passionate learner. She pays close attention to the finest details of the craft—such as the positioning of the hands, the use of the spatula, and the specific rhythm required—demonstrating her deep desire to master pot making.

India. The grandmother explains that after losing her mother, there was no one to look after her. Since education for girls was considered entirely unnecessary, she was never sent to school and was married off at a very young age. This reflects a tragic societal norm where young girls were confined strictly to domestic duties, completely stripped of intellectual empowerment. However, the narrative is incredibly hopeful. It refuses to let past injustices dictate the future. By showcasing the grandmother's fierce determination to learn at the age of sixty-two, the story beautifully illustrates that it is never too late to break societal chains and reclaim one's right to education.

10. As Sudha Murty (the narrator), draft a short speech to be delivered at a school assembly on the topic "Overcoming Obstacles through Willpower," using your grandmother's journey as your primary example.

Ans :

Respected Principal, Teachers, and my dear friends,
Today, I want to talk about a superpower we all possess: willpower. We often give up when we face difficulties and blame our circumstances. But I would like to share a story about my first student—my grandmother. At the age of sixty-two, she realized the pain of being illiterate. Instead of accepting it, she decided to learn the Kannada alphabet.

When I laughed at her age, she calmly said that there is no age limit for a good cause. For months, she worked harder than any student I know—studying, reciting, and writing continuously. On the occasion of Dassara, she read her first novel on her own. Her journey taught me that no obstacle—whether age, society, or past regrets—can stand against strong determination.

Thank you.

Extract Based Questions

- Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :
"One of her novels, called Kashi Yatre, was appearing as a serial in the Kannada weekly Karmaveera then. It is the story of an old lady and her ardent desire to go to Kashi or Varanasi. Most Hindus believe that going to Kashi and worshipping Lord Vishweshwara is the ultimate punya. This old lady also believed in this, and her struggle to go there was described in that novel.

In the story there was also a young orphan girl who falls in love but there was no money for the wedding."

- What underlying theme of the novel does the text reveal?
(a) Selfless sacrifice
(b) Religious devotion
(c) Social inequality
(d) Romantic pursuit
- Consider the following statements based on the extract:
I. The novel explores orthodox religious beliefs.
II. The narrative includes an element of romance.
(a) Both I and II are correct
(b) Neither I nor II is correct
(c) Only I is correct
(d) Only II is correct
- What struggle did the old lady face in the novel?
- Which word in the extract is a synonym for 'passionate' or 'intense'?
- State whether the following statement is True or False:
The old lady in the novel easily achieved her dream of visiting Kashi without any hardships.

Ans :

- (b) Religious devotion
- (a) Both I and II are correct
- The old lady struggled to fulfil her deep desire of visiting Kashi to worship Lord Vishweshwara.
- ardent
- False, the text explicitly mentions her "struggle to go there".

- Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"My grandmother, Krishtakka, never went to school so she could not read. Every Wednesday the magazine would come and I would read the next episode of this story to her. During that time she would forget all her work and listen with the greatest concentration. Later, she could repeat the entire text by heart. My grandmother too never went to Kashi, and she identified herself with the novel's protagonist. So more than anybody else she was the one most interested in knowing what happened next in the story and used to insist that I read the serial out to her."

time she tries, the clay collapses into a misshapen lump, leaving Sentila deeply discouraged, frustrated, and ashamed.

Onula's Gentle Guidance

The turning point in Sentila's journey arrives in the form of a thoughtful and generous woman named Onula. One day, Onula observes Sentila struggling wearily with her clay. Recognizing that the young girl is simply too tense and lacking confidence, Onula steps in to help. Instead of being critical, she creates a calm and encouraging environment. With gentle words of reassurance, Onula demonstrates the correct techniques and patiently guides Sentila. This much-needed emotional support and mentorship finally help Sentila relax and successfully shape a beautiful pot.

The Birth of a New Pot Maker

Sentila's ultimate test comes when her mother falls unwell and asks her to continue the work on a new batch of pots. Armed with years of secret observation, her father's belief in her, Onula's guidance, and her own relentless perseverance, Sentila works independently. Later, when Onula enters the work shed, she is left completely stunned. She finds two perfectly neat rows of newly made pots that are so identical she cannot distinguish Sentila's work from her expert mother's work. Sentila has crafted the pots quickly and flawlessly. The story ends on a triumphant note—Sentila's dream has been fulfilled, her perseverance has paid off, and the village's cultural heritage is safe because "a new pot maker was born."

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Accompany – go somewhere with someone as a companion, escort
2. Expert – having or showing special skill or knowledge, specialist
3. Amused – entertained, finding something funny
4. Insistence – demanding something forcefully, firmly stating something must be done
5. Outgrow – to lose interest in something as one grows older
6. Passion – strong emotion, intense desire, enthusiasm
7. Disclose – make known, reveal, uncover
8. Fascination – strong attraction, deep interest
9. Overheard – heard without the speaker's knowledge
10. Indifference – lack of interest in something
11. Pittance – a small amount of money received as income
12. Sheer – nothing other than, absolute, steep
13. Aches – suffers from a continuous dull pain, hurts
14. Pounding – repeated beating
15. Stubborn – difficult to move, unyielding, inflexible
16. Cylinders – solid or hollow tube-shaped objects
17. Tedious – tiring
18. Exhaustion – state of being extremely tired, extreme fatigue
19. Batch – a quantity or group of goods produced at one time
20. Labour – hard physical work, effort
21. Providing – supplying, giving
22. Messy – untidy, dirty
23. Indoors – inside a building
24. Handsome – (here) substantial, large in amount, highly rewarding
25. Lump – a compact mass of a substance, chunk, piece
26. Deftly – skillfully
27. Rotated – moved in a circle around an axis, turned
28. Spatula – tool used by a potter to shape a pot
29. Emerging – coming into view, becoming apparent
30. Retain – continue to have, keep possession of, preserve
31. Consistency – thickness or firmness of a liquid or semi-solid substance, texture
32. Kiln – a furnace or oven for baking pottery
33. Uniform – remaining the same in all cases, consistent, even
34. Tend – take care of
35. Ignorant – lacking knowledge or awareness, unaware
36. Gossip – casual conversation or reports about other people, rumors
37. Followed suit – did the same thing as somebody else has just done
38. Summoned – urgently called on to be present, sent for
39. Humble – having or showing a modest estimate of one's own importance, polite
40. Cautioning – warning someone, advising against
41. Generation – all of the people born and living at about the same time
42. Catered – provided what was needed, supplied

- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation.
- (c) A is true, but R is false.
- (d) A is false, but R is true.
- iii. What did the grandmother regret most in her life?
- iv. Which word in the text means 'to feel sad or disappointed over something that has happened or been done'?
- v. Fill in the blank:
The grandmother derived immense joy in her later years by _____ and feeding her family.

Ans :

- i. (b) Societal prejudice
 - ii. (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - iii. Grandmother regretted never going to school and not receiving an education.
 - iv. regret
 - v. cooking
5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :
- "Yes, I need your help. You know when you were away, Karmaveera came as usual. I opened the magazine. I saw the picture that accompanies the story of Kashi Yatre and I could not understand anything that was written. Many times I rubbed my hands over the pages wishing they could understand what was written. But I knew it was not possible. If only I was educated enough. I waited eagerly for you to return. I felt you would come early and read for me."
- i. The act of rubbing her hands over the pages indicates the grandmother's:
 - (a) Great physical pain
 - (b) Deep desperation
 - (c) Anger at publishers
 - (d) Love for pictures
 - ii. Consider the following statements about the grandmother's experience:
 - I. She attempted to guess the story solely from the pictures.
 - II. She felt helpless without the young narrator's assistance.
 - (a) Only I is true
 - (b) Only II is true
 - (c) Both I and II are true
 - (d) Neither I nor II is true
 - iii. Why did the grandmother wait eagerly for the narrator to return?

- iv. Identify the word from the extract that means 'goes along with' or 'is present with'.
- v. Fill in the blank:
The grandmother rubbed the pages hoping she could understand them, but realized it was impossible because she lacked _____.

Ans :

- i. (b) Deep desperation
- ii. (c) Both I and II are true
- iii. She wanted the narrator to come early and read the next episode of Kashi Yatre to her, as she could not read it herself.
- iv. accompanies
- v. education

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"I have decided I want to learn the Kannada alphabet from tomorrow onwards. I will work very hard. I will keep Saraswati Puja day during Dassara as the deadline. That day I should be able to read a novel on my own. I want to be independent."

I saw the determination on her face. Yet I laughed at her.

'Avva, at this age of sixty-two you want to learn the alphabet? All your hair is grey, your hands are wrinkled, you wear spectacles and you work so much in the kitchen...'"

- i. The grandmother setting a specific deadline shows that she is:
 - (a) Unsure of herself
 - (b) Highly goal-oriented
 - (c) Easily distracted
 - (d) Seeking outside praise
- ii. Which of the following best describes the narrator's immediate reaction to the grandmother's decision?
 - (a) Deep admiration and support
 - (b) Childish mockery and disbelief
 - (c) Genuine concern and worry
 - (d) Complete indifference and silence
- iii. What deadline did the grandmother set for herself to learn to read?
- iv. Which word in the extract means 'free from outside control; not depending on another's authority'?
- v. State whether the following statement is True or False:
The narrator believed that the grandmother's physical signs of aging made her unfit for learning.

- i. The grandmother's ability to repeat the text by heart primarily reveals her:
 - (a) Sharp memory
 - (b) Hidden literacy
 - (c) Lack of work
 - (d) Musical talent
- ii. **Assertion (A):** The grandmother was deeply invested in the weekly serial.
Reason (R): She felt a personal connection with the main character of the novel.
 - (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation.
 - (c) A is true, but R is false.
 - (d) A is false, but R is true.
- iii. Why did the grandmother identify herself with the protagonist of Kashi Yatre?
- iv. What word in the text means 'the main character of a story'?
- v. Fill in the blank:
 The grandmother felt a strong bond with the old lady in the novel because both shared the unfulfilled dream of visiting _____.

Ans :

- i. (a) Sharp memory
 - ii. (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - iii. Like the old lady in the novel, the grandmother had also never been to Kashi, so she felt a deep personal connection with her.
 - iv. protagonist
 - v. Kashi
3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :
- "Once I went for a wedding with my cousins to the neighbouring village. In those days, a wedding was a great event. We children enjoyed ourselves thoroughly. We would eat and play endlessly, savouring the freedom because all the elders were busy. I went for a couple of days but ended up staying there for a week. When I came back to my village, I saw my grandmother in tears. I was surprised, for I had never seen her cry even in the most difficult situations. What had happened? I was worried."
- i. Why was the narrator surprised to see her grandmother crying?
 - ii. Which of the following best describes the speaker's perspective upon returning home?
 - (a) Joyful and nostalgic

- (b) Alarmed and bewildered
 - (c) Angry and impatient
 - (d) Relieved and relaxed
- iii. The opening lines about the village wedding create a mood that is initially:
 - (a) Deeply serious
 - (b) Carefree and joyous
 - (c) Highly suspenseful
 - (d) Calm and spiritual
 - iv. Which word in the extract means 'enjoying or appreciating something fully'?
 - v. State whether the following statement is True or False:
 The narrator intended from the beginning to stay at the wedding for an entire week.

Ans :

- i. The narrator was surprised because her grandmother had never cried even in the most difficult situations.
- ii. (b) Alarmed and bewildered
- iii. (b) Carefree and joyous
- iv. savouring
- v. False, she initially "went for a couple of days but ended up staying there for a week".

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"When I was a young girl, I lost my mother. There was nobody to look after and guide me. My father was a busy man and got married again. In those days people never considered education essential for girls, so I never went to school. I got married very young and had children. I became very busy. Later I had grandchildren and always felt so much happiness in cooking and feeding all of you. At times I used to regret not going to school, so I made sure that my children and grandchildren studied well..."

- i. What primarily prevented the grandmother from receiving an education in her childhood?
 - (a) Financial poverty
 - (b) Societal prejudice
 - (c) Personal disinterest
 - (d) Geographic distance
- ii. **Assertion (A):** The grandmother ensured her children and grandchildren received a good education.
Reason (R): She wanted to compensate for her own unfulfilled desire to go to school.
 - (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

CHAPTER 2

THE POT MAKER

NODIA

1. INTRODUCTION

Set in a close-knit traditional village that deeply values its ancestral crafts, the story follows a young girl named Sentila who harbours a hidden passion for pot making. Despite her intense fascination with the art, she faces strict opposition from her mother, Arenla. Arenla considers the craft physically exhausting and financially unrewarding, pushing Sentila towards the cleaner, profitable trade of handloom weaving instead. The narrative explores the tension between practical economic choices and shared cultural heritage as Sentila, guided by village elders and a patient mentor, embarks on a challenging journey to master the traditional clay work.

2. CHARACTERS

Sentila

A young, passionate girl who dreams of becoming an expert pot maker. She is determined, highly observant, and a very quick learner.

Arenla

Sentila's mother and an expert potter. She initially refuses to teach Sentila pottery because it is exhausting and pays poorly, preferring her to learn weaving instead.

Mesoba

Sentila's supportive father. He patiently defends his wife Arenla before the village council and acts as a bridge between his family and village traditions.

Onula

A kind, middle-aged widow who supervises the girls' dormitory. She supports Sentila's dream, encouraging her and teaching her how to properly shape the clay.

Village Elders

The respected leaders of the village council. They ensure that traditional skills like pot making are passed down to the next generation without restriction.

3. SUMMARY

Sentila's Hidden Passion

The story revolves around a young girl named Sentila who harbours a deep passion for the traditional art of pot making. She spends her time keenly observing expert potters, mesmerized by how they shape clay into beautiful pots. However, she hides this desire from her mother, Arenla, who is herself an expert pot maker. Arenla strongly discourages Sentila from taking up the craft. To Arenla, pot making is a messy, exhausting job that requires trekking long distances for clay, carrying heavy loads, and tedious physical labour, all for a very tiny financial reward. Instead, Arenla wants Sentila to learn handloom weaving, as it is a profitable, clean, indoor job that brings in a handsome income.

The Village Council's Intervention

In their culture, traditional skills are highly respected and protected. The village council soon notices that Arenla is not teaching her daughter the family craft. They summon Sentila's father, Mesoba, and issue a gentle but firm warning. The elders remind him that traditional skills do not belong to any single person; they are the shared history and heritage of the community. Therefore, it is Arenla's strict cultural duty to pass her knowledge down to the next generation. Mesoba, who is highly supportive of his daughter, defends Sentila's potential and promises that she will learn the art.

A Year of Struggle and Failure

Pressured by the council and her husband, Arenla finally begins to train Sentila. However, mastering the craft proves to be incredibly difficult. The process of pot making is highly demanding—it involves pounding stubborn clay inside bamboo cylinders, softening it, and shaping it with a spatula using a highly specific rhythm. Under her mother's strict and watchful eyes, Sentila becomes tense and clumsy. Even after a whole year of training, she fails to make a proper pot. Every

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

Ans :

- i. (b) Highly goal-oriented
- ii. (b) Childish mockery and disbelief
- iii. She set Saraswati Puja day during Dassara as her deadline.
- iv. independent
- v. True, she listed grey hair, wrinkled hands, and spectacles as reasons to laugh at her attempt to learn.



43. Symbolised – represented by means of symbols, signified
44. Obligated – required or bound by duty, compelled
45. Trough – a long, narrow open container used for holding water
46. Dao – an instrument used to dig
47. Stuffing – filling a space tightly, cramming
48. Proportion – a part or share considered in comparative relation to a whole, ratio
49. Malleable – able to be put into shape without breaking or cracking
50. Dough – a thick, malleable mixture of clay and water
51. Frustration – the feeling of being upset or annoyed, disappointment
52. Transformed – made a thorough or dramatic change, altered
53. Matured – reached an advanced stage of mental or emotional development, grown up
54. Custom – a traditional and widely accepted way of behaving, tradition
55. Dormitories – large rooms containing many beds as in a hostel
56. Supervised – observed and directed the execution of, overseen
57. Widow – a woman whose spouse has died
58. Discord – disagreement, conflict, disharmony
59. Resolved – (here) determined
60. Implements – tools, utensils, instruments
61. Clumsy – awkward in movement or in handling things, ungraceful
62. Tense – unable to relax, nervous, rigid
63. Yield – produce or provide, give way
64. Wearily – tiredly
65. Misshapen – not having the normal or natural shape, deformed
66. Amazement – a feeling of great surprise or wonder, astonishment
67. Fashioned – made or shaped, created
68. Confidence – the feeling or belief that one can rely on someone or something, self-assurance
69. Admiring – looking at with pleasure, appreciating
70. Slackened – relaxed
71. Rhythm – a strong, regular, repeated pattern of movement or sound
72. Elongated – unusually long in relation to its width, stretched out
73. Rim – the upper or outer edge of an object, border
74. Reluctantly – with hesitation, doubt, or dread, unwillingly

NODIA

75. Coordination – the ability to use different parts of the body together smoothly, synchronization
76. Sprinter – an athlete who runs over short distances, fast runner
77. Momentum – driving force
78. Dexterity – skill
79. Tally – a count of (pots)
80. Threshold – entrance of a room
81. Intuitively – based on feelings
82. Momentous – of great significance
83. Ajar – slightly open
84. Abruptly – suddenly and unexpectedly, hastily
85. Curiosity – a strong desire to know or learn something, inquisitiveness
86. Handiwork – something that one has made or done, creation
87. Absorb – take in or understand fully, comprehend
88. Phenomenon – unusual incident
89. Witnessed – saw an event or occurrence, observed
90. Profound – powerful
91. Revelation – a moment of realisation
92. Moist – slightly wet, damp
93. Symmetry – the quality of being made up of exactly similar parts facing each other, balance

5. MESSAGE

In this story, Easterine Kire gives a beautiful message about following our true passion. Sentila's journey teaches us that real happiness comes from doing what we love, even if our family disagrees at first. While earning money is important, keeping our traditional arts and cultural heritage alive is equally valuable. The author inspires us to work hard, learn from our elders, and never give up on our dreams.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Reflect and Respond

- I. Look at the pictures given below and identify the vocations. Now, list at least five more vocations.



5. The relationship between the grandmother and the granddaughter undergoes a beautiful role reversal. Evaluate how this unusual dynamic strengthens their bond.

Ans :

The traditional relationship between a grandparent and a grandchild usually involves the elder teaching the younger. However, in this story, there is an interesting role reversal where a twelve-year-old girl becomes the teacher of her sixty-two-year-old grandmother.

At first, the narrator finds this situation amusing and treats it lightly. But as the grandmother shows sincere dedication and determination to learn, the girl begins to develop deep respect for her.

The emotional peak occurs when the grandmother touches the girl's feet in the puja room. She honors her not as a grandchild, but as a Guru who gave her the gift of literacy. This experience transforms their relationship into one based on mutual respect, equality, and affection.

6. "I knew then that my student had passed with flying colours." Explain the context of this statement and the significance of this realization by the young teacher.

Ans :

The narrator makes this proud statement on the day of Saraswati Puja. As a reward for her grandmother's rigorous hard work, the narrator gifts her a newly published copy of the novel *Kashi Yatre*. The true test of her teaching and the grandmother's learning culminates in this exact moment. Without any hesitation or assistance, the grandmother opens the book and fluently reads the title and the publisher's name aloud. For the young teacher, this is a moment of immense triumph. It validates the months of patient teaching and diligent homework. The phrase "passed with flying colours" signifies not just academic success, but the grandmother's ultimate victory over her deeply rooted dependency, officially marking her successful transition into an independent individual.

7. Imagine a conversation between Krishtakka and her friends at the temple courtyard a week after Dassara, where she proudly discusses reading *Kashi Yatre* independently. Write this dialogue.

Ans :

Krishtakka: (Smiling proudly) "Namaskara, sisters! Have you read the latest episode of *Kashi*

Yatre?"

Friend 1: "Not yet, Krishtakka. We are waiting for someone to read it to us. Did Sudha read it to you?"

Krishtakka: "No, she didn't! I read it myself. The old woman in the story finally gave her savings to the orphan girl!"

Friend 2: (Astonished) "You read it yourself? But you couldn't read Kannada!"

Krishtakka: "I couldn't, but my little Sudha taught me. I studied every single day. I was so tired of feeling helpless and relying on others just to follow a story."

Friend 1: "That is incredible, Krishtakka! At our age, learning is so difficult."

Krishtakka: "Age is just a number! If you have the determination, nothing can stop you from gaining independence."

8. Imagine you are Krishtakka. Write a letter to the famous author Triveni, expressing your gratitude for her novel and sharing how it inspired you to learn to read.

Ans :

Dear Triveni,

I am a sixty-two-year-old woman from a small village in North Karnataka, and I am writing to express my deepest gratitude to you. Your novel, *Kashi Yatre*, literally changed my life.

Like your protagonist, I too had a deep yearning, but mine wasn't to visit *Kashi*; it was to escape the suffocating darkness of illiteracy. When I couldn't read your serialised story during my granddaughter's absence, I felt an unbearable agony.

That helplessness sparked a fire within me. I decided to learn the Kannada alphabet, and my twelve-year-old granddaughter became my teacher.

Today, I can proudly read your beautiful novel independently. Thank you for creating a story so compelling that it gave an old woman the courage to reclaim her independence.

Yours sincerely,

Krishtakka

9. How does the author highlight the tragic reality of women's education in rural India during the grandmother's childhood, and how does the narrative offer a sense of hope?

Ans :

The story poignantly touches upon the historical marginalization of women's education in rural

III. Arrange the following events of the story in the correct sequence. Share your answer with your classmates and teacher.

1.	The village council called Mesoba to know about Arenla's unwillingness to teach pottery to Sentila.	
2.	Arenla made a new batch of pots and asked Sentila to continue the work as she was unwell.	
3.	Sentila observed how other expert potters crafted beautiful pots.	
4.	Sentila was passionate about pottery but did not share it with her mother.	
5.	Onula guided Sentila in the art of pot making.	
6.	Sentila overheard her mother saying that pot making was a tiring job and that she earned very little from it.	
7.	Onula observed two rows of pots inside the work shed, which she felt was the work of two people.	
8.	Sentila learnt the art of pot making for a year from her mother, but was unsuccessful.	
9.	Sentila was able to make pots quickly and skillfully, just one less than her mother's.	

Ans :

Correct Sequence

4. Sentila was passionate about pottery but did not share it with her mother.
6. Sentila overheard her mother saying that pot making was a tiring job and that she earned very little from it.
3. Sentila observed how other expert potters crafted beautiful pots.
1. The village council called Mesoba to know about Arenla's unwillingness to teach pottery to Sentila.
8. Sentila learnt the art of pot making for a year from her mother, but was unsuccessful.
5. Onula guided Sentila in the art of pot making.
2. Arenla made a new batch of pots and asked Sentila to continue the work as she was unwell.
9. Sentila was able to make pots quickly and skillfully, just one less than her mother's.
7. Onula observed two rows of pots inside the work shed, which she felt was the work of two

people.

Critical Reflection

I. Read the extracts given below and answer the questions that follow.

1. Pounding the stubborn clay inside bamboo cylinders to soften it, is also tedious. So many times I've dropped the mould out of sheer exhaustion and have had to start all over again. It takes months to bring out a batch of pots after so much labour. And the reward? A few rupees. But if Sentila learns weaving, she can make much more money besides providing enough cloth for the family. Weaving is not messy like pot making and can be done indoors in all seasons. Also, the time spent on weaving one shawl is much less and the return is handsome.

- i. Choose the correct reason for the given assertion.
(A) : The effort in making pots is far greater than the returns.

- A. The process of pot making is quite tiresome and long, and one hardly earns much.
- B. The process of pot making is exhausting, takes a long time, yet gives a sense of satisfaction.

- ii. Why does Arenla want Sentila to learn weaving?

- iii. State one advantage that weaving has over pot making, as per the extract.

- iv. Choose the sentence that uses the word 'handsome' in the same way as in the extract.

- A. My father is a handsome man.
- B. They will make a handsome profit selling this property.

- v. 'And the reward?' What is the author's purpose of using a question mark here?

Ans :

- i. A. The process of pot making is quite tiresome and long, and one hardly earns much.
- ii. Arenla wants Sentila to learn weaving because it is far more profitable and less physically exhausting than pot making. Weaving is an indoor activity that isn't messy, takes less time to complete a product (like a shawl), provides cloth for their own family, and brings in a "handsome" financial return.
- iii. One advantage is that weaving is not messy and can be done comfortably indoors during all seasons.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the main character in the story?

- (a) Sentila (b) Arenla
(c) Mesoba (d) Onula

Ans :

- (a) Sentila

2. What is Sentila's hidden passion?

- (a) Basket weaving (b) Pot making
(c) Loom weaving (d) Field farming

Ans :

- (b) Pot making

3. Sentila observes the expert potters very _____.

- (a) casually (b) quickly
(c) keenly (d) rarely

Ans :

- (c) keenly

4. What does Sentila do with her deep desire?

- (a) Shares it (b) Flaunts it
(c) Forgets it (d) Hides it

Ans :

- (d) Hides it

5. Why does Arenla strongly discourage Sentila from taking up the craft?

- (a) She feels the girl lacks the needed focus.
(b) She wants her to study outside the village.
(c) She thinks village elders will get annoyed.
(d) She views it as messy and exhausting work.

Ans :

- (d) She views it as messy and exhausting work.

6. Arenla feels pot making brings a very tiny _____.

- (a) social respect (b) physical relief
(c) financial reward (d) community pride

Ans :

- (c) financial reward

7. The work requires trekking long distances for _____.

- (a) water (b) clay
(c) sand (d) wood

Ans :

- (b) clay

8. Arenla wanted Sentila to learn handloom _____.

- (a) weaving (b) spinning
(c) knitting (d) dyeing

Ans :

- (a) weaving

9. How does Arenla describe handloom weaving?

- (a) Profitable job (b) Tedious labor
(c) Exhausting task (d) Messy chore

Ans :

- (a) Profitable job

10. **Assertion (A):** Arenla prefers handloom weaving for Sentila.

Reason (R): Handloom weaving is an outdoor job.

- (a) A and R are true, R explains A.
(b) A is true, but R is wholly false.
(c) A is false, but R is wholly true.
(d) A and R are both entirely false.

Ans :

- (b) A is true, but R is wholly false.

11. Handloom weaving brings in a _____ income.

- (a) poor (b) average
(c) handsome (d) minimal

Ans :

- (c) handsome

12. What kind of job is handloom weaving considered?

- (a) Messy job (b) Heavy job
(c) Dirty job (d) Clean job

Ans :

- (d) Clean job

13. Traditional skills in their culture are highly _____.

- (a) ignored (b) respected
(c) criticized (d) forgotten

Ans :

- (b) respected

14. Who notices Arenla is not teaching Sentila?

- (a) Village council (b) Fellow potters
(c) Senior weavers (d) Distant relatives

Ans :

- (a) Village council

she realized that Sentila had finally mastered the craft. The “new phenomenon” was the sudden and profound birth of a masterful new pot maker, a realization that left Onula stunned.

5. ‘The tradition and history of the people did not belong to any individual,’ what does this symbolise?

Ans :

This statement symbolizes the concept of collective cultural heritage. It highlights that traditional arts, crafts, and knowledge are the shared wealth of a community, forged over generations. Therefore, no single person “owns” the skill; instead, they are simply custodians who have a moral responsibility to teach and preserve the art for the survival of the community’s identity.

6. What is the significance of the concluding line of the story, ‘A new pot maker was born’?

Ans :

The concluding line powerfully signifies Sentila’s successful coming-of-age and her transformation from a clumsy, struggling learner into a skilled artisan. It represents the fulfillment of her lifelong dream and the triumph of her perseverance, while also ensuring that the village’s cultural tradition will live on through her.

7. What is the role of perseverance in pursuing one’s dreams? Elaborate with reference to Sentila.

Ans :

Perseverance is the steadfast drive to keep trying despite difficulties, and it is crucial for achieving any dream. Sentila exemplifies this beautifully. She faced numerous hurdles: her mother’s absolute refusal, village gossip, her own physical inability to shape the clay initially, and a year of disheartening failure. However, Sentila never gave up. She continued to observe, practice in secret, and accept guidance from Onula. Her unwavering perseverance ultimately allowed her to master the craft and realize her dream.

Vocabulary and Structures in Context

- I. Read the highlighted words in the following sentences from the text.

- She taught Sentila how to dig the clay with **dao**, load it on to her **carrying basket**...
- Sentila was a quick learner and turned the **clay** into malleable **dough**. Pounding the stubborn clay inside **bamboo cylinders** to soften it ...

The highlighted words describe the tools and materials required in the process of pot making. Now, classify the words/phrases given in the box as shown in the table below. One example for each category has been done for you.

dao	dough	pounding	bamboo
clay	kiln	spatula	basket
cylinders	rotating	bed of hay	shaping

Tools/Implements	Raw Materials	Process
dao	dough	pounding

Ans :

Tools/Implements	Raw Materials	Process
dao	dough	pounding
kiln	bamboo	rotating
spatula	clay	shaping
basket	bed of hay	
cylinders		

II. Notice the use of the following words in the text.

pittance	rupees	reward	return
----------	--------	--------	--------

These words relate to livelihood and economic aspects that are crucial for any enterprise/business/vocation.

Work in pairs and find the meanings of the following words related to economy. You may refer to a dictionary.

bankrupt	credit	currency	debt,
fiscal	inflation	investment	interest

Now, frame sentences using each word.

Ans :

- bankrupt** : (Meaning: completely lacking in money; unable to pay outstanding debts.)
Sentence : The small business went completely **bankrupt** after the sudden economic crash.
- credit** : (Meaning: the ability of a customer to obtain goods or services before payment, based on trust that payment will be made in the future.)
Sentence : He bought the new weaving machine on **credit** and promised to pay for it next month.

- iv. B. They will make a handsome profit selling this property. (Here, 'handsome' refers to a substantial amount of money, just like in the text).
 - v. The author uses a question mark to highlight Arenla's frustration and bitterness. It emphasizes the stark, unfair contrast between the months of grueling physical labor she puts into making pots and the pitifully small amount of money she receives in return.
2. Onula saw her taking out some clay and the implements from her basket quietly. She watched Sentila's clumsy efforts to make a pot and noticed that Sentila was too tense. As a result, the clay seemed unable or unwilling to yield the right shape. When Sentila wearily let the misshapen lump fall flat on the ground, Onula went to her and said, "Don't worry, little one, I shall teach you how to make a perfect pot." Sentila watched in amazement as Onula fashioned a beautiful pot and asked her to try again.
- i. Complete the sentence with an appropriate reason.
Onula feels Sentila's effort at making a pot is clumsy because _____.
 - ii. Choose the correct option to complete the following sentence.
'Don't worry, little one, I shall teach you how to make a perfect pot.'
This shows that Onula was _____.
A. sincere and generous
B. forgiving and thoughtful
C. thoughtful and generous
D. forgiving and sincere
 - iii. Which among the following is the effect of a cause?
A. As a result, the clay seemed unable or unwilling to yield the right shape.
B. Onula saw her taking out some clay and the implements from her basket quietly.
 - iv. 'Onula fashioned a beautiful pot.' Here, the word 'fashioned' means _____. (created/styled)
 - v. How might Sentila have felt when she saw 'the misshapen lump fall flat on the ground'?

Ans :

- i. Onula feels Sentila's effort at making a pot is clumsy because **she was too tense**.
- ii C. thoughtful and generous

- iii. A. As a result, the clay seemed unable or unwilling to yield the right shape.
- iv. created
- v. Sentila most likely felt a deep sense of disappointment, frustration, weariness, and shame at her repeated failure to shape the clay properly.

II. Answer the following questions.

1. Describe the process of pot making followed by expert pot makers, as observed by Sentila.

Ans :

Sentila observed a meticulous process: first, the clay was mixed with water and pounded to soften it. Then, the potters carefully pushed their left hand into a lump of softened clay. They deftly rotated the lump while shaping it from the outside using a spatula held in their right hand, maintaining a specific rhythm. After shaping, the pots were given a final touch-up, left to dry in the sun, and finally arranged carefully in a kiln on a bed of hay and dried bamboo to be fired, which required strict attention to avoid ruining the batch.

2. What warning was given to Mesoba by the village council?

Ans :

The village council cautioned Mesoba to remind his wife, Arenla, that it was her strict duty to teach her daughter the skill of pot making. They warned him that traditional skills do not belong to an individual but symbolize the history of the people, and experts are culturally obliged to pass these skills down to the next generation.

3. How did Sentila feel when she failed at pot making even after a year of training with her mother?

Ans :

Sentila felt completely discouraged, hanging her head in deep shame and frustration. She was disheartened because, despite a year of sessions, she remained clumsy and could not even hold the lump of dough properly under her mother's watchful eye.

4. 'Onula stood there for a long time as if trying to absorb a new phenomenon'. Explain.

Ans :

When Onula entered the shed, she saw two perfectly neat rows of newly made pots that were so identical she could not tell Arenla's batch from Sentila's. She stood there in awe because

- (iv) Arenla, her mother, wanted her to learn weaving, which **was a much more profitable and less messy vocation**.
- (v) Mesoba went home and discussed the matter with Arenla, who **listened quietly to the council's warning**.

4. Read the highlighted words in the following lines from the text.

- Onula saw her taking out some clay...
- ... make as many pots as they could.
- ... did not belong to any individual.
- Slowly she walked away from this place of wonder.
- ... they would not have enough days of sunshine ...

i. Find out some more determiners from the text.

Ans :

Some other determiners found in the text include:
a, an, the, her, their, this, one, two, all.

ii. Fill in the blanks with suitable determiners. The first two blanks have been done for you.

- A. The florist arranged five bouquets for her clients, that were displayed in _____ elegant floral shop.
- B. The carpenter crafted _____ unique tables, and _____ became the centrepiece in _____ furniture collection.
- C. _____ of _____ apprentices in _____ culinary class demonstrated _____ knife skills during the intense cooking session.
- D. _____ of _____ sculptures were displayed at _____ art exhibition, showcasing _____ diverse artistic skills.

Ans :

- A. an
B. some, these, his
C. All, the, this, their
D. Many, these, the, their

Listen and Respond

I. You will listen to a man speak about stone statues. As you listen, complete the given paragraph by filling in the blanks with the exact words you listen to. (Transcript for teacher on page 261)

A statue is carved to create a shape that is 1. _____. Among the many things stone is used for making stone 2. _____ is one of them. India has some of the most 3. _____ stone sculptures, as is obvious from its many stone monuments across the country.

Ans :

1. three-dimensional, 2. sculptures, 3. fascinating and mesmerising

II. You will now listen to the man speaking about some steps involved in making stone statues. As you listen, select the six correct steps out of the nine given.

1. carve to remove large unwanted portions of the stone
2. set up the different tools
3. measure the weight and dimensions of the statue
4. leave the statue in water to firm up overnight
5. refine the creation within the stone
6. choose the stone
7. begin carving from the centre
8. detach the creation from the stone as the final statue
9. work to bring out the imagined shape

Ans :

The six correct steps involved in making stone statues are:

6. choose the stone
2. set up the different tools
1. carve to remove large unwanted portions of the stone
5. refine the creation within the stone
9. work to bring out the imagined shape
8. detach the creation from the stone as the final statue

Speaking Activity

- Work in pairs and choose two characters from the story—Sentila and one other character [Arenla, Mesoba, Onula, or a village elder].
- Prepare to speak from the chosen character's perspective based on information from the story and the understanding of the intentions of the characters.
- Prepare a role-play between Sentila and the chosen character. The conversation between the characters should cover the following points.
 - Sentila's desire to learn pot making
 - the challenges she faces
 - the advice or perspective the other character offers
- Students can use direct quotes from the story and creatively expand on the characters' thoughts and feelings.

3. **currency** : (Meaning: a system of money in general use in a particular country.)
Sentence : The official **currency** of Japan is the Yen.
4. **debt** : (Meaning: a sum of money that is owed or due to someone else.)
Sentence : After taking a large loan for her education, she worked hard to pay off her **debt**.
5. **fiscal** : (Meaning: relating to government revenue, especially taxes, or financial matters.)
Sentence : The government announced a new **fiscal** policy to help support local artisans.
6. **inflation** : (Meaning: a general increase in prices and a fall in the purchasing value of money.)
Sentence : Due to high **inflation**, the cost of raw clay and bamboo has doubled this year.
7. **investment** : (Meaning: the action or process of putting money into something for profit or material result.)
Sentence : Buying a larger kiln was a wise **investment** for the potter's growing business.
8. **interest** : (Meaning: money paid regularly at a particular rate for the use of money lent.)
Sentence : The bank charges a low rate of **interest** on loans given to traditional craftsmen.

III. Read the following sentences from the text.

The main clause has been underlined and the subordinate clause has been circled.

- ... she realised **that** the pot was ready.
- She intuitively sensed **that** something momentous had happened.

Subordinate clauses that act like nouns and perform the same functions as subject or object are called noun clauses.

1. Complete the following sentences with suitable noun clauses.
 - (i) The elders emphasised that _____.
 - (ii) Mesoba explained why _____.
 - (iii) Onula's promise was that _____.
 - (iv) Sentila observed her mother carefully when she was shaping the mouth of the pot, which _____.
 - (v) The kiln, where _____, required careful attention to prevent over-or-under firing.

Ans :

- (i) The elders emphasised that **it was Arenla's duty to teach her daughter**.
- (ii) Mesoba explained why **Arenla had not yet taught Sentila the craft**.
- (iii) Onula's promise was that **she would teach Sentila how to make a perfect pot**.
- (iv) Sentila observed her mother carefully when she was shaping the mouth of the pot, which **she had found incredibly difficult to do earlier**.
- (v) The kiln, where **the final pots were baked**, required careful attention to prevent over-or-under firing.

2. Read the following sentences from the text. Underline the main clause and circle the subordinate clause.

- (i) Arenla took Sentila to the riverbank where the grey and red clay was found.
- (ii) She started on the next one, and like a sprinter who had suddenly found momentum...
- (iii) ... skills such as pot making, which not only catered to the needs of the people...

Ans :

- (i) **Arenla took Sentila to the riverbank** [where the grey and red clay was found]
- (ii) **She started on the next one, and like a sprinter** [who had suddenly found momentum]
- (iii) **skills such as pot making**, [which not only catered to the needs of the people]

3. Complete the following sentences with suitable relative clauses.

- (i) Sentila, whose _____, practised the craft diligently.
- (ii) The village council, where _____, sought an explanation for Arenla's reluctance.
- (iii) The potter's hands, which _____, shaped the clay into beautiful creations.
- (iv) Arenla, her mother, wanted her to learn weaving, which _____.
- (v) Mesoba went home and discussed the matter with Arenla, who _____.

Ans :

- (i) Sentila, whose **dream was to become a great potter**, practised the craft diligently.
- (ii) The village council, where **the village elders gathered**, sought an explanation for Arenla's reluctance.
- (iii) The potter's hands, which **moved with incredible dexterity**, shaped the clay into beautiful creations.

Step 5 : Conclusion

Through this reflection, I realize that photography is not just a hobby for me, but a serious pursuit. By continually refining my technical skills and maintaining my patience, I am confident I can turn this passion into a fulfilling lifelong career.

Learning Beyond the Text**I. Pottery is practised in many parts of our country and each region has its unique style**

Find out about the different styles of indigenous pottery of your region and other regions of our country. Some notable styles include:

- Khurja pottery from Uttar Pradesh
- Blue pottery from Jaipur
- Terracotta from West Bengal
- Andretta pottery from Himachal Pradesh
- Karigari pottery from Tamil Nadu
- Longpi Black pottery from Manipur

1. Match the pictures with the pottery it represents.

Ans :

Picture 1 (Top Left, colorful intricate designs) : Khurja pottery from Uttar Pradesh

Picture 2 (Top Middle, distinctive blue and white floral) : Blue pottery from Jaipur

Picture 3 (Top Right, clay horse figures) : Terracotta from West Bengal

Picture 4 (Bottom Left, greenish/blue glazed bowls) : Andretta pottery from Himachal Pradesh

Picture 5 (Bottom Middle, brown/black intricate pots) : Karigari pottery from Tamil Nadu

Picture 6 (Bottom Right, solid black metallic-looking cookware) : Longpi Black pottery from Manipur

II. You must have read stories in English and in your own language about the value of handicrafts and art. Read the story 'Quality' by John Galsworthy. Write its review and make a presentation highlighting the decline of traditional crafts and

skills vs. industrialisation and mass-produced goods.

Ans :

Review of "Quality" by John Galsworthy

"Quality" is a deeply moving short story that explores the heartbreaking conflict between passionate craftsmanship and the ruthless rise of mass-producing industries. The story revolves around the Gessler brothers, German shoemakers in London who view their trade not merely as a business, but as an art form. Mr. Gessler creates boots that are perfectly fitted and extraordinarily durable, pouring his very soul into every piece of leather. However, as large firms begin to dominate the market through aggressive advertising rather than the quality of their goods, the Gessler brothers lose their customers. Ultimately, the younger Mr. Gessler starves to death because he refuses to compromise his art, spending all his money on rent and fine leather rather than food. The story is a poignant critique of a modernizing world that values speed and cheapness over true quality and human dedication.

Presentation Points : Decline of Traditional Crafts vs. Industrialisation :

1. **The Loss of the Personal Touch :** Traditional crafts (like Mr. Gessler's boots) are made specifically for the individual, ensuring perfect fit and quality. Industrialisation produces standard, uniform goods that lack this personal connection.
2. **Quality vs. Quantity :** Artisans take immense pride and time in their work, ensuring longevity. Factories prioritize high-volume production and profit margins, often leading to inferior durability.
3. **The Power of Advertising :** As highlighted in the story, modern industries often win customers through flashy marketing ("by advertisement, not by work") rather than the actual merit of their products, unfairly drowning out small artisans.
4. **Economic Starvation of Artisans :** Handicraft workers cannot compete with the low prices and fast delivery times of factories, leading to severe poverty and the eventual death of ancient trades.
5. **Erosion of Heritage :** When skill-based vocations die out, society loses a vital piece of its cultural history and the appreciation for true artistry.

28. Shaping the clay requires a highly specific _____.

- (a) motion (b) rhythm
(c) volume (d) weight

Ans :

- (b) rhythm

29. Under her mother's strict eyes, Sentila becomes _____.

- (a) extremely bold (b) highly skilled
(c) very clumsy (d) quite joyful

Ans :

- (c) very clumsy

30. **Assertion (A):** Sentila instantly masters pot making.

Reason (R): Her mother's watchful eyes relax her completely.

- (a) A and R are true, R explains A.
(b) A is true, but R is wholly false.
(c) A is false, but R is wholly true.
(d) A and R are both entirely false.

Ans :

- (d) A and R are both entirely false.

31. How long does Sentila train without making a proper pot?

- (a) One month (b) One year
(c) One week (d) One day

Ans :

- (b) One year

32. When Sentila tries to make a pot, the clay collapses into a _____.

- (a) misshapen lump (b) perfect circle
(c) solid block (d) broken piece

Ans :

- (a) misshapen lump

33. Sentila feels deeply _____, frustrated, and ashamed.

- (a) encouraged (b) discouraged
(c) entertained (d) indifferent

Ans :

- (b) discouraged

34. Who arrives as the turning point in Sentila's journey?

- (a) Onula (b) Arenla
(c) Mesoba (d) Sentila

Ans :

- (a) Onula

35. Which phrase best describes Onula's fundamental character in the story?

- (a) Strict and heavily demanding.
(b) Jealous and highly competitive.
(c) Thoughtful and highly generous.
(d) Arrogant and extremely dismissive.

Ans :

- (c) Thoughtful and highly generous.

36. Onula observes Sentila struggling _____ with her clay.

- (a) happily (b) rapidly
(c) easily (d) wearily

Ans :

- (d) wearily

37. What does Onula recognize about Sentila?

- (a) She lacks the right clay.
(b) She lacks physical strength.
(c) She lacks the proper tools.
(d) She lacks needed confidence.

Ans :

- (d) She lacks needed confidence.

38. Instead of being critical, Onula creates a _____ environment.

- (a) chaotic (b) calm
(c) noisy (d) tense

Ans :

- (b) calm

39. Onula provides gentle words of _____.

- (a) reassurance (b) correction
(c) scolding (d) warning

Ans :

- (a) reassurance

40. How does Onula's teaching style differ from Arenla's approach?

- (a) She forces the girl to work much faster.
(b) She strictly criticizes every single mistake.
(c) She patiently demonstrates correct techniques.
(d) She tells the village council to heavily punish.

Ans :

- (c) She patiently demonstrates correct techniques.

15. Which of the following statements is correct regarding the village council?

(a) They highly discourage traditional crafts.
 (b) They ignored Arenla's teaching methods.
 (c) They summoned Sentila for strict warning.
 (d) They summoned Sentila's father, Mesoba.

Ans :

(d) They summoned Sentila's father, Mesoba.

16. What kind of warning does the council issue?

(a) Harsh warning (b) Angry warning
 (c) Gentle warning (d) Vague warning

Ans :

(c) Gentle warning

17. According to the elders, traditional skills are the shared _____.

(a) personal property
 (b) hidden treasures
 (c) community heritage
 (d) financial burdens

Ans :

(c) community heritage

18. Traditional skills do not belong to _____.

(a) village elders (b) young children
 (c) older generation (d) single persons

Ans :

(d) single persons

19. It is Arenla's strict cultural _____ to pass on her knowledge.

(a) duty (b) wish
 (c) idea (d) plan

Ans :

(a) duty

20. **Assertion (A):** Mesoba opposes Sentila's interest in pot making.

Reason (R): He thinks it is a very messy job.

(a) A and R are true, R explains A.
 (b) A and R are both entirely false.
 (c) A is true, but R is wholly false.
 (d) A is false, but R is wholly true.

Ans :

(b) A and R are both entirely false.

21. Mesoba is highly _____ of his daughter.

(a) critical (b) ashamed
 (c) ignorant (d) supportive

Ans :

(d) supportive

22. How does Mesoba react when summoned by the village elders?

(a) He angrily refuses to teach his daughter.
 (b) He begs the elders for financial assistance.
 (c) He defends her potential and promises support.
 (d) He blames his wife for breaking the traditions.

Ans :

(c) He defends her potential and promises support.

23. Who pressured Arenla to train Sentila?

(a) Village weavers
 (b) Council and husband
 (c) Local clay sellers
 (d) Sentila and friends

Ans :

(b) Council and husband

24. Mastering the craft of pot making proved to be incredibly _____.

(a) difficult (b) simple
 (c) boring (d) useless

Ans :

(a) difficult

25. Which of the following statements is correct about the pot making process?

(a) It involves pounding stubborn clay in bamboo.
 (b) It involves weaving threads on a handloom.
 (c) It involves baking pots in an electric oven.
 (d) It involves purchasing clay from city shops.

Ans :

(a) It involves pounding stubborn clay in bamboo.

26. The clay is pounded inside _____ cylinders.

(a) metal (b) wooden
 (c) bamboo (d) plastic

Ans :

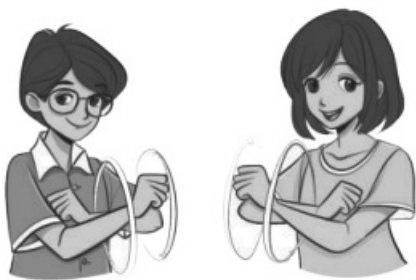
(c) bamboo

27. What tool is used to shape the softened clay?

(a) Hammer (b) Chisel
 (c) Trowel (d) Spatula

Ans :

(d) Spatula



You may use the following sentence prompts.

- I feel/felt _____ because...
- I wish/wished _____ because...
- When you said/did _____, it made me feel/think _____ because...

Ans :

Characters : Sentila and Arenla

Sentila : Mother, I feel nervous because I really want to learn pot making but I was afraid to tell you.

Arenla : Sentila, I wish you had told me earlier because I would have helped you.

Sentila : When I heard you say that pot making is tiring and earns very little, it made me feel discouraged because I thought you didn't want me to learn it.

Arenla : I said that because it is hard work, but it is also an important skill. I feel proud that you are interested in it.

Sentila : I tried learning by myself, but I faced many challenges. The clay was hard to shape, and my pots would break.

Arenla : That is natural. I felt the same when I was learning. You need patience and practice.

Sentila : I didn't give up because I really wanted to improve. Now I feel happy because I can make good pots.

Arenla : I am glad to see your progress. My advice is to keep practising and believe in yourself.

Sentila : Thank you, Mother. I feel confident now because of your support.

Writing Task

Reflective Writing – Identifying Skills and Passion
Reflective writing encourages introspection and thoughtful exploration of personal experiences, skills, and aspirations. It helps individuals gain deeper insights into themselves and their goals through structured reflection.

1. Follow the steps given below to create a write-up about your skills and passions.

Step 1 : Introduction

Reflect on your passions and the skills you currently possess or are developing. Consider why these activities or interests are meaningful and enjoyable to you.

Step 2 : Describing skills

Describe specific activities or practices you engage in to nurture your skills. This could include hobbies, classes (art, music, coding, etc.), workshops, or personal projects.

Step 3 : Passion into profession

Identify which of these skills you believe have the potential to turn your passion into a profession. Explain why you think these skills are crucial or advantageous in your chosen field.

Step 4 : Examples and reflection

Provide examples or anecdotes that illustrate how your skills and passions complement each other. Reflect on how these experiences have shaped your career aspirations and personal growth.

Step 5 : Conclusion

Summarise your reflections. Discuss any insights gained about yourself, your skills, and your career ambitions through this exercise.

Ans :

My Passion for Photography

Step 1 : Introduction

I have always been deeply passionate about photography. The ability to freeze a single moment in time and capture the raw emotion of a scene is incredibly meaningful to me. It allows me to view the world from unique perspectives.

Step 2 : Describing skills

To nurture this skill, I regularly go on photo-walks around my city during the "golden hour" to understand natural lighting. I have also taken online workshops on photo editing and composition, which helps me practice framing my subjects perfectly.

Step 3 : Passion into profession

I believe my strong observational skills and technical knowledge of cameras have the potential to turn this passion into a profession. In fields like photojournalism or wildlife photography, a keen eye for detail and the patience to wait for the perfect shot are crucial advantages.

Step 4 : Examples and reflection

For example, last month I spent three hours waiting quietly in a park just to capture a kingfisher diving into a pond. That experience taught me immense patience and showed me that my technical skills complement my dedication. This has strongly shaped my ambition to become a wildlife photographer.

41. Onula's support finally helps Sentila _____.

- (a) relax (b) quit
(c) sleep (d) argue

Ans :

- (a) relax

42. After Onula's help, Sentila shapes a _____ pot.

- (a) broken (b) tiny
(c) beautiful (d) heavy

Ans :

- (c) beautiful

43. Sentila's ultimate test comes when her mother falls _____.

- (a) asleep (b) unwell
(c) outside (d) silent

Ans :

- (b) unwell

44. What does Arenla ask Sentila to do?

- (a) Clean the shed
(b) Fetch river clay
(c) Stop making pots
(d) Continue the work

Ans :

- (d) Continue the work

45. Which of the following statements is correct about Sentila's ultimate test?

- (a) She heavily relied on Onula's active help.
(b) She failed completely to finish the new batch.
(c) She used relentless perseverance to work alone.
(d) She outright refused to work without her mom.

Ans :

- (c) She used relentless perseverance to work alone.

46. During her ultimate test, Sentila worked _____.

- (a) recklessly (b) forcefully
(c) hesitantly (d) independently

Ans :

- (d) independently

47. How does Onula feel when she enters the work shed later?

- (a) Stunned (b) Angry
(c) Amused (d) Worried

Ans :

- (a) Stunned

48. What does Onula find in the work shed?

- (a) Broken clay pieces
(b) Two neat pot rows
(c) Empty bamboo sticks
(d) Dirty shaping tools

Ans :

- (b) Two neat pot rows

49. Onula cannot distinguish Sentila's work from her _____ work.

- (a) mother's (b) father's
(c) sister's (d) friend's

Ans :

- (a) mother's

50. What is the profound significance of the story's conclusion?

- (a) Sentila permanently abandons the village.
(b) Arenla decides to completely ban pot making.
(c) The village's rich cultural heritage is safe.
(d) Onula demands payment for her crucial teaching.

Ans :

- (c) The village's rich cultural heritage is safe.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. What was Sentila's hidden passion, and how did she initially pursue it?

Ans :

Sentila's hidden passion was the traditional craft of pot making. Initially, she kept this deep desire a secret from her family. To learn the craft, she spent her time keenly observing the expert potters in her village as they worked.

2. Why did Sentila choose to hide her deep desire to make pots?

Ans :

Sentila hid her deep desire because she knew her mother, Arenla, strongly discouraged the craft. Arenla viewed pot making as an exhausting, messy chore that required heavily demanding physical labour, which intimidated Sentila into keeping her genuine passion a secret.

3. According to Arenla, what were the physical hardships associated with pot making?

clumsy and incapable of making a proper pot for a year. Arenla's initial approach highlights how a lack of emotional support can severely hinder a student's learning process.

3. Contrast the teaching styles of Arenla and Onula. How does pedagogy affect a learner's confidence based on the narrative?

Ans :

The story presents a stark contrast between two distinct pedagogical approaches through Arenla and Onula. Arenla's teaching style is authoritarian, strict, and highly critical. She teaches out of cultural obligation rather than genuine encouragement. Under her intimidating presence, Sentila becomes anxious, clumsy, and thoroughly discouraged, failing to shape a single pot for a year. Conversely, Onula is thoughtful, generous, and highly observant. She instantly recognizes that Sentila lacks confidence, not capability. By creating a calm, tension-free environment and offering gentle reassurance alongside patient demonstrations, Onula completely transforms the learning experience. This stark contrast highlights a profound psychological truth: a supportive, empathetic teaching style fosters relaxation and confidence, which are absolutely crucial for a learner to unlock their true potential and succeed.

4. Discuss the theme of cultural heritage and community responsibility as depicted through the village council's actions.

Ans :

The story deeply explores the vital theme of cultural heritage versus individual ownership. In the village, traditional skills like pot making are highly respected and are not considered the personal property of a single person. When the village council discovers that Arenla is refusing to teach Sentila, they immediately summon her husband, Mesoba. They issue a gentle but firm warning, emphasizing that such traditional skills are the shared community heritage. The council firmly establishes that it is an expert's strict cultural duty to pass their knowledge onto the next generation. This collective intervention underscores the belief that preserving local art forms is a shared community responsibility, ensuring that the rich cultural history of the village is never lost to individual selfishness or mere economic practicality.

5. Evaluate the pivotal role of Mesoba in Sentila's journey. How does his support influence the plot's

progression?

Ans :

Mesoba plays a brief but highly important role in Sentila's journey to becoming a potter. In a society where Arenla strictly controls her daughter's future and prefers profitable weaving, Mesoba becomes a strong pillar of support. When called by the village council about his wife's refusal to teach Sentila, he does not get offended or blindly support his wife's practical arguments.

Instead, Mesoba stands firmly by his daughter. He confidently presents Sentila's potential before the elders and promises to support her. By supporting the council's decision and encouraging Arenla to fulfill her cultural duty, he helps resolve the conflict. His belief in Sentila strengthens her confidence and sets her journey toward learning pottery in motion.

6. Analyze the climax of the story when Arenla falls unwell. What does Sentila's independent success signify about her character?

Ans :

The climax of the story occurs when Arenla falls unexpectedly unwell, leaving the heavy workload of pot making entirely on Sentila's shoulders. This serves as Sentila's ultimate test. Stripped of Onula's active guidance and free from her mother's intimidating oversight, Sentila is forced to rely purely on her own abilities. Working independently, she demonstrates relentless perseverance. She meticulously pounds the stubborn clay and uses the spatula with the perfect rhythm she was taught. When Onula later enters the shed and is stunned to find two neat rows of pots indistinguishable from Arenla's, it signifies a profound coming-of-age moment. Sentila's success proves her absolute mastery of the craft, her newfound self-belief, and confirms that the heavy responsibility of preserving her village's cultural heritage is finally safe in her hands.

7. "Traditional skills are community heritage, not personal property." Based on your reading of the text, justify this statement made by the village elders.

Ans :

The village elders' statement profoundly reflects the essence of community-based cultures where survival and identity are deeply intertwined with shared traditions. By claiming that skills like pot making are "community heritage," the elders emphasize that these crafts carry the historical

shaped using a specific tool called a spatula. The artisan must strike the clay utilizing a highly specific and steady rhythm to form the pot correctly without breaking its delicate structure.

15. Why did Sentila struggle so much during her initial training sessions with Arenla?

Ans :

Sentila struggled immensely because Arenla maintained a strict, intimidating presence. Under her mother's watchful and critical eyes, Sentila lost all her confidence, becoming very clumsy. The immense pressure caused her to repeatedly fail at shaping the clay properly.

16. What was the result of Sentila's first year of training, and how did it affect her?

Ans :

For an entire year, Sentila trained without successfully making a single proper pot; the clay would constantly collapse into a misshapen lump. This prolonged failure left her feeling deeply discouraged, profoundly frustrated, and utterly ashamed of her perceived incompetence.

17. What did Onula accurately recognize about Sentila's struggle with the clay?

Ans :

When Onula saw Sentila struggling wearily, she insightfully recognized that the young girl did not lack natural talent or physical strength. Instead, Onula realized that Sentila severely lacked the needed confidence due to her mother's overwhelmingly strict teaching methods.

18. How did Onula successfully help Sentila shape her first beautiful pot?

Ans :

Onula created a calm, completely tension-free environment. Instead of criticizing, she offered gentle reassurance and patiently demonstrated the correct techniques. This thoughtful support finally helped Sentila relax, allowing her to shape her very first beautiful pot successfully.

19. What circumstance led to Sentila's ultimate test in her pot-making journey?

Ans :

Sentila's ultimate test occurred abruptly when her mother, Arenla, fell unwell. Unable to work, Arenla asked Sentila to step up and continue the heavy workload alone, forcing the young girl to rely entirely on her own skills and confidence.

20. What is the profound significance of the story's conclusion for the village?

Ans :

The story concludes with Sentila perfectly replicating her mother's work, which deeply signifies that she has fully mastered the craft. The profound significance is that the village's rich cultural heritage is completely safe and successfully passed to the next generation.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Draw a detailed character sketch of Sentila, highlighting her passion, struggles, and ultimate triumph.

Ans :

Sentila is a determined and passionate young girl with deep respect for her cultural roots. Despite her mother Arenla's strong opposition and preference for weaving, she secretly nurtures a strong love for the art of pot making. In the beginning, she appears insecure and easily intimidated. Under her mother's strict and critical supervision, she becomes clumsy and keeps failing, as her clay turns into misshapen lumps for an entire year.

However, Sentila is highly resilient and determined. With patient guidance from Onula, she quickly learns the techniques, showing that she always had natural talent. Her true success comes during her mother's illness, when she works independently. Through her hard work and perseverance, she creates perfect rows of pots, proving her skill and preserving her community's tradition.

2. Analyze Arenla's character in the story. Why did she initially oppose her daughter's passion, and how did her approach affect Sentila?

Ans :

Arenla is depicted as a practical, strict, and somewhat rigid mother who is highly skilled in pot making but disillusioned by its hardships. She fiercely opposes Sentila's passion because she views pot making as an exhausting, messy job that requires trekking long distances for clay, all for a tiny financial reward. Instead, she advocates for handloom weaving, an essentially clean and profitable job. When pressured by the council to teach Sentila, Arenla does so out of duty rather than enthusiasm. Her teaching style is overbearing and critical. Her strict, watchful eyes strip Sentila of her confidence, rendering the girl

By celebrating the ‘pankha’ and appreciating the stories behind them, we can instil pride in the craftspersons, boost market demand, and keep the vibrant “winds of change” blowing for India’s rich artistic heritage.

3. WORD MEANINGS

1. Originates – begins, starts, arises
2. Denotes – indicates, represents, signifies
3. Plumed – covered with feathers, feathery
4. Evidence – proof, confirmation, indication
5. Existence – presence, survival, being
6. Representations – depictions, portrayals, illustrations
7. Embroidery – decorative needlework, stitching
8. Sculptures – carved artworks, 3D statues
9. Deities – gods, goddesses, divine beings
10. Varied – differed, ranged, fluctuated
11. Significant – important, notable, major
12. Distributed – shared, spread, circulated
13. Exotic – unusual, foreign, striking
14. Substantial – considerable, large, significant
15. Commonality – shared feature, similarity, resemblance
16. Distinct – clear, unique, noticeably different
17. Intricate – detailed, complex, elaborate
18. Decorative – ornamental, fancy, pretty
19. Geographies – locations, regions, areas
20. Rituals – ceremonies, customs, traditions
21. Restricted – limited, confined, bound
22. Core – center, heart, essence
23. Appliqué – decorative patchwork, attached fabric design
24. Antique – old, vintage, ancient
25. Ornamental – decorative, attractive, fancy
26. Furthermore – additionally, moreover, also
27. Glittering – shining, sparkling, gleaming
28. Ornate – highly decorated, fancy, elaborate
29. Encrusted – covered or decorated
30. Engraving – carving, cutting designs into metal
31. Featuring – displaying, showing, presenting
32. Adjoining – neighboring, connecting, bordering
33. Indigenous – native, local, aboriginal
34. Elegant – graceful, stylish, refined
35. Embellished – decorated, adorned, ornamented
36. Dainty – delicate, small, pretty
37. Industrious – hardworking, diligent, busy
38. Tirelessly – without stopping, continuously, endlessly

39. Handicraft – handmade craft, artisanship
40. Embroidered – decorated with needlework, stitched
41. Delicate – fragile, fine, elegant
42. Sola – a type of water grass
43. Perpetually – constantly
44. Possession – ownership, belonging, item
45. Adorned – decorated, embellished, dressed up
46. Sturdy – strong, solid, durable
47. Antiquity – the distant past
48. Rarity – scarcity, uniqueness, infrequency
49. Adopted – taken up, embraced, accepted
50. Embedded – fixed firmly, implanted, inserted
51. Reserved – set aside, kept back, saved
52. Geometrical – relating to shapes, mathematical patterns
53. Advent – arrival
54. Transformed – changed, converted, altered
55. Commercial – business-related, trade-oriented, profitable
56. Livelihood – income, source of living, maintenance
57. Significantly – noticeably, importantly, greatly
58. Factored – influenced, considered, contributed
59. Preserve – protect, maintain, conserve
60. Essence – core, spirit, fundamental nature
61. Artistry – creative skill, artistic ability, craftsmanship
62. Invokes – calls forth, summons, brings to mind
63. Contemporary – modern, current, present-day
64. Demonstrate – show, display, exhibit
65. Platform – stage, opportunity, medium
66. Sustainable – maintainable, enduring, viable
67. Awareness – knowledge, understanding, consciousness

4. MESSAGE

Through this chapter, the author gives a strong message about preserving our traditional Indian crafts. The text explains how the handmade pankha, or hand fan, was once an important everyday item. As modern electric cooling machines became popular, this ancient craft began to disappear. However, the author reminds us that even as times change, we must value and celebrate these beautiful regional fans as proud symbols of our rich cultural history and art.

legacy, artistic expressions, and ancestral wisdom of the entire village. If a skill is treated merely as “personal property,” an individual like Arenla could selfishly let it die out simply because it lacks a handsome financial reward or requires exhausting physical labour. Treating the craft as a communal treasure ensures its survival. The elders’ intervention ensures that generational knowledge is preserved, proving that true wealth lies in a community’s lasting cultural identity rather than the fleeting financial profit of a clean, modern job like handloom weaving.

8. Imagine you are Onula. Write a diary entry expressing your feelings upon discovering the neat rows of pots in the shed made entirely by Sentila.

Ans :

Dear Diary,

I am completely stunned and overjoyed tonight! Today, I walked into the work shed to check on Sentila, knowing that Arenla had fallen unwell and the poor girl was left to manage the massive workload all by herself. I was honestly worried she might have given up. But what I saw left me entirely speechless. Sitting there beautifully were two perfectly neat rows of newly shaped pots.

I examined them closely, and I swear, I could not distinguish Sentila’s work from her mother’s expert craftsmanship! The perfect rhythm of the spatula, the smooth clay—it was flawless. I remember when she was just a discouraged girl whose clay would collapse into misshapen lumps. My heart swells with pride. Our village’s rich cultural heritage is finally safe in her capable hands!

- Onula

9. Imagine you are Sentila. Write a short speech to be delivered at a village gathering, thanking those who helped you master the craft of pot making.

Ans :

Respected Elders, Father, Mother, and my dear friend Onula,

Today, I stand before you not just as a daughter of this village, but proudly as a traditional potter. For a long time, my passion for shaping clay was hidden. I knew the work was messy, exhausting, and financially unrewarding. For an entire year, under the heavy weight of expectations, my clay collapsed into misshapen lumps, and I felt deeply ashamed.

I want to thank the Village Council and my supportive father, Mesoba, for defending my

potential. But most importantly, I owe my success to Onula. When I lacked confidence, you provided a calm environment and gentle reassurance. You taught me the rhythm of the spatula when I was weary. Because of you all, our rich cultural heritage remains safe today.

Thank you.

10. Write a dialogue between Mesoba and the Village Council where they discuss Arenla’s refusal to teach Sentila and Mesoba defends his daughter’s potential.

Ans :

Village Elder: Mesoba, we have noticed that Arenla is intentionally refusing to teach Sentila the craft of pot making. She pushes her towards weaving instead.

Mesoba: Respected elders, Arenla worries because pot making is an exhausting, messy job with a tiny financial reward. She wants a cleaner, profitable future for Sentila.

Village Elder: We understand her maternal worry. But traditional skills are our shared community heritage, not personal property to be discarded for money. It is Arenla’s strict cultural duty to pass this knowledge on.

Mesoba: You are absolutely right. I have seen Sentila observing the expert potters keenly. She has a true hidden passion for the clay. I highly support her interest.

Village Elder: Then you must speak to your wife. The tradition must not break.

Mesoba: I promise my full support. I will urge Arenla to begin her training immediately. Sentila has immense potential, and she will not disappoint the village.

NODIA

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Sentila did not disclose her fascination with pot making at home as she had overheard a conversation between her parents one night. Her mother was complaining about Sentila’s indifference to weaving. She said, “I shall not teach her pot making as it has brought no joy to me and only a pittance for my troubles. The riverbank, where the grey and red clay required for making pots is found, is sixteen kilometres from here. I need to climb down a sheer drop to the riverbank and my back aches from carrying the heavy load uphill all the way to the village.”

- i. What does Arenla's statement reveal about her perspective on pot making?
 - (a) She finds it a highly lucrative business
 - (b) She views it as physically exhausting
 - (c) She considers it a sacred tradition
 - (d) She thinks it is an easy pastime
- ii. **Assertion (A):** Sentila hid her interest in pot making from her parents.
Reason (R): Her parents were actively supporting her passion to be a potter.
 - (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.
 - (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation.
 - (c) A is true, but R is false.
 - (d) A is false, but R is true.
- iii. Why did Sentila not disclose her fascination with pot making at home?
- iv. Identify the word from the extract that means "a very small or inadequate amount of money."
- v. State whether the following statement is True or False:
 Arenla preferred Sentila to learn pot making because the required materials were easily accessible.

Ans :

- i. (b) She views it as physically exhausting
- ii. (c) A is true, but R is false.
- iii. Sentila had overheard her mother complaining about pot making, so she kept her interest hidden.
- iv. pittance
- v. False, because the required clay was located sixteen kilometres away down a sheer drop, making it physically taxing to gather.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Sentila continued her visits to watch the potters at work. She saw how the clay was mixed with water and pounded, how careful they were when they pushed their left hand into a lump of the softened clay and how deftly they rotated the lump as they started giving shape to the rotating clay with a spatula held in the right hand. The regular tap, tap of the spatula on the clay was music to her ears as she watched in fascination the pot emerging out of a shapeless lump right in front of her eyes."

- i. Why did the sound of the spatula feel like "music to her ears"?

- (a) She enjoyed its rhythmic, loud melody
 - (b) She was deeply captivated by the craft
 - (c) She knew it signaled the end of work
 - (d) She wanted to learn how to play music
- ii. Which of the following best describes the speaker's perspective of the pottery process?
 - (a) A tedious and repetitive daily chore
 - (b) A dangerous and physically risky task
 - (c) A magical and highly captivating art
 - (d) A loud and somewhat disturbing process
- iii. What fascinated Sentila most about the pot making process?
- iv. What word from the extract means "in a clever, quick, and skillful way"?
- v. Fill in the blank:
 Sentila was thoroughly mesmerised by how a shapeless lump was actively transformed into a _____.

Ans :

- i. (b) She was deeply captivated by the craft
- ii. (c) A magical and highly captivating art
- iii. Sentila was amazed to see a beautiful pot emerging out of a shapeless lump of clay.
- iv. deftly
- v. pot

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"When Sentila wearily let the misshapen lump fall flat on the ground, Onula went to her and said, "Don't worry, little one, I shall teach you how to make a perfect pot." Sentila watched in amazement as Onula fashioned a beautiful pot and asked her to try again. Sentila took another lump of clay and with a confidence she had never felt before, started the process all over again following the instructions she had just received. She created a beautiful pot! When it was done, she sat there admiring her work but Onula said, "The mouth of the pot is all wrong."

- i. How did Sentila's internal state shift after Onula's demonstration?
 - (a) From deeply resentful to extremely jealous
 - (b) From fully confident to completely hopeless
 - (c) From wearily defeated to highly motivated
 - (d) From somewhat annoyed to physically tired
- ii. **Statement I:** Onula's encouragement made Sentila's very next attempt completely flawless.

Statement II: Onula gently pointed out an architectural flaw in Sentila's finished pot.

- (a) Statement I is true, Statement II is false
 - (b) Statement I is false, Statement II is true
 - (c) Both Statement I and Statement II are true
 - (d) Both Statement I and Statement II are false
- iii. How did Onula help Sentila when she failed at her first attempt?
 - iv. Which word in the extract is the antonym of "energetically" or "briskly"?
 - v. State whether the following statement is True or False:
Onula blindly praised Sentila's second pot just to make her feel better.

Ans :

- i. (c) From wearily defeated to highly motivated
- ii. (b) Statement I is false, Statement II is true
- iii. Onula encouraged her, demonstrated how to make a perfect pot and asked her to try again.
- iv. wearily
- v. False, because Onula honestly pointed out that the mouth of the pot was all wrong to help her improve.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Before long, she realised that the pot was ready. She started on the next one, and like a sprinter who had suddenly found momentum, she continued making pot after pot with the same speed and dexterity that she had noticed in her mother's hands. Finally, when she looked at her row of pots, she saw that she had made just one short of her mother's tally. Exhausted from the labour, she decided to go into the house and join her mother for lunch. When she reached the threshold, she found her mother lying on the floor."

- i. The comparison to a "sprinter who had suddenly found momentum" implies Sentila:
 - (a) Desperately wanted to run away quickly
 - (b) Gained sudden, natural creative rhythm
 - (c) Was exhausted from her physical running
 - (d) Was racing to defeat her mother's count
- ii. **Assertion (A):** Sentila successfully made almost the same number of pots as her mother.

Reason (R): She had secretly been practising at the village council for years.

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.
 - (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation.
 - (c) A is true, but R is false.
 - (d) A is false, but R is true.
- iii. What unexpected sight did Sentila find when she reached the threshold of her house?
 - iv. Identify the word from the extract that means "readiness and grace in physical activity; skill."
 - v. Fill in the blank:
Sentila decided to stop working because she was _____ from the intense physical labour of crafting the pots.

Ans :

- i. (b) Gained sudden, natural creative rhythm
- ii. (c) A is true, but R is false.
- iii. Sentila found her mother lying on the floor.
- iv. dexterity
- v. Exhausted

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"The shop had a certain quiet distinction. There was no sign upon it other than the name of Gessler Brothers; and in the window a few pairs of boots. He made only what was ordered, and what he made never failed to fit. To make boots—such boots as he made—seemed to me then, and still seems to me, mysterious and wonderful. I remember well my shy remarks, one day, while stretching out to him my youthful foot. "Isn't it awfully hard to do, Mr Gessler?"

- i. The narrator's statement that the boots "never failed to fit" implies that Gessler Brothers:
 - (a) Used cheap and highly elastic leather
 - (b) Possessed absolute master craftsmanship
 - (c) Secretly bought boots from other stores
 - (d) Only produced extra-large sized footwear
- ii. How did the narrator feel about Mr. Gessler's boot making?
- iii. The phrase "mysterious and wonderful" lends what kind of tone to the passage?
 - (a) Comical and highly lighthearted
 - (b) Awe-struck and deeply appreciative
 - (c) Suspicious and extremely critical
 - (d) Melancholic and profoundly sad
- iv. Find the word in the extract that means "a quality or characteristic that sets something apart; excellence."

Ans :

Arenla despised pot making because of its intense physical demands. She pointed out that the work was incredibly messy and exhausting, requiring artisans to trek long, tiring distances simply to gather the necessary clay and water required for the craft.

4. What was Arenla's financial argument against taking up pot making?

Ans :

Aside from the immense physical exertion, Arenla discouraged pot making because it offered very little economic benefit. She firmly believed that despite the exhausting labour involved, the craft ultimately brought in a very tiny and insufficient financial reward for the artisan.

5. What alternative profession did Arenla prefer for her daughter?

Ans :

Instead of the messy job of pot making, Arenla strongly preferred that Sentila learn handloom weaving. She actively encouraged her daughter to master the loom, believing it was a much more suitable and beneficial skill for a young girl.

6. Why did Arenla consider handloom weaving superior to pot making?

Ans :

Arenla considered handloom weaving superior because she viewed it as a dignified, clean job. Unlike working with mud and clay, weaving was highly profitable and guaranteed a handsome income, ensuring a much more comfortable and secure financial future for Sentila.

7. How did the village culture view traditional skills like pot making?

Ans :

In their specific culture, traditional skills were not looked down upon but rather highly respected. The villagers valued these crafts deeply, recognizing them as an essential part of their shared identity and a vital link to their ancestral history.

8. What prompted the village council to intervene in Sentila's situation?

Ans :

The village council intervened when they noticed that Arenla was intentionally refusing to teach Sentila the craft of pot making. Concerned about this break in tradition, the elders summoned Sentila's father, Mesoba, to formally discuss the

urgent matter.

9. What gentle warning did the village elders issue regarding traditional skills?

Ans :

The elders issued a gentle warning, reminding the family that traditional skills are not single persons' property. Instead, they are the shared community heritage, belonging to the entire village, and must be preserved carefully for the benefit of future generations.

10. According to the village council, what was Arenla's strict cultural duty?

Ans :

The village council firmly stated that it was Arenla's strict cultural duty to pass on her expert knowledge of pot making to her daughter. Failing to teach Sentila was seen as a direct neglect of her responsibility to her community.

11. How did Mesoba react when he was summoned and questioned by the village elders?

Ans :

When summoned by the elders, Mesoba reacted very positively. Instead of making excuses, he proved to be highly supportive of his daughter. He defended Sentila's creative potential before the council and promised his full support for her learning journey.

12. What ultimately forced Arenla to begin training Sentila in pot making?

Ans :

Arenla was finally pressured into teaching her daughter due to the combined insistence of the village council and her husband, Mesoba. Their firm reminder of her cultural duty left her with no choice but to start training Sentila.

13. Describe the initial step of the pot making process that Sentila had to master.

Ans :

The initial process proved to be incredibly difficult. It involved immense physical effort, specifically the task of repeatedly pounding stubborn, raw clay inside large bamboo cylinders until it reached the precise consistency required for shaping the pots.

14. What specific tool and technique are required to shape the softened clay?

Ans :

Once the clay is softened, it must be carefully

CHAPTER 3

WINDS OF CHANGE

1. INTRODUCTION

The chapter “Winds of Change” explores the fascinating history and evolution of the traditional Indian hand fan, widely known as the *pankha*. Set against the backdrop of India’s diverse geography, the text highlights how various states utilize distinct local materials to craft these regional treasures. Originally created as a practical tool to combat sweltering Indian summers, the *pankha* faced a severe decline with the advent of modern electric cooling appliances. The narrative vividly captures the historical premise of this ancient craft as it slowly transitions from an everyday utility item into a beautifully celebrated decorative artefact.

2. SUMMARY

The Pankha and Its Historical Roots

The chapter titled “Winds of Change” beautifully captures the journey of the traditional Indian hand fan, locally known as the ‘*pankha*’. The title acts as a clever metaphor: “winds” refers to the cool breeze the fan provides, while “change” highlights how the fan has evolved over centuries. Originally born out of necessity due to India’s hot climatic conditions, the ‘*pankha*’ was an essential daily utility item used in ancient royal courts and everyday households alike. Over time, these hand fans became highly valued cultural goods. Because of their unique and intricate designs, they were considered exotic and stylish, and were even distributed widely through ancient trade routes.

A Reflection of Regional Culture and Craftsmanship

As the use of the ‘*pankha*’ spread across India, different villages and towns began crafting their own unique versions. The chapter highlights how the materials and designs of a ‘*pankha*’ serve as a reflection of a region’s distinct cultural identity and local artistry.

For example, the royal heritage of Rajasthan is reflected in its ‘*zardozi*’ fans made with glittering

gold threads and engraved brass temple fans. Gujarat showcases its famous textile industry through pure cotton fans decorated with intricate mirror work and colourful beads. Kerala utilises its abundant natural resources to create spade-shaped fans out of palm leaves, while West Bengal uses the spongy centre of the ‘*sola*’ plant. From the sturdy bamboo fans of Bihar to the woven cane fans of Assam, each ‘*pankha*’ is an innovative creation of hardworking, indigenous artisans.

The Impact of Modern Technology

With the advent of modern technology, such as electric ceiling fans and air conditioners, the everyday need for hand fans began to decline. The chapter points out that this technological advancement posed a major threat to the beautiful culture of ‘*pankhas*’. Because people no longer needed them just to cool down, the traditional craft ran the risk of slowly fading away and losing its presence among modern Indians.

Transformation from Utility to Cultural Artefact

Despite the decline in its daily use, the ‘*pankha*’ did not disappear; instead, its role in society shifted. No longer just a tool for cooling, the ‘*pankha*’ has been elevated to the status of a decorative cultural artefact. People today buy them to decorate their homes and to celebrate Indian heritage. This shift has transformed the traditional handicraft into a commercial business. The growing economic demand for these beautiful art pieces now provides a steady and sustainable source of livelihood for many Indian artisans.

The Need for Preservation and Innovation

The chapter concludes with a strong message about the importance of protecting this traditional craft. To ensure the ‘*pankha*’ survives in modern times, artisans must strike a balance between preserving ancient, traditional techniques and incorporating new, innovative designs that appeal to today’s buyers. Initiatives like ‘*pankha*’-making workshops are highly encouraged, as they help pass these valuable skills down to younger generations.

- v. State whether the following statement is True or False:
The Gessler Brothers heavily promoted their shop with large, flashy signboards.

Ans :

- i. (b) Possessed absolute master craftsmanship
- ii. The narrator found it mysterious and wonderful, and viewed it with deep admiration and reverence.
- iii. (b) Awe-struck and deeply appreciative
- iv. distinction
- v. False, because there was no sign upon the shop other than their name.

- v. Fill in the blank:
Mr. Gessler believes that large companies acquire their business solely through _____, rather than through actual hard work.

Ans :

- i. (b) Large firms stealing customers via ads
- ii. (b) Statement I is false, Statement II is true
- iii. The narrator noticed bitter struggle, lined face and a lot of grey hairs in his red beard.
- iv. ill-omened
- v. advertisement

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs



6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Dey get id all,” he said, “dey get id by advertisement, nod by work. Dey take id away from us, who lofe our boods. Id gomes to dis—bresently I haf no work. Every year id gets less. You will see.” And looking at his lined face I saw things I had never noticed before, bitter things and bitter struggle and what a lot of grey hairs there seemed suddenly in his red beard! As best I could, I explained the circumstances of those ill-omened boots.”

- i. Mr. Gessler’s primary complaint in this extract is directed against:
 - (a) The unexpectedly poor quality of leather
 - (b) Large firms stealing customers via ads
 - (c) Customers who never pay on time
 - (d) His brother refusing to help him work
- ii. **Statement I:** Mr. Gessler acknowledges that big firms produce better quality boots than he does.
Statement II: The narrator notices severe physical signs of stress and aging on Mr. Gessler.
 - (a) Statement I is true, Statement II is false
 - (b) Statement I is false, Statement II is true
 - (c) Both Statement I and Statement II are true
 - (d) Both Statement I and Statement II are false
- iii. What physical changes did the narrator notice on Mr. Gessler’s face?
- iv. Identify the hyphenated word in the extract that means “destined to bring bad luck or misfortune.”

5. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Reflect and Respond

- I. Does anyone in your family use a hand fan? What do you call it in your language? What is it made of?

Ans :

Yes, people in my family sometimes use a hand fan, especially during power cuts or in hot weather. In my language, it is called “pankha” (or you can write your regional word if different). It is usually made of “bamboo, palm leaves, or plastic”. Traditional hand fans are mostly made from natural materials like dried leaves and bamboo.

- II. Work in pairs. Study the pictures given below carefully and complete the information. Discuss your answers with your classmates and teacher.

Fans			
The State it is from	Assam	Kerala	Uttar Pradesh
Shape	_____	_____	_____
Made of	_____	Palm leaf	Moonj grass

Ans :

Assam

Shape : Circular

Made of : Bamboo (and leaves)

Kerala

Shape : Round

Made of : Palm leaf (already given)

Uttar Pradesh

Shape : Rectangular/Square

Made of : Moonj grass (already given)

- III. Work in pairs. Match the underlined words in Column 1 with their meanings in Column 2 given on the next page. Share your answers with your classmates and teacher.

I visited the crafts fair yesterday. It was a wonderful experience. Each indigenous artefact was an innovative creation of industrious craftsmen with its intricate design. It invoked a sense of respect for the initiatives taken by the government to showcase them.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	indigenous	i.	hardworking
2.	innovative	ii.	actions to improve a situation
3.	industrious	iii.	brought out
4.	intricate	iv.	local — from where it originated
5.	invoked	v.	new and original in approach
6.	initiatives	vi.	elaborate/detailed

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	indigenous	iv.	local — from where it originated
2.	innovative	v.	new and original in approach
3.	industrious	i.	hardworking
4.	intricate	vi.	elaborate/detailed
5.	invoked	iii.	brought out
6.	initiatives	ii.	actions to improve a situation

Check Your Understanding

- I. Work in pairs to complete the table on *pankha*. Share your answers with your classmates and teacher.

State	Type of Fan	Material Used
Rajasthan	appliqué hand fan	_____
	_____	gold thread
	temple hand fans	_____
Gujarat	mirror work hand fans	_____
	_____	beads
	_____	leather, decorated with thread and wool
West Bengal	<i>sola</i> hand fans	_____
Uttar Pradesh	_____	pure gold, silver zari, silk and satin frills
Bihar	_____	bamboo

3. The term “change” in the title highlights how the fan has:

- (a) Remained entirely unchanged
- (b) Become overly expensive
- (c) Evolved over centuries
- (d) Lost its cooling ability

Ans :

- (c) Evolved over centuries

4. The traditional hand fan was originally born out of:

- (a) Pure necessity (b) Sheer luxury
- (c) Royal demand (d) Foreign trade

Ans :

- (a) Pure necessity

5. Which condition made the hand fan an essential daily utility item?

- (a) Heavy monsoon rains
- (b) Freezing winter cold
- (c) Dry autumn winds
- (d) Hot climatic conditions

Ans :

- (d) Hot climatic conditions

6. The traditional fan was used in ancient royal courts and everyday _____.

- (a) Village markets (b) Households
- (c) Military camps (d) Trade centres

Ans :

- (b) Households

7. Over time, the traditional hand fans became highly valued:

- (a) Cultural goods (b) Farming tools
- (c) Weaponry items (d) Cooking vessels

Ans :

- (a) Cultural goods

8. Because of their unique designs, these traditional items were considered:

- (a) Cheap and common (b) Heavy and useless
- (c) Exotic and stylish (d) Plain and boring

Ans :

- (c) Exotic and stylish

9. Why were traditional hand fans widely distributed through ancient trade routes?

- (a) They were heavy materials used mainly for constructing ancient homes.

(b) They were given away freely to foreigners visiting Indian royal courts.

(c) They were used as weapons to protect merchants travelling long distances.

(d) They were valued as exotic cultural goods featuring very intricate designs.

Ans :

(d) They were valued as exotic cultural goods featuring very intricate designs.

10. As the use of the fan spread across India, different villages created their own:

- (a) Identical copies (b) Unique versions
- (c) Plastic variants (d) Electric motors

Ans :

- (b) Unique versions

11. The materials and designs of a local fan serve as a reflection of a region's:

- (a) Cultural identity (b) Economic poverty
- (c) Political system (d) Weather forecast

Ans :

- (a) Cultural identity

12. Which state's royal heritage is prominently reflected through zardozi fans?

- (a) Gujarat (b) Kerala
- (c) Rajasthan (d) Assam

Ans :

- (c) Rajasthan

13. Zardozi fans are traditionally crafted using glittering:

- (a) Silver wires (b) Gold threads
- (c) Copper coils (d) Iron chains

Ans :

- (b) Gold threads

14. Along with zardozi fans, Rajasthan is also known for its engraved:

- (a) Wooden temple fans
- (b) Silver temple fans
- (c) Copper temple fans
- (d) Brass temple fans

Ans :

- (d) Brass temple fans

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

- iv. List one way in which the increase in demand of pankhas might benefit artisans.
- v. Select the factor that has contributed to the commercialisation of pankhas.
 - A. cultural preservation
 - B. economic demand
 - C. technological advancements
 - D. artisan initiative

Ans :

- i. The negative impact of technological advancement is that the beautiful traditional craft of pankha-making runs the risk of slowly losing its presence and relevance among modern Indians.
- ii. they embody the historical identity, traditional rituals, local artistry, and the unique heritage of the different regions that craft them.
- iii. "Once made for personal use, over time this handicraft has transformed into a commercial business and now provides some form of livelihood to India's artisans."
- iv. An increase in demand for pankhas benefits artisans by providing them with a steady commercial platform, thereby ensuring a sustainable source of livelihood.
- v. B. economic demand

II. Answer the following questions.

1. How does the title 'Winds of Change' capture the essence of the chapter?

Ans :

The title 'Winds of Change' acts as a clever metaphor. The word "Winds" refers to the literal breeze produced by the pankhas, while "Change" signifies the evolution of the pankha over time—from a daily utility item used in ancient courts and households to a decorative cultural artefact and a commercial handicraft in modern India.

2. Support the following statement with any two relevant examples from the chapter.
'The structure and design of pankhas are testimony to the cultural identity of the region.'

Ans :

The statement can be supported by the following examples:

1. The **zardozi** hand fan of Rajasthan reflects its royal, opulent culture through the use of glittering, ornate, and encrusted gold threadwork.

2. The pankhas of Gujarat showcase the region's famous textile and bead crafts, featuring elegant pure cotton embellished with traditional mirror work and colourful beads.

3. The chapter mentions pankhas running the risk of slowly losing their presence among Indians. Evaluate how the balance between preserving traditional craftsmanship and incorporating innovative designs in the creation of pankhas will help in this regard.

Ans :

Balancing traditional craftsmanship with innovative designs can revitalize the appeal of pankhas. While preserving traditional methods retains the cultural essence and historical value of the craft, incorporating innovative designs makes the pankhas aesthetically pleasing and relevant to modern consumer tastes. This approach can attract a broader market, increase demand, and ensure the survival of the art form.

4. How might initiatives such as pankha-making workshops contribute to the preservation of this traditional craft?

Ans :

Pankha-making workshops serve as excellent educational and commercial platforms. They help spread awareness about the cultural significance and beauty of the craft among the general public. Furthermore, they allow contemporary artisans to showcase their skills, pass down their techniques to new learners, and secure a sustainable livelihood, all of which are vital for preserving the craft.

5. The writer mentions celebrating pankhas in the concluding part of the chapter. Assess how this could be beneficial to artisans and the craft.

Ans :

Celebrating pankhas by appreciating the stories and artistry behind them instils pride in the artisans and highlights the true value of their work. This recognition can boost market demand and provide a strong commercial platform, generating a sustainable livelihood for craftspersons and encouraging the continuous practice and survival of the craft.

6. How does the restriction of the use of pankha for decorative purposes reflect the changing cultural role of these traditional fans in modern India?

Ans :

The restriction of pankhas to decorative purposes reflects a shift in their utility due to the advent

Ans :

State	Type of Fan	Material Used
Rajasthan	appliqué hand fan	pieces of fabric sewn onto another cloth
	zardozi hand fan	gold thread
	temple hand fans	Engraved brass
Gujarat	mirror work hand fans	pure cotton
	Beads hand fan	beads
	Kutch hand fans	leather, decorated with thread and wool
West Bengal	<i>sola</i> hand fans	Milky-white spongy centre of the <i>sola</i>
Uttar Pradesh	Phadh hand fans	pure gold, silver zari, silk and satin frills
Bihar	Colourful and sturdy hand fans	bamboo

Critical Reflection

I. Read the extracts given below and answer the questions that follow.

1. Over time, pankhas became significant cultural goods distributed through trade routes. They were considered exotic and stylish. Although there was substantial commonality in their use across India, different villages and towns developed their own varieties of traditional pankhas. Each place developed pankhas with distinct materials or a variety of intricate designs, that set them apart from one another.

- State whether the following sentence is true or false.
Pankhas were one of the most popular items of commerce.
- Why has the word 'traditional' been used to describe pankhas?
- Complete the following statement.
The sentence 'They were considered exotic and stylish' is an opinion and not a fact because _____.

iv. Infer one reason for commonality in the use of pankhas across India.

v. Select which one of the two statements is the correct assertion for the given reason.

Reason : Pankhas were made of indigenous materials, unique to the region, with elaborate designs.

A. Each kind of pankha could be distinguished from the other.

B. Pankhas were used by many people.

Ans :

i. False. (The text states they became significant cultural goods distributed through trade routes, but does not claim they were "the most popular" items of commerce.)

ii. The word 'traditional' is used because pankhas have been a part of Indian culture since ancient times, and the distinct materials, designs, and artistry used to craft them have been passed down through generations within specific villages and towns.

iii. it expresses a subjective viewpoint or personal judgment about the visual appeal and nature of the pankhas, which cannot be universally measured or proven.

iv. One primary reason for their common use across India is the country's hot climatic conditions, which required a practical tool for cooling down before modern electrical appliances were invented.

v. A. Each kind of pankha could be distinguished from the other.

2. With time and the advent of technology and innovative creations, the beautiful culture of pankhas runs the risk of slowly losing its presence among Indians. Once made for personal use, over time this handicraft has transformed into a commercial business and now provides some form of livelihood to India's artisans. The slight increase in popularity and demand is significantly factored by the different versions of the pankha being crafted.

i. Infer one negative impact of technological advancement on pankha.

ii. Complete the statement with an appropriate reason.

The writer refers to 'pankhas' not just as an object but as a 'culture' because _____.

iii. Select a line from the extract which depicts how the role of the pankha has changed over the years.

- (ii) The interviewer asked the candidate to (take/ have) a seat.
- (iii) My scooter (dashed against/ran into) a car.
- (iv) I must (take/own) responsibility for my success.
- (v) I would like to (tone up/improve) my grammar.

Ans :

- (i) The students have to **take** the English exam tomorrow.
- (ii) The interviewer asked the candidate to **have** a seat.
- (iii) My scooter **ran into** a car.
- (iv) I must **take** responsibility for my success.
- (v) I would like to **improve** my grammar.

IV. Read the following sentences. Underline the verbs.

1. In modern times, pankhas have become traditional craft items in India.
2. Gujarat's industrious home-based women workers have worked tirelessly in the handicraft of pankha-making.
3. Many tribes in India have adopted this handicraft.
4. Once made for personal use, this handicraft has transformed into a commercial business.

The underlined verbs refer to the past, but have relevance to the current or present time. This form of tense is called the present perfect tense. Recently completed actions also take the present perfect form of tense.

Now, fill in the blanks with the present perfect form of verbs in the following paragraph. One example has been done for you.

Puppets have long fascinated (fascinate) audiences worldwide. Puppeteers (i) _____ (create) intricate characters and captivating stories with their skillful artistry. They (ii) _____ (master) the delicate movements that bring these lifeless figures to life, entertaining both children and adults. Over the years, puppetry (iii) _____ (evolve), using modern technology while preserving traditional techniques. Many puppeteers (iv) _____ (pass) down their craft through generations, ensuring its continuity. They (v) _____ (perform) in theatres, on television, and at festivals, conveying important cultural narratives.

Ans :

1. In modern times, pankhas **have become** traditional craft items in India.
2. Gujarat's industrious home-based women workers **have worked** tirelessly in the

handicraft of pankha-making.

3. Many tribes in India **have adopted** this handicraft.
4. Once made for personal use, this handicraft **has transformed** into a commercial business.

Puppets have long fascinated (fascinate) audiences worldwide. Puppeteers (i) **have created** (create) intricate characters and captivating stories with their skillful artistry. They (ii) **have mastered** (master) the delicate movements that bring these lifeless figures to life, entertaining both children and adults. Over the years, puppetry (iii) **has evolved** (evolve), using modern technology while preserving traditional techniques. Many puppeteers (iv) **have passed** (pass) down their craft through generations, ensuring its continuity. They (v) **have performed** (perform) in theatres, on television, and at festivals, conveying important cultural narratives.

Listen and Respond

- I. You will listen to a dialogue between a boy and a girl discussing which type of pankha they should choose as a gift. As you listen, choose four statements out of seven that are true from 1–7 given below. (Transcript for teacher on page 263)

1. Rohan thinks Grandma prefers heavier items because they feel more substantial.
2. Priya suggests getting a pankha that can be easily moved around.
3. Rohan believes Grandma enjoys sitting in the verandah during the evenings.
4. Priya knows Grandma likes to keep special items close to her.
5. Rohan thinks a pankha with intricate designs would be too delicate for Grandma's liking.
6. Priya suggests choosing between a bamboo pankha with beadwork or an embroidered pankha with mirror work.
7. Rohan decides they should buy the pankha without consulting their mom.

Ans :

The four true statements are likely:

2. Priya suggests getting a pankha that can be easily moved around.
3. Rohan believes Grandma enjoys sitting in the verandah during the evenings.
4. Priya knows Grandma likes to keep special items close to her.
6. Priya suggests choosing between a bamboo pankha with beadwork or an embroidered pankha with mirror work.

of modern technology like electric fans and air conditioners. No longer needed primarily for cooling, they have been elevated to the status of traditional art pieces. This shift shows how modern India values them as symbols of heritage, aesthetics, and cultural identity rather than everyday tools.

Vocabulary and Structures in Context

I. Read the following pairs of words from the text.

exotic and stylish villages and towns
thread and wool silk and brass
ornate and encrusted within and outside

- Classify the pairs of words given above in the following categories. One example has been done for you.

Appearance	Place	Material
	within and outside	

Now, find more such word pairs from the text and share them with your classmates and teacher.

Ans :

Appearance	Place	Material
exotic and stylish	villages and towns	thread and wool
ornate and encrusted	within and outside	silk and brass

Some other word pairs found in the text include:

- rich and colourful
- simple and elegant
- rural and urban
- cloth and fabric

II. Find the word pairs for the following fixed expressions. Write the meanings of these expressions by selecting them from the box given below. One example has been done for you.

Some common expressions with 'and' have a fixed order which cannot be changed. The shortest expression comes first. For example, bread and butter (*not butter and bread)

Word 1		Word 2	Fixed Expression	Meaning of the Expression
1.	high	tear		
2.	cut	fast		

3.	fact	and	sundry		
4.	all		thin	all and sundry	v. everyone, not just a few special people
5.	wear		figures		
6.	time		run		
7.	thick		again		
8.	hard		dry		

Now, match the following meanings with the correct word pairs created above.

- in a difficult situation, without help or money–
- the damage to object due to normal use –
- accurate and detailed information –
- even when there are problems or difficulties–
- everyone, not just a few special people–
- often; on many or all occasions–
- To make a quick or sudden escape –

Ans :

Word 1	Word 2	Fixed Expression	Meaning of the Expression
high	dry	high and dry	in a difficult situation, without help or money
cut	run	cut and run	to make a quick or sudden escape
facts	figures	facts and figures	accurate and detailed information
all	sundry	all and sundry	everyone, not just a few special people
wear	tear	wear and tear	damage to an object due to normal use
time	again	time and again	often; on many or all occasions
thick	thin	through thick and thin	even when there are problems or difficulties
hard	fast	hard and fast	strict and not able to be changed

III. Read the following word combinations from the text.

- sustainable livelihood
- aesthetically pleasing
- appreciating the culture

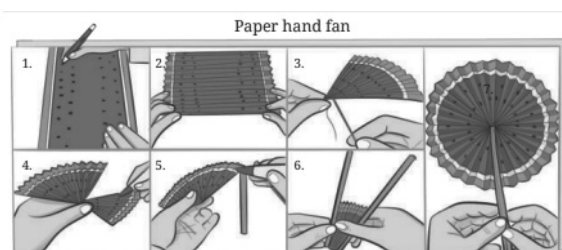
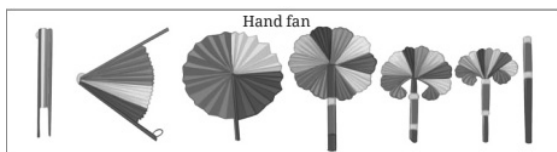
The given phrases are conventional combinations just like fixed expressions. Such combinations are called **collocations**.

- Choose the appropriate word collocations for the following sentences.
 - The students have to (take/give) the English exam tomorrow.

Traditionally, they are made using natural dyes and pigments extracted from plants, flowers, and soot, applied with twigs, fingers, or matchsticks.

2. **Region, Usage, and Evolution :** Madhubani painting belongs to the Mithila region of Bihar. Traditionally, it was painted by women on freshly plastered mud walls and floors to mark special occasions like weddings and festivals. According to origin stories, it dates back to the Ramayana, where King Janaka commissioned artists to paint murals for the wedding of his daughter, Sita. Over time, to ensure the survival and commercial viability of the art form, it has evolved from wall art to being painted on handmade paper, canvas, and textiles like sarees.
3. **Effective and Safe Usage Today :** In today's time, Madhubani paintings are widely used as aesthetic wall decor in homes and offices. To use and preserve them effectively, paintings on paper or canvas should be framed with glass. This protects the natural, eco-friendly dyes from dust and direct sunlight, which could otherwise cause the colours to fade over time.

II. You can also make your own hand fan. Take ideas from the pictures given below and in groups of four, make your own hand fan. Display the hand fans in the class and describe the process used to make it.



Ans :

Process of Making a Paper Hand Fan :

1. **Step 1 :** Take a rectangular piece of colourful paper (e.g., a bright red paper).
2. **Step 2 :** Start folding the paper from one of the shorter ends in an accordion or zig-zag

fold, making each crease about half an inch wide.

3. **Step 3 :** Continue this accordion fold until the entire length of the paper is folded tightly together like a single strip.
4. **Step 4 :** Fold the pleated strip in half right down the middle to locate the centre point.
5. **Step 5 :** Apply glue or double-sided tape on the inner edges of the folded halves and press them together so they fan out into a semi-circle.
6. **Step 6 :** Attach two wooden craft sticks (like popsicle sticks) to the two outer edges of the fan. Leave a portion of the sticks hanging below the paper to act as handles.
7. **Step 7 :** Open the fan by pulling the two wooden handles apart and securing them at the bottom. The paper hand fan is now ready for display!

III. You must have read stories about the impact of art, painting, etc. in your life, in English and in your own languages. Now, read and enjoy the story given below.

Ans :

Yes, I have read stories about the impact of art and painting in my life, both in English and in my own language. These stories show how art reflects emotions, culture, and creativity. Now, I am ready to read and enjoy the given story.

6. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. In the chapter's title, what literary device is primarily used?
 (a) Hyperbole (b) Oxymoron
 (c) Personification (d) Metaphor

Ans :

(d) Metaphor

2. What does the word "winds" refer to in the chapter's title?
 (a) The stormy weather (b) The cool breeze
 (c) The hot summer (d) The winter cold

Ans :

(b) The cool breeze

Ans :

(d) It reduced the everyday need for cooling, threatening the craft's survival.

26. Because people no longer needed hand fans to cool down, the ancient craft ran the risk of:

- (a) Fading away
- (b) Getting cheaper
- (c) Becoming illegal
- (d) Expanding rapidly

Ans :

- (a) Fading away

27. Despite the sharp decline in its daily use, did the traditional hand fan disappear entirely?

- (a) Yes, it completely vanished
- (b) Yes, it was banned by law
- (c) No, its role simply shifted
- (d) No, it remained a necessity

Ans :

- (c) No, its role simply shifted

28. The hand fan has been successfully elevated from a basic cooling tool to a:

- (a) Religious symbol
- (b) Decorative artefact
- (c) Musical instrument
- (d) Financial currency

Ans :

- (b) Decorative artefact

29. Today, people primarily buy these items to decorate their homes and to celebrate:

- (a) Global globalization
- (b) Foreign traditions
- (c) Technological progress
- (d) Indian heritage

Ans :

- (d) Indian heritage

30. This shift in usage has wonderfully transformed the traditional handicraft into a:

- (a) Commercial business
- (b) Government scheme
- (c) Forgotten memory
- (d) Charitable activity

Ans :

- (a) Commercial business

31. What is the current economic impact of the growing demand for decorative hand fans?

- (a) It causes heavy financial losses for local and rural village communities.
- (b) It forces traditional artisans to forcefully abandon their ancient skills.
- (c) It currently provides a steady and sustainable livelihood for many artisans.
- (d) It solely benefits the large corporate factories producing electric fans.

Ans :

- (c) It currently provides a steady and sustainable livelihood for many artisans.

32. The chapter smoothly concludes with a strong message highlighting the importance of:

- (a) Buying electric fans
- (b) Protecting the craft
- (c) Stopping all trade
- (d) Changing our climate

Ans :

- (b) Protecting the craft

33. **Assertion (A):** The hand fan craft has transformed into a viable commercial business today.

Reason (R): The everyday necessity for manual cooling in households has drastically increased.

- (a) Both the Assertion and the Reason are completely true statements.
- (b) The Assertion is completely false but the Reason is entirely true.
- (c) Both the Assertion and the Reason are completely false statements.
- (d) The Assertion is completely true but the Reason is entirely false.

Ans :

- (d) The Assertion is completely true but the Reason is entirely false.

34. To ensure survival in modern times, artisans must strike a balance between ancient techniques and:

- (a) Innovative designs
- (b) Cheaper materials
- (c) Plastic components
- (d) Imported products

Ans :

- (a) Innovative designs

15. Fans originating from Gujarat are frequently decorated with colourful beads and intricate:

(a) Wood work (b) Metal work
(c) Mirror work (d) Glass work

Ans :

(c) Mirror work

16. **Assertion (A):** Kerala utilizes palm leaves to create spade-shaped fans.

Reason (R): Kerala relies heavily on imported synthetic materials for its crafts.

- (a) Both the Assertion and the Reason are completely true statements.
(b) The Assertion is completely true but the Reason is entirely false.
(c) The Assertion is completely false but the Reason is entirely true.
(d) Both the Assertion and the Reason are completely false statements.

Ans :

(b) The Assertion is completely true but the Reason is entirely false.

17. The spade-shaped fans from Kerala are primarily made out of:

(a) Bamboo sticks (b) Cotton fabric
(c) Sola plant (d) Palm leaves

Ans :

(d) Palm leaves

18. West Bengal uses the spongy centre of which plant to make traditional fans?

(a) Sola plant (b) Palm plant
(c) Cane plant (d) Jute plant

Ans :

(a) Sola plant

19. Bihar is famously known for crafting sturdy fans out of:

(a) Pure cotton (b) Woven cane
(c) Bamboo (d) Brass

Ans :

(c) Bamboo

20. Which state is specifically mentioned as creating woven cane fans?

(a) Gujarat (b) Kerala
(c) Rajasthan (d) Assam

Ans :

(d) Assam

21. Which of the following statements is correct regarding regional fans?

1. Assam makes woven cane fans.
2. Bihar makes palm leaf fans.
3. West Bengal uses the sola plant.

- (a) Only statements 1 and 2 are absolutely correct
(b) Only statements 1 and 3 are absolutely correct
(c) Only statements 2 and 3 are absolutely correct
(d) All statements 1, 2, and 3 are absolutely correct

Ans :

(b) Only statements 1 and 3 are absolutely correct

22. The chapter describes the indigenous creators of these beautiful fans as being highly:

- (a) Hardworking (b) Inexperienced
(c) Uninterested (d) Overpaid

Ans :

(a) Hardworking

23. What posed a major threat to the beautiful culture of traditional hand fans?

- (a) Lack of raw materials
(b) Foreign invasions
(c) Modern technology
(d) Changing climates

Ans :

(c) Modern technology

24. Which modern inventions caused a significant decline in the need for hand fans?

- (a) Refrigerators and coolers
(b) Electric fans and ACs
(c) Televisions and radios
(d) Computers and phones

Ans :

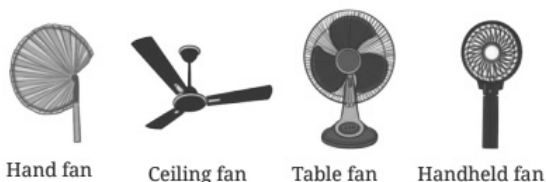
(b) Electric fans and ACs

25. How did modern technology directly impact the traditional hand fan craft?

- (a) It helped artisans produce fans faster using advanced factory machinery.
(b) It drastically increased the demand for hand fans in urban households.
(c) It caused the immediate and absolute extinction of all hand fan makers.
(d) It reduced the everyday need for cooling, threatening the craft's survival.

Speaking Activity

- I. **Work in groups of four. Look at the pictures of the four different kinds of fans given below.**



- Each of you in the group will pick one kind of fan.
- Imagine yourself to be that fan.
- Use the points given in the box below.
 - Introduce yourself as the fan which you have chosen.
 - Describe yourself, for example, your features, etc.
 - What do you like about yourself?
 - What do you feel is your weakness?
 - What makes you unique?

Ans :

Example presentation as a Ceiling Fan

“Hello everyone! I am a Ceiling Fan. I am usually mounted high up on the ceiling of a room, featuring three to four long blades connected to a central motor. I am mostly made of metal and come in elegant colours like brown and white. What I like most about myself is my ability to cool down an entire room at a fast speed, providing relief to many people at the same time. However, I feel my biggest weakness is that I cannot move from my fixed spot, and I rely entirely on electricity to function. What makes me unique is my constant, sweeping circulation of air that makes me a permanent and reliable companion in almost every modern Indian home!”

Writing Task

- I. **Describe an artefact you have made in your craft class or learnt from someone.**

Begin with collection and organisation of the facts with the help of the pointers given above. Do not include your opinion in the factual description.

Ans :

Traditional Clay Diya

The artefact is a traditional clay diya (an earthen lamp). It is a small, circular, cup-shaped object with a tiny spout pinched at one end to hold a cotton wick. Usually measuring about 2 to 3 inches in diameter, it retains a natural terracotta

brown colour, though it is frequently painted in bright shades of red, green, and yellow for festive occasions.

The diya is made primarily of fine, pliable clay that is shaped either by hand or on a potter's wheel, and then baked in a hot kiln to harden. Traditionally, it belongs to the Indian subcontinent and has been used for centuries to provide lighting in homes and temples, especially during festivals like Diwali to symbolize the triumph of light over darkness. Over time, it has evolved to include intricate carvings, mirror embellishments, and the use of wax instead of oil. To use it safely today, it should be placed on a flat, heat-resistant surface, filled moderately with oil or ghee, and kept at a safe distance from flammable materials like curtains or loose fabrics.

Learning Beyond the Text

- I. **Identify any art or craft item from your region and make a presentation describing its features, materials, and process involved in making it, its usage, etc. You may refer to the points given on the next page.**

- Name of the object and its physical characteristics—appearance, shape, size, colour, etc.
- What is it made up of?
- Which region does it belong to? How has it been used traditionally?
- Is there an origin story associated with it? How has it evolved over time?
- How can it be used effectively and safely in today's time?



Ans :

- Name and Characteristics :** The craft item I have chosen is the ‘Madhubani Painting’ (also known as Mithila Art). It is a vibrant, two-dimensional folk art characterized by complex geometric patterns, prominent outlines, and vivid colours like red, blue, green, and yellow. These paintings vary in size from small canvases to large wall murals.

35. Implementing new and creative designs is absolutely necessary for artisans to appeal to:
- (a) Ancient kings (b) Foreign invaders
(c) Today's buyers (d) Factory owners

Ans :

(c) Today's buyers

36. What specific kind of initiatives are highly encouraged to help the craft survive?

(a) Mass production factories
(b) Pankha-making workshops
(c) Complete boycotts of ACs
(d) Ban on electric appliances

Ans :

(b) Pankha-making workshops

37. Traditional workshops are incredibly helpful because they pass valuable skills down to:

(a) Wealthy merchants
(b) Rival competitors
(c) Foreign tourists
(d) Younger generations

Ans :

(d) Younger generations

38. By celebrating this ancient craft, we can successfully instil what positive feeling in the craftspersons?

(a) Pride (b) Shame
(c) Greed (d) Anger

Ans :

(a) Pride

39. Which of the following statements is correct regarding modern hand fans?

1. They are only used for cooling.
2. They act as decorative artefacts.
3. They provide sustainable livelihoods.

(a) Only statements 1 and 2 are absolutely correct
(b) Only statements 1 and 3 are absolutely correct
(c) Only statements 2 and 3 are absolutely correct
(d) All statements 1, 2, and 3 are absolutely correct

Ans :

(c) Only statements 2 and 3 are absolutely correct

40. Why must traditional artisans actively balance ancient techniques with new, innovative designs?

(a) To ensure the fans can be produced purely by advanced modern machines.
(b) To make the traditional hand fans look exactly like electric home appliances.
(c) To completely erase the deep historical significance of the old cultural fans.
(d) To preserve traditional roots while successfully appealing to modern consumers.

Ans :

(d) To preserve traditional roots while successfully appealing to modern consumers.

41. The ultimate goal is to keep the vibrant "winds of change" continuously blowing for India's rich:

(a) Industrial sector (b) Artistic heritage
(c) Political system (d) Military defense

Ans :

(b) Artistic heritage

42. **Assertion (A):** Pankha-making workshops are actively organized and encouraged in modern times.

Reason (R): These workshops effectively help pass traditional artisan skills to younger generations.

(a) The Assertion is completely false but the Reason is entirely true.
(b) Both the Assertion and the Reason are completely false statements.
(c) The Assertion is completely true but the Reason is entirely false.
(d) Both the Assertion and the Reason are completely true statements.

Ans :

(d) Both the Assertion and the Reason are completely true statements.

43. Which of the following statements is correct about the various materials used in different regions?

1. Kerala primarily uses natural palm leaves.
2. Rajasthan beautifully uses zardozi and brass.
3. Bihar utilizes the spongy sola plant centre.

(a) Statements 1 and 2 are correct
(b) Statements 2 and 3 are correct
(c) Statements 1 and 3 are correct
(d) All statements 1, 2, 3 are correct

Ans :

(a) Statements 1 and 2 are correct

However, this adversity forced artisans to think creatively. Stripped of its practical utility, the hand fan had to be reimagined to survive. It was ingeniously elevated into a decorative artefact, shifting its value from mere cooling to celebrating cultural heritage. This transformation proves that when traditional crafts face insurmountable modern challenges, they can successfully endure by adapting their purpose, proving that art remains resilient as long as it evolves with changing times.

9. Based on the chapter, draft a 'societal sketch' of the indigenous fan makers. What traits, challenges, and triumphs define their community in the modern era?

Ans :

Based on the text, the indigenous fan makers emerge as a highly resilient, hardworking, and exceptionally creative community. Historically, they were essential contributors to society, providing basic cooling utilities for both grand royal courts and everyday households.

Faced with the severe threat of modern cooling technology, these artisans demonstrated remarkable adaptability. Rather than abandoning their ancestral skills, they ingeniously balanced ancient techniques with innovative designs, transforming their craft into a thriving commercial business. They take immense pride in their work, utilizing local materials to reflect their distinct regional identities. Furthermore, through pankha-making workshops, they actively exhibit a forward-looking mindset, deeply committed to passing their precious heritage down to younger generations to ensure its survival.

10. How does the transition of the pankha from a "daily utility item" to a "cultural good" highlight the changing priorities and aesthetics of the modern Indian consumer?

Ans :

The transition of the pankha from a "daily utility item" to a "cultural good" profoundly highlights the evolving priorities of the modern Indian consumer. In the past, the primary consumer need was purely functional: surviving the harsh climatic heat. Today, that basic need is efficiently met by advanced electric appliances.

Consequently, the modern consumer's priority has shifted towards aesthetic appreciation, heritage preservation, and interior decoration. Buyers now seek products that offer a deep connection to their traditional roots and cultural identity.

By purchasing these exotic, intricately designed fans as art pieces, modern consumers actively demonstrate a desire to support sustainable indigenous livelihoods and creatively celebrate the rich, diverse artistic history of their nation.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"The word punkha or pankha originates from the word 'pankh', which means feather of a bird. Pankha is used to refer to all fans, whereas the word pankhi denotes a small plumed fan used in ancient India. Evidence of the existence and use of pankhi in India can be found in Buddhist wall paintings at Ajanta. These wall paintings date back to the 2nd century CE. Other representations of the punkha can be found in embroidery work, sculptures, and carvings."

- i. What does the presence of the **pankhi** in Ajanta paintings primarily imply about its status in ancient times?
 - (a) It had profound cultural integration.
 - (b) It possessed purely religious values.
 - (c) It lacked everyday practical usage.
 - (d) It served strictly royal households.
- ii. **Assertion (A):** The terms 'pankha' and 'pankhi' cannot be used interchangeably in the context of ancient India.
Reason (R): 'Pankhi' specifically refers to a small plumed fan, while 'pankha' is a general term for all fans.
 - (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
 - (c) A is true, but R is false.
 - (d) A is false, but R is true.
- iii. What is the literal meaning of the word 'pankh' from which pankha originates?
- iv. Identify a word from the extract that means "pictures or symbols that show or describe something."
- v. State True or False with a 1-sentence reason: The existence of fans in ancient India is only known through written texts.

Ans :

- i. (a) It had profound cultural integration.
- ii. (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
- iii. 'Pankh' means feather of a bird.

9. Differentiate between the base materials used for crafting hand fans in West Bengal and Bihar.

Ans :

The materials differ drastically based on local flora. In West Bengal, artisans uniquely utilize the spongy centre of the sola plant to create their fans. In contrast, Bihar is famously known for crafting highly sturdy and durable fans using locally sourced bamboo.

10. What is the distinct feature of the traditional hand fans crafted by artisans in Assam?

Ans :

Hand fans in Assam are characteristically made from woven cane. This utilizes the region's rich bamboo and cane resources, resulting in durable, intricately patterned cooling tools that brilliantly highlight the exceptional and precise weaving skills of the local Assamese artisans.

11. How are the indigenous creators of these beautiful hand fans characterized in the text?

Ans :

The chapter characterizes the indigenous creators of these beautiful hand fans as highly hardworking individuals. Despite facing immense modern challenges, these dedicated artisans tirelessly utilize their inherited skills to preserve their cultural roots while effectively adapting to contemporary market demands.

12. What major threat did the advent of modern technology pose to the traditional pankha-making craft?

Ans :

Modern technology, specifically the invention of electric fans, coolers, and air conditioners, drastically reduced the everyday need for manual cooling. This sudden shift severely threatened the traditional hand fan craft, putting it at immense risk of fading away entirely.

13. How did the primary function of the traditional hand fan shift in response to modern inventions?

Ans :

As modern electric appliances took over the practical need for cooling, the role of the traditional hand fan successfully shifted. It creatively evolved from a basic everyday cooling utility into a highly valued decorative artefact specifically used to celebrate Indian heritage.

14. In what way has the transformation of the hand fan into a decorative artefact aided artisans economically?

Ans :

The transformation of the hand fan into a popular decorative item has successfully converted the traditional handicraft into a viable commercial business. This growing market demand currently provides a steady, sustainable livelihood for numerous rural artisan communities across the nation.

15. Why do modern consumers predominantly purchase traditional hand fans today?

Ans :

Today, modern consumers predominantly purchase these traditional hand fans to beautifully decorate their urban homes. Furthermore, buying these intricate art pieces allows individuals to honor, celebrate, and actively connect with India's rich historical background and diverse artistic heritage.

16. Why is it crucial for traditional artisans to strike a balance between ancient techniques and innovative designs?

Ans :

To ensure survival in a competitive modern market, artisans must balance ancient techniques with innovative designs. This adaptability is absolutely necessary to appeal to the evolving aesthetic tastes of contemporary buyers while successfully preserving their deep, traditional artistic roots.

17. What is the primary objective of organizing pankha-making workshops in contemporary times?

Ans :

Organizing pankha-making workshops is a crucial initiative designed to safeguard the craft's future. These interactive workshops aim to systematically pass down valuable, age-old artisanal skills and traditional techniques to younger generations, ensuring the vibrant heritage does not die out.

18. How do traditional workshops ensure the long-term survival of this ancient craft?

Ans :

Traditional workshops ensure the craft's survival by actively engaging the youth. By practically teaching younger generations the intricate methods of pankha-making, these educational

initiatives create a new wave of modern artisans fully equipped to carry forward this ancient cultural legacy.

19. How does appreciating the stories behind these crafts positively affect the craftspersons?

Ans :

Taking the time to appreciate the heartfelt stories and immense effort behind these handcrafted fans boosts overall market demand. More importantly, this genuine recognition instills a deep, motivating sense of pride and accomplishment within the hardworking rural craftspersons.

20. What is the ultimate message the chapter conveys regarding India's artistic heritage?

Ans :

The chapter concludes by heavily emphasizing the absolute necessity of protecting India's traditional crafts. It advocates for actively supporting indigenous artisans so that the vibrant "winds of change" continuously blow in favor of preserving and promoting the nation's rich artistic heritage.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Discuss the central theme of the chapter "Winds of Change." How does the journey of the 'pankha' mirror the resilience of traditional Indian handicrafts in the face of modernization?

Ans :

The central theme of "Winds of Change" is the evolution, preservation, and enduring cultural significance of the traditional Indian hand fan. The journey of the 'pankha' perfectly mirrors the resilience of Indian handicrafts. Initially born out of pure climatic necessity, the craft faced a severe existential threat from modern technology like electric fans and air conditioners. However, instead of fading into obscurity, the craft adapted. Artisans innovated by elevating the pankha from a mere cooling tool to a beautiful decorative artefact. This transition highlights a broader narrative: traditional Indian crafts can survive modernization not by competing on utility, but by intelligently rebranding themselves as symbols of heritage, thereby providing a sustainable livelihood for hardworking indigenous artisans.

2. Imagine you are an elderly artisan from Rajasthan who has been making zardozi and brass fans for decades. Write a diary entry expressing your feelings about how the demand for your craft has changed over the years.

Ans :

Dear Diary,

Today, as I wove golden zardozi threads into a new fan, I reflected on the rapid passage of time. Decades ago, our engraved brass fans were essential items used by everyone to beat the scorching Rajasthani heat. When electric coolers arrived, my heart sank. I thought our ancestral craft would vanish forever. But the 'winds of change' surprised us all! People now seek my creations not for cooling, but to elegantly adorn their modern homes. They deeply value our royal heritage and intricate designs. Though the fan's primary purpose has shifted, I am filled with immense pride knowing that my art survives, providing a sustainable livelihood for my family, and keeping our glorious traditions alive.

Bhawani

3. You are a cultural heritage advocate. Write a short speech to be delivered at a school assembly, urging students to support local artisans and value traditional crafts like the pankha over mass-produced goods.

Ans :

Respected Principal, Teachers, and friends,
Today, I wish to speak about our responsibility towards India's artistic heritage. Consider the traditional 'pankha'. Once an everyday necessity, it was nearly eradicated by modern electric appliances. Yet, it survived because hardworking artisans brilliantly transformed it into a decorative artefact.

The continued survival of such crafts depends entirely on us. When we purchase a handmade palm-leaf fan from Kerala or a bamboo fan from Bihar, we are not merely buying decor; we are providing a sustainable livelihood for rural communities. We are instilling immense pride in indigenous creators. Let us pledge to actively support local artisans, appreciate the history behind their crafts, and keep our cultural roots vibrantly alive.

Thank you.

Imagine you recently attended a 'pankha-making' workshop. Write a letter to your friend describing your experience, what you learned about regional variations, and why you feel such initiatives are vital for the youth.

Ans :

Dear Rohan,

I hope you are well. I recently attended a fascinating 'pankha-making' workshop that

completely changed my perspective on traditional crafts.

I learned how different states use local materials, beautifully reflecting their unique cultural identities. For example, Assamese artisans weave stunning fans from cane, while those in West Bengal utilize the spongy sola plant.

The session emphasized the need to balance ancient techniques with innovative designs to attract modern consumers. I strongly believe such initiatives are vital for our youth. They teach patience, boost market demand, and ensure these indigenous skills are successfully passed down. By actively engaging with our roots, we can proudly protect India's vibrant artistic heritage from fading away.

Warmly,
Aman

5. Write a creative dialogue between a modern Electric Fan and a traditional handmade 'Pankha', where they discuss their respective values, utility, and places in a modern Indian household.

Ans :

Electric Fan: Look at me! I can cool down an entire room in seconds with my powerful motor. Nobody needs your slow breezes anymore.

Pankha: You certainly provide rapid relief from the heat, but my primary purpose has beautifully evolved. I am no longer just a basic cooling tool.

Electric Fan: What else could a fan possibly be used for?

Pankha: I am now a celebrated decorative artefact. I showcase India's rich cultural heritage, from Gujarat's mirror-work to Kerala's palm-leaf designs. People proudly display me to honor their roots.

Electric Fan: I suppose I am just a factory machine, while you are a unique piece of art.

Pankha: Exactly. You serve modern convenience, but I sustain hardworking indigenous artisans.

6. The text mentions that artisans must "strike a balance between ancient techniques and innovative designs." Analyze why this balance is the key to the economic survival of indigenous crafts in the 21st century.

Ans :

Striking a balance between ancient techniques and innovative designs is absolutely critical for the economic survival of indigenous crafts. In today's highly modernized world, the original utility of items like the traditional 'pankha' has

been entirely replaced by convenient appliances like air conditioners. If artisans stubbornly stick only to old forms, the craft will inevitably fade away.

By integrating contemporary aesthetics and innovative designs, artisans can successfully appeal to the evolving tastes of modern urban consumers. This smart adaptability transforms the functional fan into an exotic, highly desirable decorative artefact. Consequently, this strategic balance not only preserves the deep historical roots of the craftsmanship but also guarantees a steady, sustainable commercial livelihood for the artisan communities.

7. Evaluate the role of geography and local flora in shaping the diverse cultural identity of Indian hand fans. Provide specific examples from the text to support your answer.

Ans :

Geography and local flora play a foundational role in shaping the diverse cultural identity of Indian hand fans. Because ancient artisans relied exclusively on natural resources available in their immediate surroundings, each state developed a distinct style of pankha.

For example, Kerala's tropical environment provides abundant palm leaves, leading to their unique spade-shaped fans. In contrast, Bihar's geography yields highly sturdy bamboo, while Assam utilizes its rich woven cane resources. Even West Bengal's fans are distinct, crafted uniquely from the spongy centre of the local sola plant. Thus, a region's specific geographical environment directly dictates the base materials, organically shaping the resulting art and deeply embedding local environmental identity into the traditional handicraft.

8. "Because people no longer needed hand fans to cool down, the ancient craft ran the risk of fading away... The hand fan has been successfully elevated from a basic cooling tool to a decorative artefact." Based on this passage, elaborate on how adversity often forces art to evolve.

Ans :

The provided lines beautifully illustrate how adversity acts as a powerful catalyst for artistic evolution. When modern electric fans and air conditioners emerged, the traditional pankha lost its primary function. This technological disruption created a severe crisis, threatening the ancient craft with total extinction.

Ans :

- i. (a) Their exclusive use for decorative displays.
- ii. (b) Statement II is correct but Statement I is incorrect.
- iii. The zardozi fan uses glittering ornate and encrusted gold threadwork, while the appliqué fan uses fabric pieces sewn with ornamental needlework.
- iv. encrusted
- v. False, because the structure of each fan reflects the cultural core of the specific region that crafts it.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“The adjoining state of Gujarat has its own indigenous take on pankhas. These hand fans are elegant pure cotton-based fans embellished with mirror work. The beads hand fan is covered with colourful beads and has a silver handle. Gujarat is the centre for bead craft in India and these dainty pankhas are commonly used as wall decorations. Kutch is recognised for its hand-stitched leather hand fans decorated with thread and wool at its seams. Gujarat’s industrious home-based women workers have worked tirelessly in the handicraft of pankha-making to produce embroidered hand fans with traditional mirror work and cross-stitch embroidery in different shapes and sizes.”

- i. What does the involvement of “industrious home-based women workers” suggest about the pankha-making craft in Gujarat?
 - (a) It is primarily a large-scale factory operation.
 - (b) It is a localized, community-driven livelihood.
 - (c) It strictly relies on imported raw materials.
 - (d) It has abandoned traditional crafting methods.
- ii. Choose the option that correctly pairs the region/material with its distinctive pankha feature as mentioned in the extract:
 - I. Kutch – Leather with thread and wool
 - II. Gujarat overall – Cotton with mirror work
 - (a) Only I is completely accurate.
 - (b) Only II is completely accurate.
 - (c) Both I and II are fully accurate.
 - (d) Neither I nor II are accurate.
- iii. Why is Gujarat considered the centre for bead craft in India?

- iv. Which word in the extract is used as a synonym for “delicate and beautiful”?
- v. Fill in the blank:
Hand fans made of pure cotton in Gujarat are primarily decorated using _____ work.

Ans :

- i. (b) It is a localized, community-driven livelihood.
- ii. (c) Both I and II are fully accurate.
- iii. Gujarat is considered the centre for bead craft in India because Gujarat produces dainty bead hand fans covered with colourful beads, which are widely used as wall decorations.
- iv. dainty
- v. mirror

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Many tribes in India have adopted this handicraft to make their own versions of the handheld fan. Materials such as grass and metal are embedded into the fans using bamboo sticks and grass. Cane and palm leaves are used, with silk and brass being reserved for antique pieces of these hand fans. The use of geometrical patterns and the white ink and red background combinations have helped the tribes create multiple beautifully designed pankhas.”

- i. Why might silk and brass be reserved exclusively for “antique pieces” of hand fans?
 - (a) They are too heavy for everyday practical use.
 - (b) They lack the aesthetic appeal of natural grass.
 - (c) They are expensive and denote higher value.
 - (d) They are easily damaged by tropical climates.
- ii. **Assertion (A):** The tribal communities strictly mimic the urban designs of the **pankhas**.
Reason (R): They use specific combinations like white ink on a red background with geometrical patterns.
 - (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
 - (c) A is true, but R is false.
 - (d) A is false, but R is true.
- iii. What distinctive design elements do tribal communities use to decorate their pankhas?

- iv. representations
- v. False, because evidence of their existence is visually depicted in Ajanta wall paintings, embroidery, sculptures, and carvings.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Over time, pankhas became significant cultural goods distributed through trade routes. They were considered exotic and stylish. Although there was substantial commonality in their use across India, different villages and towns developed their own varieties of traditional pankhas. Each place developed pankhas with distinct materials or a variety of intricate designs, that set them apart from one another. Bamboo, cane, palm leaf, silk, brass, leather, and silver pankhas, with decorative beads and stones were used depending on geographies, cultures, and traditional rituals.”

- i. What does the phrase “significant cultural goods” suggest about the ‘pankhas’?
 - (a) They embodied regional identity and value.
 - (b) They were exclusively meant for exporting.
 - (c) They lost their original cooling purposes.
 - (d) They became strictly religious artifacts.
- ii. Which of the following best describes the writer’s perspective on the regional development of ‘pankhas’?
 - (a) The writer views it as a chaotic deviation from the original design.
 - (b) The writer appreciates the rich diversity stemming from local cultures.
 - (c) The writer believes it led to an unnecessary competition among towns.
 - (d) The writer feels the standardisation of fans was completely destroyed.
- iii. What factors determined the variety of materials used in making pankhas across different regions?
- iv. Find a word in the extract that is the antonym of “ordinary” or “commonplace”, often used to describe something unusual and fascinating.
- v. Fill in the blank:
The variation in the materials used for making pankhas was largely determined by local _____, cultures, and rituals.

Ans :

- i. (a) They embodied regional identity and value.

- ii. (b) The writer appreciates the rich diversity stemming from local cultures.
- iii. The variety was determined by local geographies, cultures, and traditional rituals.
- iv. exotic
- v. geographies

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“In modern times, the use of pankhas has been restricted to decorative purposes, and they have become traditional craft items in India. The structure of each fan reflects the cultural core of the region that crafts it. For instance, the appliqué hand fan of Rajasthan is an antique pankha made of pieces of fabric in different shapes and patterns sewn onto another cloth with the use of ornamental needlework. Furthermore, the zardozi hand fan of Rajasthan differs in its use of glittering ornate and encrusted gold threadwork.”

- i. What implies that the original purpose of the **pankha** has diminished over time?
 - (a) Their exclusive use for decorative displays.
 - (b) Their association with intricate needlework.
 - (c) Their transformation into antique souvenirs.
 - (d) Their reliance on expensive gold materials.
- ii. **Statement I:** The zardozi hand fan and the appliqué hand fan are identical in their crafting techniques.
Statement II: Both types of fans are deeply rooted in the cultural traditions of Rajasthan.
 - (a) Statement I is correct but Statement II is incorrect.
 - (b) Statement II is correct but Statement I is incorrect.
 - (c) Both Statement I and Statement II are correct.
 - (d) Both Statement I and Statement II are incorrect.
- iii. How does the zardozi hand fan differ from the appliqué hand fan of Rajasthan?
- iv. Identify the word from the text that means “covered or decorated with a hard surface layer.”
- v. State True or False with a 1-sentence reason:
The structural design of a hand fan is entirely random and unrelated to its origin.

44. What is the primary underlying theme of the entire chapter titled “Winds of Change”?
- The rapid replacement of old culture by highly advanced electric technology.
 - The evolution, preservation, and cultural significance of the traditional hand fan.
 - The severe environmental impact of modern cooling systems in Indian homes.
 - The historical decline of royal courts and their effects on local Indian politics.

Ans :

(b) The evolution, preservation, and cultural significance of the traditional hand fan.

45. The chapter indicates that the growing economic demand for these beautiful art pieces now provides a steady and _____ source of livelihood.
- Temporary
 - Sustainable
 - Unreliable
 - Decreasing

Ans :

(b) Sustainable

Short Answer Type Questions

1. How does the title “Winds of Change” act as an appropriate metaphor for the chapter?

Ans :

The title is a fitting metaphor reflecting the historical evolution of the traditional Indian hand fan (pankha). It signifies the fan’s remarkable transition from a basic cooling necessity into a modern decorative artefact, symbolizing broader cultural and economic shifts in society.

2. What specific climatic condition originally necessitated the invention of the traditional Indian hand fan?

Ans :

The traditional hand fan was born out of pure necessity to combat India’s intensely hot climatic conditions. Before the advent of electricity, it served as an essential daily utility item required to provide immediate relief from the sweltering summer heat.

3. In ancient times, how did the usage of the hand fan vary across different social classes?

Ans :

In ancient India, the hand fan was a ubiquitous utility item used universally across different social

strata. It was a staple in grand royal courts as a symbol of elegance, while simultaneously serving as a practical cooling tool in everyday households.

4. Why were traditional hand fans highly valued and distributed along ancient trade routes?

Ans :

Traditional hand fans were highly valued along ancient trade routes due to their unique, intricate designs. They were considered exotic cultural goods that attracted foreign merchants, ultimately helping to spread India’s rich artisanal heritage far beyond its geographical borders.

5. How do the materials and designs of a local hand fan serve as a mirror to a region’s identity?

Ans :

The distinct materials and specific designs of a local fan beautifully reflect a region’s cultural identity. They highlight the local natural resources available, the traditional techniques practiced, and the unique artistic vision of the community, distinguishing one state’s craft from another.

6. Describe the unique craftsmanship of hand fans originating from the royal state of Rajasthan.

Ans :

Rajasthan’s hand fans prominently reflect the state’s majestic royal heritage. Artisans there are renowned for crafting exquisite zardozi fans using glittering gold threads. Additionally, Rajasthan is highly famous for producing durable, beautifully engraved temple fans made out of solid brass.

7. What specific materials are utilized by artisans in Gujarat to decorate their traditional fans?

Ans :

Fans originating from Gujarat vividly showcase the state’s famous textile industry. Artisans traditionally decorate these fans using colourful fabrics, vibrant beads, and intricate mirror work, creating visually striking, culturally rich art pieces that represent the region’s vibrant aesthetic heritage.

8. How does geographical availability of materials influence the fan-making craft in Kerala?

Ans :

Kerala utilizes its abundant natural resources to craft its distinct fans. Artisans in the state primarily use natural palm leaves to weave elegant, spade-shaped fans, perfectly demonstrating how local geography directly dictates the traditional crafting methods and the base materials used.

- iv. Provide the exact word from the extract that means “firmly fixed or placed deeply into a surrounding mass.”
- v. State True or False with a 1-sentence reason: The tribal fans exclusively utilize modern synthetic materials for their construction.

Ans :

- i. (c) They are expensive and denote higher value.
- ii. (d) A is false, but R is true.
- iii. Tribal communities use geometrical patterns with white ink and red background combinations.
- iv. embedded
- v. False, because they primarily use natural materials like grass, bamboo, cane, and palm leaves.

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“One of the first steps to preserve the essence of the craft is by celebrating pankhas, and appreciating the culture, stories, and artistry that this handicraft invokes. This allows contemporary pankha makers to demonstrate their craft and regain its popularity. It also helps provide them with a commercial platform to create a sustainable livelihood. Initiatives such as pankha-making workshops, both within and outside the handicraft exhibitions help spread awareness about the beauty and importance of this craft in India’s culture.”

- i. What does the author imply by suggesting we need to “celebrate” pankhas to preserve them?
 - (a) They must be worshipped in local temples annually.
 - (b) They require cultural validation to survive commercially.
 - (c) They should be distributed freely during festivals.
 - (d) They are currently banned in contemporary markets.
- ii. Which of the following best summarizes the dual benefit of organizing pankha-making workshops?
 - (a) They reduce raw material costs and train new amateur hobbyists.
 - (b) They mass-produce fans and eliminate the need for hand-crafting.
 - (c) They generate cultural awareness and offer economic sustainability.

- (d) They enforce strict government rules and restrict creative designs.

- iii. How can pankha-making workshops help preserve this traditional craft?
- iv. Find a word in the extract that means “belonging to or occurring in the present time.”
- v. Fill in the blank:
By providing artisans with a commercial platform, the craft can transform into a _____ livelihood.

Ans :

- i. (b) They require cultural validation to survive commercially.
- ii. (c) They generate cultural awareness and offer economic sustainability.
- iii. Pankha-making workshops spread awareness about the beauty and importance of the craft and provide artisans a commercial platform for a sustainable livelihood.
- iv. contemporary
- v. sustainable



CHAPTER 4

VITAMIN-M

1. INTRODUCTION

The story revolves around an elderly grandfather who leaves his peaceful village to live in a bustling city with his daughter and grandson, Ravi. Following a minor accident, his overprotective daughter enforces strict rules and diets, treating the old man like a fragile prisoner. Stripped of his independence, Grandpa longs for his former freedom. The narrative sets up a humorous yet relatable family dynamic when Ravi is secretly sent to tail his grandfather during a morning walk. This sparks a clever battle of wits between the young boy and the surprisingly sharp patriarch.

2. CHARACTERS

Ravi

A caring and curious boy who secretly follows his grandfather to protect him, only to be playfully outsmarted.

Grandpa

An independent, clever, and mischievous elderly man who dislikes being treated like a helpless child.

Ravi's mother (Vidya)

An anxious and overprotective woman who worries constantly about her elderly father's safety and memory.

Ravi's father

A calm man who appears confused by the playful, secret dynamic between Ravi and Grandpa.

Ravi's grandmother

Grandpa's late wife, whose passing ten years ago led Grandpa to take over household duties.

The little boy

A playful child in the park who mistakenly thinks Ravi is playing hide and seek.

The little boy's mother

A loud, protective woman who angrily scolds Ravi for hiding near her son.

The plastic comb vendor

A territorial street seller who sharply tells Ravi there is no room for new vendors.

The ribbon and clip vendor

A loud street seller who suspiciously questions why Ravi is hiding behind the tree.

The third vendor

Another curious street seller who joins the group surrounding Ravi behind the banyan tree.

The women in the salon

Ladies who shriek and evict Ravi when he accidentally hides inside their hairdressing salon.

The stranger on the bus

A man wearing Grandpa's yellow cap, revealing to Ravi that he had been cleverly tricked.

3. SUMMARY

Grandpa's Life in the City

The story revolves around an elderly grandfather who has recently moved to a noisy, bustling city to live with his daughter and teenage grandson, Ravi. Grandpa deeply misses his independent life in his quiet hometown, especially his small brick house and big mango tree. He only moved to the city because he had slipped and fallen in his garden, and living alone was no longer safe for him.

Because Grandpa is getting old and has shown signs of a failing memory—such as accidentally taking a double dose of his medicine and forgetting his way home—Ravi's mother becomes overly protective. She restricts his diet, stops him from going out alone, and often speaks to him in a loud, patronising tone as if he were a baby. While Ravi's mother acts out of care, Grandpa feels like a prisoner, and Ravi feels guilty about how his mother treats the old man.

The Secret Mission

One morning, Ravi's mother secretly tasks Ravi with keeping an eye on Grandpa. When Grandpa

decides to step out to buy a Tamil newspaper, Ravi follows him closely but tries to stay hidden. This marks the beginning of a hilarious and exhausting secret mission for Ravi, who attempts to play the role of a detective trailing a suspect.

A Day of Rule-Breaking and Adventures

Unaware—or so it seems—that he is being followed, Grandpa goes on a fun, independent stroll across the city. He first visits a children's park, where he buys a paper-cone of peanuts and happily watches the children play. Next, he stops at a tea stall and treats himself to items that are strictly banned by Ravi's mother: a sugary cup of tea, two bananas, and an ice cream!

While Grandpa is having a great time, poor Ravi struggles to stay hidden. He faces continuous humiliation and physical discomfort. He has to duck behind cars, crouch behind elephant-shaped bushes, crawl on all fours, face the anger of street vendors, and even gets kicked out of a ladies' hair salon while trying to keep his grandfather in sight.

The Great Escape

Eventually, Grandpa walks briskly to a bus stop and boards a bus. Ravi rushes in after him, keeping his eyes glued to Grandpa's signature yellow cap. However, to Ravi's absolute horror, he discovers that the person wearing the yellow cap is a complete stranger! Grandpa had cleverly swapped his cap with someone else to trick his grandson and successfully managed to ditch him.

A Heartwarming Relief and a Clever Twist

Sick with worry that Grandpa is lost in the big city, Ravi returns home in a panic. However, to his immense delight and relief, he finds Grandpa safely asleep in his bed, snoring peacefully. Overwhelmed with love and realizing how much he truly cares for his grandfather, Ravi kneels by the bed and gives him a heartfelt hug.

When Ravi's mother questions them, Grandpa coolly covers for Ravi, saying he had a quiet morning but that Ravi had mysteriously disappeared. Then, Grandpa brings out a gift-wrapped parcel for Ravi. Ravi's mother is impatient, thinking Grandpa's memory is failing since Ravi's birthday was three months ago. However, it is actually Grandpa's own birthday, and he is keeping up his lifelong tradition of giving gifts to his family on his special day.

The Irony of "Vitamin-M"

When Ravi opens the gift, he finds a detective storybook. Grandpa gives him a mischievous

wink and playfully advises him to read the tips on how to trail a suspect without being fooled. This proves that Grandpa's memory and wit are perfectly sharp; he knew Ravi was following him all along and decided to teach him a playful lesson.

The story ends on a humorous and ironic note regarding the title, "Vitamin-M" (which stands for a memory vitamin). While Ravi's mother constantly worries about Grandpa's fading memory, she is the one who completely forgot her own father's birthday, proving that she might be the one who actually needs "Vitamin-M"!

WORD MEANINGS

1. Hurriedly – rapidly, quickly, swiftly
2. Invent – create, discover, originate
3. Frail – weak, delicate, fragile
4. Shuddered – trembled, shivered, shook
5. Difficult – hard, tough, challenging
6. Absent-mindedly – forgetfully, inattentively
7. Dose – amount, portion, measure
8. Anxious – worried, nervous, tense
9. Insisted – demanded, urged strictly
10. Trace – hint, small amount, sign
11. Firmness – strictness, determination, resolve
12. Poky – small and cramped, tiny
13. Forbid – ban, prohibit, disallow
14. Bustle – busy activity
15. Dusk – evening, twilight, sunset
16. Pottering – moving about aimlessly, tinkering
17. Instructed – ordered, directed, commanded
18. Winced – showed an expression of embarrassment
19. Cunning – clever, crafty, sly
20. Historic – famous, significant in history
21. Tiresome – annoying, exhausting, irritating
22. Suspicious – doubtful, untrusting, wary
23. Guilty – ashamed, regretful, remorseful
24. Craftily – cleverly, slyly, cunningly
25. Mahogany – dark reddish-brown wood
26. Carved – cut, sculpted, shaped
27. Declared – stated, announced, proclaimed
28. Twirling – spinning, rotating, turning
29. Jauntily – happily and confidently
30. Dilemma – difficult choice, confusion, predicament
31. Furious – extremely angry, enraged, irate
32. Foolish – silly, stupid, unwise
33. Crouch – bend the body low
34. Trimmed – cut neatly, pruned, clipped
35. Boomed – spoke loudly, roared, thundered

36. Shoo – send away, drive away, dismiss
37. Threateningly – aggressively, fiercely, menacingly
38. Ultimate – final, extreme, worst
39. Humiliation – shame, embarrassment, disgrace
40. Crawl – move on hands and knees, creep
41. Ducking – moving your head or body down
42. Creeping – moving slowly and quietly, sneaking
43. Quizzical – questioning, puzzled, curious
44. Accusing – blaming, charging, pointing fingers
45. Conceded – accepted, admitted, surrendered
46. Peering – looking closely, staring, gazing
47. Thudded – beat heavily, pounded, thumped
48. Zigzagging – moving in sharp turns, weaving
49. Panic – sudden fear, terror, alarm
50. Screech – sharp noise, squeal, shriek
51. Bald – hairless, smooth-headed
52. Evicted – thrown out, removed forcefully, expelled
53. A volley of – a lot of
54. Briskly – quickly, energetically, rapidly
55. Boarding – getting on, entering (a vehicle)
56. Sprinting – running fast, dashing, rushing
57. Deterred – prevented (from doing)
58. Detective – investigator, sleuth, researcher
59. Panting – breathing heavily, gasping, puffing
60. Startled – surprised, shocked, frightened
61. Wig – artificial hair, hairpiece
62. Confront – face
63. Attire – clothing, dress, garments
64. Rim – edge, border, margin
65. Exclaiming – crying out, shouting in surprise
66. Grinned – smiled broadly, beamed
67. Typical – usual, normal, expected
68. Generous – kind, giving, liberal
69. Frantic – very frightened
70. Whirr – low continuous sound, buzz, hum
71. Snoring – breathing loudly while asleep
72. Creases – lines
73. Overcome – overwhelmed, deeply affected, conquered
74. Affection – love, fondness, care
75. Grunted – made a low sound, murmured, groaned
76. Coolly – calmly, without emotion, indifferently
77. Impatiently – restlessly, eagerly, anxiously
78. Countered – replied, argued back, opposed
79. Flushed – turned red, blushed, reddened
80. Darted – looked at somebody quickly
81. Stricken – shocked, deeply affected, upset
82. Unwrapped – opened, uncovered, revealed

83. Trailing – following
84. Suspect – a person thought to be guilty
85. Solemnly – seriously
86. Twinkle – sparkle, shine, flicker
87. Gleam – shine, flash of light, glimmer
88. Mischievous – playful, naughty, teasing

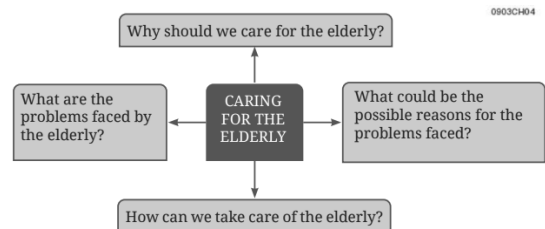
5. MESSAGE

The author gives a beautiful message about caring for elderly family members. While it is good to look after them, overprotecting them can feel like a punishment. Grandpa felt like a prisoner when his daughter took away his freedom. The story teaches us that old people do not just need a strict diet and safety. They also need respect, independence, and the joy of making their own choices to live happily.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Reflect and Respond

- I. From your experience with an elderly person at home or in your neighbourhood, complete the following graphic organiser.



Now, discuss the points written in the organiser with your classmates and teacher.

Ans :

1. Why should we care for the elderly?
We should care for them because they spent their youth caring for and providing for us. They possess immense wisdom and life experience, and in their old age, they require physical, emotional, and psychological support.
2. What are the problems faced by the elderly?
They often face declining health, restricted mobility, loneliness, memory loss, a feeling of being a burden on their families, and difficulty adapting to rapidly changing technology.
3. What could be the possible reasons for the problems faced?

The transition to nuclear families often leaves them isolated. Generation gaps lead to communication barriers, and the busy, fast-paced lives of younger family members often leave little time for the elderly.

4. How can we take care of the elderly?

We can take care of them by spending quality time with them, assisting them with their medical and personal needs, being patient listeners, showing them respect, and making them feel valued and involved in family decisions.

II. Fill in the table given below. You may check your answers with the help of a dictionary.

Word Knowledge Table

	Word	Not heard this word before	Have heard this word but don't know what it means	I know this word. It has something to do with...	Write the meaning of this word
1.	frail				
2.	shuddered				
3.	poky				
4.	forbid				
5.	pottering				
6.	wincing				

Ans :

	Word	Not heard this word before	Have heard this word but don't know what it means	I know this word. It has something to do with...	Write the meaning of this word
1.	frail			weakness / old age	physically weak or delicate
2.	shuddered			fear / cold	shook suddenly because of fear, cold, or disgust
3.	poky			small cramped /	small, uncomfortable, or slow
4.	forbid			stopping someone	to not allow or prevent something
5.	pottering			small tasks	doing small, unimportant tasks in a relaxed way
6.	wincing			pain	made a slight movement showing pain or discomfort

III. Think of a tradition, story, or recipe passed down by grandparents or an elderly relative in your family. What does it mean to you? How does it connect you to your growing-up years? Share with your classmates and teacher.

Ans :

A special tradition passed down by my grandmother is the annual making of raw mango pickles during the summer holidays. To me, it is much more than just a recipe; it is a symbol of our family's heritage and love. It connects me to my growing-up years because every summer, the entire family would gather on the terrace, cutting mangoes, mixing spices, and listening to my grandmother's fascinating stories from her own childhood. The distinct aroma of mustard oil and fenugreek instantly transports me back to those carefree days, reminding me of the warmth and unity of our family.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

Check Your Understanding

- I. Why did Grandpa dislike living in the city with his daughter?

Ans :

Grandpa disliked living in the city because he hated the noise and the busy, crowded activity (bustle) of city life. He found his daughter's flat to be uncomfortably small and cramped ("poky"). He missed his independent life in his small brick house in town, which had a quiet garden and a big mango tree.

- II. Why did Vidya not want her father to go out alone?

Ans :

Vidya did not want her father to go out alone because he was getting too old and forgetful. The previous month, he had absent-mindedly taken a double dose of his medicines, resulting in a hospital admission. On another occasion, he went for a walk and forgot his way back home, giving the family anxious moments.

- III. Was Ravi in favour of his mother treating Grandpa like a child? How can you say so?

Ans :

No, Ravi was not in favour of his mother treating Grandpa like a child. We can say this because Ravi "wincing" at the over-loud, patronising tone his mother used when speaking to Grandpa. Furthermore, when Grandpa complained about being treated like a baby and a prisoner, Ravi felt guilty and quickly tried to reassure him that his mother would never treat him that way.

1. Background of your experience
 - The person I had the privilege of taking care of was...
 - I found myself in a caregiving role for...
 - I took on the responsibility of caring for...
2. Reflect on what you learned about yourself during this caregiving experience.
 - Did you discover any new qualities or strengths in yourself?
 - How did this experience contribute to your personal growth?
3. Caring for someone taught me valuable lessons about myself, including...
4. In this role, I learned that I possess the ability to...
5. One significant realisation about me during this experience was ...
 - Discuss what you learned about the older person you were caring for.
 - What insights did you gain into their needs, preferences, or challenges?
 - How did your understanding of aging evolve through this experience?
6. Understanding the needs and preferences of the older person, I learned that...
7. Their challenges offered insights into the difficulties of aging, such as...
8. Caring for them deepened my understanding of the ageing process, particularly...

Ans :

1. **Background of your experience :** The person I had the privilege of taking care of was my grandfather when he was recovering from knee surgery last winter. I found myself in a caregiving role because both my parents had to go to work, and he needed assistance moving around the house. I took on the responsibility of caring for his medication schedule and ensuring his meals were brought to him on time.
2. **Reflect on what you learned about yourself during this caregiving experience :** During this time, I discovered new qualities in myself; I realised I have a high level of patience and empathy that I didn't know I possessed. This experience contributed to my personal growth by teaching me responsibility. Caring for someone taught me valuable lessons about myself, including that I can remain calm in stressful situations. In this role, I learned that I possess the ability to bring comfort and a smile to someone who is in pain. One significant realisation about me during this

experience was that helping others brings me immense inner satisfaction.

3. **Discuss what you learned about the older person you were caring for :** I learned that despite his physical limitations, my grandfather is fiercely independent in his mind. I gained insights into his need to feel useful rather than just being a patient. My understanding of aging evolved through this experience as I saw first-hand how frustrating it can be for a once-active person to rely on others.

Understanding the needs and preferences of the older person, I learned that dignity and respect are just as important to them as medicines. Their challenges offered insights into the difficulties of aging, such as a loss of independence. Ultimately, caring for him deepened my understanding of the ageing process, particularly the importance of emotional support alongside physical care.

Writing Task

- I. **As you read in the story, we have a lot to learn from our elderly. Based on the lessons learned from them, write an article for your school magazine on the topic 'Our Inspiring Elderly'.** Organise the article in the manner given below. Follow the steps given below to write an article about your skills and passions.

- Write the title at the top and your name and grade below it.
- **Paragraph 1 :** Give a brief introduction to the topic. Focus on the main idea, but do not give any details.
- **Paragraph 2 :** Give details to support the main idea—how the elderly inspire. Include examples, facts, and quotations.
- **Paragraph 3 :** Elaborate on how they overcame challenges and the inspiring impact on you.
- **Paragraph 4 :** Conclude with a final comment on the topic and leave the reader with the most important ideas to think about

Ans :

Our Inspiring Elderly

By XYZ, Grade 9

The elderly hold a special place in our society, often serving as the silent pillars that support our families and communities. While modern society is fast-paced and increasingly youth-centric, we tend to overlook the profound wisdom and life lessons that our grandparents and elderly citizens can offer. They are living history books, and

Critical Reflection

I. Read the extracts given below and answer the questions that follow.

1. Grandpa hated the noise and bustle of city life and when they were on their own, he often spoke longingly of his small brick house in town. "Such a wonderful place...! With that big mango tree in the garden! It is so quiet that at dusk you can even hear a leaf fall!" But then Grandpa had slipped and fallen in the garden late one evening while he was pottering around and lain outside all night because there was no one at home to help him up.

- i. Choose the emotion displayed by the Grandfather.
 - A. regretful
 - B. apologetic
 - C. nostalgic
 - D. wistful
- ii. Complete the following sentence with a reason. Grandpa hated the busy and noisy city life because _____.
- iii. Why did Grandpa come to the city despite his dislike for city life?
- iv. Choose an expression similar in meaning to, 'you can even hear a leaf fall'.
 - A. end of one's life
 - B. arrival of autumn
 - C. sign of good luck
 - D. pin drop silence
- v. State one advantage and one disadvantage of the Grandfather living in the house in town.

Ans :

- i. C. nostalgic
- ii. Grandpa hated the busy and noisy city life because **he was used to the peace and quiet of his small brick house in town, where you could even hear a leaf fall.**
- iii. Grandpa came to the city because he had slipped and fallen in his garden late one evening and had to lie outside all night since he lived alone. Because he was getting too old to live safely on his own, his daughter brought him to live with her in the city.
- iv D. pin drop silence
- v. **Advantage :** The house in town was peaceful, quiet, and had a beautiful garden with a big mango tree, which Grandpa loved.

Disadvantage : He lived alone, meaning there was no one to help him in case of an emergency, such as when he slipped and fell in the garden.

2. "I had a quiet morning, but I don't know about Ravi. He just disappeared instead of staying at home to look after me like you told him to," answered Grandpa coolly, while Ravi just looked confused and embarrassed. Grandpa had another surprise for Ravi. A gift-wrapped parcel! "But, Papa, Ravi's birthday was three months ago. Have you forgotten?" exclaimed Ravi's mother, impatiently.
- i. Choose the option that displays the tone of the Grandfather's response.
 - A. apologetic
 - B. hurtful
 - C. calm
 - D. puzzled
- ii. Why was Ravi confused and embarrassed?
- iii. Complete the sentence with a suitable reason. Ravi's mother was impatient because _____.
- iv. State whether the following sentence is true or false. Grandfather forgot that Ravi's birthday was three months ago.
- v. Why did Grandpa say he didn't know what kind of morning Ravi might have had?

Ans :

- i. C. calm
- ii. Ravi was confused and embarrassed because he had spent his entire morning frantically chasing and hiding behind bushes to keep an eye on Grandpa. Yet, Grandpa effortlessly turned the tables, calmly claiming that it was Ravi who had disappeared and failed to stay at home as instructed.
- iii. Ravi's mother was impatient because 'she thought Grandpa's failing memory had caused him to forget that Ravi's birthday had passed three months ago.'
- iv. False. (Grandfather remembered exactly what day it was; it was his own birthday, and it was his tradition to give gifts to the children on his birthday).
- v. Grandpa said this mischievously because he secretly knew exactly the chaotic morning Ravi had experienced. He knew Ravi had been

IV. Would Ravi be able to keep up his promise to his mother?

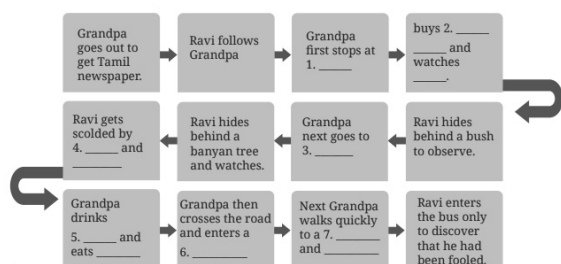
Ans :

No, Ravi was not able to keep his promise to his mother. Although he promised to look after Grandpa, Grandpa cleverly tricked him. Despite secretly following him across the city, Ravi ultimately lost Grandpa when the old man swapped his signature yellow cap with a stranger on the bus.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

Check Your Understanding

I. Complete the flow chart by describing Grandpa's day out.



Ans :

1. the children's park
2. a paper-cone of peanuts and watches the children play.
3. the tea stall
4. the little boy's mother and the vendors
5. a sugary cup of tea and eats two bananas and an ice cream
6. barber shop
7. bus stop and boards the first bus

II. Was Grandpa lost as feared by Ravi's mother?

Ans :

No, Grandpa was not lost at all. Despite wandering all over the city and cleverly ditching Ravi, he safely navigated his way back home and was found peacefully snoring in his bed.

III. How would Ravi feel after seeing Grandpa?

Ans :

Ravi felt a sense of great delight and intense relief upon seeing Grandpa safely asleep in his bed. Sick with worry after losing track of him, seeing the old man safe caused Ravi to be suddenly overcome with deep affection, prompting him to give Grandpa a loving hug.

IV. Do you think Ravi's mother will get to know about what had happened?

Ans :

It is highly unlikely that Ravi's mother will get to know the full truth of what happened. Ravi decided not to question Grandpa to avoid revealing that he had been secretly trailing him. Furthermore, Grandpa played along perfectly, coolly telling her that he had a quiet morning but that Ravi had strangely disappeared.

Check Your Understanding

I. Describe how Ravi's emotional reaction upon finding Grandpa safe at home reveals his feelings towards his grandfather.

Ans :

When Ravi finds Grandpa safely asleep, he feels "great delight and relief," kneels near his bed, and gives him a heartfelt hug. This emotional reaction reveals that beneath the frustration and panic of having to 'babysit' and trail his grandfather, Ravi genuinely loves him. His overwhelming affection proves he views Grandpa not as a burden, but as a cherished family member whose safety is paramount to him.

II. What might be the significance of Grandpa's habit of giving gifts to everyone on his birthday rather than receiving them?

Ans :

Grandpa's habit of giving gifts on his own birthday is significant because it highlights his generous and loving nature. It also shows his desire to maintain his role as a loving patriarch and provider for his family, whom he still fondly considers his "babies," rather than transitioning into a dependent individual who solely receives care.

III. Why do you think Grandpa gave Ravi a detective story book as a gift? What might this suggest about Grandpa's awareness of Ravi's actions earlier in the day?

Ans :

Grandpa gave Ravi a detective story book, specifically mentioning tips on how not to get fooled while "trailing a suspect." This humorous gift, combined with his solemn tone and the mischievous twinkle in his eye, strongly suggests that Grandpa was completely aware that Ravi had been secretly following him all morning, and outsmarting him was a playful lesson.

Vocabulary and Structures in Context

- I. Classify the words given in the box on the next page into movement words in Column 1 and sound words in Column 2. One example has been done for you.

pottering	bustle	ducked	evicted,
jumping	boomed	crawl	shrieks,
briskly	darted	twirling	creeping,
zigzagging	sprinting	trailing	crouch,
thudded	whirr	grunted	snoring

Column 1	Column 2
pottering	boomed

Now, fill in the blanks with appropriate words from Column 1 or Column 2.

Detective Shankar, 1. _____ the mysterious suspect through the dimly lit side lanes, away from the 2. _____ of the city, quickened his pace 3. _____. The suspect's heavy footsteps 4. _____ across the street, unaware of the pursuit. Shankar 5. _____ his magnifying glass had to 6. _____ behind the market stalls, 7. _____ through the lanes to avoid being seen. Shankar 8. _____ when he hit himself against a pole. This alarmed the suspect and he 9. _____ into the night leaving only the distant 10. _____ of the sleeping city behind.

Ans :

Column 1	Column 2
pottering	boomed
ducked	bustle
jumping	shrieks
crawl	evicted
briskly	thudded
darted	whirr

twirling	grunted
creeping	snoring
zigzagging	
sprinting	
trailing	
crouch	

1. creeping
2. bustle
3. briskly
4. thudded
5. crouched
6. duck
7. zigzagging
8. grunted
9. sprinted
10. snoring

- II. Study the highlighted word in the given sentence from the text and fill in the boxes with synonymous words. You may refer to a dictionary.

Off he went, twirling his walking stick jauntily, leaving Ravi in a dilemma.

1. QU_ ND_ _ Y ← DILEMMA → 2. PR_ D _ C _ M _ NT

Ans :

1. QUANDARY
2. PREDICAMENT

- III. Fill in the table given below. Check your answers with the help of a dictionary.

	Word	Meaning	Part of Speech	Synonym	Antonym
1.	craftily				
2.	dilemma				
3.	furious				
4.	boomed				
5.	humiliation				
6.	attire				

Ans :

	Word	Meaning	Part of Speech	Synonym	Antonym
1.	craftily	in a clever or cunning way	Adverb	cleverly	honestly
2.	dilemma	a situation with difficult choices	Noun	problem	solution
3.	furious	extremely angry	Adjective	enraged	calm
4.	boomed	made a deep loud sound	Verb	thundered	whispered

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

exhaustively trailing him all over town and struggling to hide, so he used this statement to playfully tease him without exposing the secret to Ravi's mother.

II. Answer the following questions.

- Grandpa is portrayed as a person with failing memory in the beginning of the story. Give two evidences to disprove the statement.

Ans :

- He flawlessly remembers the historic chess moves made by grandmasters like Karpov and Bobby Fischer.
- He perfectly remembers the date of his own birthday, as well as his longstanding family tradition of giving gifts to everyone else on that specific day.

- Give two characteristic traits of each of the following characters.
 - Grandfather
 - Ravi
 - Ravi's mother

Ans :

- Grandfather** : Independent and witty (mischievous).
- Ravi** : Responsible and loving (but slightly naive).
- Ravi's mother** : Caring but overprotective and anxious.

- Why was Ravi worried about what Grandfather had at the tea stall?

Ans :

Ravi was worried because Grandpa consumed a sugary cup of tea and two bananas, both of which were strictly "banned items" for him at home, likely due to his old age and dietary/health restrictions.

- Do you think it was easy for Ravi to follow his Grandfather? If yes, why? If no, why not?

Ans :

No, it was not easy for Ravi. He had to go through a lot of humiliation and physical discomfort, such as crouching behind bushes shaped like an elephant, crawling on all fours to avoid a scolding mother, ducking behind cars, facing the anger of street vendors, and even getting evicted from a Ladies' Hairdressing Salon.

- 'Ravi is a good detective'. Give one argument in favour of and against the given statement.

Ans :

In favour : Ravi successfully tracked Grandpa across various bustling locations (the park, the tea stall, the road, the barber shop) without immediately losing him.

Against : He was highly conspicuous and terrible at staying hidden, getting into awkward confrontations with strangers, and ultimately failed his mission by being easily fooled when Grandpa swapped his cap with a stranger.

- Was Grandfather aware that Ravi was following him? How do you know?

Ans :

Yes, Grandfather was completely aware. We know this because at the end of the story, he gifts Ravi a detective book, playfully remarks on how to avoid getting fooled while "trailing a suspect," and has a mischievous twinkle in his eye. This implies he intentionally swapped his cap to trick Ravi.

- In your opinion, who needs Vitamin-M? And why?

Ans :

Ironically, it is Ravi's mother who seems to need "Vitamin-M" (a memory vitamin). While she is constantly anxious about Grandpa's failing memory, she completely forgot that it was her own father's birthday and failed to remember his cherished tradition of giving gifts on that day.

- Some people believe society shows bias based on age (being young or old). Give an example where you might have experienced or observed such discrimination, when opinions were disregarded because of age.

Ans :

Age-based discrimination can be seen in everyday situations. For example, in a classroom discussion, a younger student may share an idea or opinion, but the teacher or classmates may ignore it, thinking the student is too young to understand the topic properly. Later, when an older student gives a similar idea, it is taken more seriously.

In this case, the younger student's opinion is disregarded not because it is wrong, but simply because of their age. This shows how people can be judged unfairly based on how young or old they are, rather than on the value of their ideas.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

ARVIND : No. My parents and I visit my grandpa every weekend. How do you manage your grandparents' medical needs?

PRIYA : We have a schedule for giving medications and visits to the doctor.

Now, complete the following sentences in reported speech.

Arvind asked Priya if she 1. _____ for which Priya replied in the affirmative and said that they 2. _____. Priya further asked Arvind 3. _____. Arvind replied in the negative and said that 4. _____ every weekend. He further enquired 5. _____. Priya responded by saying that they 6. _____.

Ans :

Arvind asked Priya if she 1. **helped in taking care of her grandparents at home**, for which Priya replied in the affirmative and said that they 2. **took turns making sure they were alright**. Priya further asked Arvind 3. **if he had grandparents living with him**. Arvind replied in the negative and said that 4. **his parents and he visited his grandpa** every weekend. He further enquired 5. **how she managed her grandparents' medical needs**. Priya responded by saying that they 6. **had a schedule for giving medications and visits to the doctor**.

Listen and Respond

I. You will listen to a podcast on meditation. As you listen, complete the sentences with not more than three exact words that you hear. (Transcript for teacher on page 266)

1. Meditation is a form of yoga that usually refreshes the mind and helps with _____.
2. Meditation leads to a better health condition both _____.
3. Meditation also aids in lessening undesirable feelings and improving _____.
4. It is advised that we meditate every day so that it becomes a _____.
5. Meditating on a daily basis is beneficial in comfortably tackling _____.

Ans :

Here are the correct answers based on the given transcript:

1. Meditation is a form of yoga that usually refreshes the mind and helps with **stress management**.
2. Meditation leads to a better health condition both **physically and emotionally**.
3. Meditation also aids in lessening undesirable

feelings and improving **self-awareness**.

4. It is advised that we meditate every day so that it becomes a **routine**.
5. Meditating on a daily basis is beneficial in comfortably tackling **exam-related pressure**.

Speaking Activity

I. Intonation refers to the pitch of the voice while speaking. In questions, intonation can indicate the sentiment or the expected response.

For example:

- What is your name?
(In Wh and How questions we use a falling intonation towards the end.)
- Are you feeling okay?
(In Yes or No questions we use a rising intonation towards the end.)
- This is your notebook, isn't it?
(When we have an affirmative main clause and negative question tag, we use a rising intonation to show we are fairly sure of the answer.)
- You weren't in the library yesterday, were you?
(When we have a negative main clause and affirmative question tag, we use a falling intonation to show we are unsure of the answer.)
- Shall we read this storybook or borrow another one?
(When we have a question with choices, we use rise-fall intonation.)

Now, revisit the story and select different questions. Work in pairs and practise speaking them aloud according to the examples shared.

Ans :

No written answer required. Students are meant to practice aloud with a peer.

II. Make a presentation about a brief personal experience related to taking care of an older person. For example, mention a specific individual you cared for or an occasion when you provided assistance to that person. You may use the following prompts to structure your narration.

5.	humiliation	feeling of shame or embarrassment	Noun	disgrace	honor
6.	attire	clothes or garments	Noun	clothing	nakedness

IV. Match the emotions/expressions in Column 1 with their meanings in Column 2. One meaning is extra.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	embarrassed	(i)	affected severely by an unpleasant feeling
2.	countered	(ii)	to be confused
3.	flushed	(iii)	expression of emotion
4.	stricken	(iv)	reply to an argument
5.	gleam	(v)	felt uncomfortable
		(vi)	became red in the face

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	embarrassed	(v)	felt uncomfortable
2.	countered	(iv)	reply to an argument
3.	flushed	(vi)	became red in the face
4.	stricken	(i)	affected severely by an unpleasant feeling
5.	gleam	(iii)	expression of emotion

Note : Meaning (ii) 'to be confused' is the extra meaning

V. Read the highlighted words in the following phrases from the story. Now, revisit the story and underline the prepositions.

- I'll just walk **across** to the corner shop...
- ... he felt a shadow fall **over** him...
- ...the vendors sitting **under** the tree...
- Ravi took position **behind** a big banyan...

Prepositions are words used to show the relationship of a noun or pronoun to other words in a sentence, often indicating direction, location, time, or manner.

Now, fill in the blanks with appropriate prepositions.

I walked (i) _____ (through, between, against) the village, crossed a bridge (ii) _____ (over, under, beside) a brook, and found a quiet garden (iii) _____ (among, near, across) a cottage. Sitting on a bench (iv) _____ (on, at, in) the garden, I enjoyed the peaceful surroundings. Later,

I strolled (v) _____ (beside, through, along) a riverbank, exploring the forest and heading (vi) _____ (into, towards, beyond) the unknown.

Ans :

- (i) through, (ii) over, (iii) near, (iv) in, (v) along, (vi) towards.

VI. Read the following dialogues from the story.

- "Shall we play chess or watch the cricket match on TV, Grandpa?" asked Ravi.
- "Who are you?" said the little boy's mother.
- "What did you both do today?" asked Ravi's mother.
- "Have you forgotten?" countered Grandpa.
- A small child came up to him and asked, "Are you playing hide and seek?"

Now, choose the correct answer.

- The words in the quotes are (i) _____ (exclamatory/interrogative) sentences.
- Sentences 1, 4, and 5 are (ii) _____ (Wh-/Yes, No type) interrogative sentences.
- Sentences 2 and 3 are (iii) _____ (Wh-/Yes, No type) interrogative sentences.
So, there are (iv) _____ (two/three) types of interrogative sentences.

Ans :

- The words in the quotes are (i) **interrogative** sentences.
- Sentences 1, 4, and 5 are (ii) **Yes, No type** interrogative sentences.
- Sentences 2 and 3 are (iii) **Wh-** interrogative sentences.
So, there are (iv) **two** types of interrogative sentences.

VII. Read the following conversation.



ARVIND : Do you help in taking care of your grandparents at home?

PRIYA : Yes, I do. We take turns making sure they're alright. Do you have grandparents living with you?

engaging with them is one of the most enriching experiences we can have.

Our elderly inspire us through their unparalleled resilience and vast reservoirs of experience. For instance, my own grandfather, despite his failing physical health, never fails to recall the most intricate details of his youth, teaching us the value of observing the world closely. As the famous writer Gabriel García Márquez implied, the wisdom of old age is the light that guides the youth. Whether it is a forgotten traditional recipe that holds a family together, or tales of navigating a world without modern technology, they teach us patience, gratitude, and the importance of human connection over materialistic pursuits.

They have faced challenges that our generation can barely fathom—from surviving historical economic hardships to adapting to radical technological shifts. Watching them overcome these immense life changes with grace and a smile has an incredibly inspiring impact on me. It makes our modern-day academic and social challenges seem much more manageable. Their ability to find joy in the simple things, like a quiet morning walk or a family dinner, teaches us how to remain grounded.

In conclusion, our elderly are not a burden to be managed, but a treasure to be cherished. As we rush towards the future, it is vital to pause and hold the hands of those who built the very foundation we stand upon. Respecting and learning from our seniors ensures that their invaluable wisdom continues to light our way forward.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

Learning Beyond the Text

- I. Revisit the story and choose the image that correctly displays Grandpa's walking stick.



Ans :

The correct image is the **second one from the left**. According to the text on Page 6, the walking stick is described as having a “**brass handle carved in the shape of an eagle’s head**.” The **second image** is the only one that features an eagle’s head made of brass/gold material.

While the text describes the wood as “shiny-black” and the illustration shows brown mahogany, the **eagle-shaped brass handle** is the most distinct identifying feature that confirms this is the correct choice.

II. A picture is worth a thousand words!

Explore and revisit memories.

Collect a few memorable photographs of yourself and your family. Make a slide show. Mention the following:

- When and where was it clicked?
- Who are the people in the photograph?
- Why is it memorable for you?

Ans :

Note: This is a practical activity for students. Below is a sample descriptive guide on how a student should present it.

1. When and where was it clicked?

This photograph was clicked three years ago during our family trip to the hill station of Shimla, right after our first snowfall.

2. Who are the people in the photograph?

The picture features my parents, my younger sister, myself, and my grandparents wrapped in thick woolen coats.

3. Why is it memorable for you?

It is memorable because it was the first time my grandparents had seen snow in their entire lives. Seeing the pure, childlike joy on my grandfather's face as he threw a snowball made me realise that age is just a number. It is a moment of pure family joy that I will cherish forever.

III. You must have read stories about taking care of the family members of all age groups in English and also in your own language. Now, read the story given below. Discuss with your classmates and teacher.

Note : Read the story “The Lost Child” by Mulk Raj Anand from NCERT textbook.

Ans :

The text provides the story “The Lost Child” by Mulk Raj Anand for reading and classroom discussion. There are no direct textual questions

- (c) Only A is true; R is totally false.
- (d) Only A is false; R is totally true.

Ans :

- (a) Both A and R are strictly correct.

50. What is the main irony at the end of the story?

- (a) Grandpa acts like a young child but proves to be physically much stronger.
- (b) Ravi tries to be a smart detective but ends up getting hopelessly lost today.
- (c) The mother worries about Grandpa's memory but forgets his own birthday.
- (d) The vendors are extremely angry but give Grandpa free tasty food anyway.

Ans :

- (c) The mother worries about Grandpa's memory but forgets his own birthday.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Why did Grandpa have to move from his quiet village to a bustling city?

Ans :

Grandpa had to move to the city to live with his daughter and grandson because it was no longer safe for him to live alone. He had previously slipped and fallen in his garden, necessitating closer family care.

2. What specific things did Grandpa miss the most about his hometown after moving to the city?

Ans :

Despite living in a bustling city, Grandpa deeply missed the familiarity of his hometown. Specifically, he longed for his traditional small brick house and the comforting shade of the big mango tree that belonged to his old surroundings.

3. What incidents prompted Ravi's mother to worry about Grandpa's failing memory?

Ans :

Ravi's mother became highly concerned about Grandpa's memory after a few alarming incidents. He had mistakenly taken a double dose of his medication and had also completely forgotten his normal route back to their city home.

4. How did Ravi's mother treat Grandpa, and how did it affect him?

Ans :

Ravi's mother treated Grandpa with an

overprotective and loud, patronising tone. Her strict rules and constant monitoring stripped him of his independence, ultimately making the elderly man feel more like a confined prisoner than a respected father.

5. Why did Ravi feel a sense of guilt regarding his mother's treatment of Grandpa?

Ans :

Ravi felt extremely guilty because he could clearly see that his mother's loud, patronising tone was hurting Grandpa. He empathised with the old man, realising that her overprotective nature was unjustly making Grandpa feel helpless.

6. What secret mission did Ravi's mother assign to him, and why?

Ans :

Ravi's mother assigned him the secret mission of following Grandpa during his morning walk. She was deeply worried about Grandpa getting lost or hurting himself due to his failing memory, wanting Ravi to keep a watchful eye.

7. How did Grandpa spend his time at the children's park?

Ans :

At the children's park, Grandpa fully enjoyed a moment of independence. He bought some roasted peanuts wrapped in a paper-cone and sat peacefully, happily watching the young children play around him in the open space.

8. What "banned" food items did Grandpa treat himself to during his stroll?

Ans :

Taking advantage of his momentary freedom, Grandpa indulged in foods strictly banned by his daughter. At a roadside stall, he joyfully consumed a cup of sweet sugary tea, two large bananas, and a cold ice cream.

9. Describe Ravi's physical efforts to stay hidden while tailing his Grandpa.

Ans :

Ravi went to great lengths to act like a secret detective. He hid behind elephant-shaped bushes and crawled on all fours to remain unseen, eventually feeling entirely exhausted by the physically demanding task of trailing his grandfather.

10. What embarrassing situations did Ravi face while trying to secretly follow Grandpa?

12. Who gives Ravi the secret mission in the morning?

- (a) His strict father (b) His worried mother
(c) His school teacher (d) His local friends

Ans :

- (b) His worried mother

13. What does Grandpa step out to buy?

- (a) English magazine (b) Hindi storybook
(c) Telugu crossword (d) Tamil newspaper

Ans :

- (d) Tamil newspaper

14. Ravi followed Grandpa while pretending to be a

-----.

- (a) local tourist (b) secret detective
(c) street vendor (d) news reporter

Ans :

- (b) secret detective

15. Which of the following statements is correct regarding Grandpa's morning walk?

- (a) He walked very sadly and slowly.
(b) He remained inside his own room.
(c) He got lost in the huge market.
(d) He took a fun, independent stroll.

Ans :

- (d) He took a fun, independent stroll.

16. Where was Grandpa's first stop during his stroll?

- (a) A clothing shop (b) A grocery store
(c) A huge hospital (d) A children's park

Ans :

- (d) A children's park

17. What snack did Grandpa buy at the park?

- (a) Fresh cotton candy
(b) Some roasted peanuts
(c) Salty potato chips
(d) Hot buttered popcorn

Ans :

- (b) Some roasted peanuts

18. What was the snack wrapped in?

- (a) A paper-cone (b) A plastic box
(c) A glass bowl (d) A cloth pouch

Ans :

- (a) A paper-cone

19. What did Grandpa happily watch at the park?

- (a) The flying pigeons
(b) The running puppies
(c) The playing children
(d) The blooming flowers

Ans :

- (c) The playing children

20. Where did Grandpa stop after leaving the park?

- (a) A local fruit stall
(b) A nearby book shop
(c) A retail shoe store
(d) A roadside tea stall

Ans :

- (d) A roadside tea stall

21. What kind of tea did Grandpa drink?

- (a) Bitter herbal tea (b) Plain green tea
(c) Cold lemon tea (d) Sweet sugary tea

Ans :

- (d) Sweet sugary tea

22. How many bananas did Grandpa eat at the stall?

- (a) One small banana
(b) Two large bananas
(c) Three ripe bananas
(d) Four green bananas

Ans :

- (b) Two large bananas

23. What other banned item did Grandpa treat himself to?

- (a) A chocolate bar (b) A fruit pastry
(c) A cold ice cream (d) A sugary donut

Ans :

- (c) A cold ice cream

24. **Assertion (A):** Ravi's mother allowed Grandpa to eat whatever he wanted.

Reason (R): Grandpa ate sugary tea, bananas, and an ice cream.

- (a) Both A and R are fully correct.
(b) Both A and R are fully incorrect.
(c) Only A is true; R is totally false.
(d) Only A is false; R is totally true.

Ans :

- (d) Only A is false; R is totally true.

to inject warmth, humor, and love into his family dynamics.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“It was only last month that Ravi’s Grandpa had come to live with them because he was getting too old to live on his own. It had been a difficult month with Grandpa having to be admitted to the hospital because he absent-mindedly took a double dose of his medicines, and then gave them several anxious moments when he got lost on one occasion he went for a walk and forgot the way back home.”

- i. What underlying reason prompted Grandpa’s move to his daughter’s house?
 - (a) Inability to live independently
 - (b) Sudden financial instability
 - (c) Desire to meet his grandson
 - (d) Lack of medical facilities
- ii. **Statement I:** Grandpa intentionally took extra medicines to get attention.
Statement II: The family experienced a highly stressful first month with him.
 - (a) Both I and II are true.
 - (b) Both I and II are false.
 - (c) I is true, II is false.
 - (d) I is false, II is true.
- iii. What two incidents made the family’s first month with Grandpa difficult?
- iv. Identify the word from the extract that means “without paying attention” or “forgetfully”.
- v. State whether True or False with a 1-sentence reason:
 Grandpa was highly familiar with the neighborhood around his daughter’s house.

Ans :

- i. (a) Inability to live independently
- ii. (d) I is false, II is true.
- iii. Grandpa accidentally took a double dose of medicines and got lost while going for a walk.
- iv. absent-mindedly
- v. False, because he got lost on one occasion while taking a walk and forgot his way back home.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“I’ll have you know, Vidya, my dear,” he had told his daughter with a trace of the firmness that

had been a natural part of his job as a lawyer, “that I’ve been looking after myself for the better part of my seventy-five years. After your mother died ten years ago, I took over her duties as well and have been cooking, shopping and keeping house too. First you force me to come and live with you in this poky little flat, in this horrible, crowded city and then you think you have the right to forbid me to go out on my own!”

- i. What dominant character trait does Grandpa exhibit in this dialogue?
 - (a) Resigned helplessness
 - (b) Fierce independence
 - (c) Irrational paranoia
 - (d) Manipulative behavior
- ii. **Assertion (A):** Grandpa deeply resents the restrictions placed upon his mobility by his daughter.
Reason (R): He believes his decade of self-reliance proves he is fully capable of navigating life alone.
 - (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true but R is NOT the correct explanation of A.
 - (c) A is true but R is false.
 - (d) A is false but R is true.
- iii. What responsibilities did Grandpa take on after his wife passed away?
- iv. Which word in the extract is used to describe the flat as uncomfortably small or cramped?
- v. Fill in the blank:
 Grandpa subtly uses his former profession as a _____ to justify his authoritative and firm tone.

Ans :

- i. (b) Fierce independence
- ii. (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- iii. Grandpa took over cooking, shopping and keeping the house on his own.
- iv. poky
- v. lawyer

Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Shall we play chess or watch the cricket match on TV, Grandpa?” Ravi asked after his mother left. Grandpa played a great game of chess, very cool and cunning, and Ravi found that his own game had improved greatly ever since Grandpa had come to live with them. “That’s the opening

- (c) Talking quite softly
- (d) Laughing out happily

Ans :

- (a) Snoring peacefully

39. What did Ravi do when he realized Grandpa was safe?

- (a) Gave him a warm hug
- (b) Yelled at him loudly
- (c) Locked the main door
- (d) Called his own mother

Ans :

- (a) Gave him a warm hug

40. Which of the following statements is correct regarding Grandpa's cover story?

- (a) He confessed that he ran away far.
- (b) He said Ravi disappeared quickly.
- (c) He blamed Ravi for stealing food.
- (d) He admitted eating sugary snacks.

Ans :

- (b) He said Ravi disappeared quickly.

41. What did Grandpa bring out for Ravi?

- (a) A small plastic toy box
- (b) A new wooden cricket bat
- (c) A gift-wrapped parcel
- (d) A large box of chocolates

Ans :

- (c) A gift-wrapped parcel

42. Why was Ravi's mother impatient about the gift?

- (a) Ravi's birthday was three months ago.
- (b) The gift was far too expensive today.
- (c) Ravi did not deserve any rewards now.
- (d) She wanted to open the gift herself.

Ans :

- (a) Ravi's birthday was three months ago.

43. What was the actual occasion being celebrated?

- (a) Ravi's school graduation
- (b) The sad mother's birthday
- (c) A major family festival
- (d) Grandpa's very own birthday

Ans :

- (d) Grandpa's very own birthday

44. What does Grandpa's tradition of giving gifts on his own birthday reveal about his character?

- (a) He is incredibly generous and enjoys making his family feel special.
- (b) He is entirely forgetful and completely confuses all special dates.
- (c) He is deeply unhappy and tries to buy love with expensive gifts.
- (d) He is very selfish and demands constant attention from everyone.

Ans :

- (a) He is incredibly generous and enjoys making his family feel special.

45. What was inside the parcel given to Ravi?

- (a) A funny comic book
- (b) A detective storybook
- (c) A science textbook
- (d) A poetry collection

Ans :

- (b) A detective storybook

46. What facial expression did Grandpa give Ravi?

- (a) An angry deep frown
- (b) A sad small teardrop
- (c) A mischievous wink
- (d) A totally blank stare

Ans :

- (c) A mischievous wink

47. Grandpa advises Ravi to read tips on how to _____ without being fooled.

- (a) cook healthy food
- (b) trail a suspect
- (c) pass hard exams
- (d) trick his mother

Ans :

- (b) trail a suspect

48. What does the term "Vitamin-M" stand for?

- (a) Muscle vitamin
- (b) Magic vitamin
- (c) Money vitamin
- (d) Memory vitamin

Ans :

- (d) Memory vitamin

49. **Assertion (A):** Ravi's mother constantly worries about Grandpa's fading memory.

Reason (R): She completely forgot her own father's birthday.

- (a) Both A and R are strictly correct.
- (b) Both A and R are fully incorrect.

Ans :

Grandpa is a resilient, witty, and deeply independent elderly man who struggles with the loss of his autonomy. Having moved to a bustling city after a fall, he initially appears vulnerable, plagued by a slightly failing memory. However, he fiercely refuses to be treated like a prisoner by his patronising daughter. Beneath his frail exterior lies a remarkably sharp, mischievous mind. He cleverly outsmarts his grandson, Ravi, by swapping his signature yellow cap with a stranger on a bus, proving he is far from helpless. Furthermore, he is incredibly generous and warm-hearted, maintaining the beautiful tradition of giving gifts to others on his own birthday. Ultimately, Grandpa asserts his dignity through humor, intelligence, and a quiet rebellion against overprotective rules.

2. Analyze the character of Ravi's mother. Do her intentions justify her treatment of Grandpa?

Ans :

Ravi's mother represents the classic dilemma of adult children caring for aging parents. Her intentions are undoubtedly rooted in genuine love and concern; she naturally worries about his safety after he slips in the garden and forgets his route home. However, her execution is deeply flawed. She uses a loud, patronising tone and imposes strict dietary and mobility rules, effectively stripping him of his dignity and making him feel like a prisoner. Her obsession with his "fading memory" and "Vitamin-M" blinds her to his emotional needs for independence and respect. The ultimate irony of her character is exposed when she completely forgets her own father's birthday, highlighting that her clinical, rule-based care severely lacks emotional attentiveness.

3. The story beautifully highlights the clash between elderly independence and overprotective caregiving. Discuss how this theme is developed throughout the narrative.

Ans :

The narrative masterfully explores the delicate balance between keeping an elderly parent safe and respecting their autonomy. When Grandpa moves to the city, his daughter's overprotective rules stifle him. She bans his favorite snacks and covertly sends Ravi to track him, treating him like an incapable child. However, Grandpa's rebellious morning stroll—where he joyfully buys roasted peanuts, sugary tea, and ice cream—

symbolizes his desperate craving for simple freedoms. By outsmarting Ravi at the bus stop, Grandpa reclaims his agency, proving that older adults still possess sharp wits and a desire for self-determination. The story suggests that while physical care is essential, emotional respect and the freedom to enjoy life's small pleasures are equally crucial for the elderly.

4. Imagine you are Ravi. Write a diary entry expressing your feelings of guilt about how your mother treats Grandpa and your subsequent failure as a "secret detective."

Ans :

Dear Diary,

Today has been a total rollercoaster of emotions. I feel a deep knot of guilt in my stomach every time Mom speaks to Grandpa in that loud, patronising tone. He is a grown man, yet she treats him like a prisoner in our own home! When she assigned me the "secret mission" to tail him, I felt terrible, but I went along with it anyway. I crawled behind elephant-shaped bushes and even got kicked out of a hair salon, genuinely thinking I was a master detective. Imagine my absolute horror when the man in the yellow cap turned out to be a complete stranger! Grandpa totally outsmarted me. Seeing him snoring peacefully at home later was the biggest relief of my life.

Ravi

5. Describe the climax of the story at the bus stop. How does this event shift the power dynamic between Grandpa and Ravi?

Ans :

The climax occurs when Grandpa briskly walks to a bus stop, fully aware that Ravi is clumsily tailing him through the city. As Ravi keeps his eyes glued to Grandpa's signature yellow cap, Grandpa masterfully executes a classic bait-and-switch by swapping his cap with a complete stranger boarding the bus. This brilliant moment decisively shifts the power dynamic. Until now, Ravi and his mother held the illusion of control, believing Grandpa was a helpless old man needing surveillance. By orchestrating this clever escape, Grandpa reclaims his authority and proves his cognitive sharpness. It deeply humbles Ravi, who transitions from a confident "secret detective" to a panic-stricken boy, restoring Grandpa's position as the wise patriarch.

Ans :

While desperately trying to stay hidden from Grandpa, Ravi clumsily navigated the bustling streets. He faced the loud anger of street vendors and even suffered the public embarrassment of being kicked out of a ladies' hair salon.

11. How did Grandpa manage to outsmart Ravi at the bus stop?

Ans :

Grandpa noticed Ravi following him and devised a clever trick. He briskly boarded a bus and swapped his signature yellow cap with a complete stranger, leaving Ravi hopelessly tracking the wrong person while he slipped away safely.

12. How did Ravi feel when he realised he was tracking the wrong person?

Ans :

When Ravi finally saw that the person wearing the yellow cap was a complete stranger, he was filled with absolute horror. He returned home feeling sick with deep worry, fearing that his Grandpa was completely lost.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

13. What did Ravi discover upon rushing back home in a panic?

Ans :

After returning home sick with worry, Ravi rushed in and found Grandpa completely safe. The elderly man was comfortably asleep in his bed, snoring peacefully as if nothing unusual had happened during his eventful morning walk.

14. How did Ravi react when he saw Grandpa sleeping peacefully in his bed?

Ans :

Overwhelmed with immense relief after fearing the worst, Ravi immediately gave Grandpa a warm, loving hug. He was just incredibly thankful that the old man was safe and sound after outsmarting him so brilliantly.

15. What cover story did Grandpa tell his daughter to explain Ravi's absence?

Ans :

To protect Ravi and hide his own mischievous adventure, Grandpa told his daughter that Ravi had simply disappeared quickly during the walk. This cleverly deflected any suspicion from Grandpa's trickery and his indulgence in sugary snacks.

16. What gift did Grandpa give Ravi, and why did his mother object?

Ans :

Grandpa gave Ravi a gift-wrapped parcel containing a detective storybook. Ravi's mother immediately became impatient and objected, pointing out that Ravi's birthday had already passed three months ago and there was no reason for a gift.

17. What was the actual occasion being celebrated when Grandpa handed Ravi the parcel?

Ans :

The actual occasion was Grandpa's own birthday. He had a unique, generous tradition of making his family members feel special by handing out thoughtful gifts to them on the day of his own birth.

18. Why was the choice of a detective storybook a humorous gift for Ravi?

Ans :

The detective storybook was highly humorous because Ravi had just failed miserably at acting like a secret detective. Grandpa gave it with a mischievous wink, playfully advising Ravi to read up on how to properly trail suspects.

19. What does the term "Vitamin-M" refer to in the context of the story?

Ans :

In the story, "Vitamin-M" stands for "Memory vitamin." It highlights the mother's constant, patronising concern over Grandpa's fading memory, as she feels he needs special dietary supplements to remember basic daily things.

20. Explain the situational irony at the end of the story regarding memory.

Ans :

The ultimate irony is that Ravi's mother constantly scolds Grandpa about his failing memory and insists he takes "Vitamin-M." Yet, she herself completely forgets that today is her own father's birthday, proving her own memory is deeply flawed.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Based on the story, provide a detailed character sketch of Grandpa. How does he balance his vulnerability with his sharp wit?

- 25.** What shape were the bushes Ravi hid behind?
 (a) Big lion-shaped (b) Tall bear-shaped
 (c) Elephant-shaped (d) Fat monkey-shaped

Ans :

(c) Elephant-shaped

- 26.** How did Ravi move to avoid being seen?
 (a) Skipped on his toes
 (b) Ran very quickly
 (c) Jumped over walls
 (d) Crawled on all fours

Ans :

(d) Crawled on all fours

- 27.** Whose anger did Ravi face during his secret mission?
 (a) The street vendors (b) The traffic police
 (c) The local drivers (d) The park guards

Ans :

(a) The street vendors

- 28.** Where did Ravi get kicked out from?
 (a) A big local restaurant
 (b) A very crowded market
 (c) A ladies' hair salon
 (d) A large public library

Ans :

(c) A ladies' hair salon

- 29.** How did Ravi feel while trying to stay hidden?
 (a) He felt extremely relaxed.
 (b) He felt entirely exhausted.
 (c) He felt incredibly proud.
 (d) He felt absolutely bored.

Ans :

(b) He felt entirely exhausted.

- 30.** How did Grandpa walk toward the bus stop?
 (a) Limped slowly (b) Walked lazily
 (c) Walked briskly (d) Stood quietly

Ans :

(c) Walked briskly

- 31.** What did Grandpa do at the bus stop?
 (a) Boarded a bus (b) Called a taxi
 (c) Sat on a bench (d) Read a big book

Ans :

(a) Boarded a bus

- 32.** What signature item of Grandpa's was Ravi keeping his eyes on?
 (a) A brown stick (b) A black jacket
 (c) A white shirt (d) A yellow cap

Ans :

(d) A yellow cap

- 33.** Who was actually wearing the cap on the bus?
 (a) A familiar friend
 (b) A complete stranger
 (c) A strict policeman
 (d) A young schoolboy

Ans :

(b) A complete stranger

- 34.** How did Grandpa trick Ravi?
 (a) He hid under a seat.
 (b) He jumped out fast.
 (c) He swapped his cap.
 (d) He ran away blindly.

Ans :

(c) He swapped his cap.

- 35.** Ravi was filled with _____ when he discovered the stranger wearing the cap.
 (a) absolute horror (b) immense relief
 (c) complete peace (d) extreme pride

Ans :

(a) absolute horror

- 36.** How did Ravi feel when he returned home?
 (a) Full of great energy
 (b) Sick with deep worry
 (c) Happy and very proud
 (d) Angry at his mother

Ans :

(b) Sick with deep worry

- 37.** Where did Ravi find Grandpa upon returning?
 (a) Sitting in the hall
 (b) Cooking in kitchen
 (c) Asleep in his bed
 (d) Watering the plants

Ans :

(c) Asleep in his bed

- 38.** What sound was Grandpa making in bed?
 (a) Snoring peacefully
 (b) Coughing very loudly

6. Write a short dialogue between Ravi and Grandpa after Ravi opens the gift-wrapped parcel and realizes he was tricked during the morning walk.

Ans :

Ravi: (Laughing as he looks at the book) A detective storybook? Very funny, Grandpa! You knew I was following you the whole time, didn't you?

Grandpa: (With a mischievous wink) Of course, Ravi! You crawling behind those elephant-shaped bushes wasn't exactly invisible to me.

Ravi: But how did you manage the yellow cap trick? I was absolutely horrified when I saw a stranger wearing it!

Grandpa: A good detective never reveals his best secrets! I just thought you needed some practical lessons on how to trail a suspect properly.

Ravi: I was sick with worry, Grandpa. But I'm so glad you're safe. Also, happy birthday! Mom totally forgot, didn't she?

Grandpa: Thank you, my boy. Yes, she did. Maybe she's the one who needs "Vitamin-M"!

7. Imagine you are Grandpa. Write a letter to an old friend in your village describing your new life in the city and your secret morning adventure.

Ans :

Dear Ashok,

I hope this letter finds you well. Life in the city is quite different. I deeply miss my small brick house and the comforting shade of our old mango tree. My daughter means well, but she treats me like a fragile prisoner, constantly worrying about my memory and feeding me "Vitamin-M."

However, I haven't lost my spark just yet! Today, I went for a morning stroll and treated myself to sugary tea, bananas, and even cold ice cream. My grandson, Ravi, tried to play detective and tail me. I taught him a practical lesson by swapping my yellow cap with a stranger on a bus! I arrived home long before he did. It feels wonderful to know I can still outwit the young ones.

Warmly,
Grandpa

8. Discuss the significance of "Vitamin-M" in the story. How does the author use irony to convey a powerful message about memory and aging?

Ans :

"Vitamin-M" or the "memory vitamin" serves as a central symbol of the mother's patronising attitude toward Grandpa's aging process. Because

of a few minor lapses, she treats him as cognitively impaired, enforcing strict regimens. The author brilliantly flips this narrative using situational irony. While Grandpa playfully outsmarts a teenage boy—proving his mind is as sharp and strategic as ever—it is the younger, supposedly capable mother who suffers a massive memory failure. She completely forgets her own father's birthday, a highly significant emotional milestone. This irony highlights that aging does not equate to complete incompetence, and sometimes, the younger generation's superficial, clinical care blinds them to what truly matters in a family.

What role do the banned snacks (sugary tea, bananas, and ice cream) play in the narrative? What do they symbolize for Grandpa?

Ans :

In the narrative, the banned snacks—sugary tea, large bananas, and cold ice cream—serve as powerful symbols of Grandpa's lost autonomy and his enduring zest for life. Under his daughter's roof, his diet is strictly monitored for health reasons, reducing his daily life to a series of restrictive, joyless rules. When Grandpa sneaks away to the roadside tea stall to indulge in these specific treats, he is not merely satisfying a physical hunger; he is staging a quiet, triumphant rebellion. These snacks symbolize his reclaiming of independence, joy, and the simple human right to make his own choices. It demonstrates that his spirit remains youthful and vibrant, refusing to be entirely subdued by age or strict parenting.

10. How does Grandpa's birthday tradition of gifting others reflect his values and impact his relationship with his family?

Ans :

Grandpa's tradition of giving gifts on his own birthday is a profound reflection of his generous, selfless nature. Instead of expecting to be pampered or celebrated, he finds immense joy in making his family—especially Ravi—feel special. This tradition starkly contrasts with his daughter's clinical, rule-based approach to his care. When he gifts Ravi the detective storybook, it serves multiple beautiful purposes: it playfully mocks Ravi's failed tracking mission, imparts a gentle life lesson, and reinforces a bond of friendship rather than authority between grandfather and grandson. Ultimately, this gesture highlights Grandpa's high emotional intelligence, showing that despite feeling like a prisoner, he continues

to answer for this section, but students should reflect on the child's sudden shift in priorities—from desperately wanting toys and sweets to only wanting the safety and comfort of his parents once he is lost—highlighting the intrinsic value of family over material desires.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Where did Grandpa recently move to?

- (a) A bustling city (b) A quiet village
- (c) A coastal town (d) A mountain peak

Ans :

- (a) A bustling city

2. Who does Grandpa live with in the city?

- (a) His closest friends
- (b) His elderly cousins
- (c) Daughter and grandson
- (d) Brother and his wife

Ans :

- (c) Daughter and grandson

3. What is the name of Grandpa's teenage grandson?

- (a) Amit (b) Ravi
- (c) Yash (d) Sonu

Ans :

- (b) Ravi

4. What specific structure did Grandpa miss from his hometown?

- (a) Tall glass tower (b) Wide wooden barn
- (c) Huge iron bridge (d) Small brick house

Ans :

- (d) Small brick house

5. What kind of tree did Grandpa miss the most?

- (a) Big mango tree (b) Tall apple tree
- (c) Old banyan tree (d) Wide guava tree

Ans :

- (a) Big mango tree

6. Why was living alone no longer considered safe for Grandpa?

- (a) He had slipped and fallen in his garden.
- (b) He had lost all his money in the market.
- (c) He had fought with his kind neighbours.

(d) He had broken the windows of his house.

Ans :

- (a) He had slipped and fallen in his garden.

7. Which incident showed Grandpa's failing memory?

- (a) Missing his daily walk
- (b) Taking a double dose
- (c) Losing his old glasses
- (d) Forgetting his grandson

Ans :

- (b) Taking a double dose

8. What else did Grandpa accidentally forget?

- (a) His own true name
- (b) His main phone code
- (c) His normal way home
- (d) His local bank card

Ans :

- (c) His normal way home

9. How did Ravi's mother speak to Grandpa?

- (a) In a soft and gentle voice
- (b) In a fast and hurried tone
- (c) In a rude and angry voice
- (d) In a loud, patronising tone

Ans :

- (d) In a loud, patronising tone

10. How did Grandpa feel about his daughter's overprotective rules?

- (a) Like a rich king (b) Like a prisoner
- (c) Like a young boy (d) Like a strict boss

Ans :

- (b) Like a prisoner

11. Why does Ravi feel guilty about how his mother treats the old man?

- (a) He realizes his mother is extremely polite but Grandpa is being deeply rude.
- (b) He notices that Grandpa is stealing food and his mother is entirely innocent.
- (c) He thinks his mother is spending far too much money on Grandpa's medical bills.
- (d) He sees that Grandpa feels like a prisoner due to her loud, patronising tone.

Ans :

- (d) He sees that Grandpa feels like a prisoner due to her loud, patronising tone.

move Karpov made when he played against the computer,” he would tell Ravi as he moved a piece, or, “You’re making the same mistake that Bobby Fischer made in his historic match against Spassky.””

- i. What does Grandpa’s specific chess commentary imply about him?
 - (a) He possesses a sharp, analytical memory.
 - (b) He strongly dislikes modern computer games.
 - (c) He prefers watching cricket on television.
 - (d) He feels insecure about his intelligence.
- ii. Which of the following best describes the paradox of Grandpa’s memory as it relates to the wider narrative context introduced here?
 - (a) He remembers global historical events but forgets to play chess.
 - (b) He recalls complex chess strategies but forgets recent, everyday things.
 - (c) He knows the names of all chess champions but forgets his grandson’s name.
 - (d) He remembers his days as a lawyer but forgets the rules of cricket.
- iii. How did Grandpa’s presence benefit Ravi’s chess game?
- iv. Identify the word from the extract that means “famous or important in history”.
- v. State whether True or False, with a 1-sentence reason:
Ravi disliked playing chess with his grandfather because he always lost.

Ans :

- i. (a) He possesses a sharp, analytical memory.
- ii. (b) He recalls complex chess strategies but forgets recent, everyday things.
- iii. Ravi’s chess skills improved greatly ever since Grandpa came to live with them.
- iv. historic
- v. False, because Ravi actively enjoyed the game and found that his own chess skills had improved greatly since Grandpa arrived.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Grandpa’s next stop was the tea stall, and this time Ravi took position behind a big banyan tree to watch him, feeling most embarrassed when the vendors sitting under the tree gave him quizzical looks.

“This area is booked by us,” said one lady who was selling plastic combs, in the same tone she might use were she asked to address a gathering

without being given a loudspeaker, “There’s no room for any new vendors.”

“Shhh, Don’t talk so loudly. Do I look as though I’m selling anything?” Ravi asked her.”

- i. Why did the vendors give Ravi “quizzical looks”?
 - (a) They thought he was trying to steal their goods.
 - (b) They were confused by his secretive hiding behavior.
 - (c) They recognized him as a local street troublemaker.
 - (d) They wanted him to purchase their plastic combs.
- ii. Which of the following best describes the comb seller’s perspective towards Ravi?
 - (a) She viewed him as a potential wealthy customer.
 - (b) She saw him as a rival street vendor trespassing.
 - (c) She considered him a dangerous corporate spy.
 - (d) She thought he was a lost and confused little boy.
- iii. Why was Ravi hiding behind the banyan tree?
- iv. Find the word in the extract that means “showing mild amusement and confusion”.
- v. Fill in the blank:
Ravi was hiding behind the _____ to secretly keep an eye on his grandfather without being noticed.

Ans :

- i. (b) They were confused by his secretive hiding behavior.
- ii. (b) She saw him as a rival street vendor trespassing.
- iii. Ravi was secretly keeping an eye on his grandfather without being noticed.
- iv. quizzical
- v. banyan tree

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“To his great delight and relief, the first thing he heard when he opened the front door was the gentle whirr of Grandpa snoring in his bedroom. He knelt down near the bed and put his cheek against the old man’s face. Grandpa’s wrinkled skin had more creases than lines on a map. Grandpa smelt of eucalyptus ointment and shaving cream. Ravi was suddenly overcome with

medals, she proves that para-athletes possess immense strength, skill, and competitive spirit. The Paralympics act as a global stage that shifts the world's focus from "disability" to "ability," proving that women and differently-abled individuals are just as capable of achieving greatness as anyone else.

Advocacy and Universal Life Lessons

Beyond her personal victories, Dr. Malik is a champion for others. She has worked with the government to create better sports policies for persons with disabilities. She also actively supports the emotional health of challenged individuals, empowers women through adventure sports, and provides equipment to athletes from poorer backgrounds.

The chapter leaves students with a powerful universal message: "Every setback is an opportunity to prove your strength." Dr. Malik's life teaches us to focus on our abilities rather than our disabilities. By involving the youth in these conversations, the chapter hopes to build a future society that is inclusive, empathetic, and treats everyone with equality and dignity.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Wondered – pondered, thought about
2. Incredible – unbelievable, amazing
3. Defy – resist, challenge, confront
4. Odds – difficulties, unfavorable conditions
5. Showcase – display, exhibit
6. Exceptional – outstanding, extraordinary
7. Global – worldwide, international
8. Thrilling – exciting, electrifying
9. Resilience – ability to recover quickly from difficult circumstances
10. Talent – natural aptitude, skill
11. Locomotor – related to bones, joints, or muscles
12. Sensory – relating to sensation, physical senses
13. Intellectual – mental, cognitive
14. Disabilities – impairments, physical or mental conditions
15. Quell – to overcome
16. Stereotypes – fixed general images, preconceived ideas
17. Redefine – change the meaning of, re-evaluate
18. Debut – first appearance, introduction
19. Clinched – secured, won, settled
20. Honour – respect, pride, prestige
21. Indelible – enduring or permanent
22. Innumerable – countless, numerous
23. Aspiring – hopeful, ambitious
24. Privilege – special advantage, honor
25. Opportunity – chance, favorable time
26. Inspirational – motivating, encouraging
27. Globally – worldwide, internationally
28. Brave – face courageously, endure
29. Awful – terrible, dreadful
30. Tragedy – disaster, misfortune
31. Diagnosed – identified a disease, medically detected
32. Tumour – abnormal tissue growth, lump
33. Underwent – experienced, went through
34. Misfortune – bad luck, hardship
35. Declared – announced, stated formally
36. Bound – tied, restricted, confined
37. Paralysed – unable to move, disabled
38. Squander – waste
39. Remorse – regret
40. Transform – change entirely, convert
41. Limitless – without end, infinite
42. Switch – change, shift
43. Breakthrough – major achievement, sudden progress
44. Secured – obtained, won, achieved
45. Hindsight – looking back, retrospect
46. Victory – success, triumph
47. Perceptions – views, ways of understanding
48. Trailblazer – pioneer or leader
49. Bestowed – presented as a gift, given
50. Coveted – strongly desired by many
51. Accomplishments – achievements, successes
52. Accolades – praise and honours
53. Showered – given abundantly, poured
54. Testimony – proof, evidence
55. Belief – strong opinion, faith
56. Limitations – restrictions, shortcomings
57. Potential – capability, hidden ability
58. Proponent – a person who speaks in support of a particular idea or action
59. Significant – important, major
60. Societal – relating to society, cultural
61. Underestimated – undervalued, thought too little of
62. Overcoming – defeating, conquering
63. Required – needed, demanded
64. Mental – relating to the mind, psychological
65. Embraced – accepted willingly, welcomed
66. Capabilities – abilities, potential
67. Coupled – combined, linked
68. Fortitude – strength to face adversity or difficulty
69. Obstacles – barriers, hurdles

CHAPTER 5

THE WORLD OF LIMITLESS POSSIBILITIES

1. INTRODUCTION

The chapter “The World of Limitless Possibilities” explores the extraordinary world of Indian para-sports by focusing on the real-life journeys of fiercely resilient athletes. It sets its engaging premise through the experiences of prominent figures like para-archer Sheetal Devi and renowned champion Dr. Deepa Malik. The narrative traces Dr. Malik’s profound life transition after a devastating spinal tumour left her completely paralyzed at the age of twenty-nine. Highlighting her drastic shift into the competitive sporting arena, the text outlines the severe physical constraints she faced and her subsequent historic athletic milestones on global platforms like the 2016 Rio Paralympic Games.

2. CHARACTERS

Dr. Deepa Malik

An inspirational Indian Paralympian who bravely overcame a spinal tumor. She is a determined trailblazer who champions disability rights, inclusivity, and the power of sports.

Interviewer

A curious and respectful person who asks Dr. Malik thoughtful questions. They help reveal her inspiring journey, struggles, and outstanding achievements to the readers.

3. SUMMARY

Introduction to a World of Courage

The chapter “The World of Limitless Possibilities” explores the inspiring world of para-sports and the extraordinary athletes who participate in the Paralympic Games. It introduces students to the idea that physical limitations cannot restrict human potential if one has strong willpower. The chapter opens with the powerful example of Sheetal Devi, an armless para-archer who won the Arjuna Award in 2024. By shooting arrows with incredible precision using her feet, she sets the

perfect tone for the chapter: with determination, anyone can overcome daunting obstacles and aim high.

The Inspiring Journey of Dr. Deepa Malik

The core of the chapter is based on an interview with Dr. Deepa Malik, a legendary Indian para-athlete. At the age of 29, Dr. Malik was diagnosed with a spinal tumour. After her surgery, she was left paralysed from the waist down and was told she would be bound to a wheelchair for the rest of her life.

Faced with this massive tragedy, she had two choices: to spend her life crying over her condition, or to transform her life into a “world of limitless possibilities.” Because she always loved sports and was a swimmer, she courageously chose the latter and switched to para-athletics. Her transformation is compared to a caterpillar turning into a beautiful butterfly, showing how she used her struggles to emerge stronger.

Breakthrough Achievements and Milestones

Dr. Malik’s hard work led to spectacular success. Her ultimate “breakthrough moment” came during the 2016 Rio Paralympic Games, where she won the silver medal in the shot-put event.

She holds many historic “firsts” for the country. She is the first-ever Indian female para-athlete to win an Asian Games medal in athletics, and India’s first-ever female Paralympic medallist across any sport. Because of her incredible success, she was named one of the top 10 most effective para-athletes by the International Paralympic Committee and was honoured with prestigious Indian awards, including the Padma Shri, Arjuna Award, and Major Dhyan Chand Khel Ratna.

Challenging Stereotypes and Changing Perceptions

A major theme of the chapter is how sports can change the way society looks at people with disabilities. Historically, society has often viewed disabled individuals as helpless. Dr. Malik’s achievements completely shatter this stereotype.

By competing at global levels and winning

II. Complete the table given below about Paralympics. Share your responses with your classmates and teacher.

What I know	What I want to know

Ans :

What I know	What I want to know
The Paralympics is an international multi-sport event for athletes with physical, intellectual, or sensory disabilities.	When and where were the first official Paralympic Games held?
They usually take place shortly after the Olympic Games in the same host city.	How do athletes qualify for the Paralympic Games, and what are the different disability categories?
Indian para-athletes have been performing exceptionally well and bringing home many medals in recent years.	What specialized equipment or rule modifications are made in different sports to accommodate the athletes?

Check Your Understanding

I. Fill in the fact table given below based on the interview with Dr. Deepa Malik. Discuss your answers with your classmates and teacher.

Fact Table

1.	diagnosed with spinal tumour at the age of	
2.	result of the surgery	
3.	named as one of the 10 most effective para-athletes by	
4.	first successful Paralympic event	
5.	list of 'firsts'	(i) (ii)

6.	awards won	(i) (ii) (iii)
7.	two things supported by her	(i) (ii)

Ans :

Fact Table

1.	diagnosed with spinal tumour at the age of	29
2.	result of the surgery	Paralysed waist down and bound to a wheelchair for the rest of her life.
3.	named as one of the 10 most effective para-athletes by	International Paralympic Committee
4.	first successful Paralympic event	2016 Rio Paralympic Games (secured the silver medal in the shot-put event)
5.	list of 'firsts'	(i) First ever Indian female para-athlete to win an Asian Games medal in athletics. (ii) India's first ever female Paralympics medallist across any sport.
6.	awards won	(i) Khel Ratna (ii) Arjuna (iii) Padma Shri
7.	two things supported by her	(i) Strengthening the emotional health of persons with challenges and empowering women through outdoor sports and adventure activities. (ii) Persons from lower socio-economic strata (providing equipment to para sportspersons).

**SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL**



70. Testament – proof
71. Determination – firmness of purpose, resolve
72. Contribute – give, add to
73. Impact – strong effect, influence
74. Attitudes – ways of thinking, viewpoints
75. Witness – see, observe
76. Competitive – ambitious, driven to win
77. Preconceived notions – opinions about something even before knowing the truth
78. Boundaries – limits, borders
79. Counterparts – equivalents, peers
80. Vocal – outspoken, expressive
81. Inclusivity – including everyone and their thoughts and treating them equally
82. Accessibility – reachability, ease of access
83. Advocating – supporting or suggesting an idea
84. Integral – essential, fundamental
85. Mission – goal, important assignment
86. Emotional – relating to feelings, psychological
87. Empowering – making stronger, giving power
88. Strata – levels, classes of society
89. Equipment – gear, tools, apparatus
90. Awareness – knowledge, consciousness
91. Dignity – self-respect, pride, honor
92. Succeed – achieve success, prosper
93. Setbacks – problems, delays, failures
94. Aspire – hope to achieve, aim
95. Surround – enclose, encircle
96. Inspire – motivate, encourage
97. Unique – one of a kind, distinct
98. Unleashed – release of something powerful that cannot be controlled
99. Insights – deep understandings, realizations
100. Undoubtedly – certainly, without a doubt

5. MESSAGE

The author gives an inspiring message that physical challenges cannot defeat a strong mind. Through the real-life stories of brave athletes like Sheetal Devi and Dr. Deepa Malik, the author shows that hard work and courage can change our lives. Even after facing complete paralysis, Dr. Malik achieved great success at the global level. The chapter teaches us to never give up, as strong willpower creates limitless possibilities.

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Reflect and Respond

- I. This is a picture of Sheetal Devi, a para-archer who was honoured with the Arjuna Award in January 2024.



1. Look at the picture carefully and share your observations with your classmates and teacher.

Ans :

In the picture, I observe a young female para-archer holding a bow using her feet. She appears highly focused, determined, and confident. There is an archery target in the background, and the Paralympic logo is visible on the sides, indicating she is competing at a high-level, international sporting event. She is wearing a specialized chest guard, and her technique is incredibly unique as she uses her legs and upper body strength to draw the bowstring.

2. Does this personality inspire you? Explain how.

Ans :

Yes, this personality is deeply inspiring. Despite lacking arms, she has not allowed her physical condition to become a limitation. Her ability to shoot an arrow with incredible precision using her feet demonstrates immense dedication, resilience, and countless hours of rigorous practice. She exemplifies the fact that with a strong willpower and a positive mindset, one can overcome even the most daunting obstacles and achieve greatness.

3. Give a caption for this picture.

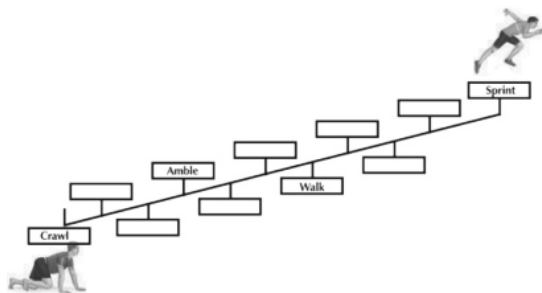
Ans :

“Aiming High : The Triumph of Willpower”

- Adopting a rescue dog gave my lonely grandfather a **new lease of life**.
- In hindsight**, I realize I should have started preparing for my final exams much earlier.
- The scientist's **breakthrough moment** came when she finally found the correct chemical formula after years of research.
- With her hard work and positive attitude, she managed to **turn obstacles into stepping stones** towards ultimate success.

II. A common word used in athletics is 'sprinting' which relates to movement. Read the words related to movement given in the box below. Arrange them on the word cline in increasing order of pace from the slowest to the fastest. Some examples have been done for you.

crawl	amble	walk	jog
saunter	dart	sprint	stroll
run	plod	creep	



Ans :

Arranged in increasing order of pace from slowest to fastest:

- creep
- crawl
- plod
- amble
- stroll
- saunter
- walk
- jog
- run
- dart
- sprint

III. Match the highlighted verbs in Column 1 with their functions in Column 2. There are two extra functions that you do not need.

Column 1	Column 2
1. I could hear the audience clapping.	(i) promise
2. It couldn't be helped.	(ii) possibility
3. I should give it my best shot.	(iii) prediction
4. I knew if I tried, I would win.	(iv) obligation
	(v) past ability
	(vi) impossibility

The verbs in bold are called modal auxiliaries. Each of these modal verbs can perform various functions based on the situation in which they are used.

Ans :

Column 1	Column 2
1. I could hear the audience clapping.	(v) past ability
2. It couldn't be helped.	(vi) impossibility
3. I should give it my best shot.	(iv) obligation
4. I knew if I tried, I would win.	(iii) prediction

IV. Read the table which shows other functions of the modal auxiliaries.

Modal Verbs	Functions
1. could	(i) possibility
	(ii) unreal ability
	(iii) request
	(iv) inability
2. couldn't	(i) probability
	(ii) advice
3. should	(i) request
4. would	(ii) past habit

Now, make sentences with the modal verbs given in the table above with each function of the modal verbs. Mention the function in brackets.-

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



II. Read the two sets of sentences given below.

Choose whether the given statements display:
fact-opinion or cause-effect.

(1)

- i. In the 2016 Rio Paralympic Games, I secured the silver medal in the shot-put event.
- ii. I feel it was a moment of personal victory and a step forward in changing perceptions.

(2)

- i. I was diagnosed with a tumour in my spine.
- ii. I had a surgery and was told that I would be bound to a wheelchair for the rest of my life.

Ans :

(1)

- i. is a verifiable fact, while sentence
- ii. is the speaker's personal feeling and opinion.

(2)

- i. She said that she had been diagnosed with a tumour in her spine.
- ii. She added that she had undergone surgery and had been told that she would be bound to a wheelchair for the rest of her life.

III. Work in pairs to identify which of these pairs of sentences show :

1. cause-effect
2. fact-opinion

Write 1 or 2 in the boxes given.

- i. Dr. Deepa Malik was a member of the Working Group for the Formulation of Twelfth Five Year Plan (2012–17).
It is believed that she contributed greatly to create better sports policies for the persons with disabilities. ☐
- ii. Paralympics showcases incredible talent and determination of para-athletes.
The global perception on disabilities shifts, inspiring para-athletes to pursue their dreams. ☐

Ans :

- i. 2 (Fact–Opinion)
 - First sentence
Fact (her position is real and verifiable)
 - Second sentence
Opinion (“it is believed...” shows opinion)
- ii. 1 (Cause–Effect)
 - First sentence
Cause (Paralympics showcases talent)
 - Second sentence
Effect (changes perception and inspires athletes)

Critical Reflection**I. Read the extracts given below and answer the questions that follow.**

1. I had two choices—squander my life in remorse or transform it to a world of limitless possibilities. I love sports and had been a swimmer too, so I decided to switch to para-athletics. This is how my Paralympics journey began. My breakthrough moment came in the 2016 Rio Paralympic Games, when I secured the silver medal in the shot-put event. In hindsight, I feel it was a moment of personal victory and a step forward in changing perceptions.

- i. Give a reason for the following statement.
The speaker's decision to transform her life can be likened to the concept of a caterpillar transforming into a butterfly.
- ii. Why could the speaker switch to para-athletics quite comfortably?
- iii. Complete the sentence with an appropriate reason.
The speaker calls 2016 Rio Paralympic Games as a 'breakthrough moment' because ____.
- iv. Select the correct option to complete the sentence.
The phrase 'in hindsight' indicates the speaker is _____.
A. curious B. reflective
C. determined D. courageous
- v. The speaker uses the phrase 'changing perceptions'. List one likely perception the speaker might have changed.

Ans :

- i. Just as a caterpillar undergoes a difficult, restrictive phase in a cocoon to transform into a beautiful, capable butterfly, the speaker went through a traumatic, life-altering struggle with paralysis but used sports to transform her life's trajectory, emerging stronger and breaking boundaries to experience “limitless possibilities.”
- ii. The speaker could switch to para-athletics quite comfortably because she already loved sports and had been a swimmer prior to her medical tragedy. Her pre-existing athletic foundation and competitive mindset made the transition to para-sports much smoother.
- iii. The speaker calls 2016 Rio Paralympic Games as a 'breakthrough moment' because 'it was

affection for his grandfather and gave him a hug, but Grandpa only grunted in his sleep. He decided not to question Grandpa because then he would have to reveal that he had been following him."

- i. What realization primarily causes Ravi to be "overcome with affection"?
 - (a) The realization of his grandfather's immense wealth.
 - (b) The sudden guilt of leaving him in the city market.
 - (c) The profound relief of finding him safe and sound.
 - (d) The fear of being scolded by his angry parents.
- ii. **Assertion (A):** Ravi chose not to ask his grandfather about his day.
Reason (R): Ravi did not want to confess that he had been secretly spying on him.
 - (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true but R is NOT the correct explanation of A.
 - (c) A is true but R is false.
 - (d) A is false but R is true.
- iii. What did the phrase "more creases than lines on a map" tell us about Grandpa?
- iv. Identify the word from the extract that means "a low, short, guttural sound".
- v. Fill in the blank:
The comforting smell of _____ convinced Ravi that his grandfather was resting normally.

Ans :

- i. (c) The profound relief of finding him safe and sound.
- ii. (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- iii. The phrase "more creases than lines on a map" tells us that Grandpa's skin was deeply wrinkled, reflecting his old age.
- iv. grunted
- v. eucalyptus ointment and shaving cream

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Grandpa turned to Ravi's father who had just walked into the room, "My daughter needs some Vitamin-M, I think—for her memory." Ravi's mother flushed a darker shade of red and Ravi's father looked confused.

Ravi unwrapped his gift to find a thick, hardcover book, The Best Detective Stories.

"Great stories, Ravi. You can pick up some really good tips on how to be a detective. How to avoid getting fooled when one is trailing a suspect, for instance," Grandpa said solemnly."

- i. Why did Ravi's mother flush a "darker shade of red"?
 - (a) She was extremely angry at Grandpa's blatant sarcasm.
 - (b) She was deeply embarrassed for forgetting his birthday.
 - (c) She was annoyed by the detective book given to Ravi.
 - (d) She felt physically feverish after returning from work.
- ii. Choose the option that best explains Grandpa's true intention behind gifting Ravi the detective book.
 - (a) He wanted to improve Ravi's reading habits significantly.
 - (b) He wished to subtly mock Ravi's failed spying attempt.
 - (c) He planned to turn Ravi into a professional policeman.
 - (d) He hoped Ravi would read the book instead of playing chess.
- iii. What does Grandpa's gift of the detective book reveal about him?
- iv. Identify the word from the extract that means "secretly following someone".
- v. State whether True or False with a 1-sentence reason:
Grandpa was completely unaware that Ravi had followed him around the city that day.

Ans :

- i. (b) She was deeply embarrassed for forgetting his birthday.
- ii. (b) He wished to subtly mock Ravi's failed spying attempt.
- iii. Grandpa's gift reveals that Grandpa was sharp and witty, as he had noticed Ravi following him and cleverly hinted at it through the gift.
- iv. trailing
- v. False, because he gave Ravi a detective book with a pointed comment about "trailing a suspect," proving he knew he was being followed.



unexpected tragedies. Instead of viewing a setback as the end of the road, one can treat it as a test of resilience. Overcoming difficulties builds mental fortitude and character. Viewing obstacles as opportunities helps all individuals turn failures into stepping stones for future success.

5. Examine how Dr. Deepa Malik's recognition as one of the 10 most inspirational para-athletes globally contributes to the larger discourse on gender equality in sports.

Ans :

Dr. Deepa Malik's global recognition strongly champions both disability rights and gender equality. Historically, sports have been male-dominated, and para-sports even more so. By excelling in this arena and earning a spot among the top 10 most inspirational para-athletes globally, she serves as a trailblazer. Her success highlights that women, even those facing severe physical challenges, possess the same competitive drive and potential as men, thereby advocating for equal opportunities and support for female athletes worldwide.

6. How might Dr. Deepa Malik's thought, 'ability beyond disability', serve as a guideline for success for all future para-athletes?

Ans :

The thought "ability beyond disability" encourages future para-athletes to focus intensely on what they **can** do rather than what they **cannot**. It shifts the narrative from seeking sympathy to showcasing strength, skill, and determination. By adopting this mindset, future athletes can overcome societal stereotypes and their own mental barriers, reminding them that their potential is defined by hard work and talent, not by physical constraints.

7. What have you learnt from this interview, and how can you implement these learnings in your life?

Ans :

From this interview, I have learnt the crucial importance of resilience, a positive mindset, and the power of focusing on one's abilities. I learnt that true strength lies in turning obstacles into stepping stones. I can implement these learnings by not giving up when I face academic or personal setbacks. Instead of complaining, I will focus on finding solutions, working hard, and maintaining a positive attitude to reach my goals. Furthermore, I will actively advocate for inclusivity in my

community.

Vocabulary and Structures in Context

- I. Work in pairs. Match the given phrases in Column 1 with their meanings in Column 2. Use the phrases in sentences of your own.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	defy the odds	(i)	a time of significant development or discovery
2.	a new lease of life	(ii)	overcome challenges and achieve goals
3.	in hindsight	(iii)	succeed in doing something when most people think it would result in failure
4.	breakthrough moment	(iv)	ability to understand something after it has happened
5.	turn obstacles into stepping stones	(v)	an occasion when you become more energetic and active than earlier

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	defy the odds	(iii)	succeed in doing something when most people think it would result in failure
2.	a new lease of life	(v)	an occasion when you become more energetic and active than earlier
3.	in hindsight	(iv)	ability to understand something after it has happened
4.	breakthrough moment	(i)	a time of significant development or discovery
5.	turn obstacles into stepping stones	(ii)	overcome challenges and achieve goals

Sentences :

1. Despite being severely injured early in the season, the team managed to **defy the odds** and win the championship.

the event where she secured the silver medal in shot-put, marking a massive personal victory and establishing her globally.'

- iv. B. reflective
 - v. She likely changed the societal perception that people with severe physical disabilities or those who are wheelchair-bound are helpless or incapable of achieving athletic excellence and competing on a global stage.
2. Honestly, I feel sports, especially Paralympics, have the extraordinary ability to challenge stereotypes and change attitudes towards disability. When people witness the strength, skill, and competitive spirit of para-athletes, it breaks down preconceived notions. Paralympics has given me a new lease of life and helped me push boundaries.
- i. Choose the option that lists the words to describe the tone of the speaker.
 - A. appreciative
 - B. moralistic
 - C. sentimental
 - D. optimistic
 - E. defensive

(a) A and D (b) B, D, and E
(c) B and C (d) A, C, and E
 - ii. Complete the analogy given below with a word from the extract.
ability : potential :: preconceived notions: _ _ _ _
 - iii. State whether the following sentence is true or false.
Paralympics is a platform that not only showcases the remarkable abilities of para-athletes but also questions stereotypes.
 - iv. What does 'helped me push boundaries' tell us about the speaker?
 - v. Which phrase from the extract suggests that the speaker was able to transform her life?

Ans :

- i. (a) A and D
- ii. stereotypes
- iii. True
- iv. It tells us that the speaker is highly determined and resilient. Instead of accepting the physical and societal limits placed upon her by her disability, she actively challenged them and achieved extraordinary things far beyond what was conventionally expected.

- v. The phrase is: "given me a new lease of life".

II. Answer the following questions.

Explain how Dr. Malik's achievements challenge societal perceptions.

Ans :

Dr. Malik's achievements dismantle the deep-rooted societal perception that physical disability equates to inability. By winning coveted medals at the highest international levels, such as the Asian Games and the Paralympics, she proved that individuals with disabilities possess immense physical strength, skill, and a fierce competitive spirit. Her success forces society to look at "ability beyond disability" rather than focusing on limitations.

2. What can be the long-term impact of involving youth in schools and colleges in advocacy with respect to disability?

Ans :

Involving youth in disability advocacy helps create a more inclusive and empathetic generation. Since the youth are the "voice of tomorrow," educating them early breaks down preconceived notions before they become deeply ingrained. In the long term, this leads to a society that naturally builds inclusive infrastructure, implements fair policies, and treats everyone with dignity and equality.

3. Rationalise the appropriateness of the title of this text with reference to Dr. Deepa Malik's attitude and achievements.

Ans :

The title "The World of Limitless Possibilities" is highly appropriate because it mirrors Dr. Deepa Malik's life philosophy. Faced with a paralysing spine tumour at 29, she refused to squander her life in remorse. Instead, she viewed her setbacks as stepping stones. Her unprecedented achievements—like being India's first female Paralympic medallist—demonstrate that when one shifts their focus from physical limitations to inner potential, the possibilities for success are truly limitless.

4. "Every setback is an opportunity to prove your strength". How might this be a life lesson for every individual, and not just sportspersons?

Ans :

This quote serves as a universal life lesson because every person, regardless of their profession or background, faces challenges, failures, and

Ans :

- could
It **could** rain later in the evening, so take an umbrella. (possibility)
I am so exhausted that I **could** sleep for a whole week. (unreal ability)
Could you please pass me the textbook? (request)
We **could** go to the museum this weekend if you are free. (suggestion)
- couldn't
He **couldn't** lift the heavy box by himself no matter how hard he tried. (inability)
- should
They left an hour ago, so they **should** be arriving any minute now. (probability)
You **should** drink plenty of water to stay hydrated during the summer. (advice)
- would
Would you mind opening the window for some fresh air? (request)
When we were children, we **would** play hide and seek every evening in the park. (past habit)

V. Read the following sentences.

- Interviewer :** You've been listed as one of the 10 most inspirational women para-athletes globally by the International Paralympic Committee.
- Malik :** I love sports and had been a swimmer too, so I decided to switch to para-athletics.

The sentences given above are in _____. (Direct Speech/Reported Speech)

The sentences given above are _____ sentences. (declarative/interrogative/exclamatory/imperative)

Now, work in pairs. Observe the changes from Column 1 to Column 2. Note these changes in Column 3. One example has been done for you.

Column 1 Direct Speech	Column 2 Reported Speech	Column 3 Changes Noted
Interviewer : You've been listed as one of the ten most inspirational women para-athletes globally by the International Paralympic Committee.	The interviewer said that she had been listed as one of the 10 most inspirational women para-athletes globally by the International Paralympic Committee.	1. 'said' added 2. that—linking word added 3. have been → had been 4. you → she

Dr. Malik : I love sports and had been a swimmer too, and so I decided to switch to para-athletics.	Dr. Malik said that she loved sports and had been a swimmer too, and so she had decided to switch to para-athletics.	1. 2. 3. I → she 4. 5. 6. decided → had decided	
Interviewer : Your story is indeed a testament to the power of determination	The interviewer said that her story was indeed a testament to the power of determination.	1. 2. 3. 4.	
Dr. Malik : I believe youth is the voice of tomorrow.	Dr. Malik says that she believes youth is the voice of tomorrow.	1. 2.	

Steps to Remember
Use reporting verbs said, told, or says
Remove quotation marks.
Add linking word 'that' after the reporting verb

Ans :

- Dr. Malik :** I love sports and had been a swimmer too...
Changes Noted :
1. 'said that' added
2. Remove quotation marks
3. I → she
4. love → loved
5. had been → had been (**no change**)
6. decided → had decided
- Interviewer :** Your story is indeed a testament...
Changes Noted :
1. 'said that' added
2. your → her
3. is → was
4. Remove quotation marks
- Dr. Malik :** I believe youth is the voice of tomorrow.
Changes Noted :
1. I → she
2. believe → believes (or believed, depending on tense consistency)

undeniably that differently-abled people possess immense competitive spirit, fierce independence, and extraordinary physical capabilities.

11. How does the Paralympic stage fundamentally shift global perspectives on differently-abled individuals?

Ans :

The Paralympics acts as a massive global stage that dramatically shifts the world's focus away from a person's disability. Instead, it powerfully highlights their extraordinary athletic ability, fierce determination, and resilience, forcing society to recognize their true, unlimited potential.

12. How has Dr. Deepa Malik utilized her platform to assist the government in improving sports in India?

Ans :

Utilizing her influential status as a legendary athlete, Dr. Deepa Malik works closely alongside the government. She actively participates in shaping and creating better, more inclusive sports policies that significantly benefit and support differently-abled athletes across the entire nation.

13. Mention the specific ways in which Dr. Malik works to uplift and empower women in society.

Ans :

Dr. Malik acts as a powerful champion for women's empowerment by actively encouraging their participation in adventure sports. She breaks traditional gender and disability barriers, inspiring women to embrace thrilling challenges, build self-confidence, and reclaim their absolute independence in society.

14. How does Dr. Malik extend her support to budding athletes coming from underprivileged backgrounds?

Ans :

Recognizing the financial hurdles many disabled athletes face, Dr. Malik actively supports grassroots talents coming from much poorer backgrounds. She generously provides them with essential sporting equipment, ensuring that financial constraints do not crush their dreams of achieving athletic glory.

15. Why does Dr. Deepa Malik place a strong emphasis on advocating for emotional health alongside physical sports?

Ans :

Dr. Malik strongly advocates for emotional health

because coping with a severe disability requires immense mental fortitude. She understands that physical training alone is insufficient; maintaining a positive, resilient psychological state is absolutely vital to overcome life's darkest, most challenging moments.

16. Interpret the quote: "Every setback is an opportunity to prove your strength," in the context of Deepa Malik's life.

Ans :

This profound quote perfectly encapsulates Deepa's journey. Instead of letting a tragic spinal tumour destroy her life, she utilized that immense setback as fuel. Her paralysis became the exact foundation upon which she built an extraordinary, world-record-breaking athletic legacy.

17. According to the chapter, why is it essential for society to focus on a person's abilities rather than their disabilities?

Ans :

The chapter asserts that focusing on disabilities breeds unnecessary pity and limits human potential. Conversely, focusing entirely on abilities fosters empowerment, encourages independence, and allows society to witness the remarkable achievements and limitless possibilities that differently-abled individuals can truly offer.

18. Why does the chapter specifically aim to involve the youth in conversations about inclusivity and para-sports?

Ans :

The chapter specifically targets the youth to foster early awareness and open conversations. By educating younger generations, the text hopes to dismantle long-standing prejudices, ensuring tomorrow's leaders naturally cultivate a mindset of genuine acceptance, respect, and proactive inclusion for everyone.

19. What are the key characteristics of the ideal future society envisioned at the conclusion of the chapter?

Ans :

The conclusion beautifully envisions a deeply inclusive and profoundly empathetic future society. It dreams of a world completely devoid of prejudice, where every single individual, regardless of their physical limitations, is treated with absolute equality, unwavering dignity, and profound respect.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

Tell me about yourself and your love for sports.	Could you tell me how your journey in sports began?
Did you face any challenges? How did you deal with them?	Could you share something about the challenges you faced and how you overcame them?
What are some impressive achievements you've had? How do you feel about them?	You've received many accolades. What do these accomplishments mean to you?
What would you like to say to your peers or juniors who are interested in sports?	What advice do you have for aspiring athletes?

Ans :

Sample Dialogue for Informal Interview (with Sports Captain) :

Interviewer : Hello! I'm so glad that you agreed to meet me for this interview.

Sports Captain : Hi! No problem at all, I'm happy to chat.

Interviewer : Tell me about yourself and your love for sports.

Sports Captain : Well, I've been playing football since I was five. I just love the energy on the field and the incredible bond I share with my teammates.

Interviewer : Did you face any challenges? How did you deal with them?

Sports Captain : Yeah, I had a bad knee injury last year. It was tough, but I did a lot of physiotherapy and stayed focused on my goal to return to the field.

Interviewer : What are some impressive achievements you've had? How do you feel about them?

Sports Captain : Winning the state-level championship last month was huge. I feel incredibly proud because our team worked really hard for it.

Interviewer : What would you like to say to your peers or juniors who are interested in sports?

Sports Captain : Just keep practicing and don't give up when things get hard. Passion and consistency are the keys to success!

Sample Dialogue for Formal Interview (with Sports Coach) :

Interviewer : Good morning, it is my privilege

to get this opportunity to have this interaction with you.

Sports Coach : Good morning. Thank you, it is a pleasure to be here.

Interviewer : Could you tell me how your journey in sports began?

Sports Coach : Certainly. I started as a track and field athlete in college. Over time, my passion for the technical aspects of the games and mentoring youth led me to pursue a career in coaching.

Interviewer : Could you share something about the challenges you faced and how you overcame them?

Sports Coach : One major challenge was transitioning from a player to a mentor. I overcame it by observing senior coaches, attending training seminars, and learning to understand player psychology.

Interviewer : You've received many accolades. What do these accomplishments mean to you?

Sports Coach : I am humbled by them. These accolades are a testimony to the hard work of the athletes I coach; their success is my true reward.

Interviewer : What advice do you have for aspiring athletes?

Sports Coach : I would advise them to remain disciplined. Talent is important, but dedication, hard work, and a willingness to learn from failures are what build a lasting and successful career.

Writing Task

I. Read the details about a notice in the table given below.

What is a notice?	A notice is generally written to convey some information to students, or a specific group of people.
A notice tells us about...	An event, a celebration, a competition, important information, lost/found article
Format of a notice	Name of Organisation NOTICE Date Heading Details..... Signature Name Designation

NODIA

11. At what age was Dr. Deepa Malik diagnosed with a tumour?

- (a) Twenty-five (b) Twenty-nine
(c) Twenty-seven (d) Thirty-one

Ans :

(b) Twenty-nine

12. What specific type of tumour was Dr. Malik diagnosed with?

- (a) Brain tumour (b) Lung tumour
(c) Spinal tumour (d) Bone tumour

Ans :

(c) Spinal tumour

13. After surgery, she was paralyzed from the _____ down.

- (a) Neck (b) Chest
(c) Waist (d) Knees

Ans :

(c) Waist

14. Which of the following statements are correct about Dr. Malik?

- I. She was diagnosed with a tumour at 29.
II. She was paralyzed from the neck down.
(a) Neither statement is correct.
(b) Only statement I is correct.
(c) Both statements are correct.
(d) Only statement II is correct.

Ans :

(b) Only statement I is correct.

15. What was she told she would be bound to for life?

- (a) A walker (b) A wheelchair
(c) Crutches (d) A bed

Ans :

(b) A wheelchair

16. Faced with massive tragedy, what were Dr. Malik's two choices?

- (a) Cry over it or create limitless possibilities.
(b) Seek medical help or completely give up.
(c) Change her career or retire from sports.
(d) Write a book or give motivational speeches.

Ans :

(a) Cry over it or create limitless possibilities.

17. What did Dr. Malik always have a love for?

- (a) Sports (b) Music

- (c) Writing (d) Acting

Ans :

(a) Sports

18. Before her diagnosis, Dr. Malik was a _____.

- (a) Runner (b) Swimmer
(c) Boxer (d) Gymnast

Ans :

(b) Swimmer

19. Which sporting field did she courageously switch to?

- (a) Para-archery (b) Para-athletics
(c) Para-shooting (d) Para-fencing

Ans :

(b) Para-athletics

20. Her amazing transformation is compared to a _____.

- (a) Bird flying (b) Flower blooming
(c) River flowing (d) Butterfly emerging

Ans :

(d) Butterfly emerging

21. **Assertion (A):** Dr. Malik emerged much stronger.
Reason (R): She used her personal struggles to transform.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true.
(b) Both assertion and reason are false.
(c) Assertion is true, reason is false.
(d) Assertion is false, reason is true.

Ans :

(a) Both assertion and reason are true.

22. In which year did her ultimate breakthrough moment happen?

- (a) 2012 (b) 2024
(c) 2016 (d) 2020

Ans :

(c) 2016

23. At which Paralympic Games did this breakthrough occur?

- (a) Tokyo (b) Beijing
(c) London (d) Rio

Ans :

(d) Rio

24. Which medal did she win at these Paralympic Games?

- Held after the Olympic Games in the same host city.

Slide 4 : Deepa Malik

- First Indian woman Paralympic medallist.
- Won silver medal in shot put at Rio Paralympics 2016.
- Also a motivational speaker and social worker.

Slide 5 : Devendra Jhajharia

- First Indian Paralympian to win two gold medals.
- Won gold in javelin throw in 2004 and 2016.
- Received Padma Shri and Khel Ratna awards.

Slide 6 : Their Achievements

- Both athletes have brought pride to India.
- They have inspired many people with disabilities.

Slide 7 : Conclusion

- Paralympians prove that determination leads to success.
- They motivate us to overcome challenges and achieve our goals.

Ans :

(c) 2024

5. Sheetal shoots arrows with incredible precision using her _____.

- (a) Hands (b) Mouth
(c) Knees (d) Feet

Ans :

(d) Feet

6. Sheetal's inspiring story sets the _____ of the chapter.

- (a) Ending (b) Tone
(c) Climax (d) Pace

Ans :

(b) Tone

Assertion (A): Sheetal Devi shoots arrows with precision.

Reason (R): She uses her highly trained hands.

- (a) Both A and R are fully true.
(b) Both A and R are quite false.
(c) A is true but R is false.
(d) A is false but R is true.

Ans :

(c) A is true but R is false.

8. What is the primary message conveyed by Sheetal Devi's example?

- (a) Archery is the best sport to learn.
(b) Awards are the only measure of success.
(c) Only physical strength ensures victory.
(d) Determination helps overcome obstacles.

Ans :

(d) Determination helps overcome obstacles.

9. The core of the chapter is based on an interview with _____.

- (a) Sheetal Devi (b) Deepa Malik
(c) PT Usha (d) Mary Kom

Ans :

(b) Deepa Malik

10. Dr. Deepa Malik is described as a legendary Indian _____.

- (a) Para-athlete (b) Para-archer
(c) Para-cyclist (d) Para-shooter

Ans :

(a) Para-athlete

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. According to the text, what can overcome physical limitations?
- (a) Good luck (b) Strong willpower
(c) Outside support (d) Physical wealth

Ans :

(b) Strong willpower

2. Who is Sheetal Devi introduced as in the chapter?
- (a) Para-archer (b) Para-swimmer
(c) Para-shooter (d) Para-runner

Ans :

(a) Para-archer

3. Which prestigious award did Sheetal Devi win?
- (a) Padma Shri (b) Bharat Ratna
(c) Khel Ratna (d) Arjuna Award

Ans :

(d) Arjuna Award

4. Sheetal Devi won her prestigious award in the year _____.
- (a) 2021 (b) 2022
(c) 2024 (d) 2023

37. Assertion (A): Women and differently-abled individuals are highly capable.

Reason (R): They have achieved greatness on global stages.

- (a) Both statements are factually correct.
- (b) Both statements are entirely incorrect.
- (c) The first is correct, the second is wrong.
- (d) The first is wrong, the second is correct.

Ans :

- (a) Both statements are factually correct.

38. Beyond her personal victories, Dr. Malik is a _____ for others.

- (a) Critic
- (b) Threat
- (c) Burden
- (d) Champion

Ans :

- (d) Champion

39. Who does Dr. Malik work with to create better sports policies?

- (a) The government
- (b) The schools
- (c) The hospitals
- (d) The military

Ans :

- (a) The government

40. Which statements are correct regarding her advocacy work?

- I. She supports emotional health.
- II. She empowers women through sports.

- (a) Statement I is uniquely true.
- (b) Statement II is uniquely true.
- (c) Statements I and II are true.
- (d) Statements I and II are false.

Ans :

- (c) Statements I and II are true.

41. She is known to empower women through _____ sports.

- (a) Through cooking
- (b) Through knitting
- (c) Through painting
- (d) Through adventure

Ans :

- (d) Through adventure

42. She provides equipment to athletes from _____ backgrounds.

- (a) Poorer
- (b) Wealthy
- (c) Foreign
- (d) Medical

Ans :

- (a) Poorer

43. A powerful message is: "Every setback is an opportunity to prove your _____."

- (a) Weakness
- (b) Wealth
- (c) Strength
- (d) Anger

Ans :

- (c) Strength

44. What universal life lesson does Dr. Malik's life primarily teach us?

- (a) To constantly complain about life.
- (b) To focus heavily on disabilities.
- (c) To focus entirely on our abilities.
- (d) To depend on others for survival.

Ans :

- (c) To focus entirely on our abilities.

45. Who does the chapter hope to heavily involve in these important conversations?

- (a) The elderly
- (b) The doctors
- (c) The toddlers
- (d) The youth

Ans :

- (d) The youth

46. What kind of future society does the chapter hope to build?

- (a) One that is heavily divided and angry.
- (b) One that ignores the disabled people.
- (c) One that only values the rich people.
- (d) One that is inclusive and empathetic.

Ans :

- (d) One that is inclusive and empathetic.

47. The chapter aims to build a society that treats everyone with equality and _____.

- (a) Pity
- (b) Disdain
- (c) Dignity
- (d) Sympathy

Ans :

- (c) Dignity

48. The central theme of this chapter's summary is:

- (a) Overcoming challenges
- (b) Avoiding difficulties
- (c) Medical treatments
- (d) Financial success

Ans :

- (a) Overcoming challenges

- (a) Gold medal (b) Silver medal
(c) Bronze medal (d) Copper medal

Ans :

(b) Silver medal

25. In which event did she win this Paralympic medal?

- (a) Long jump (b) Shot-put
(c) High jump (d) Javelin

Ans :

(b) Shot-put

26. Which of the following statements is correct regarding Dr. Malik's Asian Games record?

- (a) She was the youngest female para-athlete.
(b) She was the last female para-athlete.
(c) She was the only female para-athlete.
(d) She was the first female para-athlete.

Ans :

(d) She was the first female para-athlete.

27. She is India's first female Paralympic medallist across _____.

- (a) One sport (b) Two sports
(c) Any sport (d) All sports

Ans :

(c) Any sport

28. She was named among the top 10 most _____ para-athletes.

- (a) Wealthy (b) Powerful
(c) Effective (d) Popular

Ans :

(c) Effective

29. Who named her among these top 10 para-athletes?

- (a) National Olympic Committee
(b) Asian Paralympic Committee
(c) Indian Sports Committee
(d) International Paralympic Committee

Ans :

(d) International Paralympic Committee

30. Which of the following prestigious Indian awards did she receive?

- (a) Padma Vibhushan (b) Padma Shri
(c) Padma Bhushan (d) Bharat Ratna

Ans :

(b) Padma Shri

31. Another prominent award Dr. Malik received is the _____.

- (a) Khel Ratna Award
(b) Dronacharya Award
(c) Sahitya Akademi
(d) Ashoka Chakra

Ans :

(a) Khel Ratna Award

32. How has society historically viewed disabled individuals?

- (a) As extremely powerful people.
(b) As very successful individuals.
(c) As highly competitive people.
(d) As completely helpless people.

Ans :

(d) As completely helpless people.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

33. What completely shatters the stereotype of disabled people being helpless?

- (a) Dr. Malik's speech
(b) Dr. Malik's medals
(c) Dr. Malik's writing
(d) Dr. Malik's doctors

Ans :

(b) Dr. Malik's medals

34. By competing at global levels, para-athletes prove they possess immense _____.

- (a) Financial wealth (b) Media attention
(c) Competitive spirit (d) Political power

Ans :

(c) Competitive spirit

35. The Paralympics acts as a global _____.

- (a) Stage (b) Market
(c) Theatre (d) Office

Ans :

(a) Stage

36. The Paralympics shifts the world's focus from disability to _____.

- (a) Weakness (b) Ability
(c) Sympathy (d) Charity

Ans :

(b) Ability

VI. Read the conversation given below.

Siya : I watched a documentary on the para equestrian event on television last night.

Tarun : I didn't know paralympics has equestrian events.



Siya : It does. It was so interesting to watch.

Tarun : That's wonderful. So, para equestrians must be training for months for this.

Siya : They also have to find and develop their own style of communication with their horse.

Tarun : I will watch this documentary the next weekend.

Change the conversation given above to reported speech. Siya said that she 1. _____. Tarun replied that he hadn't known that Paralympics had equestrian events. Siya added that 2. _____. Tarun remarked that it was wonderful and that para equestrians must be training for months for that. Siya replied that 3. _____. Tarun said that 4. _____.

Ans :

Siya said that she 1. **had watched a documentary on the para equestrian event on television the previous night.** Tarun replied that he hadn't known that Paralympics had equestrian events. Siya added that 2. **it did, and that it had been so interesting to watch.** Tarun remarked that it was wonderful and that para equestrians must be training for months for that. Siya replied that 3. **they also had to find and develop their own style of communication with their horse.** Tarun said that 4. **he would watch that documentary the following weekend.**

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

Listen and Respond

I. You will listen to an announcement for special assembly in school. As you listen, fill in the blanks with one or two exact words. (Transcript for teacher on page 268)

- The venue for the special assembly is the _____.
- A presentation on inclusion will be made by the _____.
- The dance performance will focus on the themes of _____ and _____.
- A _____ will be conducted by experts who support inclusion.
- The celebration will end with a _____ to encourage team work.

Ans :

- The venue for the special assembly is the **school auditorium.**
- A presentation on inclusion will be made by the **special guests.**
- The dance performance will focus on the themes of **courage** and **determination.**
- A **special workshop** will be conducted by experts who support inclusion.
- The celebration will end with a **group activity** to encourage team work.

Speaking Activity

I. Interview the Sports Captain and the Sports Coach of your school.

Note that the interview of the Sports Captain is informal, and that of the Sports Coach is formal.



Work in pairs. One of you can be the interviewer and the other the interviewee in the informal interview. Interchange your role for the formal one.

Informal	Formal
Hello! I'm so glad that you agreed to meet me for this interview.	Good morning, it is my privilege to get this opportunity to have this interaction with you.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. How does Sheetal Devi's achievement set the tone for the chapter "Limitless Possibilities"?

Ans :

Sheetal Devi, an incredible para-archer who shoots precisely using her feet and won the 2024 Arjuna Award, perfectly introduces the chapter's theme. Her story establishes that physical limitations can be completely conquered, setting an inspiring, resilient tone for the text.

2. What role does willpower play in the lives of para-athletes like Sheetal Devi?

Ans :

Willpower acts as the ultimate driving force for para-athletes. The chapter emphasizes that strong determination and mental fortitude empower individuals to look beyond their physical constraints, helping them achieve extraordinary feats and conquer unimaginable obstacles on global sporting platforms.

3. Describe the sudden tragic turn in Deepa Malik's life when she was twenty-nine.

Ans :

At the age of twenty-nine, Deepa Malik faced a devastating medical crisis when she was diagnosed with a spinal tumour. Following her surgery, she was left completely paralyzed from the waist down, effectively confining her to a wheelchair for life.

4. Confronted with lifelong paralysis, what were the two distinct paths available to Deepa Malik, and which did she choose?

Ans :

Faced with irreversible paralysis, Deepa had two stark choices: either cry over her tragic circumstances or proactively create limitless possibilities. Demonstrating immense mental strength, she chose the latter, transforming her deep setback into a stepping stone for monumental athletic success.

5. Why is Deepa Malik's transition into para-athletics compared to a butterfly emerging from a chrysalis?

Ans :

The comparison to a butterfly perfectly captures her stunning metamorphosis. Just as a caterpillar transforms through struggle, Deepa used her painful personal tragedies and paralysis to evolve,

emerging much stronger and finding a beautiful new identity in the world of para-athletics.

6. State the significance of the 2016 Rio Paralympic Games in Dr. Deepa Malik's athletic career.

Ans :

The 2016 Rio Paralympic Games marked the ultimate breakthrough moment in Dr. Deepa Malik's life. Competing in the shot-put event, she secured a historic silver medal, instantly catapulting her to global fame and cementing her status as a legendary athlete.

7. Apart from her Paralympic glory, what other historic "firsts" has Dr. Deepa Malik achieved for Indian women in para-sports?

Ans :

Beyond her Paralympic silver, Dr. Malik holds the distinguished honor of being India's first female Paralympic medallist across any sport. Additionally, she proudly stands as the very first female para-athlete from India to win a medal at the Asian Games.

8. How did the International Paralympic Committee acknowledge Dr. Deepa Malik's global impact?

Ans :

The International Paralympic Committee recognized her immense global influence and continuous advocacy by naming her among the top ten most effective para-athletes worldwide. This prestigious acknowledgment highlights her vital role as both a formidable competitor and a powerful inspirational figure.

9. Which prestigious national civilian and sports awards honor Dr. Deepa Malik's monumental achievements?

Ans :

For her unparalleled dedication and historic sporting achievements, the Indian government has honored Dr. Deepa Malik with the Padma Shri, a highly prestigious civilian award, alongside the Khel Ratna Award, which is the absolute highest sporting honor in the country.

10. In what way do the medals won by Dr. Deepa Malik shatter the historical stereotypes associated with disabled individuals?

Ans :

Historically, society often viewed disabled individuals as completely helpless or dependent. Dr. Malik's impressive collection of international medals entirely shatters this outdated stereotype, proving

- II. The Sports Club of your school is organising an Inter-school Athletic Meet. As the Sports Captain, draft a notice in not more than 50 words asking interested students to register themselves for selection in different events. Add all necessary details. Do not forget to design your notice within a box.**

Ans :

ST. JUDE'S HIGH SCHOOL NOTICE 15 October 2024 Inter-School Athletic Meet Selection The Sports Club is organising an Inter-School Athletic Meet next month. Students of Classes VIII to X interested in track and field events must register for selection trials. Submit your names and preferred events to the undersigned by 20 October 2024. (Signature) Rahul Sharma Sports Captain
--

Learning Beyond the Text

I. Did you know?

The origin of Paralympics can be traced back to the year 1948, when Sir Ludwig Guttman, organised a sports competition for war veterans with spinal cord-related injuries in England. The Stoke Mandeville Games was the Olympic-style games for differentlyabled athletes. It was organised for the first time in Rome in 1960 and since then the game has evolved. The Paralympics are split into Winter Games and Summer Games, which alternately occur every two years. Since the late twentieth century, the Paralympics have been held in the same city, which hosts the corresponding Olympic Games; the Paralympics follow shortly after the Olympics.



Ans :

Paralympics :

The Paralympics originated in 1948 when **Sir Ludwig Guttman** organised the Stoke Mandeville Games in England for war veterans with spinal injuries.

The first Paralympic Games were held in Rome in 1960. Since then, they have developed into major international sporting events.

The Paralympics include Summer and Winter Games, held alternately every two years, and are organised in the same city as the Olympics shortly after them.

II. Work in groups of four. Choose any one of the topics given below and make a presentation.

- Two lesser-known Paralympic sports (examples: para equestrian, para rowing, etc.)
- Two Paralympians from India

Steps to be followed :

- Do research on the topic of your choice. Refer to magazines, newspapers, and the internet.
- Prepare the presentation based on the following guidelines :
 - One introductory slide (mentioning topic chosen)
 - Two slides on origin and brief history of Paralympics
 - Four to five slides about lesser-known Paralympic sports or Indian Paralympians
 - One concluding slide
- Choose appropriate slide design, colour schemes, and images.
- Ensure there is a good balance between text and images.
- Share your presentation in class.
- Each member of the group to take turns to present.

Ans :

Slide 1 : Introduction

Title : Indian Paralympians – Inspiring Champions

- This presentation is about two famous Indian Paralympians.
- They have shown courage, determination, and excellence in sports.

Slide 2 : Origin of Paralympics

- The Paralympics began in 1948 in England.
- It was started by Sir Ludwig Guttman for injured war veterans.

Slide 3 : Brief History of Paralympics

- First Paralympic Games held in Rome in 1960.
- Includes Summer and Winter Games.

20. Justify the title “Limitless Possibilities” based on the life trajectories of the para-athletes discussed in the text.

Ans :

The title “Limitless Possibilities” perfectly describes how athletes like Sheetal Devi and Deepa Malik completely defied their physical limitations. Their awe-inspiring journeys prove that with unyielding willpower, the human spirit cannot be bound, turning seemingly impossible dreams into brilliant, boundless reality.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Imagine you are Deepa Malik on the day you were told you would be wheelchair-bound for life. Write a diary entry expressing your initial shock and your ultimate resolve to choose ‘limitless possibilities’ over despair.

Ans :

Dear Diary,
Today was the most defining day of my existence. The doctors confirmed that the spinal tumour has paralyzed me from the waist down. The absolute finality of being bound to a wheelchair forever initially crushed my spirit. I felt profound grief for the swimmer I used to be.

However, as the tears flowed, a quiet strength began to rise within me. I refuse to let this tragedy define my entire story. I have two stark choices: to continuously cry over this misfortune, or to boldly forge a path of limitless possibilities. I choose the latter. I will rebuild my life. My legs may be paralyzed, but my fiercely competitive spirit remains completely untouched and ready to conquer the world.

Deepa

2. You are asked to deliver a morning assembly speech in your school inspired by Dr. Deepa Malik’s journey. Draft a speech motivating your peers to shift their focus from ‘disability’ to ‘ability’ and build an empathetic environment.

Ans :

Respected Principal, Teachers, and dear friends,
Today, I stand before you to share the inspiring philosophy of “Limitless Possibilities,” beautifully demonstrated by legendary para-athletes like Dr. Deepa Malik. When a spinal tumour confined her to a wheelchair, she did not surrender. Instead, she won a historic silver medal at the Rio Paralympics. Her incredible journey teaches us a

vital lesson: we must drastically shift our societal lens from ‘disability’ to ‘ability.’

For too long, differently-abled individuals have been viewed with unnecessary pity. It is our absolute responsibility, as the youth and future leaders, to completely shatter these outdated stereotypes. Let us actively build a deeply inclusive, highly empathetic society where everyone is treated with unwavering dignity, profound respect, and absolute equality.

Thank you.

3. Write a letter to para-archer Sheetal Devi, congratulating her on her 2024 Arjuna Award. Express how her ability to shoot with her feet has inspired you to overcome your own personal, everyday challenges.

Ans :

Dear Sheetal Devi,
I am writing to extend my heartiest congratulations to you for winning the prestigious Arjuna Award in 2024. Reading about your extraordinary journey in the chapter “Limitless Possibilities” left me completely spellbound. Learning that you shoot arrows with such precision using your feet truly changed my understanding of human strength and resilience.

Whenever I face small academic challenges, I often become frustrated. However, your strong willpower and your refusal to let physical limitations control your life act as a powerful lesson for me. You have shown that true determination can overcome any obstacle.

You are truly a national inspiration. Your courage and spirit motivate me to face my own challenges with confidence. I will always look up to you as a role model and try to apply your inspiring attitude in my daily life.

Yours sincerely,

Aakash

4. Compose a dialogue between Dr. Deepa Malik and a young, underprivileged differently-abled athlete whom she is providing equipment to. Highlight the theme of mentorship and passing on the torch of resilience.

Ans :

Dr. Malik: Here is your new professional sports equipment. I know the financial struggles are tough, but never let them dim your inner fire.

Young Athlete: Thank you so much, Ma’am! I often feel discouraged. Society looks at my wheelchair and instantly assumes I am completely

55. Musicality – musical talent, artistic sensitivity
56. Extent – degree, scale, limit
57. Iterated – repeated
58. Occasions – instances, events, times
59. Request – ask politely, appeal, beg
60. Consider – think about, reflect on, evaluate
61. Mocking – teasing, making fun of, sarcastic
62. Participate – take part, join in, engage
63. Down the drain – wasted, lost, ruined
64. Entering – coming in, stepping inside
65. Perhaps – maybe, possibly
66. Engrossed – deeply involved, absorbed, fascinated
67. Evidently – clearly, obviously, apparently
68. Furiously – fiercely, energetically, intensely
69. Expression – look, appearance, display of emotion
70. Pride – satisfaction, dignity, self-respect
71. Soulful – emotional, expressive, deeply felt
72. Sight – view, vision, awareness
73. Excellence – greatness, high quality, perfection
74. Amazing – wonderful, incredible, surprising
75. Result – outcome, consequence, effect
76. Giggle – laugh lightly, chuckle
77. Equipment – tools, gear, instruments
78. Regularly – frequently, routinely, consistently
79. Mime – acting without words, gestures
80. Seriously – earnestly, thoughtfully, gravely
81. Decision – choice, resolution, conclusion
82. Warmly – affectionately, kindly, lovingly
83. Admit – confess, acknowledge, accept
84. Vocalists – singers, performing artists
85. Traditional – customary, classic, conventional
86. Painstakingly – done with great care and effort
87. Nurtured – cared for, protected, developed
88. Flame – passion, enthusiasm, spark
89. Heritage – tradition, inheritance, legacy
90. Thick and thin – good and bad times, difficult situations
91. Desire – wish, want, longing
92. Cultivating – developing, improving, refining
93. Painful – hurtful, distressing, difficult
94. Incorporated – included, integrated, blended
95. Betrayal – disloyalty, treachery, letdown
96. Values – principles, morals, ethics
97. Worked his fingers to the bone – work very hard
98. Underestimated – misjudged, undervalued, rated too low
99. Baseless – unfounded, unjustified, without reason
100. Root – show support

5. MESSAGE

Through this play, the playwright gives a strong message about balancing our traditions with new ideas. Shruti's story shows that we do not have to give up our culture to follow our modern dreams. We should respect our parents' heritage, like Nabin's love for classical music, while also freely expressing our own creativity. True harmony comes from mixing the old with the new, teaching us to chase our unique passions while deeply respecting our roots.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Reflect and Respond

- I. Given below are some stringed musical instruments. Work in pairs and identify them by first letter of the spellings of their names.



S..... S..... S..... S.....



M..... V..... G..... B.....

Ans :

Santoor, Sarangi, Sitar, Sarod
Mandolin, Violin, Guitar, Banjo

- II. Do you play a musical instrument? If given a choice, which one would you choose and why?

Ans :

Yes, I play the keyboard. If given a choice to learn another instrument, I would choose the acoustic guitar because it is portable, highly versatile, and allows me to play a wide variety of music genres ranging from classical melodies to contemporary rock.

- III. Is there any difference in the choice of music between children and elders? If yes, why? If no, why not?

Ans :

Yes, there is often a distinct difference in the choice of music between children and elders.

The intense competition loudly proves their immense physical prowess, fierce independence, and unyielding mental strength. Consequently, these global events force audiences worldwide to completely discard feelings of unnecessary pity. Instead, society is compelled to view differently-abled individuals with genuine awe, recognizing their true competitive spirit and treating them with the absolute dignity and profound respect they deserve.

9. Dr. Malik works with the government to create better sports policies and empowers women through adventure sports. Elaborate on why systemic support and female empowerment are crucial for the holistic development of para-sports in India.

Ans :

Systemic governmental support and active female empowerment are absolutely crucial for the holistic development of para-sports in India. Dr. Deepa Malik's advocacy highlights that individual talent alone cannot thrive without proper infrastructure. By collaborating directly with the government to draft inclusive sports policies, she ensures that future para-athletes receive essential funding, accessible training facilities, and professional medical backing.

Furthermore, her specific focus on empowering women through adventure sports bravely tackles intersectional discrimination—where disabled women face dual societal prejudices. Providing underprivileged female athletes with top-tier equipment and robust emotional health support helps break traditional boundaries.

This comprehensive systemic approach guarantees that differently-abled women are actively encouraged to reclaim their independence, build self-confidence, and proudly represent their nation on prestigious global platforms.

10. The chapter aims to involve the youth in building an inclusive and empathetic society. Evaluate the role of the younger generation in eliminating societal pity toward disabled individuals and fostering an environment of equality and true respect.

Ans :

The younger generation plays an indispensable role in dismantling deeply rooted societal prejudices and eliminating the culture of pity towards disabled individuals. As highlighted in the chapter, engaging youth in discussions about

para-sports helps develop early awareness and genuine empathy.

Young minds are highly adaptable; by learning about inspiring figures like Sheetal Devi and Dr. Deepa Malik, they begin to focus on abilities rather than limitations. This shift in perspective is essential for creating a more inclusive mindset.

When young people actively support inclusivity, they help shape schools, workplaces, and public spaces that are accessible and welcoming for all. Ultimately, this informed and empathetic generation will build a progressive society where every individual is treated with equality, respect, and dignity.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Ever wondered what happens when incredible athletes defy the odds and showcase their exceptional skills on a global stage? Well, enter the world of Paralympic Games, a thrilling celebration of resilience, and extraordinary talent of athletes with locomotor, sensory, or intellectual disabilities. Paralympics go beyond competition, to quell stereotypes and redefine possibilities. Bharat's debut in the Paralympics dates back to 1968, and the first medal was clinched in swimming in 1972. Since then, many Indian Paralympians have brought incredible honour to our country. One such Paralympian, Dr. Deepa Malik, a Khel Ratna, Arjuna, and Padma Shri Awardee, has left an indelible mark on innumerable aspiring athletes.”

- i. What implied meaning does the phrase “quell stereotypes” carry regarding society's usual view of disabilities?
 - (a) Society often underestimates the true potential of the disabled.
 - (b) Society usually overestimates the daily struggles of the disabled.
 - (c) Society accurately perceives the hidden talents of the disabled.
 - (d) Society entirely disregards the physical boundaries of the disabled.
- ii. Which of the following statements best describes the primary function of the Paralympic Games as presented in the text?
 - (a) It is strictly a highly competitive global sporting event for financial gain.

push boundaries. It has made me what I am today. It has made me realise that individuals with disabilities can be as capable, if not more than their able-bodied counterparts."

- i. What does the phrase "breaks down preconceived notions" suggest about the general public's mindset?
 - (a) The public already holds immensely high expectations of all para-athletes.
 - (b) The public holds biased or severely limiting beliefs before witnessing the events.
 - (c) The public has a remarkably deep understanding of para-sports rules and norms.
 - (d) The public generally dislikes watching any highly competitive sporting events.
- ii. **Assertion (A):** The Paralympics effectively gave the speaker a "new lease of life".
Reason (R): It allowed her to redefine her personal limits and recognize her true capabilities compared to able-bodied individuals.
 - (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
 - (c) A is true, but R is false.
 - (d) A is false, but R is true.
- iii. How did Paralympics change Dr. Malik's personal outlook towards her own disability?
- iv. Identify the five-word phrase from the extract that idiomatically means "a fresh opportunity to live, work, or be successful".
- v. Fill in the blank:
 The speaker strongly believes that individuals with disabilities can be as _____, if not more than their able-bodied counterparts.

Ans :

- i. (b) The public holds biased or severely limiting beliefs before witnessing the events.
- ii. (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
- iii. Paralympics made her realise that individuals with disabilities can be as capable, if not more than their able-bodied counterparts.
- iv. a new lease of life
- v. capable

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :
 "Advocacy is integral to my mission. I strongly

believe in working for the cause of strengthening the emotional health of persons with challenges and empowering women through outdoor sports and adventure activities. I also support persons from lower socio-economic strata and provide equipment to para sportspersons. I believe youth is the voice of tomorrow. So, we organise disability sports awareness and advocacy sessions at various schools and colleges. My goal is to contribute to create a society where everyone, regardless of ability, is treated with dignity and given a fair chance to succeed."

- i. Why does the speaker consciously focus on the youth when organizing massive awareness sessions?
 - (a) Because they are the only age group physically capable of participating in sports.
 - (b) Because they have the most available free time to regularly attend such sessions.
 - (c) Because they effectively represent the future and can actively shape a better society.
 - (d) Because they require physical sporting equipment significantly more than adults do.
- ii. Which option correctly pairs the speaker's specific action with its ultimate intended goal?
 - (a) Action: Empowering women.
Goal: Making them exclusively financially independent.
 - (b) Action: Organizing school sessions.
Goal: Creating a society with equal dignity and opportunity.
 - (c) Action: Supporting socio-economic strata.
Goal: Recruiting them strictly for international championships.
 - (d) Action: Providing sports equipment.
Goal: Earning a large profit from sports manufacturing companies.
- iii. What is Dr. Malik's ultimate goal for society as described in this extract?
- iv. Find a specific word in the extract that means "essential or fundamentally necessary".
- v. State whether True or False with a brief reason:
 The speaker restricts her support and advocacy strictly to persons facing physical disabilities.

- (c) To suggest that there are absolutely no more records left for her to break.
- (d) To emphasize that Asian Games medals are an easily achievable milestone.
- ii. **Assertion (A):** Dr. Malik considers her numerous accolades strictly as a testament to her core belief.
Reason (R): She firmly believes that a person's physical limitations strictly dictate their true potential.
 - (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
 - (c) A is true, but R is false.
 - (d) A is false, but R is true.
- iii. What is the core philosophy that Dr. Malik strongly believes in?
- iv. Find a word in the extract that means "a person who pioneers or leads the way."
- v. State whether True or False with a brief reason:
 Dr. Malik believes that her physical limitations are the ultimate measure of her overall potential.

Ans :

- i. (a) To highlight the speaker's continuous and historically unprecedented achievements.
 - ii. (c) A is true, but R is false.
 - iii. Dr. Malik believes in 'ability beyond disability' — that physical limitations do not define one's potential.
 - iv. trailblazer
 - v. False, she explicitly states that physical limitations don't define one's potential.
4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :
- "One of the significant challenges for me was societal perceptions. People often underestimated my abilities. Overcoming this required not only physical strength but also mental resilience. I embraced challenges as opportunities to prove my capabilities. The support of my family, coupled with my fortitude, allowed me to turn obstacles into stepping stones.
- Interviewer: Your story is indeed a testament to the power of determination. How do you believe sports and Paralympics can contribute to challenging societal stereotypes? What has been the impact of Paralympics in your life?"
- i. What does the speaker ultimately imply by saying she "turned obstacles into stepping

stones"?

- (a) She utilized large literal rocks to physically build a completely new path.
- (b) She utilized her intense difficulties as functional tools to achieve success.
- (c) She deliberately ignored her personal challenges and moved away from them.
- (d) She allowed her close family members to exclusively deal with the obstacles.
- ii. Which of the following best captures the direct relationship between societal perception and the speaker's internal growth?
 - (a) Societal underestimation completely eliminated her need for intense mental resilience.
 - (b) Societal underestimation was the single primary cause of her physical vulnerability.
 - (c) Societal underestimation forced her to cultivate and demonstrate strong mental resilience.
 - (d) Societal underestimation made her entirely and permanently dependent on family support.
- iii. What was the biggest societal challenge Dr. Malik faced in her journey?
- iv. Which word in the text serves as a direct synonym for "courage in pain or adversity"?
- v. Based on the extract, name one specific external factor—apart from her own fortitude—that helped the speaker overcome her challenges.

Ans :

- i. (b) She utilized her intense difficulties as functional tools to achieve success.
 - ii. (c) Societal underestimation forced her to cultivate and demonstrate strong mental resilience.
 - iii. People often underestimated her abilities due to her disability.
 - iv. fortitude
 - v. The support of her family.
5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :
- "Honestly, I feel sports, especially Paralympics, have the extraordinary ability to challenge stereotypes and change attitudes towards disability. When people witness the strength, skill, and competitive spirit of para-athletes, it breaks down preconceived notions. Paralympics has given me a new lease of life and helped me

helpless.

Dr. Malik: I faced those exact same prejudices when a spinal tumour paralyzed me at twenty-nine. The world will constantly offer you pity, but you must demand their respect through your sheer hard work.

Young Athlete: How did you find the strength to transform so drastically?

Dr. Malik: By deciding not to cry over my tragedy. Remember, the sporting arena only cares about your immense competitive spirit, fierce dedication, and limitless possibilities. Go make us proud!

5. “Every setback is an opportunity to prove your strength.” Analyze this core message from the chapter. How can students apply this profound philosophy to academic and personal failures in their own lives?

Ans :

The powerful message, “Every setback is an opportunity to prove your strength,” forms the core of Dr. Deepa Malik’s life. When faced with irreversible paralysis, she did not give in to despair; instead, she turned her tragedy into a foundation for global athletic success.

For students, this mindset is highly relevant. Academic failures, personal disappointments, or sudden life changes may seem overwhelming. However, by adopting Dr. Malik’s resilient perspective, students can see these challenges not as dead-ends but as valuable learning opportunities.

Just like a butterfly emerging from a chrysalis, students can use their struggles to grow stronger. They can develop better study habits, emotional strength, and determination, ultimately transforming temporary setbacks into lasting success.

6. Based on the text, provide a comprehensive character sketch of Dr. Deepa Malik. Focus on her transition from a swimmer to a para-athlete, her mental fortitude, and her philanthropic advocacy.

Ans :

Dr. Deepa Malik is portrayed as the absolute embodiment of extraordinary resilience, unwavering willpower, and boundless optimism. Before her tragic diagnosis with a spinal tumour at the age of twenty-nine, she was a passionate swimmer. Despite being paralyzed from the waist down, her fierce competitive spirit remained unextinguished. She displayed immense mental

fortitude by refusing to cry over her severe circumstances, courageously transitioning into para-athletics. Her historic silver medal at the 2016 Rio Paralympics proves her phenomenal athletic prowess. Beyond her personal achievements, Dr. Malik is a deeply compassionate philanthropist and a visionary leader. She actively advocates for better governmental sports policies, heavily prioritizes emotional health, and passionately empowers underprivileged women, making her a true champion both on and off the field.

7. The text compares Deepa Malik’s transformation to a “butterfly emerging.” Critically analyze this metaphor. How does the imagery of a butterfly accurately represent the various stages of her physical tragedy and subsequent global triumphs?

Ans :

The text beautifully employs the metaphor of a “butterfly emerging” to vividly illustrate Dr. Deepa Malik’s awe-inspiring journey from tragedy to triumph. A caterpillar must endure the dark, restrictive, and painful confinement of a chrysalis before it can transform. Similarly, Dr. Malik was suddenly thrust into the dark reality of a severe spinal tumour and permanent, waist-down paralysis at twenty-nine. She was physically restricted to a wheelchair.

However, instead of surrendering to this dark phase, she utilized it as a period of profound internal growth. Through sheer grit and relentless hard work, she shattered her restrictive boundaries. She emerged as a globally celebrated para-athlete, metaphorically spreading her vibrant wings to achieve historic Paralympic glory and perfectly embodying limitless human possibilities.

8. How do global platforms like the Paralympic Games serve as a catalyst for societal change? Discuss how international sporting events actively dismantle stereotypes and force society to treat differently-abled individuals with dignity.

Ans :

Global platforms like the Paralympic Games serve as monumental catalysts for profound societal change by actively shifting the world’s focus from a person’s disability to their extraordinary ability. Historically, society has unjustly stereotyped differently-abled individuals as weak, helpless, or entirely dependent on charity. However, when para-athletes like Dr. Deepa Malik proudly step onto international stages and break world records, they shatter these deeply ingrained prejudices.

Ans :

- i. (c) Because they effectively represent the future and can actively shape a better society.
- ii. (b) Action: Organizing school sessions. Goal: Creating a society with equal dignity and opportunity.
- iii. Dr. Malik wants to create a society where everyone, regardless of ability, is treated with dignity and given a fair chance to succeed.
- iv. integral
- v. False, she also supports empowering women through outdoor sports and assists persons from lower socio-economic strata.



CHAPTER 6

TWIN MELODIES

1. INTRODUCTION

The play “Twin Melodies” presents a captivating narrative centered around a talented young violinist named Shruti. Set against the backdrop of a traditional Indian household, the story explores the dynamic clash between classical heritage and modern artistic expression. Shruti is a secret member of an Indo-Western fusion band, a passion she hides from her father, Nabin, who is a strict traditionalist devoted solely to Classical Hindustani music. The plot unfolds as Shruti struggles to balance her profound respect for her family’s rigid musical values with her intense desire for creative freedom, leading to an emotional confrontation at home.

2. CHARACTERS

Shruti Sharma

A young, talented violinist who is torn between playing in an Indo-Western fusion band and pleasing her traditional father. She is respectful, anxious, and ultimately courageous.

Guru Nabin Sharma

Shruti’s father is a strict, traditional master violinist. Initially against fusion music, he is deeply devoted to classical traditions but ultimately understands and supports his daughter’s talent.

Leela Devi

Shruti’s mother is practical, observant, and caring. She understands her husband’s past struggles and gently helps bridge the gap between Shruti’s modern choices and Nabin’s traditional views.

Iqbal

The enthusiastic flute player in the fusion band. He is a supportive, confident friend who encourages Shruti to bravely tell her father the truth about their concert.

Avinash

The band’s lively and vocal tabla player. He is a realistic friend who urges Shruti to stop hiding her concert practices from her strict father.

Peter

The friendly keyboard player in Shruti’s Indo-Western fusion group. He is highly encouraging, cheering on Shruti’s musical talent and supporting her during their band rehearsals.

SUMMARY

The Musical Friends and Shruti’s Dilemma

The play “Twin Melodies” revolves around a young, talented girl named Shruti and her friends—Iqbal (flute), Avinash (tabla), and Peter (keyboard). Together, they have formed an Indo-Western fusion band. Shruti plays the violin and has recently been praised in the newspaper as a musical sensation. However, instead of being happy, Shruti is in a deep dilemma. She is terrified to tell her father, Nabin Sharma, about her fusion band. Her father is a very strict follower of traditional Classical Hindustani music and believes that playing Western tunes on the violin is a disrespect, or “desecration,” of the instrument. While her friends casually encourage her to “bite the bullet” and tell him the truth, Shruti struggles because she deeply respects her father and does not want to hurt his feelings.

The Confrontation: A Clash of Tradition and Modernity

Gathering her courage, Shruti finally decides to break the news to her parents during dinner. She politely informs them about her upcoming Indo-Western fusion concert and begs her father to at least attend one rehearsal before judging her. As expected, her father reacts with strong disapproval. He is firmly against modern fusion music, feeling that his daughter has lost her sense of true musicality, and he harshly dismisses her plea. To add to the tension, her mother, Leela, scolds her for hiding the truth for so long. Despite this major setback and feeling torn between her passion for the band and her duty towards her family, Shruti promises never to hide things from them again.

The Turning Point: A Secret Audience

Feeling defeated by her father's strictness, Shruti decides that family duty is more important. She plans to practice her fusion piece one last time before telling her friends that she has to quit the band. However, unknown to her, her parents secretly enter the room during her final rehearsal. As Nabin watches his daughter play, he is left completely amazed. He sees that Shruti is performing excellently and has not lost her classical roots; rather, she is blending them beautifully with the new music.

The Resolution: Understanding and Acceptance

The climax of the play brings a heartwarming realization. Shruti's mother, Leela, plays a crucial role in opening Nabin's eyes. She reminds him of his own youth, when he rebelled against his family's traditional vocal music heritage to play a Western instrument—the violin. Realizing that he had once been in Shruti's exact position, Nabin's anger melts away. He accepts that his fears were baseless and that classical music is powerful enough to hold its own in a modern fusion setting. He joyfully tells Shruti that he trusts her, supports her artistic freedom, and will cheer for her at the concert. The family shares a warm hug, perfectly resolving the conflict.

Harmony Between Tradition and Modernity

The title "Twin Melodies" beautifully captures the central theme of the play: the harmonious blending of traditional values and modern expressions. The play teaches us that a generational gap does not have to result in permanent conflict. Through open communication, mutual respect, and a willingness to understand one another, families can balance personal passions with traditional duties. Just like a beautiful fusion of Eastern and Western music, the old and the new can peacefully coexist side by side.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Crescendo – a piece of music that gets louder and louder
2. Scene – setting, location of action
3. Fusion – blend, mixture, combination
4. Rack – shelf, stand, framework
5. Stacked – piled up, loaded, filled
6. Wind up – conclude, finish, bring to a close
7. Packing up – putting things away, gathering belongings
8. Distress – sorrow, pain, anxiety
9. Rehearsal – practice session, preparation
10. Master – expert, highly skilled person
11. Sensation – widespread success, phenomenon
12. Least – minimum, smallest amount
13. Unaffected – unmoved, unchanged, indifferent
14. Distract – divert attention, disturb
15. Startled – surprised, frightened, alarmed
16. Silence – quietness, absence of sound
17. Concert – musical performance, show
18. Strict – firm, demanding, inflexible
19. Desecration – disrespect towards something sacred
20. Firmly – strongly, resolutely, steadfastly
21. Ragas and aalaaps – elements of Hindustani classical music
22. Worth – value, merit, importance
23. Opinions – beliefs, views, judgments
24. Eventually – finally, in the end, ultimately
25. Come round – change one's mind, agree
26. Basically – fundamentally, essentially
27. Guess – suppose, believe, estimate
28. To bite the bullet – to deal with an unpleasant or difficult situation in a courageous and determined way
29. Encouraging – supportive, motivating, inspiring
30. Seemingly – apparently, outwardly
31. Stuck – halted, trapped, unable to move
32. Disappear – vanish, go out of sight
33. Afraid – scared, fearful, worried
34. Abandon – give up, leave behind, quit
35. Mission – task, assignment, objective
36. Strength – courage, power, toughness
37. Actually – in fact, really, truthfully
38. Suddenly – abruptly, unexpectedly
39. Opposite – facing, in front of
40. Upright – straight, vertical, erect
41. Formal – official, serious, proper
42. Calmly – peacefully, quietly, smoothly
43. Contempt – a strong feeling of dislike and disrespect
44. Familiarity – closeness, intimacy, frequent contact
45. Breeds – produces, causes, creates
46. Judged – decided, concluded, assessed
47. Drown – submerge, overwhelm, overpower
48. Individual – personal, unique, distinct
49. Hubbub – a loud noise
50. Orchestra – musical ensemble, band
51. Hardly – barely, scarcely, unlikely
52. Scheduled – planned, arranged, timetabled
53. Timidly – shyly, nervously, hesitantly
54. Let alone – not to mention, much less

- (b) It is a platform meant solely for providing mandatory medical rehabilitation.
- (c) It is an empowering celebration of immense resilience and hidden potential.
- (d) It is primarily an avenue to secure national sporting sponsorships and funds.
- iii. When did India debut in the Paralympics and when was its first medal won?
- iv. Which exact word in the extract serves as an antonym for “erasable” or “temporary”?
- v. State whether True or False with a brief reason:
The Paralympic Games cater exclusively to individuals with locomotor disabilities.

Ans :

- i. (a) Society often underestimates the true potential of the disabled.
- ii. (c) It is an empowering celebration of immense resilience and hidden potential.
- iii. India debuted in the Paralympics in 1968 and won its first medal in swimming in 1972.
- iv. indelible
- v. False, the text explicitly mentions that it includes athletes with locomotor, sensory, or intellectual disabilities.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“I was 29, an awful tragedy struck me when I was diagnosed with spine tumour. I underwent a surgery, but misfortune raised its ugly head again. The doctors declared that I would be bound to a wheelchair for the rest of my life, as I was paralysed waist down. I had two choices—squander my life in remorse or transform it to a world of limitless possibilities. I love sports and had been a swimmer too, so I decided to switch to para-athletics. This is how my Paralympics journey began.”

- i. What does the phrase “squander my life in remorse” reveal about the speaker’s internal fears at that critical juncture?
 - (a) A deep fear of making terrible financial and career choices.
 - (b) A deep fear of wasting her entire life feeling sorry for herself.
 - (c) A deep fear of slowly losing her remaining physical strength.
 - (d) A deep fear of never winning an international sporting medal.
- ii. **Statement I:** The speaker viewed her new physical condition as the absolute end of her

sporting career.

Statement II: The speaker leveraged her past athletic background to successfully pivot her life’s path.

- (a) Statement I is true and Statement II is false.
- (b) Statement I is false and Statement II is true.
- (c) Both Statement I and Statement II are true.
- (d) Both Statement I and Statement II are false.
- iii. What two choices did the speaker face after being declared permanently paralysed?
- iv. Identify the exact word from the extract that serves as a synonym for “catastrophe” or “disaster”.
- v. Fill in the blank:
The speaker was officially diagnosed with a _____ tumor at the age of 29.

Ans :

- i. (b) A deep fear of wasting her entire life feeling sorry for herself.
- ii. (b) Statement I is false and Statement II is true.
- iii. The speaker could either squander her life in remorse or transform it into a world of limitless possibilities.
- iv. tragedy
- v. spine

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Interviewer: You’re a trailblazer—the first ever Indian female para-athlete to win an Asian Games medal in athletics. You’re also India’s first ever female Paralympics medallist across any sport and the list of ‘firsts’ is never ending. You’ve been bestowed with several coveted awards too. What do these accomplishments mean to you?

Dr. Malik: I truly appreciate these accolades that have been showered on me. These achievements are a testimony to my belief that physical limitations don’t define one’s potential. Moreover, I’m a proponent of the school of thought, ‘ability beyond disability’.”

- i. Why does the interviewer purposefully refer to the list of ‘firsts’ as ‘never ending’?
 - (a) To highlight the speaker’s continuous and historically unprecedented achievements.
 - (b) To indicate that the speaker is currently tired of winning so many awards.

Elders generally prefer classical, traditional, or older melodies that they grew up listening to, as these evoke nostalgia and have a soothing, familiar rhythm. Children and teenagers tend to prefer contemporary, upbeat, pop, or fusion music, which reflects current trends and energetic vibes. This difference is primarily due to the generational gap and varying cultural exposures during their formative years.

IV. Work in pairs to complete the paragraph given on the next page by choosing the correct phrases given in the box. Discuss with your teacher whether the following phrases have a literal meaning or a figurative one.

wearing a look of distress,	bite the bullet
found words	lost in his thoughts
bring it up	throw a party
winding up	sweating on
	come around

The theatre club was 1. _____ their practice. Anil saw Sunny was 2. _____ and not speaking to anyone. They had a disagreement in the morning and since then, Sunny was 3. _____. Anil did not want to 4. _____ and disturb Sunny further but he finally decided to 5. _____ and speak to Sunny. He was sure if he apologised first, his friend would 6. _____. With a lot of anxiety, he 7. _____ to apologise. And finally, Sunny smiled! Everyone clapped and asked them to 8. _____ to celebrate.

Ans :

1. winding up
2. lost in his thoughts
3. wearing a look of distress
4. bring it up
5. bite the bullet
6. come around
7. found words
8. throw a party

Check Your Understanding

I. Complete the table given below based on Act I of the play. Check your answers with the teacher.

Setting	• Where : Iqbal's room • Description of the room : a small rack, _____ • On the wall: _____
Children and the instruments they play	1. Iqbal : flute 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____

Speaker	Words of the Speaker	Reason
_____	Oh ho! Wow Shruti! You are a sensation now! The least you can do is throw a party!	_____
_____	There is need to worry Iqbal! You don't know papa.	_____
_____	That's the spirit!	_____

Ans :

Setting	Where : Iqbal's room Description of the room : a small rack, a small rack, musical instruments, neat and simple room On the wall: pictures/posters of great musicians
Children and the instruments they play	1. Iqbal : flute 2. Shruti : sitar 3. Anu : tabla 4. Sameer : harmonium

Speaker	Words of the Speaker	Reason
Sameer	Oh ho! Wow Shruti! You are a sensation now! The least you can do is throw a party!	He is praising Shruti for her excellent performance and success.
Anu	There is need to worry Iqbal! You don't know papa.	She is warning Iqbal about his father's strict nature.
Iqbal	That's the spirit!	He is encouraging his friends.

II. Do you think Shruti will gather the courage to speak to her father? Give a reason.

Ans :

Yes, I think Shruti will gather the courage to speak to her father because she eventually says, "I guess it is time to bite the bullet," and promises her friends that she will bring the topic up at dinner tonight. The encouragement and support from her friends give her the necessary push.

III. What might be Shruti's father's reaction? Why?

Ans :

Shruti's father might react with disappointment or anger. Shruti herself mentions that he is very strict and firmly believes that Classical Hindustani music, with its ragas and aalaaps, is the only kind of music an artist of worth should play. He would likely consider playing fusion music to be a "desecration" of the violin.

Check Your Understanding

- I. Complete the summary of Act II by choosing the correct words from the box given below. There are two extra words that you do not need. Check your answers with the teacher.

disapproval	plea	absent-minded,	
setback	surprised	scolded,	
courage	firm	clash	relief

Shruti seemed 1. _____ during dinner. She finally gathered the 2. _____ to inform her father, Nabin, about her wish to participate in an upcoming Indo-Western fusion concert. Nabin reacted negatively, expressing 3. _____ of fusion music and dismissed the idea. Despite Shruti's 4. _____ to him to attend a practice before deciding, Nabin was 5. _____ in his decision. Shruti's mother, Leela, 6. _____ her for not seeking permission earlier. The tension highlights the 7. _____ between traditional and contemporary musical preferences within the family. Despite the 8. _____, Shruti promises not to hide again and is urged to go to bed by her mother.

Ans :

- absent-minded
- courage
- disapproval
- plea
- firm
- scolded
- clash
- setback

The extra words are 'surprised' and 'relief'

- II. Will Shruti's father go for the rehearsal? Support your answer with a reason.

Ans :

Based on his reaction in Act II, it initially seems highly unlikely that Shruti's father will go to the rehearsal. He firmly rejected her plea, stating he never thought a student of his would "lose their sense of musicality to such an extent," and walked

away from the table in mockery. However, out of deep parental concern or curiosity, he might eventually decide to check on what his daughter is actually doing.

- III. Do you think Shruti and her parents would understand one another? If yes, why? If no, why not?

Ans :

Yes, they are likely to understand one another eventually because, beneath the strictness, there is a strong foundation of family love and respect. Shruti deeply cares about her father's opinions and doesn't want to hurt him, and her parents naturally want the best for her. Once her parents witness her talent and dedication firsthand, they might realize that her modern musical interests do not destroy her classical roots.

Check Your Understanding

- I. Work in pairs. Identify the true statements. Check the answers with your teacher.

1.	During the rehearsal, Shruti's parents enter the room and are overjoyed at her performance.	_____
2.	Shruti initially considers telling her friends that she can't join them for the performance, after practising one last time.	_____
3.	Shruti's father expressed that she had sung a few notes incorrectly during her performance.	_____
4.	Shruti's father had followed the family's tradition of being a violinist and worked very hard to achieve all that he did.	_____
5.	Shruti's mother helped her husband realise why he should support their daughter.	_____
6.	Shruti's father accepts that he underrated the potential of classical music.	_____

Ans :

- True (He taps his feet, is evidently enjoying, and has an expression of pride).
- True (She says this to herself in an aside before the practice begins).
- False (He praised her, saying she did not lose sight of the notes even once and performed to excellence).

4. False (His family's tradition was being vocalists; he went against their wishes to become a violinist).
5. True (Nabin admits, "I must admit it was Leela who opened my eyes.")
6. True (He says, "I underestimated the power of our own music," realizing classical music was powerful enough to hold its own within a fusion setting rather than being ruined by it).

Critical Reflection

I. Read the extracts given below and answer the questions that follow.

1. **Shruti :** There is need to worry Iqbal! You don't know papa. He is very strict about these things. He will think it a desecration of the violin to be played to Western tunes. Papa firmly believes that Classical Hindustani music, with its ragas and aalaaps, is the only kind of music that an artist of any worth should play. I don't want papa to feel that I don't care about his opinions, because I do. It's just that I want to give this a try too. I just don't know how to tell him in the right way!

Iqbal : All ways are right ways, Shruti. He is your father, he will understand.

- i. Select the option that correctly identifies Shruti's situation.

A. confident	B. indifferent
C. content	D. in a dilemma
- ii. What does Shruti mean by 'the right way', in the sentence, "I just don't know how to tell him in the right way!"?
- iii. Complete the following with a suitable reason.
We can say that the extract reflects the generational gap in understanding art and tradition because -----.
- iv. Explain how Iqbal's words were meant as an assurance to Shruti.
- v. Fill in the blank with a phrase from the extract.
The critics argued that only films which provoke thoughtful discussion are -----.

Ans :

- i. D. in a dilemma
- ii. 'The right way', Shruti means she is searching for a respectful and sensitive manner to inform her strict father about her participation in a fusion concert. She wants to ensure she doesn't anger him or make him feel that she

- disregards his deeply held traditional beliefs.
- iii. We can say that the extract reflects the generational gap in understanding art and tradition because 'Nabin (the older generation) firmly believes that pure Classical Hindustani music is the only worthy art form, while Shruti (the younger generation) is open-minded, eager to experiment, and wants to blend different styles like Indo-Western fusion.'
- iv. Iqbal reassures Shruti by emphasizing the inherent bond between a parent and child. He implies that because Nabin is her father, his love for her will ultimately outshine his strictness, and she shouldn't overthink her approach because a father will naturally try to understand his daughter.
- v. The critics argued that only films which provoke thoughtful discussion are 'of any worth'.

2. **Nabin :** I underestimated the power of our own music. I was afraid you would be lost to us. I realise that my fears were baseless. After all each bay, its own wind. I trust you Shruti and I will root for your group at the concert!
(Shruti hugs both of her parents)

- i. Select the suitable option to complete the sentence.

Nabin's breakthrough in his understanding of artistic freedom, highlights a bridge between -----.

- A. personal ambition and professional success
- B. traditional values and modern expressions
- C. strict discipline and casual learning
- D. historical techniques and futuristic innovations

- ii. Fill in the blank with a suitable phrase.
The extract uses the word 'lost' both in the sense of losing ----- and physical separation.

- iii. In the line, 'Shruti hugs her parents', which word from those given below, does not show what it conveys?

reconciliation, harmony, duty, acceptance, understanding

- iv. What can be inferred about Shruti's future in music following her father's expression of trust and support?
- v. Identify the phrase that refers to the uniqueness of each artist's journey and style.

Sentences	Stress	Intonation
I don't want papa to feel that I don't care about his opinions, because I do.	'don't' in the first part and 'do' in the second part - highlights contrast in Shruti's internal conflict and her deep concern for her father's feelings	- start with a slightly lower tone, conveying concern - rise towards the end, emphasising her sincerity
Tonight, at dinner, I promise to bring this up	'promise' and 'bring this up' shows Shruti's determination and the importance of the action she plans to take	- start with a decisive tone on 'promise' - slightly increase in pitch and volume on 'bring this up', to indicate resolve
Why are you lost in thought my dear child?	'lost' and 'thought' - draws attention to the concern in Leela's question	- tone should be gentle - raise the tone on 'lost' - indicates curiosity
Each bay, its own wind	'each' and 'own' - highlights the uniqueness of each path - one-size-fits all does not work in every situation or for every person	- thoughtful and slightly philosophical tone - a steady pitch that gently rises on its 'own'

2. Practice speaking aloud a few other sentences from the play on your own. Understanding what is being said and why, will help you stress the suitable portions and use the appropriate tone.

Ans :

This is a practical classroom speaking activity. Read the dialogues aloud following your teacher's instructions on stress and tone.

Writing Task

1. Read the beginning of a story given below.
Anuradha, a teenager, has been learning tabla at school since her primary years and is an extraordinary tabla player. Her father, a vocalist, is a music teacher in a school. He has never been supportive of her learning the tabla and rather feels she should focus on becoming a vocalist. She has been invited to perform at a prestigious event, and decides to participate in it, despite her father's disapproval. However, Anuradha's mother and brother have always rooted for her. Anuradha sat wondering.

In groups of four, create a play script based only on the beginning of the story given above. To write the script, you may refer to the play you have just read.

Tips for writing the script for the play.

- Write a rough draft of the script first
- Mention the setting and characters
- Use colon (:) after the speaker to introduce words of the speaker.
- Use brackets to convey to the actor the way to deliver the words. Refer to vocabulary and structures in context (I).
- Include 'aside' where needed. Refer to vocabulary and structures in context (I).
- You may use non-lexical fillers such as AhemAhem!, Arrghh! to fill pauses.
- Use ellipsis where necessary. Ellipsis (...) is used to depict a short pause or silence in the script for a dramatic effect.

Example: Yes, actually I ... er ... was finding the right words to say something to you ... to you papa.

Ans :

Title : The Rhythm of Defiance

Setting :

Where : Anuradha's bedroom.

Description of the room : A simple room with a study desk, a bed, and a pair of shiny tablas placed reverently on a mat in the corner.

Characters :

ANURADHA : A teenager, highly passionate about playing the tabla.

MR. SHARMA : Anuradha's father, a traditional vocalist and strict music teacher.

MRS. SHARMA : Anuradha's mother, supportive and understanding.

ROHAN : Anuradha's younger brother, cheerful and encouraging.

The scene opens in Anuradha's room. She is

6. Assess how well the role of cultural diversity contributes to the storyline of the play.

Ans :

Cultural diversity is the backbone of the storyline, physically represented by the Indo-Western fusion band. The band comprises diverse members playing different instruments—tabla, flute, keyboard, and violin—symbolizing a melting pot of cultures. The entire plot revolves around the friction and eventual harmony between traditional Indian classical heritage and Western musical influences. It highlights that blending diverse cultural elements does not destroy the original forms but rather creates something innovative and uniquely beautiful.

Vocabulary and Structures in Context

- I. Read the highlighted word given in the brackets.

SHRUTI (Aside) : Oh, how much I enjoy performing this piece. Perhaps I can practise one last time and soon after that I will tell them that I can't join them for the performance.

1. What is 'aside' used for?
 (i) enables characters to talk about the story
 (ii) shows what a character thinks or feels
 (iii) makes a direct link between the audience and the character
 (iv) (i), (ii), and (iii)

Ans :

(iv) (i), (ii), and (iii)

- II. Read the following words from the text.

Ahem ahem, I ... er...

Now, select the correct answer for the question given below.

Why are they used?

- to fill gaps while speaking
- to increase clarity
- to provide confidence

Ans :

- to fill gaps while speaking

Now, choose suitable non-lexical fillers given in the box to describe the emoticons 1 to 4. There is an extra word you do not need.

whew	err	arrgh	hmmm	ahem-ahem
------	-----	-------	------	-----------



1



2



3



4

Ans :

- arrgh (Image of stressed face pulling cheeks)
- ahem-ahem (Image of face coughing/clearing throat)
- whew (Image of smiling face wiping a sweat drop)
- hmmm (Image of face thinking with hand on chin)

(The extra word is 'err')

- III. Read the following words from the text and their meanings.

- notes—a single sound at a certain pitch, usually shown as a symbol on music sheet.
- crescendo [kri-SHEN-doe]—a gradual increase in the volume or intensity of sound

Now, on the next page, match the meanings of other music-related words in Column 1 with their meanings in Column 2.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	rhythm	i.	the lowest tone or part in music
2.	tempo	ii.	a mixture of loud unpleasant sounds
3.	bass [p.base]	iii.	the pattern of beats or time intervals in music
4.	baritone	iv.	the speed or pace at which a piece of music is played
5.	cacophony	v.	a male voice that falls between the higher and lower ranges
6.	pitch	vi.	a series of musical notes moving upwards or downwards
7.	scale	vii.	the perceived frequency of a sound, how high or low a sound is

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	rhythm	(iii)	the pattern of beats or time intervals in music
2.	tempo	(iv)	the speed or pace at which a piece of music is played
3.	bass [p.base]	(i)	the lowest tone or part in music

4.	baritone	(v)	a male voice that falls between the higher and lower ranges
5.	cacophony	(ii)	a mixture of loud unpleasant sounds
6.	pitch	(vii)	the perceived frequency of a sound, how high or low a sound is
7.	scale	(vi)	a series of musical notes moving upwards or downwards

IV. Write the meanings of the underlined phrases based on your understanding of the usage in sentences.

	Phrases	Meanings
1.	My mother told me, "When you follow trends without thinking, <u>you drown your individual style.</u> "	
2.	The pianist was appreciated for his <u>sense of musicality.</u>	
3.	When one of the performers in the group was injured, they felt their practise <u>would go down the drain.</u>	

Ans :

	Phrases	Meanings
1.	My mother told me, "When you follow trends without thinking, you <u>drown your individual style.</u> "	To lose, hide, or suppress your unique personal characteristics or creativity by trying to conform to others.
2.	The pianist was appreciated for his <u>sense of musicality.</u>	The natural talent, sensitivity, or ability to understand, feel, and express music beautifully.
3.	When one of the performers in the group was injured, they felt their practise <u>would go down the drain.</u>	To be completely wasted, ruined, or lost without achieving the intended result.

V. Read the dialogues given below.

- Oh, how much I enjoy performing this piece!
- Wah, how soulful! You all have done a wonderful job!

Sentences 1. and 2. are _____ sentences. (declarative/interrogative/exclamatory/imperative)

Now, convert the exclamatory sentences given above to declarative sentences.

Use 'exclaimed' or 'exclaimed with (feeling)' instead of reporting verb 'said'

Remove interjections, exclamatory mark, and quotations.

Ans :

Sentences 1. and 2. are **exclamatory** sentences.

- I enjoy performing this piece very much.
- You all have done a wonderfully soulful job.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

VI. Write the sentences given below in reported speech. One example has been done for you.

- "Wow Shruti! You're a sensation!" suggested Avinash.
Avinash exclaimed with wonder that Shruti was a great sensation.
- "What an incredible achievement! I can't believe we pulled it off!" said Iqbal.
Iqbal exclaimed that it _____.
- "Bravo! Each note was executed perfectly, and the performance was flawless!" said Shruti's mother.
Shruti's mother applauded that _____.
- Iqbal** : I basically have a little bit of scolding for breakfast every day!
- Shruti** : Sorry mummy, won't hide from you again. I promise!
- Avinash** : You are a sensation now! The least you can do is throw a party!

Ans :

- Avinash exclaimed with wonder that Shruti was a sensation.
- Iqbal exclaimed that it was an incredible achievement and that he couldn't believe they had pulled it off.
- Shruti's mother applauded that each note had been executed perfectly and the performance had been flawless.
- Iqbal stated humorously that he basically had a little bit of scolding for breakfast every day.

5. Shruti apologized to her mummy and promised that she would not hide anything from her again.
6. Avinash exclaimed that she was a sensation then and suggested that the least she could do was throw a party.

VII. Report the following dialogue in the indirect form of speech.

ASMA : Wow! What a unique experience I had at the art studio today!

DEEPA : Tell me! I'm eager to hear!

ASMA : I accidentally spilled paint all over my canvas.

DEEPA : Oh, my goodness! What a pity!

ASMA : No worries! The painting now looks better than my original plan!

DEEPA : That's incredible!

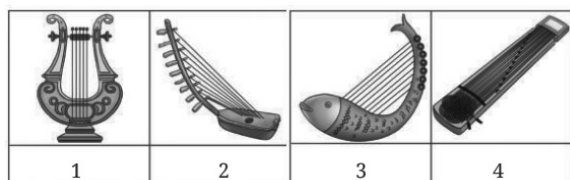
Asma exclaimed excitedly that she 1. _____. Deepa urged her to tell her as she was eager to hear. Asma said that 2. _____. Deepa pitied Asma. However, Asma replied to her not to worry as 3. _____. Deepa exclaimed that 4. _____.

Ans :

Asma exclaimed excitedly that she 1. **had a very unique experience at the art studio that day.** Deepa urged her to tell her as she was eager to hear. Asma said that 2. **she had accidentally spilled paint all over her canvas.** Deepa pitied Asma. However, Asma replied to her not to worry as 3. **the painting then looked better than her original plan.** Deepa exclaimed that 4. **it was incredible.**

Listen and Respond

- I. Look at the given stringed musical instruments and decide which one could be the yazh [yāl].**



Ans :

Based on historical characteristics of the ancient Tamil 'yazh'—which is traditionally a bow-shaped or boat-shaped harp—instruments 2 and 3 resemble it the most.

- II. Now, listen to a musician describing the yazh and check if your choice was correct. (Transcript for teacher on page 270)**

Ans :

Note : This is a classroom listening activity. Please listen to the audio provided by your teacher to verify your choice.

- III. Listen to the musician's description of the yazh once again. As you listen, complete the notes below with not more than three words.**

The Yazh

1. Type of instrument – The Indian _____
 - (i) Was used in: _____
 - (ii) Earlier version of: _____
2. Design
 - (i) stem tip – shaped like _____ of mythological animal
 - (ii) resonator
 - A. shape of a _____
 - B. material – _____
3. Design variety
 - (i) peacock, _____, _____, and bow string

Ans :

1. Type of instrument – The Indian **harp**
 - (i) Was used in: **ancient Tamil music**
 - (ii) Earlier version of: **the Veena**
2. Design
 - (i) stem tip – shaped like **head** of mythological animal
 - (ii) resonator
 - A. shape of a **boat** (or bowl)
 - B. material – **wood**
3. Design variety
 - (i) peacock, **fish (makara)**, **crocodile**, and bow string

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

Speaking Activity

- I. Stress and intonation exercises can be a great way to understand the emotional and rhythmic feelings associated with dialogues in a play.**
1. Let us pick a few lines from the play and speak them aloud. Focus on how stress and intonation can change their meaning or emotional impact.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

Ans :

- i. B. traditional values and modern expressions
- ii. The extract uses the word 'lost' both in the sense of losing **connection to traditional roots** and physical separation.
- iii. duty
- iv. It can be inferred that Shruti will confidently pursue and excel in both classical and fusion music without the burden of guilt. With her father's backing, she will flourish as an artist who respects her roots while successfully exploring creative new musical avenues.
- v. "each bay, its own wind"

II. Answer the following questions.

1. Justify the title 'Twin Melodies'. How does the play explore the theme of tradition and modernity?

Ans :

The title 'Twin Melodies' perfectly symbolizes the harmonious blending of two distinct musical styles: traditional Classical Hindustani music and modern Western music. The play explores tradition through Nabin Sharma's strict adherence to classical roots, and modernity through Shruti's desire to experiment with a fusion band. Ultimately, the play resolves this conflict by showing that tradition and modernity do not have to cancel each other out; they can coexist harmoniously, much like twin melodies creating a beautiful fusion.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

2. What are the different perspectives of Peter, Iqbal, and Avinash regarding confronting figures of authority? How do their attitudes towards Shruti's dilemma with her father provide insight into their own characters and values?

Ans :

Peter is practical and suggests a casual approach ("Just tell them you come for the practice"), showing he treats authority figures with ease. Avinash is direct and realistic, warning Shruti that hiding the truth makes things worse, which shows he values honesty and facing consequences head-on. Iqbal is highly optimistic and uses humor, suggesting that parental scolding is a harmless, everyday occurrence. Their varying attitudes reveal that they are supportive, independent friends who handle authority much more casually than Shruti, contrasting sharply with her deep-seated reverence and fear of her traditional father.

3. Analyse the character of Nabin Sharma. How does his attitude towards music evolve throughout the play?

Ans :

Nabin Sharma is initially portrayed as an orthodox, authoritarian purist who believes classical music is the only acceptable art form and views modern fusion as a "desecration." However, his character shows immense growth. When he secretly watches Shruti perform, he genuinely appreciates the beauty of the fusion and sees that her classical foundation remains flawlessly intact. Reminded by his wife of his own youthful rebellion—choosing the violin over his family's vocal tradition—he becomes open-minded and supportive, realizing that art must evolve and that his fears were baseless.

4. How does the play use Shruti's internal conflict to explore the theme of duty towards family versus personal passion?

Ans :

Shruti's deep internal conflict drives the play's narrative. She is intensely passionate about playing the violin in the fusion band (personal passion), but she equally respects her strict father and his traditional views (family duty). Her hesitation to tell the truth and her willingness to quit the band just to keep peace show the heavy emotional burden placed on children when their ambitions diverge from parental expectations. The play uses this dilemma to illustrate that honest communication and mutual respect can eventually reconcile personal desires with family loyalty.

5. Evaluate the effectiveness of the play's conclusion. Does it realistically address the conflicts presented?

Ans :

The play's conclusion is both highly effective and heartwarming. Nabin's realization is realistic because it is not sudden; it is triggered by two powerful factors. First, he witnesses Shruti's impeccable classical technique thriving within the fusion piece. Second, Leela reminds him of his own past, mirroring Shruti's rebellion when he chose a Western instrument (the violin) over his family's vocal lineage. This logical reasoning makes his change of heart believable and resolves the generational conflict constructively.

sitting on the floor, staring blankly at her tablas, wearing a look of distress. The invitation letter for the prestigious event is crumpled in her hand. Rohan enters the room enthusiastically.

ROHAN : Anu! Did you reply to the event organizers yet? You have to say yes!

ANURADHA : (sighs, lost in her thoughts) I don't know, Rohan. You know how Papa feels about this. He thinks the tabla is just an accompaniment, not a primary art for our family.

ROHAN : (rolling his eyes) Arrgh! He just wants everyone to sing. But you are a maestro on the tabla!

(Mrs. Sharma enters carrying a tray of snacks. She notices Anuradha's worried face.)

MRS. SHARMA : (gently) What is troubling you, my dear? Still thinking about the concert?

ANURADHA : Yes, Ma. If I perform, Papa will be furious. He reiterated just yesterday that I should start vocal training seriously. But my heart is in these beats... (points to the tabla).

MRS. SHARMA : (smiles warmly and places a hand on her shoulder) Anuradha, your father is rigid, but he respects true talent. You must follow your passion. We are rooting for you.

ANURADHA : (Aside) Oh, how I wish he could see what I feel when I play. Maybe if I just prove myself on that stage... I have to bite the bullet. (Suddenly, Mr. Sharma's voice booms from the hallway.)

MR. SHARMA : (loudly) Anuradha! Have you practiced your vocal ragas today?

(Mr. Sharma enters the room. He stops and looks at the tabla, his expression hardening.)

MR. SHARMA : (sternly) I see you are still wasting time on this... noise-making. Have you considered what I told you about focusing on vocals?

ANURADHA : (timidly, but gathering courage) Papa, actually I... er... I have been invited to play a solo tabla piece at the city's Cultural Fest next week. And... I have decided to participate.

MR. SHARMA : (his face turning red) What? Without consulting me? You are choosing this over our family's vocal tradition?

ROHAN : (quickly) But Papa, she is amazing at it!

MR. SHARMA : (calmly but firmly) Quiet, Rohan. Anuradha, I am deeply disappointed. You are throwing away your musicality.

ANURADHA : (voice trembling but firm) No, Papa. I am finding my own rhythm. Please, just come and watch me. Just once.

(Mr. Sharma stares at her for a moment, then turns and leaves the room in silence. Anuradha looks at her mother, holding back tears.)

MRS. SHARMA : (comforting her) Don't worry. Give it time. Just focus on your practice.

(Anuradha nods slowly, wiping a tear, and places her hands on the tabla. Curtain down.)

Learning Beyond the Text

I. Study the words given in brackets in the following dialogues taken from the text. What do you notice?

- **Iqbal :** (a little loudly) Shruti!
- **Avinash :** (very loudly) SHRUTI!
- **Nabin :** (calmly but firmly) No is the answer.
- **Iqbal :** (picking up a newspaper from his desk)...
- **Nabin :** (getting up)...

1. Why do we not use inverted commas to convey the dialogues?

Ans :

In a play script, dialogues are not enclosed in inverted commas (quotation marks) because the structural format dictates that everything written after the character's name and the colon is spoken text. This eliminates the need for quotation marks to distinguish speech from narrative text.

2. Where do we use colons?

Ans :

We use colons immediately after the character's name to indicate that the text following it is the exact dialogue the character is speaking.

3. What is written within the brackets? What do these convey?

Ans :

The text written within the brackets represents stage directions. They convey the manner, tone, emotional state, or physical actions of the character while delivering the dialogue (e.g., "very loudly", "getting up").

4. How does it help the actors?

Ans :

It acts as an essential guide for the actors, helping them understand exactly how the playwright intends the line to be delivered. It dictates their facial expressions, volume, physical movement, and emotional portrayal, ensuring the performance aligns perfectly with the story's intended mood.

II. Did you know that there is an orchestra that made musical instruments from recycling junk or discarded waste items?

There is one such orchestra, called the Recycled Orchestra of Cateura, Paraguay, that was formed in 2012, and children are a part of it. They play musical instruments made from scrap materials collected from landfills.



Ans :

Yes, there is an orchestra called the **Recycled Orchestra of Cateura** in Paraguay. It was formed in 2012, and the children in the orchestra play musical instruments made from recycled scrap materials collected from landfills.

III. Indigenous musical instruments are crafted from natural materials like bamboo, gourds, animal hides, and shells, reflecting a deep connection to the environment and cultural heritage. These instruments are diverse, ranging from percussion instruments like drums and rattles to wind instruments like flutes, etc. Find out more about such indigenous instruments that are used in your region.

Ans :

In India, there are many indigenous instruments crafted from natural materials. For example:

Ektara : A one-stringed instrument made from a dried gourd or a wooden bowl covered with animal skin, commonly used in folk music.

Bansuri : A classical Indian flute made entirely from a single hollow shaft of bamboo.

Kanjira : A South Indian frame drum traditionally made from the wood of the jackfruit tree and monitor lizard skin.

IV. In groups of five, select objects around yourself to create a rhythm.

Present it in the class. Enjoy!

Ans :

A **water bottle** (tap it for beats)

A **table or desk** (use hands for bass sounds)

Pencils or pens (tap together for sharp sounds)

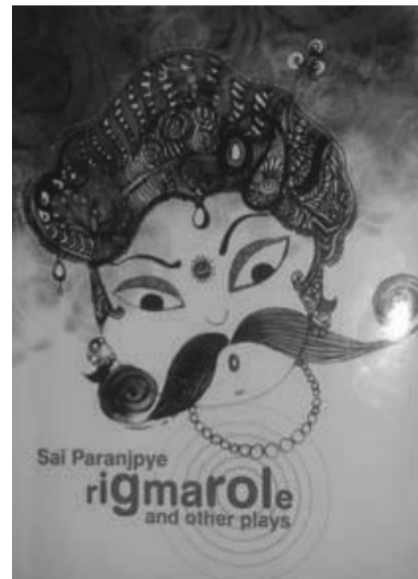
A **metal spoon and glass** (for ringing tones)

A **box or container** (for drum-like beats)

Combine these sounds to make a pattern (e.g., tap-tap-clap-tap) and practice it together as a group. Then present your rhythm creatively in class.

V. Read the book *Rigmarole and Other Plays* by Sai Paranjpye and enjoy the humour and wit.

Rigmarole and Other Plays, a collection by Sai Paranjpye, includes the play 'Rigmarole,' which follows a silly King, his Council of nine Ministers, and a bed bug, leading to humorous events. Other plays in the collection, like 'The Boy Who Wrote a Constitution,' seek to educate children while entertaining them.



Ans :

Rigmarole and Other Plays by Sai Paranjpye is a collection of humorous and entertaining plays. The play **Rigmarole** is about a silly king, his council of nine ministers, and a bed bug, leading to funny situations. Other plays in the book, such as **The Boy Who Wrote a Constitution**, aim to both educate and entertain children with wit and creativity.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. What is the name of the protagonist?

- (a) Shikha (b) Shruti
(c) Smriti (d) Sumita

Ans :

- (b) Shruti

2. Which instrument does Iqbal play?

- (a) The tabla (b) The piano
(c) The flute (d) The sitar

Ans :

- (c) The flute

3. What does Avinash play in the band?

- (a) Keyboard (b) Flute
(c) Violin (d) Tabla

Ans :

- (d) Tabla

4. What instrument does Peter play?

- (a) Keyboard (b) Drumset
(c) Guitars (d) Trumpet

Ans :

- (a) Keyboard

5. What kind of band did the friends form?

- (a) Purely Classical
(b) Indo-Western fusion
(c) Western Rock only
(d) Traditional Jazz

Ans :

- (b) Indo-Western fusion

6. Which instrument does Shruti play?

- (a) The flute (b) The cello
(c) The violin (d) The tabla

Ans :

- (c) The violin

7. Where was Shruti praised as a musical sensation?

- (a) On television
(b) On the radio
(c) In a magazine
(d) In the newspaper

Ans :

- (d) In the newspaper

8. Shruti's father is a strict follower of _____.

- (a) Classical Hindustani music
(b) Western Classical music
(c) Modern Fusion pop
(d) Contemporary Jazz

Ans :

- (a) Classical Hindustani music

9. Why is Shruti terrified to tell her father about the band?

- (a) He hates when she spends too much time with her friends instead of studying.
(b) He feels playing Western tunes on the violin is a desecration of the instrument.
(c) He believes that she should only focus on her academics and stop playing music.
(d) He thinks that she is not talented enough to perform on a big public concert stage.

Ans :

- (b) He feels playing Western tunes on the violin is a desecration of the instrument.

10. What term does Nabin use for playing Western tunes on the violin?

- (a) Innovation (b) Masterpiece
(c) Desecratio (d) Improvement

Ans :

- (c) Desecration

11. What idiom do Shruti's friends use to encourage her?

- (a) Break a leg (b) Face the music
(c) Spill the beans (d) Bite the bullet

Ans :

- (d) Bite the bullet

12. Shruti does not want to hurt her father because she deeply _____ him.

- (a) respects (b) dislikes
(c) resents (d) ignores

Ans :

- (a) respects

13. When does Shruti decide to break the news to her parents?

- (a) During breakfast (b) During dinner
(c) During teatime (d) During bedtime

Ans :

- (b) During dinner

37. Nabin realizes classical music is powerful enough to hold its own in a modern _____ setting.
- (a) acoustic (b) fusion
(c) orchestra (d) vocal

Ans :

(b) fusion

38. What does Nabin joyfully tell Shruti at the end?
- (a) He will join the band
(b) He will play with her
(c) He trusts her fully
(d) He bought new tickets

Ans :

(c) He trusts her fully

39. Which of the following correctly describes the resolution of the play?
- (a) Shruti decides to completely abandon her fusion band forever.
(b) Nabin forbids Shruti from playing the violin in public again.
(c) Leela tells Shruti to secretly practice without telling Nabin.
(d) Nabin supports Shruti's artistic freedom and promises to cheer.

Ans :

(d) Nabin supports Shruti's artistic freedom and promises to cheer.

40. What physical action perfectly resolves the family conflict?
- (a) A warm hug (b) A firm handshake
(c) A respectful bow (d) A high five

Ans :

(a) A warm hug

41. How does the play define the central theme of "Twin Melodies"?
- (a) The total replacement of traditional Indian values with modern Western ideals.
(b) The harmonious blending of traditional values and modern artistic expressions.
(c) The strict separation of classical Indian music from contemporary global music.
(d) The inevitable conflict and misunderstanding between parents and their children.

Ans :

(b) The harmonious blending of traditional values and modern artistic expressions.

42. The play teaches that a generational gap does not have to result in permanent _____.
- (a) separation (b) confusion
(c) conflict (d) distance

Ans :

(c) conflict

43. What is essential to balance personal passions with traditional duties?
- (a) Complete secrecy
(b) Financial support
(c) Strict discipline
(d) Open communication

Ans :

(d) Open communication

44. **Assertion (A):** The old and the new can peacefully coexist side by side.

Reason (R): The play demonstrates this through the fusion of Eastern and Western music.

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.
(b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation.
(c) A is true, but R is false.
(d) A is false, but R is true.

Ans :

(a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.

45. What metaphor does the title "Twin Melodies" represent?
- (a) Two different bands
(b) Two rival musicians
(c) Eastern and Western music
(d) Mother and daughter

Ans :

(c) Eastern and Western music

46. What ultimately convinces Nabin to change his mind about Shruti's music?
- (a) He reads the positive newspaper review about her being a musical sensation.
(b) Her friends Avinash and Iqbal come over and explain the music to him.
(c) He realizes that the fusion concert will bring the family great financial wealth.
(d) He witnesses her skill firsthand and remembers his own youthful rebellion.

- (a) Her band members (b) Her parents
(c) Her siblings (d) Her neighbors

Ans :

(b) Her parents

26. How does Nabin feel as he watches his daughter play?

- (a) Deeply annoyed
(b) Very disappointed
(c) Completely amazed
(d) Highly frustrated

Ans :

(c) Completely amazed

27. Nabin realizes that Shruti has not lost her _____.

- (a) moral values (b) focus on school
(c) sense of rhythm (d) classical roots

Ans :

(d) classical roots

28. How is Shruti blending the classical roots with new music?

- (a) Beautifully (b) Awkwardly
(c) Carelessly (d) Forcefully

Ans :

(a) Beautifully

29. **Assertion (A):** Nabin's anger ultimately melts away.

Reason (R): He realizes he had once been in Shruti's exact position.

- (a) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation.
(b) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.
(c) A is true, but R is false.
(d) A is false, but R is true.

Ans :

(b) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.

30. Who plays a crucial role in opening Nabin's eyes?

- (a) Iqbal (b) Peter
(c) Leela (d) Avinash

Ans :

(c) Leela

31. What does Leela remind Nabin of?

- (a) His old friends (b) His school days
(c) His first concert (d) His own youth

Ans :

(d) His own youth

32. What was Nabin's family's traditional music heritage?

- (a) Vocal music (b) Flute music
(c) Sitar music (d) Tabla music

Ans :

(a) Vocal music

33. Against what did Nabin rebel in his youth?

- (a) His strict school
(b) His family's heritage
(c) His vocal coach
(d) His music teacher

Ans :

(b) His family's heritage

34. Which of the following statements is correct regarding Nabin's past?

- (a) He wanted to play the keyboard instead of singing classical music.
(b) He always followed his family's strict traditional vocal heritage.
(c) He rebelled against his family's heritage to play a Western instrument.
(d) He quit playing the violin because he realized it was a desecration.

Ans :

(c) He rebelled against his family's heritage to play a Western instrument.

35. What Western instrument did Nabin choose to play?

- (a) The keyboard (b) The guitar
(c) The cello (d) The violin

Ans :

(d) The violin

36. After remembering his past, Nabin accepts that his fears were _____.

- (a) baseless (b) justified
(c) accurate (d) essential

Ans :

(a) baseless

9. What is Nabin's immediate reaction upon hearing about the fusion concert?

Ans :

Nabin reacts with strong disapproval and deep disappointment. He stubbornly feels that Shruti has completely lost her sense of true musicality by blending classical roots with western styles, viewing her artistic choices as a betrayal of their cherished traditions.

10. What promise does Shruti make to her parents after being scolded?

Ans :

Feeling intensely guilty about the tension she caused, Shruti promises her parents that she will never hide things from them again. She realizes the emotional toll her secrecy took and commits to maintaining honest communication with her family moving forward.

11. Between family duty and her musical passion, what does Shruti prioritize after the confrontation?

Ans :

After the tense confrontation, Shruti prioritizes her family duty over her musical passion. She deeply respects her parents and decides that maintaining family harmony is far more important than pursuing her art, even if it means sacrificing her own happiness.

12. What does Shruti plan to tell her bandmates following the dinner incident?

Ans :

Heartbroken but resolute, Shruti plans to tell her friends that she has to quit the fusion band permanently. She intends to explain that her family obligations and her father's strict disapproval leave her no choice but to step away entirely.

13. Why does Shruti decide to play her fusion piece one last time in her room?

Ans :

Before quitting the band completely, Shruti decides to practice her fusion piece one last time. She desperately wants to experience the joy of playing her beloved music once more, treating it as a final, private farewell to her artistic passion.

14. What happens when Shruti is practicing her fusion piece for the last time?

Ans :

As Shruti emotionally plays her final fusion piece,

her parents, Nabin and Leela, secretly enter her room. They stand silently and watch her perform, allowing Nabin to directly experience the true depth, beauty, and sincerity of his daughter's unique expression.

15. How does Nabin's perspective change as he secretly watches Shruti play her violin?

Ans :

Watching her play, Nabin is completely amazed. His anger melts away as he realizes Shruti has not lost her classical roots at all. Instead, he sees that she is beautifully and seamlessly blending traditional melodies with modern contemporary musical elements.

16. What crucial role does Leela play in changing Nabin's strict mindset?

Ans :

Leela plays a pivotal role by gently reminding Nabin of his own youth. She helps him realize that he, too, had once rebelled against his family's strict vocal music heritage to play a Western instrument, thereby completely opening his eyes.

17. How does Nabin's own youth mirror Shruti's current situation?

Ans :

Nabin's family possessed a strict traditional vocal music heritage, but in his youth, he rebelled against it to play the violin, a Western instrument. Shruti's current experimentation with fusion music perfectly mirrors his own past intense desire for artistic freedom.

18. How does Nabin express his final decision regarding Shruti's musical career?

Ans :

Nabin joyfully tells Shruti that he trusts her fully. He completely supports her artistic freedom, accepting that classical music thrives in a fusion setting. He eagerly encourages her to continue with the band and enthusiastically promises to cheer for her.

19. What does the physical gesture of a "warm hug" symbolize at the end of the play?

Ans :

The warm hug symbolizes reconciliation, mutual respect, and the bridging of the generational gap. It physically represents the immediate restoration of family harmony and the peaceful coexistence of traditional classical values alongside beautiful, modern artistic expressions.

Ans :

(d) He witnesses her skill firsthand and remembers his own youthful rebellion.

47. Which value is highly emphasized at the conclusion of the play?

- (a) Understanding (b) Competition
(c) Perfection (d) Obedience

Ans :

(a) Understanding

48. What is the primary message the author wants to convey to the audience?

- (a) Parents must always enforce their strict beliefs to guide their children properly.
(b) Embracing the new does not mean one has to abandon respect for the old traditions.
(c) Young artists must completely break away from their families to achieve real success.
(d) Classical Hindustani music cannot survive if it is mixed with Western instruments.

Ans :

(b) Embracing the new does not mean one has to abandon respect for the old traditions.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Who are the members of the Indo-Western fusion band and what instruments do they play?

Ans :

The Indo-Western fusion band consists of four talented friends. Shruti plays the violin, Iqbal plays the flute, Avinash handles the tabla, and Peter plays the keyboard. Together, they create a unique musical blend combining both classical and modern western elements.

2. How does the public initially react to Shruti's musical talent?

Ans :

Shruti's musical talent receives immense public appreciation. She is widely recognized and praised as a musical sensation in a local newspaper. This positive media coverage highlights her exceptional skills on the violin and the growing popularity of her fusion band.

3. Why is Nabin considered a strict traditionalist in the context of music?

Ans :

Nabin is a strict traditionalist who deeply reveres

Classical Hindustani music. He holds rigid views on musical purity, firmly believing that playing modern or Western tunes on a classical instrument like the violin is an absolute desecration of the art.

4. Why is Shruti terrified to reveal her involvement in the fusion band to her father?

Ans :

Shruti is terrified because she knows her father strictly follows Classical Hindustani music. He believes playing Western music is a desecration. She deeply respects him and fears that her involvement in an Indo-Western fusion band will completely break his heart.

5. What advice do Shruti's friends give her regarding her secret?

Ans :

Shruti's friends urge her to "bite the bullet," meaning she needs to face the difficult situation bravely. They encourage her to stop hiding her true passion and openly communicate with her parents about the fusion band, despite her father's strict views.

6. Why does Shruti hesitate to hurt her father despite her passion for the fusion band?

Ans :

Shruti is heavily torn because she possesses a deep, profound respect for her father and his traditional values. Despite her intense love for fusion music, she cannot bear the thought of hurting him or causing a rift in their relationship.

7. When and how does Shruti decide to break the news about her band to her parents?

Ans :

After gathering her courage, Shruti decides to finally break the news about her musical endeavors to her parents during dinner. She politely informs them about her upcoming concert and earnestly begs her father to attend just one single rehearsal.

8. Why does Leela, Shruti's mother, scold her during the dinner confrontation?

Ans :

During the dinner confrontation, Leela scolds Shruti not necessarily for playing fusion music, but for hiding the truth from them for so long. She emphasizes the vital importance of honesty, trust, and open communication within their family's daily dynamics.

5. Imagine you are Shruti after the disastrous dinner confrontation. Write a diary entry expressing your grief over deciding to quit the band to honor your father's wishes.

Ans :

Dear Diary,

My heart is completely shattered tonight. The dinner confrontation went worse than I had ever imagined. Mother scolded me for hiding the truth, and Father's strong disapproval felt like a physical blow. He believes I have lost my true musicality and disrespected the art form he loves deeply.

I promised never to hide anything again, but the price is my own happiness. I have decided to quit the fusion band. My sense of duty and respect for my parents must come before my personal passion.

It breaks my heart to leave Iqbal, Avinash, and Peter behind, but I cannot bear to hurt my father. Tomorrow, I will play my fusion piece one last time in secret, just to say goodbye.

Shruti

6. Evaluate the character of Leela. How does she act as a bridge between the rigid traditions of her husband and the modern aspirations of her daughter?

Ans :

Leela serves as the emotional anchor and the ultimate peacemaker in "Twin Melodies." Unlike Nabin, who is blinded by strict traditionalism, Leela maintains a balanced and highly practical perspective. During the dinner confrontation, she scolds Shruti not for the fusion music itself, but for the secrecy, highlighting her core values of honesty and open family communication. Most importantly, Leela acts as a crucial bridge between her husband and daughter. When Nabin watches Shruti play her final rehearsal, it is Leela who astutely reminds him of his own youthful rebellion against his family's vocal heritage. By invoking his past, she skillfully dismantles his baseless fears, fostering mutual understanding and successfully guiding the family towards a harmonious, loving reconciliation.

7. Imagine Shruti is asked to give a short speech at her fusion concert about the importance of blending old and new traditions. Draft the speech.

Ans :

Good evening, everyone!

Thank you for being here tonight. Standing on this stage, surrounded by my incredible friends,

feels like a beautiful dream. Our music—this Indo-Western fusion—is not just a mix of instruments, but a meaningful dialogue between generations.

For a long time, I believed that embracing modern music meant leaving behind my classical roots. However, I have realized that tradition and modernity can exist together in harmony. Just as my violin respects classical music while adapting to contemporary styles, we too can balance our heritage with new ideas.

This performance is a reflection of that understanding and growth. I dedicate it wholeheartedly to my wonderful parents, whose values and support have shaped who I am today.

8. Music acts as both a source of conflict and a medium of reconciliation in the play. Elaborate on this statement with reference to the text.

Ans :

In "Twin Melodies," music is the central motif driving both the narrative's conflict and its ultimate resolution. Initially, music creates a deep divide. Nabin's rigid devotion to Classical Hindustani music and his belief that playing Western tunes on a violin is a desecration causes Shruti to fearfully hide her fusion band. This contrasting view of music breeds secrecy, culminating in the tense dinner confrontation. However, music also becomes the ultimate medium for healing. When Nabin secretly listens to Shruti's final practice, the sheer artistic beauty of her playing completely transcends his prejudices. He realizes she hasn't lost her classical roots but expanded them. Thus, the shared universal language of music bridges the generational gap, melting his anger completely.

9. Imagine Nabin writes a letter to his own late father after accepting Shruti's fusion music, reflecting on his own rebellion and his daughter's journey. Draft this letter.

Ans :

Dear Father,

I write to you today with a humbled and open heart. For years, I held firmly to the purity of our classical traditions, forgetting my own past. Today, I discovered my daughter, Shruti, performing in an Indo-Western fusion band, and my initial reaction was one of anger, as I saw it as disrespect to the violin.

However, as I quietly watched her perform, a realization struck me. Leela reminded me of my own youth—how I once went against our strict vocal tradition to choose the violin. I

20. What is the significance of the title “Twin Melodies” in relation to the play’s theme?

Ans :

The title “Twin Melodies” serves as a powerful metaphor for the harmonious coexistence of Eastern and Western music. It underscores the play’s central theme that embracing new ideas does not require abandoning one’s profound respect for deep-rooted cultural traditions.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Discuss the central theme of the generation gap as portrayed in “Twin Melodies” and how open communication helps resolve it.

Ans :

“Twin Melodies” highlights the generational gap through the conflict between Nabin’s traditional ideals and Shruti’s modern aspirations. Nabin views classical music as sacred and strictly opposes any fusion, while Shruti represents the dynamic youth who wish to blend the old with the new. Initially, this gap breeds fear, causing Shruti to hide her band. However, the play emphasizes that such gaps need not cause permanent conflict. The resolution is achieved through open communication and observation. When Nabin actually listens to Shruti play and Leela reminds him of his own rebellious past, mutual respect is established. The story demonstrates that generational differences can be easily bridged with empathy, honest dialogue, and a willingness to understand each other’s unique perspectives.

2. Attempt a character sketch of Shruti, highlighting her internal conflict between her passion for music and her devotion to her family.

Ans :

Shruti is a dedicated, talented, and deeply respectful young girl. As the protagonist, she shows exceptional skill in playing the violin and earns recognition as a musical sensation. Her personality reflects discipline, sincerity, and a strong sense of responsibility.

However, her character is shaped by an intense internal conflict. On one hand, she is passionate about her Indo-Western fusion band, while on the other, she holds great respect for her traditional father. She is not rebellious; rather, her fear of disappointing him makes her hide her talent. When the truth comes out, she chooses family harmony over personal ambition and decides to

leave the band.

Her true success lies in maintaining a balance between tradition and modernity. She stays true to her artistic identity while respecting her family values. In the end, Shruti represents how one can honor tradition without giving up personal passion.

3. Imagine the conversation between Shruti and her friends (Avinash, Iqbal, Peter) when she initially expressed her fear of telling her father. Write a short dialogue.

Ans :

Avinash: Shruti, the concert is next week. You have to tell your parents. We need you!

Shruti: I can’t, Avinash. You know my father. He worships Classical Hindustani music. If he finds out I’m playing Western tunes on the violin, he’ll consider it a desecration.

Peter: But you are a sensation! The newspaper review proved it. Why hide your incredible talent?

Shruti: Because I respect him deeply. I can’t bear the thought of breaking his heart or causing a permanent rift at home.

Iqbal: Shruti, you have to bite the bullet. You can’t live a double life forever.

Shruti: I know, Iqbal. It is terrifying, but I will try to break the news at dinner tonight. Just pray he understands.

Analyze the irony in Nabin’s initial reaction to Shruti’s music in light of his own past. How does this realization bring about a transformation in him?

Ans :

Nabin’s initial reaction to Shruti’s fusion music is highly ironic because he vehemently condemns the very act of musical rebellion that he himself committed in his youth. Coming from a strict family with a traditional vocal music heritage, young Nabin rebelled by choosing to play the violin, which was considered a Western instrument. Yet, as a father, he rigidly gatekeeps classical music and labels Shruti’s fusion efforts as a “desecration.” It is Leela who points out this hypocrisy, opening his eyes. Recognizing his own youthful desire for artistic freedom in his daughter, his anger melts into complete amazement. The irony serves as a catalyst for his transformation, allowing him to accept and proudly support Shruti’s unique musical journey.

- (b) Strict yet surprisingly receptive
- (c) Openly and warmly supportive
- (d) Angrily and highly impatient
- iii. What does Shruti's use of "er" and her stammering reveal about her state of mind?
- iv. Which word in Leela's dialogue is used as a synonym for "give up" or "leave behind"?
- v. State whether the following statement is True or False:
Shruti is perfectly confident and articulate when addressing her father.

Ans :

- i. (b) To lighten the tense atmosphere
- ii. (b) Strict yet surprisingly receptive
- iii. Shruti's use of "er" and her stammering reveals that she is nervous and hesitant about telling her father something she fears he may disapprove of.
- iv. Abandon
- v. False, because she stammers and uses conversational fillers like "er", showing her hesitation and nervousness.

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Nabin: (calmly but firmly) No is the answer. You know my rule—one performance in every six months. More than that, familiarity breeds contempt. Work on your art and everything will follow. And which concert is this anyway, of which I haven't heard?

Shruti: It is a group performance papa, next week.
Nabin: And this is what you have judged best for yourself? To drown your individual style in the hubbub of an orchestra is hardly a wise choice, Shruti. Besides, what exactly is this concert? I don't know of any scheduled next week."

- i. What does Nabin imply by the phrase "familiarity breeds contempt" in the context of musical performances?
 - (a) Overexposure reduces the core artistic value
 - (b) Performing too often makes artists famous
 - (c) Knowing the audience directly causes mistakes
 - (d) Practice always makes the performance perfect
- ii. Which two beliefs drive Nabin's rejection of Shruti's concert?
 - 1. Orchestras suppress an artist's individual musical style.

2. He has not been informed about this concert beforehand.

- (a) Both 1 and 2 are true
- (b) Only 1 is true here
- (c) Only 2 is true here
- (d) Neither 1 nor 2 is true

- iii. Why does Nabin object to Shruti performing in an orchestra?
- iv. State the exact word from Nabin's dialogue that means "to submerge" or "to lose" one's distinct musical voice.
- v. According to the extract, Nabin strictly follows a rule of allowing only one performance every ____.

Ans :

- i. (a) Overexposure reduces the core artistic value
- ii. (a) Both 1 and 2 are true
- iii. Nabin believes that playing in an orchestra would drown her individual style in the hubbub of a group performance.
- iv. Drown
- v. six months

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Peter: Tell us later. Let's start practice first.
Avinash: Yes, we'd better start right away. I have to leave early today.

Shruti: (Aside) Oh, how much I enjoy performing this piece. Perhaps I can practise one last time and soon after that I will tell them that I can't join them for the performance.

(They begin practice. In the middle of the performance, Shruti's parents enter the room and stand in a corner. Slowly, her parents become engrossed and Shruti's father taps his feet and is seen evidently enjoying."

- i. Why does Shruti speak an "(Aside)" in this scene?
 - (a) To reveal a secret intent to the audience
 - (b) To communicate silently with her friends
 - (c) To hide her musical mistakes from Peter
 - (d) To loudly announce her final decision
- ii. **Assertion (A):** Shruti intends to quit the fusion group after this practice session.
Reason (R): She does not enjoy playing the Indo-western fusion piece at all.
 - (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.
 - (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation.

understood that I was repeating the same cycle of misunderstanding with my daughter.

Shruti plays with remarkable grace, blending classical depth with modern rhythm. I have now realized that accepting new forms of expression does not diminish tradition; instead, it allows it to grow and evolve.

Your loving son,

Nabin

10. “Embracing the new does not mean one has to abandon respect for the old traditions.” Justify this statement based on the resolution of “Twin Melodies.”

Ans :

The play “Twin Melodies” perfectly encapsulates the idea that progress and tradition are not mutually exclusive. Shruti beautifully exemplifies this by mastering classical roots while creatively integrating them into an Indo-Western fusion band. Her father, Nabin, initially believes that adopting Western styles naturally equates to a loss of true musicality and respect for their heritage. However, the resolution proves otherwise. When Nabin actually hears Shruti play, he recognizes that her classical foundation is still robust and gracefully elevated by modern contemporary elements. He realizes that her artistic evolution is a continuation of their legacy, not a rejection of it. The play teaches that with mutual respect, traditional values can harmoniously coexist with, and even enrich, modern global expressions.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Shruti: There is need to worry Iqbal! You don’t know papa. He is very strict about these things. He will think it a desecration of the violin to be played to Western tunes. Papa firmly believes that Classical Hindustani music, with its ragas and aalaaps, is the only kind of music that an artist of any worth should play. I don’t want papa to feel that I don’t care about his opinions, because I do. It’s just that I want to give this a try too. I just don’t know how to tell him in the right way!”

- i. What does Shruti’s hesitation to tell her father reveal about her character?
- She is deeply rebellious
 - She is highly indifferent
 - She is fiercely ambitious

- (d) She is deeply respectful
- ii. **Statement I:** Shruti wants to disrespect her father’s core musical beliefs.

Statement II: Shruti wishes to explore fusion without hurting her father.

- Statement I is true, II is false.
 - Statement I is false, II is true.
 - Both statements are fully true.
 - Both statements are false here.
- iii. What kind of music does Shruti’s father believe a true artist should play?
- iv. Identify a word from the extract that means “the act of showing disrespect to something considered sacred”.
- v. Complete the sentence based on the extract’s logic:
- Shruti is conflicted because she wants to try playing Western tunes but does not want her father to feel that she does not care about his

-----.

Ans :

- (d) She is deeply respectful
- (b) Statement I is false, II is true.
- Shruti’s father believes that Classical Hindustani music with its ragas and aalaaps is the only music a worthy artist should play.
- Desecration
- opinions

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Leela: Shruti, why are you lost in thought, my dear child? If you are trying to find the right words to tell your dad that I make much better dosa than him, I suggest you abandon the mission. He doesn’t have the strength to face the truth.

Shruti: Yes, actually I... er ... was finding the right words to say something to you... to you papa.

But please promise to not get too angry with me.

Nabin: (suddenly serious. Sits down opposite to Shruti in an upright formal manner) No promises, child. But speak up.”

- Why does Leela talk about making “much better dosa” than Nabin?
 - To mock Nabin’s cooking skills
 - To lighten the tense atmosphere
 - To prove her culinary superiority
 - To distract Shruti from eating
- Which of the following best describes Nabin’s perspective as he says “No promises, child. But speak up”?
 - Playfully and entirely dismissive

14. Assertion (A): Shruti politely informs her parents about her concert.

Reason (R): She wants to quit the band immediately.

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.
- (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation.
- (c) A is true, but R is false.
- (d) A is false, but R is true.

Ans :

(c) A is true, but R is false.

15. What does Shruti beg her father to attend?

- (a) The main show (b) The prize setup
- (c) The band party (d) One rehearsal

Ans :

(d) One rehearsal

16. How does Nabin react to the news of the fusion concert?

- (a) Strong disapproval (b) Great excitement
- (c) Mild curiosity (d) Total indifference

Ans :

(a) Strong disapproval

17. Nabin feels Shruti has lost her sense of true -----.

- (a) responsibility (b) musicality
- (c) dedication (d) creativity

Ans :

(b) musicality

18. What is the name of Shruti's mother?

- (a) Meera (b) Sudha
- (c) Leela (d) Radha

Ans :

(c) Leela

19. Which of the following statements is correct about the dinner confrontation?

- (a) Nabin happily agrees to attend the main concert with Leela.
- (b) Leela praises Shruti for successfully hiding the fusion band.
- (c) Shruti firmly decides to run away from her traditional home.
- (d) Leela scolds Shruti for hiding the truth from them for so long.

Ans :

(d) Leela scolds Shruti for hiding the truth from them for so long.

20. After the scolding, what does Shruti promise her parents?

- (a) To never hide things
- (b) To stop playing music
- (c) To leave her friends
- (d) To play classical only

Ans :

(a) To never hide things

21. Shruti feels torn between her passion and her -----.

- (a) school studies (b) family duty
- (c) friend circle (d) future career

Ans :

(b) family duty

22. After the confrontation, what does Shruti decide is more important?

- (a) Her fusion band (b) Her public image
- (c) Her family duty (d) Her musical art

Ans :

(c) Her family duty

23. What does Shruti plan to tell her friends?

- (a) That they must practice more
- (b) That her parents will attend
- (c) That she needs a long break
- (d) That she has to quit the band

Ans :

(d) That she has to quit the band

24. Why does Shruti decide to practice her fusion piece one last time?

- (a) She wants to experience playing her beloved music before quitting the band entirely.
- (b) She is secretly hoping that her father will overhear her and change his strict mind.
- (c) She needs to record the song so her friends can use it at the upcoming music concert.
- (d) She is trying to prove to her mother that she is the best violinist in the entire town.

Ans :

(a) She wants to experience playing her beloved music before quitting the band entirely.

25. Who secretly enters the room during Shruti's final rehearsal?

- (c) A is true, but R is false.
- (d) A is false, but R is true.
- iii. How does Nabin's reaction during the practice session hint at a possible change in his opinion?
- iv. Identify the word from the bracketed stage directions that means "having their attention completely absorbed".
- v. State whether the following statement is True or False:
Avinash leaves the practice late because he wanted to hear Shruti's solo.

Ans :

- i. (a) To reveal a secret intent to the audience
 - ii. (c) A is true, but R is false.
 - iii. Nabin taps his feet and is seen evidently enjoying the music, suggesting he is being won over by the fusion performance.
 - iv. Engrossed
 - v. False, because Avinash explicitly states that he has to leave early today, which is why he urges the group to start right away.
5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :
- "Nabin: (warmly placing his hand on her shoulder) There is no need to thank me child. I must admit it was Leela who opened my eyes. I had forgotten my own past. It is your mother you should thank. Leela: Your own father, Shruti, had to go against his family's wishes to play the violin. His was a family of vocalists. Your grandfather, his father, and your uncles were all vocalists belonging to a highly traditional school. They painstakingly nurtured the flame of musical heritage and kept it alive through thick and thin."
- i. What does Nabin mean when he says, "I had forgotten my own past"?
 - (a) He forgot his childhood instrument
 - (b) He forgot his grandfather's teachings
 - (c) He forgot his own youthful rebellion
 - (d) He forgot his family's exact origins
 - ii. Which of the following best describes Leela's role in this familial interaction?
 - (a) A strict disciplinarian
 - (b) A passive observer
 - (c) An emotional mediator
 - (d) A musical instructor
 - iii. What does the phrase "kept it alive through thick and thin" tell us about Shruti's ancestors?
 - iv. Find a word in Leela's dialogue that

means "done with great care, effort, and thoroughness".

- v. Fill in the blank:
Nabin's ancestors originally belonged to a highly traditional school of _____.

Ans :

- i. (c) He forgot his own youthful rebellion
- ii. (c) An emotional mediator
- iii. The phrase "kept it alive through thick and thin" tells us that Shruti's ancestors preserved their musical heritage with great dedication despite all difficulties.
- iv. Painstakingly
- v. vocalists

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Nabin's desire to take up a Western instrument rather than cultivating his voice was painful to his father. You see, at that time the violin had not yet been incorporated into classical Indian music. Your grandfather saw this choice as a kind of betrayal of family values and tradition. But your father worked his fingers to the bone and see where the violin got him.

Nabin: I underestimated the power of our own music. I was afraid you would be lost to us. I realise that my fears were baseless. After all each bay, its own wind. I trust you Shruti and I will root for your group at the concert!"

- i. Why did Nabin's father (Shruti's grandfather) initially view the violin as a "betrayal"?
 - (a) It was solely a Western instrument then
 - (b) It was far too expensive to easily afford
 - (c) It produced a highly unpleasant sound
 - (d) It was impossible to play music on it
- ii. **Statement I:** Nabin realizes his fears about Shruti playing fusion music were baseless.
Statement II: Nabin worked very hard to master the violin in his youth.
 - (a) I is the cause and II is the effect.
 - (b) II is true but I is completely false.
 - (c) Both statements are true and independent.
 - (d) Both statements are false and unrelated.
- iii. What did Nabin fear when Shruti showed interest in fusion music?
- iv. Which exact idiom/phrase in the text means "worked extremely hard"?
- v. Based on the end of the extract, Nabin ultimately decides to _____ for Shruti's group at the upcoming concert, showing his full support.

that “bad news must be destroyed” so that the physical symbol of sorrow does not enter the home.

The Driving Force Behind His Dedication

Despite the severe physical exhaustion and his advancing age (working even past the age of 60), Khetaram continues to do this demanding job out of necessity and a strong sense of duty. His region is highly prone to famines, and the single crop of ‘bajra’ they can grow in a good year is not enough to feed his family of five. The steady income from his postal job is the only thing keeping his family from starvation.

Ultimately, the chapter serves as a powerful tribute to the invaluable and selfless service of unsung heroes like Khetaram. Through his story, we see how rural postal workers brave brutal weather and difficult terrains to ensure that no matter how remote a place is, human connection and communication are never lost.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Postal – relating to the post office or mail
2. Railhead – the end of a railway line
3. Crumbles – breaks or falls apart into fragments, disintegrates
4. Sole – only
5. Oases – fertile spots in a desert, places of relief
6. Extremes – the furthest limits, highest degrees
7. Faraway – distant in space or time
8. Slumped – sat or fell heavily, hunched
9. Trusted – relied upon, considered honest
10. Defying – openly resisting, refusing to obey
11. Elements – weather conditions, forces of nature
12. Harshest – most severe, cruel, difficult
13. Lone – having no companions, solitary
14. Far-flung – distant, widely scattered
15. Hamlets – settlements
16. Remote – situated far from main centers, distant
17. Directionlessly – without a clear path or aim
18. Ply – move
19. Bodily – relating to the human body, physical
20. Transferred – moved from one place to another
21. Hefted – lifted
22. Dispatch – sending off to a destination
23. Impression – a mark made by pressing, a dent
24. Reveals – makes known, shows
25. Stipulate – specify
26. Exceed – go beyond what is allowed, surpass
27. Sizzle – make a hissing sound, burn with heat
28. Mojri – traditional footwear of Rajasthan
29. Tiring – causing one to feel exhausted
30. Blazing – burning fiercely, very hot
31. Signals – indications, signs
32. Severe – very great, intense, harsh
33. Postpone – delay, put off to a later time
34. Sundown – sunset, the time when the sun goes down
35. Khaki – a brownish-yellow fabric or color
36. Turban – a head covering made of a long cloth
37. Protection – defense, safety from harm
38. Furies – wild and dangerous forces, rage
39. Scorching – very hot, burning
40. Swirling – moving in a twisting or spiraling pattern
41. Sandstorms – strong winds carrying clouds of sand
42. Precious – of great value, highly esteemed
43. Operating – working
44. Devoid – entirely lacking, free from
45. Primary – of chief importance, basic
46. Constitute – be a part of a whole, make up
47. Workforce – the people engaged in or available for work
48. Frozen – turned into ice, very cold
49. Isles – islands
50. Riverine – situated on river bank
51. Territories – areas of land under a particular jurisdiction
52. Invaluable – extremely useful, indispensable
53. Interior – situated within or inside, inland
54. Inaccessible – unreachable
55. Relay – receive and pass on information or goods
56. Administrative – relating to the running of an organization
57. Independence – freedom from the control of others
58. Mandate – an official order or commission to do something
59. Entire – with no part left out, whole
60. Ambit – range
61. Compared – examined to note similarities or differences
62. Depositors – people who keep money in a bank account
63. Entrust – assign the responsibility for doing something, hand over
64. Operational – in or ready for use
65. Reflects – embodies or represents in a faithful way, shows

CHAPTER 7

CARRIER OF WORDS

1. INTRODUCTION

Set in the unforgiving landscape of the Thar Desert in Rajasthan, the story revolves around Khetaram, an elderly and dedicated rural postal worker. Enduring scorching temperatures of fifty degrees Celsius and blinding sandstorms, he acts as the vital lifeline for isolated hamlets. The narrative captures his grueling daily journey on foot to deliver crucial letters and money orders to a largely illiterate community. Beyond mere delivery, the chapter explores the unique cultural traditions of the desert dwellers and their deep reliance on Khetaram, who serves as their only physical and emotional bridge to the outside world.

2. CHARACTERS

Khetaram

A dedicated Gramin Dak Sewak (village postman) in the Thar desert. He is a resilient and hardworking postman who braves extreme weather to deliver letters to remote villages.

Budh Singh

A wise village elder who deeply trusts the local postmen. He firmly believed that regular village record keepers could not replace the dedicated Gramin Dak Sewaks.

Panna Devi

A local village resident who receives letters from Khetaram, representing the common people who depend on him for communication.

3. SUMMARY

Khetaram and His Harsh World

The chapter revolves around the life of Khetaram, a dedicated Gramin Dak Sewak (rural postal worker) working for India Post. He is posted at the Somarad Branch Post Office in Rajasthan, a highly remote and desolate area located in the

arid Thar Desert.

Every day, Khetaram faces immense physical challenges. He travels entirely on foot across treacherous sand dunes and through scorching summer winds. In a region where temperatures can soar up to 50 degrees Celsius, his khaki uniform and turban are his only protection against the swirling sandstorms that often turn him into a “walking sandman.”

A Vital Lifeline for the Villagers

For the isolated hamlets and Border Security Force (BSF) outposts in the desert, Khetaram is much more than just a postman; he is their primary connection to the outside world. His daily duties involve delivering regular mail, carrying official documents, and distributing crucial money orders that many rural families depend on for their survival.

Beyond just handing over envelopes, Khetaram serves as a trusted friend and helper to the community. Because many villagers cannot read or write, they welcome him onto their thresholds. He patiently reads their personal letters aloud and drafts replies on their behalf. The villagers deeply respect him, and when he brings auspicious messages—like news of a birth or a wedding—they celebrate by offering him a piece of jaggery as a gesture of joy and gratitude.

Handling Sorrow with Deep Empathy

While Khetaram enjoys bringing happiness to the villagers, his job also requires him to deliver tragic news. He handles these difficult moments with immense sensitivity. In his culture, an envelope with a torn right corner is a symbol of “Ashubh Samachar” (bad news), usually indicating a death in the family.

When Khetaram has to deliver one of these dreaded letters, his deep empathy shines through. He strictly refuses to carry the inauspicious letter inside the recipient’s house. Instead, he stands outside, reads the letter twice to ensure he has the heartbreaking details correct, and then tears the paper into bits. He philosophically believes

IV. Read the underlined verbs in the sentences given in Column 1 and their functions in Column 2.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	She <u>has found</u> her book.	i.	finished actions (past event — present result)
2.	I <u>have just eaten</u> a mango.	ii.	recently completed action
3.	<u>Have you ever seen</u> a play before?	iii.	life experiences
4.	I <u>have finished</u> my project.	iv.	accomplishment
5.	Ajay <u>has become</u> a good bowler in five years.	v.	changes over time
6.	I <u>have seen</u> this book in the library many times.	vi.	multiple actions at different times
7.	I <u>have studied</u> in this school for six years.	vii.	action completed in the past but has its impact in present

Now, fill in the blanks by using the present perfect form of the verbs given in the brackets to complete the following paragraph.

1. I _____ (has/have) just _____ (get) a collection of postage stamps from my grandfather. He 2. _____ (collect) these stamps over a period of 20 years. I 3. _____ (study) most of the stamps in his collection and loved all of them. I 4. _____ (begin) my own collection of postage stamps. Grandfather 5. _____ truly _____ (inspire) me.

Ans :

1. I **have** just **gotten** (or got) a collection of postage stamps from my grandfather. He 2. **has collected** these stamps over a period of 20 years. I 3. **have studied** most of the stamps in his collection and loved all of them. I 4. **have begun** my own collection of postage stamps. Grandfather 5. **has** truly **inspired** me.

V. Study the sentences given below.

- GDS delivers the mail at the border.
When the subject does the action, the sentence is in active voice.
- The mail is delivered by the GDS at the border.
This implies that the 'mail' receives the action 'deliver'.

This sentence is in passive voice because the subject is receiving the action.

- Khetaram's nephew wants to join the GDS. He asks Khetaram how to prepare for it. Khetaram gives him the following advice:
 - You will need a lot of stamina for this job.
 - Practise reading clearly as some of the villagers will expect you to read out the letters.
 - Write words neatly as some villagers will ask you to draft replies.
 - Wear full-sleeved shirts and trousers to protect yourself from the heat.

Now, complete the following paragraph about the advice given by Khetaram. One example has been done for you.

To begin with, a lot of stamina will be needed for this job. Next, reading clearly A. _____, as you B. _____ to read out the letters by some of the villagers. Words C. _____ neatly as you D. _____ to draft replies by some villagers. Full sleeved-shirts and trousers E. _____ to protect yourself from the heat.

Ans :

To begin with, a lot of stamina will be needed for this job. Next, reading clearly A. **should be practised**, as you B. **will be expected** to read out the letters by some of the villagers. Words C. **should be written** neatly as you D. **will be asked** to draft replies by some villagers. Full sleeved-shirts and trousers E. **should be worn** to protect yourself from the heat.

Listen and Respond

- You will listen to a girl talking about an event. As you listen, fill in the blank with the suitable word from the brackets. (Transcript for teacher on page 272)

The speaker concluded her talk with a _____. (suggestion/request/advice)

Ans :

suggestion

- You will listen to the girl talking about the event again. As you listen, choose the correct option for the following questions.

- What was the occasion that the speaker was talking about?
 - Letter writing carnival
 - Philately day
 - Indian Postal Day

66. Essential – absolutely necessary, extremely important
67. Criterion – a principle or standard by which something is judged
68. Access – opportunity
69. Livelihood – a means of securing the necessities of life, income
70. Assured – protected against discontinuance, guaranteed
71. Revised – reconsidered and altered, updated
72. Retain – continue to have something, keep possession of
73. Outposts – a remote part of a country or empire
74. Appointment – a job or position
75. Decade – a period of ten years
76. Lease – a new chance at life, contract
77. Famine – extreme scarcity of food
78. Starve – suffer or die from hunger
79. Resides – have one's permanent home in a particular place, lives
80. Arid – having little or no rain, too dry or barren
81. Survival – the state of continuing to live or exist
82. Remitted – sent as gift
83. Significance – the quality of being worthy of attention, importance
84. Transmission – the process of transmitting something, transferring
85. Absolute – not qualified or diminished in any way, total
86. Confidence – the feeling that one can rely on someone, trust
87. Scheme – a large-scale systematic plan or arrangement
88. Scrap – remove
89. Proposed – put forward for consideration
90. Summarily – without customary formalities, immediately
91. Rejected – dismissed as inadequate or inappropriate
92. Dwell – to stay on for sometime
93. Threshold – entrance to a home
94. BSF – Border Security Force
95. Dreads – fears
96. Missive – letter
97. Desolate – deserted of people, bleak, empty
98. Geography – the nature and relative arrangement of places
99. Entail – involve
100. Striding – walking with long steps

5. MESSAGE

The author conveys a powerful message about dedication, hard work, and the importance of helping others. Through Khetaram's daily struggles in the harsh desert, we learn that true heroes do their duty quietly. Despite facing extreme heat, he never gives up because the villagers rely on him. The story teaches us to deeply respect and value ordinary workers. They act as essential lifelines, bringing hope, joy, and connection to those in need.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Reflect and Respond

- I. Look at the pictures given below of persons engaged in the same profession.



Discuss in pairs and share your answers with your classmates and teacher.

1. Which profession do they belong to?
Ans :
They belong to the postal profession. They are postal workers or postmen.
2. Do they face any difficulties while doing their duty?
Ans :
Yes, they face numerous difficulties such as extreme weather conditions, traveling long distances on foot or bicycle, navigating difficult terrains to reach remote areas, and physically carrying heavy loads of mail over long distances.
3. How does their profession affect the people they meet?

Ans :
Their profession deeply affects the people they meet. As the sole physical link connecting isolated people to the outside world, they bring vital news, money orders, and messages from faraway loved ones. Their deliveries can bring immense joy, relief, or sometimes sorrow to the families.

II. Discuss in groups.

- How can 'words' be 'carried'?

Ans :

'Words' can be carried physically through written letters, postcards, parcels, and telegrams delivered by postal workers. In modern times, words can also be carried digitally through emails, text messages, phone calls, and the internet.

- Who could be a carrier of words?

Ans :

A carrier of words could be a postman, a courier delivery agent, a messenger, or even digital mediums and telecommunication devices.

- What are the means for people to stay connected?

Ans :

People can stay connected through various means such as traditional mail (letters and postcards), telephones, mobile phones, emails, social media platforms, and video calls.

III. Read the words given in the box below and place them in their appropriate context in the following passage.

slumped	dunes	defying
hamlets	signals	devoid

We stepped out of the vehicle at the end of the road. Immediately, our body sent 1. _____ that our decision to visit the sand 2. _____ in the afternoon was insane. We had passed a few 3. _____ on our way to the desert. We could not find even a single soul outdoors, 4. _____ the blazing sun. Even the camels were 5. _____ in the little shade offered by the khejri trees. In this remote place people relied on Bharat Sanchar Nigam Limited (BSNL) to connect to the world as the area was 6. _____ of any other network service.

Ans :

We stepped out of the vehicle at the end of the road. Immediately, our body sent 1. **signals** that our decision to visit the sand 2. **dunes** in the afternoon was insane. We had passed a few 3. **hamlets** on our way to the desert. We could not find even a single soul outdoors, 4. **defying** the blazing sun. Even the camels were 5. **slumped** in the little shade offered by the khejri trees. In this remote place people relied on Bharat Sanchar Nigam Limited (BSNL) to connect to the world as the area was 6. **devoid** of any other network service.

Check Your Understanding

- Khetaram needs to submit information about himself for getting an identity card. While reading the text, fill up the following information sheet for Khetaram.

Name	Khetaram
Position	
Employer	
Official address	
Mode of transport used	
Key responsibilities	• _____ • _____ • _____ • _____

Ans :

Name	Khetaram
Position	Gramin Dak Sewak
Employer	India Post
Official address	Somarad Branch Post Office, Rajasthan
Mode of transport used	Foot (walking)
Key responsibilities	• Delivering mail across remote hamlets. • Distributing money orders to families. • Reading out letters and drafting replies for villagers. • Delivering 'dak' to border security outposts.

II. Discuss with your teacher.

- Why do you think Khetaram has taken up this challenging job?

Ans :

Khetaram has taken up this challenging job to earn a secure livelihood and feed his family of five. Since his arid region is prone to famine and relies on scarce rain for agriculture, the assured income from being a Gramin Dak Sewak prevents his family from starving.

- How do you think Khetaram would feel about taking up this challenging task every day?

Ans :

Despite the severe physical exhaustion and the harsh desert climate, Khetaram likely feels a strong sense of duty, pride, and satisfaction. Because he is warmly received and heavily trusted by the villagers, the immense respect he garners makes him feel valued and deeply connected to his community.

Check Your Understanding

- I. Complete the table given below with the situations given in Column 1 and the reasons in Column 2.

Column 1	Column 2
	When the temperature is recorded as 50 degrees celsius and above, a state holiday has to be declared.
Khetaram can dwell on any threshold.	
BSF always gave Khetaram a lift.	

Ans :

Column 1	Column 2
The temperature is officially recorded as 49.9 degrees celsius.	When the temperature is recorded as 50 degrees celsius and above, a state holiday has to be declared.
Khetaram can dwell on any threshold.	The people have absolute trust and confidence in him as he reads out their letters and writes replies for them.
BSF always gave Khetaram a lift.	He distributes their 'dak' (mail) and they are kind and appreciative of his efforts.

- II. Why was a piece of jaggery offered in the village when he brought news of a birth or weddings?

Ans :

A piece of jaggery is offered as a traditional gesture of celebrating good news and sharing sweetness. It symbolizes joy and gratitude toward Khetaram for bringing auspicious messages like births or weddings.

III. How would phone lines help Khetaram in his job?

Ans :

Phone lines would help Khetaram transition into a 'Gramin Sanchar Sewak', where his duties would entail carrying a cell phone to provide communication services. This would make his job faster and reduce the physical burden of relying solely on carrying physical letters.

Critical Reflection

- I. Read the extracts given below and answer the questions.

- "Akaal or famine is a way of life here. In a good year, I get one crop of bajra. That cannot feed my family of five. We would starve without this job," he says.
 - Complete the sentence given below with an appropriate reason.
One crop of bajra makes a little difference for people like Khetaram because _____.
 - Why did Khetaram term famine as 'a way of life'?
 - Give one reason why Khetaram had to take up a job to help his family to survive.
 - Complete the analogy given below with a word from the extract.
Other families : Money orders : : Khetaram : _____.
 - What would 'a good year' signify?

Ans :

- it cannot feed his family of five for the entire year, and they would starve without the supplementary income from his job.
- Khetaram termed famine as 'a way of life' because the region is an arid desert with very scarce rainfall, making agriculture highly unreliable and recurring food scarcity a constant reality.
- Khetaram had to take up a job because farming yielded only one crop of bajra in a good year, which was insufficient to feed his family.
- job
- 'A good year' would signify a year with sufficient rainfall to allow the successful cultivation and harvesting of at least one crop of bajra.

2. There is one letter delivery he dreads. The envelope with the right corner torn off, which signifies that the missive bears news of death. "Ashubh Samachar cannot be carried into the house," says Khetaram. So, he stands outside, reads out the letter twice, then tears it to bits. "Bad news must be destroyed," he mutters philosophically.
- i. Choose the correct option for the following question.
Who could have torn the right corner of the envelope?
- A. Khetaram
B. Sender of the letter
C. Receiver of the letter
D. The postmaster
- ii. Complete the sentence with an appropriate reason.
The most likely reason for Khetaram reading the letter twice is because _____.
- iii. What was Khetaram's philosophy regarding bad news, and how did he act upon it?
- iv. State whether the following sentence is true or false.
Khetaram's action of tearing the letter differed from his beliefs.
- v. Mention any one aspect of Khetaram's temperament which is revealed through this extract.

Ans :

- i. B. Sender of the letter
ii. he wants to be absolutely sure of the tragic contents before breaking the heartbreaking news to the family.
iii. Khetaram's philosophy was that "Bad news must be destroyed." He acted upon it by refusing to carry the inauspicious letter into the house; instead, he stood outside, read the letter aloud, and then tore it into bits.
iv. False
v. Khetaram is deeply empathetic and culturally sensitive. He respects the emotional toll of bad news and goes out of his way to handle tragic situations with care and philosophical grace.

II. Answer the following questions.

1. Justify the statement made by Postmaster-General, Rajasthan Western Region stating that the role of GDS is 'invaluable'.

Ans :

The role of Gramin Dak Sewaks (GDS) is invaluable because they serve as the crucial, and often sole, link to the outside world for people residing in India's most extreme and isolated regions. They deliver mail to interior areas like the Thar desert, the frozen desert of Ladakh, and the riverine communities of the northeast, which are completely inaccessible by any means other than on foot.

2. How was the purpose of India Post different from that of the British postal system?

Ans :

The British postal system was set up primarily to relay company 'dak' between administrative centres. In contrast, after independence, the mandate of India Post shifted to bring the entire population—including remote and rural communities—within the mailing ambit, expanding its reach massively.

3. People trusted Gramin Dak Sewaks. Support this statement with any two instances from the text.

Ans :

First, people in rural areas entrust their monthly savings to the post office through the GDS, reflecting absolute financial confidence in them. Second, villagers comfortably invite Khetaram onto their thresholds and rely on him to read their personal letters and draft replies on their behalf.

4. Infer the most likely reason that Khetaram was grateful to continue as GDS, even after the age of 60.

Ans :

Khetaram was grateful to continue as GDS because the job provided him with a guaranteed livelihood that prevented his family from starving in a famine-prone area. Moreover, it gave him a profound sense of purpose, dignity, and a strong connection with the people he served.

5. Explain why the author pays tribute to people like Khetaram.

Ans :

The author pays tribute to people like Khetaram because of their unwavering dedication, immense physical resilience, and the indispensable role they play in the social fabric. Despite battling brutal climates and challenging terrains, they faithfully serve as the lifeline of communication for remote communities.

Vocabulary and Structures in Context

I. Study the phrases given in Column 1 and match them with their meanings in Column 2.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	crumbles into sand	i.	get a chance to continue living
2.	give a new lease of life	ii.	carrying letters to less populated areas
3.	turn into a trickle before drying out	iii.	disappears in the desert
4.	bearing words across this desolate geography	iv.	lessen gradually and then finally stop

Now, use the phrases from Column 1 in sentences of your own.

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	crumbles into sand	iii.	disappears in the desert
2.	give a new lease of life	i.	get a chance to continue living
3.	turn into a trickle before drying out	iv.	lessen gradually and then finally stop
4.	bearing words across this desolate geography	ii.	carrying letters to less populated areas

- crumbles into sand:** Without proper maintenance, the ancient mud fortress eventually **crumbles into sand**.
- give a new lease of life:** The generous community donation will **give a new lease of life** to the struggling local orphanage.
- turn into a trickle before drying out:** During the peak of summer, the once mighty stream will **turn into a trickle before drying out** completely.
- bearing words across this desolate geography:** The weary messenger traveled for weeks, **bearing words across this desolate geography** to deliver the treaty.

II. Identify examples of alliteration and metaphor in the extract given below.

Khetaram's khaki turban and uniform are his only protection against the desert's furies, the

scorching summer winds and swirling sandstorms which turn him into a walking sandman.

Ans :

Alliteration : "scorching summer" and "swirling sandstorms" (Repetition of the 's' sound).

Metaphor : "desert's furies" (Comparing extreme weather to an angry entity) and "walking sandman" (Comparing Khetaram, covered in dust, to a creature made entirely of sand).

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

III. Match the words in Column 1 to what they suggest in Column 2 in the context of the chapter.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	arid	i.	interest rate for the farmers
2.	concessional	ii.	corner of the world
3.	gaunt	iii.	farmland without much yield
4.	remote	iv.	desert stretching far and wide
5.	desolate	v.	farmer waiting for the rains

Now, use the words from Column 1 in sentences of your own.

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	arid	iii.	farmland without much yield
2.	concessional	i.	interest rate for the farmers
3.	gaunt	v.	farmer waiting for the rains
4.	remote	ii.	corner of the world
5.	desolate	iv.	desert stretching far and wide

- arid :** The cactus thrives easily in the **arid** climate of the desert.
- concessional :** The government offered seeds at a **concessional** rate to help poor farmers.
- gaunt :** Following the prolonged drought, the animals looked incredibly weak and **gaunt**.
- remote :** The medical team set up a camp in a **remote** village that lacked basic healthcare.
- desolate :** After the wildfire, the once lush valley was reduced to a **desolate** wasteland.

Ans :

- i. (a) It was solely a Western instrument then
- ii. (c) Both statements are true and independent.
- iii. Nabin feared that Shruti would be lost to them, meaning she would drift away from classical Indian music.
- iv. worked his fingers to the bone
- v. root

NODIA



2. India Post is famous for having the most extensive network _____.
 (i) in India
 (ii) in the world
 (iii) among design institutes
3. Letter writing is being revived as this art form has been _____.
 (i) celebrated
 (ii) appreciated
 (iii) forgotten
4. Which of the following will be a part of the letter writing carnival?
 (i) calligraphy and graphology
 (ii) origami and designing
 (iii) letter posting and philately
5. What will the postal department add to the event?
 (i) interactive demonstrations
 (ii) theatre and dance
 (iii) workshop for letter writing

Ans :

1. (i) Letter writing carnival
2. (ii) in the world
3. (iii) forgotten
4. (i) calligraphy and graphology
5. (i) interactive demonstrations

**SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL**



Speaking Activity

- I. The postcard, inland letter, envelope, and money order form were engaged in a discussion on who the most important one was.



In groups of four, select one each and reason with each other logically. You may use the points for discussion given in Column 1 and the cues given in Column 2 to express your opinion.

Column 1 (Points for discussion)	Column 2 (Verbal cues to present opinion)
• utility • cost effective • privacy • space to write • possibility of enclosures	It seems to me that... Some people say that... I would like to point out that... I totally agree that... That's one way to look at it but...

Ans :

Student 1 (Postcard) : "It seems to me that the postcard is the most important. Some people say that we need privacy, but I would like to point out that postcards are extremely cost-effective and have great utility for sending quick messages to our loved ones."

Student 2 (Inland Letter) : "I totally agree that cost is important, but that's one way to look at it. Some people say that privacy matters most. It seems to me that the inland letter is the best because it is cost-effective yet offers the much-needed privacy that a postcard lacks, along with more space to write."

Student 3 (Envelope) : "I would like to point out that while inland letters are good, they have their limitations. It seems to me that the envelope is the most vital. It offers complete privacy, ample space to write by adding multiple sheets, and the unique possibility of enclosures like photographs."

Student 4 (Money Order) : "I totally agree that letters are great for communication. That's one way to look at it, but survival often depends on finances. It seems to me that the money order is the most important form because its utility in securely remitting money to remote villages literally saves families from starving."

Writing Task

A condolence message communicates your feelings to someone whose relative or a person close to them has just passed away. It mentions how sorry you feel for the loss and your prayers for strength to the family members.

Khetaram saw a letter with a torn corner. It had news about Bhawar Singh's uncle passing away. Read the condolence message that Sawant Singh

- (c) He believes that tragic letters should be returned to the sender as a mark of respect.
- (d) He believes that hiding bad news is better than letting a family suffer from the pain.

Ans :

(b) He believes that bad news must be destroyed so sorrow does not enter the home.

31. What milestone age has Khetaram crossed?

- (a) Forty (b) Fifty
- (c) Sixty (d) Seventy

Ans :

(c) Sixty

32. **Assertion (A):** Khetaram forces the villagers to read their own tragic letters.

Reason (R): He philosophically believes that “bad news must be destroyed.”

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) Assertion A is true, but Reason R is completely false in this context.
- (d) Assertion A is false, but Reason R is completely true in this context.

Ans :

(d) Assertion A is false, but Reason R is completely true in this context.

33. What natural disaster is the region highly prone to?

- (a) Famines (b) Floods
- (c) Earthquakes (d) Tsunamis

Ans :

(a) Famines

34. What single crop is grown in Khetaram's region?

- (a) Wheat (b) Bajra
- (c) Maize (d) Cotton

Ans :

(b) Bajra

35. How many members are there in Khetaram's family?

- (a) Three (b) Four
- (c) Five (d) Six

Ans :

(c) Five

36. The steady income from Khetaram's job keeps his family from _____.

- (a) Homelessness (b) Illness
- (c) Debt (d) Starvation

Ans :

(d) Starvation

37. Why does the author mention that bajra grows only “in a good year”?

- (a) To highlight the extreme harshness and unreliability of agriculture in the arid desert.
- (b) To show that the villagers are very lazy and refuse to farm properly during the year.
- (c) To emphasize that the sandy soil is highly fertile and suitable for various cash crops.
- (d) To indicate that Khetaram spends most of his postal salary buying expensive tools.

Ans :

(a) To highlight the extreme harshness and unreliability of agriculture in the arid desert.

38. The chapter is described as a powerful tribute to _____.

- (a) Famous politicians (b) Unsung heroes
- (c) Wealthy farmers (d) Brave soldiers

Ans :

(b) Unsung heroes

39. What do rural postal workers like Khetaram brave daily?

- (a) Urban traffic (b) Wild animals
- (c) Brutal weather (d) Local bandits

Ans :

(c) Brutal weather

40. Khetaram ensures that human communication is never _____.

- (a) Delayed (b) Ignored
- (c) Broken (d) Lost

Ans :

(d) Lost

41. Which of the following statements is correct regarding Khetaram's motivation to work?

- (a) He continues working due to financial necessity and a strong sense of duty.
- (b) He works purely for the joy of walking across the beautiful desert sand dunes.
- (c) He works because the villagers pay him extra money to read personal letters.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

2. Work in groups of five. Find information about stamps on the following categories and note details as directed.

- personalities: name and the field they belong to
- celebrations: festivals/national events—name and significance
- centenaries: name of person/occasion and significance
- nature: name and significance
- our heritage: monuments/music/dance—name and significance

Now, prepare a class board on 'Philately—Upholding Our Heritage' with your findings.

Ans :

Philately – Upholding Our Heritage

Personalities : C.V. Raman (Field: Science/Physics) – Honoring his groundbreaking Nobel Prize-winning work in light scattering.

Celebrations : Diwali (Significance: Festival of Lights) – Symbolizes the spiritual victory of light over darkness and good over evil in Indian culture.

Centenaries : Mahatma Gandhi's Return from South Africa (Significance: Marks the centenary of his return in 1915, an event that fueled the Indian freedom struggle).

Nature : The Bengal Tiger (Significance: India's national animal, highlighting wildlife conservation and rich biodiversity).

Our Heritage : The Taj Mahal (Significance: A globally recognized monument of love and an exquisite example of Mughal architecture).

3. In the past, telegram was a mode of fast communication, commonly used to quickly send short and specific messages, such as greetings and condolences. Its pricing structure was based on the number of words to be transmitted, and therefore, needed to be precise. The following form was used for sending such telegrams.

INLAND TELEGRAM		FOR POSTAGE STAMPS		Charge	Counter Number
To	From	For Conditions of acceptance, see over		Complete Words	
		SERVICE INSTRUCTIONS		Actual Words	
ADDRESS					
If you wish to pay for a reply insert R.P. here					

Ans :

Sample Telegram Message :

FATHER PASSED AWAY TODAY STOP
DEEP CONDOLENCES TO YOU AND FAMILY STOP
MAY HIS SOUL REST IN PEACE STOP

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. What is Khetaram's primary profession?
- (a) Postal worker (b) Local farmer
(c) Village chief (d) School teacher

Ans :

(a) Postal worker

2. Which organization does Khetaram work for?
- (a) State Police (b) India Post
(c) Local Bank (d) Indian Army

Ans :

(b) India Post

Where is the Somarad Branch Post Office located?

- (a) Gujarat (b) Haryana
(c) Rajasthan (d) Punjab

Ans :

(c) Rajasthan

4. In which geographical region is Khetaram posted?
- (a) The Himalayas (b) The Deccan
(c) The Coastal (d) The Thar

Ans :

(d) The Thar

5. How does Khetaram travel to deliver the mail daily?
- (a) On foot (b) By cycle
(c) On camel (d) By jeep

Ans :

(a) On foot

6. What kind of terrain does Khetaram cross daily?
- (a) Rocky hills (b) Sand dunes
(c) Deep rivers (d) Dense woods

Ans :

(b) Sand dunes

Ans :

Khetaram is a dedicated rural postal worker employed by India Post. He is currently posted at the Somarad Branch Post Office, which is geographically located in the extremely harsh and arid sandy region of the Thar Desert in Rajasthan.

2. Describe the geographical challenges Khetaram faces daily during his duty.

Ans :

Khetaram navigates treacherous, shifting sand dunes entirely on foot. Daily, he bravely endures extreme summer winds and brutal, scorching temperatures soaring up to 50 degrees Celsius, making his journey to deliver mail an incredibly arduous and physically draining task.

3. How does the harsh climate of the Thar Desert physically affect Khetaram?

Ans :

The fierce desert sandstorms batter Khetaram daily, completely covering his body in thick dust and transforming him into a “walking sandman.” Despite experiencing immense physical exhaustion and brutal weather conditions, he continues his demanding trek without hesitation.

4. What role does Khetaram’s uniform and turban play in his daily routine?

Ans :

Khetaram wears a standard khaki uniform and a traditional turban. In the unforgiving desert environment, the turban is not merely a cultural symbol but a vital piece of protective gear that shields his head from scorching sunrays and swirling sandstorms.

5. Who are the primary recipients of Khetaram’s daily mail deliveries?

Ans :

He primarily delivers letters, money orders, and crucial official documents to people living in isolated hamlets and remote border security outposts. These marginalized individuals rely entirely on his steadfast dedication for their vital communications and financial support.

6. Why is Khetaram considered the villagers’ only reliable link to the outside world?

Ans :

Living in a remote, isolated desert region, the villagers completely lack modern communication infrastructure. Khetaram acts as their sole

connection, bringing crucial news, official paperwork, and financial aid, thereby effectively bridging the gap between them and civilization.

7. Explain the significance of the money orders Khetaram delivers to the isolated hamlets.

Ans :

In a famine-prone region where local agriculture is highly unreliable, money orders represent essential financial lifelines. By carefully delivering these, Khetaram ensures that struggling families receive the much-needed survival funds sent by their earning relatives stationed far away.

8. Why do the villagers eagerly wait for Khetaram at their thresholds?

Ans :

The villagers eagerly welcome Khetaram at their thresholds because they are mostly illiterate and anxiously anticipate news from distant loved ones. His daily arrival signifies a crucial moment of connection, as they rely completely on him to decipher their mail.

9. How does Khetaram assist the illiterate villagers beyond merely delivering their letters?

Ans :

Khetaram’s sense of duty extends far beyond delivery. Recognizing the villagers’ illiteracy, he patiently sits with them to read their personal letters aloud and compassionately drafts their handwritten replies, acting as a vital, trusted intermediary for their communication.

10. What is considered an ‘auspicious message’ in the village, and how is Khetaram rewarded?

Ans :

Messages bringing highly positive news, such as a local wedding invitation, are considered auspicious. When Khetaram delivers such joyous information, the grateful villagers respectfully offer him pieces of jaggery as a traditional gesture of immense joy and celebration.

11. What is the cultural significance of offering jaggery to the postman in these desert communities?

Ans :

In rural desert culture, offering jaggery is a profound gesture expressing great joy, deep respect, and immense gratitude. It symbolically represents the sweetness of the good news Khetaram has brought, reinforcing his cherished, respected position within the local community.

19. What is offered to Khetaram for bringing good news?

- (a) Sweets (b) Fruits
(c) Jaggery (d) Biscuits

Ans :

(c) Jaggery

20. Offering jaggery to Khetaram is a gesture of

-----.

- (a) Deep sorrow (b) High respect
(c) Boundless wealth (d) Great joy

Ans :

(d) Great joy

21. What kind of tragic news does Khetaram sometimes deliver?

- (a) Family death (b) Lost property
(c) Job termination (d) Stolen money

Ans :

(a) Family death

22. How does Khetaram handle moments of deep sorrow?

- (a) With extreme anger
(b) With immense sensitivity
(c) With deep confusion
(d) With complete indifference

Ans :

(b) With immense sensitivity

23. What term is used for “bad news” in Khetaram’s culture?

- (a) Bura Samachar (b) Dukh Samachar
(c) Ashubh Samachar (d) Shok Samachar

Ans :

(c) Ashubh Samachar

24. What visual clue on the envelope indicates bad news?

- (a) A red stamp (b) A black seal
(c) A folded edge (d) A torn corner

Ans :

(d) A torn corner

25. Why does Khetaram refuse to take the torn envelope inside the recipient’s house?

- (a) He believes bringing the physical symbol of sorrow inside will curse the household.
(b) He feels the house is too dark and crowded to read the letter clearly to everyone.

(c) He is in a hurry to deliver other mail and does not want to waste time indoors.

(d) He thinks the villagers will get angry and blame him directly for the tragic news.

Ans :

(a) He believes bringing the physical symbol of sorrow inside will curse the household.

26. Where does Khetaram stand when delivering an inauspicious letter?

- (a) Near the gate (b) Outside the house
(c) Inside the room (d) Behind the wall

Ans :

(b) Outside the house

27. How many times does Khetaram read the heartbreaking letter?

- (a) One time (b) Three times
(c) Two times (d) Four times

Ans :

(c) Two times

28. Which of the following statements is correct regarding Khetaram reading the bad news twice?

- (a) He reads it twice because the villagers usually demand to hear the letter repeatedly.
(b) He reads it twice because he has poor eyesight and struggles with small handwriting.
(c) He reads it twice to memorize the names of the deceased for official postal records.
(d) He reads it twice to ensure he has the heartbreaking details absolutely correct.

Ans :

(d) He reads it twice to ensure he has the heartbreaking details absolutely correct.

29. What does Khetaram do to the letter after reading it?

- (a) Tears it (b) Burns it
(c) Folds it (d) Buries it

Ans :

(a) Tears it

30. What is Khetaram’s philosophical belief regarding tragic letters?

- (a) He believes that bad news should be shared loudly so everyone can mourn properly.
(b) He believes that bad news must be destroyed so sorrow does not enter the home.

7. What is the maximum temperature Khetaram endures?

- (a) 30 degrees (b) 40 degrees
(c) 50 degrees (d) 60 degrees

Ans :

(c) 50 degrees

8. What is the colour of Khetaram's postal uniform?

- (a) White (b) Black
(c) Green (d) Khaki

Ans :

(d) Khaki

9. What does Khetaram wear on his head for protection?

- (a) A turban (b) A helmet
(c) A cotton cap (d) A wool hat

Ans :

(a) A turban

10. What do the sandstorms often turn Khetaram into?

- (a) A weary traveler
(b) A walking sandman
(c) A lost wanderer
(d) A tired postman

Ans :

(b) A walking sandman

11. Which of the following statements is correct about the recipients of Khetaram's mail?

- (a) He only delivers letters to the village chiefs and elders.
(b) He only delivers mail to the local schools and hospitals.
(c) He delivers to isolated hamlets and border security outposts.
(d) He delivers mostly to tourists visiting the desert regions.

Ans :

(c) He delivers to isolated hamlets and border security outposts.

12. Khetaram is the villagers' primary connection to the _____.

- (a) Local markets (b) State capital
(c) Gram panchayat (d) Outside world

Ans :

(d) Outside world

13. What crucial financial item does Khetaram distribute?

- (a) Money orders (b) Bank cheques
(c) Cash vouchers (d) Silver coins

Ans :

(a) Money orders

14. **Assertion (A):** Khetaram travels entirely on foot across the harsh desert.

Reason (R): The rural villagers are unable to read or write their personal letters.

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(c) Assertion A is true, but Reason R is completely false in this context.
(d) Assertion A is false, but Reason R is completely true in this context.

Ans :

(b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.

15. Why do many villagers need Khetaram's help with their mail?

- (a) They are blind (b) They are busy
(c) They are illiterate (d) They are elderly

Ans :

(c) They are illiterate

16. Where do the villagers welcome Khetaram when he arrives?

- (a) Their roofs (b) Their farms
(c) Their barns (d) Their thresholds

Ans :

(d) Their thresholds

17. What does Khetaram do besides reading letters for the villagers?

- (a) Drafts replies (b) Cooks food
(c) Plants seeds (d) Sells stamps

Ans :

(a) Drafts replies

18. Which event is considered an "auspicious message" in the chapter?

- (a) A bad storm (b) A local wedding
(c) A crop failure (d) A sudden illness

Ans :

(b) A local wedding

- (d) He continues his job because he is young and energetic with no exhaustion.

Ans :

(a) He continues working due to financial necessity and a strong sense of duty.

42. What primarily protects Khetaram from the swirling sandstorms?

- (a) A thick coat (b) Uniform and turban
(c) A plastic shield (d) Goggles and mask

Ans :

(b) Uniform and turban

43. Which season's winds make Khetaram's journey highly treacherous?

- (a) Spring winds (b) Autumn winds
(c) Summer winds (d) Winter winds

Ans :

(c) Summer winds

44. What official paperwork does Khetaram carry along with regular mail?

- (a) Voting ballots (b) School exams
(c) Court orders (d) Official documents

Ans :

(d) Official documents

45. Khetaram is described as much more than just a _____.

- (a) Postman (b) Teacher
(c) Farmer (d) Soldier

Ans :

(a) Postman

46. **Assertion (A):** Khetaram's steady postal income is vital for his family's survival.

Reason (R): Khetaram tears up inauspicious letters outside the recipients' homes.

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
(b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(c) Assertion A is true, but Reason R is completely false in this context.
(d) Assertion A is false, but Reason R is completely true in this context.

Ans :

(b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.

47. What does the term "walking sandman" suggest about Khetaram's daily reality?

- (a) He enjoys playing in the sand and building sculptures while delivering mail.
(b) He is a mythical creature who brings sleep to the children of the remote village.
(c) He is completely covered in dust and physically battered by the harsh environment.
(d) He has a special superpower that allows him to glide over the desert effortlessly.

Ans :

(c) He is completely covered in dust and physically battered by the harsh environment.

48. Whose replies does Khetaram patiently draft?

- (a) The soldiers (b) The merchants
(c) The officials (d) The villagers

Ans :

(d) The villagers

49. Khetaram's service to the isolated desert communities is described as _____.

- (a) Selfless (b) Profitable
(c) Effortless (d) Temporary

Ans :

(a) Selfless

50. What is the core message of Khetaram's story in this chapter?

- (a) Only wealthy people living in cities truly appreciate the value of written communication.
(b) Unsung heroes overcome immense hardships to maintain vital human connections in remote areas.
(c) The postal service should replace all human workers with modern technology in desert regions.
(d) Farming bajra in the Thar Desert is a much more profitable career than delivering the mail.

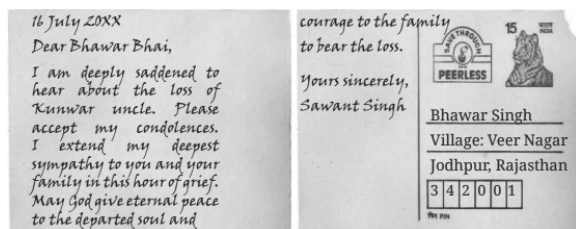
Ans :

(b) Unsung heroes overcome immense hardships to maintain vital human connections in remote areas.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Who is Khetaram and where does he currently work?

sent to his cousin as a reply to the letter.



Now, on behalf of your parents draft an imaginary condolence message for your aunt on the recent passing away of her father.

Ans :

20 August 20XX

Dear Aunt,

We are deeply saddened to hear about the tragic loss of your father. Please accept our heartfelt condolences during this difficult time. We extend our deepest sympathy to you and the entire family in this hour of grief. He was a wonderful person and will be greatly missed by all of us. May God grant eternal peace to the departed soul and give the family the courage and strength to bear this immense loss. You are in our thoughts and prayers.

Yours sincerely,
Your Parents' Names

Your Aunt's Name
Village/City Name
State
PIN Code

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



Learning Beyond the Text

- I. The unique 'Daakroom' carnival was conceptualised by the Ministry of Culture to re-introduce children and larger audiences to letter writing in innovative, creative, and engaging ways. It also hosted competitions and workshops around writing and post. The one-of-a-kind letter writing event, supported by India Post, Ministry of Culture, Gandhi Smriti and Darshan Samiti is aimed to give a digital detox with the aim of reviving the art of letter writing in India



Ans :

The 'Daakroom' carnival is a unique initiative by the Ministry of Culture to revive the art of letter writing among children and the public. It encourages people to engage in creative and meaningful writing through competitions and workshops. Supported by India Post, Gandhi Smriti and Darshan Samiti, this event aims to provide a digital detox and promote traditional communication by reintroducing the joy of writing letters.

- II. Did you know? The study of postage stamps and postal history is called philately. It is possible to be a philatelist without owning any stamps. The stamps that you study may be rare ones and found only in museums.

1. Study the postage stamps given below and discuss who or what they depict.



Ans :

Stamp 1 : Depicts Kasturba Gandhi, honoring her life and immense contributions to the Indian freedom struggle.

Stamp 2 : Depicts Kishore Kumar, commemorating the legendary Indian playback singer and actor.

Stamp 3 : Depicts the festival of Teej, celebrating vibrant Indian culture and traditional festivities.

Stamp 4 : Depicts a Painted Stork, highlighting the diverse avian wildlife and natural beauty of India.

Stamp 5 : Depicts the Sun Temple at Konark (a UNESCO World Heritage site), celebrating India's rich architectural heritage.

12. How does a torn corner on an envelope act as a visual clue for Khetaram?

Ans :

A torn corner on an envelope serves as a stark, visual warning in the local culture, clearly indicating an “Ashubh Samachar” or tragic news, such as a family death. It immediately prepares Khetaram for the sorrowful emotional duty ahead.

13. Why does Khetaram refuse to step inside a house when delivering an ‘Ashubh Samachar’?

Ans :

Khetaram holds a strong cultural and philosophical belief that carrying a torn envelope indoors brings the physical symbol of sorrow directly into the home. To prevent cursing the household with bad luck, he respectfully stands strictly outside the gate.

14. For what reason does Khetaram read a tragic letter twice before the recipients?

Ans :

Delivering bad news is a highly delicate responsibility. Khetaram carefully reads the heartbreaking letter twice to ensure he has grasped the tragic details absolutely correctly, actively avoiding any painful misunderstandings that could needlessly worsen the grieving family’s trauma.

15. What philosophical belief drives Khetaram to tear up a letter containing tragic news?

Ans :

Khetaram firmly holds the philosophical belief that “bad news must be destroyed.” After compassionately sharing the tragic details, he intentionally tears the letter apart, symbolizing the destruction of sorrow so that lingering pain does not permanently reside within the home.

16. How does Khetaram display immense sensitivity while dealing with grieving families?

Ans :

Khetaram handles deep sorrow with profound empathy. He respectfully stays outside to protect the home’s sanctity, double-checks the tragic news by reading it twice, and destroys the letter afterward, showcasing his extraordinary psychological compassion for the grieving desert villagers.

17. Describe the agricultural conditions of Khetaram’s region and its impact on the locals.

Ans :

The arid Thar Desert region is highly prone to severe, life-threatening famines. The sandy soil allows only for the cultivation of a single crop, bajra, and even that grows successfully only during a remarkably good and rare monsoon year.

18. How does Khetaram’s job at India Post affect his own family’s survival?

Ans :

With local agriculture being highly unreliable, Khetaram’s steady financial income from his postal job serves as a critical economic anchor. It actively prevents his family of five from facing severe starvation and deep debt during the frequent, devastating famine years.

19. What motivates Khetaram to continue his arduous desert journey at the age of sixty?

Ans :

Despite having crossed the milestone age of sixty and enduring extreme physical fatigue, Khetaram is powerfully driven by profound financial necessity for his family’s survival and an unwavering, selfless sense of duty toward serving the isolated desert communities.

20. Why is Khetaram rightfully referred to as an “unsung hero” in the text?

Ans :

Khetaram is an unsung hero because he quietly braves life-threatening weather and extreme physical hardships without seeking any public recognition. His selfless, daily dedication ensures that vital human connections remain unbroken for the most isolated, vulnerable populations in the desert.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Write a detailed character sketch of Khetaram, highlighting his physical endurance and emotional empathy.

Ans :

Khetaram is the absolute epitome of resilience, duty, and compassion. Physically, he displays immense endurance, walking across treacherous sand dunes in brutal 50-degree heat, boldly defying his advanced age of over sixty. Despite being battered by summer sandstorms and transformed into a “walking sandman,” his commitment to delivering mail never wavers. Emotionally, Khetaram is extraordinarily empathetic. He is not

merely a postman but a trusted confidant for the illiterate villagers. His sensitivity is most profound when delivering tragic news; he respectfully reads “Ashubh Samachar” strictly outside the home and tears the letter to symbolically destroy the sorrow. Balancing his family’s financial struggles in a famine-prone region with his grueling duties, Khetaram emerges as a selfless, unsung hero dedicated entirely to humanity.

2. The story of Khetaram highlights the theme of “human connection over geographical barriers.” Elaborate on this statement based on the text.

Ans :

The narrative beautifully establishes that the innate human need for connection can conquer the most hostile geographical barriers. The Thar Desert, characterized by brutal 50-degree temperatures, swirling sandstorms, and treacherous dunes, physically isolates its inhabitants. Yet, Khetaram acts as a resilient, living bridge, ensuring these remote hamlets and border outposts are never cut off from the outside world. He delivers vital money orders that sustain lives and reads letters that nurture emotional bonds. His grueling daily journey on foot proves that empathy and duty can overcome nature’s harshest obstacles. By drafting replies for the illiterate and sharing their deepest joys and sorrows, Khetaram proves that the warmth of human connection remains unbreakable, even in the most desolate landscapes.

3. Imagine you are Khetaram. Write a diary entry at the end of a grueling summer day when you had to deliver both an auspicious message and a tragic letter.

Ans :

Tuesday, 14th April, 2026

Dear Diary,

My weary legs severely ache after trekking through the relentless 50-degree sandstorms today. The desert was merciless, but my profound sense of duty pushed me forward. The day brought a heavy mix of emotions. In the morning, I delivered auspicious news of a wedding at Ramu’s hamlet. The sweet taste of the jaggery they offered still lingers, a beautiful reminder of their innocent joy. However, the afternoon deeply tested my heart. I noticed a torn corner on an envelope meant for old Shanti. Standing respectfully outside her threshold, I read the tragic news of her son’s passing twice to be absolutely certain. Tearing

that letter broke my heart, but I had to destroy the physical symbol of her sorrow. Tomorrow, I must walk again.

Khetaram

4. As a village elder whose son is stationed at a border outpost, write a letter to the Postmaster General praising Khetaram’s selfless service and requesting better facilities for him.

Ans :

To

The Postmaster General,

India Post, Rajasthan.

Subject: Commendation for Postman Khetaram and a humble request for facilities.

Respected Sir,

I write to you on behalf of the remote residents of Somarad. For years, Khetaram has been our only vital lifeline to the outside world. Despite crossing sixty years of age, he bravely walks through brutal sandstorms and 50-degree heat to deliver our mail, money orders, and official documents. Since most of us are completely illiterate, he patiently reads our personal letters and drafts replies with immense empathy.

He is a true unsung hero who maintains our human connections. We humbly request you to provide him with protective gear, a hardship allowance, or better transport to ease his physical burden.

Yours sincerely,

A Village Elder

5. Analyze the significance of cultural symbols in the text, specifically the offering of jaggery and the tearing of the envelope’s corner.

Ans :

Cultural symbols in the narrative profoundly dictate the emotional landscape of the isolated desert community. The offering of jaggery is a potent symbol of shared joy, deep respect, and immense gratitude. When Khetaram brings auspicious news, this simple sweetness contrasts sharply with the bitter harshness of their daily desert lives. Conversely, the torn corner of an envelope acts as a chilling, universally understood omen of “Ashubh Samachar” (tragic news). It dictates a highly specific cultural protocol: Khetaram must remain outside the threshold to prevent bad luck from cursing the home. By tearing the letter after reading it, he performs a symbolic ritual of actively destroying the sorrow. These symbols highlight a vulnerable community

deeply rooted in tradition and collective empathy.

6. Imagine you are the village chief. Deliver a short speech honoring Khetaram as the true “unsung hero” of your desert community.

Ans :

Respected villagers and dear friends,
Today, I want to honor a true guardian walking quietly among us—our dedicated postman, Khetaram. While soldiers protect our borders, Khetaram actively protects our hearts. He is our greatest unsung hero. Every single day, defying his advanced age and brutal 50-degree sandstorms, he crosses treacherous dunes just to ensure we remain connected to our distant loved ones. He doesn't just deliver paper; he delivers hope, sustains our starving homes with vital money orders, and patiently writes the words we cannot pen ourselves. In a harsh desert where even the bajra crops fail us, Khetaram's unwavering dedication never does. Let us take a moment to applaud this walking sandman for his boundless compassion.

Thank you!

7. “Khetaram is described as much more than just a postman.” Justify this statement by discussing his multiple vital roles within the isolated desert community.

Ans :

To call Khetaram a mere postman is a vast understatement; he is the absolute lifeblood of the isolated desert hamlets. Officially, he merely delivers mail, money orders, and government documents. However, his highly impactful unofficial roles make him indispensable. For the illiterate villagers, he acts as a trusted scribe and reader, patiently drafting their personal replies. He is a crucial emotional anchor, sharing their joyous moments by accepting jaggery and displaying immense psychological sensitivity during tragedies by standing outside to read “Ashubh Samachar.” Furthermore, he functions as a dedicated social worker, ensuring that financial lifelines reach marginalized families surviving in a famine-prone region. Ultimately, Khetaram is a wise counselor, a messenger of hope, and their only bridge to civilization.

8. Construct a dialogue between Khetaram and an illiterate villager, highlighting Khetaram's extreme sensitivity when delivering a letter with a torn corner.

Ans :

Villager: (Smiling brightly) Khetaram ji! You are early today. Come inside quickly, rest under the shade. Have you brought a letter from my brother in the city?

Khetaram: (Standing firmly outside the gate, his voice incredibly gentle) Ram Singh, I cannot step inside your home today. Yes, I do have a letter from the city.

Villager: (Noticing Khetaram's solemn face) Why won't you enter? Is everything alright?

Khetaram: (Sighs heavily, carefully holding the envelope with a torn corner) Ram Singh, please brace yourself. It is an Ashubh Samachar.

Villager: (Tearing up instantly) No... what does it say?

Khetaram: (Reads it twice softly to be certain) Your brother passed away peacefully yesterday. I am so deeply sorry. (Khetaram tears the letter into pieces). The sorrow ends right here, my friend. It shall not enter your home.

9. Evaluate the profound contrast between the unreliability of nature and the steadfast reliability of Khetaram in the lives of the desert dwellers.

Ans :

The narrative presents a powerful contrast between the harsh forces of nature and the dependable character of Khetaram. The Thar Desert is extremely unforgiving, with temperatures rising up to 50 degrees, violent sandstorms, and the constant threat of famine. Agriculture is highly uncertain, as the main crop, bajra, grows only during rare good monsoons.

In such difficult conditions, nature becomes a threat to the villagers' survival. The unpredictable environment makes life challenging and insecure, leaving people vulnerable to hunger and hardship.

In contrast, Khetaram stands as a symbol of reliability and hope. Even at the age of sixty, he walks across the dangerous dunes every day. By delivering money orders and letters, he supports families both financially and emotionally, bridging the gap created by harsh natural conditions.

10. Imagine you are a young postal recruit assigned to shadow Khetaram for a day. Write a diary entry reflecting on the profound life lessons you learned from his dedication.

Ans :

Tuesday, 14th April 2026

Dear Diary,

Today, I accompanied Khetaram Ji on his demanding mail route. I am physically exhausted,

66. Trade – exchange, swap, barter
67. Security – safety, stability, protection
68. Circumstances – situations, conditions, state of affairs
69. Invasion – attack, occupation, incursion
70. Destiny – fate, future, fortune
71. Secondary – high school level, intermediate education
72. Siblings – brothers and sisters, kin
73. Wet blanket – a person or thing that dampens enthusiasm, discouragement
74. Consider – think about, contemplate, reflect upon
75. Chase – pursue, run after, follow
76. Obstacles – hurdles, barriers, hindrances
77. Coursing – flowing rapidly, streaming, circulating
78. Veins – blood vessels, throughout one's being
79. Ahead – forward, onward, progressing
80. Experience – knowledge gained over time, background, involvement
81. Hopes – desires, wishes, aspirations
82. Aspirations – ambitions, goals, aims
83. Original – first, earliest, initial
84. Fulfill – achieve, accomplish, realize
85. Negotiate – navigate, find a way through, manage
86. Path – route, trail, course
87. Maze – complex network, labyrinth, puzzle
88. Hurdles – obstacles, barriers, difficulties
89. Participants – members, contributors, players
90. Dreamscape – a world of dreams
91. Publishing – issuing, printing, releasing
92. Youth – early life, adolescence, childhood
93. Excited – thrilled, eager, enthusiastic
94. At least – at the minimum, not less than
95. True – real, actual, realized

5. MESSAGE

Through a thoughtful letter to her daughter Ming, the author gives a clear and powerful message about achieving success. The chapter teaches us that simply having a dream is not enough. To turn our goals into reality, we must be ready to work hard, face unexpected challenges, and make personal sacrifices. The author gently reminds us that true success comes only when we truly believe in ourselves and never give up.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Reflect and Respond

I. Read the questions given below and share your answers with your classmates and teacher.

1. What is your dream?

Ans :

My dream is to become a space scientist. I want to study the universe, explore unknown galaxies, and contribute to India's space missions at ISRO. (Note: You can replace this with your own personal dream, such as becoming a doctor, writer, teacher, or athlete).

2. Who inspires you to dream?

Ans :

I am deeply inspired by Dr. A.P.J. Abdul Kalam. His life journey from a humble background to becoming the "Missile Man of India" and the President of the country shows that no matter where you come from, your dreams are valid and achievable.

3. What qualities should you have in order to fulfil your dream?

Ans :

To fulfil my dream, I need to have strong determination, patience, and consistency. I must also be hard-working, ready to face failures without giving up, and open to continuous learning.

4. Abdul Kalam said, "Dream is not that you see in sleep, dream is something that does not let you sleep." Discuss.

Ans :

This beautiful quote by Dr. A.P.J. Abdul Kalam means that a true dream is a burning passion or a life goal. While the dreams we see in our sleep are passive and often forgotten, a real dream fills us with so much purpose, motivation, and energy that we work tirelessly—sometimes even sacrificing our rest—until we achieve it.

II. What role can parents and community play to help children achieve their dreams?

Ans :

Parents and the community act as a foundational support system. Parents can provide emotional encouragement, financial support, and a positive environment that nurtures a child's talents. The community, including teachers and mentors, can

- (c) A is true, but R is false.
- (d) A is false, but R is true.
- iii. How long has Khetaram been serving as a Gramin Dak Sewak and where is his post office located?
- iv. Find a word in the extract that means the same as “small villages or settlements”.
- v. Fill in the blank:
Khetaram’s delivery route extends to a remote area just 2.5 km short of the _____ border.

Ans :

- i. (c) He bears physical toll from his service.
- ii. (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- iii. Khetaram has been serving for 15 years and his post office is located in Somarad, a Rajasthani village near the Indo-Pakistan border.
- iv. hamlets
- v. Indo-Pakistan

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Often, the impression of his footprints reveals the weight of his mailbag. Regulations stipulate that his load cannot exceed 28 kilos. But in the summers, when the sands sizzle under his mojri-clad feet, Khetaram says, “Even a single delivery is tiring, as I have to cover 20 km for it.” He delivers even on days when his body sends blazing signals that the temperature has crossed 50 degrees celsius, but is recorded as 49.9 degrees celsius, since 50 degrees celsius would mean a state holiday. Sometimes severe heat forces him to postpone deliveries till after sundown.”

- i. Why is the temperature deliberately recorded as 49.9 degrees celsius instead of 50 degrees?
 - (a) The measuring instruments in the desert are mostly faulty.
 - (b) Recording exactly 50 degrees would mandate a state holiday.
 - (c) The local climate never actually reaches exactly 50 degrees.
 - (d) It is the maximum temperature the government allows to record.
- ii. Which of the following best describes Khetaram’s perspective on his grueling daily deliveries during the summer?
 - (a) He feels cheated by the rigorous government regulations.

- (b) He views it as an exhausting but unavoidable daily duty.
- (c) He thrives on the intense physical challenges of the desert.
- (d) He ignores the severe heat to earn extra delivery money.
- iii. What does the impression of Khetaram’s footprints in the sand tell us?
- iv. Give the exact word from the extract which means “demand or specify (a requirement), typically as part of an official rule.”
- v. Fill in the blank:
Due to the severe heat, Khetaram sometimes postpones his deliveries until after _____.

Ans :

- i. (b) Recording exactly 50 degrees would mandate a state holiday.
- ii. (b) He views it as an exhausting but unavoidable daily duty.
- iii. The impression of Khetaram’s footprints reveals the weight of his mailbag, showing how heavy a burden he carries daily.
- iv. stipulate
- v. sundown

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Unlike the British postal system set up in India to relay company dak between administrative centres, after independence, the mandate of India Post was to bring the entire population within the mailing ambit. Compared to 25,000 post offices in 1947, today we have about more than a lakh and a half post offices throughout the country. Through the GDS, India Post has also been able to reach rural depositors, who entrust their monthly savings to the post office in their area. Every post office in the country has many operational accounts of the people which reflects their trust in the postal system.”

- i. What does the transition from relaying “company dak” to bringing the “entire population within the mailing ambit” indicate about India Post after independence?
 - (a) It shifted focus from profit-making to strict administrative control.
 - (b) It changed from an exclusive network to an inclusive public service.
 - (c) It reduced its overall workforce to manage the huge rural population.
 - (d) It strictly adopted British administrative models for modern governance.

- ii. Which of the following options correctly identifies the dual functions of the post office in rural India as highlighted in the extract?
 - (a) Relaying international mail and providing essential medical aid.
 - (b) Managing company communications and issuing national passports.
 - (c) Delivering personal communications and safeguarding financial savings.
 - (d) Regulating old British policies and actively funding local elections.
- iii. How has the number of post offices in India changed since independence?
- iv. Which word in the extract is used to mean the “scope, extent, or bounds of something”?
- v. Based on the extract, what specific action reflects the rural population’s trust in the modern postal system?

Ans :

- i. (b) It changed from an exclusive network to an inclusive public service.
- ii. (c) Delivering personal communications and safeguarding financial savings.
- iii. The number grew from 25,000 post offices in 1947 to more than a lakh and a half today.
- iv. ambit
- v. Entrusting their monthly savings to the post office.

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“The essential criterion for GDS selection is access to another means of livelihood. They are required to work only five hours in a day and are also allowed to serve after the age of 60, till the age of 65. All this is so that they can be paid a salary to enable them to have an assured income. The salary of regular postmen gets revised as the other government employees. “Only by applying such different conditions could we retain a large workforce of Gramin Dak Sewaks to serve remote outposts,” explains a postmaster.”

- i. Why does the government require a Gramin Dak Sewak to have “access to another means of livelihood”?
 - (a) The postal department cannot employ them for more than five hours.
 - (b) It compensates for the part-time nature and specific salary structure.
 - (c) The regular postmen demanded exclusive rights to full-time employment.

- (d) It ensures they do not depend entirely on the revised government salary.

- ii. **Assertion (A):** The postal department implements unique employment conditions for Gramin Dak Sewaks.

Reason (R): These specific conditions are necessary to maintain a large workforce in remote areas.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true, but R is false.
- (d) A is false, but R is true.

- iii. How many hours per day is a Gramin Dak Sewak required to work?

- iv. Identify the word from the text that means “guaranteed” or “certain to be provided”.

- v. State whether True or False with a reason:
A Gramin Dak Sewak must strictly retire at the age of 60.

Ans :

- i. (b) It compensates for the part-time nature and specific salary structure.
- ii. (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- iii. A Gramin Dak Sewak is required to work only five hours a day.
- iv. assured
- v. False, they are allowed to serve after the age of 60, till the age of 65.

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“There is one letter delivery he dreads. The envelope with the right corner torn off, which signifies that the missive bears news of death. “Ashubh Samachar cannot be carried into the house,” says Khetaram. So, he stands outside, reads out the letter twice, then tears it to bits. “Bad news must be destroyed,” he mutters philosophically. Today, after more than a decade and a half of bearing words across this desolate geography, Khetaram says his spine is strong. “I am grateful that as a Gramin Dak Sewak, I can serve the people even after 60.””

- i. Why does Khetaram tear the letter with the torn corner to bits?
 - (a) He is angry at the sender for improperly tearing the envelope.
 - (b) He wants to symbolically destroy the inauspicious news it brings.

- (c) He is following the strict official regulations of the post office.
- (d) He does not want the villagers to know he cannot read it well.
- ii. Which phrase best captures Khetaram's internal motivation for continuing his job despite the physical toll?
 - (a) A strong desire for public recognition and state awards.
 - (b) The strict financial necessity to survive the local famine.
 - (c) A deep sense of duty and continuous service to his people.
 - (d) The lingering fear of losing his government retirement benefits.
- iii. What does Khetaram do when he receives a letter bearing news of death?
- iv. What word from the extract refers to an official letter or written message?
- v. Fill in the blank:
The physical sign on an envelope that signifies to Khetaram that it carries news of death is a _____.

Ans :

- i. (b) He wants to symbolically destroy the inauspicious news it brings.
- ii. (c) A deep sense of duty and continuous service to his people.
- iii. Khetaram stands outside the house, reads the letter twice and then tears it to bits, believing bad news must be destroyed.
- iv. missive
- v. torn right corner



but deeply moved. I had assumed that being a postman simply meant delivering letters, but today I understood the true meaning of selfless service. Walking in the scorching 50-degree heat and watching him turn into a “walking sandman,” I realized how physically demanding this job truly is. Yet, he did not complain even once.

What touched me the most was his compassion towards the villagers. He patiently wrote letters for those who could not read or write, shared their small joys with a piece of jaggery, and comforted them in times of sorrow. Even at the age of sixty, his dedication far surpasses my youthful energy. Today, he taught me that empathy is the greatest duty of all.

Devanshu

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Though we are just a click away from sending mail at present, can you imagine how it was before the internet became the way of life? The mail was dropped in the post box, then through the postal system finally it was delivered by the postman in our letter box. The areas beyond the last railhead and after the road crumbles into sand, Gramin Dak Sewaks still serve as the sole link between the oases of humanity in India’s extremes and their faraway families.”

- i. What does the phrase “oases of humanity” imply about the areas served by the Gramin Dak Sewaks?
 - (a) They are highly fertile areas in a wasteland.
 - (b) They are isolated human settlements in deserts.
 - (c) They are densely populated metropolitan regions.
 - (d) They are technologically advanced postal hubs.
- ii. Consider the following statements:
 - I. The internet has fundamentally altered modern communication.
 - II. Gramin Dak Sewaks are completely obsolete in the current era.

Which of the following is correct?

 - (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
 - (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
 - (c) Both statements I and II are true.

- (d) Both statements I and II are false.
- iii. What role do Gramin Dak Sewaks play in remote areas of India?
- iv. Identify the word from the extract that means the same as “disintegrates” or “breaks down”.
- v. State whether True or False with a reason:
The passage suggests that modern technology has completely replaced the manual postal system in rural India.

Ans :

- i. (b) They are isolated human settlements in deserts.
- ii. (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- iii. Gramin Dak Sewaks serve as the sole link between isolated communities and their faraway families.
- iv. crumbles
- v. False, because the passage states that Gramin Dak Sewaks still serve as the sole link in extreme areas.

Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Khetaram is a Gramin Dak Sewak. His left shoulder slumped from years of carrying a mailbag, he is the sole postman of Somarad Branch Post Office. For the last 15 years, he has been a trusted link between the people attached to this Rajasthani village post office and their families. Defying all elements of the harshest desert of India, the Thar, he is the lone face of the state who reaches the far-flung hamlets, or dhaanis, of this remote area just 2.5 km short of the Indo-Pakistan border.”

- i. What does Khetaram’s “slumped left shoulder” primarily suggest about his life?
 - (a) He has a genetic physical deformity.
 - (b) He suffers from a recent severe injury.
 - (c) He bears physical toll from his service.
 - (d) He lacks proper training for carrying bags.
- ii. **Assertion (A):** Khetaram is considered a vital asset to the people of the Somarad Branch Post Office.
Reason (R): He successfully navigates the harsh Thar desert to deliver mail to remote areas.
 - (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.

permanent; they can change and evolve as a person grows.

The mother beautifully reassures Ming that these new, evolving goals are just as valuable and important as the original dreams we have when we are young. However, achieving these older dreams often means navigating a complex “maze of hurdles.” Because these dreams take longer to achieve, they also involve a larger “dreamscape”—meaning many more people will become a part of your life and your support system along the way.

Taking the Plunge

The letter concludes with a powerful and motivating piece of advice. The mother tells Ming to carefully consider all the obstacles and the hard work required. If, after realizing all these struggles, the passion is still “coursing through her veins,” then she should not hesitate. She tells Ming to “plunge” into her goals—meaning she should dive in completely, commit herself to the task, and bravely follow her dream.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Excerpt – a short extract from a text, portion
2. Collection – an accumulated group of items, compilation
3. Titled – named, designated
4. Deepest – most profound, intense, heartfelt
5. Thoughts – ideas, reflections, opinions
6. Celebrate – honor, praise, acknowledge
7. Special – unusual, exceptional, distinct
8. Bond – connection, relationship, tie
9. Exists – lives, occurs, prevails
10. Teenage – adolescent, youthful
11. Valuable – precious, useful, important
12. Insight – clear and deep understanding
13. Equipping – preparing, providing, supplying
14. Challenges – difficulties, obstacles, trials
15. By all means – definitely, certainly, without hesitation
16. Pursue – follow, chase, seek
17. Differentiates – distinguishes, sets apart, separates
18. Greatness – eminence, distinction, brilliance
19. Ordinary – normal, common, average
20. Effort – attempt, endeavor, hard work
21. Sacrifice – giving up something valued, surrender
22. Invest – put in, devote, commit
23. Realise – achieve, fulfill, accomplish
24. World-class – of the highest caliber, elite, outstanding

25. Standard – level of quality, benchmark, measure
26. Singularly – exclusively
27. Intensively – thoroughly, deeply, rigorously
28. Subject – topic, field of study, discipline
29. Passion – intense enthusiasm, strong emotion, zeal
30. Particular – specific, certain, distinct
31. Interest – curiosity, fascination, pursuit
32. Conviction – strong belief, certainty, assurance
33. Imperative – necessary
34. Count – calculate, consider, tally
35. Cost – price, expense, required sacrifice
36. Financial – monetary, economic, fiscal
37. Investments – contributions, funding, allocated resources
38. Burning – blazing, intensely passionate, ardent
39. In your blood – deeply ingrained, inherent part of your nature
40. Ready – prepared, willing, set
41. Commit – pledge, devote, bind
42. Task – job, assignment, duty
43. Plunge – throw oneself into the activity
44. Uphill – difficult, challenging, arduous
45. Buoyed up – kept afloat
46. Knowledge – awareness, understanding, information
47. Stamina – endurance, energy, staying power
48. Running out – depleting, finishing, exhausting
49. Prospect – likelihood, possibility, expectation
50. Success – achievement, victory, triumph
51. Keep on track – maintain progress, stay focused, continue direction
52. Academy Awards – prestigious film honors, Oscars
53. Actors – performers, players, artists
54. Films – movies, motion pictures, cinema
55. Winner – victor, champion, conqueror
56. Host – a large number, multitude, array
57. Formed – created, shaped, constituted
58. Support – assistance, backing, help
59. Network – interconnected group, system, community
60. Stood by – supported, remained loyal to, backed
61. Remain – stay, continue to be, persist
62. Wistfully – longingly
63. Wishful – based on desires rather than reality, hopeful
64. Thinking – reasoning, pondering, contemplating
65. Preferred – favored, chosen, opted

Ans :

- i. conviction
 - ii. B. an early abandonment of the dream
 - iii. complete
 - iv. because it brings deep personal satisfaction and provides the inner strength to keep going even when physical and mental stamina are running low.
 - v. The inner knowledge and satisfaction that they are doing what they love best and are doing the right thing.
2. From my own experience, life itself may change a person's dreams. These hopes and aspirations are no less than the original dream of younger days. To fulfil them you will need to negotiate a path through a maze of hurdles. The dream will take a much longer time to realise, and the people who are participants in your dreamscape would be many more.
- i. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The phrase 'life itself may change a person's dreams' suggests that dreams are not static but rather _____. (evolving/dynamic)
 - ii. What does the author mean by, 'hopes and aspirations are no less than the original dream of younger days'?
 - iii. Identify the phrase from the extract that indicates a complex and challenging journey.
 - iv. Complete the sentence with an appropriate reason.
The author says, 'people who are participants in your dreamscape would be many more' because _____.
 - v. What is the tone of the author in this extract?
A. appreciative and celebratory
B. excited and cheerful
C. optimistic and encouraging
D. eager and inquisitive

Ans :

- i. evolving (Note: "dynamic" is also correct, but "evolving" perfectly captures the essence of changing over time).
- ii. The author means that even if a person's goals change as they grow older due to life circumstances, these new dreams are just as valuable, meaningful, and important as the dreams they had when they were young.
- iii. "negotiate a path through a maze of hurdles"

- iv. because as a dream takes a long time to realise, you meet many new people along the way who either become part of your support network or are directly impacted by your evolving goals.
- v. C. optimistic and encouraging

II. Answer the following questions.

1. The letter begins thus, 'By all means follow that dream'. What do you think Ming must have written to her mother about?

Ans :

Ming must have written to her mother expressing doubts, fears, or hesitation about pursuing her ambitions. She likely asked her mother for advice on whether she should follow her dreams despite the potential difficulties and sacrifices involved.

2. How can one attain an international level of skill in any field? Mention any two ways.

Ans :

According to the text, one can attain an international level of skill by:

1. Singularly and intensively pursuing the subject for at least ten years.
2. Having strong conviction and being willing to make long-term investments in terms of effort, time, and sacrifice.

3. What differentiates the mere dreamers from actual achievers?

Ans :

Mere dreamers stop at wishful thinking and often abandon their goals for security or due to changing circumstances. Actual achievers, on the other hand, are differentiated by the immense amount of effort, sacrifice, and financial investment they are willing to put into making their dreams a reality.

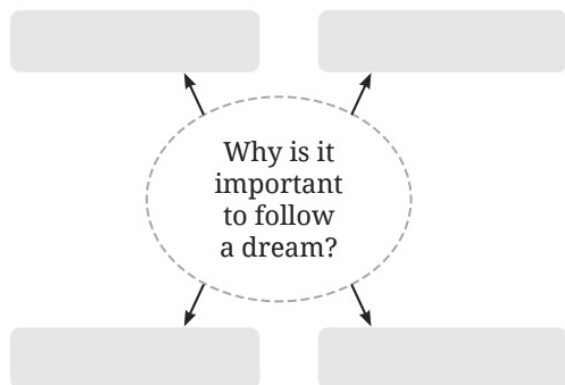
4. How does Ming's mother use critical questions and personal anecdotes to persuade Ming and convey her message effectively?

Ans :

Ming's mother uses critical questions (like asking if Ming knows the "ten years" rule) to provoke serious thought and realism regarding the hard work required. She uses personal anecdotes—such as her friends whose lives were changed by World War II, and her own experience of publishing a book—to show that while life is unpredictable and dreams may change, the pursuit of goals is still beautiful and entirely possible.

provide the right opportunities, guidance, and resources to help children develop their skills and stay on the right path.

III. Complete the given web chart. Give as many reasons as you can.



Ans :

Reason 1 : It gives our lives a clear sense of purpose and direction.

Reason 2 : It brings true happiness and personal satisfaction.

Reason 3 : It helps us discover our hidden talents and potential.

Reason 4 : Overcoming obstacles to achieve a dream builds resilience and strong character.

Reason 5 : Achieving our dreams can inspire others in society to pursue their own goals.

Check Your Understanding

I. State whether the following sentences are true or false. Share your answers with your classmates and teacher.

1. Reaching the peak of skill in a field typically demands a focused and intense dedication for about a decade.
2. The mother believes that significant effort and personal sacrifices are essential for turning aspirations into reality.
3. The path to achieving the deepest desires has very little difficulty or a few obstacles.
4. The mother is of the opinion that a person's life goals and hopes can evolve over time.
5. Having a strong network of individuals can be a hurdle in pursuing one's ambition.
6. The mother feels that pursuing a major life goal will not involve any financial expense or sacrifice.
7. For many individuals, their aspirations remain just wishes because they don't move

beyond mere daydreaming.

Ans :

1. True, 2. True, 3. False, 4. True, 5. False, 6. False, 7. True

Critical Reflection

I. Read the extracts given below and answer the questions that follow.

1. It starts with a passion for a particular interest, then comes the conviction that it is imperative to realise it. Count the cost in years of effort, financial investments and sacrifice. Then if it is still burning in your blood and you are ready to commit yourself to the task, plunge. It could be in any field—sports, science, arts, business, or design. The road may be uphill most of the way and often you are buoyed up only by the knowledge that you are doing what you love best and are doing the right thing. When stamina is running out, the prospect of success will keep you on track.

Complete the analogy with a suitable word from the extract.

enthusiasm : passion : : belief : _____

- i. Choose the correct option to complete the following sentence appropriately.

The author says that a realistic assessment of effort, investment and sacrifice is crucial for preventing _____.

- A. the need for external support network
- B. an early abandonment of the dream
- C. initial excitement from fading over time
- D. others from questioning one's commitment

- iii. Complete the following with the correct option from those given in the brackets.

The word 'plunge' as used in the extract indicates a _____ (complete/gradual) involvement in a task.

- iv. Complete the sentence with an appropriate reason.

The author's emphasis on 'when you are doing what you love best and are doing the right thing' works as a form of intrinsic motivation because _____.

- v. Mention one motivating factor besides 'prospect of success', that might keep a person on track, despite running out of stamina.

CHAPTER 8

FOLLOW THAT DREAM

1. INTRODUCTION

The chapter “Follow That Dream” centers on a heartfelt and grounded letter written by a mother to her ambitious yet anxious daughter, Ming. Facing deep doubts about her future, Ming receives this letter as a practical guide. The premise revolves around the mother stepping into the role of a wise mentor, thoughtfully balancing warm encouragement with the stark realities of pursuing one’s goals. It establishes a highly realistic context by highlighting the heavy personal sacrifices, the absolute necessity of a burning conviction, and the unpredictable hurdles involved in transitioning from a mere dreamer into an actual achiever.

2. CHARACTERS

Irene Chua (Ming’s Mother)

A wise, caring mother writing a heartfelt letter. She uses her own life experience to give her daughter practical advice about working hard to achieve big dreams.

Ming

The teenage daughter who receives the letter. She is at an age of forming life goals, receiving her mother’s encouraging yet realistic guidance on pursuing them.

3. SUMMARY

A Mother’s Loving Advice

The chapter “Follow That Dream” is presented in the form of a heartfelt, inspiring letter from a mother to her daughter, Ming. Ming has written to her mother, expressing her big ambitions but also sharing her doubts and fears about the difficult path ahead.

Acting as a guiding light, the mother begins her letter with complete encouragement, telling her daughter, “By all means follow that dream.”

However, like a wise and caring teacher, she makes sure to balance her encouragement with a healthy dose of reality about what it truly takes to succeed.

The Reality of Hard Work and Sacrifice

The mother explains that reaching the absolute peak of success—or attaining an international level of skill in any field (like sports, arts, or science)—does not happen overnight. It generally requires about ten years of intense, focused, and continuous dedication.

She advises Ming to “count the cost” of her ambitions. Achieving a great dream demands a heavy price, including years of effort, financial investments, and major personal sacrifices. The mother warns that the journey will be an “uphill task” filled with challenges. To survive this tough journey, a person needs a “burning conviction”—a deep, passionate belief in what they are doing. When a person’s physical and mental stamina runs out, the simple joy of doing what they love is the inner motivation that keeps them on track.

Mere Dreamers vs. Actual Achievers

In her letter, the mother makes a very clear distinction between people who only dream and people who actually achieve their goals. Many people have wishes, but their goals remain just “wishful thinking.” When life gets tough, or when they need the comfort of a secure job, they easily abandon their dreams.

Actual achievers, on the other hand, are completely different. They are the ones who are willing to face obstacles, invest their time, and make the tough sacrifices required to turn their imagination into reality.

Evolving Dreams and Life’s Unpredictability

Using personal stories—such as how World War II changed the lives of her friends, and her own difficult but rewarding experience of publishing a book—the mother teaches Ming that life is highly unpredictable. Because of changing life circumstances, a person’s dreams are not always

5. How does Ming's mother balance encouragement with caution in her advice?

Ans :

She balances encouragement with caution by immediately validating Ming's ambitions ("By all means follow that dream"), but she instantly follows it with a reality check, asking Ming to "count the cost" in years of effort and sacrifice. She promises that success is rewarding but warns that the "road may be uphill most of the way."

6. In the letter, Ming's mother specifically addresses the challenges people face in pursuing their dreams. Do you think this advice is still relevant in contemporary society? If yes, why? If no, why not?

Ans :

Yes, this advice is highly relevant in contemporary society. Even today, achieving greatness in any field requires intense dedication, financial investment, and a strong support system. Distractions are higher than ever, and competition is fierce, making the need for "burning conviction" and resilience against hurdles just as crucial now as it was in the past.

7. What 'costs' in terms of effort, sacrifice, and time are you willing or unwilling to invest to pursue your goals?

Ans :

I am willing to invest long hours of daily study, sacrifice my extra leisure time (like playing video games), and put in consistent hard work over many years to achieve my goals. However, I am unwilling to sacrifice my basic mental and physical health, or compromise my moral values, to achieve success.

Vocabulary and Structures in Context

I. Read the following sentence from the text.

The dream will take a much longer time to realise, and the people who are participants in your dreamscape would be many more.

The word 'dreamscape' is a compound word where '-scape' means 'a view or scene of'.

Now, refer to a dictionary and find out the meaning of the following words.

mindscape	seascape	landscape	cityscape
-----------	----------	-----------	-----------

1. Fill in the blanks in the following dialogue between two friends with the words given in the box.

Sneha : Your Goa pictures were beautiful! That

(i) _____ was dreamy.

Kiran : Thanks! It was way better than our usual

(ii) _____, so peaceful.

Sneha : I get that. But sometimes the city lights have their own charm.

Kiran : True, but I'm craving a quiet

(iii) _____. Forests, hills—something real.

Sneha : Yes, nature clears the

(iv) _____, doesn't it?

Kiran : Exactly. Let's plan a trip that soothes—inside and out.

Ans :

(i) seascape

(ii) cityscape

(iii) landscape

(iv) mindscape

Mindscape : A mental landscape; the realm of imagination and thoughts.

Seascape : A view or picture of the sea or ocean.

Landscape : All the visible features of an area of countryside or land.

Cityscape : The visual appearance or view of a city or urban area.

NODIA

II. Read each sentence carefully and choose the best meaning for the underlined expression. Then, use that expression in a sentence of your own.

1. She had a dream that seemed to burn in her blood, and she wasn't going to give up on it easily.

(i) make her angry
(ii) have a passionate desire
(iii) cause physical pain
(iv) become violent

2. Preparing for the final exam without proper notes felt like an uphill task.

(i) a tough challenge
(ii) a slow progress
(iii) a hard routine
(iv) a difficult choice

3. The team was buoyed up by their recent victory and felt confident about the next game.

(i) energised by success
(ii) encouraged by the result
(iii) motivated to improve
(iv) lifted in spirit

4. He thought he could ace the exam without studying, but that was just wishful thinking.

(i) a clever shortcut but no real effort behind it

- (ii) a confident guess but lacking proper knowledge
 (iii) a hopeful belief but unlikely to be true
 (iv) a strong desire but based on facts and planning
5. Don't be a wet blanket—we're trying to have fun!
 (i) spoil-sport
 (ii) latecomer
 (iii) rule-breaker
 (iv) daydreamer
6. Excitement was coursing through her veins as she stepped onto the stage for the first time.
 (i) hiding deep inside
 (ii) flowing through her body
 (iii) lingering in her thoughts
 (iv) causing numbness

Ans :

- (ii) have a passionate desire.
Sentence : His ambition to play cricket for the national team burns in his blood, driving him to practice for hours every single day.
- (i) a tough challenge
Sentence : Convincing the villagers to adopt the new farming technology proved to be an uphill task.
- (iv) lifted in spirit
Sentence : Buoyed up by the teacher's praise, Reena happily volunteered to lead the science project.
- (iii) a hopeful belief but unlikely to be true
Sentence : Thinking it will stop raining just because we want to play outside is purely wishful thinking.
- (i) spoil-sport
Sentence : We were all excited about the picnic until Amit acted like a wet blanket by constantly complaining about the heat.
- (ii) flowing through her body
Sentence : Pure adrenaline was coursing through her veins as she prepared to jump from the diving board.

III. Read the following sentence from the text.

After all the obstacles are considered, if the burning conviction is still coursing through your veins, then go ahead and do something about it. Here, the first conditional is used to talk about real or possible situations in the future. Sometimes, instead of saying 'will + verb' in the main clause, we use an imperative (a command or advice).

Complete the sentences using your own words (imperatives):

- If the idea excites you, _____.
- If you hear strange noises, _____.
- If this seems too hard, _____.
- If you care about the issue, _____.
- If you finish early, _____.

Ans :

- If the idea excites you, **pursue it with all your dedication.**
- If you hear strange noises, **lock the doors and stay inside.**
- If this seems too hard, **take a short break and try again.**
- If you care about the issue, **raise your voice and take action.**
- If you finish early, **revise your answers thoroughly.**

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

IV. Read the following sentences from the text. Analyse the usage of 'could' and match the sentences with their functions given in the box below.

Past ability or purpose	Possibility
Past possibility or speculation	
Unreal or hypothetical situation	

- It **could** be in any field—sports, science, arts, business or design.
- "I wish I **could** be this or the other," they have never got beyond just wishful thinking.
- They **could** have preferred to trade their dream for security.
- I know too, of people who had wished to finish secondary school but they had to go out to work so that they **could** support their siblings through school.

Ans :

- Possibility
- Unreal or hypothetical situation
- Past possibility or speculation
- Past ability or purpose

V. Complete the following sentences using 'could' with the functions mentioned within brackets.

- I wish _____ without worrying about money. (unreal or hypothetical)
- They _____ the shorter route, but they didn't know about it. (past possibility or speculative)
- When I was younger, I _____ without stopping. (past ability)

4. She _____ the library right now—she had mentioned it. (possibility)
5. _____ repeat the question? I didn't hear it clearly. (formal/polite request)

Ans :

1. I wish **I could travel the world** without worrying about money.
2. They **could have taken** the shorter route, but they didn't know about it.
3. When I was younger, I **could run for miles** without stopping.
4. She **could be in** the library right now—she had mentioned it.
5. **Could you please** repeat the question? I didn't hear it clearly.

VI. Fill in the blanks with suitable grammatical forms of the words given in brackets.

Experiential learning is an approach to education that focuses on learning through experience, action and reflection. It 1. _____ (help) students gain practical knowledge and develop real-world skills. Traditionally, students 2. _____ (learn) by listening to lectures and memorising facts, but experiential learning has changed this process.

In an experiential setting, students 3. _____ (work) on projects, solve problems, and take part in activities that reflect real-life challenges. They 4. _____ (apply) what they have learned in class to new and unfamiliar situations. For example, a student studying science 5. _____ (conduct) experiments to test a theory, while a business student 6. _____ (analyse) a case study to understand market trends.

Reflection is key to this process. After completing a task, learners 7. _____ (must/reflect) on what went well and what could be improved. This reflection 8. _____ (help) them build a deeper understanding of the topic.

Educators believe that experiential learning 9. _____ (be) more effective than passive learning methods because it is engaging and meaningful. In the future, more schools and universities 10. _____ (incorporate) experiential learning into their curriculum to prepare students for the real world.

Ans :

1. helps, 2. learned (or learnt), 3. work, 4. apply, 5. conducts, 6. analyses, 7. must reflect, 8. helps, 9. is, 10. will incorporate.

Listen and Respond

I. You will listen to an announcement regarding vocational courses starting in school. As you listen, fill in the blanks with one to three exact words that you hear. (Transcript for teacher on page 275)

1. Vocational courses will begin in the month of _____.
2. The objective of the courses is to prepare you with _____ for future studies and jobs.
3. Offered courses include Graphic Design, _____, Web Application, and Entrepreneurship Skills, etc.
4. Classes will be conducted by _____ at school.
5. The application forms will be available at the _____.
6. Choice of course will be given to _____ applicants.

Ans :

1. Vocational courses will begin in the month of **April**.
2. The objective of the courses is to prepare you with **practical skills** for future studies and jobs.
3. Offered courses include Graphic Design, **Basic Coding**, Web Application, and Entrepreneurship Skills, etc.
4. Classes will be conducted by **trained professionals** at school.
5. The application forms will be available at the **school office**.
6. Choice of course will be given to **each student**.

Speaking Activity

I. Work in groups of four. Each member of the group takes up one of the roles given below. Use the sentence prompts given under each role to present your role play.

1. The Dreamer (for example: wants to be a trekking guide)
 - I know this might sound challenging, but...
 - Ever since I was a child, I've dreamed of...
 - I understand it's not a usual path, but I believe...
 - It's an uphill journey, but I'm ready for it because...
2. A Parent (worried about financial stability)
 - I know you're passionate, but...
 - I only want what's best for you, and...
 - You can always pursue your dream later...

23. The mother states that the journey is filled with _____.

- (a) shortcuts (b) surprises
- (c) challenges (d) vacations

Ans :

- (c) challenges

24. A person's dedication to their dream must be _____.

- (a) temporary (b) occasional
- (c) incomplete (d) continuous

Ans :

- (d) continuous

25. Assertion (A): Achieving an international level of skill requires about ten years.

Reason (R): Success in major fields always happens overnight.

- (a) A is correct, R is incorrect.
- (b) A is incorrect, R is correct.
- (c) Both A and R are correct.
- (d) Both A and R are incorrect.

Ans :

- (a) A is correct, R is incorrect.

26. The mother makes a clear distinction between mere dreamers and actual _____.

- (a) believers (b) achievers
- (c) followers (d) beginners

Ans :

- (b) achievers

27. For many people, their goals remain just "_____ thinking."

- (a) hopeful (b) positive
- (c) wishful (d) magical

Ans :

- (c) wishful

28. Why do many people easily abandon their dreams?

- (a) When they feel tired
- (b) When parents complain
- (c) When friends mock them
- (d) When life gets tough

Ans :

- (d) When life gets tough

29. Actual achievers are willing to face _____.

- (a) obstacles (b) questions
- (c) relatives (d) vacations

Ans :

- (a) obstacles

30. What do actual achievers turn into reality?

- (a) Their nightmares (b) Their imagination
- (c) Their complaints (d) Their weaknesses

Ans :

- (b) Their imagination

31. People who only dream easily _____ their dreams when life gets tough.

- (a) remember (b) celebrate
- (c) abandon (d) broadcast

Ans :

- (c) abandon

32. What type of job do mere dreamers often seek when facing hardships?

- (a) A risky daily job
- (b) A perfect dream job
- (c) A tough outdoor job
- (d) A highly secure job

Ans :

- (d) A highly secure job

33. Which of the following statements is correct regarding actual achievers?

- (a) They are completely ready to invest time and make sacrifices.
- (b) They frequently complain about the lack of highly secure jobs.
- (c) They quickly abandon their goals whenever they face obstacles.
- (d) They firmly believe that wishful thinking is enough for success.

Ans :

- (a) They are completely ready to invest time and make sacrifices.

34. The distinction between mere dreamers and actual achievers is very _____.

- (a) blur (b) clear
- (c) weak (d) mild

Ans :

- (b) clear

35. Dreamers usually have wishes, but they avoid making tough _____.

- (a) decisions (b) statements
- (c) sacrifices (d) agreements

Learning Beyond the Text

I. Create a Vision Board for yourself.

A vision board is a visual representation of your goals, dreams, and inspirations. It helps you focus on what you want to achieve and stay motivated. Vision boards often include pictures, words, or symbols that reflect your hopes and intentions for the future.



1. **My Dreams**—Think about what you wish for in the future. This could be becoming an artist, serving the Nation, or learning a new skill. Write or draw it in the 'My dreams' section.
2. **I Want to Try**—List new things you want to experience this year. These might include trying out for a play, starting a journal, learning to ride a bicycle, etc.
3. **Goals**—Think about specific things you want to achieve. Use this space to write goals like 'Read 10 books this year' or 'Improve my writing'.
4. **Places I Will Go**—These can be real or imaginary places you'd like to visit. Draw or paste pictures of cities, nature spots, or even dream destinations like the space or the ocean.
5. **Inspiration**—Who or what inspires you? It could be a family member, teacher, a famous personality, or a quote that gives you strength.

Ans :

1. **My Dreams** : Draw or paste a picture of the career you want (e.g., a stethoscope if you want to be a doctor, or a laptop if you want to be a coder). Write : "To become an expert in software development."
2. **I Want to Try** : Write down hobbies you want to explore. (e.g., "1. Learn to play the guitar. 2. Write a short story.")

3. **Goals** : Write specific targets for this academic year. (e.g., "1. Score 90% in Math. 2. Read 12 new books this year.")
4. **Places I Will Go** : Paste pictures of travel destinations. (e.g., "The Himalayas," "A space observatory," or "Japan.")
5. **Inspiration** : Stick a photo of your role model (like your parents, a scientist, or a sports star) and write a quote next to them, such as "Hard work beats talent when talent doesn't work hard."

II. Great personalities in history were inspired by their parents.



1. Chhatrapati Shivaji's mother, Jijabai, instilled in him a strong sense of dharma, patriotism, and justice. She told him tales from the Ramayana and Mahabharata, which shaped his leadership ideals and bravery.
2. Queen Madalasa, wife of King Ritudhwaja, a revered figure from Indian scriptures, nurtured in her children a deep understanding of the soul and detachment from material desires. Her wisdom led her sons to seek spiritual liberation. Madalasa is a timeless example of a mother guiding her children on the path of enlightenment.

Ans :

Great personalities in history were often inspired and shaped by their parents.

1. **Chhatrapati Shivaji** was deeply influenced by his mother **Jijabai**, who taught him values like dharma, patriotism, and justice. Through stories from the *Ramayana* and *Mahabharata*, she instilled courage and strong leadership qualities in him.
2. **Queen Madalasa**, a wise and spiritual mother, guided her children towards understanding the soul and detachment from worldly desires. Her teachings inspired them to seek spiritual enlightenment.

Thus, both examples show how parents play a crucial role in shaping the character and future of their children.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. What is the format of the chapter "Follow That Dream"?

(a) A heartfelt letter (b) A fictional story
(c) A brief news report (d) A scientific paper

Ans :

(a) A heartfelt letter

2. Who is the recipient of the communication in the chapter?

(a) A childhood friend (b) Her daughter Ming
(c) A junior student (d) Her younger sister

Ans :

(b) Her daughter Ming

3. What has Ming expressed in her message to her mother?

(a) Her lack of interest in pursuing any major future careers.
(b) Her desire to travel the world instead of attending school.
(c) Her big ambitions along with her doubts about the future.
(d) Her wish to find a very secure and high-paying daily job.

Ans :

(c) Her big ambitions along with her doubts about the future.

4. The mother acts as a _____ light for Ming.

(a) shining (b) glowing
(c) blazing (d) guiding

Ans :

(d) guiding

5. What are the two things the mother balances in her advice?

(a) Encouragement and reality
(b) Happiness and pure joy
(c) Excitement and boredom
(d) Extreme wealth and fame

Ans :

(a) Encouragement and reality

6. Which phrase does the mother use to encourage her daughter initially?

(a) Always work very hard
(b) Follow that great dream
(c) Never give up on hope
(d) Chase your biggest goals

Ans :

(b) Follow that great dream

7. The mother acts like a wise and caring _____.

(a) parent (b) friend
(c) teacher (d) mentor

Ans :

(c) teacher

8. What does the mother want Ming to understand about the path ahead?

(a) It is completely easy
(b) It is very much quick
(c) It is a fun adventure
(d) It is generally tough

Ans :

(d) It is generally tough

9. **Assertion (A):** The mother starts the letter with total encouragement.

Reason (R): She wants Ming to abandon her ambitions completely.

(a) A is correct, R is incorrect.
(b) A is incorrect, R is correct.
(c) Both A and R are correct.
(d) Both A and R are incorrect.

Ans :

(a) A is correct, R is incorrect.

10. Ming feels _____ about the difficult path ahead.

(a) total absolute confidence
(b) deep doubts and fears
(c) complete careless nature
(d) total absolute arrogance

Ans :

(b) deep doubts and fears

11. Reaching the absolute peak of success in any field does not happen _____.

(a) naturally (b) peacefully
(c) overnight (d) perfectly

Ans :

(c) overnight

12. According to the mother, how long does it take to attain an international level of skill?

- (a) About five years (b) About two years
(c) About nine years (d) About ten years

Ans :

(d) About ten years

13. Which fields are mentioned as examples for attaining international skill?

- (a) Sports, arts, science
(b) Music, dance, drama
(c) Math, history, civics
(d) Games, films, poetry

Ans :

(a) Sports, arts, science

14. What specific advice does the mother give regarding Ming's ambitions?

- (a) Ignore the cost (b) Count the cost
(c) Forget the cost (d) Divide the cost

Ans :

(b) Count the cost

15. What kind of price does achieving a great dream demand?

- (a) A small price (b) A cheap price
(c) A heavy price (d) A minor price

Ans :

(c) A heavy price

16. Which of the following is required to achieve a great dream?

- (a) Relying on others to complete the difficult daily tasks.
(b) Waiting patiently for sudden luck and immense fortune.
(c) Avoiding any kind of hard work and financial troubles.
(d) Making major personal sacrifices and financial investments.

Ans :

(d) Making major personal sacrifices and financial investments.

17. The mother warns that the journey will be an _____ task.

- (a) uphill (b) simple
(c) normal (d) casual

Ans :

(a) uphill

18. What does a person need to survive this tough journey?

- (a) Endless wealth (b) Burning conviction
(c) Constant support (d) Perfect weather

Ans :

(b) Burning conviction

19. How is "burning conviction" defined in the chapter?

- (a) A mild interest in trying out various new daily hobbies.
(b) A temporary excitement about achieving very quick success.
(c) A deep, passionate belief in what they are actively doing.
(d) A constant need to seek approval from close old friends.

Ans :

(c) A deep, passionate belief in what they are actively doing.

20. When physical and mental stamina runs out, what keeps a person on track?

- (a) External pressure (b) Financial rewards
(c) Family requests (d) Inner motivation

Ans :

(d) Inner motivation

21. Inner motivation is derived from the simple _____ of doing what they love.

- (a) joy (b) act
(c) aim (d) job

Ans :

(a) joy

22. Which of the following statements is correct regarding the mother's advice?

- (a) Success is guaranteed if one simply dreams about it daily.
(b) True success demands a decade of intense and focused effort.
(c) Financial investments are strictly unnecessary for true success.
(d) Personal sacrifices should be entirely avoided for good health.

Ans :

(b) True success demands a decade of intense and focused effort.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

Ans :

(c) coursing

48. The mother tells Ming to “_____” into her goals.

(a) wander (b) glance

(c) stumble (d) plunge

Ans :

(d) plunge

49. Which of the following statements is correct regarding the conclusion?

(a) Ming should bravely follow her dream despite the various struggles.

(b) Ming should totally avoid committing herself fully to her goals.

(c) Ming should calmly wait for a few years before deciding anything.

(d) Ming should safely seek an easy path without any tough obstacles.

Ans :

(a) Ming should bravely follow her dream despite the various struggles.

50. What does “taking the plunge” mean in the context of the letter?

(a) Swimming in a deep ocean to build massive physical body strength.

(b) Diving in completely and committing totally to the difficult main task.

(c) Quitting all current jobs to relax entirely and do absolutely nothing.

(d) Ignoring the wise mother’s advice and choosing a very secure job.

Ans :

(b) Diving in completely and committing totally to the difficult main task.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. What prompted the mother to write the heartfelt letter to her daughter Ming?

Ans :

Ming recently shared her big ambitions for the future, along with deep doubts and fears about achieving them. In response, her mother wrote this heartfelt letter to act as a guiding light, offering wisdom and support for her daughter’s journey.

2. How does the mother balance her advice regarding Ming’s ambitions?

Ans :

The mother balances her advice by combining warm encouragement with practical reality. While she enthusiastically tells Ming to “follow that dream,” she also warns her that the path ahead is generally tough and requires understanding the genuine struggles of success.

3. What timeline does the mother provide for attaining an international level of skill?

Ans :

The mother explains that reaching the absolute peak of success does not happen overnight. She states that it takes about ten years of intense, focused effort to attain an international level of skill in challenging fields like sports, arts, or science.

4. Why does the mother ask Ming to “count the cost” of her dreams?

Ans :

By asking Ming to “count the cost,” the mother highlights that achieving a great dream demands a heavy price. It requires major personal sacrifices and significant financial investments, rather than just relying on luck or avoiding hard work completely.

Define “burning conviction” as described in the chapter.

Ans :

“Burning conviction” is defined as a deep, passionate belief in what one is actively doing. It is not temporary excitement, but an intense dedication that is essential for surviving the uphill tasks and relentless challenges of pursuing a major ambition.

6. What keeps a person on track when their physical and mental stamina runs out?

Ans :

When physical and mental stamina are exhausted, inner motivation keeps a person on track. This crucial inner drive is derived directly from the simple, pure joy of doing what they love, rather than relying on external pressures or financial rewards.

7. Why must dedication to a dream be continuous?

Ans :

The mother emphasizes that the journey to success is filled with tough challenges and

Ans :

(c) sacrifices

36. Actual achievers are completely _____ from mere dreamers.

(a) separated (b) protected

(c) insulated (d) different

Ans :

(d) different

37. What major historical event changed the lives of the mother's friends?

(a) World War II (b) World War I

(c) The Cold War (d) The Civil War

Ans :

(a) World War II

38. What personal difficult experience does the mother share?

(a) Running a race (b) Publishing a book

(c) Painting a house (d) Climbing a hill

Ans :

(b) Publishing a book

39. These personal stories teach Ming that life is highly _____.

(a) predictable (b) comfortable

(c) unpredictable (d) controllable

Ans :

(c) unpredictable

40. Because of changing circumstances, a person's dreams are not always _____.

(a) impossible (b) successful

(c) affordable (d) permanent

Ans :

(d) permanent

41. Dreams can change and _____ as a person grows.

(a) evolve (b) shrink

(c) vanish (d) freeze

Ans :

(a) evolve

42. How does the mother view Ming's new, evolving goals?

(a) They are completely useless and a total waste of precious time.

(b) They are just as valuable as the original early

childhood dreams.

(c) They are far too difficult and should be immediately avoided now.

(d) They are solely meant for people who lack real serious ambition.

Ans :

(b) They are just as valuable as the original early childhood dreams.

43. Achieving older dreams involves navigating a complex "maze of _____."

(a) mirrors (b) options

(c) hurdles (d) rewards

Ans :

(c) hurdles

44. A larger "dreamscape" means more people will become a part of your _____.

(a) rival sports team

(b) strict enemy list

(c) distant social club

(d) active support system

Ans :

(d) active support system

45. **Assertion (A):** Life circumstances are highly unpredictable and can alter our goals.

Reason (R): A person's dreams are always permanent and never evolve.

(a) A is correct, R is incorrect.

(b) A is incorrect, R is correct.

(c) Both A and R are correct.

(d) Both A and R are incorrect.

Ans :

(a) A is correct, R is incorrect.

46. What must Ming consider carefully before pursuing her dreams?

(a) The popular opinions

(b) The tough obstacles

(c) The warm weather

(d) The vacation plans

Ans :

(b) The tough obstacles

47. The mother advises Ming to continue if passion is still "_____ through her veins."

(a) dripping (b) bleeding

(c) coursing (d) creeping

- What if it doesn't...?
3. A Mentor or Teacher (offers balanced advice)
 - Remember dreams need planning...
 - Let's look at the long-term view...
 - There are ways to combine your dream and...
 - Are you ready to...?
 4. A Friend/Sibling (neutral or supportive voice)
 - You've always been good at ... don't give up now.
 - I don't want to be a wet blanket, but what's your backup plan?
 - If anyone can do this, it's you, so...
 - If this dream makes you happy...

Ans :

Student 1 (The Dreamer) : I know this might sound challenging, but I want to become a professional trekking guide. Ever since I was a child, I've dreamed of scaling the highest mountains. I understand it's not a usual path, but I believe I have the physical stamina and passion for it. It's an uphill journey, but I'm ready for it because the mountains feel like home to me.

Student 2 (A Parent) : I know you're passionate, but this is a very risky profession. I only want what's best for you, and a stable office job provides security. You can always pursue your dream later as a hobby. What if it doesn't work out or you get injured? How will you support yourself?

Student 3 (A Mentor/Teacher) : Remember dreams need planning, both of you. Let's look at the long-term view. There are ways to combine your dream and stability—you could get a degree in tourism or physical education while you train. Are you ready to commit to rigorous safety certifications and training before you plunge into this?

Student 4 (A Friend/Sibling) : You've always been good at hiking and navigating... don't give up now. I don't want to be a wet blanket, but what's your backup plan if the season is bad? Still, if anyone can do this, it's you, so I think you should try. If this dream makes you happy, I will support you.

Writing Task

- I. You are passionate about pursuing a course in designing in future. You come across a summer workshop being conducted by a reputed design institute. Write an email to the Director of the institute enquiring the details of the workshop and expressing your interest in joining it.

Follow the guidelines given below to write the email.

- Use formal language
- Avoid use of abbreviations
- Include the following components:
 - Header consisting of—sender, receiver, date, and subject
 - The message—introduction, seeking permission, conclusion
 - Complementary close—Yours sincerely,
 - Name, (designation), and contact details of the sender

Format of an email:

From	:	
To	:	
Cc	:	
Bcc	:	
Subject	:	
Message	:	

Ans :

From	:	student.name@email.com
To	:	director@designinstitute.in
Cc	:	
Bcc	:	
Subject	:	Enquiry Regarding Summer Workshop in Design
Message	:	

Respected Sir/Madam,

I am writing to express my keen interest in the upcoming Summer Workshop in Design being organised by your esteemed institute. I am currently a Class 9 student and I am highly passionate about pursuing a career in professional design in the future.

I came across the advertisement for this workshop and I believe it would be a wonderful opportunity for me to develop my fundamental skills and gain exposure to the design world.

Could you please provide me with further details regarding the workshop? Specifically, I would like to know the exact dates, timings, the fee structure, and the syllabus that will be covered. I would also like to know the procedure to apply and seek permission to enroll in the same.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours sincerely,

Rohan Sharma

Student, Class 9

Contact: 98765XXXXX

obstacles. Therefore, a person's dedication cannot be occasional or temporary; it must be continuous to push through hardships and eventually turn ambitious imagination into actual reality.

8. What characterizes people who engage merely in "wishful thinking"?

Ans :

People who engage in mere "wishful thinking" have desires but completely avoid making tough personal sacrifices. Because their commitment is weak, they easily abandon their dreams whenever life gets difficult, often settling instead for highly secure and risk-free daily jobs.

9. How do actual achievers differ from mere dreamers when facing obstacles?

Ans :

Unlike mere dreamers who quit during hardships, actual achievers bravely face obstacles. They possess a clear readiness to invest time and make significant sacrifices, allowing them to overcome struggles and successfully transform their imaginative aspirations into tangible, real-world achievements.

10. Why does the mother mention World War II in her letter?

Ans :

The mother mentions World War II to illustrate how unpredictable life can be. By sharing how this major historical event dramatically changed her friends' lives, she teaches Ming that circumstances often shift, meaning a person's initial dreams are not always permanent.

11. What personal difficult experience does the mother share with Ming?

Ans :

The mother shares her own difficult personal experience of publishing a book. She uses this story to further demonstrate the unpredictable nature of life, showing Ming that pursuing goals often involves unexpected struggles that require resilience and adaptability to overcome.

12. How do dreams change as a person grows older?

Ans :

Because life circumstances are highly unpredictable, dreams are not permanent. As a person grows and experiences new things, their dreams naturally evolve. The mother assures Ming that these new, evolving goals are just as valuable as her original childhood dreams.

13. What is meant by the phrase "maze of hurdles"?

Ans :

The "maze of hurdles" refers to the complex challenges and unexpected obstacles a person faces when pursuing older, evolved dreams. Navigating this maze requires patience, continuous effort, and resilience to successfully reach the newly defined goals in an unpredictable life.

14. What is the benefit of having a larger "dreamscape"?

Ans :

Expanding one's ambitions into a larger "dreamscape" is highly beneficial because it naturally draws in more people who share similar visions. This interconnected environment helps create an active, strong support system that assists individuals in overcoming difficult hurdles together.

15. Under what condition should Ming take the plunge into her goals?

Ans :

The mother advises Ming to take the plunge only if passion is still "coursing through her veins." If she deeply feels this intense inner drive despite knowing the tough obstacles ahead, she should completely commit to her difficult main task.

16. What is the mother's final advice to Ming in the letter?

Ans :

The mother concludes by advising Ming to bravely follow her dream despite the inevitable struggles. She encourages her to dive in entirely, taking the plunge with full commitment, rather than seeking a safe path devoid of any tough obstacles.

17. Why does the mother act like a wise teacher rather than just a parent?

Ans :

The mother acts like a wise teacher by offering practical, experiential knowledge. Instead of blindly praising Ming, she thoughtfully prepares her daughter for reality, teaching her about long-term commitment, financial investments, and the clear difference between simple wishing and achieving.

18. What does the chapter imply about sudden luck and immense fortune?

Ans :

The chapter clearly implies that sudden luck and immense fortune are not reliable paths to success.

4. **Imagery:** Using descriptive words to create vivid pictures in the reader's mind. For example, "This sunny golden land is ours" shows bright visual imagery that paints India as a warm, glowing and prosperous land.
5. **Allusion:** A reference to a well-known person, place, scripture or event. For example, "The sacred Upanishads are ours" and "the Buddha preached his dhamma here" show references to real Indian scriptures and historical figures to highlight India's rich heritage.
6. **Hyperbole:** An exaggerated statement used to create a strong effect. For example, "there's no equal anywhere on earth" shows an exaggeration to express that the Himavanta mountain is so great that nothing on earth can compare to it.
7. **Anaphora:** Repeating the same word or phrase at the beginning of successive lines. For example, "The mighty Himavanta is ours/The generous Ganga is ours/The sacred Upanishads are ours/This sunny golden land is ours" shows the repeated beginning creating a powerful, marching rhythm.
8. **Epithet:** Using a describing word or phrase closely linked to a person or thing. For example, "The mighty Himavanta", "The generous Ganga" and "The sacred Upanishads" show each subject is given a special describing word that highlights its most important quality.
9. **Metaphor:** A direct comparison without using "like" or "as." For example, "This sunny golden land is ours" shows India is directly described as a sunny golden land, comparing it to something precious and bright without using like or as.
10. **Refrain:** A line or phrase that is repeated at regular intervals in a poem. For example, "she's peerless, let's praise her!" appears at the end of both the first and third stanzas, acting as a chorus that reinforces the poem's central message of pride in India.
11. **Alliteration:** Repetition of the same consonant sound at the beginning of nearby words. For example, "many a sage has sanctified" shows the repetition of the 's' sound creating a soft and reverent musical effect.

5. MESSAGE

The core message of the poem is to inspire deep love and pride for our motherland. The poet beautifully encourages us to appreciate our

country's majestic nature, like the tall Himalayas and the holy river Ganga. More importantly, we should feel proud of our rich history. Since great thinkers like Gautama Buddha spread peace and wisdom from this very land, the poet teaches us to always value and respect our nation's great culture.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Reflect and Respond

- I. Recall the lines of the National Anthem and complete the table given below with the names of the states, mountain ranges, and rivers mentioned in it.

States/Provinces	Mountain Ranges	Rivers
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

Ans :

States/Provinces	Mountain Ranges	Rivers
Punjab, Sindhu	Himalaya	Yamuna
Gujarat, Maratha	Vindhya	Ganga
Dravida, Utkala		
Banga		

- II. Work in pairs. Discuss what the words 'जय हे' (Jaya he) in the last two lines of the National Anthem convey. Share your answer with your classmates and teacher.

Ans :

The words 'जय हे' (Jaya he) translate to "Victory to Thee" or "Hail to Thee." In the context of the National Anthem, they convey a deep sense of patriotism, reverence, and a triumphant salute to Mother India, wishing her eternal glory and victorious prosperity.

SCAN QR CODE

JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



valuable—the honest truth.

She advised me to “count the cost” and explained that success demands years of hard work and sacrifices. Her idea of “burning conviction” deeply touched me. I realized that just wishing for success is not enough, and I do not want to be someone who gives up easily.

Now, I feel a strong sense of determination within me. Even though the path ahead may be full of challenges, I am ready to face them with courage. I am prepared to move forward and truly commit to my dreams.

Ming

5. How does the mother use the examples of World War II and her own experience of publishing a book to impart a lesson on the unpredictability of life?

Ans :

To teach Ming about the unpredictable nature of life, the mother shares powerful, real-world examples. She references World War II to demonstrate how massive historical events abruptly and permanently altered the life trajectories of her friends. On a more personal level, she shares her own difficult experience of publishing a book, highlighting the unexpected hurdles she faced. These stories serve a vital purpose: they prove that life is rarely controllable or predictable. Because circumstances constantly change, a person’s initial dreams may not remain permanent. The mother uses these examples to reassure Ming that it is perfectly normal for dreams to evolve as she grows, and that adapting to these unpredictable shifts is a natural part of the journey.

6. Imagine you are Ming. Write a reply letter to your mother, thanking her for validating your evolving dreams and promising to build an active support system.

Ans :

Dear Mother,

Thank you so much for your heartfelt letter. Your words have truly guided me during my moments of doubt. I was afraid that changing my goals meant giving up, but your reassurance that evolving dreams are equally valuable has lifted a great burden from my mind.

I now understand that life is unpredictable, just like your own experience with publishing your book. Your advice has helped me accept change and face challenges with a stronger mindset. I am

ready to face the “maze of hurdles” with burning conviction.

I will also embrace a larger dreamscape by connecting with like-minded people. Building a strong support system will help me stay motivated and focused. Thank you for inspiring me to move forward with courage and confidence.

With love,

Ming

7. Discuss the significance of a “larger dreamscape” and the “maze of hurdles” in the pursuit of evolving goals.

Ans :

As a person grows, their dreams also evolve, making the journey more complex and challenging. Life’s unpredictability often turns this journey into a “maze of hurdles,” representing the many unexpected obstacles one must face while pursuing refined goals.

However, the mother balances this idea with the concept of a “larger dreamscape.” Expanding one’s vision allows a person to connect with a wider group of like-minded individuals who share similar aspirations.

This broader network becomes a strong support system. It provides encouragement, guidance, and resources, making it easier to overcome challenges. As a result, navigating the difficult path toward success becomes more manageable and achievable.

8. Draft a short speech for your school’s morning assembly on the topic “Taking the Plunge: From Dreamers to Achievers,” inspired by the lessons in the chapter.

Ans :

Respected Principal, Teachers, and Friends,
Today, I want to talk about “Taking the Plunge.” We all have big ambitions, but how many of us are mere dreamers relying on wishful thinking? True success does not happen overnight. It demands a heavy price, spanning years of intense effort and major personal sacrifices. When the journey becomes an uphill task and our physical stamina runs out, we must rely on our inner motivation and “burning conviction”—the pure joy of doing what we love. Let us not be people who abandon their goals for highly secure jobs when life gets tough. Instead, let us bravely face the maze of hurdles. If passion is coursing through your veins, take the plunge and become an actual achiever!

Thank you.

CHAPTER 1

BHARAT OUR LAND

1. INTRODUCTION

The poem is a beautiful and patriotic ode that celebrates the breathtaking landscape and rich heritage of the motherland. Set against the majestic backdrop of the towering Himalayas and the nurturing waters of the river Ganga, the text captures the physical grandeur of a “sunny golden land.” Beyond its geographical borders, the premise deeply explores the country’s unparalleled cultural and intellectual foundations. It establishes a historical setting where ancient sages unlocked cosmic wisdom through the Upanishads, Gautama Buddha preached peace, and gallant warriors stood alongside creators of divine music, making the nation truly peerless.

2. SUMMARY

Natural Beauty and Sacred Heritage

The speaker begins by expressing immense pride in the majestic Himalayan mountains, declaring that they are completely unparalleled anywhere in the world. The focus then moves to the river Ganga, described as abundant and graceful. The speaker also highlights the sacred Upanishads, stating that these holy texts are unique and unmatched. Finally, the speaker praises the entire sunny, golden land of India, encouraging everyone to celebrate its greatness.

Historical Glory and Cultural Richness

The speaker recounts the greatness of India’s past, mentioning the brave warriors who lived here. He also refers to the wise sages who made the land holy with their presence. The country is described as a place where divine and beautiful music flourished, and where everything that brings prosperity and success exists, making it culturally rich and vibrant.

Spiritual Wisdom and Timeless Legacy

The speaker emphasizes that India is the birthplace of supreme spiritual knowledge, known as Brahma-knowledge. It is also the land

where Gautama Buddha spread his teachings of dhamma. Highlighting its ancient roots and deep spiritual heritage, the speaker concludes that India is truly unmatched and deserves admiration and praise.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

The mighty Himavant is ours-
there’s no equal anywhere on earth.
The generous Ganga is ours-
which other river can match her grace?
The sacred Upanishads are ours-
what scriptures else to name with them?
This sunny golden land is ours-
she’s peerless, let’s praise her!

Word Meaning :

1. Mighty - very strong and powerful
2. Himavant - the Himalayan mountain range
3. Generous - kind and giving (here, providing life-giving water abundantly)
4. Grace - elegance and beauty
5. Sacred - holy and connected to God
6. Upanishads - ancient Hindu religious texts filled with philosophical wisdom
7. Scriptures - holy writings or sacred books
8. Peerless - having no equal; unmatched

Explanation :

In this opening stanza, the poet proudly introduces the incredible natural and cultural treasures of India. He boasts about the towering Himalayan mountains, the beautiful, life-giving river Ganga, and the holy Upanishads. He challenges the reader by asking if there is any other mountain, river, or holy book in the entire world that can even compare to ours. He beautifully describes India as a bright, “sunny golden land” that stands unmatched in the world, urging everyone to praise her greatness.

The poet uses a very proud and patriotic tone here. You will notice the repeated use of the phrase

still burning in your blood and you are ready to commit yourself to the task, plunge. It could be in any field—sports, science, arts, business, or design. The road may be uphill most of the way and often you are buoyed up only by the knowledge that you are doing what you love best and are doing the right thing.”

- i. What ultimately drives a person to continue when the “road may be uphill”?
 - (a) Intrinsic satisfaction
 - (b) Public recognition
 - (c) Financial returns
 - (d) External pressure
- ii. **Assertion (A):** The author advises the reader to immediately jump into a new interest without any forethought.
Reason (R): Pursuing a dream requires calculating the years of effort and financial investments involved.
 - (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
 - (c) A is true but R is false.
 - (d) A is false but R is true.
- iii. What does the author mean by “burning in your blood”?
- iv. Identify the word in the text that means ‘absolutely necessary or crucial’.
- v. Fill in the blank:
 Before making a final commitment to a dream, the author suggests one must _____ the cost involved in terms of time and finances.

Ans :

- i. (a) Intrinsic satisfaction
- ii. (d) A is false but R is true.
- iii. By “burning in your blood,” the author means having an intense and deeply felt passion for something that one cannot ignore.
- iv. Imperative
- v. count

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“When you watch the Academy Awards for best actors and actresses and films, the winner always thanks a host of people that formed his/her support network. So, you see that for one winner, there is a group of people who stood by him/her. It is good to be able to fulfil your dreams but for a lot of people, dreams remain dreams. Although everyone at one time or other has wistfully said to

oneself, “I wish I could be this or the other,” they have never got beyond just wishful thinking.”

- i. What is the main reason many people’s dreams “remain dreams,” as implied by the phrase “never got beyond just wishful thinking”?
 - (a) Lack of real talent
 - (b) Lack of actual action
 - (c) Lack of family wealth
 - (d) Lack of a good network
- ii. Which of the following best describes the speaker’s perspective on success at the Academy Awards?
 - (a) It is a purely individual achievement won by solitary struggle.
 - (b) It is largely based on luck rather than significant hard work.
 - (c) It is the visible result of a much larger collective effort.
 - (d) It is an unattainable fantasy for most ordinary individuals.
- iii. What does the word “wistfully” suggest about the way people think of their unfulfilled dreams?
- iv. Find a word from the extract that serves as a synonym for ‘a large number’ or ‘multitude’ of people.
- v. State whether True or False with a reason:
 The author implies that successful individuals at the Academy Awards achieve their dreams entirely on their own merit.

Ans :

- i. (b) Lack of actual action
- ii. (c) It is the visible result of a much larger collective effort.
- iii. The word “wistfully” suggests they think of their unfulfilled dreams with a sweet longing and mild sadness.
- iv. Host
- v. False, the author states that for every winner, there is a support network or a group of people who stood by them.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“They could have preferred to trade their dream for security. Perhaps circumstances changed their lives. I know of people whose dream was to go to the then Raffles College, now the National University of Singapore, but the Japanese invasion during World War II changed forever their destiny. I know too, of people who had

wished to finish secondary school but they had to go out to work so that they could support their siblings through school.”

- i. Why did some individuals mentioned in the extract have to give up their dream of finishing secondary school?
 - (a) Academic failure
 - (b) Familial duty
 - (c) Lack of interest
 - (d) War situations
- ii. Select the correct combination of factors the author attributes to the abandonment of dreams in this extract:
 - I. The outbreak of global conflicts.
 - II. A sudden loss of personal passion.
 - III. The pressing need for financial security.
 - (a) I and II only
 - (b) I and III only
 - (c) II and III only
 - (d) I, II, and III
- iii. How did the Japanese invasion during World War II affect the dreams of some people?
- iv. Which word in the passage means ‘a predetermined course of events’ or ‘fate’?
- v. Fill in the blank:
The people who had to start working early did so in order to financially support their
-----.

Ans :

- i. (b) Familial duty
- ii. (b) I and III only
- iii. The Japanese invasion during World War II permanently changed their destiny and prevented them from attending Raffles College.
- iv. Destiny
- v. siblings

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“No, I am not going to put a wet blanket on your dreams, ... but you will also have to consider the years you need to chase your dream. After all the obstacles are considered, if the burning conviction is still coursing through your veins, then go ahead and do something about it. From my own experience, life itself may change a person’s dreams. These hopes and aspirations are no less than the original dream of younger days.”

- i. What does the author mean by stating she doesn’t want to put a “wet blanket” on her daughter’s dreams?

- (a) She refuses to discourage her daughter.
- (b) She refuses to finance her daughter.
- (c) She refuses to ignore her daughter.
- (d) She refuses to praise her daughter.

- ii. **Assertion (A):** The author believes that a dream altered by life experiences is inferior to one’s original childhood dream.

Reason (R): Life forces people to compromise and settle for lesser ambitions as they grow older.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) Both A and R are false.
- iii. What condition does the author set before advising someone to actively chase their dream?
- iv. Give a word from the extract which means ‘a firmly held belief or opinion’.
- v. State whether True or False with a reason:
The author advises chasing a dream blindly without thinking about any potential hurdles or time required.

Ans :

- i. (a) She refuses to discourage her daughter.
- ii. (d) Both A and R are false.
- iii. One must first consider all the obstacles and the years required, and only proceed if the burning conviction is still strong.
- iv. Conviction
- v. False, the author specifically advises considering “all the obstacles” and the “years you need to chase your dream” before proceeding.

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“To fulfill them you will need to negotiate a path through a maze of hurdles. The dream will take a much longer time to realise, and the people who are participants in your dreamscape would be many more. For example, publishing this book is a dream I have chased in the last ten years. This was not the dream I had in my youth but my original dream has changed over the years. I am really quite excited about it. So, I wish at least one of your dreams comes true too.”

- i. Which phrase implies that the author’s own journey of publishing the book was complex and difficult?

- (a) “participants in your dreamscape”
 - (b) “wish at least one of your dreams”
 - (c) “negotiate a path through a maze”
 - (d) “original dream has changed over”
- ii. Which of the following aligns with the speaker’s view on evolving dreams as presented in this extract?
- (a) Changing dreams shows a lack of true dedication to one’s goals.
 - (b) Modifying goals over time is a natural and exciting part of life.
 - (c) Only childhood dreams bring true satisfaction when they are achieved.
 - (d) One should strictly adhere to their original plan to ensure success.
- iii. How long did the author chase the dream of publishing her book?
- iv. Find a word in the text that means ‘find a way over or through an obstacle or difficult path’.
- v. Fill in the blank:
The author uses her own personal example of _____ to show her daughter how dreams can change over time.

Ans :

- i. (c) “negotiate a path through a maze”
- ii. (b) Modifying goals over time is a natural and exciting part of life.
- iii. The author chased the dream of publishing her book for ten years.
- iv. Negotiate
- v. publishing this book



9. Evaluate the character and approach of the mother. How does she prove to be a realist while still nurturing her daughter's ambitions?

Ans :

The mother's character reflects a perfect balance between warmth and practicality. As a caring parent, she writes a heartfelt letter to address Ming's doubts and reassures her that her changing dreams are valuable. She guides and encourages Ming to confidently follow her aspirations.

At the same time, her realistic nature is clearly visible. She does not hide the difficulties of success and advises Ming to "count the cost." She explains that achieving excellence requires years of hard work, financial effort, and personal sacrifices.

By sharing her own experiences and distinguishing between dreamers and achievers, she provides practical guidance. This helps Ming stay grounded and prepared, ensuring that her ambitions are supported by determination and a clear understanding of reality.

10. Write a dialogue between Ming and her friend, Rohan. Rohan wants to quit learning the guitar because it is too hard, and Ming uses her mother's advice to motivate him.

Ans :

Rohan: I'm quitting guitar, Ming. I've practiced for months, but I'm still not great. I should just find an easier hobby.

Ming: Remember, Rohan, reaching the peak of success doesn't happen overnight. My mother told me that attaining real skill takes years of focused effort!

Rohan: But it's such an uphill task. It's draining all my energy.

Ming: That's when you need "burning conviction." When physical stamina runs out, your inner motivation must keep you on track. Do you still feel the joy of playing music?

Rohan: I do love playing. But making sacrifices is a heavy price.

Ming: Don't be a mere dreamer who abandons goals when life gets tough. Take the plunge, face the hurdles, and become an achiever!

a dream and they pursue it till it comes true. What differentiates greatness from the ordinary is how much effort and sacrifice people invest to realise their dream. Do you know that to reach world-class standard in any field, one has to be singularly and intensively pursuing the subject for at least ten years?"

- i. What does the author imply is the primary difference between a 'great' person and an 'ordinary' one?

- (a) Innate talent
- (b) Relentless effort
- (c) Financial wealth
- (d) Social support

- ii. Consider the following statements based on the extract:

- I. Reaching a world-class standard is a quick and effortless process.
- II. Greatness requires exclusive dedication to a chosen field.

Choose the correct option:

- (a) Statement I is true and II is false.
- (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
- (c) Both statements I and II are true.
- (d) Both statements I and II are false.

- iii. According to the author, how many years of intensive pursuit does it take to reach world-class standard in any field?

- iv. Which word in the extract means 'exclusively' or 'with a single focus'?

- v. State whether True or False with a reason:
The author believes that merely having a big dream is the only requirement to achieve a world-class standard.

Ans :

- i. (b) Relentless effort
- ii. (b) Statement II is true and I is false.
- iii. According to the author, it take at least ten years. of intensive pursuit to reach world-class standard in any field.
- iv. Singularly
- v. False, because the author explicitly states that one must also invest significant effort, sacrifice, and pursue the subject intensively for at least ten years.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"It starts with a passion for a particular interest, then comes the conviction that it is imperative to realise it. Count the cost in years of effort, financial investments and sacrifice. Then if it is

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :
"By all means follow that dream. Great men and women become great because they have

“is ours,” which is a literary choice meant to build a strong sense of unity and national pride in the reader’s heart. Additionally, the use of hyphens at the end of the lines creates a deliberate pause, allowing the reader a moment to truly appreciate and reflect on the greatness of each feature before moving to the next.

Stanza 2

Gallant warriors have lived here,
many a sage has sanctified this land.
The divinest music has been heard here,
and here all auspicious things are found.

Word Meaning :

1. Gallant - brave and heroic
2. Warriors - fighters or soldiers
3. Sage - a highly wise person or spiritual teacher
4. Sanctified - made holy or pure
5. Divinest - most beautiful, as if it comes directly from the gods
6. Auspicious - bringing good luck; positive and favorable

Explanation :

The poem now shifts its focus from India’s geographical and historical texts to the greatness of its people and culture. The poet proudly states that this land has been the home of incredibly brave soldiers who fought for it, as well as wise holy men whose presence has purified and blessed the soil. He also celebrates the rich artistic heritage of the country, noting that the most heavenly and beautiful music has been created here. Finally, he claims that India is a land where all good, fortunate, and positive things can be found.

By highlighting these specific elements, the poet is showing us that a country’s true greatness comes from its human heritage just as much as its physical beauty. The mood of this stanza is highly respectful and admiring, painting a picture of a nation that perfectly balances fierce bravery (warriors) with peaceful wisdom (sages) and beautiful arts (music).

Stanza 3

Here Brahma-knowledge has taken root,
and the Buddha preached his dhamma here.
Of hoary antiquity is Bharat,
she’s peerless, let’s praise her! ...

Word Meaning :

1. Brahma-knowledge - deep spiritual wisdom about the ultimate truth of the universe
2. Preached - taught or delivered a religious

message

3. Dhamma - the teachings of Lord Buddha about leading a good, moral, and peaceful life
4. Hoary - very old; ancient (literally meaning greyish-white with old age)
5. Antiquity - the ancient past
6. Bharat - the ancient and traditional name for India

Explanation :

In the final stanza, the poet praises India’s deep spiritual and philosophical legacy. He explains that the ultimate spiritual truth and wisdom (Brahma-knowledge) originated and grew strongly in this very land. He also reminds us that Lord Buddha chose this soil to teach his messages of peace, compassion, and non-violence (dhamma). Because of this incredibly long and rich history, the poet refers to India (Bharat) as a land of extreme and glorious old age.

The poem concludes by repeating the powerful refrain: “she’s peerless, let’s praise her!” This repetition acts as an anchor for the poem, bringing the central message full circle. By ending with this line, the poet leaves the reader with a lingering sense of immense devotion and respect. The poem acts as an “ode”—a song of deep praise—celebrating India not just as a piece of land, but as an ancient, spiritual motherland that will forever remain unmatched in the eyes of the world.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

This poem consists of 3 stanzas — first stanza of 8 lines, second stanza of 4 lines, and third stanza of 4 lines (16 lines total). The rhyme scheme is free verse.

1. **Repetition:** Using the same word or phrase more than once for emphasis. For example, “is ours” appears four times in the first stanza, strongly emphasising pride and ownership of India’s great treasures.
2. **Rhetorical Question:** A question asked for effect, not expecting an answer. For example, “which other river can match her grace?” shows the poet is not really asking — he is confidently saying no river can match the Ganga.
3. **Personification:** Giving human qualities to non-living things. For example, “she’s peerless, let’s praise her” shows India is given the identity of a woman, making the nation feel alive, warm and personal.

True achievement requires a heavy price, including major sacrifices and a decade of intense, focused effort, completely rejecting the idea of overnight, effortless success.

- 19.** How does the mother view the sacrifices required for success?

Ans :

The mother views sacrifices as an unavoidable and heavy price for achieving greatness. She stresses that whether financial or personal, these investments are an absolute necessity; one cannot avoid hard work and still expect to realize their ambitious future goals.

- 20.** What ultimate feeling should accompany the tough journey of achieving a dream?

Ans :

Despite the rigorous demands and continuous hurdles, the tough journey must be accompanied by pure joy. This joy serves as the core inner motivation, replenishing a person's mental and physical stamina when external pressures and challenges threaten to derail them.

Long Answer Type Questions

- 1.** Analyze how the mother acts as a “guiding light” for Ming by balancing encouragement with harsh realities.

Ans :

The mother acts as a true guiding light by adopting the role of a wise mentor rather than just a comforting parent. When Ming expresses her big ambitions alongside her deep doubts, the mother does not offer false hope of overnight success. Instead, she strikes a delicate balance between warm encouragement and stark reality. She enthusiastically urges Ming to “follow that dream” while simultaneously warning her to “count the cost.” She clarifies that international-level success requires about ten years of focused effort, heavy personal sacrifices, and financial investments. By exposing Ming to these tough realities, the mother ensures that her daughter is mentally prepared for the uphill task, making her encouragement grounded, practical, and deeply supportive.

- 2.** “A burning conviction and inner motivation are the true fuels for success.” Elaborate on this statement based on the chapter “Follow That Dream.”

Ans :

In the chapter, the mother explains that achieving a great dream is not easy and cannot be sustained by temporary excitement or external rewards. She emphasizes that success requires deep commitment rather than short-lived motivation.

She introduces the idea of “burning conviction,” which means having a strong inner belief in one's actions. When the journey becomes difficult and both physical and mental strength begin to fade, external pressures or rewards are not enough to keep a person going.

At this stage, true motivation must come from within. This inner strength is driven by the joy of doing what one truly loves. Without such passion and conviction, people are likely to give up. Therefore, inner passion is the most reliable and lasting source of success.

- 3.** Differentiate between “mere dreamers” and “actual achievers” as highlighted by the mother. Why is this distinction crucial for Ming?

Ans :

The mother draws a very clear and crucial distinction between mere dreamers and actual achievers to help Ming evaluate her own commitment. Mere dreamers are trapped in “wishful thinking.” They harbor desires but completely avoid making the necessary tough decisions and sacrifices. Consequently, when life presents inevitable hardships, they easily abandon their dreams, often seeking refuge in highly secure, risk-free jobs. In stark contrast, actual achievers possess a continuous dedication to their goals. They are fully prepared to face daunting obstacles, invest their time, and make heavy personal sacrifices. They do not quit when challenged; instead, they turn their imagination into reality. Understanding this difference is vital for Ming so she can cultivate the resilience of a true achiever.

- 4.** Imagine you are Ming. After reading your mother's letter, write a diary entry expressing your realization about the “heavy price” of dreams and your decision to take the plunge.

Ans :

Dear Diary,

Today, I received a heartfelt letter from Mother that completely changed my perspective. I had shared my dreams with her along with my hidden fears about the future. I expected simple comfort, but instead, she gave me something far more

III. Read the underlined words in the given lines of the poem. Choose the odd one out that does not correspond with the meaning of the underlined word.

1. She's peerless, let's praise her!
valuable, incomparable, unmatched
2. Many a sage has sanctified this land.
blessed, purified, applauded
3. And here all auspicious things are found.
fortunate, fantastic, favourable
4. Of hoary antiquity is Bharat,
ancient times, recent past, time immemorial

Ans :

1. valuable, 2. applauded, 3. fantastic, 4. recent past

Check Your Understanding

I. Fill in the blanks by choosing appropriate words from the box given below to complete the summary of the poem.

warriors	peerless	Upanishads
Ganga	Buddha	Himavant
sages	praise	historical greatness
Brahma-knowledge		

The poem is a tribute to India, celebrating its natural beauty, spiritual heritage, and 1. _____. The poet praises the 2. _____, describing it as mighty and unparalleled. The 3. _____ is depicted as generous and graceful, while the 4. _____ are honoured as sacred and unmatched. The poem highlights the contributions of 5. _____ and 6. _____ who have enriched the land with their bravery and wisdom. It also acknowledges the presence of 7. _____ and the teachings of 8. _____, highlighting India's deep-rooted spiritual and philosophical traditions. The poet repeatedly asserts that India is 9. _____, urging everyone to 10. _____ her.

Ans :

1. historical greatness, 2. Himavant, 3. Ganga, 4. Upanishads, 5. warriors (or sages), 6. sages (or warriors), 7. Brahma-knowledge, 8. Buddha, 9. peerless, 10. praise

II. Complete the following features about the poem.

1. The impact on the readers (mood): _____
2. The poet's attitude (tone): _____
3. The rhyme scheme: _____
4. Examples of personification: _____

Ans :

1. The impact on the readers (mood) : **Patriotic, inspiring, and proud**

2. The poet's attitude (tone) : **Reverent, celebratory, and admiring**
3. The rhyme scheme : **Free verse (it lacks a strict end-rhyme scheme but uses a rhythmic, repeating refrain)**
4. Examples of personification: **"The generous Ganga", "she's peerless, let's praise her!"**

III. What is the impact of the refrain, 'she's peerless, let's praise her!'?

Ans :

The refrain creates a powerful, rhythmic chanting effect that unites the poem. It emphasizes the poet's immense pride, deep devotion, and belief that India is unequalled, urging the readers to join in expressing their admiration for the motherland.

IV. Complete the following sentence appropriately.

India is metaphorically described as 'this sunny golden land,' suggesting that it is _____.

Ans :

India is metaphorically described as 'this sunny golden land,' suggesting that it is **prosperous, radiant, culturally vibrant, and blessed with warmth and abundance.**

V. The poet uses symbolism. Match the symbols in Column 1 to what they suggest in Column 2.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	Himavant	i.	knowledge and enlightenment
2.	Ganga	ii.	spiritual and philosophical legacy
3.	Upanishads	iii.	purity and generosity
4.	Gallant warriors and sages	iv.	richness and glory
5.	Brahma-knowledge and Buddha's Dhamma	v.	strength and permanence
6.	Sunny golden land	vi.	courage and wisdom

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	Himavant	v.	strength and permanence
2.	Ganga	iii.	purity and generosity

3.	Upanishads	i.	knowledge and enlightenment
4.	Gallant warriors and sages	vi.	courage and wisdom
5.	Brahma-knowledge and Buddha's Dhamma	ii.	spiritual and philosophical legacy
6.	Sunny golden land	iv.	richness and glory

VI. The poet uses imagery (descriptive language to create vivid mental pictures that appeal to the senses). Give any two examples from the poem.

Ans :

1. **Visual Imagery** : "This sunny golden land is ours"
2. **Auditory Imagery** : "The divinest music has been heard here"

VII. What is the impact of the use of hyphens in the first stanza? Select the options that are true.

1. Creates deliberate pauses to reinforce the sense of admiration and pride
2. Emphasises the contrast between India's strengths and weaknesses
3. Lends to the lyrical quality giving it a measured, chant-like rhythm
4. Suggests hesitation or uncertainty in the poet's claims about India
5. Presents a key element of India's greatness before the hyphen and makes a strong assertion about its uniqueness after the hyphen

Ans :

The true options are:

1. Creates deliberate pauses to reinforce the sense of admiration and pride
3. Lends to the lyrical quality giving it a measured, chant-like rhythm
5. Presents a key element of India's greatness before the hyphen and makes a strong assertion about its uniqueness after the hyphen

VIII. The poet uses hyperbole in the poem.

Hyperbole (hi-puh-buh-lee) is a figure of speech that involves extreme exaggeration to highlight a point or create a dramatic effect. It is not meant to be taken literally but is used to make something sound more impressive or intense.

For example:

- My luggage weighs a tonne. Does the luggage actually weigh a tonne?

- She was so happy that her smile was a mile wide. Can a smile be a mile wide?

Ans :

Note : As this section is instructional, an example of hyperbole from the poem is provided for clarity.

An example from the poem : "there's no equal anywhere on earth." The poet uses this exaggeration to emphasize the unparalleled greatness of the Himalayan mountains.

IX. The poem is an ode.

An ode is a lyrical poem that expresses deep admiration, praise, or reverence for a person, place, object, or idea. It is often written in an elevated and formal style, celebrating the subject with enthusiasm and emotion.

An ode's language is often grand and expressive; and it seeks to highlight the extraordinary qualities of its subject.

Now, identify examples from the poem that correspond to it being an ode.

Ans :

Examples demonstrating that the poem is an ode include its grand and elevated language ("mighty Himavant", "divinest music", "hoary antiquity"), its direct expressions of deep reverence ("she's peerless, let's praise her!"), and its passionate celebration of the country's extraordinary physical and spiritual qualities.

X. The poet uses allusion in the poem.

Allusion is a literary device where a writer makes an indirect reference to a well-known person, place, event, literary work, or cultural element without explicitly mentioning it. The reader is expected to recognise and understand the reference based on prior knowledge. Allusions can come from mythology, religion, literature, history, or popular culture.

For example: He is a real Einstein in the mathematics class. (This alludes to Albert Einstein, meaning the student is very intelligent, especially in mathematics or science.)

Now, read the explanations and identify the matching allusions from the poem for the following.

- An allusion to the ancient Indian scriptures that form the philosophical core and symbolise deep wisdom and enlightenment.
- An allusion to the concept of spiritual knowledge associated with self-realisation and ultimate truth.

- An allusion to Gautama Buddha's teachings, which include compassion, non-violence, and enlightenment. This highlights India's role in shaping major religious and philosophical traditions.

Ans :

- An allusion to the ancient Indian scriptures: "The sacred Upanishads"
- An allusion to the concept of spiritual knowledge: "Brahma-knowledge"
- An allusion to Gautama Buddha's teachings: "the Buddha preached his dhamma"

Critical Reflection

I. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow.

The mighty Himavant is ours-
there's no equal anywhere on earth.
The generous Ganga is ours-
which other river can match her grace?
The sacred Upanishads are ours-
what scriptures else to name with them?

1. Complete the sentence.
The word 'mighty' refers to the _____ of the Himavant.
2. Choose the correct option to complete the sentence given below.
The question mark at the end of the fourth and sixth line of the extract is used to _____.
(i) show doubt and uncertainty
(ii) emphasise a point
(iii) highlight confusion and hesitation
(iv) reveal inquiry and curiosity
3. The poet uses the word 'generous' to describe the Ganga. Why?
4. Why has the movement of the river been described as graceful?
5. Fill in the blank with the correct option from the words given in the brackets.
The poet is implying that the Upanishads are _____ (unmatched/abundant) in their wisdom and spiritual depth.

Ans :

1. The word 'mighty' refers to the **majestic size, towering strength, and grandeur** of the Himavant.
2. (ii) emphasise a point
emphasise a point (They act as rhetorical

questions to assert that nothing can compare to India's greatness).

3. The river Ganga is described as 'generous' because it provides abundant water that sustains life, nurtures the fertile plains of India, and selflessly acts as a life-giving provider to millions of people.
4. The river's movement is described as graceful because it flows beautifully and smoothly, carrying a majestic and elegant presence that matches its deep spiritual significance.
5. unmatched

II. Answer the following questions.

1. How does the poem reflect a strong connection to cultural identity and heritage?

Ans :

The poem reflects a strong connection to cultural identity and heritage by proudly celebrating India's ancient physical landmarks (like the Himavant and Ganga), its profound sacred scriptures (the Upanishads), the legacy of its great figures (gallant warriors, sages, Buddha), and its deep-rooted philosophical traditions.

2. What can you infer about the poet's attitude towards India from the repeated phrase 'she's peerless, let's praise her!'?

Ans :

From the repeated phrase, it can be inferred that the poet holds an attitude of immense patriotic pride, deep reverence, and unwavering devotion towards India. He views his motherland as supreme, incomparable to any other nation, and highly deserving of absolute praise.

3. What does the line 'many a sage has sanctified this land' suggest about India's spiritual heritage?

Ans :

This line suggests that India possesses a tremendously rich spiritual heritage. The very soil of the land is considered holy and blessed because of the presence, meditation, and spiritual practices of countless wise sages throughout history.

4. How does the poet connect warriors and music to India's greatness?

Ans :

The poet connects warriors to India's greatness by highlighting a historical legacy of bravery, valor, and strength. Simultaneously, the mention of the "divinest music" showcases India's rich, profound cultural and artistic traditions. Together, both

13. Assertion (A): The poet uses hyperbole to describe the Himalayan mountains.

Reason (R): The poet states that these mountains have no equal anywhere on earth.

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.
- (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation.
- (c) A is true, but R is completely false in this context.
- (d) A is false, but R is completely true in this context.

Ans :

(a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.

14. Which river is beautifully personified in the poem?

- (a) The river Yamuna (b) The river Godavari
- (c) The river Narmada (d) The river Ganga

Ans :

(d) The river Ganga

15. The river Ganga is described as:

- (a) Generous and graceful
- (b) Fierce and aggressive
- (c) Calm and indifferent
- (d) Deep and mysterious

Ans :

(a) Generous and graceful

16. What qualities does the personification of Ganga highlight?

- (a) Speed and great depth
- (b) Anger and destruction
- (c) Purity and selflessness
- (d) Mystery and dark magic

Ans :

(c) Purity and selflessness

17. The life-giving nature of Ganga nurtures the country's:

- (a) Rich fertile lands (b) Dense green forests
- (c) Tall high mountains (d) Deep blue oceans

Ans :

(a) Rich fertile lands

18. The poet proudly states that the mountains have no _____ anywhere on earth.

- (a) rival (b) enemy
- (c) match (d) equal

Ans :

(d) equal

19. Why is the personification of the river Ganga important?

- (a) It highlights the river as a living, nurturing entity.
- (b) It shows the river as a harsh, destructive force.
- (c) It proves that the geographical features are purely mythical.
- (d) It compares the flowing water to the brave warriors.

Ans :

(a) It highlights the river as a living, nurturing entity.

20. What is a major theme of the poem discussed after geography?

- (a) Economic policies (b) Intellectual legacy
- (c) Scientific growth (d) Political history

Ans :

(b) Intellectual legacy

21. What literary device involves an indirect reference to ancient scriptures?

- (a) Visual imagery (b) Deep metaphor
- (c) Direct allusion (d) Poetic simile

Ans :

(c) Direct allusion

22. Which specific ancient texts are mentioned in the summary?

- (a) The sacred Vedas
- (b) The sacred Epics
- (c) The sacred Puranas
- (d) The sacred Upanishads

Ans :

(d) The sacred Upanishads

23. According to the text, what can match the deep wisdom of the Upanishads?

- (a) Modern scientific texts
- (b) Greek philosophical works
- (c) No other world texts
- (d) Global literature books

2. Speaker No. 2 (mountains / adventure – matches the second picture of mountain climbing)

II. You will once again listen to the four speakers. As you listen, match the given statements to the speaker. There are two statements that you do not need. (Transcript for teacher on page 260)

	Statement	Speaker
1.	The green surroundings look beautiful visually.	
2.	The group visits make even the difficult areas seem easy.	
3.	The quietness of the environment here leads to a peaceful experience.	
4.	The risk and thrill in such an area is what is most appealing.	
5.	The dry expanse promises to appeal to the spirit of exploration.	
6.	The sight of such beauty is very inviting and has to be captured.	

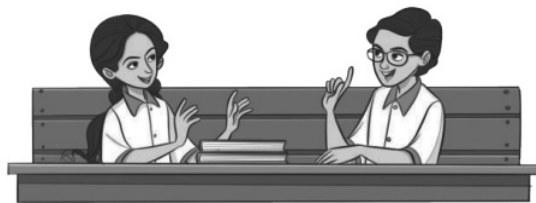
Ans :

	Statement	Speaker
1.	The green surroundings look beautiful visually.	Speaker 4
2.	The group visits make even the difficult areas seem easy.	(Not needed)
3.	The quietness of the environment here leads to a peaceful experience.	Speaker 1
4.	The risk and thrill in such an area is what is most appealing.	Speaker 2
5.	The dry expanse promises to appeal to the spirit of exploration.	Speaker 3
6.	The sight of such beauty is very inviting and has to be captured.	(Not needed)

Speaking Activity

- I. In pairs, take turns to speak about the aspects of your village/town/city that you feel are an asset. It could be about geographical, cultural,**

traditional features, or even its history.



Use these cues to express your praise and admiration.

- One thing that I find truly wonderful about my village/town/city is...
- If I had to describe my village/town/city in one word, it would be...
- I have always been fascinated by the way the people of my village/town/city...
- What I want other people to know about my village/town/city is...
- When it comes to the scenery, my village/town/city truly shines because...
- I feel a deep sense of pride when I think about my village/town/city...

Ans :

- One thing that I find truly wonderful about my city is its harmonious blend of modern architecture and ancient historical monuments.
- If I had to describe my city in one word, it would be vibrant.
- I have always been fascinated by the way the people of my city enthusiastically celebrate every cultural festival together, regardless of their backgrounds.
- What I want other people to know about my city is its incredible street food culture and the warm hospitality of the locals.
- When it comes to the scenery, my city truly shines because of the lush green parks and the beautiful river that runs straight through the center.
- I feel a deep sense of pride when I think about my city's prominent role in our country's independence movement.

Writing Task

- I. Write a paragraph about a place that you have visited which has stayed in your memory.**

Remember to mention the following:

- Why did you go there?
- Who did you travel with?
- How did you prepare for the travel?

physical courage and artistic brilliance contribute to the nation's unparalleled greatness.

5. How does this poem foster a sense of national pride?

Ans :

The poem fosters national pride by vividly recounting and glorifying India's unparalleled natural beauty, its unmatched spiritual and philosophical wisdom, and its rich historical achievements. By reminding readers of these extraordinary qualities, it evokes a collective sense of awe, belonging, and deep admiration for the motherland.

Vocabulary in Context

- I. Complete the table by choosing words from the poem.

Suffix	Meaning	Examples
-ous	full of, having the qualities of kindness	1. _____ous
-ity	the state of being very old or ancient	2. _____ity
-est	superlative form	3. _____est
-less	without something	4. _____less

Ans :

Suffix	Meaning	Examples
-ous	full of, having the qualities of kindness	1. generous
-ity	the state of being very old or ancient	2. antiquity
-est	superlative form	3. divinest
-less	without something	4. peerless

- II. Complete the following table by adding a different suffix to form new words. Also, create a sentence using the created word. One example has been done for you.

Suffix	Meaning	Sentences
-tion	the action or process of	Example: indicate—indication The dark clouds were an indication that it would rain soon. 1.

-ive	quality or nature of	2.
-ment	the action or result of	3.
-ed	past-tense version of a verb	4.

Ans :

Suffix	Meaning		Sentences
-tion	the action or process of	1.	educate—education Receiving a good education is a vital step toward a successful future.
-ive	quality or nature of	2.	create—creative The student came up with a very creative solution to the difficult math problem.
-ment	the action or result of	3.	achieve—achievement Winning the national science fair was a monumental achievement for her.
-ed	past-tense version of a verb	4.	walk—walked We walked along the riverbank while enjoying the sunset.

Listen and Respond

- I. You will listen to four people talk about the places they like to travel to. As you listen, write the speaker number for the two pictures given. (Transcript for teacher on page 260)



1. Speaker No. ____



2. Speaker No. ____

Ans :

1. Speaker No. 4 (forest / nature travel – matches the first picture of a person exploring and recording)

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. What literary form is the poem described as in the text?
 (a) A tragic ballad (b) A beautiful ode
 (c) A short sonnet (d) A comic satire

Ans :

- (b) A beautiful ode

2. The poem is dedicated to which of the following?
 (a) Our motherland (b) Natural world
 (c) Ancient people (d) Spiritual idols

Ans :

- (a) Our motherland

3. What does the poem primarily paint a vivid picture of?
 (a) Global advancements
 (b) Unparalleled greatness
 (c) Technological progress
 (d) Architectural structures

Ans :

- (b) Unparalleled greatness

4. Which of these themes is NOT explicitly celebrated in the poem's introduction?
 (a) Natural geography (b) Spiritual heritage
 (c) Historical glory (d) Economic trading

Ans :

- (d) Economic trading

5. The overall tone of the poem is described as:
 (a) Sad and mournful (b) Angry and furious
 (c) Proud and inspiring (d) Calm and detached

Ans :

- (c) Proud and inspiring

6. What does the poet urge the readers to celebrate?
 (a) Country's uniqueness
 (b) World's diversity
 (c) Ancient mythology
 (d) Future inventions

Ans :

- (a) Country's uniqueness

7. An ode is a song of praise and deep _____.
 (a) deep dedication (b) deep admiration
 (c) deep reflection (d) deep hesitation

Ans :

- (b) deep admiration

8. What is the primary purpose of the poet's patriotic tone?
 (a) To expose the hidden flaws within the nation's past.
 (b) To inspire readers to honor their nation's uniqueness.
 (c) To demand rapid changes in the nation's structures.
 (d) To analyze the shifts in the country's geography.

Ans :

- (b) To inspire readers to honor their nation's uniqueness.

9. What kind of landscapes does the poet take immense pride in?
 (a) Barren dry deserts
 (b) Urban city settings
 (c) Majestic nature scenes
 (d) Coastal sandy shores

Ans :

- (c) Majestic nature scenes

10. How are the Himalayan mountains referred to in the poem?
 (a) The Snowy Peaks
 (b) The Great Barriers
 (c) The Tallest Range
 (d) The Mighty Himavant

Ans :

- (d) The Mighty Himavant

11. What does the "mighty Himavant" symbolize?
 (a) Peace and quiet
 (b) Strength and permanence
 (c) Wealth and power
 (d) Growth and change

Ans :

- (b) Strength and permanence

12. Which literary device is used to state that the mountains have no equal?
 (a) Simple simile (b) Deep metaphor
 (c) Bold hyperbole (d) Sad oxymoron

Ans :

- (c) Bold hyperbole

- (c) The modern scientists
- (d) People shaping history

Ans :

- (d) People shaping history

35. The land is praised for its historical legacy of:

- (a) Wealthy rich merchants
- (b) Brave gallant warriors
- (c) Famous brave explorers
- (d) Skilled great architects

Ans :

- (b) Brave gallant warriors

36. What traits are associated with the “gallant warriors”?

- (a) Fear and total submission
- (b) Wealth and extreme greed
- (c) Bravery and physical courage
- (d) Intellect and deep cunning

Ans :

- (c) Bravery and physical courage

37. Alongside fierce bravery, India is celebrated as a center of:

- (a) Pure scientific research
- (b) Immense artistic brilliance
- (c) Rapid industrial expansion
- (d) Complex global diplomacy

Ans :

- (b) Immense artistic brilliance

38. According to the text, what kind of music has been created in India?

- (a) The loudest music
- (b) The modernest music
- (c) The sweetest music
- (d) The divinest music

Ans :

- (d) The divinest music

39. Which statements correctly describe India's balance of traits in the poem?

- I. It combines physical might with vibrant cultural beauty.
- II. It pairs the fierceness of warriors with the divinest music.
- III. It prioritizes military power completely over artistic growth.
- (a) Statements I and III are correct.

- (b) Statements II and III are correct.
- (c) Statements I and II are correct.
- (d) Only statement III is correct.

Ans :

- (c) Statements I and II are correct.

40. The tribute to music perfectly _____ the nation's physical might.

- (a) perfectly balances
- (b) slightly ignores
- (c) fully destroys
- (d) completely replaces

Ans :

- (a) perfectly balances

41. What does the term “gallant” mean in the context of warriors?

- (a) Very brave
- (b) Quite cowardly
- (c) Rather lazy
- (d) Extremely weak

Ans :

- (a) Very brave

42. Why does the poet juxtapose “gallant warriors” with “divinest music”?

- (a) To show warriors listened to loud and aggressive music tracks.
- (b) To imply cultural activities were replaced by ongoing active warfare.
- (c) To suggest music was a tool to inspire fighting frontier armies.
- (d) To illustrate the nation excels in strength and fine beautiful arts.

Ans :

- (d) To illustrate the nation excels in strength and fine beautiful arts.

43. How does the poet metaphorically describe India?

- (a) A sunny golden land
- (b) A snowy frozen land
- (c) A dark mystic land
- (d) A rainy forest land

Ans :

- (a) A sunny golden land

44. What does the metaphor “sunny golden land” suggest?

- (a) Poverty and deep despair
- (b) Coldness and harsh weather
- (c) Dryness and long droughts
- (d) Prosperity and warm radiance

Ans :

(c) No other world texts

24. How is the soil of India described in a spiritual context?

- (a) Rich and dark (b) Holy and purified
(c) Dry and barren (d) Soft and moist

Ans :

(b) Holy and purified

25. What word is used in the text as a synonym for “purified”?

- (a) Sanctified (b) Glorified
(c) Magnified (d) Testified

Ans :

(a) Sanctified

26. Who has made the soil of India holy?

- (a) Wealthy kings (b) Wise sages
(c) Brave warriors (d) Hard workers

Ans :

(b) Wise sages

27. Which of the following statements are correct regarding India’s spiritual legacy?

- I. The Upanishads are considered unmatched in wisdom.
II. The soil is holy because of countless wise sages.
III. Gautama Buddha preached war and conquest here.
(a) Statements I and III are correct.
(b) All statements are fully correct.
(c) Statements II and III are correct.
(d) Statements I and II are correct.

Ans :

(d) Statements I and II are correct.

28. India is described as the birthplace of which ultimate spiritual truth?

- (a) Brahma-knowledge (b) Nature-worship
(c) Universal-logic (d) Scientific-fact

Ans :

(a) Brahma-knowledge

29. Who preached his “dhamma” in this land?

- (a) Emperor Ashoka (b) Wise Chanakya
(c) Gautama Buddha (d) Lord Mahavira

Ans :

(c) Gautama Buddha

30. What does the term “dhamma” represent in the text?

- (a) Bravery and total conquest
(b) Wealth and deep prosperity
(c) Logic and pure mathematics
(d) Compassion and non-violence

Ans :

(d) Compassion and non-violence

31. The Upanishads bring deep wisdom and _____.

- (a) light entertainment (b) deep enlightenment
(c) natural environment (d) social empowerment

Ans :

(b) deep enlightenment

32. **Assertion (A):** The poet claims the soil of India is exceptionally holy.

Reason (R): Countless wise sages have lived and walked upon this land.

- (a) A is true, but R is completely false in this context.
(b) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.
(c) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation.
(d) A is false, but R is completely true in this context.

Ans :

(b) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.

33. How does the reference to “Brahma-knowledge” elevate the poem’s theme?

- (a) It shows a strict focus purely on gaining material riches.
(b) It suggests greatness belongs only to a mythical ancient past.
(c) It grounds the nation’s identity in ultimate spiritual absolute truths.
(d) It proves ancient Indians engaged only in complex daily debates.

Ans :

(c) It grounds the nation’s identity in ultimate spiritual absolute truths.

34. Besides spirituality and nature, who else does the poet pay tribute to?

- (a) The foreign traders
(b) The global leaders

- Where did you stay?
- What activities did you do there?

Ans :

A place that remains vividly etched in my memory is the breathtaking hill station of Shimla. I went there during my summer vacation to escape the scorching heat of the plains and to experience the charm of the mountains. I travelled alongside my parents and my younger sister. Preparing for the trip was an exciting affair; we packed plenty of warm clothes, booked our train tickets well in advance, and researched historical spots to visit. Once there, we stayed in a cozy, wooden cottage overlooking a stunning, pine-covered valley. During our stay, our days were filled with delightful activities: we took long evening walks along the famous Mall Road, hiked up to the ancient Jakhu Temple, and took a joyful, scenic ride on the Kalka-Shimla toy train. The tranquil environment, the cool mountain breeze, and the quality time spent with my family made the experience truly unforgettable.

Learning Beyond the Text

- I. Search for poems or songs dedicated to India, your motherland, in your regional language. Share them with your classmates and explain their meaning too.

Ans :

A deeply moving and famous patriotic song in Hindi is “Sare Jahan Se Achha” written by the poet Muhammad Iqbal.

Meaning : The opening lines translate to, “Better than the entire world, is our Hindustan (India).” The song passionately celebrates the natural beauty, geographical boundaries (like the Himalayas), and the unshakeable unity of the Indian people. It emphasizes that despite our diversity, we are all part of one enduring civilization. Much like the poem “Bharat Our Land,” it instills a profound sense of pride, emotional attachment, and love for our motherland.

- II. In groups of six, prepare an interdisciplinary project on India’s major geographical features. For each feature, describe the region, explain its importance in the lives of the people living there and mention the languages spoken in that region. Include one example of each of the following.
 - Mountains – Himalayas, Western Ghats, etc.
 - Rivers – Ganga, Yamuna, Krishna, Kaveri, Godavari, etc.

- Deserts – Thar Desert, Rann of Kutch, etc.
- Valleys – Kangra Valley, Nubra Valley, etc.
- Islands – Andaman and Nicobar Islands, Lakshadweep, etc.
- Plateaus – Deccan, Malwa, Meghalaya, etc.

Ans :

Mountains (Example: The Himalayas) : Located in the northernmost region of India. They act as a massive natural barrier that protects the country from cold Central Asian winds, dictating the subcontinent’s climate. They are also the source of major rivers, making them vital for agriculture. Languages spoken here include Kashmiri, Dogri, Pahari, Hindi, and Nepali.

Rivers (Example : The Ganga) : Flowing through northern and eastern India, this river creates the highly fertile Indo-Gangetic plain. It is critically important for sustaining agriculture, providing drinking water, and holds immense religious and spiritual significance for millions. Major languages spoken along its basin are Hindi, Bhojpuri, and Bengali.

Deserts (Example : The Thar Desert) : Situated primarily in Rajasthan, western India. Despite the arid climate, it is culturally vibrant. It is important for specific types of dryland agriculture, wind and solar energy, and regional tourism. The primary languages spoken are Rajasthani, Marwari, and Hindi.

Valleys (Example : The Kangra Valley) : Nestled in the western Himalayas in Himachal Pradesh. It is economically vital for its expansive tea gardens and horticulture, while its scenic beauty drives the local tourism industry. Languages spoken include Kangri, Pahari, and Hindi.

Islands (Example : Andaman and Nicobar Islands): Located in the southeastern Bay of Bengal. These islands are of high strategic importance for India’s maritime security. They possess rich biodiversity, making them vital for environmental research and eco-tourism. Languages spoken include Bengali, Hindi, Tamil, Telugu, and various indigenous tribal languages.

Plateaus (Example : The Deccan Plateau) : Covering a vast area of southern India. The region’s rich volcanic soil is essential for cultivating crops like cotton. It is also immensely rich in minerals, driving much of India’s mining and industrial sectors. Major languages spoken across the plateau include Marathi, Telugu, Kannada, and Tamil.

Ans :

(d) Prosperity and warm radiance

45. What is the repeating line in the poem called?
 (a) A thrilling climax (b) A rhythmic refrain
 (c) A classic sonnet (d) A poetic prologue

Ans :

(b) A rhythmic refrain

46. What is the exact phrasing of the poem's repeating line?
 (a) She's mighty, let's praise her!
 (b) She's golden, let's praise her!
 (c) She's peerless, let's praise her!
 (d) She's ancient, let's praise her!

Ans :

(c) She's peerless, let's praise her!

47. What does the word "peerless" mean?
 (a) Having many rivals (b) Lacking good friends
 (c) Full of vast wealth (d) Having zero equals

Ans :

(d) Having zero equals

48. **Assertion (A):** The poet repeatedly uses the phrase "She's peerless, let's praise her!".
Reason (R): The poet wants to emphasize that India is completely unmatched in the world.

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.
 (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation.
 (c) A is false, but R is completely true in this context.
 (d) A is true, but R is completely false in this context.

Ans :

(a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.

49. Which of the following emotions does the poem aim to leave with the readers?
 I. A sense of awe
 II. A feeling of belonging
 III. An enduring love for the motherland
 (a) Only emotion I
 (b) Emotions I and II
 (c) Emotions II and III
 (d) Emotions I, II, and III

Ans :

(d) Emotions I, II, and III

50. What is the ultimate effect of the "chant-like phrase" on the reader?
 (a) It confuses readers by repeating words without adding new meanings.
 (b) It acts as musical filler to maintain a rigid poetic rhythm.
 (c) It builds a unified sense of awe and deep enduring love.
 (d) It forces readers to memorize exact geographical borders of lands.

Ans :

(c) It builds a unified sense of awe and deep enduring love.

NODIA

Short Answer Type Questions

What makes this poem a "beautiful ode" to the motherland?

Ans :

The poem serves as a beautiful ode because it is a dedicated song of praise and deep admiration for the motherland. It passionately highlights the country's unparalleled greatness, focusing on its unique geography, spiritual heritage, and historical glory to inspire patriotism.

2. How does the poet's tone influence the reader's perception of the country?

Ans :

The poet utilizes a proud and inspiring tone to actively urge readers to celebrate the country's unique identity. This passionate approach helps readers look beyond ordinary facts, instilling a deep sense of reverence and honoring the nation's unparalleled greatness.

3. What does the phrase "mighty Himavant" symbolize in the context of the poem?

Ans :

The "mighty Himavant," referring to the majestic Himalayan mountains, primarily symbolizes immense strength and unwavering permanence. By highlighting these towering peaks, the poet reflects the solid, protective, and enduring nature of the motherland's breathtaking geographical boundaries, establishing a deep sense of natural pride.

and gallant warriors showcased immense physical courage. Our rich heritage perfectly balances this physical might with the divinest music and spiritual wisdom.

Therefore, let us unite in our hearts and proudly echo the poet's rhythmic refrain: "She's peerless, let's praise her!" Let this chant inspire our enduring love forever. Thank you.

5. Write a short dialogue between two classmates, Aryan and Neha, discussing why the poet asserts that the wisdom of the Upanishads is unmatched globally.

Ans :

Aryan: Neha, I was reading the ode to our motherland. Why does the poet boldly claim that no other global texts can match the Upanishads?

Neha: I think it's because the Upanishads represent the ultimate intellectual legacy. They aren't just historical books; they offer deep spiritual enlightenment and universal truths.

Aryan: That makes sense. The poem mentions it's the birthplace of "Brahma-knowledge." It focuses on cosmic wisdom rather than just economic or scientific growth.

Neha: Exactly! While other texts might discuss trade or politics, the Upanishads sanctify the human mind. They were crafted by wise sages who lived on this holy soil.

Aryan: It really shows that our nation's true greatness lies in its profound thoughts. Truly, she is peerless!

6. "The rhythmic refrain in a poem is not just a musical filler, but a powerful tool to unite readers." Analyze this statement in the context of the concluding line, "She's peerless, let's praise her!"

Ans :

A rhythmic refrain acts as the emotional core of a poem, and this is clearly seen in the line, "She's peerless, let's praise her!" It serves as a strong anchor that connects the entire poem and reinforces its central idea.

Throughout the poem, the poet builds a vivid picture of the motherland's greatness—from the mighty Himavant to the wisdom of the Upanishads. By repeating the refrain, the poet moves beyond simple description and creates a powerful call for unity and collective pride.

This repetition is not just for musical effect; it strengthens the theme of uniqueness and admiration. It leaves the reader with a deep sense

of awe and belonging, encouraging a lasting love and respect for the golden motherland.

7. Write a letter to your foreign pen-pal, describing how your country's natural landscapes, specifically the Himalayas and the Ganga, are not just geographical features but living symbols of your cultural identity.

Ans :

Dear John,

I hope you are doing well. Recently, I read a beautiful ode about my motherland that made me reflect deeply on our unique geography. It made me realize that our landscapes are not just physical features but living symbols of our rich heritage. For example, the majestic Himalayan mountains, known as the "mighty Himavant," represent strength and permanence. They stand tall as our eternal protectors and have no equal in the world. In the same way, the river Ganga is portrayed as a graceful and generous entity, symbolizing purity and selflessness as she nurtures the fertile lands.

These natural elements inspire a deep sense of pride and are closely connected to our spiritual traditions. They remind us of the greatness of our land, which I truly believe is golden and peerless.

Warmly,

Rahul Yadav

8. Based on the various descriptions provided in the text, draft a comprehensive "character sketch" of the motherland as visualized by the poet.

Ans :

If the motherland were imagined as a living character, she would appear as a balanced, majestic, and nurturing figure. She represents a perfect combination of beauty, strength, and grace, making her truly admirable and complete.

Physically, she is both powerful and beautiful, with the "mighty Himavant" as her crown and the river Ganga flowing with life-giving grace. Intellectually, she is wise and enlightened, enriched by the profound knowledge of the Upanishads. Spiritually, she is pure and sacred, shaped by the teachings of sages and Gautama Buddha.

Culturally, she is vibrant and dynamic, supporting both brave warriors and creative artists. She reflects courage as well as artistic excellence. Overall, she shines like a "sunny golden land," symbolizing prosperity, harmony, and unmatched greatness.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

nation in the world can match India's unique combination of majestic nature, profound wisdom, and historical bravery.

15. What is the ultimate effect of the rhythmic refrain used throughout the text?

Ans :

The chant-like rhythmic refrain, "She's peerless, let's praise her!", acts as a powerful unifying force. It continuously builds a profound sense of awe, leaving readers with a deeply enduring love and an unshakeable feeling of belonging to their glorious motherland.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. The poem creates a unique identity for the motherland by balancing contrasting elements. Discuss how the poet juxtaposes fierce physical might with artistic brilliance and spirituality.

Ans :

The poet masterfully crafts the motherland's identity by harmonizing seemingly opposite traits, creating a well-rounded portrait of greatness.

On one hand, the poem celebrates immense physical might, highlighting the "mighty Himavnt" for its unshakeable strength and paying tribute to "gallant warriors" known for their fierce physical courage in defending the land.

On the other hand, this aggressive strength is beautifully balanced by profound gentleness and artistic brilliance. The land is simultaneously the birthplace of the "divinest music," representing unparalleled cultural beauty.

Furthermore, the spiritual teachings of the Upanishads and Buddha's "dhamma" of compassion and non-violence deeply enrich the nation's soul. This brilliant juxtaposition proves the nation is truly peerless, excelling equally in brave fortitude and serene wisdom.

2. Imagine you are an ancient traveler who has just witnessed the majestic landscapes and spiritual depth of this "sunny golden land." Write a diary entry expressing your awe at the holy soil and the life-giving river Ganga.

Ans :

Dear Diary,

Today, I arrived in a truly sunny golden land, a place radiating unparalleled prosperity. I stand in absolute awe of its majestic geography. I witnessed the mighty Himavnt, towering peaks that have no equal on earth, acting as permanent

guardians. Journeying downwards, I encountered the generous and graceful river Ganga. It is deeply personified not just as water, but as a nurturing entity selflessly breathing life into the rich, fertile lands.

What moves me most is the vibrant energy of the earth itself. The soil feels profoundly sanctified, purified by the footsteps of countless wise sages. Experiencing this perfect blend of majestic nature and deep spirituality, I realize this peerless motherland deserves all our eternal praise.

3. The poem highlights Gautama Buddha preaching his "dhamma" of compassion and non-violence. Extrapolate on how this ancient spiritual legacy remains crucial for global leaders in today's modern world.

Ans :

The poet proudly identifies the motherland as the historic center where Gautama Buddha preached his "dhamma," deeply rooting the nation's identity in the noble principles of compassion and non-violence. In today's modern world, which is frequently torn apart by aggressive conflicts, rapid economic greed, and political strife, this ancient spiritual legacy is more crucial than ever.

Global leaders can draw immense inspiration from this heritage to prioritize peaceful diplomacy over warfare. By embracing the "dhamma," modern societies can learn to foster mutual respect and universal brotherhood. The poem subtly reminds us that true peerless greatness does not stem solely from military dominance, but from leading the world in spiritual enlightenment, profound empathy, and sustaining lasting global peace.

4. You are selected to deliver a speech in the morning assembly on the topic, "The Enduring Love for Our Motherland." Draft the speech utilizing the recurring chant-like phrase and themes from the poem to inspire your schoolmates.

Ans :

Respected Principal, Teachers, and dear friends, Today, I speak on the enduring love for our glorious motherland. Our nation is not just a geographical space; it is a "sunny golden land" radiating warmth and unparalleled greatness. Our borders are guarded by the mighty Himavnt, and our fertile lands are beautifully nurtured by the generous river Ganga.

We are fortunate to inherit a sanctified soil where wise sages unlocked Brahma-knowledge

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Gallant warriors have lived here,
many a sage has sanctified this land.
The divinest music has been heard here,
and here all auspicious things are found.”

- i. What does the phrase “sanctified this land” suggest about the sages?
 - (a) Made the land holy
 - (b) Governed the vast empire
 - (c) Conquered the new areas
 - (d) Created the classical art
- ii. Which of the following best describes the speaker’s perspective in these lines?
 - (a) Reverence for the multifaceted heritage
 - (b) Regret over lost ancient traditions
 - (c) Criticism of modern social decline
 - (d) Preference for strict martial history
- iii. What two types of great personalities does the poet mention as having lived in Bharat?
- iv. Find a word from the stanza that means “brave” or “heroic.”
- v. Fill in the blank:
According to the extract, the poet attributes the holiness and purity of the land to the presence of many a _____.

Ans :

- i. (a) Made the land holy
- ii. (a) Reverence for the multifaceted heritage
- iii. The poet mentions gallant warriors and sages as great personalities who lived in Bharat.
- iv. Gallant
- v. sage

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Here Brahma-knowledge has taken root,
and the Buddha preached his dhamma here.
Of hoary antiquity is Bharat,
she’s peerless, let’s praise her!...”

- i. The phrase “taken root” in the context of “Brahma-knowledge” implies that such philosophical wisdom has:
 - (a) Disappeared completely
 - (b) Established firmly
 - (c) Remained hidden
 - (d) Lost relevance
- ii. **Assertion (A):** The poet proudly calls Bharat a land of “hoary antiquity.”

Reason (R): The teachings of Buddha and Brahma-knowledge originated very recently in modern history.

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.
 - (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation.
 - (c) A is true, but R is false.
 - (d) A is false, but R is true.
- iii. Name the two great spiritual traditions the poet refers to in this stanza.
- iv. Based on the context of the poem, what does the word “hoary” mean?
- v. State True or False with a one-sentence reason:
The poem concludes with the realization that Bharat shares its unique greatness equally with other nations.

Ans :

- i. (b) Established firmly
- ii. (c) A is true, but R is false.
- iii. The poet refers to Brahma-knowledge and the dhamma preached by the Buddha.
- iv. Ancient/very old
- v. False, because the poet ends by calling Bharat “peerless,” meaning it is unequalled or unmatched by any other nation.



9. The poet uses distinct contrasts, such as “gallant warriors” and “divinest music,” or rugged mountains and graceful rivers. How do these contrasts contribute to the overarching theme of unparalleled greatness?

Ans :

The poet uses strong contrasts to show that the greatness of the motherland lies in its completeness. By presenting different elements together, the poet proves that the nation is rich in multiple dimensions, not limited to a single quality. For example, the “mighty Himavnt” represents strength and permanence, while the river Ganga symbolizes grace and nurturing qualities. Similarly, “gallant warriors” reflect bravery and physical power, whereas the “divinest music” represents peace and artistic beauty.

These contrasts highlight that the nation excels in all aspects of life. It combines strength, fertility, wisdom, and culture in perfect harmony, making it truly unique and justifying its description as a golden and peerless land.

10. If you had to give this text an alternative title based on its concluding emotions and central metaphors, what would it be? Justify your choice referencing the spiritual and historical legacy discussed.

Ans :

An appropriate alternative title for this text would be “The Golden Legacy of a Peerless Land.” This title effectively captures the central idea and emotional tone of the poem. It reflects both the admiration and pride expressed by the poet for the nation.

The phrase “Golden Legacy” highlights the poet’s description of the country as a “sunny golden land.” It represents its richness, intellectual heritage through the Upanishads, and its deep spiritual traditions shaped by sages and Gautama Buddha.

The term “Peerless Land” emphasizes that the nation has no equal. It reflects the repeated idea that the country stands unmatched in its geography, culture, and achievements. Thus, the title successfully conveys the poet’s deep respect, admiration, and love for the motherland.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“The mighty Himavnt is ours-
there’s no equal anywhere on earth.
The generous Ganga is ours-
which other river can match her grace?
The sacred Upanishads are ours-
what scriptures else to name with them?
This sunny golden land is ours-
she’s peerless, let’s praise her!”

- i. What does the recurring use of the word “ours” throughout the stanza imply?
- Unified national pride
 - Legal land ownership
 - Aggressive foreign policy
 - Geographical border claims

- ii. Read the following statements and choose the correct option:

Statement I: The poet uses rhetorical questions to emphasize the greatness of India’s natural and cultural assets.

Statement II: The poet harbors secret doubts about the significance of the Ganga river and Upanishads.

- Statement I is true, II is false
- Statement I is false, II is true
- Both statements are true
- Both statements are false

- iii. What does the poet mean by calling the land “peerless”?

- iv. Identify the figure of speech used in the phrase “generous Ganga” which assigns a human trait to the river.

- v. State True or False with a one-sentence reason:

The poet believes there are many other nations that are equally as great as Bharat.

Ans :

- (a) Unified national pride
- (a) Statement I is true, II is false
- By calling the land ‘peerless’ the poet means the land is unmatched and unequalled by any other nation on earth.
- Personification
- False, because the poet explicitly calls the land “peerless” and states there is “no equal anywhere on earth.”

NODIA

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



10. **Symbolism:** Using something to represent a deeper meaning. For example, “the varied vocations” and “the varied voices” symbolise the diversity of India — different people, different jobs, yet all united in the celebration of work and identity.
11. **Enjambment:** When a sentence or thought runs over from one line to the next without a pause. For example, “The boatmen gathering their nets from the shore, sailing, and singing while at work, return to tell the tales of life at sea” shows one continuous flowing thought spread across multiple lines.
12. **Apostrophe:** Directly addressing an absent person, place or idea. For example, “I hear Bharat celebrating” shows the poet directly addresses Bharat — India — as if speaking to or about a living, breathing presence that can celebrate and have a voice.

5. MESSAGE

The poem gives us a simple but important message that every type of work deserves respect. No job is small or big, and each person plays a valuable role in society. It teaches us to take pride in our own work and respect others for theirs. Our vocation is closely connected to our identity, and by honouring all professions, we create a more equal and happy society.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Reflect and Respond

I. Given below are four riddles. Read and identify who these people are.

1. In furrows deep, secrets I sow,
As time passes,
I watch them grow.
Who am I? _____
2. From wheel to kiln, my skill is born,
Step by step, an art takes form.
Who am I? _____
3. I lay foundations, brick by brick,
To build a house, it's me you pick.
Who am I? _____
4. I work with pots, pans, and spice,
Creating dishes that taste so nice.
Who am I? _____

Ans :

1. A farmer, 2. A potter, 3. A mason (or builder), 4. A cook (or chef)

II. What is the role and relevance of the people you identified in the riddles. How do they contribute to the society? Discuss with your classmates and teacher.



Ans :

The people identified—a farmer, a potter, a mason, and a cook—play foundational roles in human society.

1. **The Farmer** provides the most basic human need : food. Without their hard work in the fields, society could not survive.
2. **The Potter** creates essential vessels for storage and cooking while also keeping traditional arts and cultural heritage alive.
3. **The Mason** builds homes, schools, and infrastructure, providing us with safe shelters and spaces to live and work.
4. **The Cook** nourishes people, bringing communities and families together through the art of preparing food.

Together, they contribute to the functioning, well-being, and cultural richness of society. Every vocation fills a specific, vital need, proving that all forms of labor are essential and deserving of respect.

Check Your Understanding

I. Based on your understanding of the poem, state whether the following statements are true or false. Also, rectify the false statements.

1. The poem highlights the skilled work of craftsperson.
2. The poet shares that musicians express emotions through their instruments.

CHAPTER 2

GIFTS OF GRACE: HONOURING OUR VOCATIONS

1. INTRODUCTION

The poem “Gifts of Grace: Honouring Our Vocations” celebrates the dignity and importance of every kind of work in our society. It shows how different people—like carpenters, electricians, boatmen, shoemakers, and cooks—take pride in their vocations and contribute to our daily lives. Each person’s work is unique and meaningful, and together they create harmony in the nation. The poem teaches us to respect all professions, as every job has its own value. It also highlights that our vocation is not just work, but an important part of our identity and self-expression.

2. SUMMARY

The Nation’s Celebration of Colorful Crafts

The speaker observes the nation of Bharat rejoicing in the wide variety of professions practiced by its people. The opening focus is on the dedicated craftspeople who actively celebrate their specific trades. These skilled workers are seen creating beautiful, intricate items that are woven together using a vast array of bright and diverse colors, bringing visual joy to their everyday labor.

The Echoing Melodies of the Street Artisans

The poem then shifts its attention to the musical artisans playing their lutes in the open streets. Through the music they create, these individuals express a wide range of human emotions and bring their personal dreams to life. Their celebratory songs and melodies echo throughout the public spaces, sharing their artistic passion with anyone who happens to hear them pass by.

The Exactness of Carpenters and Electricians

Next, the speaker highlights the diligent work of builders and technicians. Carpenters are shown rejoicing in their ability to take ordinary pieces of wood and transform them into practically

anything, using careful measurements and mathematical exactness. Alongside them, electricians are described happily humming as they prepare for their daily tasks. They skillfully handle complex cables and wires, ultimately providing the electricity and power that brighten the daily lives of everyone in the community.

The Journeys of Boatmen and the Craft of Shoemakers

The poem then turns to those who work with nature and physical movement. Boatmen are observed on the shore gathering their fishing nets before setting sail. They sing joyfully while they work on the water and later return to land to share adventurous stories about their experiences out at sea. Meanwhile, shoemakers confidently stand by the high quality of their handmade footwear. They craft strong shoes designed to support people through all kinds of physical activities—whether walking, dancing, running, or jumping—ensuring they can safely make their way home.

The Unique Identities Found in Everyday Work

In the final section, the speaker describes the joyful and almost musical atmosphere surrounding the daily routines of cooks, designers, and masons. Each of these workers takes immense pride in their specific duties, celebrating the unique skills that belong entirely to them. The poem concludes with the observation that the work these individuals do completely shapes who they are, making their profession their very identity. Ultimately, the speaker listens in awe as the entire nation of Bharat celebrates this rich, diverse chorus of working voices.

SCAN QR CODE

JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



4. Identify and explain the literary device used to describe the Himalayan mountains.

Ans :

The poet effectively uses bold hyperbole to describe the Himalayan mountains. By explicitly stating that these majestic peaks have “no equal anywhere on earth,” the poet exaggerates their grandeur to emphasize the absolute uniqueness and unrivaled physical beauty of the nation.

5. How does the poet utilize personification when describing the river Ganga?

Ans :

The river Ganga is beautifully personified as a living, nurturing entity. By describing the river as “generous and graceful,” the poet gives it human qualities, highlighting its active role in selflessly providing life and sustenance to the nation’s rich fertile lands.

6. What specific qualities does the river Ganga bring to the nation’s landscape?

Ans :

Beyond its physical flow, the river Ganga brings profound purity and selflessness to the landscape. Its life-giving waters are credited with actively nurturing the country’s rich fertile lands, transforming the physical geography into a vibrant, blessed, and highly productive environment.

7. How is the intellectual legacy of the motherland represented in the poem?

Ans :

The nation’s intellectual legacy is represented through a direct allusion to the sacred Upanishads. The poet asserts that these ancient scriptures offer unmatched global wisdom and deep enlightenment, proving that the country’s historical intellect remains superior to any other texts.

8. Why is the soil of the motherland described as being “sanctified”?

Ans :

The poet describes the soil as “sanctified,” meaning holy and purified, because countless wise sages have historically lived and walked upon this land. Their sustained spiritual practices and profound wisdom have eternally blessed the physical ground of the entire nation.

9. What is the significance of “Brahma-knowledge” in establishing the nation’s identity?

Ans :

The reference to “Brahma-knowledge” grounds the nation’s core identity in the pursuit of ultimate spiritual truths rather than mere material wealth. It highlights the motherland as the original birthplace of profound cosmic wisdom, elevating its status on a global spiritual scale.

10. What impact did Gautama Buddha’s teachings have on the land according to the text?

Ans :

Gautama Buddha preached his “dhamma” on this land, deeply embedding the vital principles of compassion and non-violence into the nation’s cultural fabric. This solidifies the country’s reputation as a historic center for profound moral leadership and peaceful spiritual enlightenment.

11. How does the poet characterize the people who shaped the nation’s history?

Ans :

The poet pays a glorious tribute to the “gallant warriors” who shaped the nation’s history. They are characterized by their immense physical courage, absolute bravery, and fierce dedication, proving that the spiritual land was also fiercely defended by strong heroes.

12. What does the mention of “divinest music” reveal about the country’s cultural landscape?

Ans :

The creation of the “divinest music” reveals a landscape rich in immense artistic brilliance. It shows that alongside fierce military bravery, the nation cultivated sweet, heavenly arts, establishing a culture that values creative expression just as much as physical strength.

13. Explain the metaphor of the “sunny golden land” used in the poem.

Ans :

The metaphor “sunny golden land” paints a vibrant picture of continuous prosperity and warm radiance. It visually suggests that the motherland is not only rich in material and spiritual wealth but also shines brightly with an inviting, positive, and glorious aura.

14. What does the word “peerless” signify in the poet’s repeating line?

Ans :

The word “peerless” signifies that the motherland has absolutely no equals. By declaring “She’s peerless,” the poet firmly asserts that no other

2. **Rhythm** - A strong, regular repeated pattern of movement or sound
3. **Mason** - A skilled worker who builds with stone or brick

Explanation :

The poet highlights shoemakers, who take immense pride in guaranteeing the high quality of the shoes they make. Because of their sturdy work, people can safely walk, dance, run, jump, and eventually return home comfortably. This shows how a seemingly ordinary job silently supports the daily joys and lives of everyone else.

Next, the poet uses a beautiful metaphor: “delicious singing of the cook.” By comparing the pleasant sounds of cooking to a sweet song, it shows how enjoyable the cook’s work is. The poet also honors the unique “rhythm” or working style of designers and masons. Every single worker celebrates the special skills that belong exclusively to them, proving that every profession has its own unique magic.

Stanza 5

The voice of their vocation is the voice of their identity. I hear Bharat celebrating, the varied voices I hear!

Word Meaning :

1. **Identity** - Who a person is; their individuality and true character

Explanation :

In these concluding lines, the poet delivers the central message or theme of the poem: a person’s profession is deeply tied to who they are. The honest work they do gives them a unique voice and a proud identity in society.

The poem ends exactly how it began, with the repetition of the line “I hear Bharat celebrating.” This repetition creates a full circle, leaving the reader with a lasting feeling of patriotism and a deep respect for the “dignity of labor”—the idea that all jobs, no matter how small, deserve our highest respect.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

The poem “Gifts of Grace: Honouring Our Vocations” does not follow a strict stanzaic structure. The rhyme scheme is free verse.

1. **Refrain**: A line or phrase repeated at regular intervals for emphasis. For example, “I hear Bharat celebrating, the varied vocations I hear” at the opening and “I hear Bharat celebrating, the varied voices I hear” at the

close shows the poem begins and ends with a similar line, giving it a circular, song-like structure.

2. **Anaphora**: Repeating the same word or phrase at the beginning of successive lines or stanzas. For example, “The artisans... The carpenters... The electricians... The boatmen... The shoemakers...” shows each stanza begins with “The” followed by a worker, creating a powerful rhythmic pattern throughout the poem.
3. **Imagery**: Using descriptive words to create vivid pictures in the reader’s mind. For example, “woven with colours and myriad hues” shows rich visual imagery that helps the reader see the craftsperson’s colourful and varied work clearly.
4. **Personification**: Giving human qualities to non-living things. For example, “The voice of their vocation is the voice of their identity” shows vocation — which is just a job — is given a human voice, making it feel alive and deeply personal.
5. **Metaphor**: A direct comparison without using “like” or “as.” For example, “The voice of their vocation is the voice of their identity” shows work is directly compared to identity, suggesting that what people do defines who they are.
6. **Alliteration**: Repetition of the same consonant sound at the beginning of nearby words. For example, “work with cables and wires” shows the repetition of the ‘w’ sound creating a smooth, flowing musical effect.
7. **Onomatopoeia**: Using words that sound like the action they describe. For example, “The electricians humming” shows the word “humming” sounds like the soft buzzing noise of electrical work, making the scene feel real and alive.
8. **Repetition**: Using the same word more than once for emphasis. For example, the word “celebrating” is repeated multiple times throughout the poem — “celebrating their craft”, “celebrating dreams”, “each celebrating what belongs to them” — strongly emphasising joy and pride in one’s work.
9. **Parallelism**: Using the same grammatical structure in multiple lines to create balance and rhythm. For example, “for the feet that walk, dance, run, jump, return home” shows a series of action words in the same form, creating a balanced and energetic rhythm.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

I hear Bharat celebrating, the varied vocations I hear;

Those of craftsperson, each one celebrating their craft, woven with colours and myriad hues.

Word Meaning :

1. Bharat - India
2. Varied - Different types of; diverse
3. Vocations - Professions, jobs, or careers
4. Craftsperson - A person who makes beautiful or useful things by hand
5. Myriad - Countless or an extremely large number
6. Hues - Colors or shades

Explanation :

The poem opens with a joyful, patriotic tone, painting a picture of India (Bharat) as a nation actively celebrating the many different jobs of its people. The speaker feels that the diverse careers of everyday people come together to create a beautiful, unified celebration.

First, the poet focuses on craftspersons, who create handmade items. They celebrate their work by weaving together endless varieties of bright colors and shades. This imagery shows that their daily work is not just a boring duty, but a joyful expression of art and culture that makes the world more beautiful.

Stanza 2

The artisans with lutes, each hailing varied emotions and celebrating dreams, echoing in the streets.

The carpenters celebrating; they create anything out of wood with mathematical precision,

Word Meaning :

1. Artisans - Skilled workers who create things by hand (here, referring to musicians)
2. Lutes - Stringed musical instruments, similar to guitars
3. Hailing - Expressing loudly or calling out
4. Echoing - Sounding again and again as it bounces off surfaces
5. Precision - Exactness, accuracy, and deep care

Explanation :

The poet then shifts our attention to musicians, described here as artisans holding lutes. As they play their instruments in the streets, their music

echoes around the neighborhood, expressing a wide range of human emotions and bringing people's dreams to life. This use of "auditory imagery" (words that create sound in the reader's mind) brings the poem to life.

Next, the poet praises carpenters. They find deep joy in their work by taking simple wood and transforming it into anything they can imagine. The poet specifically mentions their "mathematical precision," showing deep respect for the highly logical, accurate, and skilled nature of carpentry.

Stanza 3

The electricians humming; they get ready for work, work with cables and wires to brighten our lives,

The boatmen gathering their nets from the shore, sailing, and singing while at work, return to tell the tales of life at sea,

Word Meaning :

1. Humming - Making a low, continuous musical sound with closed lips
2. Brighten - To make something lighter, happier, or full of light

Explanation :

The celebration continues with electricians, who hum a happy tune as they prepare for their day. The poet points out their essential contribution: by skillfully handling dangerous cables and wires, they literally and metaphorically "brighten our lives" by bringing electricity and safety into our homes.

Then, the poet takes us to the shore to observe the hardworking boatmen. Even while doing the difficult physical labor of hauling heavy nets and sailing, they are singing. When they return, they bring back fascinating stories of their adventures on the open sea, turning their difficult manual labor into a rich, shared human experience.

Stanza 4

The shoemakers affirming the quality of their work, for the feet that walk, dance, run, jump, return home.

The delicious singing of the cook, or the rhythm of designer, mason, each celebrating what belongs to them and to none else,

Word Meaning :

1. Affirming - Stating proudly and confidently as a fact; guaranteeing

3. The carpenters in the poem are admired for their logical work.
4. The electricians in the poem are recognised for their crucial role in lighting up lives.
5. The poem pays homage to shoemakers who manufacture quality footwear.
6. The poem celebrates the patriotism of the people of Bharat.
7. The poet feels that each vocation deserves to be respected.

Ans :

1. True
2. True
3. False

Rectification : The carpenters in the poem are admired for their mathematical precision in creating anything out of wood.

4. True
5. True
6. False

Rectification : The poem celebrates the varied vocations, skills, and the pride of workers in their daily jobs in Bharat, rather than just the concept of patriotism.

7. True

II. Let us appreciate the poem.

1. Rhyme Scheme and Lineation

- i. Does the poem strictly adhere to a rhyme scheme, or is it in free verse?
- ii. What is the impact of the varying length of lines in the poem?
- iii. What is the pattern in the structure of most lines of the poem?

Ans :

- i. The poem does not strictly adhere to a rhyme scheme; it is written in free verse.
- ii. The varying length of the lines reflects the diverse and rhythmic nature of the different vocations being celebrated. It mimics the natural, varied flow of daily life and the unique pacing of different types of physical and creative work.
- iii. Most lines in the poem follow a distinct pattern: they first introduce the specific vocation or worker (e.g., "The carpenters," "The electricians"), and then immediately describe the actions, skills, or contributions associated with their craft.

2. Speaker

Who appears to be the speaker and what is her/his role here?

Ans :

The speaker appears to be an observant and appreciative citizen of Bharat (India) or the poet themselves. Their role is to bear witness to the diverse workforce of the nation, acknowledging, praising, and giving a voice to the dignity of various professions.

3. Tone and Moods

Fill in the blanks with suitable options from the box given below.

serious	celebratory	hostile
reverential	joyful	sympathetic

- A. The tone is _____ and _____, depicting a sense of admiration and respect for the artisans and craftspeople.
- B. There is a _____ mood throughout the poem, capturing the vibrancy and richness of cultural traditions and skills.

Ans :

- A. The tone is **reverential** and **celebratory**, depicting a sense of admiration and respect for the artisans and craftspeople.
- B. There is a **joyful** mood throughout the poem, capturing the vibrancy and richness of cultural traditions and skills.

4. Imagery

- i. Select any two descriptions from the poem that evoke visual images.
- ii. Fill in the blanks with suitable phrases.
The poem includes auditory imagery through mentions of artisans with lutes, _____, and _____, emphasising the sounds associated with each vocation.

Ans :

- i. Two descriptions that evoke strong visual images are:
 1. "...woven with colours and myriad hues."
 2. "The boatmen gathering their nets from the shore..."
- ii. The poem includes auditory imagery through mentions of artisans with lutes, "the electricians humming", and "the delicious singing of the cook", emphasising the sounds associated with each vocation.

5. Metaphor

State whether the following sentence is true or false.

The mention of 'delicious singing' of the cook is a metaphor because it implies that the quality of

the singing is so enjoyable or pleasing that it can be equated to the experience of tasting something delicious.

Ans :

True.

6. Personification

Select the line that tells us that the poet personifies vocations by attributing human-like qualities to them.

Ans :

The line is: "The voice of their vocation is the voice of their identity." (Vocation is given a human "voice").

7. Repetition

Why might the poet have begun and ended with the same line—"I hear Bharat celebrating, the varied vocations I hear!"?

Ans :

The poet uses repetition to create a cohesive, cyclical structure that reinforces the central theme of the poem. Beginning and ending with this line emphasizes the continuous, collective harmony and the ever-present celebration of India's diverse workforce.

8. Alliteration

Identify two examples of alliteration from the poem.

Ans :

Two examples of alliteration are:

1. "sailing, and singing" (repetition of the 's' sound).
2. "tell the tales" (repetition of the 't' sound).

9. Symbolism

Each vocation in the poem symbolises something more than just a job. What does it symbolise?

Ans :

Each vocation symbolises the unique identity, passion, and personal pride of the worker. Collectively, they symbolise the dignity of labor and the intricate cultural and social fabric of the nation, showing how individual contributions build a thriving society.

Critical Reflection

I. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow.

The shoemakers affirming the quality of their work, for the feet that walk, dance, run, jump, return home.

The delicious singing of the cook, or the rhythm of designer, mason, each celebrating what belongs to them and to none else,

The poet says that the shoemakers 'affirm' the quality of their work. What does 'affirm' refer to here?

- (i) to make adjustments in
- (ii) to declare with confidence
- (iii) to label the goods
- (iv) to justify the efforts

2. What do quality shoes help with, according to the poet?

3. What does 'return home' symbolise besides the literal act of returning?

4. Identify the phrase that tells us that every worker's contribution is distinct.

5. Complete the following with suitable words.
...for the feet that walk, dance, run, jump, return home refers to _____.

Ans :

1. (ii) to declare with confidence
2. According to the poet, quality shoes support people in their everyday movements, helping feet to comfortably walk, dance, run, jump, and eventually return home safely.
3. Besides the literal act, 'return home' symbolises the successful, safe completion of a day's journey, bringing a sense of comfort, security, and rest after a day of hard work or activity.
4. The phrase is: "each celebrating what belongs to them and to none else".
5. ...for the feet that walk, dance, run, jump, return home refers to "the various physical activities, journeys, and experiences undertaken by people in their daily lives".

II. Answer the following questions.

1. Why does the poet say, 'I hear Bharat celebrating, the varied vocations I hear'?

Ans :

The poet says this to express that the nation (Bharat) thrives and rejoices in the diverse skills, trades, and hard work of its people. The harmonious combination of all these different professions working together successfully is compared to a grand celebration.

2. What does the electrician ‘humming’ while getting ready for work suggest?

Ans :

The ‘humming’ suggests that the electrician is focused, content, and takes genuine pleasure in their work. It reflects a positive, enthusiastic attitude toward their job of bringing light and energy into people’s lives.

3. Explain the significance of the line, ‘The voice of their vocation is the voice of their identity.’

Ans :

This line signifies that a person’s profession is deeply interwoven with who they are as an individual. Their work is not just a chore to earn a living; it is a profound expression of their unique talents, their pride, and their personal identity in the world.

4. Do you think the role of all the people belonging to different vocations is important in our daily lives? Support your answer with a reason.

Ans :

Yes, the roles of people in all different vocations are extremely important. Society functions like a machine where every gear is necessary. We rely on farmers for food, masons for shelter, and electricians for power. Because no single person can do everything, we depend on the specialized skills of others to lead comfortable, balanced, and safe lives.

5. Why is the poet celebrating all the vocations in the poem? Explain by giving examples from your context.

Ans :

The poet celebrates all vocations to highlight the dignity of labor and to remind us that every job is essential to a functioning society. For example, in a school context, while teachers are essential for education, the sanitation workers who keep the campus clean and the bus drivers who transport students safely are equally vital. Every role deserves recognition and respect.

6. How does the poet use sensory imagery to bring out the beauty of everyday work?

Ans :

The poet uses vivid sensory imagery to make everyday work feel vibrant and alive. Visual imagery like “woven with colours” helps us see the beauty of crafts, while auditory imagery such as “artisans with lutes,” “electricians humming,”

and “delicious singing” allows us to hear the joyful, rhythmic sounds of people happily engaged in their respective trades.

Vocabulary in Context

- I. People of different vocations are being described in the poem. Match the vocations given in the box below with the descriptions that follow.

ASHA worker	confectioner	sericulturist
welder	horticulturist	goldsmith

- A person who studies or grows garden plants: _____
- A trained female community health worker: _____
- A producer of raw silk: _____
- A person whose job is making or selling sweets and chocolates: _____
- A metalworker who specialises in working with precious metals: _____
- A person who fuses materials together: _____

Ans :

- A person who studies or grows garden plants: **horticulturist**
- A trained female community health worker: **ASHA worker**
- A producer of raw silk : **sericulturist**
- A person whose job is making or selling sweets and chocolates : **confectioner**
- A metalworker who specialises in working with precious metals: **goldsmith**
- A person who fuses materials together: **welder**

- II. Identify the word from Column 2 that is not the synonym of the words given in Column 1.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	myriad	i.	countable, innumerable, numerous, abundant
2.	hues	ii.	shades, tints, drawing, colour
3.	precision	iii.	exactness, accuracy, correctness, calculation
4.	varied	iv.	assorted, diverse, uniform, different
5.	delicious	v.	mouth-watering, inedible, tasty, flavourful

Ans :

- myriad : **countable**
- hues : **drawing**

III.

A Japanese Haiku
Make up your mind, Snail!
You are half inside your house,
And halfway out!

Haiku is a traditional Japanese poetry form. A very short poem consisting of 17 syllable verses divided into three lines, with five syllables in the first, seven syllables in the second, and five syllables in the third.

Now, create a Haiku poem and share with your classmates and teacher.

Ans :

Haiku :

Soft breeze in the trees,
Golden leaves dance in sunlight,
Autumn whispers low.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

- What is the central theme of the poem discussed in the text?
(a) Dignity of labor (b) History of Bharat
(c) Beauty of nature (d) Freedom struggle

Ans :

- (a) Dignity of labor

- The poem paints a vibrant picture of the nation _____.
(a) Ancient Rome (b) Modern Europe
(c) Nation Bharat (d) Rural London

Ans :

- (c) Nation Bharat

- How does the poet view the nation as a whole?
(a) Divided groups (b) Collective harmony
(c) Silent observers (d) Isolated workers

Ans :

- (b) Collective harmony

- What role does the poet play in the context of the poem?
(a) Strict teacher (b) Wealthy trader
(c) Angry politician (d) Observant citizen

Ans :

- (d) Observant citizen

- The hard work of the people is seen not as a burden, but as a _____.
(a) Tedious burden (b) Grand celebration
(c) Sad obligation (d) Quiet punishment

Ans :

- (b) Grand celebration

- Assertion (A):** The poet views hard work as a joyful celebration of life.

Reason (R): The workers feel heavily burdened by their daily, repetitive tasks.

- (a) Both Statement A and Statement R are entirely true.
(b) Both Statement A and Statement R are entirely false.
(c) Statement A is entirely true, but Statement R is false.
(d) Statement A is entirely false, but Statement R is true.

Ans :

- (c) Statement A is entirely true, but Statement R is false.

- What exactly does the poem aim to showcase?
(a) Diverse workers (b) Ancient temples
(c) Foreign tourists (d) Silent streets

Ans :

- (a) Diverse workers

- Who provides our most basic and essential need?
(a) The carpenter (b) The shoemaker
(c) The mechanic (d) The farmer

Ans :

- (d) The farmer

What is the farmer's main contribution to the society?

- (a) Making clothes (b) Providing food
(c) Building homes (d) Crafting tools

Ans :

- (b) Providing food

- Who is described as keeping cultural traditions alive?
(a) The plumber (b) The painter
(c) The potter (d) The poet

Ans :

- (c) The potter

- placed in a box
- visually attractive
- letters of different fonts and size
- proportionate spacing
- word limit: 50

Ans :

ST. XAVIER'S HIGH SCHOOL

announces

CAREER MELA

to spread awareness about various careers on 25 February from 9 a.m. to 6 p.m.

at the School Auditorium, Main Campus

Highlights :

- Details, information **brochures** provided for all streams
- Counsellors for all **students and parents**
- Interactive **workshops and sessions** with professionals

CHART YOUR FUTURE AT CAREER MELA

Entry Tickets : FREE

The Principal
St. Xavier's High School



R.L. Stevenson

Ans :

The poem describes a child who eagerly waits every evening to watch the lamplighter light the street lamps. While others dream of different professions like driver, sailor, or banker, the child wishes to become a lamplighter when he grows up. He admires the lamplighter's work and finds it exciting. The poem also shows that the lamplighter plays an important role by bringing light and comfort to people's lives.

- II. Visit the website <https://www.msde.gov.in/>
Collect information on any one vocation of your choice. Prepare a presentation explaining the following.

- Reason for your choice
- How is it helpful to the society and self?

Ans :

Vocation : Electrician

Reason for your choice : I chose this vocation because electricity is the invisible backbone of the modern world. I am fascinated by the practical application of science and how wiring and circuits function to power our everyday lives.

How is it helpful to the society and self? :

For Society : Electricians ensure public safety and convenience by installing, maintaining, and repairing electrical systems. They keep our hospitals running, our schools lit, and our homes comfortable.

For Self : It is a highly skilled, respectable, and continuously evolving profession. It provides steady employment, enhances problem-solving skills, and brings immense personal satisfaction by directly improving the quality of people's lives.

NODIA

Learning Beyond the Text

- I. You must have read poems and songs related to childhood fascination about different vocations in English and in your own language. Now, read and enjoy the poem given below.

The Lamplighter

My tea is nearly ready and the sun has left the sky;

It's time to take the window to see Leerie going by;

For every night at tea-time and before you take your seat;

With lantern and with ladder he comes posting up the street.

Now Tom would be a driver and Maria go to sea,
And my papa's a banker and as rich as he can be;
But I, when I am stronger and can choose what I'm to do,

O Leerie, I'll go round at night and light the lamps with you!

For we are very lucky, with a lamp before the door,

And Leerie stops to light it as he lights so many more;

And O! before you jurry by with ladder and with light,

O Leerie, see a little child and nod to him to-night!

3. precision : **calculation**
4. varied : **uniform**
5. delicious : **inedible**

Listen and Respond

- I. You will listen to two friends, a boy and a girl discussing the occupations of their parents. As you listen, answer the following question in two to three words only. (Transcript for teacher on page 262)

What does the boy use to understand the details of the tools?

Ans :

toy cars

- II. You will listen to the girl and the boy once again. As you listen, answer the questions by selecting the correct option.

1. The girl is _____ about taking food for her mother at the factory.
 - (i) happy
 - (ii) boastful
 - (iii) unsure
2. The boy thinks that the job of the girl's mother carries a lot of _____.
 - (i) luck
 - (ii) risk
 - (iii) responsibility
3. The girl _____ why the boy is good at science exhibitions.
 - (i) wonders
 - (ii) questions
 - (iii) realises
4. The girl shares her _____ about joining the weekend discussion on tools.
 - (i) doubts
 - (ii) wish
 - (iii) ideas

Ans :

1. (i) happy
2. (iii) responsibility
3. (iii) realises
4. (i) doubts

Speaking Activity

The poet speaks of several occupations in the poem.

Create groups of five. Allot the role of any five vocations that the poet talks about. Each student in the group will represent one vocation.

Each student speaks for 1-2 minutes about their vocation—who they are, what they do, where they work, what kind of experiences they have at work, what problems they face and a message for all.



Ans :

“Hello everyone, I am representing the Potter. I am an artisan who works with clay to create beautiful and useful items. I work in my small courtyard, using a spinning potter's wheel and a hot kiln. I take a simple lump of wet mud and, with careful steps, mould it into pots, bowls, and vases. The experience of creating something out of the earth is deeply satisfying and brings me great joy. However, my work can be physically exhausting, and in today's world of factory-made plastics, it is sometimes hard to earn a fair living. My message to you all is to value and support handmade crafts, as they carry the love, tradition, and hard work of the artisan.”

Writing Task

- I. Your school will be organising a ‘Career Mela’ in which students are to be made familiar with the different career options. Complete the poster for the event given below.

NAME OF THE ORGANISER _____ Event purpose (if any) _____ Date _____ Time _____ Venue _____ Highlights/Attractions _____ Slogan _____ Entry tickets _____ Sponsors _____ Issuing Authority _____	_____ announces _____ MELA to spread awareness about various careers on 25 February from 9 a.m. to 6 p.m. at _____, _____ Highlights: ● Details, information _____ provided for all streams ● Counsellors for all _____ ● Interactive _____ with professionals CHART YOUR FUTURE AT CAREER MELA _____ : FREE _____ School
---	--

A poster is used to announce an event. It has the following features:

11. What does the potter craft with immense dedication?

(a) Metal shields (b) Clay vessels
(c) Wooden chairs (d) Glass bottles

Ans :

(b) Clay vessels

12. Masons build the crucial foundations of our
-----.

(a) Cars and bikes (b) Homes and schools
(c) Ships and boats (d) Parks and roads

Ans :

(b) Homes and schools

13. Who skillfully shapes wood into useful, everyday items?

(a) The carpenter (b) The shoemaker
(c) The electrician (d) The boatman

Ans :

(a) The carpenter

14. What specific skill is the carpenter heavily admired for?

(a) Musical talent
(b) Physical strength
(c) Mathematical precision
(d) Chemical knowledge

Ans :

(c) Mathematical precision

15. Who is responsible for bringing light and energy into homes?

(a) The artisan (b) The plumber
(c) The mason (d) The electrician

Ans :

(d) The electrician

16. Why does the shoemaker take immense pride in his craft?

(a) He uses the most expensive materials available.
(b) He supports people as they move and walk safely.
(c) He earns a massive amount of money every month.
(d) He is famous and known across the whole nation.

Ans :

(b) He supports people as they move and walk safely.

17. Which of the following statements is correct regarding the shoemaker?

I. Shoemakers proudly craft quality footwear.
II. Their footwear helps people safely dance.
III. Shoemakers absolutely hate their daily jobs.

(a) Only Statements I and II
(b) Only Statements II and III
(c) Only Statements I and III
(d) All of the three statements

Ans :

(a) Only Statements I and II

18. Which worker brings families together according to the text?

(a) The artisan (b) The doctor
(c) The farmer (d) The cook

Ans :

(d) The cook

19. How exactly does the cook unite families together?

(a) Playing music (b) Weaving crafts
(c) Telling stories (d) Nourishing food

Ans :

(d) Nourishing food

20. Artisans are noted for weaving beautiful
-----.

(a) Plastic toys (b) Iron fences
(c) Colorful crafts (d) Golden rings

Ans :

(c) Colorful crafts

21. What do the crafts made by artisans actively enrich?

(a) Our economy (b) Our science
(c) Our politics (d) Our culture

Ans :

(d) Our culture

22. What is described as being deeply connected to identity?

(a) One's profession (b) One's birthplace
(c) One's language (d) One's religion

Ans :

(a) One's profession

23. What does the quote about vocation and identity fundamentally mean?

(a) Workers must shout loudly while they are working.

essential.

45. Working with the earth, such as farming, is considered highly _____.

(a) Honorable (b) Dishonorable
(c) Pointless (d) Shameful

Ans :

(a) Honorable

Short Answer Type Questions

1. How does the poet perceive the nation of Bharat in the opening of the poem?

Ans :

The poet perceives Bharat as a nation of collective harmony, rather than divided groups. As an observant citizen, the poet views the diverse citizens and their hard work not as a tedious burden, but as a grand, joyful celebration of life and unity.

2. What specific role does the farmer play in the grand celebration of the nation?

Ans :

The farmer plays an essential role by providing food, which is the most basic need of society. Working closely with the earth, the farmer's labor is considered highly honorable, forming the fundamental backbone of the nation's survival and its continuous celebration.

3. How do the potter and the artisan actively contribute to the cultural richness of Bharat?

Ans :

The potter crafts clay vessels with immense dedication, while artisans weave beautiful, colorful crafts. Both of these skilled workers do more than just create physical objects; they actively enrich the nation's cultural traditions, keeping ancient heritage vividly alive in everyday life.

4. Why is the carpenter highly admired for mathematical precision in the poem?

Ans :

The carpenter is admired for skillfully shaping wood into useful, everyday items. This craft requires mathematical precision to ensure structural integrity and perfect proportions. Their exact calculations and careful measurements transform raw timber into essential, functional pieces for the society.

5. In what way do the mason and the electrician build and energize the community?

Ans :

Masons lay the crucial foundations and build homes and schools, creating safe shelters and spaces for learning. Meanwhile, the electrician is responsible for bringing light and vital energy into these homes, illuminating spaces and powering the daily lives of the citizens.

6. What justifies the shoemaker's immense pride in his daily craft?

Ans :

The shoemaker takes immense pride in his craft because he creates quality footwear that supports people as they move and walk safely. His meticulous work protects their feet, enabling them to confidently go about their daily routines and essential duties.

7. How does the poet describe the role of the cook in bringing people together?

Ans :

According to the poet, the cook plays a vital role in uniting families. By preparing and serving nourishing food, the cook creates a shared experience around the dining table, fostering warmth, love, and strong emotional bonds among all family members.

8. What is the significance of the boatman's work as depicted in the text?

Ans :

The boatman is explicitly depicted using nets, indicating his role in navigating the waters and sustaining livelihoods through fishing. His dedicated labor contributes to the diverse tapestry of the nation's workforce, showcasing the importance of those who work on rivers and seas.

9. Explain the profound connection between a worker's profession and their identity.

Ans :

The poem highlights that a person's profession is deeply connected to their identity. The daily tasks and the "voice of their vocation" express their unique personal pride and talents, showing that a worker's job actively shapes and reflects their true inner self.

10. Why do the workers hum and sing while performing their daily, repetitive tasks?

34. Who is specifically described as using nets in the poem?

- (a) The farmers (b) The masons
(c) The potters (d) The boatmen

Ans :

- (d) The boatmen

35. The strumming of lutes is a clear example of _____.

- (a) Visual imagery (b) Auditory imagery
(c) Tactile imagery (d) Olfactory imagery

Ans :

- (b) Auditory imagery

36. Who is explicitly described as humming in the auditory imagery?

- (a) The shoemaker (b) The carpenter
(c) The electrician (d) The boatman

Ans :

- (c) The electrician

37. What specific poetic device is the phrase “delicious singing”?

- (a) Simile (b) Irony
(c) Oxymoron (d) Metaphor

Ans :

- (d) Metaphor

38. What is actively compared in the metaphor “delicious singing”?

- (a) The joy of a cook’s song to the taste of food.
(b) The volume of a loud song to a quiet whisper.
(c) The color of a bright dress to the smell of spices.
(d) The pain of hard, daily work to the heat of the fire.

Ans :

- (a) The joy of a cook’s song to the taste of food.

39. What specific device gives the abstract vocation a human “voice”?

- (a) Alliteration (b) Personification
(c) Enjambment (d) Assonance

Ans :

- (b) Personification

40. **Assertion (A):** The vocation is given a human “voice” in the poem.

Reason (R): The poet uses the literary tool known as personification.

(a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.

(b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation.

(c) Statement A is entirely true, but Statement R is completely false.

(d) Statement A is entirely false, but Statement R is completely true.

Ans :

(a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.

41. The ultimate message suggests society functions like a _____.

- (a) Broken clock (b) Raging river
(c) Oiled machine (d) Quiet forest

Ans :

- (c) Oiled machine

42. In this societal machine, every single working gear is _____.

- (a) Necessary (b) Defective
(c) Replaceable (d) Expensive

Ans :

- (a) Necessary

43. Which of the following statements is correct regarding vocations?

- I. Only the highest paying jobs truly matter.
II. All vocations are absolutely essential.
III. Every job highly deserves our respect.

- (a) Only Statements I and II
(b) Only Statements I and III
(c) Only Statements II and III
(d) All of the three statements

Ans :

- (c) Only Statements II and III

44. What is the true, overarching message of the entire chapter?

- (a) Only the farmers and potters are truly important.
(b) People should strictly avoid working with wet clay.
(c) Society currently does not need specialized workers.
(d) Every single vocation is honorable and essential.

Ans :

- (d) Every single vocation is honorable and

- (b) Everyone should strive to have the exact same job.
- (c) Daily tasks express one's unique personal pride.
- (d) A person's job has nothing to do with personality.

Ans :

(c) Daily tasks express one's unique personal pride.

24. What do the workers uniquely do while they are working?

- (a) Cry and weep (b) Argue loudly
- (c) Sleep quietly (d) Hum and sing

Ans :

(d) Hum and sing

25. What does the humming and singing of the workers indicate?

- (a) Extreme sadness (b) Deep, pure anger
- (c) Genuine, true joy (d) Absolute boredom

Ans :

(c) Genuine, true joy

26. Assertion (A): Workers hum and sing during their daily tasks.

Reason (R): They find genuine contentment and enthusiasm in what they do.

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.
- (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation.
- (c) Statement A is entirely true, but Statement R is completely false.
- (d) Statement A is entirely false, but Statement R is completely true.

Ans :

(a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation.

27. Which of the following statements is correct regarding the workers?

- I. Daily tasks are a heavy, unbearable burden.
- II. Professions express people's unique talents.
- III. Workers find immense joy in what they do.

- (a) Only Statements I and II
- (b) Only Statements I and III
- (c) Only Statements II and III
- (d) All of the three statements

Ans :

(c) Only Statements II and III

28. Which specific poetic structure is utilized in this poem?

- (a) Strict sonnet (b) Blank verse
- (c) Free verse (d) Haiku poetry

Ans :

(c) Free verse

29. Why does the poet deliberately use varying line lengths?

- (a) To simply confuse readers
- (b) To just save blank space
- (c) To show pure, utter chaos
- (d) To mimic varied job rhythms

Ans :

(d) To mimic varied job rhythms

30. The poet starts and ends with, 'I hear _____ celebrating'.

- (a) Bharat (b) Europe
- (c) Nature (d) London

Ans :

(a) Bharat

31. Why does the poet carefully repeat the opening and closing lines?

- (a) To strictly follow the rules of ancient poetry.
- (b) Because the poet forgot the other written verses.
- (c) To emphasize continuous, collective harmony.
- (d) To show that India currently has very few workers.

Ans :

(c) To emphasize continuous, collective harmony.

32. Which literary tool brings the beauty of everyday work to life?

- (a) Sarcasm (b) Imagery
- (c) Irony (d) Satire

Ans :

(b) Imagery

33. The description of colorful weaves is a prime example of _____.

- (a) Auditory imagery (b) Visual imagery
- (c) Tactile imagery (d) Olfactory imagery

Ans :

(b) Visual imagery

Ans :

The workers hum and sing because they find genuine joy, contentment, and enthusiasm in what they do. Their singing indicates that their daily tasks are not heavy burdens, but rather joyful expressions of pride and fulfillment in their specialized, honorable skills.

11. How does the poet strategically use free verse to mirror the theme of the poem?

Ans :

The poet utilizes free verse, deliberately avoiding a strict, predictable rhyme scheme, and uses varying line lengths. This structure perfectly mimics the varied rhythms, diverse paces, and unique nature of the different jobs performed by the many workers across the nation.

12. What is the purpose of repeating “I hear Bharat celebrating” at the beginning and end?

Ans :

The poet carefully repeats this opening and closing line to emphasize the continuous, collective harmony of the nation. It frames the entire poem, highlighting that the diverse, everyday labor of all workers collectively constitutes a grand, never-ending celebration of the country.

13. How does the poet employ visual imagery to bring everyday labor to life?

Ans :

The poet effectively uses visual imagery, such as describing the vibrant, “colorful weaves” of the artisans and the careful casting of nets by the boatmen. These striking visual details help readers vividly picture the immense beauty and dedication in everyday labor.

14. Provide examples of auditory imagery used in the poem and explain its effect.

Ans :

Examples of auditory imagery include the “strumming of lutes” and the electrician “humming” at work. These sound-based details make the poem immersive, allowing readers to practically hear the joyful, rhythmic soundtrack of the nation’s diverse workforce engaged in their daily tasks.

15. Explain the metaphor “delicious singing” used in the context of the cook.

Ans :

The metaphor “delicious singing” cleverly compares the joy and beauty of a cook’s song

to the excellent, appetizing taste of the food they prepare. It beautifully merges the sensory experience of hearing a happy melody with the physical satisfaction of a nourishing meal.

16. How is personification used to give the abstract concept of vocation a human quality?

Ans :

The poet uses personification by referring to the “voice of their vocation.” By giving an abstract profession a human “voice,” the poet emphasizes that a person’s daily work actively speaks for them, expressing their unique identity, pride, and personal character to the world.

17. Why does the poet compare the functioning of society to a well-oiled machine?

Ans :

The poet compares society to a well-oiled machine to show that every single working individual is a necessary gear. We rely heavily on the specialized skills of others, and it is this interconnected dependency that keeps the entire nation running smoothly and harmoniously.

18. What message does the poem convey regarding the hierarchy of different professions?

Ans :

The poem completely rejects any hierarchy of professions. It conveys that no job is superior or inferior. Whether it is a farmer, a mason, or a shoemaker, every single vocation is absolutely essential, honorable, and highly deserving of our utmost respect.

19. How does the poem portray the core concept of the ‘dignity of labor’?

Ans :

The dignity of labor is portrayed by showing that all workers—from carpenters to potters—take immense pride in their specialized crafts. Their work is celebrated not as a sad obligation, but as a dignified, essential contribution to the nation’s collective well-being.

20. What ultimate conclusion does the observant citizen reach about the nation’s strength?

Ans :

The observant citizen concludes that the true strength of Bharat lies in its diverse workers. By respecting every specialized skill and recognizing that all vocations are vital, the nation achieves a beautiful, collective harmony that feels like a continuous, joyful celebration.

- iv. Find a word in the extract that means ‘stating as a fact strongly and publicly’.
- v. State True or False with a one-sentence reason:
The shoemakers’ work caters exclusively to professional athletes.

Ans :

- i. (b) the durability of the shoemakers’ work
- ii. (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
- iii. The shoemakers craft durable and reliable shoes that support people through all kinds of physical activities.
- iv. affirming
- v. False. The shoes are designed for everyday people engaging in normal activities and eventually returning home.

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“The voice of their vocation is the voice of their identity. I hear Bharat celebrating, the varied voices I hear!”

- i. What is the core message of the line “The voice of their vocation is the voice of their identity”?
 - (a) People should speak loudly at work.
 - (b) A person’s work defines who they are.
 - (c) Vocations erase individual personality.
 - (d) Only vocal jobs provide an identity.
- ii. Which of the following best captures the speaker’s perspective in this concluding stanza?
 - (a) A sense of patriotic pride in the diverse workforce.
 - (b) A feeling of regret over the loss of old traditions.
 - (c) An urge to standardize all professions in the country.
 - (d) A desire to silence the noisy streets of the nation.
- iii. Why does the poet repeat “I hear” at both the beginning and end of the poem?
- iv. Identify the figure of speech used in the repeated ‘v’ sound in “voice of their vocation”.
- v. Fill in the blank:
The poet ultimately equates the celebration of different vocations to the celebration of _____ itself.

Ans :

- i. (b) A person’s work defines who they are.

- ii. (a) A sense of patriotic pride in the diverse workforce.
- iii. The repetition creates a circular and unifying structure, showing that the celebration of Bharat’s workforce is constant and ongoing.
- iv. Alliteration
- v. Bharat



forms the foundation of our great nation, Bharat.

Thank you.

6. “The voice of their vocation is the voice of their identity.” Discuss how a person’s daily work shapes their personal pride and identity, using examples from the poem.

Ans :

The quote “The voice of their vocation is the voice of their identity” encapsulates the profound connection between a person and their craft. The poem suggests that daily tasks do more than earn a livelihood; they actively express an individual’s unique pride, talents, and character. For example, the carpenter’s mathematical precision and the potter’s immense dedication to shaping clay vessels reflect their inner discipline and cultural roots. When these workers hum and sing, it is an expression of genuine joy and contentment in who they are. Their profession is not an external burden but a core part of their being, proving that what we do with passion fundamentally shapes and announces our true identity to the world.

7. Compose a dialogue between the farmer and the electrician where they discuss the importance of their respective jobs and how they both help build the nation of Bharat.

Ans :

Farmer: It is a beautiful day! The soil is rich, and I am proud to grow the food that nourishes our entire nation.

Electrician: Indeed, my friend! While you provide the food that sustains our bodies, I work to bring light and energy into the homes you help feed.

Farmer: We truly are like gears in a well-oiled machine. My harvest wouldn’t reach the markets smoothly without good roads, and the people wouldn’t be able to cook my grains without your power.

Electrician: Exactly. When I hear my wires humming, it feels like I am singing a duet with the rhythmic thud of your plow. We both build Bharat in our own specialized, honorable ways. Every job truly matters!

8. Contrast the traditional view of labor as a “tedious burden” with the poet’s depiction of work as a “grand celebration.” How do the workers’ actions reflect this joy?

Ans :

Traditionally, physical labor is often stereotyped as a tedious, exhausting burden or a sad obligation. However, the poet completely subverts

this perspective by illustrating work as a “grand celebration.” Instead of depicting workers as tired or frustrated, the poem shows them finding immense enthusiasm and genuine joy in their specialized tasks. This joy is evident in their actions; they do not complain, but rather “hum and sing” while working. The metaphor of “delicious singing” reinforces this atmosphere of happiness. By highlighting this enthusiasm, the poet infers that when work is viewed as a dignified expression of identity rather than a mere chore, it becomes a source of profound personal fulfillment and national harmony.

9. Imagine you are the poet. Write a letter to a friend explaining what inspired you to write “I hear Bharat celebrating” and what you hope readers will learn from it.

Ans :

Dear Friend,

I hope you are well. I would like to share the inspiration behind my poem, “I hear Bharat celebrating.” While walking through busy streets, I realized how often we overlook the contribution of everyday workers.

I observed the mason laying bricks, the electrician humming at work, and the artisan creating beautiful crafts. It made me understand that our society functions like a well-oiled machine, completely dependent on these skilled individuals. To reflect this diversity, I chose free verse to capture the natural rhythm of their work.

My aim is to make readers appreciate the dignity of labor. I want them to understand that every profession is valuable and forms an essential part of our nation. Each worker is like a thread contributing to the rich and vibrant fabric of Bharat.

Warmly,

The Poet

10. Evaluate the theme of interdependence in the poem. How does the text prove that no individual can survive without the specialized skills of others?

Ans :

The theme of interdependence is central to the poem’s message. The text portrays Bharat as a collective harmony where no individual functions in isolation. The poet illustrates society as a “well-oiled machine,” highlighting that every vocation acts as a necessary gear. For example, a family cannot enjoy meals without the farmer who grew

the ingredients, nor can they safely live in a house without the foundational work of the mason and the mathematical precision of the carpenter. By showcasing these interconnected roles, the poem proves that our daily survival relies entirely on the specialized skills of others, emphasizing that mutual respect for all professions is absolutely crucial for the nation's continued progress.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"I hear Bharat celebrating, the varied vocations I hear;

Those of craftsperson, each one celebrating their craft, woven with colours and myriad hues."

- i. What does the phrase "woven with colours" suggest about the craft?
 - (a) It is vibrant and diverse.
 - (b) It involves dyeing fabrics.
 - (c) It uses multiple threads.
 - (d) It requires painted yarns.
- ii. Which of the following statements are true based on the extract?
 - I. The speaker perceives the nation as joyful.
 - II. Only craftspersons are celebrated here.
 - III. The nation's spirit is tied to its workers.
 - (a) Only I and II
 - (b) Only I and III
 - (c) Only II and III
 - (d) All I, II and III
- iii. What does the poet mean by "I hear Bharat celebrating"?
- iv. Identify the word from the extract that means 'countless or extremely great in number'.
- v. State True or False with a one-sentence reason:
The speaker is physically listening to a loud, singular festival happening across the country.

Ans :

- i. (a) It is vibrant and diverse.
- ii. (b) Only I and III
- iii. "I hear Bharat celebrating" is a metaphor for the poet sensing the collective pride and energy of people engaged in their various vocations across the nation.
- iv. myriad
- v. False, The phrase is a metaphor for the poet

sensing the collective, everyday energy and pride of people engaged in their respective vocations.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"The artisans with lutes, each hailing varied emotions and celebrating dreams, echoing in the streets."

- i. The phrase "hailing varied emotions" implies that the music played by the artisans:
 - (a) evokes diverse human feelings
 - (b) demands money from listeners
 - (c) interrupts the daily workflow
 - (d) controls the changing weather
- ii. **Assertion (A):** The artisans' music resonates throughout the public spaces.
Reason (R): They play the lute to express complex emotions and dreams.
 - (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
 - (c) A is true but R is false.
 - (d) A is false but R is true.
- iii. What does the image of music "echoing in the streets" convey about the artisans' celebration?
- iv. Which specific musical instrument is associated with the artisans in these lines?
- v. Fill in the blank:
The artisans are not just playing music; they are actively celebrating their _____.

Ans :

- i. (a) evokes diverse human feelings
- ii. (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
- iii. The image of music "echoing in the streets" conveys about the artisans' celebration that their joy and expression spreads widely, filling the entire public space with life and energy.
- iv. Lute (or lutes)
- v. dreams

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"The carpenters celebrating; they create anything out of wood with mathematical precision, The electricians humming; they get ready for work, work with cables and wires to brighten our lives,"

- i. The phrase “mathematical precision” indicates that the carpenters are:
 - (a) highly skilled and exact
 - (b) rigid and uncreative
 - (c) calculating their wages
 - (d) trained mathematicians
- ii. **Assertion (A):** The electricians are described as “humming” before they begin their work.
Reason (R): They are nervous about working with dangerous cables and wires.
 - (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
 - (c) A is true, but R is false.
 - (d) A is false, but R is true.
- iii. What does the word “brighten” suggest about the electricians’ contribution to people’s lives?
- iv. What sensory image is used to describe the joyful readiness of the electricians?
- v. State True or False with a one-sentence reason:
 The word “brighten” is used exclusively in a literal sense to mean providing electrical light.

Ans :

- i. (a) highly skilled and exact
 - ii. (c) A is true, but R is false.
 - iii. It suggests that beyond providing light literally, their work metaphorically makes people’s lives better and more convenient.
 - iv. humming (auditory imagery)
 - v. False, While it literally refers to providing light, it metaphorically means making people’s lives better and more convenient through their work.
4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :
- “The boatmen gathering their nets from the shore, sailing, and singing while at work, return to tell the tales of life at sea,”
- i. What does the act of returning to “tell the tales” imply about the boatmen’s profession?
 - (a) It is filled with rich experiences.
 - (b) It requires them to write books.
 - (c) It is entirely fictional and made-up.
 - (d) It leaves them exhausted and sad.
 - ii. Which combination of actions defines the boatmen’s daily cycle as depicted in the extract?

- I. Gathering nets
 - II. Sailing and singing
 - III. Selling the fish
 - IV. Sharing sea tales
- (a) I, II, and III
 - (b) I, II, and IV
 - (c) II, III, and IV
 - (d) I, III, and IV
- iii. What does the act of singing while sailing reveal about the boatmen’s attitude towards their work?
 - iv. Identify the exact phrase from the extract that indicates the primary location where the boatmen’s work takes place.
 - v. Fill in the blank:
 The boatmen naturally engage in _____ while they are out on the water busy with their occupation.

Ans :

- i. (a) It is filled with rich experiences.
 - ii. (b) I, II, and IV
 - iii. The boatmen enjoy their work and express their happiness through singing even while they are busy sailing.
 - iv. at sea (or “life at sea”)
 - v. singing
5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :
- “The shoemakers affirming the quality of their work, for the feet that walk, dance, run, jump, return home.”
- i. By listing “walk, dance, run, jump”, the poet is emphasizing:
 - (a) the various exercises people do
 - (b) the durability of the shoemakers’ work
 - (c) the exhaustion felt by the workers
 - (d) the expensive nature of the footwear
 - ii. **Assertion (A):** The shoemakers confidently affirm the quality of their craftsmanship.
Reason (R): Their shoes enable people to safely engage in vigorous physical activities.
 - (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
 - (c) A is true, but R is false.
 - (d) A is false, but R is true.
 - iii. What does the sequence “walk, dance, run, jump” tell us about the shoemakers’ craft?

The act of planting seeds is compared to an artist making careful “brushstrokes.” The mood here is one of patience and hopeful expectation, as the gardener waits for nature to bring their artwork to life.

Stanza 2

Blossoms bloom, a painted sight,
Dancing in the morning light.
Shades of green, red, and blue,
Nature’s artwork, ever new.

Word Meaning :

1. Blossoms - Flowers that have fully opened.
2. Artwork - A beautiful creation or piece of art.

Explanation :

The second stanza shifts the focus from the planting phase to the rewarding results. The seeds have finally grown into beautiful, open flowers of various colours like green, red, and blue. When the morning sunlight hits the garden, the flowers sway gently in the breeze, looking just like a magnificent, colourful painting.

The poet uses a literary device called personification by saying the flowers are “dancing” in the light, which makes the garden feel alive and joyful. The underlying theme here is that nature is the ultimate artist. Unlike a traditional painting hanging on a wall that never changes, “nature’s artwork” is dynamic, alive, and constantly renewing itself every season.

Stanza 3

Each plot, a canvas wide,
Where art and life coincide.
In the hands of those who till,
Gardens become paintings still.

Word Meaning :

1. Plot - A small piece of land used for planting vegetables or flowers.
2. Canvas - A strong, blank cloth that artists use for painting; here, it represents the empty garden plot.
3. Coincide - To happen at the same time or come together in perfect harmony.
4. Till - To prepare and work the soil for growing crops (like digging or plowing).
5. Still - Here, it acts as a pun. It means “even now,” but it also refers to a “still-life” painting (a type of art showing natural, stationary objects like flowers).

Explanation :

In the final stanza, the poet brings the whole idea together. Every patch of garden dirt is viewed as a large, blank canvas just waiting to be painted. In this special place, “art and life coincide,” meaning that human creativity and the living, growing force of nature perfectly blend together into one experience.

The stanza celebrates the hard work of the gardener. Through the physical effort of those who “till” or work the soil, a simple patch of dirt is magically transformed into a living masterpiece. The final line suggests that through the gardener’s hands, the garden literally becomes a beautiful “still-life” painting that can be admired by everyone.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

This poem consists of 3 stanzas of 4 lines each (12 lines total). The rhyme scheme is AABB.

1. **Metaphor:** A direct comparison between two unlike things without using “like” or “as.” For example, “Palette of earth, rich and deep” shows the garden soil is directly compared to a painter’s palette, suggesting the earth holds many colours and possibilities.
2. **Personification:** Giving human qualities to non-living things or nature. For example, “Where dreams of gardeners seep” shows dreams are given the ability to physically seep into the earth, as if they are liquid.
3. **Imagery:** Using descriptive words to create a picture in the reader’s mind. For example, “Shades of green, red, and blue” shows vivid colour imagery that helps the reader visualise the garden clearly.
4. **Alliteration:** Repetition of the same consonant sound at the beginning of nearby words. For example, “Brushstrokes of seeds, planted true” shows the repetition of the soft ‘p’ sound in “planted” creating a rhythmic flow.
5. **Symbolism:** Using an object or idea to represent something deeper. For example, “Each plot, a canvas wide” shows the garden plot symbolises a blank canvas, representing creativity and artistic potential in everyday life.
6. **Simile:** A comparison using “like” or “as.” For example, “Each plot, a canvas wide”—wait, this is a metaphor. The poem does “not contain a simile”, so this device is absent here.

CHAPTER 3

CANVAS OF SOIL

1. INTRODUCTION

The poem “Canvas of Soil” explores the profound connection between human creativity and the natural world by comparing the act of gardening to the fine art of painting. In this beautifully crafted piece, the setting transforms from a barren, measured plot of land into a vibrant, living masterpiece. The premise revolves around treating the earth as a rich palette and seeds as delicate brushstrokes. As the seasons shift to a rejuvenating spring, the poem captures the magical biological process of dormant seeds blooming into vivid hues, perfectly blending art and life in a peaceful natural sanctuary.

2. SUMMARY

The Earth as a Rich Foundation

The poem opens by describing the dark, fertile soil as a rich mixing board for colors that holds the deep hopes and visions of gardeners. The careful and precise planting of seeds into the ground is described as deliberate strokes of a paintbrush. These seeds rest safely hidden within the earth, patiently waiting for the spring season to arrive so they can finally burst forth and reveal their bright, lively colors to the world.

The Colorful Display of Nature

The second part of the poem focuses on the beautiful results that emerge when the flowers finally open. The fully grown blossoms create a highly visual scene, swaying gracefully as if they are dancing in the bright morning sunlight. The garden is filled with a variety of bold shades, including green, red, and blue. This vibrant physical display highlights nature’s ability to create fresh, ever-changing artwork that constantly renews itself.

The Garden as a Living Masterpiece

In the final stanza, every individual piece of garden land is viewed as a wide, open surface

ready for creation. It is within these earthy spaces that the beauty of artistic creation and the reality of living, growing plants perfectly combine. The dedicated physical labor of the people who dig, plant, and care for the soil brings about a beautiful transformation. Through their hard work, ordinary patches of dirt are completely turned into still, living paintings.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

Palette of earth, rich and deep,
Where dreams of gardeners seep.
Brushstrokes of seeds, planted true,
Awaiting spring’s vibrant hue.

Word Meaning :

1. Palette - A board used by an artist to mix colours; here, it refers to the rich soil of the earth.
2. Seep - To slowly soak into or flow through something.
3. Brushstrokes - The marks made by a paintbrush on a canvas; here, it means the neat lines of seeds planted in the soil.
4. True - Planted accurately, straight, and with purpose.
5. Vibrant - Bright, energetic, and full of life.
6. Hue - A shade or colour.

Explanation :

In this opening stanza, the poet introduces a beautiful comparison between gardening and painting. Literally, it describes how a gardener carefully plants seeds deep into the rich soil in neat, straight lines, eagerly waiting for the bright, colourful flowers to bloom when the spring season arrives.

On a deeper level, the stanza uses a metaphor to compare the earth to an artist’s “palette.” Just as an artist mixes colours to create art, the earth holds the hopes and “dreams” of the gardener.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

Check Your Understanding

I. Read the poem again and complete the summary of each stanza by filling in the blanks.

- The _____ is portrayed as a rich palette where gardeners' _____ a _____ s flourish in the form of _____, awaiting spring.
- The garden flowers _____ into a beautiful display of different b _____ m s, resembling a _____ by Mother Nature, in the light of morning.
- Each garden is likened to a wide _____ n _____ s, integrating art and _____. Through the efforts of gardeners, gardens transform into still-life _____.

Ans :

- The **earth** is portrayed as a rich palette where gardeners' **d r e a m s** flourish in the form of **seeds**, awaiting spring.
- The garden flowers **bloom** into a beautiful display of different **b l o s s o m s**, resembling a **painted sight** by Mother Nature, in the light of morning.
- Each garden is likened to a wide **c a n v a s**, integrating art and **life**. Through the efforts of gardeners, gardens transform into still-life **paintings**.

II. Select the appropriate title for each stanza from those given below. There are two extra titles.

- Nature's Work of Art
- Sweet-smelling Blossoms
- Gardens as Living Canvases
- Earth and Possibilities
- The Painter's Canvas

Ans :

Stanza 1 : 4. Earth and Possibilities

Stanza 2 : 1. Nature's Work of Art

Stanza 3 : 3. Gardens as Living Canvases

III. Match the poetic devices in Column 1 to the examples in Column 2. Discuss your responses in pairs. Then share the responses with your classmates and teacher.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	Imagery [mind pictures]	i.	appreciative
2.	Metaphor [comparison without use of 'like' or 'as']	ii.	AABB

3.	Rhyme Scheme	iii.	'Blossoms bloom'
4.	Tone [what the poet feels]	iv.	colours, brushstrokes, blossoms, shades of green
5.	Mood [what the reader feels]	v.	a gardener
6.	Speaker	vi.	garden as a painting, plot as canvas, seeds as brushstrokes
7.	Alliteration [same consonant sound]	vii.	joyful

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	Imagery [mind pictures]	iv.	colours, brushstrokes, blossoms, shades of green
2.	Metaphor [comparison without use of 'like' or 'as']	vi.	garden as a painting, plot as canvas, seeds as brushstrokes
3.	Rhyme Scheme	ii.	AABB
4.	Tone [what the poet feels]	i.	appreciative
5.	Mood [what the reader feels]	vii.	joyful
6.	Speaker	v.	a gardener
7.	Alliteration [same consonant sound]	iii.	'Blossoms bloom'

Critical Reflection

I. Read the given extracts from the poem and answer the questions that follow.

- Brushstrokes of seeds, planted true,
Awaiting spring's vibrant hue.
- The poet has used a metaphor in 'Brushstrokes of seeds'. Which option from those given below uses a metaphor?
 - Her mother's heart heard her heartfelt request with kindness.
 - She has a heart of gold.

7. **Oxymoron:** Placing two contradictory ideas together. For example, “Where art and life coincide” shows art (something created) and life (something natural) are presented as meeting together, which is a surprising and thought-provoking combination.
8. **Enjambment:** When a sentence or thought continues beyond a single line without a pause. For example, “In the hands of those who till,/Gardens become paintings still” shows the thought flows from one line to the next without stopping, creating a smooth, connected feeling.

5. MESSAGE

The poem “Canvas of Soil” gives a beautiful message about the strong bond between humans and nature. The poet explains that the earth is like a blank canvas, and planting seeds is like painting a lovely picture. When we work gently with nature, it rewards us with a colorful, living masterpiece. The poet inspires us to love the environment, protect its magic, and enjoy the peace that comes from growing a simple garden.

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Reflect and Respond

- I. **Work in pairs. Discuss what all you see in a garden. Think of the colours you see and where you see them. Share your responses with your teacher.**

Ans :

In a garden, I usually see a variety of plants, towering trees, soft patches of grass, and different types of insects like butterflies and bees. I see vibrant colours everywhere: the bright green of the leaves and grass, the striking red of roses on the bushes, the sunny yellow of sunflowers standing tall, and the deep brown of the soil beneath the plants. I also see the clear blue sky acting as a canopy over the garden.

- II. **Look at the picture of a garden and a painting given below. Speak about any similarities between the garden and the painting.**



Speak using the following :

1. Just as a garden _____, similarly, a painting _____
2. A garden and a painting, both _____.
3. _____ is common to both a garden and a painting.
4. Like a garden, a painting too _____.

Ans :

1. Just as a garden **is filled with vibrant colours and diverse elements of nature**, similarly, a painting **captures these vivid colours and elements on a canvas**.
2. A garden and a painting, both **are beautiful expressions of art that require patience and creativity to create**.
3. **A careful arrangement of colours, shades, and visual balance** is common to both a garden and a painting.
4. Like a garden, a painting too **brings joy, peace, and aesthetic pleasure to those who look at it**.

- III. **Let us acquaint ourselves with the meanings of palette, hue, and canvas.**

1. **Palette :** a thin oval or rectangular board or tablet that a painter holds and mixes colours on.
 2. **Hue :** shade of a colour
 3. **Canvas :** (here) painting
- Now, look at the painting given above and identify palette, canvas, and select a hue

Ans :

1. **Palette :** The board used by the painter to mix colours (not shown directly in the picture, but it is what artists use while painting).
2. **Canvas :** The painting shown in the picture itself.
3. **Hue :** For example, the **green** colour seen in the trees (any visible shade like green, blue, or brown can be a hue).

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Explain how the poem champions the “dignity of labor” through its vivid portrayal of various vocations.

Ans :

The poem strongly promotes the idea of the “dignity of labor” by giving importance to everyday jobs. It presents ordinary work as part of a larger national celebration, showing that all forms of labor are valuable.

Instead of focusing on rich or powerful people, the poet highlights the role of common workers like farmers, masons, carpenters, and shoemakers. These individuals take pride in their work, and their joy is reflected through their singing and enthusiasm. This challenges the belief that physical labor is inferior or burdensome.

In the end, the poem conveys that every job is honorable and essential. Whether it involves working with the land or building homes, each profession deserves equal respect and recognition in society.

2. Imagine you are the shoemaker mentioned in the poem. Write a diary entry expressing your feelings about your work and how it contributes to the nation’s journey.

Ans :

Dear Diary,
Today was another fulfilling day at the workshop. As I crafted sturdy leather boots and stitched comfortable sandals, I felt a deep sense of pride. People often overlook the humble shoemaker, but I know that my work is essential.

I support my fellow citizens in their daily lives, helping them move safely and comfortably. My work enables farmers to plow fields and masons to build homes without difficulty. The rhythmic tapping of my hammer feels like my contribution to the grand celebration of Bharat. My craft is my identity, and it brings me great joy to know that I help keep the nation moving.

3. Analyze how the poet uses free verse, varying line lengths, and sensory imagery to enhance the central theme of the poem.

Ans :

The poet masterfully employs free verse and varying line lengths to mirror the diverse rhythms and unique paces of the different jobs performed across Bharat. Instead of a predictable rhyme scheme, this organic structure mimics the natural, unforced flow of daily labor. Furthermore, the

poet utilizes rich sensory imagery to bring the work to life. Visual imagery, such as the “colorful weaves” of the artisan, and auditory imagery, like the electrician “humming” or the “strumming of lutes,” immerse the reader in the vibrant atmosphere. The metaphor of “delicious singing” perfectly bridges the sensory experiences. Together, these poetic devices transform the mundane aspects of daily work into a vivid, joyful celebration of collective national harmony.

4. The poem suggests that society functions like a well-oiled machine where every gear is necessary. Elaborate on this idea with reference to the specific workers mentioned in the text.

Ans :

The poem portrays society as a vast, well-oiled machine where every single working individual is an absolutely necessary gear. This concept of interdependence highlights that we rely heavily on the specialized skills of others to survive and thrive. For instance, the farmer provides our most basic need for food, while the mason builds the crucial foundations of our homes. The electrician brings light, and the carpenter shapes essential wooden items with mathematical precision. If any of these “gears” were missing, the entire societal machine would falter. By showcasing this interconnectedness, the poet emphasizes that no job is insignificant or replaceable. Every vocation plays a vital role in keeping the nation functioning smoothly and harmoniously.

5. As an observant citizen, write a short speech to be delivered at a school assembly about why we must respect all professions equally, drawing inspiration from the poem.

Ans :

Good morning everyone!
Today, I want to talk about the unsung heroes of our nation. As responsible citizens, we often admire famous personalities but overlook the silent and continuous efforts of everyday workers around us.

Think of the farmer who tills the land, the mason who builds our schools, and the cook who brings families together with food. Our society runs smoothly because of these skilled individuals. Their work is not a burden but a meaningful expression of their identity and dedication.

We must learn to respect every profession equally, as no job is small or unimportant. Let us always value and honor the dignity of labor that

- C. Her heart did a dance of joy on seeing the new doll.
D. She has a very kind heart.
- ii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The phrase 'planted true' is significant because it implies _____.
- iii. Why has the poet used the word 'hue' instead of 'colours' in the extract?
- iv. Complete the following analogy correctly with a word from the extract.
Summer : hot :: Spring : _____
- v. Read the Assertion (A) and the Reason (R) and select the option that is correctly suited.
Assertion (A) : Gardeners wait for Spring.
Reason (R) : Gardens are worth painting in Spring.
- A. Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
B. Both (A) and (R) are true but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
C. (A) is true but (R) is false.
D. (A) is false but (R) is true.

Ans :

- i. B. She has a heart of gold.
It directly compares her heart to gold without using 'like' or 'as'.
- ii. The phrase 'planted true' is significant because it implies that the seeds were planted with great precision, care, and hope so that they will successfully grow and bloom.
- iii. The poet has used the word 'hue' because it adds a refined, artistic touch that matches the metaphor of the garden being a painting. Furthermore, 'hue' perfectly rhymes with the word 'true' in the previous line, maintaining the AABB rhyme scheme of the poem.
- iv. vibrant
- v. B. Both (A) and (R) are true but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
Gardeners wait for spring because it is the season when seeds germinate and flowers bloom, not exclusively because the gardens are worth painting then, although both statements are true in the context of the poem's themes
2. Each plot, a canvas wide,
Where art and life coincide.
- i. What does 'Each plot' refer to in this extract?

- ii. Select which option imitates the rhyme scheme of the extract.
A. beautiful and clear
laughter and cheer
B. beautiful and clear
laughter and tears
- iii. Select the line from the extract that conveys that gardening blends aesthetic beauty with natural growth.
- iv. Complete the following sentence appropriately.
The plot is likened to a canvas suggesting that _____.
- v. Why has the poet most likely used the word 'wide' instead of 'long' in 'canvas wide'?

Ans :

- i. 'Each plot' refers to a specific, measured piece of earth or land in the garden that the gardener has prepared for planting seeds.
- ii. B. beautiful and clear / laughter and cheer
"wide" and "coincide" rhyme (AA). "clear" and "cheer" also rhyme (AA), whereas "clear" and "tears" do not
- iii. "Where art and life coincide."
- iv. The plot is likened to a canvas suggesting that just as an artist uses a blank canvas to create a masterpiece with paint, a gardener uses the empty earth to create a beautiful masterpiece with living plants and flowers.
- v. The poet most likely used the word 'wide' to rhyme with the word 'coincide' in the next line. Additionally, "wide" gives the reader a sense of an expansive, open space filled with endless creative possibilities.

II. Give reasons for the comparisons made by the poet in the poem.

1. A painter is compared to a gardener because _____.

Ans :

A painter is compared to a gardener because both use vision, patience, and creativity to transform a blank space into a beautiful piece of art.

2. A palette is like earth as _____.

Ans :

A palette is like earth as it serves as the foundational base where raw materials (colours for a painter, seeds for a gardener) are mixed and nurtured.

6. Interpret the phrase “art and life coincide” in the context of the poem.

Ans :

The phrase “art and life coincide” implies a harmonious union between human creativity (art) and natural biological growth (life). It shows that a beautiful garden is not solely nature’s doing, nor just human effort, but a perfect collaboration between the gardener’s vision and nature’s magic.

7. Why is plant growth described as a “biological miracle”?

Ans :

Plant growth is called a biological miracle because it captures the awe-inspiring process of life. A tiny, dormant seed placed deep in the earth transforms naturally over time into a blooming plant, showcasing the spectacular and magical capabilities of nature.

8. What role do patience and hope play for a gardener?

Ans :

Patience and hope are essential virtues for any gardener. After planting seeds “carefully and true,” the gardener cannot rush the process. They must patiently wait through the seasons, holding onto the hope that their efforts will eventually yield beautiful results.

9. Explain the significance of the season of Spring in the poem.

Ans :

Spring is highly significant because it is the season of reward and rejuvenation. It is the time when the gardener’s patience pays off, and the dormant seeds finally burst into life, filling the garden with vibrant hues and blooming flowers.

10. What does the poet suggest by calling gardens “paintings still”?

Ans :

By calling gardens “paintings still,” the poet suggests that the beauty of nature serves as a timeless, permanent form of art. Even though a garden is biologically alive and growing, its breathtaking visual perfection mirrors the enduring beauty of a classic painting.

11. Describe the visual imagery used by the poet.

Ans :

The poet uses rich visual imagery, or “word pictures,” to appeal to our senses. Descriptions

of striking contrasting colours like green, red, and blue, along with flowers “dancing in the morning light,” create a bright, lively mental picture for the reader.

12. What effect do the colours green, red, and blue create in the garden?

Ans :

These explicit colours create striking visual contrasts within the garden. They transform the once-empty brown soil into a vibrant, lively space, emphasizing the transformation from a blank canvas to a completed, colourful masterpiece full of deep, rich vibrance.

13. Explain the impact of the phrase “dancing in the morning light.”

Ans :

The phrase “dancing in the morning light.” personifies the plants, creating a mental picture of a bright, lively space full of movement and energy. It evokes feelings of absolute peace, happiness, and joy, highlighting the comforting and uplifting environment of a blooming garden.

14. Identify the rhyme scheme used in the poem and its overall effect.

Ans :

The poem follows an AABB rhyme scheme, using rhyming pairs like “wide/coincide” and “true/hue.” This specific scheme gives the poem a highly rhythmic and musical quality, making it engaging and pleasant to read while reinforcing its joyful tone.

15. How does the poet use alliteration in the poem?

Ans :

The poet uses alliteration in phrases like “Blossoms bloom,” repeating the consonant ‘b’ sound. This literary device enhances the musicality of the text, draws attention to the explosive beauty of the flowers, and adds a poetic rhythm to the garden’s description.

16. Describe the poet’s tone towards nature.

Ans :

The poet maintains a highly appreciative and respectful tone towards nature. Instead of viewing nature as a wild force to be tamed, the poet reveres it as an equal partner in the creative process, capable of profound biological miracles.

17. What is the ultimate mood evoked by the poem for the reader?

Pine green : I associate this colour with the deep foliage of a forest, and the needles of a Christmas tree in winter.

II. You have studied painting-related words like palette, brushstrokes, shades, hue, colours, and canvas. Now, read the following paragraph and discuss in pairs what the underlined painting-related words might mean. Discuss this way:

I think _____ means _____ because the passage talks about _____.

Example : I think portrait means a picture of someone's face because the passage talks about capturing a friend's features.

In the art studio, young painters eagerly approached their easels, each framing a canvas that they had to work on. The teacher encouraged them to experiment with a diverse tonal range, playing with shades and hues to bring their paintings to life. One student focused on a detailed portrait, capturing his friend's features, first with careful underpainting and then filling the final colours. Another student worked on a mural, depicting a Spring Day on the right wall of the classroom. The room continued to buzz with artistic energy.

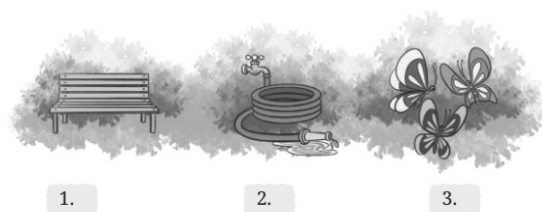
Ans :

1. I think **easels** means **wooden stands used to hold artwork** because the passage talks about young painters approaching them and each framing a canvas they had to work on.
2. I think **tonal range** means **the variety of different shades and colours** because the passage talks about playing with shades and hues to bring their paintings to life.
3. I think **underpainting** means **an initial layer of paint applied to the canvas** because the passage talks about doing this **first** carefully and **then** filling in the final colours.
4. I think **mural** means **a large painting applied directly to a wall** because the passage talks about depicting a Spring Day on the right wall of the classroom.

Listen and Respond

I. You will listen to a young girl describe her school garden. As you listen identify which of the following 1–3, she does not talk about. (Transcript

for teacher on page 264)



Ans :

2. Water pipe / hose

II. You will once again listen to the young girl. As you listen, circle the correct answer from the options given below.

	Statements	Options		
1.	The colour of flowers in the first row	white	red	pink
2.	The type of flowers in the second row	marigold	jasmine	rose
3.	Position of the type of the useful plants	left corners	right corners	left and right corners
4.	The number of potted evergreen plants	15	20	25
5.	The paint colour on the bricks bordering the garden	black and white	red and black	white and red
6.	Type of tree in the centre of the garden	neem	peepal	banyan
7.	Things created with waste material	dustbins	plant name boards	bird houses

Ans :

1. The colour of flowers in the first row – **pink**
2. The type of flowers in the second row – **rose**
3. Position of the useful plants – **left and right corners**
4. The number of potted evergreen plants – **20**

3. The brushstrokes are like seeds because _____.

Ans :

The brushstrokes are like seeds because just as an artist carefully applies individual brushstrokes to build a complete painting, a gardener carefully places individual seeds that will eventually grow into a complete garden.

4. A canvas is similar to a garden plot as _____.

Ans :

A canvas is similar to a garden plot as both represent an empty, waiting space that is meant to be filled with life, colour, and artistic expression.

III. Answer the following questions.

1. How does the metaphor 'Brushstrokes of seeds', enhance the understanding of gardening as an art form?

Ans :

This metaphor compares the physical act of planting seeds to a painter delicately applying paint with a brush. It elevates gardening from a simple physical chore to a thoughtful, creative process, showing that a gardener must have an artistic vision and place each seed with intention to create a beautiful final picture.

2. What can you infer about the poet's perspective on the relationship between nature and creativity from the following lines?

'Each plot, a canvas wide,/Where art and life coincide.'

Ans :

The poet believes that nature and human creativity are deeply interconnected and harmonious. By stating that art and life "coincide," the poet suggests that gardening is a beautiful collaboration where human artistic effort meets the natural, biological miracle of living, growing plants.

3. Do you think the imagery in the poem successfully paints a vivid picture in the reader's mind? If yes, why? If no, why not?

Ans :

Yes, the imagery in the poem is highly successful. By using evocative phrases like "rich and deep palette," "vibrant hue," "dancing in the morning light," and explicitly mentioning "shades of green, red, and blue," the poet allows the reader to mentally visualize the bright, lively colours and the gentle movements of a flourishing garden.

4. Support the view that the poet's mention of the colour yellow, besides red, blue and green, would have lent effectively to the imagery.

Ans :

Yellow is intrinsically linked to nature; it represents the warmth of the sun and the bright petals of common flowers like sunflowers and marigolds. Including yellow would have added an extra layer of warmth and brightness to the poem, making the imagery of "morning light" and "vibrant hues" feel even more radiant and complete.

5. Considering the line 'Gardens become paintings still', what can you interpret about the poet's view on the timelessness of nature's beauty?

Ans :

The poet views nature's beauty as enduring and eternal. The word "still" functions in two ways: it references a "still-life" painting (capturing a perfect, frozen moment of beauty), and it also implies that despite the changing seasons and the passage of time, the garden remains a constant, living work of art.

6. Justify the title of the poem, 'Canvas of Soil'.

Ans :

The title perfectly summarizes the central extended metaphor of the poem. Just as a canvas is the physical material on which a painter creates art, the soil is the physical medium on which the gardener creates their masterpiece. It beautifully captures the idea that the earth itself is the starting point for nature's artwork.

Vocabulary in Context

- I. The poet refers to the shades of green, red, and blue in the poem. Let us read some of the names of different shades of these colours.

Rusty red	Salmon	Scarlet	Crimson	Blood red	Vermilion
	saa-mun				vuh-mil-ion
Pine green	India green	Apple green	Jade	Olive	Pistachio
					pis-ta-sheo
Navy blue	Indigo	Cobalt blue	Denim	Sky blue	Ice blue

Now, Discuss in pairs, any two things that you can associate with these colours.

Ans :

Sky blue : I associate this colour with a clear summer sky on a warm day, and the shallow, clear waters of an ocean beach.

Select any TWO assignments. Any one from 1 or 2, and any one from 3 or 4

(1)

- Do research and collect information on any FIVE famous gardens of India, such as Amrit Udyan, Brindavan Gardens, and many others.
- Focus on history, design elements, and cultural significance.
- Prepare a short report and make a presentation.

(2)

- Explore various art forms (painting, sculpture) inspired by gardens. Select an art piece and analyse how the garden is represented.
- Create a visual or written response inspired by the garden.

(3)

Design your own garden

- Design a garden on paper or using digital tools.
- Incorporate elements and artistic inspirations learned from parts (1)/(2).
- Present your choices in design and artistic influences to the class.

(4)

Interview with a Gardener or Landscaping Expert

- Approach a local gardener or a landscaping expert for an interview.
- Prepare questions focussed on understanding the practical aspects of gardening/landscaping.
- Write a summary of your experience.

Ans :

Assignment 1 : Famous Gardens of India

1. Amrit Udyan (Rashtrapati Bhavan, Delhi)
Amrit Udyan is a beautiful Mughal-style garden located inside Rashtrapati Bhavan. It has well-maintained lawns, fountains, and a wide variety of seasonal flowers. It represents India's cultural heritage and is opened to the public during spring.
2. Brindavan Gardens (Mysuru)
Situated near the Krishnarajasagar Dam, Brindavan Gardens is famous for its musical fountain and symmetrical design. The garden looks especially attractive at night when the fountains are illuminated.
3. Shalimar Bagh (Srinagar)
Built by Mughal Emperor Jahangir, this garden is known for its terraced layout, flowing water channels, and scenic beauty. It reflects Persian-style garden architecture.

4. Lalbagh Botanical Garden (Bengaluru)
Lalbagh is known for its rich collection of plants and a famous glasshouse. It plays an important role in conservation, education, and botanical research.
5. Rock Garden (Chandigarh)
Created by Nek Chand, this unique garden is made from recycled materials like broken bangles, tiles, and stones. It highlights creativity and environmental awareness.

Assignment 3 : Design Your Own Garden

Design Description : My garden has a symmetrical layout with a central pathway leading to a small fountain. On both sides, there are flowerbeds with colourful flowers such as red roses, blue lilies, and yellow marigolds.

Features :

- Green lawns and shaded trees
- Benches for sitting and relaxing
- A small pond with lotus flowers
- Decorative lights and eco-friendly pots

Inspiration : The design is inspired by Mughal gardens (symmetry and water features) and modern eco-friendly gardens.

Conclusion : My garden is peaceful, colourful, and well-organised. It provides a relaxing space and shows the beauty of nature along with artistic design.

II. You must have read poems and songs about beauty of nature and different seasons in English and in your own language. Now, read and enjoy the poem given below.

Ans :

I have read many poems and songs about the beauty of nature and different seasons in both English and my own language. These poems describe the changing colours of seasons, the freshness of spring, the warmth of summer, the calmness of winter, and the beauty of rain. They help us imagine nature in a vivid and creative way.

Such poems make us appreciate the natural world around us and understand how each season has its own charm. They also inspire us to observe nature closely and enjoy its beauty in everyday life.

**SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL**



7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. How does the poet view the act of gardening?
 (a) Tedious labour (b) Creative process
 (c) Wasted effort (d) Physical burden

Ans :

(b) Creative process

2. The poem says gardening is not just a physical
 -----.

(a) burden (b) action
 (c) chore (d) sport

Ans :

(c) chore

3. What does the earth hold, according to the poem?
 (a) Hidden gold and silver
 (b) Motionless buried rocks
 (c) Vast and silent empty spaces
 (d) Wonderful possibilities

Ans :

(d) Wonderful possibilities

4. Which of the following statements is correct about the poem?
 (a) It portrays gardening as highly creative.
 (b) It views gardening as purely physical.
 (c) It describes the soil as mostly useless.
 (d) It claims gardening needs no human care.

Ans :

(a) It portrays gardening as highly creative.

5. Who brings the wonderful possibilities of the earth to life?
 (a) The weather (b) The gardener
 (c) The animals (d) The painters

Ans :

(b) The gardener

6. The poem captures the magic and beauty of
 -----.
 (a) painting (b) farming
 (c) gardening (d) dreaming

Ans :

(c) gardening

7. What is the most important feature of the poem?
 (a) Its short stanza

(b) Its tragic tone
 (c) Its basic rhythm
 (d) Its extended metaphor

Ans :

(d) Its extended metaphor

8. The poem compares the act of gardening to the art of -----.
 (a) painting (b) sculpting
 (c) sketching (d) designing

Ans :

(a) painting

9. What is the earth compared to in the poem?
 (a) A portrait (b) A palette
 (c) A picture (d) A pigment

Ans :

(b) A palette

10. What does the “palette” represent in the context of the poem?
 (a) A space where a painter cleans his brushes.
 (b) A plot of land covered completely in flowers.
 (c) A foundational base where all life truly begins.
 (d) A wooden board used only for making fences.

Ans :

(c) A foundational base where all life truly begins.

11. **Assertion (A):** The soil is called a rich palette.
Reason (R): It is the base where colours are mixed.

(a) Both A and R are false statements.
 (b) A is true, but R is false here.
 (c) A is false, but R is true here.
 (d) Both A and R are true statements.

Ans :

(d) Both A and R are true statements.

12. What acts as the foundational base in the garden?
 (a) The earth (b) The seeds
 (c) The plants (d) The water

Ans :

(a) The earth

13. What are seeds compared to in the poem?
 (a) Paint drips (b) Brushstrokes
 (c) Water drops (d) Bright hues

Ans :

(b) Brushstrokes

14. The gardener places the seeds into the ground

-----.

- (a) carelessly (b) randomly
(c) intentionally (d) accidentally

Ans :

(c) intentionally

15. Which of the following statements is correct regarding seeds?

- (a) They are compared to random paint drops.
(b) They are naturally blown by strong winds.
(c) They are viewed as the canvas of soil.
(d) They are the brushstrokes of the garden.

Ans :

(d) They are the brushstrokes of the garden.

16. What is each measured plot of land compared to?

- (a) Blank canvas (b) Paint palette
(c) Empty bucket (d) Clean window

Ans :

(a) Blank canvas

17. What does the gardener create in this empty space?

- (a) A wooden fence (b) A living masterpiece
(c) A stone structure (d) A small building

Ans :

(b) A living masterpiece

18. A major theme in the poem is the relationship between nature and -----.

- (a) sunny skies (b) wild animals
(c) human effort (d) spring rain

Ans :

(c) human effort

19. What does the phrase “art and life coincide” imply?

- (a) Gardening is just an illusion of natural life.
(b) Art is generally much superior to natural life.
(c) Nature operates entirely independent of any human art.
(d) Human creativity and biological growth unite in harmony.

Ans :

(d) Human creativity and biological growth unite in harmony.

20. What kind of miracle is plant growth described as?

- (a) Biological (b) Mechanical
(c) Artificial (d) Accidental

Ans :

(a) Biological

21. The poem teaches the value of hope and

-----.

- (a) urgency (b) speed
(c) patience (d) tension

Ans :

(c) patience

22. How do gardeners plant their seeds?

- (a) Quick and fast (b) Deep and low
(c) High and dry (d) Carefully and true

Ans :

(d) Carefully and true

23. **Assertion (A):** Gardeners must wait for the season of Spring.

Reason (R): The seeds need time to bloom into vibrant hues.

- (a) Both A and R are true statements.
(b) Both A and R are false statements.
(c) A is true, but R is false here.
(d) A is false, but R is true here.

Ans :

(a) Both A and R are true statements.

24. Which season brings the garden's bloom?

- (a) Winter (b) Spring
(c) Autumn (d) Summer

Ans :

(b) Spring

25. What do the hard efforts of gardeners eventually bloom into?

- (a) Faded colours (b) Wilting leaves
(c) Vibrant hues (d) Empty spaces

Ans :

(c) Vibrant hues

26. What does the poet suggest by calling gardens “paintings still”?

- (a) The beauty of nature serves as permanent art.
(b) The garden lacks any true movement or life.

5. The paint colour on the bricks – **white and red**
6. Type of tree in the centre – **banyan**
7. Things created with waste material – **dustbins**

Speaking Activity

- I. People wish to have a garden at home. Some like a **flower garden** and some a **vegetable garden**. Think and note some advantages of both these types, as gardens for homes.

Ans :

1. **Advantages of a Flower Garden :** A flower garden significantly enhances the aesthetic beauty and curb appeal of a home. It provides pleasant fragrances, attracts helpful pollinators like butterflies and bees, and creates a serene, colourful environment that is excellent for mental relaxation.
2. **Advantages of a Vegetable Garden :** A vegetable garden provides fresh, organic, and nutritious food right at home. It helps a family save money on grocery bills, ensures that the food consumed is free of harmful chemical pesticides, and offers a great sense of physical accomplishment when harvesting crops.

- II. **Would you like to have a flower garden or a vegetable garden at home? Why?**

Take turns with your partner and speak your points aloud, one by one, by using the given sentence prompts to express your preference, with reasons.

- I prefer _____ to _____ because ...
- For me , it is a _____ instead of a _____ due to ...
- If I had a choice I'd rather have a _____ than a _____ as ...
- I would prefer _____ rather than _____ since ...

Ans :

- I prefer a **vegetable garden** to a **flower garden** because **I love the idea of cooking meals with fresh ingredients I grew with my own hands.**
- For me, it is a **flower garden** instead of a **vegetable garden** due to **the beautiful visual contrast of red and yellow flowers against green leaves, which brightens up the whole house.**
- If I had a choice I'd rather have a **vegetable garden** than a **flower garden** as **it is highly rewarding and practical to grow organic food for my family.**

- I would prefer a **flower garden** rather than a **vegetable garden** since **I enjoy watching butterflies visit the blossoms while I relax in the evenings.**

Writing Task

- I. **Write a descriptive piece of two to three paragraphs describing the details and colours in the garden you have visited.**

- Focus on how different shades of blue, red, and green interact, create contrast, and bring the garden to life.
- Pay attention to details like the texture of petals, the varying greens of leaves, and the way light affects the colours.

Ans :

Last weekend, I visited the botanical garden near my house, and I was immediately captivated by the sheer explosion of life and colour. As I walked through the iron gates, I was greeted by a massive canopy of pine green and apple green leaves. The varying greens created a lush backdrop that made the brighter colours pop. Against this leafy wall stood rows of rose bushes. The velvety texture of the scarlet and crimson petals was so soft they looked like spun silk. When placed next to the bright green leaves, the striking red created a bold, beautiful contrast that instantly drew the eye.

As I moved deeper into the garden, the colours began to shift. A small, clear pond sat in the center, reflecting the sky blue of the morning canopy above. Around the edges of the water grew delicate flowers in shades of indigo and cobalt blue. As the morning sunlight filtered through the tall trees, it danced on the surface of the pond and illuminated the blue petals, making them look almost translucent. The way the warm, golden light interacted with the cool blues and rich reds made the entire garden feel like a living, breathing painting, constantly shifting and changing with the sun.

Learning Beyond the Text

- I. **Mini-Project**

Objective : Explore the multifaceted world of gardens—their design, cultural significance, artistic inspiration, and the art of gardening itself.

Duration : This project can span over a few weeks, allowing students adequate time for research and creative processes.

39. Another rhyming pair mentioned in the text is “true” and _____.
 (a) blue (b) new
 (c) dew (d) hue

Ans :

(d) hue

40. What effect does the AABB rhyme scheme have on the poem?
 (a) It gives the poem a rhythmic, musical quality.
 (b) It makes the poem sound extremely disjointed today.
 (c) It forces the reader to pause at every line.
 (d) It entirely removes the emotional impact of words.

Ans :

(a) It gives the poem a rhythmic, musical quality.

41. The phrase “Blossoms bloom” is an example of _____.
 (a) metaphor (b) alliteration
 (c) simile (d) hyperbole

Ans :

(b) alliteration

42. How is the overall tone of the poet described?
 (a) Melancholic, sorrowful
 (b) Resentful, belligerent
 (c) Appreciative, respectful
 (d) Sarcastic, mocking

Ans :

(c) Appreciative, respectful

43. Toward what is the poet respectful?
 (a) Humanity (b) Painters
 (c) Artworks (d) Nature

Ans :

(d) Nature

44. What kind of mood does the poem leave the reader in?
 (a) Joyful, inspired (b) Tired, sleepy
 (c) Anxious, worried (d) Bored, indifferent

Ans :

(a) Joyful, inspired

45. The poet leaves the reader feeling very joyful and _____.
 (a) confused (b) inspired
 (c) defeated (d) exhausted

Ans :

(b) inspired

Short Answer Type Questions

1. What is the significance of the title “Canvas of Soil”?

Ans :

The title brilliantly encapsulates the poem’s central extended metaphor by comparing the earth to a blank canvas. It suggests that just as a painter uses a canvas to create art, a gardener intentionally uses the soil to cultivate a beautiful, living masterpiece.

2. How does the poet change the perception of gardening from a physical chore?

Ans :

The poet shifts the perspective of gardening from a tedious, physical burden to a highly creative process. Instead of viewing it as mere manual labour, the poem elevates gardening to a magical art form that brings the earth’s wonderful hidden possibilities to life.

3. What does the “palette” represent in the context of the poem?

Ans :

In the poem, the palette represents the earth or the soil. It is described as a foundational base, rich with potential, where all biological life truly begins and where the vivid colours of nature are beautifully mixed by the gardener.

4. Explain the metaphor of seeds acting as “brushstrokes.”

Ans :

The poet compares seeds to a painter’s brushstrokes to highlight the intentionality of gardening. Just as an artist carefully applies strokes of paint to create an image, the gardener deliberately places seeds into the ground to design a vibrant, living garden.

5. What does the “blank canvas” refer to, and how is it transformed?

Ans :

The “blank canvas” refers to a measured, empty plot of land. Through the intentional planting of seeds and the careful nurturing of the soil, the gardener transforms this bare, lifeless space into a colourful, dynamic, and living masterpiece.

- (c) Gardening requires standing perfectly immobile at all times.
(d) The flowers are painted by skilled human hands.

Ans :

(a) The beauty of nature serves as permanent art.

27. What word does the poet use to describe the beauty of nature?

- (a) Temporary (b) Timeless
(c) Fleeting (d) Passing

Ans :

(b) Timeless

28. The poet uses rich, visual _____ to bring the poem to life.

- (a) rhyming (b) stanzas
(c) symbols (d) imagery

Ans :

(d) imagery

29. What does visual imagery consist of?

- (a) Word pictures (b) Sound effects
(c) Hidden themes (d) Rhyme schemes

Ans :

(a) Word pictures

30. To what does the poem's imagery appeal?

- (a) Our logic (b) Our senses
(c) Our memory (d) Our reason

Ans :

(b) Our senses

31. What colours are explicitly paired with green?

- (a) Black, white (b) Pink, grey
(c) Gold, silver (d) Red, blue

Ans :

(d) Red, blue

32. Which of the following statements is correct regarding the garden's colours?

- (a) They show striking contrasts in the vibrant garden.
(b) They are described as dull and very muted.
(c) They clash terribly with the bright morning sun.
(d) They lack any real vibrance or deep color.

Ans :

(a) They show striking contrasts in the vibrant garden.

33. What is described as "dancing" in the morning light?

- (a) The trees (b) The garden
(c) The seeds (d) The paint

Ans :

(b) The garden

34. What mental picture does the phrase "dancing in the morning light" create?

- (a) A gloomy, sad place covered completely in shadow.
(b) A perfectly still room filled with classical paintings.
(c) A bright, lively space that brings absolute peace.
(d) A dark, stormy evening destroying the weak plants.

Ans :

(c) A bright, lively space that brings absolute peace.

35. The colourful space of the garden brings peace and _____.

- (a) fear (b) pain
(c) rest (d) joy

Ans :

(d) joy

36. **Assertion (A):** The poem's visual imagery brings joy to the reader.

Reason (R): It describes a lively and colourful space.

- (a) Both A and R are true statements.
(b) Both A and R are false statements.
(c) A is true, but R is false here.
(d) A is false, but R is true here.

Ans :

(a) Both A and R are true statements.

37. What rhyme scheme does the poem follow?

- (a) ABAB (b) AABB
(c) ABBA (d) ABCB

Ans :

(b) AABB

38. What pairs are used as an example of rhyme?

- (a) blue/true (b) green/seen
(c) wide/coincide (d) light/bright

Ans :

(c) wide/coincide

Ans :

The poem leaves the reader in a joyful and inspired mood. Through its bright imagery, rhythmic flow, and themes of hope and creativity, it uplifts the spirit and encourages an appreciation for the simple, peaceful beauty of the natural world.

18. How does a gardener place seeds, and why is this important?

Ans :

The gardener places seeds “carefully and true.” This intentional and precise action is important because it shows that gardening is not random or careless; it is a calculated, artistic endeavor aimed at creating a well-designed living masterpiece.

19. What does the earth hold before the gardener begins their work?

Ans :

Before the gardener begins, the earth holds “wonderful possibilities” and hidden potential. It is a blank canvas and a rich palette waiting for human effort to unlock its magic and transform its dormant state into vibrant life.

20. What emotions does the colourful space of the garden bring to a person?

Ans :

The vibrant, colourful space of the garden brings profound peace and joy. Surrounded by timeless beauty and nature dancing in the sunlight, an individual finds a restful sanctuary that calms the mind and inspires the soul.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Discuss the extended metaphor used throughout the poem. How does the poet elevate the simple act of gardening to the status of high art?

Ans :

In “Canvas of Soil,” the poet uses a brilliant extended metaphor to compare gardening to the fine art of painting. The earth is no longer just dirt; it is elevated to a “rich palette,” serving as the foundational base for creation. A measured plot of land becomes a “blank canvas” awaiting transformation. The seeds are not merely biological entities but intentional “brushstrokes” placed carefully by the gardener. Through this comparison, the poet shifts the perception of gardening from a tedious, physical chore to a highly intentional, creative process. By framing the blooming garden as a “living masterpiece” and

“paintings still,” the poet elevates the everyday act of planting into a timeless expression of high art.

2. Imagine you are a gardener who has just planted seeds in a barren plot of land. Write a diary entry expressing your hopes, the patience required, and your vision for the spring season.

Ans :

Dear Diary,

Today, I stood before a barren plot of land, my blank canvas. Planting these tiny seeds was not merely physical labour; it felt like placing delicate brushstrokes onto the earth’s rich palette. I placed each seed carefully and true, dreaming of the wonderful possibilities hidden within the dark soil. I know I cannot rush this biological miracle.

Nature demands immense patience and unyielding hope. I must wait for the cold months to pass and for Spring to finally arrive. When it does, I know my quiet efforts will burst into vibrant hues of green, red, and blue. Until then, I will nurture this space, trusting that my vision and nature’s magic will soon coincide.

3. “A garden is a beautiful collaboration between vision and nature.” Elaborate on this statement based on the poem. What does it teach us about the value of human effort?

Ans :

The poem beautifully establishes that a garden cannot exist through nature alone, nor through human effort alone; it requires a harmonious collaboration. The phrase “art and life coincide” perfectly captures this partnership. The gardener provides the vision, intention, and effort by placing seeds like careful brushstrokes on a blank canvas.

However, it is nature that performs the “biological miracle,” taking those seeds and growing them into vibrant hues of green, red, and blue. This teaches us that human effort is essential to unlock the “wonderful possibilities” of the earth. When we apply patience, dedication, and creativity to the natural world, our hard work blooms into a living masterpiece, rewarding us with peace and joy.

4. You are a student addressing the school assembly on the topic ‘The Lessons Nature Teaches Us.’ Using the poem “Canvas of Soil” as a reference, write a speech highlighting the values of patience, hope, and creativity.

Ans :

Respected Principal, Teachers, and my dear friends,

Today, I want to talk about 'The Lessons Nature Teaches Us,' inspired by the poem "Canvas of Soil." Nature acts as our greatest teacher, and a garden becomes its classroom, offering valuable life lessons through simple processes.

The poem presents gardening as a creative act, where a blank canvas of soil is turned into a beautiful, living masterpiece. However, this change does not happen instantly. It requires careful effort, as seeds must be planted thoughtfully and nurtured with patience.

The waiting period until spring teaches us important values like patience and hope. Just like a gardener, we must trust the process and believe that our hard work will eventually lead to success and growth.

Thank you.

5. Write a dialogue between a Painter and a Gardener where they realize their creative processes are incredibly similar, referencing the metaphors from the poem.

Ans :

Painter: I spent hours today staring at a blank canvas, mixing colours on my palette. Creating art takes so much vision!

Gardener: I understand completely. My empty plot of land is my blank canvas, and the rich earth is my palette.

Painter: Really? I never thought of gardening as art. I use brushstrokes to create life on a page.

Gardener: And I use seeds as my brushstrokes! I place them carefully and true. It is not just a physical chore; it is a creative process.

Painter: That is fascinating. We both need patience to see the final result.

Gardener: Exactly. While your paintings dry into timeless art, my efforts bloom in Spring, creating a living masterpiece where art and life coincide.

6. Analyze the poet's use of literary devices and imagery in "Canvas of Soil" and explain how they contribute to the joyful and inspired mood of the poem.

Ans :

The poet employs a masterful blend of literary devices to evoke a joyful and inspired mood. Visual imagery, or "word pictures," is used extensively to appeal to our senses. Vivid descriptions of striking contrasting colours—green, red, and

blue—transform the reader's mental landscape into a vibrant garden. Personification in the phrase "dancing in the morning light" breathes life into the plants, creating an atmosphere of lively peace and absolute joy. Furthermore, the rhythmic AABB rhyme scheme (using pairs like wide/coincide, true/hue) and the alliteration in "blossoms bloom" give the poem a musical, uplifting cadence. Together, these devices make the reader deeply appreciate the timeless beauty of nature, leaving them feeling thoroughly inspired.

7. The poem highlights that true beauty requires patience and intentional effort. How can this philosophy from the garden be applied to our daily lives and personal goals?

Ans :

The philosophy of the garden is deeply relevant to our personal lives. In the poem, a gardener doesn't just scatter seeds carelessly; they plant them "carefully and true," treating the earth as a rich palette. Similarly, when pursuing our personal goals, we must be intentional and focused, laying a strong foundation.

Furthermore, the gardener cannot force a seed to bloom instantly; they must wait for Spring. This teaches us that true success and beauty in life require immense patience and hope. We cannot expect instant results from our efforts. If we consistently nurture our dreams with dedication and give them the time they need to grow, our hard work will eventually bloom into a vibrant, rewarding reality.

8. Imagine you live in a noisy, concrete city. Write a letter to your friend describing a recent visit to a blooming botanical garden, using the imagery inspired by the poem to express the peace it brought you.

Ans :

Dear Rahul,

I hope you are doing well. Living in this noisy, grey city has been exhausting lately, but yesterday I visited a blooming botanical garden that completely rejuvenated me. It was like stepping into a living masterpiece! The gardeners had clearly used the earth as a rich palette. Everywhere I looked, I saw striking contrasts of vibrant hues—deep greens paired with brilliant reds and blues. The flowers were literally dancing in the morning light, swaying gently in the breeze. It felt as though art and life had coincided perfectly in that space. Escaping the concrete for

this colourful sanctuary brought me profound joy and absolute peace. You must join me next time!
Warmly,
Raghuveer Singh

9. Critically evaluate the oxymoron-like phrase “paintings still” used to describe a garden. How can a dynamic, biological miracle be considered a permanent, still work of art?

Ans :

The phrase “paintings still” is a brilliant, thought-provoking paradox used by the poet. At first glance, a garden is entirely dynamic—it is a “biological miracle” full of growing seeds, shifting seasons, and flowers “dancing in the morning light.” It is constantly changing.

However, by calling it a “painting still,” the poet is emphasizing the timeless and enduring nature of its beauty. Just as a classic painting captures a perfect, permanent moment of aesthetic brilliance, a blooming garden stands as a permanent testament to the collaboration between human vision and nature. The stillness does not refer to a lack of biological life, but rather to the enduring, undisturbed peace and visual perfection the garden offers to the observer.

10. “The soil is a rich palette holding wonderful possibilities.” Based on your reading of the poem, discuss how the poet portrays the earth not as a lifeless entity, but as a dynamic foundation for creation.

Ans :

In the poem, the poet entirely rejects the notion that soil is merely dirt or a lifeless, empty space. Instead, it is beautifully characterized as a “rich palette” and a foundational base teeming with “wonderful possibilities.” Just as an artist’s palette holds all the raw colours needed to paint a masterpiece, the earth holds the raw, biological potential to create life. It is the vital starting point where the magic begins.

By describing the measured plot of land as a “blank canvas,” the poet highlights that the earth is eagerly waiting to collaborate with human effort. With the intentional addition of seeds (brushstrokes), this dynamic foundation awakens, proving that the earth is a powerful, living partner in creating timeless beauty.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Palette of earth, rich and deep,
Where dreams of gardeners seep.
Brushstrokes of seeds, planted true,
Awaiting spring’s vibrant hue.”

- What does the phrase “dreams of gardeners seep” primarily suggest?
 - Water soaking dry dirt
 - Hopes taking firm root
 - Plants slowly dying out
 - Seeds being washed away
- Assertion (A):** The poet compares the earth to a rich palette.
Reason (R): The soil holds diverse elements waiting to bloom into beautiful colors.
 - (A) is true and (R) perfectly explains (A).
 - (A) is true but (R) does not explain (A).
 - (A) is undeniably true while (R) is false.
 - (A) is completely false while (R) is true.
- What are the seeds described as doing in this stanza?
- Identify the contextual vocabulary word in the stanza that means a specific shade or color.
- State True or False with a brief reason:
The seeds are described as blooming immediately in this stanza.

Ans :

- (b) Hopes taking firm root
- (a) (A) is true and (R) perfectly explains (A).
- The seeds are planted true and are awaiting spring’s vibrant colors to bloom.
- hue
- False, because they are described as “awaiting” the future arrival of spring’s colors.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Blossoms bloom, a painted sight,
Dancing in the morning light.
Shades of green, red, and blue,
Nature’s artwork, ever new.”

- What is implied by describing nature’s artwork as “ever new”?
 - Constantly changing natural beauty
 - Recently purchased artificial paints
 - Unfamiliar and strange garden layouts
 - Beautiful artworks fading rather quickly

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



- ii. Which of the following combinations best reflects the speaker's perspective of the garden?
- I. Nature is static and unchanging.
 - II. The garden is a dynamic, living painting.
 - III. Morning light dulls the flower colors.
 - IV. The flora exhibits lively, graceful movement.
- (a) Statements I and III
 - (b) Statements II and IV
 - (c) Statements I and IV
 - (d) Statements II and III
- iii. What colours does the poet use to describe nature's artwork in this stanza?
- iv. Identify the figure of speech used in the phrase "Dancing in the morning light."
- v. Fill in the blank:
The poetic repetition of the 'b' sound in "Blossoms bloom" is an example of -----.

Ans :

- i. (a) Constantly changing natural beauty
- ii. (b) Statements II and IV
- iii. The poet uses shades of green, red and blue to describe nature's artwork.
- iv. Personification
- v. alliteration

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Each plot, a canvas wide,
Where art and life coincide.
In the hands of those who till,
Gardens become paintings still."

- i. What is the underlying meaning of describing each plot as a "canvas wide"?
 - (a) The soil is completely barren.
 - (b) The ground offers limitless potential.
 - (c) The garden lacks physical boundaries.
 - (d) The area is covered with fabric.
- ii. Which statement best describes the speaker's view of the gardeners in these lines?
 - (a) They are merely agricultural workers.
 - (b) They act as creators of living art.
 - (c) They destroy nature's true beauty.
 - (d) They paint blank canvases indoors.
- iii. What does the poet mean by saying "art and life coincide" in a garden?
- iv. What contextual vocabulary word is used in the stanza to mean 'to cultivate or work the soil'?

- v. State True or False with a 1-sentence reason:
The poet views gardening strictly as a mechanical and physical chore.

Ans :

- i. (b) The ground offers limitless potential.
- ii. (b) They act as creators of living art.
- iii. The poet means that gardening is not just a physical activity but also a creative art form where nature and human effort beautifully merge together.
- iv. till
- v. False, because the poet elevates gardening to the level of creating beautiful art (art and life coincide).



CHAPTER 4

I CANNOT REMEMBER MY MOTHER

1. INTRODUCTION

Written by the renowned poet Rabindranath Tagore, “I Cannot Remember My Mother” is a deeply personal and nostalgic poem. The premise revolves around a child who lost his mother at a very tender age, leaving him unable to recall her physical face. Instead of a visual memory, the poet connects with his mother through sensory experiences in his everyday life. The setting beautifully shifts from his playroom, where he hears a familiar lullaby, to the autumn air filled with the scent of shiuli flowers, and finally to his bedroom window, where he looks up at the vast blue sky.

2. SUMMARY

A Lingering Tune During Playtime

The poet begins by admitting that he does not have a clear, conscious memory of his mother. However, while he is busy playing with his toys, he often feels her invisible presence around him. He experiences this connection through a familiar, gentle melody that seems to float right above his playthings. This music is the exact same song his mother used to hum softly to him when he was a little baby, trying to put him to rest while gently rocking his cradle.

The Fragrance of the Autumn Morning

The poet once again states that he cannot distinctly picture his mother, but his sense of smell powerfully brings her memory back to him. During the early mornings of the autumn season, the sweet and distinct fragrance of the ‘shiuli’ flowers travels through the morning air. This familiar scent instantly reminds the poet of the temple prayers and morning religious services his mother used to attend. To him, the holy fragrance of those temple flowers and the comforting scent of his own mother are entirely one and the same.

A Comforting Gaze in the Sky

Finally, the poet shares another deeply personal moment when he feels closely connected to his lost mother. Whenever he sits by his bedroom window and stares far away into the vast, clear blue sky, he experiences a profound sense of peace. In the absolute quiet and vastness of the sky above, he feels as though his mother is silently looking down at his face. Her gentle, loving, and protective gaze seems to be spread across the entire heavens, quietly watching over him from above.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

I cannot remember my mother
only sometimes in the midst of my play
a tune seems to hover over my playthings,
the tune of some song that she used to
hum while rocking my cradle.

Word Meaning :

1. Midst - in the middle of
2. Hover - to linger or remain in the air near a place
3. Hum - to sing a tune with your lips closed
4. Cradle - a small bed for a baby that can be rocked from side to side

Explanation :

The poem opens with the poet confessing that he does not have a clear, conscious memory of what his mother looked like, as she passed away when he was very young. However, he has not completely lost her. While he is deeply engrossed in playing with his toys, he suddenly feels a strange, comforting presence.

He feels as though a sweet, invisible tune is lingering over his playthings. This tune is the very same lullaby that his mother used to sing softly to him when he was just an infant being rocked to sleep in his cradle.

III. Match the words given in Column 1 with their meanings in Column 2.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	hover	i.	sing a tune with your lips closed
2.	hum	ii.	a type of flower (coral jasmine)
3.	cradle	iii.	look steadily for a long time
4.	shiuli	iv.	rituals conducted in a temple
5.	morning service	v.	linger or remain near a place
6.	gaze	vi.	a small bed for a baby

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	hover	v.	linger or remain near a place
2.	hum	i.	sing a tune with your lips closed
3.	cradle	vi.	a small bed for a baby
4.	shiuli	ii.	a type of flower (coral jasmine)
5.	morning service	iv.	rituals conducted in a temple
6.	gaze	iii.	look steadily for a long time

Check Your Understanding

I. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words.

Stanza 1

- The poet remembers his mother while he _____.
- The poet remembers the _____ but not the _____.
Setting : _____ (outdoor/indoor)

Ans :

- The poet remembers his mother while he **sits in the garden**.
- The poet remembers the **garden** but not the **day**.
Setting : **outdoor**

Stanza 2

- The poet remembers his mother in the _____ season.
- The poet remembers his mother by the smell of _____.
Setting : _____ (outdoor/indoor)

Ans :

- The poet remembers his mother in the **spring** season.
- The poet remembers his mother by the smell of **flowers**.
Setting : **outdoor**

Stanza 3

- The poet feels that his mother _____ at him from the _____.
Setting : _____ (outdoor/indoor)

Ans :

- The poet feels that his mother **smiles** at him from the **garden**.
Setting : **outdoor**

II. The senses of olfactory (smell), auditory (hearing), and visual (sight), are three of the five basic senses in humans. Give examples of references to senses from the poem. Complete the table given below.

Stanza	Lines from the Poem	Senses
1.	----- ----- ----- -----	
3.	...the tune of some song that she used to hum while rocking my cradle	
2.	----- ----- ----- -----	olfactory

Ans :

Stanza	Lines from the Poem	Senses
1.	"a tune seems to hover over my playthings, / the tune of some song that she used to hum"	auditory
3.	"I send my eyes into the blue of the distant sky, / I feel that the stillness of my mother's gaze on my face"	visual
2.	"the smell of the shiuli flowers floats in the air / the scent of the morning service in the temple"	olfactory

compared to the mother's scent, using "as" to draw the connection.

4. **Metaphor:** A direct comparison without using "like" or "as." For example, "my mother's gaze on my face has spread all over the sky" shows the mother's loving gaze is directly compared to the vast open sky, suggesting her love is endless and all-surrounding.
5. **Personification:** Giving human qualities to non-living things. For example, "a tune seems to hover over my playthings" shows the tune is given the human-like ability to hover or float, as if it is a living presence moving around the child's toys.
6. **Synesthesia:** Mixing two different senses together in one expression. For example, "the scent of the morning service in the temple comes to me as the scent of my mother" shows smell and memory are blended together — a scent triggers a deeply emotional and sensory memory of the mother.
7. **Anaphora:** Repeating the same word or phrase at the beginning of successive lines or stanzas. For example, "I cannot remember my mother" repeated at the start of all three stanzas creates a strong, emotional rhythm and builds the feeling of longing with each repetition.
8. **Enjambment:** When a sentence or thought runs over from one line to the next without a pause. For example, "I feel that the stillness of / my mother's gaze on my face / has spread all over the sky" shows one flowing thought spread gently across three lines, mimicking the quiet, dreamy mood of the poem.
9. **Symbolism:** Using something to represent a deeper meaning. For example, "the blue of the distant sky" symbolises the mother — vast, unreachable, beautiful and always present above, just like a mother's love that the child can feel but cannot touch.
10. **Alliteration:** Repetition of the same consonant sound at the beginning of nearby words. For example, "smell of the shiuli... scent of the morning service" shows the repetition of the soft 's' sound creating a gentle, soothing musical quality that matches the tender mood of the poem.

5. MESSAGE

The poem gives a beautiful message that a mother's love never truly fades away. Rabindranath Tagore shows that even if a child loses his mother early and cannot remember her face, he can still feel her comforting presence everywhere. Whether it is through a sweet song, the smell of autumn flowers, or the peaceful blue sky, Tagore reminds us that a mother's deep love stays alive in our hearts and surrounds us forever.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Reflect and Respond

- I. **Work in pairs. Discuss the memories from your childhood that you remember. List them and share with your classmates and teacher.**

Ans :

Some of the memories from my childhood that I remember are:

1. Learning to ride a bicycle with my father holding the seat from behind.
2. The smell of wet earth during the first monsoon showers when I used to make paper boats.
3. My grandmother telling me bedtime stories about brave warriors and magical creatures.
4. The excitement of packing my bag with new notebooks and a new pencil box on the night before a new school year started.
5. The taste of my mother's special homemade cake on my birthdays.

- II. **Discuss how children's relationship with their mother can influence their emotions and memories.**

Ans :

A child's relationship with their mother profoundly shapes their emotional landscape and memory formation. A mother is often the primary source of comfort, security, and love. Positive interactions—like a soothing lullaby, a warm hug, or the specific scent of her cooking—become deeply ingrained in a child's subconscious. These early experiences create a foundation of emotional stability. As children grow, sensory triggers (like a familiar smell or a specific tune, as seen in the poem) can instantly evoke powerful, comforting memories of their mother, influencing how they perceive safety and affection throughout their lives.

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



Literary-wise, the poet begins with the line “I cannot remember my mother,” which acts as a “refrain” (a repeated line) throughout the poem. This sets a tone of gentle sadness, but it is immediately followed by a comforting memory triggered by the sense of hearing (auditory imagery). It shows that a mother’s love leaves a deep, subconscious mark on a child’s mind.

Stanza 2

I cannot remember my mother
but when in the early autumn morning
the smell of the shiuli flowers floats in the air
the scent of the morning service in the temple
comes to me as the scent of my mother.

Word Meaning :

1. Autumn - the season between summer and winter
2. Shiuli - a type of small, fragrant flower (also known as coral jasmine) that blooms in autumn
3. Scent - a pleasant, distinct smell or fragrance
4. Service - a religious ceremony or prayer ritual conducted in a place of worship

Explanation :

The poet repeats the refrain, reminding us once more that he cannot explicitly recall his mother’s face. However, this time, his memory is awakened by the sense of smell (olfactory imagery). During the crisp, early mornings of the autumn season, the sweet fragrance of the blooming **shiuli** flowers fills the air.

This floral scent naturally mixes with the aroma of incense and flowers coming from the morning prayers at the local temple. For the poet, this peaceful, holy fragrance is deeply tied to his mother. The combined smell of the flowers and the temple prayers feels exactly like his mother’s own scent.

This stanza gives us a beautiful clue about the mother’s personality. By associating her with the smell of temple prayers and delicate autumn flowers, the poet suggests that his mother was a deeply spiritual, pure, and gentle woman. Her everyday actions of picking flowers for prayer left a lasting impression on his childhood senses.

Stanza 3

I cannot remember my mother
only when from my bedroom window I send
my eyes into the blue of the distant sky,
I feel that the stillness of

my mother’s gaze on my face
has spread all over the sky.

Word Meaning :

1. Distant - far away in space
2. Stillness - a state of being completely quiet, calm, and unmoving
3. Gaze - a long, steady look, often full of love or deep thought

Explanation :

In the final stanza, the poet uses the refrain one last time, reinforcing the gap between his physical memory and his emotional connection. Here, he looks out of his bedroom window, staring deeply into the vast, open blue sky.

As he looks at the quiet, peaceful sky, he experiences a profound feeling. He feels as though the calm, silent, and loving look of his mother is looking right back down at him from the heavens. Her protective gaze is no longer just on his face; it has expanded to fill the entire endless sky.

Through this powerful visual imagery, the poet conveys a sense of universal protection. The sky becomes a symbol of his mother’s infinite and eternal love. Even though she is physically gone, she is never truly absent. The beautiful irony of the poem is complete here: a child who claims he “cannot remember” his mother actually feels her presence everywhere—in his childhood toys, in the fragrance of nature, and in the vastness of the universe.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

This poem consists of 3 stanzas of varying line lengths — first stanza of 5 lines, second stanza of 5 lines, and third stanza of 6 lines (16 lines total). The rhyme scheme is free verse.

1. **Refrain:** A line or phrase repeated at regular intervals for emphasis. For example, “I cannot remember my mother” opens all three stanzas, creating a sorrowful, echoing effect that reminds the reader of the poet’s deep sense of loss with every stanza.
2. **Imagery:** Using descriptive words to create vivid pictures or sensory experiences in the reader’s mind. For example, “the smell of the shiuli flowers floats in the air” shows beautiful smell imagery that connects the fragrance of flowers to the memory of the mother.
3. **Simile:** A comparison between two things using “like” or “as.” For example, “comes to me as the scent of my mother” shows the scent of the morning service in the temple is

III. Read the poem silently once again and complete the following.

- Two examples of alliteration from the poem are (i) _____ and (ii) _____.
- An example of onomatopoeia is _____.
- The poem uses imagery extensively. Explain.
- Although the poem does not have a rhyme scheme, it is enjoyable because _____.
- What is the tone of the poet? Why do you say so?
- What impact does the title of the poem have on the overall mood of the poem?
- The poet uses 'I cannot remember my mother' as a refrain because _____.

The poet uses symbolism to indicate the memory of his mother's presence. Identify the symbols used in the poem.

Ans :

- (i) "scent of the morning service" and (ii) "tune of some song".
- hum.
- The poet uses vivid imagery to evoke the presence of his mother through the senses, making her memory feel alive. He uses auditory imagery ("tune of some song", "hum"), olfactory imagery ("smell of the shiuli flowers", "scent of the morning service"), and visual imagery ("blue of the distant sky", "stillness of my mother's gaze"). This extensive use of sensory details helps the reader feel the subtle, atmospheric ways the poet's mother lingers in his world.
- of its deeply emotional and relatable theme, its gentle, flowing rhythm that mimics a lullaby, and the evocative sensory imagery that beautifully captures the feeling of nostalgia and love.
- The tone of the poet is nostalgic, deeply reverent, and slightly melancholic, yet ultimately peaceful. We can say so because, despite the sorrow of not being able to visually remember his mother ("I cannot remember my mother"), he finds comfort and a profound sense of her continued presence in the gentle, beautiful elements of his everyday life (playthings, flowers, the sky).
- The title, "I Cannot Remember My Mother," immediately establishes a mood of loss, vulnerability, and longing. It sets up a poignant contrast with the rest of the poem; while the poet claims he cannot remember her physically, the verses that follow beautifully

prove that her essence is unforgettable and omnipresent in his sensory experiences.

- it emphasizes the central paradox of his experience: the frustration of having lost the conscious, visual memory of his mother's physical face, which contrasts sharply with the strong, undeniable feeling of her spiritual and sensory presence that surrounds him.
- The hovering tune** : Symbolises her comforting, nurturing love and the subconscious memories of infancy.
 - The shiuli flowers and temple scent** : Symbolise purity, devotion, and a gentle, spiritual presence that permeates his surroundings.
 - The vast blue sky** : Symbolises her infinite, protective, and overarching presence, watching over him from above.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

Critical Reflection

I. Read the extracts given below and answer the questions that follow.

- I cannot remember my mother only sometimes in the midst of my play a tune seems to hover over my playthings,
 - Complete the following sentence appropriately. The poet is reminded of his mother during his _____.
 - What is the primary emotion conveyed by the line 'a tune seems to hover over my playthings'?
 - It enhances the joy of play.
 - It disrupts the playtime atmosphere.
 - It activates memories of the mother.
 - It symbolises the carefree nature of childhood.
 - In the context of the poem, what role does the hovering tune play during the speaker's playtime?
 - State whether the following sentence is true or false. The poet experiences the tune lingering over playthings only occasionally during playtime.
 - How could the poet feel his mother's presence, even though she isn't there?

Ans :

- playtime.
- C. It activates memories of the mother.

- iii. The hovering tune acts as a subconscious bridge to his past. Amidst his ordinary playtime, it serves as a gentle, intangible reminder of his mother's enduring love and the lullabies she used to sing, making him feel her comforting presence.
 - iv. True. (The text specifies "only sometimes").
 - v. The poet feels her presence because a mother's love and the early sensory experiences associated with her—like the sound of her humming—are deeply imprinted in a child's subconscious memory. These memories are triggered by familiar elements in his current environment.
2. I feel that the stillness of my mother's gaze on my face has spread all over the sky.
- i. What does the poet suggest about the stillness of his mother's gaze spreading over the sky?
 - A. The mother's gaze is physically present in the sky.
 - B. The sky is a symbolic extension of the mother's presence.
 - C. The sky mirrors the mother's emotions.
 - D. The stillness is fleeting and unrelated to the mother.
 - ii. What emotion does the poet associate with the 'stillness' of his mother's gaze?
 - A. a sense of grief
 - B. a sense of anticipation
 - C. a sense of nostalgia
 - D. a sense of serenity
 - iii. State whether the following sentence is true or false.
The poet suggests that the mother's gaze has a tangible and visual effect on the sky.
 - iv. What is the purpose of likening the mother's gaze to the sky?
 - v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The tone of the poet in the given extract is _____ because _____.
- Ans :
- i. B. The sky is a symbolic extension of the mother's presence.
 - ii. D. a sense of serenity.
 - iii. False. (The effect is metaphorical and deeply emotional; it is a profound spiritual feeling the poet experiences, not a physical

- or scientifically tangible change to the sky itself).
- iv. Likening his mother's gaze to the sky illustrates that her love and protective watchfulness are vast, boundless, and omnipresent. Just as the sky covers the entire earth, he feels her comforting presence encompassing his whole world.
- v. tranquil / reverent because he feels a profound, boundless, and comforting connection with his mother as he looks out into the vast expanse of the sky.

II. Answer the following questions.

1. What is the emotional impact of the refrain, 'I cannot remember my mother'?

Ans :

The refrain creates a poignant emotional impact by highlighting a deep sense of loss. By repeatedly admitting his inability to recall her physical face, the poet amplifies the power and beauty of the sensory memories that **do** remain. It turns a statement of absence into a profound testament to an enduring, invisible connection.

2. Interpret the connection between the poet's mother and the following:

- (i) shiuli flowers
- (ii) humming tune

Ans :

- (i) **Shiuli flowers** : These flowers bloom in the early autumn and are often associated with purity and religious offerings. Their sweet, lingering fragrance represents the gentle, pure, and spiritual nature of his mother's presence that subtly fills his environment.
- (ii) **Humming tune** : This represents the deep, subconscious bond formed during infancy. The lullaby she hummed while rocking his cradle is a symbol of maternal comfort, safety, and a love that continues to resonate in his mind even while he plays.

3. What role does nature play in the poet's description of the memory of his mother?

Ans :

Nature acts as a canvas and a catalyst for the poet's memories. Since he lacks a direct visual memory, the elements of nature—the autumn season, the fragrance of flowers, and the vastness of the sky—become the mediums through which he experiences her essence. Nature immortalizes her memory, turning everyday surroundings into

a comforting embrace from his mother.

4. What can be inferred about the poet's perception of the mother-child relationship?

Ans :

It can be inferred that the poet perceives the mother-child relationship as an unbreakable, eternal bond that transcends physical presence and even death. He suggests that a mother's love and care are so deeply ingrained in a child's being that they become a permanent part of the child's sensory world and subconscious memory.

Vocabulary in Context

- I. Work in pairs to classify the sensory words given in the box below. One example has been done for you.

rustle	sticky	glowing	hiss
rough	chilled	aroma	gigantic
stale	sizzle	minuscule	scent
gloomy	deafening	vibrant	pungent
squeaky	stinky	crimson	fluffy
fragrant	smooth	slimy	ear-splitting
hairy			

Visual	Auditory	Olfactory	Tactile
glowing	hiss	aroma	sticky

Ans :

Visual	Auditory	Olfactory	Tactile
glowing	hiss	aroma	sticky
gigantic	rustle	scent	rough
minuscule	sizzle	pungent	chilled
gloomy	deafening	stinky	fluffy
vibrant	squeaky	fragrant	smooth
crimson	ear-splitting	stale	slimy
			hairy

- II. Fill in the blanks with sensory words in the box for the following passage written by Sarojini Naidu. There are two extra words.

scarlet	shrill	sizzle	perfumes
flaming	scents	sweetness	essence
smooth			

Come and share my exquisite March morning with me: this sumptuous blaze of gold and sapphire sky;

these 1. _____ lilies that adorn the sunshine; the voluptuous 2. _____ of neem and champak and serisha that beat upon the languid air with their implacable 3. _____; the thousand little gold and blue and silver breasted birds bursting with the 4. _____ ecstasy of life in nesting time. And, do you know that the scarlet lilies are woven petal by petal from my heart's blood, these little quivering birds are my soul made incarnate music, these heavy 5. _____ are my emotions dissolved into aerial 6. _____, this 7. _____ blue and gold sky is the 'very me'...

Ans :

Come and share my exquisite March morning with me: this sumptuous blaze of gold and sapphire sky; these 1. **flaming** lilies that adorn the sunshine; the voluptuous 2. **scents** of neem and champak and serisha that beat upon the languid air with their implacable 3. **sweetness**; the thousand little gold and blue and silver breasted birds bursting with the 4. **shrill** ecstasy of life in nesting time. And, do you know that the scarlet lilies are woven petal by petal from my heart's blood, these little quivering birds are my soul made incarnate music, these heavy 5. **perfumes** are my emotions dissolved into aerial 6. **essence**, this 7. **smooth** blue and gold sky is the 'very me'...

The two extra words are: scarlet, sizzle

- III. Write numbers against each picture with the phrases that describe them with their sensorial associations. One example has been done for you.

- beats of music echo in air
- melody of soothing scent, dancing in the air
- fragrant breeze of blooming buds
- gentle lullaby, a soft melody
- colourful sky, painting a lively sight
- attractive canvas painting the horizon



□



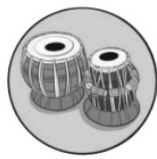
□



□



□



1.



□

sky, that pain completely vanished.

The sheer vastness of the sky felt exactly like a mother's embrace—limitless, protective, and constantly hovering above me. I felt her silent, steady gaze looking down, reassuring me that she has never truly left. Her love has simply expanded to fill the entire universe. I no longer feel orphaned; I feel watched over and profoundly loved.

Yours affectionately,
Rabindranath

4. If the mother's "silent steady gaze" from the sky could be translated into a comforting speech for the poet, what would she say to reassure her child? Write a short speech.

Ans :

"My beloved child, please do not weep because you cannot remember my face. Physical forms are temporary, but the bond we share is eternal. Whenever you play with your toys, listen closely; my voice is in the gentle breeze, humming the lullabies that once rocked you to sleep. When autumn arrives, breathe in the fragrance of the shiuli flowers—that is my soul praying for your happiness and peace. And when you look up at the vast, boundless blue sky, know that it is my warm embrace wrapping around you. I am the sky that protects you, the tune that comforts you, and the scent that guides you. I am always with you, now and forever."

5. "Physical absence does not destroy a mother's eternal love; rather, it makes her omnipresent in the child's life." Evaluate this theme based on your reading of the poem.

Ans :

The poem conveys that a mother's love goes beyond physical presence. The poet loses his mother at a very young age and cannot even remember her face. Normally, such absence would cause memories to fade away.

However, in this case, the opposite happens. Since the mother is not limited to a physical form, she becomes present everywhere in the child's world. He feels her presence in the music of his playthings, the fragrance of shiuli flowers, and the vast blue sky above him.

Through these experiences, the poet shows that a mother's love is eternal. Even without her physical presence, she remains a constant guiding spirit, surrounding the child with care and comfort.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"I cannot remember my mother only sometimes in the midst of my play a tune seems to hover over my playthings, the tune of some song that she used to hum while rocking my cradle."

- What does the hovering tune suggest about the mother's memory?
 - A conscious recollection
 - A subconscious presence
 - An active imagination
 - An auditory illusion
- Statement I:** The speaker intentionally tries to recall his mother's lullaby.
Statement II: The memory of the mother is triggered involuntarily during play.
 - Both I and II are true.
 - Both I and II are false.
 - I is true, II is false.
 - I is false, II is true.
- In what situation does the speaker get a fleeting memory of his mother?
- Identify the contextual vocabulary word from the stanza that means "to remain poised or linger in one place in the air."
- State True or False with a reason:
The poet has a clear and complete visual memory of his mother.

Ans :

- (b) A subconscious presence
- (d) I is false, II is true.
- The speaker gets a fleeting memory of his mother during play, when a tune of her lullaby seems to hover over his playthings.
- hover
- False, because the poet explicitly states "I cannot remember my mother" and relies entirely on fragmented sensory impressions instead of visual recall.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"I cannot remember my mother but when in the early autumn morning the smell of the shiuli flowers floats in the air the scent of the morning service in the temple comes to me as the scent of my mother."

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

4. **Narrate the specific memory associated with it : A cherished part of my childhood includes** spending my summer vacations there. **A routine activity in my childhood involved** waking up early to the sound of temple bells and running outside to collect fallen mangoes with my cousins. We would spend hours playing hide-and-seek in the dusty, sunlit corridors.
5. **Explain how it has impacted your life :** This place taught me the value of simple joys and the importance of family bonds. It gave me an appreciation for nature and a sense of rootedness that helps me stay calm during stressful times.
6. **Summarise why this memory is meaningful to you even now :** Recalling those early years, **I can't forget** the pure feeling of safety and freedom I experienced there. Thinking about my early years, I realise that the house was not just a building, but a feeling of warmth and happiness. Even now, whenever I smell wet earth or jasmine, I am transported back to that courtyard, and it brings a smile to my face.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

Writing Task

- I. Imagine you had been on a school trip to a scenic place which appealed to all your senses. Write a diary entry describing the place and why it was a memorable experience.



Contents of the diary entry :

- begin with day, date, and time
- use only first person (I, my)
- capture sensory details
- express emotions
- focus on significant moments and experiences
- conclude with reflection

Ans :

Wednesday, 15th November 2023

8:30 PM

Dear Diary,

Today was absolutely enchanting! Our school trip to the Munnar hill station was an experience I will never forget. The moment we stepped out of the bus, I was greeted by the most chilled, refreshing breeze I have ever felt; it instantly woke me up. Everywhere I looked, there were endless, rolling hills covered in vibrant, lush green tea gardens that looked like a soft, velvety carpet. The visual beauty was stunning, but what truly captivated me was the scent. The air was thick with the crisp, earthy aroma of fresh tea leaves mixed with the subtle fragrance of mountain mist. It felt so pure to breathe in. I could hear the gentle, musical rustling of the leaves as the wind blew through the plantations, occasionally interrupted by the cheerful chirping of unseen birds.

Standing there on the viewpoint, looking out at the vast expanse, I felt a deep sense of peace and joy. It was a significant moment for me, away from the loud noises and pollution of the city. We laughed, took countless pictures, and just soaked in the tranquility of nature. Recalling today's trip, I realize how important it is to step out and appreciate the natural beauty around us. It was a truly memorable day that rejuvenated all my senses!

Until next time,

[Your Name]

Learning Beyond the Text

- I. You read about the shiuli flowers from the poem. Gather more information on unique flowers of India—where they are found, how they look, what smell they emit, and what the historical significance is, if any. [For example, Kurinji or Neelakurinji that blooms once in twelve years.] Add more flowers to this list.

Shiuli Flowers :

- known as Parijat, Parijata, and Harsingar
- revered and used for various ceremonial purposes
- release a sweet fragrance
- associated with numerous Indian legends
- bloom exclusively during the night

Ans :

Here is information on two unique flowers native to India:

Ans :

(c) Both A and R are false.

20. How does the “hovering tune” affect the poet during playtime?

- (a) It distracts him from playing with his new toys.
- (b) It makes him feel lonely in an empty room.
- (c) It creates a sense of fear about the dark room.
- (d) It acts as a comforting embrace from his mother.

Ans :

(d) It acts as a comforting embrace from his mother.

21. Which season is mentioned in the second stanza?

- (a) Early autumn (b) Late summer
- (c) Deep winter (d) Warm spring

Ans :

(a) Early autumn

22. What is the local name of the coral jasmine flowers?

- (a) Champa (b) Shiuli
- (c) Lotus (d) Rose

Ans :

(b) Shiuli

23. What are the colors of the coral jasmine flowers mentioned?

- (a) Red and yellow (b) Pink and white
- (c) White and orange (d) Blue and purple

Ans :

(c) White and orange

24. The sweet smell of the flowers floats in the:

- (a) river water (b) dark clouds
- (c) open fields (d) autumn air

Ans :

(d) autumn air

25. The fragrance blends with the scent of the morning:

- (a) prayer service (b) cooking fire
- (c) damp forest (d) rain showers

Ans :

(a) prayer service

26. The morning prayer service scent comes from a nearby:

- (a) village school (b) holy temple
- (c) large garden (d) flowing river

Ans :

(b) holy temple

27. For the poet, these pure smells act as a strong:

- (a) warning sign (b) pleasant dream
- (c) sweet reminder (d) fading memory

Ans :

(c) sweet reminder

28. The fragrance of the flowers represents the mother's:

- (a) lost childhood (b) hidden sadness
- (c) deep knowledge (d) pure devotion

Ans :

(d) pure devotion

29. The second stanza mainly highlights which type of memory?

- (a) Olfactory memory (b) Auditory memory
- (c) Visual memory (d) Tactile memory

Ans :

(a) Olfactory memory

30. The scent of the shiuli flowers blends with the scent of the:

- (a) burning incense (b) temple prayers
- (c) autumn leaves (d) morning dew

Ans :

(b) temple prayers

31. Which of the following statements is correct regarding the second stanza?

1. The flowers have a sour smell.
 2. The scents remind him of his mother.
 3. The temple is very far away.
- (a) Statements 1 and 2 are correct.
 - (b) Statements 2 and 3 are correct.
 - (c) Only statement 2 is correct.
 - (d) Only statement 3 is correct.

Ans :

(c) Only statement 2 is correct.

32. What deeper meaning does the fragrance of autumn hold for the poet?

- (a) It shows that autumn is his favorite time of year.
- (b) It signifies the decay and passing of natural life.

7. The central theme is that a mother's _____ is very powerful.

(a) sweet voice (b) gentle gaze
(c) deep love (d) kind touch

Ans :

(c) deep love

8. **Assertion (A):** The poet cannot visually recall his mother's physical form.

Reason (R): His mother passed away when he was at a very early age.

(a) Both A and R are false.
(b) A is true but R is false.
(c) A is false but R is true.
(d) Both A and R are true.

Ans :

(d) Both A and R are true.

9. Which of the following statements is correct regarding the poem's introduction?

1. The poet remembers his mother's face clearly.
2. The mother's love leaves a permanent mark.
3. The child lost his mother in his late teens.

(a) Only statement 2 is correct.
(b) Only statement 1 is correct.
(c) Both 1 and 3 are correct.
(d) Both 2 and 3 are correct.

Ans :

(a) Only statement 2 is correct.

10. What does the poet's lack of visual memory ultimately suggest about their bond?

(a) It shows he has completely forgotten his past.
(b) It highlights that true love transcends sight.
(c) It proves that time erases all deep memories.
(d) It means he never really cared for his mother.

Ans :

(b) It highlights that true love transcends sight.

11. In the first stanza, what is the poet doing?

(a) Reading a book (b) Sleeping quietly
(c) Busy in playtime (d) Walking outside

Ans :

(c) Busy in playtime

12. What hovers over the poet's playthings?

(a) A bright light (b) A soaring bird
(c) A dark shadow (d) A gentle tune

Ans :

(d) A gentle tune

13. The poet hears the melody of a:

(a) sweet lullaby (b) morning prayer
(c) temple bell (d) distant river

Ans :

(a) sweet lullaby

14. While humming the tune, the mother used to rock the:

(a) wooden chair (b) baby's cradle
(c) sleeping bed (d) old hammock

Ans :

(b) baby's cradle

15. The lullaby sound brings the poet a deep sense of:

(a) intense sorrow (b) sudden fear
(c) great comfort (d) deep anger

Ans :

(c) great comfort

16. The poet feels his mother's love is:

(a) far away (b) fading out
(c) completely gone (d) surrounding him

Ans :

(d) surrounding him

17. The poet's mother used to _____ while gently rocking his cradle.

(a) quietly hum (b) loudly sing
(c) softly speak (d) gently weep

Ans :

(a) quietly hum

18. The first stanza focuses primarily on which type of memory?

(a) Visual memory (b) Auditory memory
(c) Olfactory memory (d) Tactile memory

Ans :

(b) Auditory memory

19. **Assertion (A):** The poet feels abandoned while playing with his toys.

Reason (R): The humming tune reminds him that his mother is absent.

(a) Both A and R are true.
(b) A is true but R is false.
(c) Both A and R are false.
(d) A is false but R is true.

45. Despite the sad truth, the ultimate mood of the poem is:

- (a) positive and peaceful
- (b) dark and depressing
- (c) angry and bitter
- (d) fearful and anxious

Ans :

- (a) positive and peaceful

46. The bond between the mother and child is described as:

- (a) easily broken
- (b) unbreakable
- (c) slowly fading
- (d) completely lost

Ans :

- (b) unbreakable

47. A mother's essence simply becomes a part of:

- (a) the lost past
- (b) the deep ocean
- (c) beautiful nature
- (d) dark shadows

Ans :

- (c) beautiful nature

48. Which of the following statements is correct regarding the conclusion?

- 1. The poet regains his visual memory of her face.
- 2. The poem is full of rich sensory details.
- 3. The mother's essence guides the child forever.

- (a) Only statement 1 is correct.
- (b) Statements 1 and 2 are correct.
- (c) Statements 1 and 3 are correct.
- (d) Statements 2 and 3 are correct.

Ans :

- (d) Statements 2 and 3 are correct.

49. What is the ultimate message delivered through the poet's sensory experiences?

- (a) Physical absence does not destroy a mother's eternal love.
- (b) Nature is completely unrelated to human emotions and love.
- (c) Memories can only survive if we have photographs of them.
- (d) The pain of losing a parent will eventually destroy a child.

Ans :

- (a) Physical absence does not destroy a mother's eternal love.

50. Which sensory detail is NOT used by the poet to feel his mother's presence?

- (a) Hearing a gentle tune
- (b) Tasting sweet food
- (c) Smelling fresh flowers
- (d) Seeing the vast sky

Ans :

- (b) Tasting sweet food

Short Answer Type Questions

1. How does the poet experience his mother's presence during his playtime?

Ans :

Although the poet cannot recall his mother's physical appearance, he feels her presence while playing. A familiar tune seems to hover over his toys. This imaginary melody reminds him of the comforting lullaby his mother used to sing while rocking his cradle.

2. What is the underlying emotion conveyed in the opening line, "I cannot remember my mother"?

Ans :

This repeated line conveys a profound sense of sadness and loss. It highlights the tragic reality that the poet lost his mother at a very tender age, leaving him unable to recall her face, yet he yearns for her enduring love.

3. How does the memory of the mother transition from auditory to olfactory in the poem?

Ans :

In the first stanza, the poet remembers his mother through the auditory memory of a lullaby. Chronologically, this shifts to an olfactory memory in the second stanza, where the distinct autumn fragrance of shiuli flowers triggers memories of her pure presence.

4. What is the significance of the "shiuli" flowers in the context of the mother's memory?

Ans :

The shiuli flowers bloom in autumn and possess a sweet, lingering fragrance. The poet associates this specific scent with his mother because it blends seamlessly with the aroma of the morning temple prayers, symbolizing her pure, devoted, and spiritual nature.

5. Why does the poet associate the scent of the morning temple service with his mother?

- (c) It reminds him of the toys he lost in his childhood.
 (d) It symbolizes the spiritual presence of his mother.

Ans :

- (d) It symbolizes the spiritual presence of his mother.

33. In the final stanza, the poet looks out of his:

- (a) bedroom window (b) classroom door
 (c) kitchen window (d) wooden balcony

Ans :

- (a) bedroom window

34. Where does the poet gaze into?

- (a) The green forest (b) The distant sky
 (c) The deep ocean (d) The busy street

Ans :

- (b) The distant sky

35. How is the distant sky described?

- (a) Dark and grey (b) Bright and red
 (c) Infinite and blue (d) Cloudy and pale

Ans :

- (c) Infinite and blue

36. Looking at the sky gives the poet a profound:

- (a) sense of dread (b) feeling of loss
 (c) burst of joy (d) spiritual connection

Ans :

- (d) spiritual connection

37. The poet feels the stillness of the sky is his mother's:

- (a) silent gaze (b) sudden tear
 (c) final word (d) lost voice

Ans :

- (a) silent gaze

38. The mother's gaze from the sky is described as:

- (a) cold and distant (b) silent and loving
 (c) harsh and angry (d) sad and fearful

Ans :

- (b) silent and loving

39. Just as the sky covers the earth, the mother's love is:

- (a) slowly fading (b) highly conditional
 (c) vast and protective (d) dark and heavy

Ans :

- (c) vast and protective

40. The poet feels his mother is always watching him from:

- (a) the window (b) the temple
 (c) the garden (d) up above

Ans :

- (d) up above

41. **Assertion (A):** The vast blue sky makes the poet feel protected.

Reason (R): He associates the vastness of the sky with his mother's limitless love.

- (a) Both A and R are true.
 (b) A is true but R is false.
 (c) A is false but R is true.
 (d) Both A and R are false.

Ans :

- (a) Both A and R are true.

42. Why does the poet compare his mother to the infinite blue sky?

- (a) Because she used to love looking at the blue sky.
 (b) Because her protective love feels boundless and vast.
 (c) Because she traveled across the distant sky often.
 (d) Because he feels cold and distant from her memory.

Ans :

- (b) Because her protective love feels boundless and vast.

43. What phrase is repeatedly used in the poem?

- (a) I miss my sweet dear mother
 (b) Where has my mother gone now
 (c) I cannot remember my mother
 (d) My mother loves me very much

Ans :

- (c) I cannot remember my mother

44. The repeated phrase highlights a:

- (a) joyful memory (b) passing thought
 (c) angry feeling (d) sad truth

Ans :

- (d) sad truth

1. **Brahma Kamal (Saussurea obvallata) :**
Where found : Native to the Himalayas (Uttarakhand, Himachal Pradesh), usually found at high altitudes of around 4500 meters. It is the state flower of Uttarakhand.
Appearance : It looks like a beautiful, large white star or lotus, enclosed in pale yellow-green, paper-like protective bracts.
Smell : It emits a strong, sweet, and mesmerizing fragrance.
Significance : It is highly revered in Hindu mythology, believed to be the flower of Lord Brahma. Notably, it blooms only once a year, during the night, and wilts by morning, making it incredibly rare and sacred.
2. **Palash / Flame of the Forest (Butea monosperma) :**
Where found : Found across the plains and lower regions of India, often in dry deciduous forests. State flower of Jharkhand.
Appearance : The tree produces clusters of brilliant, vibrant, fiery red and orange flowers that lack petals but have uniquely shaped, curved keels. When in full bloom, the tree looks as if it is on fire.
Smell : Unlike many other flowers, Palash flowers are largely odorless.
Significance : Historically, the flowers were used to make natural colors for the festival of Holi. It is deeply associated with the arrival of spring in India and is frequently mentioned in Indian literature and poetry.

II. You must have read poems and songs related to the theme of family, friends and their reminiscences, in English and also in your own language. Collect these poems and songs, and share with your classmates and teacher. Now, read and enjoy the poem given below.

Ans :

I have read many poems and songs about family, friends, and memories in both English and my own language. These poems often talk about love, care, togetherness, and the special moments we share with our loved ones. They remind us of our childhood, happy times with friends, and the support of our family.

Collecting and sharing such poems helps us understand the importance of relationships and memories in our lives. These poems make us feel connected and help us appreciate the people who bring joy and meaning to our lives.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who wrote the poem "I Cannot Remember My Mother"?
 (a) Robert Frost
 (b) William Wordsworth
 (c) Sarojini Naidu
 (d) Rabindranath Tagore

Ans :

- (d) Rabindranath Tagore

2. What is the exact title of the poem?
 (a) The True Love Of My Mother
 (b) I Cannot Remember My Mother
 (c) Remembering My Sweet Mother
 (d) The Pure Memory Of My Mother

Ans :

- (b) I Cannot Remember My Mother

3. When did the child lose his mother?
 (a) In teenage years (b) During adulthood
 (c) Very early age (d) Just yesterday

Ans :

- (c) Very early age

4. What is the child unable to remember?
 (a) Her sweet voice (b) Her daily prayers
 (c) Her favorite songs (d) Her physical face

Ans :

- (d) Her physical face

What leaves a permanent mark on the child's heart?

- (a) A mother's love (b) The autumn sky
 (c) His new playthings (d) The temple bells

Ans :

- (a) A mother's love

6. How does the poet feel his mother's presence?
 (a) Through old photos
 (b) Through his senses
 (c) Through his relatives
 (d) Through old letters

Ans :

- (b) Through his senses

Ans :

The scent of the morning temple service evokes a sense of deep piety and calmness. The poet likely remembers his mother performing these daily prayers. Thus, the holy fragrance serves as a spiritual reminder of her gentle and devoted soul.

6. What action does the poet take in the final stanza, and what does he observe?

Ans :

In the concluding stanza, the poet sends his gaze out into the vast, open space from his bedroom window. Looking out, he observes the expansive, infinite blue sky spreading endlessly above him, which brings a deep sense of tranquil connection.

7. How does the poet interpret the stillness of the distant blue sky?

Ans :

The poet perceives the silent, motionless blue sky as his mother's loving, steady gaze looking down upon him. He believes that her watchful eyes have spread across the entire sky, offering him endless protection, warmth, and quiet maternal reassurance.

8. What does the boundless nature of the sky symbolize in the poem?

Ans :

The infinite expanse of the sky symbolizes the boundless, immeasurable nature of a mother's love. Just as the sky blankets the earth entirely, the poet feels completely enveloped and protected by his mother's everlasting love, transcending physical boundaries and death.

9. Based on the entire text, justify the poet's claim that a mother's bond is unbreakable.

Ans :

Despite the physical absence and lack of visual memory, the poet's emotional connection to his mother remains eternally intact. By sensing her through everyday natural elements—a tune, floral scents, and the sky—he proves that maternal love is unbreakable and immortal.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Rabindranath Tagore masterfully substitutes physical memory with sensory experiences in "I Cannot Remember My Mother." Analyze how auditory, olfactory, and visual metaphors are used to recreate the mother's presence.

Ans :

In the poem, the poet compensates for his lack of visual memory by invoking powerful sensory perceptions. First, he uses auditory imagery when playing with his toys; a hovering "tune" reminds him of the soothing lullabies his mother hummed while rocking his cradle. Secondly, he relies on olfactory memory during autumn. The sweet fragrance of shiuli flowers intertwines with the scent of the morning temple prayers, reminding him of his mother's deep spiritual devotion.

Finally, he uses a grand visual metaphor from his bedroom window. The vast, infinite blue sky represents his mother's silent, protective gaze. Through these sensory elements—hearing, smelling, and observing nature—the poet beautifully resurrects his mother's eternal essence in his daily life.

2. Imagine you are the poet. Write a diary entry describing your feelings on an autumn morning when the scent of shiuli flowers evokes vivid memories of your mother.

Ans :

Tuesday, 14th April 2026

Dear Diary,

Today, the crisp autumn breeze carried the sweet fragrance of shiuli flowers into my room, filling me with nostalgia. Though I cannot clearly remember my mother's face, my heart recognizes her presence through this familiar scent. The aroma blended with the incense from a distant temple, making me feel as if she were near me, quietly offering her prayers.

This feeling is both painful and comforting. While I feel sadness for not remembering her face, I also experience deep peace in sensing her presence around me. It seems as if she lives on in nature, surrounding me with love and warmth.

Rabindranath

3. Write a letter from the poet to a close friend, explaining how the vast blue sky brings comfort and makes him feel completely protected by his departed mother.

Ans :

Dear Friend,

I hope this letter finds you in good health and high spirits. I am writing to share a profound realization I had today while looking out of my bedroom window. You know how deeply it pains me that I cannot recall my mother's face. However, today, as I stared into the infinite blue

Ans :

Left to right :

Top row :

- 3 (fragrant breeze of blooming buds)
- 4 (gentle lullaby, a soft melody)
- 5 (colourful sky, painting a lively sight)

Bottom row:

- 6 (attractive canvas painting the horizon)
- 1 (beats of music echo in air)
- 2 (melody of soothing scent, dancing in the air)

4.	Childhood days are about freedom and ordinary pleasures in outdoor activities.	(ii)
5.	Memories of school days are grandparents and my funny tales.	(iii)
6.	Parents urge us to be adventurous and discover nature but with limitations.	-(Not needed)

Listen and Respond

- I. You will listen to four short extracts of people expressing their childhood memories. As you listen, match each statement 1–6 to each speaker (i)–(iv). There are two statements that you do not need. (Transcript for teacher on page 266)

	Statement	Speaker
1.	The precious memories by the seaside are not the same anymore.	
2.	My grandfather's encouragement influences me in moments of difficulty.	
3.	The school days are a source of recollection to stay in touch.	
4.	Childhood days are about freedom and ordinary pleasures in outdoor activities.	
5.	Memories of school days are grandparents and my funny tales.	
6.	Parents urge us to be adventurous and discover nature but with limitations.	

Ans :

	Statement	Speaker
1.	The precious memories by the seaside are not the same anymore.	(iv)
2.	My grandfather's encouragement influences me in moments of difficulty.	(i)
3.	The school days are a source of recollection to stay in touch.	-(Not needed)

Speaking Activity

- I. Work in pairs. Think of an object, song, or a place that is memorable for you. Take turns to speak about it using the prompts given below.

- Introduce it briefly
- Describe it in detail including sensory details
- Narrate the specific memory associated with it
- Explain how it has impacted your life
- Summarise why this memory is meaningful to you even now

You may use the following phrases.

- During my childhood...
- Growing up, I fondly remember...
- Recalling those early years, I can't forget...
- In my younger days, I used to...
- I have a clear memory of...
- A routine activity in my childhood involved...
- A cherished part of my childhood includes...
- As a child, I was fond of...
- One of my favourite childhood moments is...
- Thinking about my early years, I recall...
- A common occurrence during my youth was...

Ans :

1. **During my childhood**, a place that was incredibly memorable for me was my grandparents' ancestral home in a small village.
2. **Introduce it briefly** : It was an old, sprawling house with a red-tiled roof, surrounded by a large courtyard.
3. **Describe it in detail including sensory details** : I have a clear memory of the earthy smell of the courtyard after fresh rain and the vibrant, almost blinding green of the mango trees that shaded the porch. The air always carried a faint, sweet aroma of jasmine from the garden, mixed with the rich scent of my grandmother's spices roasting in the kitchen.

- i. How does the smell of shiuli flowers primarily affect the speaker?
 - (a) It reminds him of autumn
 - (b) It evokes religious devotion
 - (c) It bridges past and present
 - (d) It creates deep melancholy
- ii. **Assertion (A):** The poet associates the morning temple service with his mother.
Reason (R): The fragrance of the temple rituals triggers an involuntary childhood memory of his mother's daily practices.
 - (a) Both A and R are true, R is the correct explanation.
 - (b) Both A and R are true, R is not the correct explanation.
 - (c) A is true, R is false.
 - (d) A is false, R is true.
- iii. What triggers the memory of the poet's mother in this stanza?
- iv. Which word in the stanza refers to the religious prayers or rituals performed at a place of worship?
- v. Complete the sentence:
 The poet compares the scent of the morning service in the temple directly to the -----.

Ans :

- i. (c) It bridges past and present
- ii. (a) Both A and R are true, R is the correct explanation.
- iii. The smell of shiuli flowers floating in the early autumn morning air triggers the memory of his mother.
- iv. service
- v. scent of his mother

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"I cannot remember my mother
 only when from my bedroom window I send
 my eyes into the blue of the distant sky,
 I feel that the stillness of
 my mother's gaze on my face
 has spread all over the sky."

- i. What does sending "eyes into the blue of the distant sky" signify?
 - (a) Looking for incoming rain
 - (b) Yearning for maternal connection
 - (c) Admiring nature's vast beauty
 - (d) Avoiding the indoor loneliness

- ii. Which of the following best describes the speaker's perspective in this stanza?
 - (a) The vast sky physically shrinks to the size of a bedroom window.
 - (b) The mother's comforting presence has become omnipresent in nature.
 - (c) The sheer distance of the sky highlights his feeling of abandonment.
 - (d) The blue color accurately represents the deep sorrow of the mother.
- iii. What does the poet feel when he gazes at the distant sky from his bedroom window?
- iv. Identify the figure of speech used in feeling that the "stillness of my mother's gaze... has spread all over the sky."
- v. State whether True or False, with a reason:
 The poet believes his mother is physically looking down at him from the sky.

Ans :

- i. (b) Yearning for maternal connection
- ii. (b) The mother's comforting presence has become omnipresent in nature.
- iii. The poet feels that the stillness of his mother's gentle gaze has spread all over the vast sky.
- iv. Metaphor
- v. False, the poet feels a symbolic or spiritual presence of his mother's protective gaze in the quiet vastness of the sky, not a physical entity.



5. MESSAGE

In the poem “Nine Gold Medals,” the poet David Roth shares a touching message about true sportsmanship. He shows that real victory is not about winning alone, but about showing compassion to others. When the athletes stop to help the fallen boy, they prove that human kindness is much more important than any prize. Roth teaches us that empathy and teamwork are life’s greatest achievements.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Reflect and Respond

I. Work in pairs. Discuss the difference between Olympics, Special Olympics, and Paralympics.

Ans :

- Olympics** : A major international multi-sport event featuring summer and winter sports competitions where thousands of athletes from around the world participate. It is designed for elite athletes without intellectual or physical disabilities.
- Special Olympics** : An international organization providing year-round sports training and athletic competition in a variety of Olympic-type sports for children and adults with intellectual disabilities, fostering inclusion and acceptance.
- Paralympics** : A major international multi-sport event for highly competitive athletes with physical disabilities, including impaired muscle power, limb deficiency, and vision impairment.

II. Work in pairs to match the words ‘empathy’, ‘sympathy’, and ‘compassion’ to the sentences given in the table below.

I am so sorry for what is happening to you. It is sad, do you want something to eat?	I can imagine how you feel. I understand that you are upset and why.	I understand why you feel terribly low. I will spend some time with you, so that you don’t feel lonely.
--	--	---

Ans :

Sympathy	Empathy	Compassion
I am so sorry for what is happening to you. It is sad, do you want something to eat?	I can imagine how you feel. I understand that you are upset and why.	I understand why you feel terribly low. I will spend some time with you, so that you don’t feel lonely.

III. Work in pairs. List the words you associate with ‘empathy’. Share your responses with your classmates and teacher.

Ans :

Words associated with **empathy** include:

- Understanding
- Kindness
- Care
- Listening
- Support
- Respect
- Sensitivity
- Sharing feelings
- Patience
- Concern

These words show how empathy helps us connect with others and understand their emotions.

Check Your Understanding

I. Work in pairs. Match the words and phrases in Column 1 with their meanings in Column 2. You may read the poem again and infer the contextual meaning. Check your answers with the teacher.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	dashed in the dirt	i.	walk or move with difficulty
2.	stumbled	ii.	destroyed
3.	staggered	iii.	a hard black substance used to make roads and paths
4.	anguish	iv.	step awkwardly, lose balance and almost fall
5.	asphalt	v.	extreme pain or suffering

is instantly transformed into a slow, cooperative walk toward the end of the race. Above them hangs a large banner announcing the “Special Olympics,” and the wonderfully compassionate way these athletes are behaving perfectly reflects the true significance of those words.

The Joyous and Historic Conclusion

The final race of the day concludes in an extraordinary manner, with the officials awarding nine gold medals to the group since they all cross the finish line simultaneously while still holding hands. The entire crowd of spectators rises to their feet to give them a massive, thunderous standing ovation for their actions. The brightly glowing, happy smiles on all nine of the athletes’ faces express the profound joy of the moment far better than any spoken words ever could.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

The athletes had come from all over the country
To run for the gold, for the silver, and bronze
Many weeks and months of training
All coming down to these games.

Word Meaning :

1. Athletes - People who are trained in sports, games, or exercises.
2. Bronze - A brown metal used to make the medal for the third-place winner.

Explanation :

The poem opens by introducing a major sports competition. Sports persons from various parts of the country have gathered to compete and win medals—gold for first place, silver for second, and bronze for third.

The stanza highlights the sheer hard work and dedication of these participants. They have spent months undergoing strict training and preparation. Now, all their efforts and dreams depend completely on how they perform in these final games. This sets a mood of high stakes and serious anticipation.

Stanza 2

The spectators gathered around the old field
To cheer on all the young women and men
The final event of the day was approaching
Excitement was high to begin.

Word Meaning :

1. Spectators - People who watch a show, game, or event.
2. Approaching - Coming closer in time.

Explanation :

A large crowd of audience members has gathered around the sports field to support and encourage the young athletes. The atmosphere is buzzing with energy.

It is the very last sporting event of the day, which is usually the most awaited and thrilling one. Because it is the grand finale, the excitement among the crowd and the participants is at its absolute peak. This stanza successfully builds up the suspense before the race starts.

Stanza 3

The blocks were all lined up for those who would use them

The hundred-yard dash and the race to be run

These were nine resolved athletes in the back of the starting line

Poised for the sound of the gun.

Word Meaning :

1. Blocks - Small equipment placed on the track that runners push their feet against to get a fast start.
2. Hundred-yard dash - A very fast, short-distance running race covering 100 yards.
3. Resolved - Highly determined and firm in their purpose to win.
4. Poised - Completely ready and positioned for action.

Explanation :

The setting shifts directly to the starting line of the race. The event is the 100-yard dash, a race that requires extreme speed and focus. The starting blocks are set up for the runners.

Nine highly determined athletes are standing at the starting line. They are deeply focused, physically ready, and simply waiting for the loud sound of the starting pistol to begin sprinting. The poet perfectly captures the tense, pin-drop silence right before a major race begins.

Stanza 4

The signal was given, the pistol exploded
And so did the runners all charging ahead
But the smallest among them, he stumbled and staggered
And fell to the asphalt instead.

5. How does the poet's tone change from the beginning to the end of the poem?

Ans :

The tone begins with a sense of high anticipation, excitement, and serious competition. When the youngest athlete falls, the tone abruptly shifts to heartbreak, sorrow, and anguish. By the end, it transforms into an uplifting tone of warmth, profound joy, and admiration for the runners' incredible sportsmanship.

6. What is the overall mood created by the poem?

Ans :

The overall mood of the poem is highly emotional, inspiring, and heartwarming. Despite a brief moment of despair, the selfless actions of the athletes create an overwhelming feeling of solidarity, empathy, and human connection.

7. What is the message being conveyed by the poem?

Ans :

The poem conveys that true victory does not solely lie in winning a gold medal or defeating others, but rather in displaying empathy, compassion, and human kindness. Lifting a fallen competitor and crossing the finish line together is shown as a far greater achievement than individual glory.

Critical Reflection

- I. Read the extracts given below and answer the questions that follow.

1. The eight other runners pulled up on their heels
The ones who had trained for so long to compete
One by one they all turned round and went back to help him
And brought the young boy to his feet.
- i. Select the correct option to complete the sentence.
The phrase 'pulled up on their heels' means that the runners _____.
A. moved aside B. stopped running
C. tried to run faster D. jumped ahead
- ii. Mention one character trait common to all the eight other runners.
- iii. What is the tone of the poet in these lines?
- iv. How might the young athlete have felt on being helped by the others?
- v. Would you consider this incident as a turning point in the poem? If yes, why? If no, why not?

Ans :

- i. B. stopped running
 - ii. Compassion (or empathy/sportsmanship).
 - iii. The tone of the poet is appreciative, respectful, and deeply touched by the noble, selfless actions of the eight athletes.
 - iv. The young athlete likely felt deeply moved, relieved, and grateful. His profound feelings of despair and anguish would have transformed into a sense of belonging, comfort, and immense support.
 - v. Yes, this incident is the turning point in the poem. It dramatically shifts the narrative away from a standard, highly competitive race where one wins and others lose, and turns it into an extraordinary display of human solidarity where the desire to compete is abandoned in favour of empathy.
2. That's how the race ended, with nine gold medals
They came to the finish line holding hands still
And a standing ovation and nine beaming faces
Said more than these words ever will.
- i. How did the nine contestants feel when they reached the finishing line together?
 - ii. Why do you think all the nine contestants were given gold medals?
 - iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The holding of hands signifies a feeling of _____.
 - iv. Choose the correct option to complete the sentence.
The spectators giving a 'standing ovation' indicates that they were _____.
A. amazed B. speechless
C. distracted D. thoughtful
 - v. Explain the last line of the extract.

Ans :

- i. They felt incredibly happy, proud, and deeply united, which is evident from their "nine beaming faces."
- ii. All nine contestants were awarded gold medals to recognize their exceptional sportsmanship, teamwork, and empathy. The organizers acknowledged that their act of collective humanity was a victory far superior to just finishing a race first.
- iii. The holding of hands signifies a feeling of unity, solidarity, and brotherhood.
- iv. An amazed

Stanza 8

That's how the race ended, with nine gold medals
They came to the finish line holding hands still
And a standing ovation and nine beaming faces
Said more than these words ever will.

Word Meaning :

1. Standing ovation - When an audience stands up to clap and cheer loudly to show great respect and appreciation.
2. Beaming - Smiling very brightly with genuine joy and happiness.

Explanation :

The poem concludes with a highly emotional and heartwarming ending. Because all nine athletes cross the finish line together, hand in hand, the judges award a gold medal to every single one of them. They are all considered winners.

The spectators in the stands are so moved by this display of empathy that they stand up to applaud them. The glowing, happy smiles on the faces of the nine athletes express a profound joy that no poem or words could ever fully describe. The ultimate message is clear: compassion and helping others bring a much greater victory than personal glory.

NODIA

4. LITERARY DEVICES

This poem consists of 8 stanzas of 4 lines each (32 lines total). The rhyme scheme is ABCB.

1. **Alliteration:** Repetition of the same consonant sound at the beginning of nearby words. For example, "His dreams and his efforts dashed in the dirt" shows the repetition of the 'd' sound creating a heavy, disappointing rhythm that matches the mood of the fallen athlete.
2. **Imagery:** Using descriptive words to create vivid pictures in the reader's mind. For example, "And fell to the asphalt instead" shows sharp visual imagery that makes the reader clearly picture the athlete hitting the hard ground, creating a sudden and painful moment.
3. **Metaphor:** A direct comparison without using "like" or "as." For example, "His dreams and his efforts dashed in the dirt" shows the athlete's dreams are directly compared to something physically thrown and broken in the dirt, suggesting total destruction of hope.
4. **Personification:** Giving human qualities to non-living things. For example, "Excitement was high to begin" shows excitement — which

is just a feeling — is given the human-like quality of being physically high or elevated, making the atmosphere feel alive and electric.

5. **Onomatopoeia:** Using words that sound like the action they describe. For example, "the pistol exploded" shows the word "exploded" captures the loud, sharp bang of the starting gun, making the reader almost hear the sound of the race beginning.
6. **Simile:** A comparison using "like" or "as." For example, "But as sure as I'm standing here telling this story" shows the poet uses "as sure as" to compare the certainty of what happened next to the certainty of his own physical presence, making the story feel absolutely true.
7. **Irony:** When what happens is the opposite of what is expected. For example, a race meant to find the fastest runner ended with "nine gold medals" for all — showing the beautiful irony that an event built on competition became a powerful moment of unity and compassion instead.
8. **Climax:** Building up tension to the most important or exciting moment. For example, the poem builds from training, to gathering, to the starting gun, to the fall, and finally to all runners helping each other — showing a carefully constructed emotional climb that reaches its peak in stanza 6 and 7.
9. **Repetition:** Using the same word or idea more than once for emphasis. For example, "nine runners" and "nine gold medals" and "nine beaming faces" repeat the number nine throughout the poem, constantly reminding the reader that all athletes finish together as one united group.
10. **Hyperbole:** An exaggerated statement used to create a strong effect. For example, "Said more than these words ever will" shows the poet exaggerates by saying that the image of nine beaming faces crossing the finish line together speaks louder than any words could ever express.
11. **Allusion:** A reference to a well-known event, place or organisation. For example, "And a banner above that said (Special Olympics)" shows a direct reference to the real Special Olympics — an international sports event for athletes with disabilities — giving the poem historical and emotional depth.

Ans :

	Column 1	Column 2
1.	big	disappointment, failure, surprise, decision
2.	heavy	rain, bag, burden, traffic
3.	strong	wind, coffee, muscle, belief
4.	large	crowd, amount, area, house
5.	great	effort, success, idea, leader

III. Choose the correct adjectives from those given in the box for the underlined words given in the sentences below. Ensure you do not use the same adjective twice.

positive	significant	youngest
noisy	loud	

- The littlest athlete was moving at a steady pace. _____
- The eight athletes had a smiling attitude. _____
- When the athlete fell, he gave a huge cry of pain. _____
- The spectators saw a terrible difference in the athletes who had only come to compete. _____
- The gaudy crowd cheered the runners enthusiastically. _____

Ans :

- The littlest athlete was moving at a steady pace. **youngest**
- The eight athletes had a smiling attitude. **positive**
- When the athlete fell, he gave a huge cry of pain. **loud**
- The spectators saw a terrible difference in the athletes who had only come to compete. **significant**
- The gaudy crowd cheered the runners enthusiastically. **noisy**

Listen and Respond

I. You will listen to a radio-talk about Patrick Gomes, a coach of special athletes. As you listen, write true or false for the statements given. (Transcript for teacher on page 268)

- Patrick Gomes began his career in sports with track events.
- Patrick Gomes has been coaching special athletes for 10 years.

- Patrick Gomes does all the household work himself.

Ans :

- True** : He began his sports career with participation in various **track events** in 1991.
- False** : He has been coaching for **over 15 years**, not 10 years.
- True** : He **lives by himself and does all household work** on his own.

II. You will listen to the radio-talk once again. As you listen, choose the correct option for each question.

- When the speaker uses the phrase 'push your boundaries', he wants listeners to _____.
(i) challenge themselves
(ii) meet new people
(iii) be open-minded
- Patrick Gomes is a _____ at present.
(i) special athlete
(ii) coach of special athletes
(iii) value education teacher
- Special Olympic Games held at Connecticut was a _____ for Patrick Gomes.
(i) motivational year
(ii) turning point
(iii) gradual change
- As a special athlete, Patrick Gomes mostly participated in _____.
(i) track events
(ii) jogging
(iii) football
- Patrick Gomes believes that sports is essential because it encourages _____ along with fitness.
(i) a positive outlook
(ii) a peaceful mind
(iii) an active life

Ans :

- (i) challenge themselves
- (ii) coach of special athletes
- (ii) turning point
- (i) track events
- (i) a positive outlook

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	dashed in the dirt	ii.	destroyed
2.	stumbled	iv.	step awkwardly, lose balance and almost fall
3.	staggered	i.	walk or move with difficulty
4.	anguish	v.	extreme pain or suffering
5.	asphalt	iii.	a hard black substance used to make roads and paths

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

II. Identify the gist of each stanza. Write the number of the stanza in the boxes given.

- Spectators cheered participants of different events and waited enthusiastically for the final event to start. ☐
- All runners dashed ahead as soon as they heard the gun shot; suddenly, one of the athletes tripped and fell on the ground. ☐
- The race finished with nine athletes holding hands and winning the well-deserved gold medals; their smiles, and spectators standing up to applaud, conveyed everything. ☐
- Participants got ready at the starting line and nine determined athletes waited for the sound of the gun. ☐
- Athletes from various parts of the country had gone through months of training; had big dreams of winning a medal. ☐
- The eight athletes stopped to help the young fallen athlete stand up, forgetting that they were competing. ☐
- Nine athletes held the banner and walked hand in hand; this gesture represented the ethos of Special Olympics. ☐
- The young athlete felt his dreams were shattered and cried in pain and disappointment, but something unique happened. ☐

Ans :

- Spectators cheered participants of different events and waited enthusiastically for the final event to start. ☐ 2
- All runners dashed ahead as soon as they heard the gun shot; suddenly, one of the athletes tripped and fell on the ground. ☐ 4

- The race finished with nine athletes holding hands and winning the well-deserved gold medals; their smiles, and spectators standing up to applaud, conveyed everything. ☐ 8
- Participants got ready at the starting line and nine determined athletes waited for the sound of the gun. ☐ 3
- Athletes from various parts of the country had gone through months of training; had big dreams of winning a medal. ☐ 1
- The eight athletes stopped to help the young fallen athlete stand up, forgetting that they were competing. ☐ 6
- Nine athletes held the banner and walked hand in hand; this gesture represented the ethos of Special Olympics. ☐ 7
- The young athlete felt his dreams were shattered and cried in pain and disappointment, but something unique happened. ☐ 5

III. Let us appreciate the poem.

- Two examples of alliteration from the poem are (i) _____ and (ii) _____.

Ans :

- stumbled and staggered
- dashed in the dirt (or holding hands)

- Give three examples of visual imagery from the poem.

- _____
- _____
- _____

Ans :

- The blocks were all lined up
- And fell to the asphalt
- holding hands still (or nine beaming faces)

- Give an example of auditory imagery from the poem. (i) _____

Ans :

- the pistol exploded (or gave out a cry)

- How does the use of imagery make the poem more appealing?

Ans :

Imagery makes the poem more appealing by painting a vivid mental picture of the events. Visual and auditory details—such as the “pistol exploded,” “dashed in the dirt,” and “beaming faces”—bring the physical setting and the intense emotions of the athletes to life, helping the reader to feel fully immersed in the experience.

CHAPTER 5

NINE GOLD MEDALS

1. INTRODUCTION

“Nine Gold Medals” by David Roth is a deeply moving poem set against the backdrop of the Special Olympics. The narrative captures the intense anticipation of the final track event, the hundred-yard dash. Athletes from various countries have gathered, having dedicated months of rigorous training to compete for the ultimate prize. As the starting pistol fires, the runners dash forward, but the youngest competitor tragically stumbles and falls onto the asphalt track. What follows is an unexpected turn of events, as the remaining eight runners abandon their fierce desire to win, choosing instead to focus on the fallen boy.

2. SUMMARY

The Athletes' Preparation and Arrival

Athletes from various parts of the country have gathered to participate in a major sporting event, hoping to win the highly coveted gold, silver, and bronze medals. All of these competitors have dedicated many weeks and months to intense physical training to prepare themselves. Now, all their hard work and dedication have finally culminated in this specific athletic competition.

The Gathering of the Enthusiastic Crowd

A large crowd of spectators has gathered around the stadium's old sporting field to support and cheer for all the young athletes competing today. As the day's athletic competitions draw to a close, everyone eagerly awaits the final and most anticipated race. The atmosphere among the audience is incredibly lively, and a high level of excitement fills the air just before the event begins.

Positioning for the Final Race

Down on the track, the starting blocks are perfectly arranged in their lanes, waiting for the runners who are about to compete in the hundred-yard dash. Behind the starting line stand nine highly

determined athletes, completely focused and ready for the challenge ahead of them. They take their respective positions at the starting blocks, standing completely still as they anxiously wait to hear the loud sound of the starting pistol.

The Starting Gun and the Unexpected Fall

The moment finally arrives when the starting signal is given, and the loud crack of the exploding pistol echoes across the field. Immediately, the racers burst forward from their starting blocks, sprinting ahead with all their might. However, in the midst of this sudden rush, the youngest and smallest athlete in the group loses his balance, stumbles awkwardly, and falls forcefully onto the hard asphalt track instead of running forward.

The Fallen Athlete's Heartbreak

Upon falling to the ground, the young runner lets out a painful and heartbreaking cry filled with extreme frustration and emotional agony. He instantly realizes that all the countless hours of strenuous effort and his deepest dreams of winning a medal have been shattered in the dirt of the track. Yet, just as clearly as the narrator is witnessing and sharing this account, an incredibly unexpected sequence of events is about to unfold on the field.

The Remarkable Act of the Fellow Runners

Despite having trained for a very long time specifically to win this race, the other eight competitors do something entirely unexpected. Hearing the young boy's cry, they immediately stop their fierce sprinting and halt their forward momentum in their tracks. One by one, every single runner turns around and walks back to where the smallest athlete has fallen, lifting the boy up so that he can stand firmly on his feet once again.

A United Walk to the Finish Line

Once the fallen athlete is back on his feet, all nine runners link their hands together in a powerful display of unity and continue down the track as one group. The competitive hundred-yard sprint

- v. “Said more than these words ever will” means that the beautiful visual of the nine athletes holding hands with joyful faces, combined with the crowd’s standing ovation, communicated a profound message of love and humanity that is too immense to be fully captured or described with mere words.

II. Answer the following questions.

1. Describe how the setting established in the first two stanzas of the poem create a vivid atmosphere for the events that follow.

Ans :

The first two stanzas create a setting of intense preparation and high anticipation. By highlighting that athletes trained for “weeks and months” and that a large, excited crowd gathered for the “final event of the day,” the poet builds a highly charged and competitive atmosphere. This makes the sudden display of selflessness later in the race feel incredibly impactful and surprising.

2. How do you think the youngest athlete might have felt when he fell?

Ans :

When the youngest athlete fell, he must have felt utterly devastated, heartbroken, and deeply frustrated. He knew his intense months of hard work were ruined in an instant, leading to an overwhelming sense of emotional anguish.

3. Why were the athletes eager to begin the race?

Ans :

The athletes were eager because they had trained rigorously for months. The hundred-yard dash was the ultimate culmination of their hard work, and they were poised and ready to release their energy to compete for a medal.

4. What does the transformation of the hundred-yard dash to a walk symbolise?

Ans :

The transformation from a frantic dash to a slow walk symbolizes a profound shift in priorities. It represents moving away from fierce, individual competition towards mutual support, showing that reaching a goal together with compassion is more meaningful than running alone just to win.

5. How might the poem be different if the focus was solely on individual achievement rather than collective support?

Ans :

If the focus were solely on individual achievement, the poem would just be a conventional sports

narrative about the fastest runner winning while the rest faced defeat. It would completely lack the emotional depth and the powerful moral lesson about empathy and human kindness that makes it so memorable.

6. How does the poet’s use of language and tone enhance the reader’s engagement with the poem?

Ans :

The poet uses simple, straightforward language and vivid action imagery (“pistol exploded,” “stumbled and staggered”) that makes the narrative easily accessible and highly visual. The masterful tone shifts—from suspenseful anticipation to sudden heartbreak, and finally to heartwarming triumph—keep the reader emotionally engaged from beginning to end.

7. What might be the poet’s purpose of writing this poem?

Ans :

The poet’s primary purpose is to inspire readers by highlighting the true spirit of sportsmanship. He wants to convey that human values such as compassion, empathy, and collective solidarity are much greater accomplishments than any individual athletic victory.

Vocabulary in Context

- I. The phrase ‘standing ovation’ is an example of an adjective–noun collocation. Identify two other similar examples from the poem.

Ans :

Two other similar examples of adjective-noun collocations from the poem are “young women” and “beaming faces” (or “starting line”, “gold medals”).

- II. Complete the table given below by writing four nouns in Column 2 that collocate with the adjectives in Column 1. One example has been done for you. You may take the help of a dictionary.

	Column 1	Column 2
1.	big	disappointment, failure, surprise, decision
2.	heavy	
3.	strong	
4.	large	
5.	great	

Word Meaning :

1. Pistol - A small handgun used by the referee to fire a blank shot, signaling the start of a race.
2. Exploded - Made a sudden, very loud bang.
3. Charging - Rushing or moving forward with great speed and energy.
4. Stumbled - Tripped or lost balance while running.
5. Staggered - Walked or moved unsteadily, as if about to fall.
6. Asphalt - The hard, black tar surface of the running track.

Explanation :

The race finally begins! The starting gun is fired, and instantly, all nine runners dash forward with incredible power and speed.

However, a sudden tragedy occurs. The youngest and smallest athlete in the group loses his balance. He trips, struggles to stay on his feet, and ultimately crashes down onto the hard track. This sudden shift in the narrative changes the mood from high excitement to shock and sadness, introducing the main conflict of the poem.

Stanza 5

He gave out a cry of frustration and anguish
His dreams and his efforts dashed in the dirt
But as sure as I'm standing here telling this story
The same goes for what next occurred.

Word Meaning :

1. Frustration - The feeling of deep annoyance and helplessness when you cannot achieve what you want.
2. Anguish - Extreme mental or physical pain and suffering.
3. Dashed - Completely shattered, ruined, or destroyed.

Explanation :

The little boy who fell cries out loudly. His cry isn't just from physical pain, but from the deep emotional heartbreak of watching his dreams shatter. He realizes that all his months of hard training have been ruined in a split second.

In the second half of the stanza, the poet talks directly to the reader. He makes a firm promise that what happens next is absolutely true, even though it might seem unbelievable. This creates a strong sense of curiosity and prepares us for a major, unexpected twist in the story.

Stanza 6

The eight other runners pulled up on their heels
The ones who had trained for so long to compete
One by one they all turned round and went back to help him
And brought the young boy to his feet.

Word Meaning :

1. Pulled up on their heels - A phrase meaning they stopped running suddenly.
2. Compete - To take part in a contest and strive to win against others.

Explanation :

This stanza is the turning point of the poem. The other eight runners, who had trained for months just to win this very race, do something extraordinary. Hearing the young boy's cry, they suddenly stop running.

Instead of zooming past him to claim the gold medal, every single one of them turns around. They walk back to the fallen athlete and gently help him stand up. This moment highlights the core theme of the poem: true sportsmanship, deep empathy, and the idea that human compassion is far more important than winning a competition.

Stanza 7

Then all the nine runners joined hands and continued
The hundred-yard dash now reduced to a walk
And a banner above that said (Special Olympics)
Could not have been more on the mark.

Word Meaning :

1. Continued - Kept moving forward.
2. Reduced - Made smaller or slower in scale.
3. Banner - A long strip of cloth with words or signs written on it, hung up for people to see.
4. On the mark - Perfectly accurate; exactly right or true.

Explanation :

Having helped the boy up, the nine athletes link their hands together. Instead of racing against each other, they decide to walk the rest of the 100-yard distance as a united team.

The poet points out a banner hanging above the field that reads "Special Olympics" (a sports event for athletes with intellectual disabilities). The poet feels this title is incredibly fitting. These athletes are "special" not just because of the nature of the games, but because their kindness, unity, and beautiful character make them extraordinary human beings.

Speaking Activity

I. Work in pairs. Take turns to express your points of view regarding Special Olympics.

Use the key points given below to develop the conversation.

Key points :

- Importance of Special Olympics (promotes inclusion)
- Impact of Special Olympics on sportspersons with special abilities
- How to create awareness regarding Special Olympics

Use the sentence starters given in the table below when you speak.

Asking someone for a point of view		Expressing a point of view	
•	What is your opinion on...?	•	Personally, I believe that...
•	How do you feel about...?	•	I hold the opinion that...
•	In your view, is...?	•	It's my belief that...
•	What is your take on...?	•	I have a strong feeling that...
•	Do you think that...?	•	From my perspective...

Ans :

Student A : In your view, is the Special Olympics getting enough attention in our community?

Student B : Personally, I believe that it needs much more coverage so that everyone understands its importance in promoting inclusion.

Student A : I hold the opinion that you are absolutely right. What is your take on the impact it has on the sportspersons with special abilities?

Student B : From my perspective, it has a massive impact. It builds their confidence and shows society their incredible talents. How do you feel about creating more awareness?

Student A : It's my belief that schools should actively talk about it. I have a strong feeling that if we start discussing it early, we can foster a much more accepting society.

Writing Task

I. Work in pairs to write three creative slogans on Special Olympics.

One example of a slogan on Special Olympics has been given below.

Special Olympics: Igniting a Universe of Potential
Present your slogans in a creative manner and share with your classmates and teacher.



Steps to write a slogan

- Understand the theme on which you want to write a slogan.
- Brainstorm ideas and use them to create the slogan.
- Keep it brief and simple.
- It should not be more than eight to ten words.
- Make the slogan catchy.

Now, create a poster based on the inspiration you have drawn from the poem. Present your poster to the class and display it on the classroom board.

Steps to design a poster

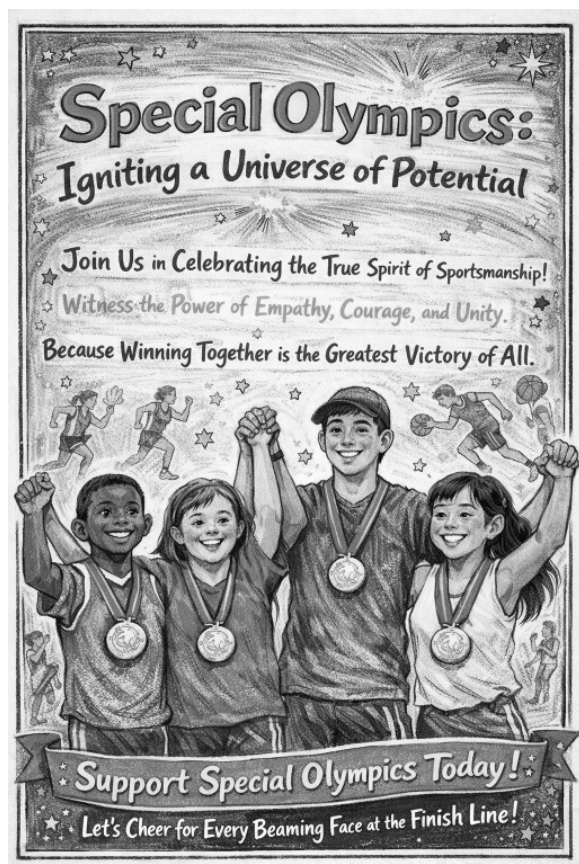
- Include all vital information.
- Write down the ideas.
- Remember to place the slogan you created.
- Use top, bottom, and sides of the poster for other important information.
- Include some illustrations, a call for action, if needed.
- Colour and decorate your poster.
- Present your poster as a box item.

Ans :

1. **Special Olympics :** Celebrating Abilities, Defying Limits!
2. True Champions Run with Heart, Not Just Speed.
3. Inclusion in Motion: Every Athlete is a Winner!

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL





Ans :

Other notable Indian achievers at the Special Olympics include :

Ranveer Singh Saini : The first Indian golfer to win a gold medal at the Special Olympics World Games (2015).

Sita Sahu : A double bronze medalist in the 200m and 1600m athletic races at the 2011 Special Olympics World Summer Games in Athens.

Prabhroop Sekhon : Won two remarkable gold medals in Roller Skating at the Special Olympics World Summer Games in 2015.

II. Read the information given below in the infographic.

NODIA

**SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL**



Learning Beyond the Text

I. Read the information given below about some athletes who participated in Special Olympic Games 2023 held in Berlin, Germany.

RAVIMATHI ARUMUGAM : She is an athlete who made India proud by clinching the gold medal in the 400 metre, Level C women's race.

AANCHAL GOYAL : She won the gold medal in the 400 metre, Level B women's race.

SAKET KUNDU : Saket Kundu achieved a rare double in track and field by winning a silver medal in the Level B mini javelin event and a bronze in the Level B 400 metre men's race.

Find out more about other Indian achievers of Special Olympics.



Now, create an infographic on any sport and present it in the class.

Ans :

CRICKET: A GLIMPSE

ORIGINS IN THE 16TH CENTURY

Cricket originated in south-east England in the late 16th century. By the 18th century, it had grown to become the national sport of England and subsequently expanded globally.

THE INTERNATIONAL CRICKET COUNCIL (ICC)

The ICC is the global governing body of cricket. It oversees all major international tournaments and regulates the global playing standards.

FORMATS OF THE GAME

Cricket is played in three main formats internationally:

1. **Test Match** : The traditional and longest format, lasting up to 5 days.
2. **One Day International (ODI)** : A limited-overs format with 50 overs per side.
3. **Twenty20 (T20)** : A fast-paced, highly exciting 20-overs per side format.

THE WORLD CUP

The ICC Cricket World Cup is the premier international championship of ODI cricket. It is held every four years and unites millions of fans worldwide.

WOMEN'S CRICKET

Women's cricket has seen a massive surge in global popularity. Notably, the first Women's Cricket World Cup was held in 1973, predating the men's tournament by two years!

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. In which setting does the story take place?

- (a) The Asian Games
- (b) The Special Olympics
- (c) The Global Cup
- (d) The Summer Games

Ans :

- (b) The Special Olympics

2. Who gathered for the final event?

- (a) Olympic coaches
- (b) Enthusiastic fans
- (c) Event organizers
- (d) Determined athletes

Ans :

- (d) Determined athletes

3. Where did the athletes come from?

- (a) Specific local schools
- (b) Distant global nations
- (c) Various sports centers
- (d) Various country parts

Ans :

- (d) Various country parts

4. What was the final event of the day?

- (a) Hundred-yard dash
- (b) Two-mile relay
- (c) Long jump event
- (d) Fifty-yard sprint

Ans :

- (a) Hundred-yard dash

5. How long had the athletes been training?

- (a) Days and weeks
- (b) Weeks and months
- (c) Months and years
- (d) Years and decades

Ans :

- (b) Weeks and months

6. What kind of training did the athletes undergo?

- (a) Casual
- (b) Minimal
- (c) Rigorous
- (d) Optional

Ans :

- (c) Rigorous

7. What were the athletes dreaming of winning?

- (a) A cash prize
- (b) A silver cup
- (c) A grand title
- (d) A prestigious medal

Ans :

- (d) A prestigious medal

8. Who was present to watch the event?

- (a) A large crowd
- (b) Very few people
- (c) Only the judges
- (d) Strict reporters

Ans :

- (a) A large crowd

9. How is the crowd described?

- (a) Highly disappointed
- (b) Extremely enthusiastic
- (c) Quietly observant
- (d) Slightly uninterested

Ans :

- (b) Extremely enthusiastic

35. What did the nine athletes join?

- (a) Hands (b) Arms
(c) Shoulders (d) Forces

Ans :

- (a) Hands

36. How did the athletes cross the finish line?

- (a) Separately (b) Together
(c) Quickly (d) Quietly

Ans :

- (b) Together

37. What did the organizers award to the athletes?

- (a) Bronze medals (b) Silver medals
(c) Gold medals (d) Platinum medals

Ans :

- (c) Gold medals

38. How many athletes received a gold medal?

- (a) One (b) Three
(c) Eight (d) Nine

Ans :

- (d) Nine

39. **Assertion (A):** The organizers awarded a gold medal to all nine athletes.

Reason (R): They displayed incredible sportsmanship and unity.

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R explains A
(b) Both A and R are true, but R is unrelated
(c) A is true, but R is completely false
(d) A is false, but R is completely true

Ans :

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R explains A

40. According to the summary, what is the ultimate triumph of the human spirit?

- (a) Breaking world records in the hundred-yard dash.
(b) Lifting others up when they experience a hard fall.
(c) Training rigorously for many months without resting.
(d) Winning a prestigious medal in a global competition.

Ans :

- (b) Lifting others up when they experience a hard fall.

41. True victory does NOT just lie in _____.

- (a) helping others
(b) human kindness
(c) individual achievement
(d) collective support

Ans :

- (c) individual achievement

42. What kind of visual concludes the poem?

- (a) Empty tracks (b) Crying athletes
(c) Broken medals (d) Beaming faces

Ans :

- (d) Beaming faces

43. Which of the following contributed to the athletes receiving gold medals?

1. Incredible sportsmanship
2. Fierce competitive drive
3. Human kindness

- (a) Only statements 1 and 2
(b) Only statements 1 and 3
(c) Only statements 2 and 3
(d) All statements 1, 2, and 3

Ans :

- (b) Only statements 1 and 3

44. What did the audience give to the athletes?

- (a) A standing ovation (b) A quiet applause
(c) A loud booing (d) A brief silence

Ans :

- (a) A standing ovation

45. What educational message does the poem primarily convey?

- (a) Athletic talent is the most crucial part of any competition.
(b) Organizers should always give medals to all participants.
(c) Empathy and support are greater than any single athletic win.
(d) Falling in a race means you did not train hard enough.

Ans :

- (c) Empathy and support are greater than any single athletic win.

46. **Assertion (A):** Empathy is considered a much greater achievement than winning.

Reason (R): The audience left the stadium in utter silence and disbelief.

23. Which of the following statements is correct regarding the start?

1. The tension reached its peak.
 2. The starting pistol exploded.
 3. The youngest athlete tripped.
- (a) Only statements 1 and 2 are correct
 (b) Only statements 2 and 3 are correct
 (c) Only statements 1 and 3 are correct
 (d) All statements 1, 2, and 3 are correct

Ans :

- (d) All statements 1, 2, and 3 are correct

24. What serves as the turning point of the poem?

- (a) An act of empathy (b) A fierce argument
 (c) A sudden rainfall (d) An angry outburst

Ans :

- (a) An act of empathy

25. In a highly competitive race, what is usually expected?

- (a) Runners help others
 (b) Runners ignore others
 (c) Runners stop running
 (d) Runners walk slowly

Ans :

- (b) Runners ignore others

26. What did the remaining eight athletes do?

- (a) Sped up faster (b) Shouted loudly
 (c) Stopped running (d) Ignored the boy

Ans :

- (c) Stopped running

27. What did the eight athletes pull up on?

- (a) Their toes (b) Their knees
 (c) Their ankles (d) Their heels

Ans :

- (d) Their heels

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

28. What drove the athletes to stop?

- (a) Compassion and empathy
 (b) Fatigue and exhaustion
 (c) Confusion and anxiety
 (d) Jealousy and hatred

Ans :

- (a) Compassion and empathy

29. How did the athletes go back to the boy?

- (a) All at once (b) One by one
 (c) In pairs only (d) Three by three

Ans :

- (b) One by one

30. What is truly extraordinary about the athletes' reaction?

- (a) They complained to the judges about the track conditions.
 (b) They ignored the fallen boy to ensure their own victories.
 (c) They sacrificed their personal ambition to help a competitor.
 (d) They demanded a complete restart of the hundred-yard dash.

Ans :

- (c) They sacrificed their personal ambition to help a competitor.

31. What was the collective action of the eight athletes?

- (a) They left the running track
 (b) They called for a medic
 (c) They sat near the young boy
 (d) They lifted the young athlete

Ans :

- (d) They lifted the young athlete

32. How did they lift the young athlete?

- (a) Gently (b) Roughly
 (c) Quickly (d) Reluctantly

Ans :

- (a) Gently

33. What did the athletes forget when they stopped?

- (a) Their daily training
 (b) Their running shoes
 (c) Their desire to win
 (d) Their starting block

Ans :

- (c) Their desire to win

34. The fierce hundred-yard dash transformed into a

_____.

- (a) slow marathon (b) quick sprint
 (c) relay event (d) united walk

Ans :

- (d) united walk

Ans :

The spectators were deeply moved by the athletes' selfless actions. They stood up and gave the nine participants a resounding standing ovation. This reaction implies that the audience recognized and profoundly honored their exceptional empathy and collective triumph over individual glory.

9. What is the central message conveyed by the events of the poem?

Ans :

The poem conveys that the essence of sportsmanship does not lie in fierce competition or individual accolades, but in human kindness. Uplifting a fallen peer and crossing the finish line together is a much greater victory than winning a race entirely alone.

10. The event was named the "Special Olympics". How does the conclusion of the poem give a deeper meaning to the word "Special"?

Ans :

The event was meant for differently-abled athletes. However, the poem highlights that the event became truly "special" not just because of the banner, but due to the extraordinary empathy, unity, and unprecedented sportsmanship displayed by the nine compassionate runners.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. "True victory is not about finishing first, but about uplifting those who have fallen." Analyze this statement in light of the poem "Nine Gold Medals".

Ans :

In the poem "Nine Gold Medals," David Roth redefines the idea of winning. Traditionally, victory means defeating others and finishing first to gain personal success and recognition.

However, the poem presents a different perspective on true victory. When the youngest athlete falls during the race, the other participants stop and give up their chance to win. Instead of focusing on competition, they choose to help him, showing compassion and unity.

This act proves that true success lies in empathy and humanity. By walking together to the finish line, all nine athletes become winners. Their shared victory highlights that kindness and selflessness are far more valuable than individual achievement.

2. Imagine you are the young athlete who fell during the race. Write a diary entry expressing your feelings of despair when you fell and your gratitude when the others helped you.

Ans :

Dear Diary,

Today was meant to be the climax of my athletic journey. For months, I poured my blood and sweat into training for the hundred-yard dash. But as the starting pistol fired, my legs gave way, and I crashed heavily onto the unforgiving asphalt. In that split second, my dreams shattered into a million pieces. I let out a cry of utter despair, thinking my world had ended. But then, an absolute miracle happened. The footsteps of my competitors faded, not into the distance, but back toward me. One by one, the other eight athletes returned, gently lifting me to my feet. We linked arms and walked to the finish line together. I didn't win the race alone today, but I gained something far more precious—the unyielding support of true champions.

3. Imagine you are one of the eight athletes who stopped to help the fallen boy. Write a diary entry reflecting on your decision to sacrifice your personal ambition for compassion.

Ans :

Dear Diary,

The tension at the starting block was intense today. As the gun fired, my entire focus was on reaching the finish line. But just a few steps into the race, I heard a painful cry—the youngest runner had fallen.

Without thinking, I stopped. The strong desire to win faded instantly, replaced by a deeper sense of humanity. To my surprise, the other athletes also stopped. Together, we went back, helped him up, and joined hands.

Walking to the finish line together felt far more meaningful than winning alone. Receiving the gold medal with all my fellow runners made me realize that true victory lies in empathy. It was the proudest moment of my life.

4. As a spectator who witnessed the final event, write a short speech to be delivered at your school assembly about the true meaning of sportsmanship, drawing inspiration from the nine athletes.

Ans :

Respected Principal, Teachers, and my dear friends,

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R explains A
- (b) Both A and R are true, but R is unrelated
- (c) A is true, but R is completely false
- (d) A is false, but R is completely true

Ans :

- (c) A is true, but R is completely false

47. Which statements are correct about the final scene?

- 1. The athletes crossed the finish line together.
- 2. The fierce dash became a united walk.
- 3. The audience ignored their actions.

- (a) Only statements 1 and 3 are correct
- (b) Only statements 2 and 3 are correct
- (c) All statements 1, 2, and 3 are correct
- (d) Only statements 1 and 2 are correct

Ans :

- (d) Only statements 1 and 2 are correct

48. The poem proves that empathy is greater than a -----.

- (a) human kindness (b) single athletic win
- (c) collective support (d) united teamwork

Ans :

- (b) single athletic win

Short Answer Type Questions

1. What is the setting of the poem, and what have the athletes been doing prior to this event?

Ans :

The poem is set at the Special Olympics. The athletes had come from many different countries, dedicating weeks and months to rigorous training. They were deeply focused on competing to win a coveted gold, silver, or bronze medal in the games.

2. How does the poet describe the atmosphere among the spectators before the final event begins?

Ans :

The atmosphere is charged with intense excitement and anticipation. A large, enthusiastic crowd has gathered around the field, cheering eagerly for the participants. They remain in high spirits throughout the day, impatiently awaiting the thrilling climax of the final track event.

3. Describe the tragic incident that occurred immediately after the starting pistol was fired.

Ans :

Immediately after the starting pistol exploded,

the nine athletes dashed forward. However, the youngest competitor stumbled, lost his balance, and tragically fell face-first onto the harsh asphalt track, instantly shattering his long-held hopes of winning the highly anticipated race. He felt entirely defeated.

4. Why did the youngest athlete give out a cry of frustration and anguish upon falling?

Ans :

The boy cried out in immense pain and emotional anguish because his fall meant the sudden death of his dreams. The rigorous training, hard work, and preparation of several months were instantly rendered useless by this single, unfortunate misstep on the track.

5. What was the immediate and unexpected reaction of the other eight athletes when the youngest boy fell?

Ans :

Instead of continuing the race to secure their individual victories, the other eight competitors surprisingly halted. Driven by a profound sense of empathy, they abandoned their personal ambitions, turned back one by one, and gently lifted the fallen boy to his feet.

6. What does the phrase “a hundred-yard dash now reduced to a walk” signify in the context of the poem?

Ans :

This phrase signifies a shift from a fiercely competitive sprint to a display of unified solidarity. The athletes let go of their desire to race against each other; instead, they joined hands and walked together, proving compassion is far greater than speed.

7. Why did the organizers decide to award nine gold medals instead of the traditional first, second, and third place prizes?

Ans :

The organizers awarded nine gold medals because every single athlete displayed exemplary sportsmanship and humanity. By helping their fallen competitor and crossing the finish line united as one, they all emerged as true champions, rendering traditional competitive rankings completely meaningless.

8. How did the spectators react to the athletes crossing the finish line together, and what does this imply?

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

10. What was the crowd doing as the participants lined up?

- (a) Booing loudly (b) Sitting silently
(c) Cheering loudly (d) Talking quietly

Ans :

- (c) Cheering loudly

11. Where did the participants line up?

- (a) At the finish line (b) Near the audience
(c) Beside the podium (d) At starting blocks

Ans :

- (d) At starting blocks

12. What peaked as the athletes waited for the signal?

- (a) The tension (b) The weather
(c) The lighting (d) The silence

Ans :

- (a) The tension

13. **Assertion (A):** A heartbreaking incident occurs during the race.

Reason (R): The athletes went through months of rigorous training.

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R explains A
(b) Both A and R are true, but R is unrelated
(c) A is true, but R is completely false
(d) A is false, but R is completely true

Ans :

- (b) Both A and R are true, but R is unrelated

14. How many runners dashed forward?

- (a) Seven runners (b) Eight runners
(c) Nine runners (d) Ten runners

Ans :

- (c) Nine runners

15. With what kind of energy did the runners dash?

- (a) Weak energy (b) Low energy
(c) Calm energy (d) Intense energy

Ans :

- (d) Intense energy

16. What kind of incident occurred almost immediately?

- (a) Heartbreaking (b) Encouraging
(c) Predictable (d) Unnoticeable

Ans :

- (a) Heartbreaking

17. Who tripped and lost their balance?

- (a) The oldest athlete
(b) The youngest athlete
(c) The tallest athlete
(d) The fastest athlete

Ans :

- (b) The youngest athlete

18. What did the young athlete fall onto?

- (a) The grassy field (b) The sandy ground
(c) The asphalt track (d) The wooden floor

Ans :

- (c) The asphalt track

19. What did the boy feel was instantly destroyed?

- (a) His sports shoes (b) His team spirit
(c) His new uniform (d) His winning dreams

Ans :

- (d) His winning dreams

20. The boy cried out in deep _____.

- (a) pain and anguish (b) anger and hatred
(c) shock and silence (d) fear and surprise

Ans :

- (a) pain and anguish

21. What did the boy believe about his race?

- (a) It was just paused
(b) It was completely over
(c) It was easily won
(d) It was finally restarting

Ans :

- (b) It was completely over

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

22. How did the young athlete's fall affect his emotional state?

- (a) He felt a brief moment of shock but quickly recovered his pace.
(b) He became angry at the officials for maintaining a poor track.
(c) He experienced deep emotional anguish over his lost dreams.
(d) He felt relieved that he no longer had to endure the pressure.

Ans :

- (c) He experienced deep emotional anguish over his lost dreams.

Today, I want to talk about true sportsmanship, inspired by a remarkable incident I witnessed at the Special Olympics. We often believe that sports are entirely about outshining opponents, breaking track records, and standing alone on the winner's podium. However, the real essence of sports lies in human spirit and solidarity.

Imagine a fiercely competitive hundred-yard dash where a runner violently falls, and instead of racing ahead, every single competitor stops to help him up. They bravely sacrifice their personal ambitions, link hands, and cross the finish line as one. This extraordinary act teaches us that lifting others up when they stumble is the greatest victory of all. Let us always strive to be champions not just in sports, but in empathy and kindness.

Thank you.

5. Write a conversation between two spectators in the stands immediately after witnessing the nine athletes crossing the finish line hand-in-hand.

Ans :

Rohan: I still can't believe what we just witnessed down there! Did you see how they all stopped dead in their tracks when that young boy fell?

Aman: Yes! It was absolutely surreal. I was fully expecting the others to sprint faster to secure the gold, but they actually turned back.

Rohan: It gave me goosebumps. They trained for months and years, yet they sacrificed their own dreams without a single second thought just to help him to his feet.

Aman: And watching them cross the finish line hand-in-hand... it truly brought tears to my eyes. That's exactly why everyone in the stadium gave them a standing ovation.

Rohan: Absolutely. The organizers giving all nine of them a gold medal was the perfect decision. They showed the entire world that basic humanity is the greatest victory.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"The athletes had come from all over the country
To run for the gold, for the silver, and bronze
Many weeks and months of training
All coming down to these games."

- i. The phrase "All coming down to these games" implies that the event was the athletes' -----.
(a) ultimate culmination

(b) utter desperation

(c) bitter frustration

(d) sudden hesitation

- ii. Which of the following statements best describes the speaker's perspective on the athletes' preparation?

(a) The speaker feels the athletes are unprepared for the event.

(b) The speaker highlights the intense dedication behind the event.

(c) The speaker believes training is irrelevant to winning medals.

(d) The speaker mocks the physical strain of athletic training.

- iii. Where had the athletes come from and what were they competing for?

- iv. Identify the exact phrase from the stanza that signifies the rewards the competitors were hoping to win.

- v. State whether the following statement is True or False:

The athletes gathered solely for participation without any desire to win.

Ans :

- i. (a) ultimate culmination

- ii. (b) The speaker highlights the intense dedication behind the event.

- iii. The athletes had come from all over the country and were competing for the gold, silver and bronze medals.

- iv. gold, for the silver, and bronze

- v. False, because the text explicitly states they came "To run for the gold, for the silver, and bronze".

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"The blocks were all lined up for those who would use them

The hundred-yard dash and the race to be run

These were nine resolved athletes in the back of the starting line

Poised for the sound of the gun."

- i. The word "resolved" indicates that the athletes standing at the back were:

(a) highly confused

(b) firmly determined

(c) physically exhausted

(d) completely terrified

- ii. Read the following statements:

- I. The athletes were standing in random, chaotic positions.

II. The athletes were highly focused and waiting for the signal.

Choose the correct option:

- (a) Both I and II are correct statements.
 - (b) Only Statement I is a correct statement.
 - (c) Only Statement II is a correct statement.
 - (d) Neither I nor II are correct statements.
- iii. What does the phrase "Poised for the sound of the gun" tell us about the athletes' state of mind?
- iv. Which single word in the extract means 'ready and balanced in position'?
- v. How many athletes in total were getting ready for the hundred-yard dash?

Ans :

- i. (b) firmly determined
- ii. (c) Only Statement II is a correct statement.
- iii. The athletes were completely focused, balanced and ready to sprint the moment the starting gun fired.
- iv. Poised
- v. Nine

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"The signal was given, the pistol exploded
And so did the runners all charging ahead
But the smallest among them, he stumbled and staggered

And fell to the asphalt instead."

i. What does the phrase "pistol exploded" signify in this specific context?

- (a) A dangerous accident
- (b) The race's beginning
- (c) An unexpected attack
- (d) The crowd's reaction

ii. Read the following statements:

- I. The runners moved forward with explosive energy.
- II. The smallest runner unexpectedly lost his balance.

Choose the correct option:

- (a) Statement I is the direct cause of Statement II.
- (b) Statement II is the direct cause of Statement I.
- (c) Both statements are true but act independently.
- (d) Statement I completely contradicts Statement II.

iii. What unfortunate incident happened to the smallest runner after the race began?

iv. State the contextual meaning of the word "asphalt" as used in the poem.

v. State whether the following statement is True or False:

All the runners successfully began the race without any issues. Give a 1-sentence reason.

Ans :

- i. (b) The race's beginning
- ii. (c) Both statements are true but act independently.
- iii. The smallest runner stumbled and staggered and fell to the hard surface of the track.
- iv. The hard, black surface of the running track.
- v. False, because the smallest runner lost his balance and fell to the ground.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"He gave out a cry of frustration and anguish
His dreams and his efforts dashed in the dirt
But as sure as I'm standing here telling this story
The same goes for what next occurred."

i. The phrase "dashed in the dirt" implies that the young boy's hopes were:

- (a) quickly restored
- (b) completely shattered
- (c) temporarily paused
- (d) slowly forgotten

ii. **Assertion (A):** The narrator is absolutely certain about the events that followed the boy's fall.

Reason (R): The narrator explicitly states "as sure as I'm standing here telling this story".

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation.
- (c) A is a true statement but R is a false statement.
- (d) A is a false statement but R is a true statement.

iii. What two emotions did the fallen athlete express through his cry?

iv. Identify the figure of speech used in the phrase "dashed in the dirt".

v. Fill in the blank:

The fallen athlete cried out because he felt a deep sense of _____ and _____.

Ans :

- i. (b) completely shattered
- ii. (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation.
- iii. The fallen athlete expressed deep frustration and anguish through his cry.
- iv. Alliteration (or Metaphor)
- v. frustration; anguish

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“The eight other runners pulled up on their heels
The ones who had trained for so long to compete
One by one they all turned round and went back to help him

And brought the young boy to his feet.”

- i. The runners’ immediate decision to turn around highlights their:
 - (a) competitive spirit
 - (b) lack of stamina
 - (c) shared humanity
 - (d) desire for fame
- ii. Which statement best captures the underlying irony in these specific lines?
 - (a) They trained to compete but chose to cooperate.
 - (b) They stopped running because they were exhausted.
 - (c) They helped the boy because he was winning it.
 - (d) They turned back because they lost their tracks.
- iii. How did the eight runners respond when the smallest athlete fell down?
- iv. Identify the exact phrase that highlights the immense dedication the runners had put in before this moment.
- v. State whether the following statement is True or False:
The athletes turned back to help the fallen boy simultaneously at the exact same second.

Ans :

- i. (c) shared humanity
- ii. (a) They trained to compete but chose to cooperate.
- iii. One by one all eight runners stopped, turned around and went back to help the fallen boy back to his feet.
- iv. trained for so long to compete
- v. False, because the text explicitly states that they turned round “One by one”.

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“That’s how the race ended, with nine gold medals
They came to the finish line holding hands still
And a standing ovation and nine beaming faces
Said more than these words ever will.”

- i. The fact that the race ended with “nine gold medals” suggests that:
 - (a) everyone broke a record
 - (b) sportsmanship was truly rewarded
 - (c) the judges made an error
 - (d) no one actually finished it
- ii. Consider the following two statements based on the extract:

I. The spectators showed their deep appreciation for the athletes.

II. A standing ovation was given to the nine runners.

Choose the correct option:

- (a) Statement I is the direct cause of Statement II.
- (b) Statement II is the clear evidence for Statement I.
- (c) Statement I completely contradicts Statement II.
- (d) Both statements are completely unrelated events.
- iii. What does the final line “Said more than these words ever will” convey about the athletes’ act?
- iv. What physical expression on the athletes’ faces showed their immense pride and happiness?
- v. Fill in the blank:
The nine athletes crossed the finish line _____ instead of running independently.

Ans :

- i. (b) sportsmanship was truly rewarded
- ii. (b) Statement II is the clear evidence for Statement I.
- iii. The athletes’ act of compassion and unity was so powerful and moving that no words could ever fully capture its deep meaning and impact.
- iv. beaming faces
- v. holding hands



Ans :

Role Play Script :

Music Teacher : Good morning, everyone. Rahul (Student 1), I noticed you have a great sense of rhythm. I strongly encourage you to take up evening music classes. It will help you develop a wonderful skill.

Student 1 (Rahul) : Thank you, sir. But I am very confused. I am worried that attending music classes every evening might take away valuable time from my studies. I have my final exams coming up.

Parent : I agree with Rahul. As a parent, I am initially quite doubtful about this. Academics are our priority right now. Will learning an instrument distract him from his schoolwork?

Student 2 (Anjali) : If I may share my experience? I have been learning music for a year now. I am completely convinced that music is beneficial. Actually, playing an instrument relaxes my mind, which helps me focus better on my studies. I have learned to manage my time efficiently.

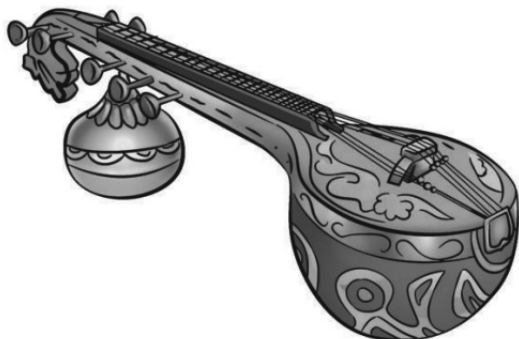
Music Teacher : Anjali is absolutely right. Music acts as a stress-reliever. It actually enhances concentration rather than distracting from it. We can easily adjust the class timings so they don't clash with Rahul's study schedule.

Student 1 (Rahul) : That sounds reassuring. If it helps me focus better and manage my stress, I would love to give it a try.

Parent : Hearing Anjali's experience and your assurance, sir, makes me feel much better. I am supportive of this idea now. Let us enroll Rahul in the music classes!

Writing Task

- I. Your school is organising a musical evening on 21 June, World Music Day. You are presenting a Sitar recital at the event. Draft an invitation letter requesting your grandparents to attend the event.



Follow the guidelines given below to draft the invitation letter.

Format :

Sender's address

Date

Salutation : Dear...

Body of the letter :

- Ask about their well-being.
- Mention the event and give details—date, time, and venue.
- Request them to attend.

Complimentary close: Yours affectionately,
Name of the sender

Language :

- Use first person—'I' and second person 'We' and 'You'.
- Write in a warm and personalised style.

Ans :

14, Green Park Avenue

New Delhi - 110016

10 June 2024

Dear Grandpa and Grandma,

I hope this letter finds you both in the best of health and happiness. I am doing well here and my studies are going smoothly.

I am writing to share some very exciting news with you. Our school is organising a grand musical evening to celebrate World Music Day on the 21st of June. I am thrilled to inform you that I have been selected to present a solo Sitar recital at the event!

The programme will take place in the main School Auditorium, starting at 5:00 PM. I have been practising very hard for the past month, and it would mean the world to me if you could be there in the audience to bless me. Your presence always gives me confidence.

Please let me know when you will be arriving so we can make the necessary arrangements. I am eagerly looking forward to seeing you both.

Yours affectionately,
Aarav

Learning Beyond the Text

- I. Did you know, India's rich musical heritage has a lot to offer to our well-being? *Raga Chikitsa*, one of the ancient texts, elaborates on the healing properties of music. A seventeenth century work titled *Sangita Sudha* gives an account of the effects of music on emotions. Find out how music is used as an alternative therapy in the present

Word Meaning :

1. Therapy - A treatment that helps heal or comfort someone who is unwell or upset.
2. Blue - Feeling sad, depressed, or unhappy.
3. Spirits - A person's mood or emotional state.
4. Pull through - To succeed in surviving or getting past a very difficult situation.

Explanation :

In this stanza, the poet talks about the healing power of music. When she is feeling sad or depressed (feeling “blue”), music acts like medicine or therapy. It comforts her mind and helps heal her emotional pain.

Music has the special ability to improve her mood and make her feel happier. By “lifting her spirits,” music gives the poet the emotional strength and motivation she needs to overcome hard times and survive whatever challenges she is facing.

Stanza 3

The times when I'm most cheerful,
It's clear, music was there.
Music is the needed friend
When no one seems to care.

Word Meaning :

1. Cheerful - Noticeably happy, bright, and optimistic.
2. Clear - Easy to understand or see; obvious.

Explanation :

The poet points out that music is not just for sad times; it is also a huge part of her happy moments. Whenever she is at her happiest and most cheerful, music is usually playing in the background, adding to her joy and celebrating with her.

Finally, she personifies music by calling it a “needed friend.” In moments of loneliness, when it feels like no other human being understands or cares about her problems, music is always there. It acts as a reliable companion that offers comfort and support without judging her.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

The poem consists of 3 stanzas. The rhyme scheme is ABCB.

1. **Metaphor:** A direct comparison between two unrelated things without using “like” or “as.” For example, “Music is the ocean” shows how the poet compares music to a vast body of water to suggest it is deep, powerful, and overwhelming.

2. **Anaphora:** The repetition of a word or phrase at the beginning of successive lines. For example, “Music is the...” (repeated in lines 1, 3, and 5) shows how the poet emphasizes that music is the central focus and the cause of every feeling described.
3. **Personification:** Giving human qualities or roles to non-human things. For example, “Music is the needed friend” shows the poet treating music as a person who offers companionship and support when the speaker feels lonely or uncared for.
4. **Imagery:** Language that appeals to the senses to create a mental picture. For example, “That pulls me to the shore” shows a clear visual and physical sensation of being moved by a current, helping the reader “see” music's guiding power.
5. **Idiom:** A common expression where the meaning is different from the literal words. For example, “when I feel blue” shows the speaker is feeling sad. This phrase is a common way to describe a mood without literally referring to the color.
6. **Alliteration:** The repetition of the same consonant sound at the start of words close together. For example, “moves me” shows how the repeating “m” sound creates a soft, humming rhythm that reflects the musical theme of the poem.

5. MESSAGE

The main message of the poem is that music is a powerful healer and a true friend. The poet beautifully shows how melodies comfort us when we feel sad or lonely. When human friends cannot help, music acts like a peaceful, endless ocean. The poet reminds us that listening to music gives us inner strength. It acts as a reliable anchor, helping us stay calm and strong during the most difficult times in our lives.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS**Reflect and Respond**

- I. **Read the questions given below and share your answers with your classmates and teacher.**
1. What kind of music do you prefer to listen to—vocal or instrumental?

songs lift my spirits even higher. Music is truly a constant friend in my life.

Vocabulary in Context

I. Read the following phrases from the poem denoting happiness and sadness.

Classify the words given in the box below as positive emotions and negative emotions.

feel blue	lifts my spirits	most cheerful
-----------	------------------	---------------

- Positive emotions (happiness): _____
- Negative emotions (sadness): _____

Ans :

- Positive emotions (happiness) : **lifts my spirits, most cheerful**
- Negative emotions (sadness) : **feel blue**

Now, fill in the blanks by choosing the correct word from those given in the brackets.

- The familiar tune stimulated a rush of _____, transporting listeners back to cherished moments from their past. (nostalgia/elation)
- The soulful ballad expressed the singer's _____, leaving the audience moved by the intensity of their emotions. (despondence/anguish)
- The pianist played a soulful melody on the stage, creating an ambience of _____. (melancholy/despair)
- The festive symphony filled the air with _____ tones, lifting the spirits of everyone present on the joyous occasion. (jubilant/euphoric)

Ans :

1. nostalgia
2. anguish
3. melancholy
4. jubilant

II. Read the highlighted word in the line given below.

To make sure I **pull through**

The meaning of the verb 'pull' is 'move or remove something'. The preposition 'through' means 'from one end or side to the other'. However, when they come together they convey a completely different meaning. Here, 'pull through' means 'to succeed in doing something very difficult'.

When a verb consists of two parts, the first part is a verb; the second part is a preposition or an adverb. When they come in such combinations the verbs convey a totally different meaning. Such multi-verbs are called **phrasal verbs**.

Now, read the following lines from the poem.

Music is the rhythm

That moves me to the core.

The phrase 'moves me' means 'to make somebody do something'.

'Move' also has different meanings. For example, to change position, to make progress, to take action, cause strong feelings.

Ans :

1. **Pull through** : to succeed in doing something very difficult
2. **Moves me** : to make somebody do something / to strongly affect someone's feelings

Explanation :

These are phrasal verbs (verb + preposition/adverb) whose meanings are different from the individual words:

1. Pull + through ≠ just pull + pass
 2. Move + me ≠ just change position
- They express a new, deeper meaning.

III. Choose the correct meaning from the box given below for the underlined phrasal verbs in the following sentences.

- i. to start doing or discussing something new
 - ii. to begin living in a new home or place
 - iii. to start moving; to leave
 - iv. to go to a new position, especially in order to make room for other people
 - v. to leave a place where one has been living
 - vi. to shift position to make space for someone or something
1. He's planning to **move out** of his parents' house next month.
 2. Our new neighbours **moved in** yesterday.
 3. I've been in this job long enough—it's time I **moved on**.
 4. Can you **move over** a bit so I can sit down?
 5. The police officer told the crowd to **move along**.
 6. The bus **moved off** as soon as all the passengers were seated.

Ans :

1. (v) to leave a place where one has been living
2. (ii) to begin living in a new home or place
3. (i) to start doing or discussing something new
4. (vi) to shift position to make space for someone or something
5. (iii) to start moving; to leave
6. (iii) to start moving; to leave

6. Identify the mood of the poem from the options given below.

- (i) nostalgic
- (ii) thoughtful
- (iii) amused
- (iv) playful

Ans :

- (ii) thoughtful

7. Give evidence from the poem to support that the speaker is the poet herself.

Ans :

The speaker uses first-person pronouns throughout the poem, indicating a deeply personal experience. Evidence from the text includes: "That pulls **me** to the shore," "I need when **I** feel blue," and "Music lifts **my** spirits."

Critical Reflection

- I. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow.

1. Music is the therapy
I need when I feel blue.
Music lifts my spirits
To make sure I pull through.
- i. Complete the following sentence suitably.
The phrase 'feel blue' indicates _____.
- ii. Identify the line which shows music makes the poet happy.
- iii. What does the last line of the extract signify?
- iv. State whether the following sentence is true or false.
Music plays a vital role in the poet's life.
- v. Select the central idea of the extract from the following options.
 - A. Music brings comfort during sadness.
 - B. Music is a necessity in times of happiness.
 - C. Music improves our ability to pull heavy loads.
 - D. Music is a source of knowledge and excitement.

Ans :

- i. The phrase 'feel blue' indicates **feeling sad, depressed, or low in spirits**.
- ii. The line that shows this is : "Music lifts my spirits"
- iii. The last line, "To make sure I pull through," signifies that music gives the poet the

emotional strength and resilience required to survive and overcome difficult or painful times in her life.

iv. True.

v. A. Music brings comfort during sadness.

II. Answer the following questions.

How is music able to move the poet 'to the core'?

Ans :

Music moves the poet "to the core" by connecting deeply with her innermost feelings. The rhythm and melodies resonate with her soul, stirring strong emotional reactions that are far deeper than just surface-level entertainment.

2. Why does the poet compare music to a 'needed friend'?

Ans :

The poet compares music to a "needed friend" because, much like a true and loyal companion, music is always there to offer comfort, support, and understanding, especially during times of loneliness when no one else seems to care.

3. Explain the poet's attitude towards music.

Ans :

The poet has a deeply appreciative, affectionate, and reliant attitude towards music. She views it not just as a form of art, but as an essential healer (therapy), an emotional anchor, and a dependable companion that supports her through both good and bad times.

4. Support the opinion that this poem has a universal appeal.

Ans :

This poem has universal appeal because the emotions it describes—feeling sad, needing comfort, and finding joy—are experienced by everyone. People across all cultures and ages turn to music to heal, to find motivation, or to feel understood, making the poet's personal relationship with music highly relatable to readers worldwide.

5. Compare your experience of music with the feelings expressed in the poem.

Ans :

My experience with music closely matches the poet's feelings. Like the poet, I use music as "therapy." When I am stressed about exams, listening to calm instrumental music helps me relax. Conversely, when I am happy, energetic

CHAPTER 6

A FRIEND FOUND IN MUSIC

1. INTRODUCTION

The poem presents a deeply personal and emotional reflection on the profound role of music in everyday life. Set against the backdrop of life's unpredictable ups and downs, the premise focuses on the poet's internal struggles with loneliness, sadness, and isolation. When human companionship falls short, the poet turns to the rhythmic and soothing presence of melodies, vividly comparing music to a vast, boundless ocean. The text explores the psychological landscape of navigating difficult emotional phases, highlighting how this art form functions as a constant, dependable friend and a therapeutic anchor amidst personal hardships.

2. SUMMARY

The Deep and Magnetic Connection to Music

The speaker describes a deep, natural attraction to music, expressing how it acts like a vast ocean that constantly draws them towards its comforting shore. The sounds and melodies create an intense, internal connection within the speaker. The rhythmic beats of the music deeply touch their heart and soul, stirring their innermost feelings and moving them profoundly.

Music as a Healing and Uplifting Force

In moments of sadness or emotional distress, the speaker turns to music as a soothing form of healing. It acts as a powerful source of comfort that instantly elevates their mood and helps them overcome their troubles. By lifting their spirits, music gives the speaker the necessary strength and emotional support to successfully survive and recover from difficult periods in life.

A Constant and Reliable Companion

The speaker reflects on how music is present not just in times of sorrow, but also during their happiest and most joyful moments. It remains a constant, celebratory presence when they are in a great mood. Furthermore, in situations where

the speaker feels completely alone or neglected by the people around them, music steps in to act as a loyal, much-needed friend, offering unwavering companionship and care.

3. EXPLANATIONSS

Stanza 1

Music is the ocean
That pulls me to the shore.
Music is the rhythm
That moves me to the core.

Word Meaning :

1. Ocean - A vast body of water; used here to describe how huge and powerful music feels.
2. Rhythm - A strong, regular repeated pattern of sound or movement.
3. Core - The deepest or most central part of something; here, it means a person's deepest feelings or soul.

Explanation :

The poet begins by comparing music to a vast ocean, using a metaphor to show how powerful and deep it is. Just as ocean waves pull things toward the shore, the poet feels naturally drawn to music. It gives her a sense of direction and safety.

In the next lines, the poet describes music as a "rhythm" that touches her deeply inside. This means that the beats and sounds of music do not just enter her ears; they connect with her innermost emotions. The repetition of the phrase "Music is..." at the start of these lines highlights how central and important music is to the poet's life.

Stanza 2

Music is the therapy
I need when I feel blue.
Music lifts my spirits
To make sure I pull through.

IV. Create phrasal verbs from the verbs 'put', 'get', 'look', 'break'. Find the meanings of the phrasal verbs you create. Make sentences with the phrasal verbs. Discuss them with your classmates and teacher.

Ans :

1. **Put :**

Phrasal Verb : Put off

Meaning : To delay or postpone something.

Sentence : The school had to put off the sports day due to heavy rain.

2. **Get :**

Phrasal Verb : Get over

Meaning : To recover from an illness or an upsetting situation.

Sentence : It took Rohan a few weeks to get over his cold.

3. **Look :**

Phrasal Verb : Look after

Meaning : To take care of someone or something.

Sentence : My grandmother asked me to look after her garden while she was away.

4. **Break :**

Phrasal Verb : Break down

Meaning : To stop functioning (for a machine or vehicle).

Sentence : Our car broke down on the highway, and we had to call for a mechanic.

Listen and Respond

I. Before you listen, read the questions and guess the responses to the given questions.

1. How are the two speakers connected?

- (i) parent-child
- (ii) teacher-student
- (iii) brother-sister

2. Where is the conversation taking place?

- (i) music centre
- (ii) park
- (iii) school reception area

3. Which musical instrument is the reason for the problem?

- (i) sitar
- (ii) santoor
- (iii) sarod

4. What is the problem being discussed?

- (i) inability to play the musical instrument
- (ii) irregularity of the music class
- (iii) lack of choice of the musical instrument

5. What has been the unsuccessful solution?

- (i) practising for longer hours
- (ii) singing while playing the instrument
- (iii) watching videos about playing the instrument

6. What is the final decision taken?

- (i) change classes
- (ii) pick a simpler instrument
- (iii) purchase the musical instrument

Ans :

- 1. (ii) teacher-student
- 2. (i) music centre
- 3. (i) sitar
- 4. (i) inability to play the musical instrument
- 5. (i) practising for longer hours
- 6. (ii) pick a simpler instrument

II. Now, listen to the conversation between the two people. As you listen, check your answers and rectify them wherever needed. Once done, discuss your responses with your classmates and teacher. (Transcript for teacher on page 270)

Ans :

- 1. Why is Jaspreet upset?
Jaspreet is upset because he is **not getting enough practice in playing the santoor**.
- 2. What problem is he facing?
The **santoor teacher comes only twice a week**, so his practice is not regular.
- 3. What does his mother suggest first?
She suggests **watching videos to learn santoor**.
- 4. Why does Jaspreet not find videos helpful?
Because **playing an instrument requires hands-on practice**, not just watching.
- 5. What solution does his mother finally give?
She decides to **borrow a santoor from her friend** so he can practice at home.
- 6. How does Jaspreet feel at the end?
He feels **happy and relieved**.

Speaking Activity

I. Work in groups of four and choose a role each. Use the cues given below to present a role play in the class. Frame your responses logically in complete sentences. You may frame appropriate questions to ensure continuity in the conversation.

Music teacher:
encourages the student to take up music classes

Student 1:
confused—feels music class may take away time from studies

Student 2:
music learner—is convinced that music is beneficial and can manage time

Parent:
initially doubtful but later supportive after the discussion

Ans :

(d) Her inner self

8. What specific word does the poet use to describe her inner self?

(a) Core (b) Mind
(c) Soul (d) Heart

Ans :

(a) Core

9. Music moves the poet's emotions in ways she cannot easily -----.

(a) contain (b) explain
(c) express (d) control

Ans :

(b) explain

10. **Assertion (A):** The poet feels a deep and personal relationship with music.

Reason (R): Music acts as a vast ocean that constantly ignores her inner self.

(a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation.
(b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation.
(c) Assertion A is true but the Reason R is completely false.
(d) Assertion A is false but the Reason R is completely true.

Ans :

(c) Assertion A is true but the Reason R is completely false.

11. Which of the following statements is correct regarding the first section?

(a) Music is seen as just a basic form of daily entertainment.
(b) The rhythm of music completely fails to reach the poet's core.
(c) The poet easily explains exactly how music shifts her emotions.
(d) The poet compares music to an ocean calling to its shore.

Ans :

(d) The poet compares music to an ocean calling to its shore.

12. What does the metaphor of the "vast ocean" primarily suggest about music in the poet's life?

(a) It is boundless, deep, and holds a highly powerful presence.

(b) It is dangerous, volatile, and causes extreme emotional harm.

(c) It is completely distant and stays away from her daily routine.

(d) It is shallow, temporary, and only appears during the summer.

Ans :

(a) It is boundless, deep, and holds a highly powerful presence.

13. What is one of the central themes mentioned in the second section?

(a) The loud beats of songs
(b) The sad state of the world
(c) The ocean's heavy waves
(d) The healing power of music

Ans :

(d) The healing power of music

14. How does the poet describe her feelings when she needs music the most?

(a) Angry and upset (b) Tired and sleepy
(c) Sad and depressed (d) Calm and peaceful

Ans :

(c) Sad and depressed

15. Which color is used in the text to describe the poet feeling sad?

(a) Red (b) Grey
(c) Dark (d) Blue

Ans :

(d) Blue

16. When the poet is feeling "blue," music acts as her -----.

(a) therapy (b) problem
(c) shelter (d) teacher

Ans :

(a) therapy

17. As a therapy, what does music do to the poet's emotional aches?

(a) It ignores them (b) It creates them
(c) It expands them (d) It soothes them

Ans :

(d) It soothes them

times.

Ans :

In present times, Music Therapy is a recognized alternative clinical therapy used by professionals to promote wellness. Therapists use music to help patients manage stress, reduce anxiety, and alleviate pain. For example, listening to calming melodies can lower heart rates and blood pressure. It is also heavily used in treating cognitive conditions like Alzheimer's and autism, as rhythmic beats and familiar songs can trigger memory recall and help patients communicate their emotions when words fail them.

II. Everything in nature has a rhythm or sound vibration, even our heartbeat. Speak to your music teacher and find out about the origin of the seven swaras (notes) of Indian classical music.

Ans :

According to Indian classical music traditions, the seven **swaras** (Shadja, Rishabha, Gandhara, Madhyama, Panchama, Dhaivata, and Nishada—commonly known as Sa, Re, Ga, Ma, Pa, Dha, Ni) originated from the sounds of nature and animals. For instance, it is believed that :

Sa originates from the cry of the peacock.

Re comes from the lowing of a bull or cow.

Ga is inspired by the bleating of a goat.

Ma is drawn from the call of the heron or crane.

Pa mirrors the sweet song of the cuckoo or nightingale.

Dha represents the neighing of a horse.

Ni originates from the trumpet of an elephant.

This beautifully connects human music directly to the natural world.

III. You must have read or heard poems and songs about music—both in English and in your own language. Share some of them with your classmates and create a collection of these poems and songs together.

Ans :

An excellent poem to add to the collection is “The Arrow and the Song” by H.W. Longfellow.

A snippet of it reads :

“I breathed a song into the air,

It fell to earth, I knew not where...

And the song, from beginning to end,

I found again in the heart of a friend.”

Students are encouraged to bring their regional language songs, like traditional folk songs or Kabir Das **Dohas** regarding sound and music, to create a diverse class booklet.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

- What is the main subject of the poem?
(a) The vast oceans (b) Connection to music
(c) Deep inner emotions (d) Pure entertainment

Ans :

- (b) Connection to music

- To the poet, music is not merely a source of _____.
(a) true friendship (b) emotional power
(c) daily entertainment (d) personal resilience

Ans :

- (c) daily entertainment

- Instead of just entertaining, music is described as an _____ part of her life.

- (a) ordinary (b) optional
(c) external (d) essential

Ans :

- (d) essential

- What does the poet compare music to in the first paragraph?

- (a) A vast ocean (b) A close friend
(c) A deep forest (d) A loud rhythm

Ans :

- (a) A vast ocean

- The vast ocean of music constantly calls the poet to its _____.

- (a) deep core (b) wide shore
(c) dark waves (d) high tides

Ans :

- (b) wide shore

- Music acts as a powerful _____ that connects with the poet.

- (a) healing force (b) steady melody
(c) strong rhythm (d) beating ocean

Ans :

- (c) strong rhythm

- Where does this powerful rhythm connect deeply within the poet?

- (a) Her active mind (b) Her daily life
(c) Her basic needs (d) Her inner self

Ans :

I prefer listening to vocal music because the lyrics help me connect deeply with the emotions of the song. However, when I am studying or trying to relax, I enjoy instrumental music as it is soothing and helps me focus.

2. Name your favourite musician(s).

Ans :

My favourite musicians are A.R. Rahman and Shreya Ghoshal.

3. Give reasons for your choice.

Ans :

I admire A.R. Rahman for his ability to blend traditional Indian classical music with modern electronic sounds, creating melodies that feel both fresh and timeless. I love Shreya Ghoshal because her voice is incredibly expressive, sweet, and versatile, bringing life to every song she sings.

Check Your Understanding

- I. Read the poem again to complete the poet's diary about her feelings on music. Fill in the blanks with words from the poem.

Today, I've been thinking about how essential music is to me. It is like an ocean that calls me to its 1. _____. Music is the 2. _____ that harmonises with my 3. _____, moving me in ways I can't explain. When I feel sad or upset about things, music is the 4. _____ that eases the ache. It is amazing how music has the power to lift my 5. _____, and give me strength to pull through difficult times. I know that it is the effect of music whenever I feel 6. _____. Music is the much 7. _____, dependable friend when there is no one to 8. _____. Thank you, my dear music, for being my all-time comfort.

Ans :

Today, I've been thinking about how essential music is to me. It is like an ocean that calls me to its 1. **shore**. Music is the 2. **rhythm** that harmonises with my 3. **core**, moving me in ways I can't explain. When I feel sad or upset about things, music is the 4. **therapy** that eases the ache. It is amazing how music has the power to lift my 5. **spirits**, and give me strength to pull through difficult times. I know that it is the effect of music whenever I feel 6. **cheerful**. Music is the much 7. **needed**, dependable friend when there is no one to 8. **care**. Thank you, my dear music, for being my all-time comfort.

II. Let us appreciate the poem.

1. The phrase 'moves me' in the line 'That moves me to the core,' is an example of _____.

Ans :

The phrase 'moves me' in the line 'That moves me to the core,' is an example of an **idiom/metaphor** (it is used metaphorically to express strong emotional impact, not physical movement).

The poet uses metaphors for music. List these metaphors and rewrite them as similes. For example, Music is as _____ as _____.

Ans :

Metaphors and their Similes

- Music is a river → Music is as soothing as a river.
- Music is a bird → Music is as free as a bird.
- Music is a prayer → Music is as pure as a prayer.
- Music is a language → Music is as expressive as a language.
- Music is a healer → Music is as comforting as a healer.

3. What is the rhyme scheme of the poem? What impact does it have?

Ans :

The rhyme scheme of the poem is **abcb** for each stanza (e.g., Stanza 1: ocean/shore/rhythm/core).

Impact : This simple, rhythmic rhyme scheme gives the poem a musical, song-like quality. It creates a soothing and predictable flow that mirrors the comforting and constant nature of music described in the poem.

4. What is the poet's purpose in using the word 'music' repetitively?

Ans :

The poet repeats the word 'music' to emphasize its central role and constant presence in her life. The repetition acts like a steady musical beat, reinforcing the idea that music is the ultimate source of comfort, joy, and healing for her.

5. What is the message the poet wishes to convey through the poem?

Ans :

The poet wishes to convey that music is a powerful and reliable companion. It has the therapeutic ability to heal us during times of sorrow, uplift our spirits during struggles, and share in our joy during happy moments.

18. Besides soothing aches, music also _____ her spirits.

(a) crushes (b) lifts
(c) hides (d) calms

Ans :

(b) lifts

19. During what kind of times does music provide emotional strength?

(a) Loud and noisy times
(b) Calm and quiet times
(c) Happy and joyful times
(d) Difficult and painful times

Ans :

(d) Difficult and painful times

20. Music gives the poet emotional strength and _____.

(a) resilience (b) popularity
(c) bitterness (d) physicality

Ans :

(a) resilience

21. This strength and resilience help the poet to _____.

(a) step back (b) break down
(c) give away (d) pull through

Ans :

(d) pull through

22. Music has the power to transform the poet's sadness into _____.

(a) loneliness (b) bitterness
(c) cheerfulness (d) exhaustion

Ans :

(c) cheerfulness

23. **Assertion (A):** Music transforms the poet's sadness into pure cheerfulness.

Reason (R): Music acts as a therapy that soothes her emotional aches.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation.
(b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation.
(c) Assertion A is true but the Reason R is completely false.
(d) Assertion A is false but the Reason R is completely true.

Ans :

(a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation.

24. Which of the following statements is correct about music's role as a healer?

- (a) Music always makes the poet feel blue during very painful times.
(b) Music provides emotional resilience for the poet to truly survive.
(c) Music is only considered useful when the poet is feeling cheerful.
(d) Music greatly increases the emotional aches during difficult moments.

Ans :

(b) Music provides emotional resilience for the poet to truly survive.

25. In the context of healing, what does the phrase "pull through" imply?

- (a) To successfully overcome a difficult and challenging situation.
(b) To physically drag heavy musical instruments across a room.
(c) To completely avoid dealing with any sad or negative emotions.
(d) To easily forget all the happy memories from the recent past.

Ans :

(a) To successfully overcome a difficult and challenging situation.

26. Beyond being a healing tool, music is viewed as a _____ companion.

(a) brief (b) loyal
(c) quiet (d) harsh

Ans :

(b) loyal

27. Music is also described as a _____ companion.

(a) constant (b) distant
(c) fleeting (d) selfish

Ans :

(a) constant

28. The poet specifically refers to music as a "much-needed _____."

(a) therapy (b) rhythm
(c) ocean (d) friend

4. Compose a short dialogue between the poet and a teenager who believes music is strictly for dancing and superficial entertainment.

Ans :

Teenager: I don't get why you sit alone in your room listening to music. It's just meant for dancing and parties, right? It's just basic entertainment!

Poet: It might be entertainment for some, but to me, it is an essential part of life. It's like a vast ocean.

Teenager: An ocean? That sounds a bit too dramatic.

Poet: Not at all. When I feel 'blue' and misunderstood by the world, music is the only thing that connects with my core. It acts as a therapy that soothes my emotional aches.

Teenager: So, it's like a friend to you?

Poet: Exactly. It's the ultimate dependable friend. When no one else is around to care, its steady rhythm gives me the strength to pull through my toughest days.

5. "Music is not merely a source of entertainment; it is a vast ocean." Elaborate on this statement, analyzing the metaphors and themes used by the poet to describe music's depth.

Ans :

The statement highlights the profound depth and boundlessness of music, elevating it far above simple, everyday entertainment. By metaphorically comparing music to a "vast ocean," the poet emphasizes its immense scale, power, and overwhelming presence. Just as an ocean's tide constantly calls to the shore, music exerts a continuous, magnetic pull on the poet's inner self. An ocean is deep and mysterious, mirroring how music shifts the poet's emotions in ways she cannot easily explain. Furthermore, this metaphor perfectly supports the theme of healing. Just as water cleanses, this ocean of music washes away the poet's "blue" periods, soothing her aches and providing the emotional resilience necessary to pull through the rough currents of life's continuous ups and downs.

6. Discuss the overarching theme of the healing power of music as presented in the text. How does it function as both a medical "therapy" and a personal "friend"?

Ans :

The poem highlights the dual role of music as both a healer and a companion. It shows that music is not just a source of entertainment but a

powerful support system for emotional well-being.

As a form of therapy, music helps the poet overcome sadness and emotional pain. When she feels "blue," music acts like a soothing remedy, easing her distress and helping her regain strength and happiness. It plays an active role in improving her mental state.

At the same time, music serves as a dependable friend. In moments of loneliness, when no one else understands her feelings, music stays constant and supportive. It offers comfort without judgment, helping her overcome deep emotional isolation.

7. Analyze the poet's assertion that the message of music is "universal." How does the text support the idea that music transcends personal boundaries?

Ans :

The poet asserts that the message of music is deeply universal because it speaks directly to fundamental human experiences. The text explicitly points out that life consists of inevitable "ups and downs" that are experienced by absolutely everyone, regardless of who they are. Because pain, loneliness, and the need for comfort are shared human traits, the reliance on music becomes highly relatable across all ages and cultures. Music does not require a specific language to be understood; its strong rhythm connects with the human "core." Whether it is providing a steady presence during sorrowful times or amplifying joy during happy moments, music acts as a unifying, powerful force that successfully bridges personal, cultural, and generational divides.

8. Evaluate the emotional transformation the poet undergoes in the poem. What drives this change, and what does it reveal about her inner strength?

Ans :

The poet experiences a deep emotional transformation, moving from sadness to strength. At first, she feels "blue" and overwhelmed by loneliness and life's challenges, which makes her emotionally vulnerable.

Instead of giving in to despair, she turns to music as a source of comfort and healing. This shows her self-awareness and inner strength, as she understands how to cope with her emotions. Music becomes her refuge, helping her calm her mind and regain stability.

Through this connection with music, she develops resilience and the ability to move forward. Her journey highlights that true strength

Ans :

(c) constant

40. Along with being constant, music's presence in her life is described as _____.

(a) weak (b) steady
(c) heavy (d) rare

Ans :

(b) steady

41. The text mentions that ups and downs are experienced by _____.

(a) poets (b) leaders
(c) everyone (d) nobody

Ans :

(c) everyone

42. What does the "universal message" of the poem ultimately suggest about human nature?

(a) Everyone requires some form of emotional support to handle challenges.
(b) People generally prefer to face their emotional struggles without support.
(c) Most individuals find it extremely difficult to connect with musical rhythms.
(d) Only certain types of people can truly appreciate the deep meaning of songs.

Ans :

(a) Everyone requires some form of emotional support to handle challenges.

43. How does the repetition of the word "music" impact the overall tone of the poem?

(a) It creates a sense of boredom by constantly mentioning the exact same word.
(b) It reinforces the unwavering, dependable nature of music in the poet's life.
(c) It shows that the poet has a very limited vocabulary to express sad feelings.
(d) It makes the poem sound like a fast, upbeat song rather than a reflection.

Ans :

(b) It reinforces the unwavering, dependable nature of music in the poet's life.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. What does the poet compare music to in the opening stanzas, and what does this signify?

Ans :

The poet beautifully compares music to a "vast ocean" calling to its wide shore. This powerful metaphor signifies that music is boundless, profound, and holds a highly impactful presence in her life, rather than being just a superficial source of daily entertainment.

2. How does the rhythm of music interact with the poet on a personal level?

Ans :

The strong rhythm of music connects deeply with the poet's inner self, or her "core." Rather than just being an external sound, it penetrates her mind and soul, shifting her internal emotions in profound ways she cannot easily explain.

3. Explain the significance of the colour "blue" as used by the poet.

Ans :

In the poem, the word "blue" is used symbolically to represent periods of sadness, depression, or emotional exhaustion. It vividly captures the poet's melancholy state of mind before music intervenes as a therapeutic force to uplift her heavy spirits.

4. In what specific ways does music act as a form of "therapy" for the poet?

Ans :

Music acts as a crucial therapy by actively soothing the poet's emotional aches during difficult times. When she is feeling down, its healing power comforts her pain and successfully transforms her gloomy sadness into a state of pure cheerfulness.

5. What does the phrase "pull through" imply regarding the poet's struggles?

Ans :

The phrase "pull through" implies successfully surviving and overcoming highly challenging or painful situations. It highlights that music grants the poet the necessary emotional strength and resilience to navigate her darkest moments without breaking down completely.

6. Why does the poet categorize music as an "essential" part of her life?

Ans :

Music is deemed "essential" because it transcends mere auditory entertainment. It functions as a vital lifeline that heals her trauma, stands by her during immense loneliness, and provides

Word Meaning :

1. Satisfy - to fulfill a need or desire completely
2. Care - worry, sadness, or anxiety
3. Depart - to go away or leave

Explanation :

The poet begins by wishing that mere words were enough to bring true comfort and happiness to our hearts. He notes that if words alone could fulfill our emotional needs, people would have far fewer worries and sadness in their lives.

However, the poet quickly brings us back to reality. He compares spoken words to “summer birds”—migratory birds that only stay for a short, warm, and pleasant season before flying away. Just like these birds, empty words and promises eventually disappear when times get tough. They leave behind nothing but “empty air,” creating a sense of disappointment instead of lasting comfort.

Stanza 2

The heart, a pilgrim upon earth,
Finds often, when it needs,
That words are of as little worth
As just so many weeds.

Word Meaning :

1. Pilgrim - a traveler on a long journey, often looking for something spiritual or meaningful
2. Worth - value or usefulness
3. Weeds - wild, unwanted plants that have no real value or purpose

Explanation :

In this stanza, the poet uses a beautiful metaphor, comparing the human heart to a “pilgrim.” This means the heart is like a weary traveler on a long and difficult journey through life. As the heart travels through hardships, it desperately seeks real support, love, and comfort.

Unfortunately, during these desperate times of need, the heart realizes that empty promises have no real value. The poet powerfully compares these shallow words to wild “weeds.” Just as weeds are useless plants that crowd a garden without offering any fruit or beauty, empty words are entirely unhelpful to a heart that is hurting.

Stanza 3

A little said, and truly said,
Can deeper joy impart
Than hosts of words, which reach the head,
But never touch the heart.

Word Meaning :

1. Truly - sincerely and honestly, straight from the heart
2. Impart - to give, share, or communicate a feeling
3. Hosts - a very large number or huge crowd

Explanation :

The poet now shifts to a more positive tone to explain the power of sincere communication. He tells us that speaking just a few words, if they are completely honest and meant from the bottom of your soul, can bring a profound sense of true happiness and joy to someone.

On the other hand, someone might speak “hosts of words” (a massive amount of words) that sound very clever and make logical sense to our brains (the “head”). However, if these words lack genuine emotion, they will completely fail to connect with us on an emotional level. The poet emphasizes that quality and sincerity are always better than a large quantity of meaningless chatter.

Stanza 4

The voice that wins its sunny way,
A lonely home to cheer,
Hath oft the fewest words to say;
But, oh! those few, how dear!

Word Meaning :

1. Sunny - cheerful, bright, and bringing warmth
2. Cheer - to bring comfort, joy, and hope to someone
3. Hath - an old English word meaning ‘has’
4. Oft - a poetic way of saying ‘often’
5. Dear - very precious, loved, and highly valued

Explanation :

The poet describes a specific type of person—someone who has a warm, cheerful, and positive presence. This person has a voice that brings sunshine into a dark or “lonely home,” naturally bringing joy and comfort to those who are feeling isolated or sad.

Interestingly, this comforting person usually doesn’t talk very much. They have “the fewest words to say.” But because their words are so full of genuine love and care, those few words become incredibly precious and meaningful to the person listening. The exclamation mark at the end highlights the poet’s strong emotional appreciation for heartfelt, quiet kindness.

elevate the bright, uplifting emotion of joy during the peaceful and happy moments of her life.

18. How does music contribute to the poet's "resilience"?

Ans :

Music builds the poet's resilience by acting as a protective emotional buffer. By soothing her aches and lifting her spirits, it provides her with the inner fortitude and psychological endurance required to face life's continuous hardships without giving up.

19. What does the poet's inability to "easily explain" how music shifts her emotions indicate?

Ans :

Her inability to explain this shift indicates that music's impact is deeply spiritual and subconscious. It bypasses rational thought and logic, touching her soul directly, which makes its healing magic profound, mysterious, and beyond simple human vocabulary.

20. According to the poem, what is the fundamental nature of life?

Ans :

According to the poem, the fundamental nature of life is characterized by continuous "ups and downs." It is an unpredictable journey filled with both joyful victories and painful struggles, making the reliable, stabilizing presence of music absolutely necessary for everyone.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Imagine you are the poet. Write a Diary Entry reflecting on a particularly tough day and how music helped you find your emotional balance.

Ans :

Dear Diary,

Today was incredibly overwhelming. I felt completely engulfed by a heavy, grey cloud of sadness, and it seemed like no one around me truly understood the struggles I was facing. I felt profoundly alone.

However, the moment I retreated to my room and let the rhythm of my favourite melodies wash over me, everything shifted. Music acted as my vast ocean, gently pulling me away from my despair. It listened to my unspoken aches and provided the exact therapy my soul needed.

Slowly, the overwhelming "blue" faded, replaced by a quiet cheerfulness and the resilience

to pull through another day. I am so grateful for this constant, loyal friend that never fails to heal my core.

2. You have been asked to deliver a short speech in your school assembly on the topic "Music: The Ultimate Healer," drawing inspiration from the poem. Draft the speech.

Ans :

Respected Principal, Teachers, and my dear friends,

A very good morning to you all. Today, I stand before you to speak on "Music: The Ultimate Healer." As a beautiful poem once taught me, music is not merely a source of daily entertainment; it is a vast ocean of emotional power.

We all face inevitable ups and downs, and there are times we feel entirely misunderstood or alone. In those dark moments, music acts as a loyal, dependable friend. It connects with our inner core, soothing our emotional aches and building our resilience to pull through tough times. It universally transforms our sadness into cheerfulness.

Let us learn to embrace this powerful, invisible force, allowing it to bring joy in our happy times and comfort in our sorrow.

Thank you.

3. Write a letter to a friend who is going through a difficult emotional time, recommending them to find solace in music based on the themes of the poem.

Ans :

Dear Anil,

I heard you have been going through a really tough time lately. I know that during such moments, it often feels like no one truly understands your struggles, and the loneliness can be overwhelming. I am writing to remind you of a simple yet powerful remedy: music. Just as a beautiful poem describes, music is an ocean of healing. When you are feeling 'blue', let the rhythm connect with your inner self. You don't have to explain your pain to it; it just understands. It acts as the most dependable, constant friend, soothing emotional aches and giving you the resilience to pull through. Put on your favourite songs, let the melodies wash over you, and allow them to transform your sadness into strength.

Warmly,

Your Tushar

unwavering emotional stability, making it completely indispensable to her daily existence.

7. How does the poet describe music's role as a companion?

Ans :

The poet describes music as a loyal, constant, and dependable friend. Unlike fleeting human companions, music never leaves her side. It remains a steady presence, offering unconditional comfort and companionship whenever she feels isolated or entirely misunderstood.

8. Why does the poet rely so heavily on music during moments of loneliness?

Ans :

During moments of loneliness, the poet feels that no one else is around to care for her or truly understand her personal struggles. Music fills this painful void, acting as an ever-present confidante that offers empathy without any judgment.

9. Why is music referred to as the "ultimate dependable friend"?

Ans :

Music earns the title of the "ultimate dependable friend" because of its unwavering loyalty. While human beings might abandon her during real struggles, music remains constantly by her side, consistently providing solace, quiet support, and deep emotional comfort.

10. How does the poet's emotional state change from the beginning of a struggle to its resolution?

Ans :

Initially, the poet feels deeply sad, depressed, and emotionally wounded by life's hardships. However, through the therapeutic and comforting intervention of music, her heavy heart is soothed, and her bitter sorrow is ultimately transformed into pure, uplifting cheerfulness.

11. What is the "universal message" conveyed by the poem?

Ans :

The poem's universal message is that everyone experiences life's challenging ups and downs, and everyone requires emotional support. It suggests that music is a universally accessible, powerful force that can bring healing and comfort to any human being.

12. How does music adapt to the different phases of the poet's life?

Ans :

Music is highly versatile in the poet's life. During difficult, painful periods, it serves as a comforting shelter and a healing therapy. Conversely, during happy times, it amplifies her positive emotions, bringing added joy and celebratory energy to her days.

13. What is the poetic effect of repeating the word "music" throughout the text?

Ans :

The deliberate repetition of the word "music" serves to emphasize its constant, unwavering presence in the poet's life. It rhythmically reinforces the idea that music is a steady anchor amidst the chaotic, unpredictable ups and downs of human existence.

14. Why does the poem's message appeal to readers across different ages and cultures?

Ans :

The message appeals globally because the emotional struggles, loneliness, and the need for comfort are fundamental human experiences. Since music is a universal language, its ability to heal and uplift resonates deeply with anyone, regardless of their cultural background.

15. What does the poem suggest about the limitations of human empathy?

Ans :

The poem subtly suggests that human empathy can sometimes fall short. People may not always be present to care or fully understand another's complex struggles. In contrast, music acts as a flawless substitute, offering the perfect, unspoken understanding she craves.

16. How does the metaphor of the ocean's "wide shore" reflect the poet's relationship with music?

Ans :

The "wide shore" represents the poet's open, receptive mind. Just as the vast ocean constantly calls and reaches out to the shore with its waves, music continuously reaches out to the poet, washing over her with its steady, comforting rhythm.

17. Mention two contrasting emotions that music helps the poet navigate.

Ans :

Music helps the poet navigate the dark, heavy emotion of sorrow during her difficult, lonely times. In contrast, it also helps her experience and

often comes from finding the right support system to manage life's difficulties.

9. How does the poet use the concept of 'loneliness' to highlight the importance of music in her life?

Ans :

The poet uses the stark reality of loneliness to amplify the immense value of music. She paints a realistic picture of human life where people are not always available to care, and friends often fail to understand complex personal struggles. In this harsh void of human empathy, loneliness could easily become unbearable. However, the poet highlights music as the perfect antidote to this isolation. By contrasting the unreliability of human presence with the "constant" and "steady" nature of music, she elevates it to the status of an "ultimate dependable friend." Music fills the silent, lonely spaces of her life with comforting rhythms, proving that even when she is physically alone, spiritually and emotionally, she is completely supported.

10. "Ups and downs are experienced by everyone." Based on the text, how does a steady presence like music help individuals navigate the unpredictable nature of life?

Ans :

Life is unpredictable and full of constant ups and downs that can disturb a person's mental peace. To deal with such uncertainty, a person needs a stable support system or anchor.

Music serves as this steady and reliable presence. During difficult times of sadness, loneliness, and stress, it acts like a comforting companion, helping individuals cope and regain strength. In happier moments, music enhances joy and deepens emotional experiences.

By remaining constant in every situation, music provides emotional balance. It offers a safe space to express and understand feelings, ensuring that a person can face life's challenges without feeling overwhelmed.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows:

"Music is the ocean
That pulls me to the shore.
Music is the rhythm
That moves me to the core."

- i. What does the ocean metaphor suggest about the impact of music on the speaker?
 - (a) Deep connection
 - (b) Cold distance
 - (c) Hidden danger
 - (d) Still surface
- ii. **Assertion (A):** The speaker feels profoundly and internally affected by music.
Reason (R): Music acts as a rhythm that reaches their innermost self.
 - (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true, but R is NOT the correct explanation of A.
 - (c) A is true but R is false.
 - (d) A is false but R is true.
- iii. How does the poet describe the effect of music's rhythm on the speaker?
- iv. Identify the exact phrase from the stanza that means 'to the deepest part of one's emotional being'.
- v. State True or False with a one-sentence reason:
 The speaker views music as an external force they cannot understand or control.

Ans :

- i. (a) Deep connection
- ii. (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
- iii. The poet describes music's rhythm as something that moves the speaker to the core, meaning it deeply affects their innermost being.
- iv. to the core
- v. False, because the speaker views music as an internal, grounding rhythm that deeply connects with them ("moves me to the core").

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows:

"Music is the therapy
I need when I feel blue.
Music lifts my spirits
To make sure I pull through."

- i. What does the act of 'lifting spirits' signify in the context of the poem?
 - (a) Emotional elevation
 - (b) Physical strength
 - (c) Musical harmony
 - (d) Mental confusion

- ii. Which combination best describes the dual role of music in this stanza?
 - I. Healer
 - II. Destroyer
 - III. Motivator
 - IV. Distractor
 - (a) I and II
 - (b) I and III
 - (c) II and IV
 - (d) III and IV
- iii. In what emotional state does the speaker turn to music as therapy?
- iv. Which phrasal verb in the stanza means 'to survive or successfully overcome a difficult situation'?
- v. Fill in the blank:
The poet explicitly compares music to _____ because it acts as a healing mechanism for their emotional pain.

Ans :

- i. (a) Emotional elevation
- ii. (b) I and III
- iii. The speaker turns to music as therapy when feeling blue, meaning when they are sad or emotionally low.
- iv. pull through
- v. therapy

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows:

"The times when I'm most cheerful,
It's clear, music was there.
Music is the needed friend
When no one seems to care."

- i. What does the stanza imply about the nature of music's companionship?
 - (a) Strictly situational
 - (b) Constant presence
 - (c) Rarely available
 - (d) Highly demanding
- ii. **Statement I:** Music is only relevant when the speaker is abandoned by others.
Statement II: Music consistently enhances the speaker's moments of immense joy.
 - (a) Both I and II are correct.
 - (b) Both I and II are incorrect.
 - (c) Statement I is correct, Statement II is incorrect.
 - (d) Statement I is incorrect, Statement II is correct.
- iii. Why does the poet describe music as a "needed friend" in the last two lines?
- iv. Identify the word from the extract that serves as a direct synonym for 'joyful' or 'happy'.

- v. State True or False with a one-sentence reason:
The poet relies on music exclusively during times of isolation and sorrow.

Ans :

- i. (b) Constant presence
- ii. (d) Statement I is incorrect, Statement II is correct.
- iii. The poet describes music as a needed friend because it provides comfort and companionship during times when no one else seems to care.
- iv. cheerful
- v. False, because the stanza clearly states that music is also present during the times when the speaker is "most cheerful."



CHAPTER 7

WORDS

1. INTRODUCTION

In the poem “Words,” the poet Charles Swain explores the stark contrast between superficial spoken language and genuine human emotion. Swain thoughtfully portrays the human heart as a weary pilgrim journeying through life in search of real emotional connection. The central premise revolves around how people frequently use a multitude of empty words that sound impressive but lack true substance. Using vivid natural metaphors such as fleeting summer birds, useless weeds, and flashy plants, the poem sets up a thoughtful examination of human communication. It captures the everyday reality of hollow promises that vanish during difficult times.

2. SUMMARY

The Hollow Nature of Words

The speaker points out that if spoken words were enough to truly fulfill our deepest emotional needs, people would suffer from far fewer worries and troubles in life. However, words are temporary and fleeting. They vanish quickly and depart as soon as the summer season ends, leaving behind nothing but emptiness in the air.

Words as Worthless Weeds

The human heart wanders through life as a traveler on a long journey, frequently in need of real comfort and support. During these moments of true necessity, the heart discovers that mere language completely fails to provide any meaningful help. Instead, spoken words turn out to be completely useless and unwanted, offering no more value to a person in need than common weeds growing in a garden.

The Value of Sincerity Over Quantity

A few genuine and sincere words hold much more value than a long, elaborate speech. When someone speaks with true honesty, even briefly, it brings a profound sense of happiness and emotional connection. On the other hand, speaking in

massive volumes might engage a person’s intellect and reach their mind, but these empty speeches completely fail to reach or comfort the person’s emotional core.

The Comfort of a Cheerful Voice

A person who brings warmth and brightness into a dull or lonely home does not need to talk excessively. The simple presence of a cheerful and positive voice is enough to lift the spirits of those who are feeling isolated. Even if this comforting voice speaks very few words, the things that are actually spoken are incredibly precious and deeply cherished by those who hear them.

The Failure of Words in Times of Need

If empty words were actually capable of fulfilling human desires and physical needs, the whole world could easily celebrate and enjoy an endless feast of abundance. People could simply talk their way into a perfect life. Yet, whenever real challenges arise and words are put to the ultimate test to prove their practical worth, they miserably fail to provide any substantial satisfaction or real-world help.

Impressive Appearance Without Substance

The speaker describes grand, empty words as bright, flashy plants that look completely stunning on the outside. These plants might be entirely covered in beautiful blossoms from top to bottom, putting on a highly impressive visual display. However, despite this dazzling outward appearance, they lack any core substance and are completely incapable of producing even a single piece of actual, nourishing fruit.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

If words could satisfy the heart,
The heart might find less care;
But words, like summer birds, depart,
And leave but empty air.

Ans :

(d) friend

29. When does the poet mostly feel the companionship of music?

- (a) In moments of loneliness
- (b) In crowded social events
- (c) During long work hours
- (d) While traveling abroad

Ans :

(a) In moments of loneliness

30. Music helps when it feels like no one else is around to _____.

- (a) judge (b) care
- (c) sing (d) play

Ans :

(b) care

31. The poet feels music is there when no one else understands her _____.

- (a) happiness (b) victories
- (c) struggles (d) routines

Ans :

(c) struggles

32. What does music offer alongside support during lonely times?

- (a) Wealth (b) Comfort
- (c) Silence (d) Anxiety

Ans :

(b) Comfort

33. Assertion (A): Music is considered the ultimate dependable friend by the poet.

Reason (R): Music frequently leaves her side when she faces real struggles.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation.
- (c) Assertion A is true but the Reason R is completely false.
- (d) Assertion A is false but the Reason R is completely true.

Ans :

(c) Assertion A is true but the Reason R is completely false.

34. Which of the following statements is correct regarding music as a friend?

- (a) Music abandons the poet when nobody else is around to care.
- (b) Music is described as a companion that only stays for a while.
- (c) Music provides comfort when no one understands her struggles.
- (d) Music is a loyal friend but fails to support her in loneliness.

Ans :

(c) Music provides comfort when no one understands her struggles.

35. Why is music described as the “ultimate dependable friend” in the text?

- (a) Because it constantly stays by her side and never abandons her.
- (b) Because it offers her practical advice on solving daily problems.
- (c) Because it introduces her to many new people in lonely moments.
- (d) Because it creates a completely quiet space to avoid other friends.

Ans :

(a) Because it constantly stays by her side and never abandons her.

36. The poem conveys a thoughtful and _____ message.

- (a) secret (b) universal
- (c) personal (d) negative

Ans :

(b) universal

37. Music is described as a _____ force.

- (a) destructive (b) invisible
- (c) powerful (d) mysterious

Ans :

(c) powerful

38. Music brings comfort during times of _____.

- (a) joy (b) rest
- (c) pain (d) sorrow

Ans :

(d) sorrow

39. The repetition of the word “music” emphasizes its _____ presence.

- (a) occasional (b) surprising
- (c) constant (d) temporary

Stanza 5

If words could satisfy the chest,
The world might hold a feast;
But words, when summoned to the test,
Oft satisfy the least!

Word Meaning :

1. Chest - referring to the heart and the deep emotions kept inside us
2. Feast - a grand, abundant celebration full of joy
3. Summoned - called upon to do something or to prove their real worth
4. Test - a difficult situation or challenge that proves true value
5. Least - the absolute smallest amount; barely at all

Explanation :

Returning to the main theme, the poet repeats a similar idea from the very first stanza to emphasize his point. He says that if words alone could fill the emotional emptiness in our “chest” (our soul), the whole world would constantly be celebrating with a grand “feast.” Everyone would be completely content all the time.

However, life is full of real challenges. When words are “summoned to the test”—meaning when a person is actually going through a hard time and needs genuine help—mere words fail miserably. They provide almost zero satisfaction and prove that talking is completely useless without real, supportive actions behind it.

Stanza 6

Like plants that make a gaudy show,
All blossom to the root;
But whose poor nature cannot grow,
One particle of fruit!

Word Meaning :

1. Gaudy - overly bright, showy, and trying too hard to attract attention
2. Blossom - covered in flowers
3. Nature - the basic inner qualities or character of something
4. Particle - a very tiny piece or amount

Explanation :

In the final stanza, the poet uses a vivid metaphor from nature to beautifully summarize his message. He compares empty, boastful words to plants that are covered in bright, “gaudy” flowers all the way down to their roots. From the outside, these plants look incredibly beautiful, impressive, and

full of promise.

Yet, despite this grand and showy outward appearance, these plants are inherently weak on the inside. They are completely unable to produce even a single “particle of fruit.” Just like these deceptive plants, human words can sound beautiful, impressive, and dramatic. But without genuine feelings and real actions to back them up, they are completely fruitless, empty, and useless in our lives.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

LITERARY DEVICES

“Words” consists of 6 stanzas. The rhyme scheme is ABAB (alternating rhyme).

1. **Simile:** A comparison between two things using the words “like” or “as.” For example, “But words, like summer birds, depart” shows how words are compared to birds to explain that they fly away and don’t stay forever.
2. **Metaphor:** A direct comparison that says one thing “is” another thing to show they share a quality. For example, “The heart, a pilgrim upon earth” shows the heart being compared to a traveler on a long journey looking for something meaningful.
3. **Personification:** Giving human qualities or actions to non-human things or body parts. For example, “The heart might find less care” shows the heart being treated like a person who can feel worry or “care” and look for relief.
4. **Imagery:** Using descriptive words that help the reader “see” or feel what is happening. For example, “The voice that wins its sunny way” shows a bright, happy visual that makes the reader imagine a cheerful person bringing light into a room.
5. **Alliteration:** The repetition of the same consonant sound at the start of words near each other. For example, “h”osts of words, which reach the “h”ead,/But never touch the “h”eart” shows the repetition of the “h” sound to draw attention to these connected ideas.
6. **Contrast:** Placing two opposite ideas close together to show their differences. For example, “reach the head,/But never touch the heart” shows the difference between words that we just hear or think about versus words that actually make us feel something.

Ans :

(c) Often superficial

4. The poet states that words alone fail to satisfy a person's deep

(a) Financial needs (b) Academic needs
(c) Physical needs (d) Emotional needs

Ans :

(d) Emotional needs

5. What does the poet encourage us to value over making empty statements?

(a) True feelings (b) Endless talking
(c) Vocal volumes (d) Flashy speeches

Ans :

(a) True feelings

6. The poet warns against making grand but what kind of statements?

(a) Long speeches (b) Empty statements
(c) Written letters (d) Silent gestures

Ans :

(b) Empty statements

7. The poem beautifully explores genuine human -----.

(a) Desires (b) Actions
(c) Emotions (d) Thoughts

Ans :

(c) Emotions

8. The poet strongly encourages valuing -----.

(a) Grandeur (b) Wealth
(c) Silence (d) Sincerity

Ans :

(d) Sincerity

9. Genuine emotions and sincerity are preferred by the poet over

(a) Grand statements (b) Quiet reflection
(c) Simple living (d) Honest actions

Ans :

(a) Grand statements

10. **Assertion (A):** The poet believes words alone satisfy us completely.

Reason (R): Empty statements are deeply valuable to humans.

(a) Both A and R are clearly true
(b) Both A and R are entirely false

(c) A is true, but R is mostly false

(d) A is false, but R is partly true

Ans :

(b) Both A and R are entirely false

11. The poet beautifully compares the human heart to a

(a) Soldier (b) Sailor
(c) Pilgrim (d) Farmer

Ans :

(c) Pilgrim

12. Just as a pilgrim travels, the heart journeys seeking

(a) Worldly riches (b) Endless fame
(c) Magic spells (d) Spiritual peace

Ans :

(d) Spiritual peace

13. The poet states that the human heart is on a journey through

(a) Mortal life (b) Outer space
(c) Dense forests (d) High mountains

Ans :

(a) Mortal life

14. In its search for genuine emotional connection, the heart often faces

(a) Success (b) Disappointment
(c) Excitement (d) Inspiration

Ans :

(b) Disappointment

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

15. The poet compares empty words to what seasonal creature?

(a) Winter winds (b) Autumn leaves
(c) Summer birds (d) Spring flowers

Ans :

(c) Summer birds

16. What do the "summer birds" do when the season changes?

(a) Build nests (b) Sing loudly
(c) Find food (d) Fly away

Ans :

(d) Fly away

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

that a voice that brings happiness to a 5. _____ place does not say much, but the few words it does, are very precious. Moreover, if words could satisfy us, the 6. _____ would celebrate but words often fail to do that. The poem ends on the note that empty words may look impressive with lots of flowers, but they cannot produce anything valuable, like a 7. _____.

Ans :

1. depart, 2. pilgrim, 3. weeds, 4. joy, 5. lonely, 6. world, 7. fruit.

II. Let us appreciate the poem.

1. Read the poem again. Find any four sets of rhyming words and also write the rhyme scheme of the poem.

Ans :

Four sets of rhyming words :

- i. know – grow
- ii. trees – ecstasies
- iii. rise – eyes
- iv. face – place

Rhyme Scheme : The rhyme scheme of the poem is **a b a b** for each stanza.

- i. know (A)
- ii. grow (A)
- iii. trees (B)
- iv. ecstasies (B)

2. Read the following phrases and sentences taken from the poem. Identify the poetic device in each of them and explain what the poet wants to communicate through their usage.

- i. But words, like summer birds, depart...
- ii. heart, a pilgrim upon earth...
- iii. words are of as little worth
As just so many weeds
- iv. If words could satisfy the chest... Oft satisfy the least!
- v. The world might hold a feast...
- vi. Like plants that make a gaudy show
All blossom to the root
- vii. But whose poor nature cannot grow
One particle of fruit!

Ans :

- i. **Poetic Device : Simile**

The poet compares words to summer birds to show that empty words are temporary and fleeting. Just as birds fly away when the season changes, hollow words disappear and leave no lasting impact.

- ii. **Poetic Device : Metaphor**

The heart is directly compared to a pilgrim. A pilgrim is a traveler on a sacred journey seeking spiritual fulfillment. Similarly, the human heart travels through life seeking deep, meaningful connections and emotional truth.

- iii. **Poetic Device : Simile**

The poet compares words to weeds using the word “as”. Just as weeds grow abundantly but are useless and unwanted in a garden, empty words are spoken in large numbers but hold no real value for the heart.

- iv. **Poetic Device : Irony/Synecdoche** (where “chest” represents the heart/soul).

The poet uses this to highlight the ironic reality that words, which are meant to express our feelings and provide comfort, often fail completely when put to the test during difficult times.

- v. **Poetic Device : Hyperbole** (Exaggeration)

The poet exaggerates by suggesting the entire world would celebrate with a grand feast if words were truly enough to satisfy human emotions. It emphasizes how rare it is for mere words to bring true emotional fulfillment.

- vi. **Poetic Device : Simile**

The poet compares people who speak beautifully but lack sincerity to plants that look flashy (“gaudy”) and bloom brightly. It communicates that outward appearances (or big words) can be deceiving and superficial.

- vii. **Poetic Device : Metaphor**

This continues the comparison of words to plants. “Fruit” represents the actual substance, value, or positive outcome of communication. The poet means that superficial words produce no real, nourishing results or comfort.

3. Which words are repeated in the poem? Why does the poet use repetition?

Ans :

The words repeated in the poem include “words”, “heart”, and “satisfy”. The poet uses repetition to emphasize the central theme of the poem: the ongoing conflict between empty, superficial “words” and the deep, emotional needs of the human “heart,” and how mere language often fails to “satisfy” those needs.

4. The stanzas 4, 5, and 6 end with exclamation marks. Choose the option that displays the emotions being expressed through them.

Vocabulary in Context

- I. The poet has used some figurative phrases. Match the phrases in Column 1 with their correct meanings in Column 2. Use each phrase in a sentence of your own.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	satisfy the heart	i.	many words
2.	depart and leave but empty air	ii.	cheers up a person
3.	hosts of words	iii.	there is no outcome
4.	never touch the heart	iv.	makes one happy
5.	wins its sunny way	v.	does not appeal to our emotions
6.	plants that cannot grow fruit	vi.	makes no impact

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	satisfy the heart	iv.	makes one happy
2.	depart and leave but empty air	vi.	makes no impact
3.	hosts of words	i.	many words
4.	never touch the heart	v.	does not appeal to our emotions
5.	wins its sunny way	ii.	cheers up a person
6.	plants that cannot grow fruit	iii.	there is no outcome

Sentences :

- satisfy the heart** : A simple, home-cooked meal was enough to **satisfy the heart** of the weary traveler.
- depart and leave but empty air** : The politician's grand promises proved to be false; they just **depart and leave but empty air**.
- hosts of words** : She used **hosts of words** to explain the simple concept, which only confused the students more.
- never touch the heart** : His apology sounded robotic and rehearsed, so it could **never touch the heart** of his friend.
- wins its sunny way** : The little girl's innocent laughter quickly **wins its sunny way** into the hearts of everyone in the room.
- plants that cannot grow fruit** : All their careful planning turned out to be like **plants**

that cannot grow fruit, yielding no success.

- II. Create a 'Word Map' for each of the words from the poem given in the box.

depart	pilgrim	cheer	word
sunny	satisfy	heart	

To complete the word map include :

- Meaning (in your own words)
- Synonyms of the word
- Antonyms of the word
- Sentence using the word
- A quick sketch or symbol that represents the word

One example has been done for you.



- **Word** : cheer
- **Meaning** : to give a loud shout of approval or encouragement
- **Synonym** : comfort
- **Antonym** : sadden
- **Sentence** : The audience cheered her for great performance.
- **Sketch** : Picture of sunshine, sunflower, or a smiling face

Ans :

Word Map 1 : depart

Meaning : to leave, especially in order to start a journey.

Synonyms : leave, exit, vanish.

Antonyms : arrive, stay, remain.

Sentence : The train is scheduled to depart from platform number 3.

Sketch/Symbol : A picture of an airplane taking off or a door opening outward.

Word Map 2 : pilgrim

Meaning : a person who travels a long journey, usually for religious or spiritual reasons.

Synonyms : traveler, seeker, wanderer.

Antonyms : resident, local, settler.

Sentence : The weary pilgrim walked for miles to reach the ancient temple.

2. If words could satisfy the chest,
The world might hold a feast;
But words, when summoned to the test,
Oft satisfy the least!
- How can words 'satisfy the chest'?
 - How can words be 'summoned to the test'?
 - What does 'the world' holding 'a feast' imply?
 - Complete the sentence with an appropriate reason.
The poet mentions that words satisfy the least because _____.
 - Select the word that does not mean the same as 'oft'.
A. always B. usually
C. frequently D. often

Ans :

- Words can "satisfy the chest" (the heart) by conveying genuine empathy, love, and understanding, thereby fulfilling our deep emotional needs and bringing inner peace.
- Words are "summoned to the test" during difficult situations when actions, real support, and undeniable proof of someone's promises or sincerity are required, rather than just casual conversation.
- It implies a state of universal joy, celebration, and absolute emotional fulfillment. The poet means that if words were truly enough to make us happy, the whole world would be constantly celebrating.
- The poet mentions that words satisfy the least because 'when real emotional support or action is needed during tough times, mere spoken words often fail to provide any true comfort or practical help.'
- A. always

II. Answer the following questions.

1. What is the comparison that the poet draws between words and 'empty air'?

Ans :

The poet states that insincere words are like summer birds that migrate and disappear. When these hollow words "depart," they leave absolutely nothing of value behind—only "empty air." The comparison highlights that words without emotion have no substance and leave no lasting impact on the listener.

2. According to the poet meaningful words are more precious than a lot of them. Explain.

Ans :

The poet believes that "a little said, and truly said" (a few sincere words) can bring deep joy and comfort to a lonely heart. On the other hand, "hosts of words" (a large quantity of words) may sound intellectually impressive and "reach the head," but they fail to touch the emotions. Therefore, quality and sincerity are far more precious than quantity.

3. Do you agree that the poet presents contrasting ideas related to 'words' in the poem? If yes, why? If no, why not?

Ans :

Yes, I agree. The poet continuously contrasts the quantity of words with their quality. For instance, he contrasts "hosts of words" that only reach the head with "a little said" that imparts deep joy. He also contrasts flashy, abundant words (compared to a "gaudy show" of plants) with the lack of actual substance (failing to grow "one particle of fruit").

4. The theme of loneliness hovers over the poem. Support this statement with examples from the text.

Ans :

The theme of loneliness is evident when the poet describes the heart as a "pilgrim upon earth," suggesting a solitary traveler seeking connection. Furthermore, he explicitly mentions a "lonely home to cheer," highlighting the human need for companionship and the despair felt when the heart is met with words of "little worth" when it "needs" them the most.

5. How does the poet convey the superficial nature of words? What ought to be done to address this?

Ans :

The poet conveys the superficial nature of words by comparing them to departing summer birds, useless weeds, and plants that bloom brightly but bear no fruit. To address this, we must ensure our communication is sincere and mindful. We ought to speak "truly" even if it means speaking less, and we must back our words with genuine empathy and actions that truly touch the heart.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

- (i) 4. disillusionment 5. admiration and
6. frustration
- (ii) 4. frustration 5. admiration and
6. disillusionment
- (iii) 4. admiration 5. frustration and
6. disillusionment
- (iv) 4. frustration 5. disillusionment and
6. admiration

Ans :

- (iii) 4. admiration 5. frustration and
6. disillusionment.

Stanza 4 : Shows admiration for the beauty and magic of music

Stanza 5 : Reflects a sense of frustration

Stanza 6 : Ends with disillusionment or a return to reality

III. Identify examples of hyperbole from the given lines.

If words could satisfy the chest,
The world might hold a feast.

Work in pairs. Complete the sentences given below with hyperboles. Use the hints given in the brackets.

- I have _____ things to do on this weekend. (lots of/tonnes of)
- The player missed the basket by _____. (a mile/ an inch)
- My mother is so tired that she can sleep for a _____. (night/decade)
- I will be back in _____. (five minutes/two seconds)

Ans :

- I have **tonnes of** things to do on this weekend.
- The player missed the basket by **a mile**.
- My mother is so tired that she can sleep for a **decade**.
- I will be back in **two seconds**.

IV. Rhythm gives a lyrical quality to a poem. The rhythm (pattern of beats) in a line of poetry is described by a metrical form. A metre is formed by a stressed and an unstressed syllable. Syllable is the name given to a single unit of speech/beats of spoken language.

The metrical form in the first four lines is given below. The stressed syllables have been underlined.

If words could sa tis fy the heart,
The heart might find less care;
But words, like sum mer birds, de part,
And leave but emp ty air.

Now, listen to the teacher read the poem. As you listen, underline the syllables that are stressed in all the lines of the poem. Share your answers with the teacher.

Ans :

If **words** could **satisfy** the **heart**,
The **heart** might **find** less **care**;
But **words**, like **summer birds**, **depart**,
And **leave** but **empty air**.

NODIA

Critical Reflection

I. Read the following lines and answer the questions.

- The heart, a pilgrim upon earth,
Finds often, when it needs,
That words are of as little worth
As just so many weeds.
- Why has the poet referred to the heart as 'a pilgrim'?
- When would a heart 'need' words?
- Complete the sentence with an appropriate reason.
The words are like weeds because _____.
- Mention two emotions the heart might be experiencing when it finds words to be of 'little worth'.
- What do these lines suggest about the nature of communication?

Ans :

- A pilgrim is a traveler seeking spiritual truth and connection. By calling the heart a "pilgrim," the poet suggests that the human soul is on a continuous journey through life, searching for genuine emotional connection, comfort, and meaning.
- A heart would "need" words during times of sorrow, loneliness, confusion, or distress, when a person requires comfort, encouragement, and genuine reassurance from others.
- The words are like weeds because "they grow in abundance and are easily found, but they lack true value, purpose, and the ability to nourish or heal the heart."
- The heart might be experiencing deep **disappointment** and **loneliness** (or despair).
- These lines suggest that true communication requires sincerity and emotional depth. A large quantity of words means nothing if those words are empty and lack genuine feeling.

Sketch/Symbol : A walking stick, a backpack, or footprints on a path.

Word Map 3 : word

Meaning : a single distinct meaningful element of speech or writing.

Synonyms : term, expression, promise.

Antonyms : silence, quiet.

Sentence : She kept her word and helped her brother with his homework.

Sketch/Symbol : Speech bubbles or a pen writing on paper.

Word Map 4 : sunny

Meaning : bright with sunlight; or cheerful and happy in personality.

Synonyms : bright, joyful, cheerful.

Antonyms : gloomy, dark, cloudy.

Sentence : He always walks into the classroom with a sunny smile.

Sketch/Symbol : A bright yellow sun.

Word Map 5 : satisfy

Meaning : to fulfill a need, desire, or expectation.

Synonyms : fulfill, content, please.

Antonyms : disappoint, frustrate, displease.

Sentence : Drinking a cool glass of water will satisfy your thirst.

Sketch/Symbol : A smiling face with a 'thumbs up' sign.

Word Map 6 : heart

Meaning : the organ that pumps blood; figuratively, the center of human emotion and love.

Synonyms : soul, core, spirit.

Antonyms : mind, intellect (when contrasting emotion with logic).

Sentence : She spoke from the bottom of her heart.

Sketch/Symbol : A classic red heart shape.

Listen and Respond

I. You will listen to a conversation between a girl and a boy. As you listen, mark four statements from 1–6 that are true. (Transcript for teacher on page 273)

1. The girl was excited to participate in the declamation contest.
2. The boy was doubtful about the suitability of the topic chosen for the contest.
3. The girl explained that people prefer to keep their personal experiences to themselves.
4. The boy was unaware of the role played by body language in reflecting the speaker's confidence.

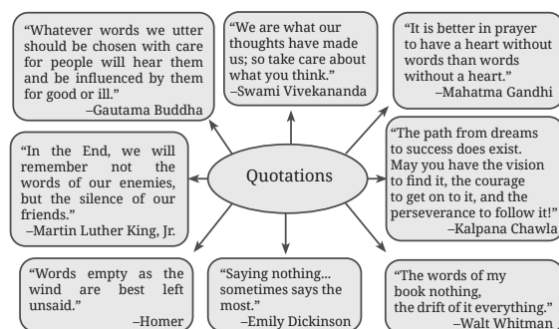
5. According to the girl, body language had an insignificant role to play in communication.
6. The girl had issued the book on body language earlier from the library.

Ans :

1. The girl was excited to participate in the declamation contest.
2. The boy was doubtful about the suitability of the topic chosen for the contest.
4. The boy was unaware of the role played by body language in reflecting the speaker's confidence.
6. The girl had issued the book on body language earlier from the library.

Speaking Activity

I. Read the following quotations and select the one you like the most. Explain the quotation and share the reason for your choice with your classmates and teacher. You may talk about a connected personal experience too.



You may use the cues given below to state your choice and the reason.

- I chose _____ because...
- I selected _____ since...
- I decided on _____ due to...
- I picked _____ as...
- I settled for _____ because...

Ans :

I chose the quotation by Mahatma Gandhi : "It is better in prayer to have a heart without words than words without a heart," **because** it deeply connects with the theme of the poem we just read.

I selected this **since** it highlights that true feelings are more important than just making a show of speaking.

I decided on this **due to** a personal experience I had. Once, when my friend lost his pet, I didn't know what to say. Instead of giving long speeches, I just sat with him quietly and patted his shoulder.

5. MESSAGE

Through the poem, Charles Swain gives us a simple but important message about human relationships. He tells us not to trust empty words and fake promises. Many people say nice things that sound great but have no real feelings behind them. Like summer birds, these hollow promises disappear when we face hard times. Swain teaches us that true emotions, real care, and supportive actions matter much more than beautifully spoken but meaningless words.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Reflect and Respond

- I. Why are words important? Can we communicate without words? How? Share your answers with your classmates and teacher.

Ans :

Words are important because they are the primary tools we use to express our thoughts, share our feelings, convey information, and build relationships with others. They help us bring clarity to our ideas. Yes, we can definitely communicate without words. We do this through non-verbal communication, which includes facial expressions (like smiling or frowning), body language (like crossing arms or leaning in), hand gestures (like waving or pointing), eye contact, and even through art, music, and dance.

- II. Use the given sentences as clues to find words from the grid and fill the blanks. One example has been done for you.

My mother summoned me to introduce her friends.

	Column 1 → Horizontal		Column 2 ↓ Vertical
1.	We eat food to _____ our hunger.	4.	The view from the top of the hill was _____ the difficult climb.
2.	The train will _____ from the station at 5.00 p.m.	5.	The herbs and spices _____ flavour to food.

3.	The gardener was removing the _____ to clean the flower beds.	6.	Flowers _____ in spring.
		7.	We enjoyed a delicious _____ after the ceremony.

A	S	A	T	I	S	F	Y	T	B
L	U	Y	G	B	K	C	U	L	L
D	M	A	N	D	G	J	F	O	O
B	M	H	I	W	W	E	E	D	S
A	O	C	M	L	O	H	A	F	S
U	N	Z	L	A	R	L	S	E	O
D	E	P	A	R	T	G	T	A	M
G	D	D	R	I	H	A	K	O	R
E	N	P	F	D	F	S	E	T	D
N	B	O	E	L	S	N	I	A	T

Ans :

	Column 1 → Horizontal		Column 2 ↓ Vertical
1.	We eat food to satisfy our hunger.	4.	The view from the top of the hill was worth the difficult climb.
2.	The train will depart from the station at 5.00 p.m.	5.	The herbs and spices impart flavour to food.
3.	The gardener was removing the weeds to clean the flower beds.	6.	Flowers blossom in spring.
		7.	We enjoyed a delicious feast after the ceremony.

Check Your Understanding

- I. Fill in the blanks with one word from the poem. One example has been done for you.

In this poem, the poet reflects that words fail to truly satisfy what the heart wants to convey. Words are compared to summer birds who 1. _____, leaving nothing behind. The heart, is equated to a 2. _____ who finds that words are as worthless as 3. _____ when needed. He feels that a few sincere words can bring more 4. _____ than many meaningless ones. He adds

it is true that words are essential for practical daily communication, this criticism is largely baseless in the context of deep emotional or spiritual expression. Gandhi is not asking us to stop speaking; rather, he is warning us against the danger of speaking **without** feeling. Words are only vehicles; the heart is the driver. Without the driver, the vehicle goes nowhere.

In conclusion, Mahatma Gandhi's quote beautifully reminds us that the value of our communication is measured by the sincerity behind it, not the eloquence of our speech. Whether communicating with the divine or comforting a friend, empty words bear no fruit, while silent sincerity touches the soul. Ultimately, we must strive to ensure that our hearts are deeply invested in everything we choose to express.

Learning Beyond the Text

I. In groups of six, follow the instructions to play the 'Non-verbal' game.

- Each student writes or makes an emoji with an expression on one slip and a gesture on the other.
- Jumble the slips and keep them upside down.
- Pick the slips in turns and enact it in 30 seconds.
- The person who can identify the expression or gesture first, gets 10 points.
- Continue it for two rounds and find the Non-verbal Champion.

For example, an expression to denote tired could be: 😞

and a gesture to denote united could be: 🤝

This game is like Dumb Charades. Dumb Charades is a word-guessing game where players act out words, phrases, or movie titles using gestures and body language without speaking. One person acts, and their teammates try to guess what's being mimed.

Ans :

Non-verbal Game

Students play this game in groups of six. Each student writes one expression on a slip and one gesture on another slip. All the slips are jumbled and kept upside down.

Students take turns to pick a slip and enact it within 30 seconds. The other students try to guess the expression or gesture. The student who identifies it first gets 10 points.

The game continues for two rounds. The student with the highest score is declared the

Non-verbal Champion

This game is similar to Dumb Charades, where players use gestures and body language to convey ideas without speaking.

II. Do you know?

The French priest Charles-Michel de l'Épée (1712-89) is recognised as 'The Father of Sign Language and Deaf Education'.

Ans :

Charles-Michel de l'Épée (1712-1789), a French priest, is recognised as the Father of Sign Language and Deaf Education. He devoted his life to educating deaf individuals and developed one of the earliest forms of sign language, making education accessible to people with hearing impairments.

III. You must have read poems and songs in English and in your own language. Now, read and enjoy the poem given below.

Ans :

Self-Study Note : Read the poem "Weigh Your Words" aloud. Notice how it shares the same theme as Charles Swain's "Words". Both poems warn us that idle, empty words can cause pain and that we must be careful, sincere, and mindful of the emotional impact our speech has on others.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

- Who is the author of the poem "Words"?
(a) Charles Swain (b) William Blake
(c) Robert Frost (d) John Keats

Ans :

- (a) Charles Swain

- The poem primarily explores the difference between spoken words and what else?
(a) Physical health (b) Genuine emotions
(c) Financial wealth (d) Social standings

Ans :

- (b) Genuine emotions

- According to the central idea, what is the nature of words alone?
(a) Deeply meaningful (b) Highly supportive
(c) Often superficial (d) Always dependable

My silent support comforted him more than any hollow words could have.

I settled for this quote **because** it teaches us that sincerity in our heart is the truest form of communication, both with God and with the people we care about.

Writing Task

- I. Write an essay on any one quotation from speaking activity. Follow the guidelines given below while drafting the essay.

	Column 1 Paragraph Division	Column 2 Paragraph Content
1.	Introduction	• Mention the quotation and the speaker. • Briefly mention the reason why it appealed to you. • State the purpose of the essay.
2. & 3.	Body of the essay	• Each paragraph to explain a specific point or idea related to the quotation. • Begin with a topic sentence that introduces the main point of the paragraph. • Provide evidence, examples, or narratives to support the main point. • Ensure a smooth flow between paragraphs by using transition words. For example: In addition to..., For instance..., However..., Consequently..., Finally...

4.	Counterargument	• Think about any possible criticism for the quotation. • Give reason why that criticism is baseless.
5.	Conclusion	• Summarise the main points discussed in the body paragraphs. • End with a concluding statement that leaves a lasting impression.

Ans :

The Power of a Sincere Heart

Mahatma Gandhi once profoundly stated, “It is better in prayer to have a heart without words than words without a heart.” This quotation deeply appeals to me because it captures the true essence of spirituality and human connection, prioritizing raw emotion over robotic rituals. The purpose of this essay is to explore why genuine sincerity, even in silence, holds far more value than reciting beautifully crafted words that lack actual feeling.

To begin with, true communication—whether in prayer or in daily life—stems from our inner intentions, not our vocabulary. For instance, when people pray by merely repeating memorized verses without focusing on their meaning, the prayer becomes an empty task. It is much like a student reading a textbook without understanding a single concept. Conversely, a person who sits in silence, genuinely feeling gratitude or asking for guidance from the depths of their soul, is communicating much more powerfully.

In addition to this, words without emotion often fail to provide any real comfort during difficult times. For example, when someone is grieving, people often use generic phrases like, “I know how you feel.” However, these words can sometimes feel hollow. On the other hand, silently holding someone’s hand or simply being present offers immense comfort. Consequently, actions and silent empathy driven by a sincere heart prove to be much stronger than empty spoken words.

However, some might argue that words are absolutely necessary to clearly articulate our needs, and that relying only on “a heart without words” can lead to misunderstandings. While

17. When hollow promises disappear, what do they leave behind?

(a) Empty air (b) Great joy
(c) Pure love (d) Deep grief

Ans :

(a) Empty air

18. Furthermore, the poet compares empty words to what plants?

(a) Tall trees (b) Useless weeds
(c) Bright stars (d) Sweet fruits

Ans :

(b) Useless weeds

19. Weeds grow everywhere but lack what important quality?

(a) Green leaves (b) Long stems
(c) Real value (d) Deep roots

Ans :

(c) Real value

20. According to the poet, words are often spoken in what manner?

(a) Complete silence (b) Total darkness
(c) Hidden places (d) Great abundance

Ans :

(d) Great abundance

21. Which of the following statements is perfectly correct based on the text?

(a) The heart is a pilgrim seeking peace
(b) Empty words are like highly valuable plants
(c) Summer birds choose to stay during winter
(d) Flashy weeds produce very nourishing fruits

Ans :

(a) The heart is a pilgrim seeking peace

22. A major theme in the poem contrasts the quantity of words with

(a) High volume (b) True quality
(c) Fast delivery (d) Deep silence

Ans :

(b) True quality

23. A large number of words is referred to by the poet as a what?

(a) Book of words (b) Song of words
(c) Host of words (d) List of words

Ans :

(c) Host of words

24. A "host of words" might sound intellectually like

(a) Quite terrifying (b) Highly confusing
(c) Very depressing (d) Quite impressive

Ans :

(d) Quite impressive

25. While intellectually impressive, a host of words only reaches the

(a) Human head (b) Human hand
(c) Human foot (d) Human soul

Ans :

(a) Human head

26. Although words may reach the head, they completely fail to touch the

(a) Human head (b) Human heart
(c) Human brain (d) Human spirit

Ans :

(b) Human heart

27. The poet argues that "a little said, and _____ said" is far more precious.

(a) Badly (b) Loudly
(c) Truly (d) Softly

Ans :

(c) Truly

28. A few sincere, heartfelt words are considered to be very

(a) Highly useless (b) Quite boring
(c) Deeply toxic (d) Very precious

Ans :

(d) Very precious

29. A little said truly can bring immense joy to a

(a) Lonely person (b) Angry crowd
(c) Happy child (d) Wealthy king

Ans :

(a) Lonely person

30. The poem teaches that emotional depth is much more important than what?

(a) Writing long (b) Talking much
(c) Singing loud (d) Running fast

Ans :

(b) Talking much

motivation must come from within, not from the applause of others.

Stanza 2

Will it pull you forward
Or push you back in fear?
Difficult are choices
When the future is getting near.

Word Meaning :

1. Pull - To draw or bring something closer.
2. Fear - Being scared or anxious about what might happen.
3. Choices - Decisions you must make between different options.

Explanation :

Here, the poet asks a rhetorical question to make you think deeply about how you react to your dreams. When you think about your future, does it inspire you and pull you forward toward your goals? Or does the uncertainty of the future scare you and push you backward into hiding?

As we grow up and our future approaches faster, the decisions we have to make become much more difficult. The poet uses a literary device called antithesis (contrasting ideas) by placing “pull you forward” and “push you back” next to each other. This brilliantly captures the mental struggle and confusion every young person faces when standing at the edge of a big life change.

Stanza 3

There is such ease in comfort
To maintain the status quo,
But this isn't what we are made for
This isn't how we grow.

Word Meaning :

1. Ease - Freedom from difficulty or hard work; a feeling of relaxation.
2. Comfort - A state of feeling physically or mentally safe and relaxed.
3. Maintain - To keep things exactly as they are.
4. Status quo - The current, unchanged situation or normal state of affairs.

Explanation :

The poet acknowledges that it is incredibly relaxing and easy to just stay in our “comfort zones.” It is tempting to just maintain the current situation and avoid taking any new risks because change can be scary.

However, the poet quickly shifts the mood to be instructive and philosophical. He argues that

human beings are simply not designed to stay stuck in one place forever. The repetition of the phrase “This isn't...” puts strong emphasis on the fact that avoiding challenges prevents personal development. If we never step out of our comfort zones, we will never learn, improve, or grow into our full potential.

Stanza 4

The first step is the hardest
There is no turning back,
You just need to believe in yourself
For your future to be on track.

Word Meaning :

1. Hardest - The most difficult or challenging thing to do.
2. Turning back - Retreating or returning to your old, safe way of life.
3. Believe - To have absolute trust and confidence in something (here, in your own abilities).
4. On track - Moving in the right direction to achieve a goal.

Explanation :

In the final stanza, the poet uses a powerful metaphor: “The first step is the hardest.” This represents the mental barrier and hesitation we feel before starting something new. Once you finally gather the courage to take that very first step toward change, you commit to the journey, and you cannot return to the way things used to be.

The poem concludes with a highly uplifting and determined tone. It delivers its core message perfectly: the ultimate key to making sure your life goes in the right direction is self-confidence. You don't need magic or an audience; you just need to deeply trust in your own abilities to succeed.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

“Believe in Yourself” consists of 4 stanzas. The rhyme scheme is ABCB.

1. **Metaphor:** A comparison where one thing is described as being another thing to show they share a quality. For example, “your future to be on track” shows the poet comparing life to a train or a path to suggest it needs to stay headed in the right direction.
2. **Anaphora:** The repetition of a word or phrase at the beginning of consecutive lines. For example, “This isn't what we are made

44. A few genuine words will always mean more than a

- (a) Thousand empty (b) Hundred silent
(c) Million shiny (d) Dozen broken

Ans :

- (a) Thousand empty

45. According to the text, what can sometimes be more meaningful than empty words?

- (a) Loud arguing (b) Silent support
(c) Fast running (d) Endless talking

Ans :

- (b) Silent support

46. Why does the poet deeply emphasize silent loving support in communication?

- (a) Because silence always resolves all major fights
(b) Because the human heart prefers total isolation
(c) Because speaking requires too much physical work
(d) Because genuine actions speak louder than speech

Ans :

- (d) Because genuine actions speak louder than speech

47. Which of the following statements is perfectly accurate according to the summary?

- (a) Empty words provide real and lasting comfort
(b) True companionship requires endless loud talking
(c) Genuine actions mean much more than words
(d) Flashy plants always produce the best fruits

Ans :

- (c) Genuine actions mean much more than words

48. What is the ultimate message of the entire poem described in the text?

- (a) Mere words can easily solve emotional problems
(b) People should learn to speak highly complexly
(c) Only summer birds understand human heart matters
(d) True sincerity and actions matter more than words

Ans :

- (d) True sincerity and actions matter more than words

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Why does Charles Swain compare the human heart to a pilgrim in the poem?

Ans :

The poet beautifully compares the human heart to a pilgrim because it journeys through mortal life in search of spiritual peace and genuine emotional connection. Sadly, during this journey, the heart often faces deep disappointment due to superficial interactions.

2. How does the poet contrast genuine emotions with mere spoken words?

Ans :

The poet emphasizes that mere spoken words are often superficial, abundant, and completely fail to satisfy our deep emotional needs. In contrast, genuine emotions, true sincerity, and heartfelt actions provide real comfort and lasting meaning to human relationships.

3. Explain the metaphor of “summer birds” as used in the poem.

Ans :

Charles Swain compares empty words to summer birds that sing brightly but fly away when the season changes. Similarly, hollow promises vanish during difficult times, leaving behind empty air and deep grief instead of providing true companionship.

4. Why does the poet liken empty words to useless weeds?

Ans :

The poet compares empty words to useless weeds because weeds grow in great abundance everywhere but lack any real value. Similarly, people speak an enormous quantity of words, but without sincerity and genuine empathy, those words remain completely worthless.

5. What is the effect of a “host of words” on an individual?

Ans :

A “host of words” might sound intellectually impressive and easily reach the human head, but it completely fails to touch the human heart. Such grand but empty statements cannot provide the deep emotional support that a person truly requires.

6. Explain the significance of the phrase “a little said, and truly said.”

Ans :

This phrase highlights that a few sincere, heartfelt words are deeply precious. Unlike a long, empty speech, a little truth spoken with genuine empathy can bring immense joy and comfort to a lonely person seeking real emotional connection.

7. What ironic truth does the poet reveal about words and human celebration?

Ans :

The poet reveals a profound irony: if spoken words alone were truly capable of satisfying our deep inner feelings, the whole world would constantly celebrate a joyous feast. In reality, superficial words often fall short of providing emotional fulfillment.

8. In what specific situations are words “summoned to the test,” and what is the outcome?

Ans :

Words are actually summoned to the test during difficult times when a person requires real emotional support. When tested in these tough situations, mere words fail completely, proving that true companionship relies on genuine actions rather than empty speeches.

9. How does the poet use ‘flashy plants’ to describe human speech?

Ans :

Flashy plants make a gaudy show and bloom brightly, but they never grow any nourishing fruit. The poet uses this metaphor to show that people often speak beautifully, but their grand words completely lack genuine empathy and real action.

10. Describe the difference between words that reach the head and those that touch the heart.

Ans :

Words that reach the head are intellectually impressive but emotionally shallow. Conversely, words that truly touch the heart are rooted in absolute sincerity and genuine empathy, bringing immense comfort to a lonely person navigating through mortal life.

11. What happens when hollow promises disappear, according to the poet?

Ans :

When hollow promises and superficial words disappear during challenging moments, they leave nothing but empty air behind. This sudden disappearance deeply disappoints the human heart, which constantly seeks genuine emotional

connection rather than grand, meaningless statements from others.

12. Why does the poet emphasize silent support over an abundance of spoken words?

Ans :

The poet emphasizes silent support because genuine actions always speak louder than mere speech. While abundant words can be incredibly shallow, silent, loving support demonstrates true companionship and empathy, offering far more comfort to a lonely heart.

13. How do genuine actions compare to empty words in providing companionship?

Ans :

Genuine actions provide real, lasting companionship and emotional stability, whereas empty words only create a superficial illusion of support. The poet stresses that silent actions backed by real intentions are far more valuable than a thousand flashy, hollow promises.

14. What ultimate lesson on communication does the poem impart to its readers?

Ans :

The poem teaches a powerful lesson on mindful communication. It highlights that we must value true sincerity over endless talking. Our words should always be backed by real actions, ensuring we provide genuine empathy rather than empty statements.

15. How does Charles Swain highlight the experience of human loneliness in the poem?

Ans :

The poet highlights loneliness by showing our deep, unfulfilled need for true companionship in a world full of empty statements. A lonely person finds immense joy in a few sincerely spoken words, rather than in an abundance of hollow speeches.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Discuss the central theme of the poem “Words” by Charles Swain, focusing on the various metaphors used to describe empty speech.

Ans :

The central theme of Charles Swain’s poem “Words” revolves around the profound difference between superficial spoken words and genuine human emotions. The poet emphasizes that our deep emotional needs cannot be satisfied by grand

but empty statements. To illustrate this, Swain employs striking metaphors. He compares empty words to “summer birds” that fly away when seasons change, symbolizing how hollow promises vanish during difficult times. Furthermore, he likens them to “useless weeds” that grow abundantly but possess no real value, and to “flashy plants” that make a gaudy show but yield no nourishing fruit. Ultimately, the poem teaches that a “host of words” may impress the head, but only true sincerity and genuine actions can touch the human heart.

2. Imagine you are participating in a school assembly. Draft a short speech on the topic “Actions Speak Louder Than Words,” drawing inspiration from Charles Swain’s poem.

Ans :

Respected Principal, teachers, and dear friends
Today I stand before you to speak on the topic ‘Actions Speak Louder than Words.’ As Charles Swain’s poem beautifully highlights, the human heart is a pilgrim seeking genuine connection.

Often, people make grand statements that sound intellectually impressive but fail to touch the soul. Like summer birds that fly away when winter arrives, hollow promises vanish during difficult times.

Instead of speaking a ‘host of words’ that lack real empathy, we must learn the profound value of ‘a little said, and truly said.’ Let us remember that silent, loving support and sincere actions provide far more comfort than a thousand empty words.

Let our daily actions, not just our speeches, reflect our true feelings.

Thank you.

3. Suppose you relied on a friend’s grand promises during a difficult time, but they failed to support you. Write a diary entry expressing your feelings, relating your experience to the poem “Words.”

Ans :

Dear Diary,
Today has been a deeply disappointing day. When I faced a severe crisis, I reached out to a friend who had always made grand, supportive promises. However, when summoned to the test, their words failed completely. They offered no real help. It immediately reminded me of Charles Swain’s poem, where he compares empty words to “summer birds” that fly away when the season changes. My friend’s promises were just like those

flashy plants—making a gaudy show but bearing no nourishing fruit. I now truly understand that a “host of words” only reaches the head but fails to touch the heart. Going forward, I will value silent, sincere support and genuine actions far more than a thousand empty words.

4. Charles Swain compares the human heart to a “pilgrim.” Elaborate on this comparison. What is the heart searching for, and why does it often face disappointment?

Ans :

In the poem “Words,” Charles Swain masterfully compares the human heart to a pilgrim traveling through mortal life. A pilgrim is a traveler on a sacred journey seeking spiritual peace and enlightenment. Similarly, the human heart is on a continuous quest for genuine emotional connection, true companionship, and deep sincerity. Unfortunately, during this journey, the heart frequently encounters deep disappointment. It seeks nourishing fruit but only finds flashy plants; it desires lasting bonds but meets summer birds that fly away during difficult times. People often offer a vast “host of words” that are intellectually impressive but completely lack genuine empathy. Because society relies heavily on empty, superficial statements rather than true actions, the pilgrim heart remains lonely, constantly yearning for heartfelt sincerity.

5. Write a dialogue between two friends, Aman and Rohan, discussing the importance of sincere communication over empty boasting, using the concepts from the poem “Words.”

Ans :

Aman: Rohan, I noticed you were quiet when Raj was making those grand promises about helping everyone with the upcoming science project.

Rohan: Yes, Aman. His boastful talk reminded me of Charles Swain’s poem. Grand statements are often just “useless weeds” that grow abundantly but hold no real value.

Aman: That’s very true. When difficult times actually summon us to the test, such empty words fail completely.

Rohan: Exactly! They are like flashy plants that bloom brightly but never yield any nourishing fruit. I prefer someone who offers silent, genuine support.

Aman: I agree completely. As the poet says, “a little said, and truly said” is deeply precious. Genuine actions will always speak much louder than a host of impressive but empty words.

31. What does the phrase “reach the head” imply in the context of this poem?

- (a) Words that are intellectually impressive
- (b) Words that carry deep emotional weight
- (c) Words that cure physical head ailments
- (d) Words that create strong lasting bonds

Ans :

- (a) Words that are intellectually impressive

32. The poet points out an ironic truth: if words were truly enough, the world would

- (a) Sleep peacefully (b) Celebrate constantly
- (c) Work tirelessly (d) Travel endlessly

Ans :

- (b) Celebrate constantly

33. If words satisfied our inner feelings, the whole world would be celebrating a grand

- (a) Silent gathering (b) Sad memorial
- (c) Joyous feast (d) Long meeting

Ans :

- (c) Joyous feast

34. Words are actually “summoned to the test” during what moments?

- (a) Happy moments (b) Peaceful days
- (c) Childhood years (d) Difficult times

Ans :

- (d) Difficult times

35. When actually summoned to the test for real support, mere words do

- (a) Fail completely (b) Succeed greatly
- (c) Shine brightly (d) Help immensely

Ans :

- (a) Fail completely

36. To explain the failure of words, the poet uses a metaphor comparing them to

- (a) Tall trees (b) Flashy plants
- (c) Dead leaves (d) Hidden roots

Ans :

- (b) Flashy plants

37. Flashy plants that represent empty words only make a

- (a) Quiet scene (b) Hidden act
- (c) Gaudy show (d) Pure display

Ans :

- (c) Gaudy show

38. Flashy plants may bloom brightly, but they never actually grow any

- (a) Colorful leaves (b) Beautiful flowers
- (c) Strong branches (d) Nourishing fruit

Ans :

- (d) Nourishing fruit

39. People can speak beautifully, but their words often lack

- (a) Genuine empathy (b) Proper grammar
- (c) Good spelling (d) Loud volume

Ans :

- (a) Genuine empathy

40. **Assertion (A):** Empty words are exactly like flashy plants.

Reason (R): They constantly produce abundant nourishing fruits.

- (a) Both A and R are absolutely true
- (b) Both A and R are entirely false
- (c) A is quite true, R is totally false
- (d) A is fully false, R is largely true

Ans :

- (c) A is quite true, R is totally false

41. Ultimately, the poem leaves the reader with a powerful lesson on

- (a) Navigation (b) Observation
- (c) Computation (d) Communication

Ans :

- (d) Communication

42. The text states that humans have a deep need for true

- (a) Entertainment (b) Companionship
- (c) Disagreement (d) Independence

Ans :

- (b) Companionship

43. The poem concludes that our words should always be backed by

- (a) Good intentions (b) Loud volumes
- (c) Empty promises (d) Real actions

Ans :

- (d) Real actions

- (b) Only statement II is true.
- (c) Both statements are true.
- (d) Neither statement is true.
- iii. What is the key difference between words that reach the head and words that touch the heart?
- iv. Which word in the stanza acts as a synonym for 'bestow' or 'grant'?
- v. State whether the following statement is True or False:
The poet suggests that the quantity of words is far more important than their sincerity.

Ans :

- i. (a) They are intellectually understood.
 - ii. (a) Only statement I is true.
 - iii. Words that reach the head are merely understood intellectually while words that touch the heart create a deep and genuine emotional impact.
 - iv. impart
 - v. False, because the poet explicitly states that "a little said, and truly said" brings deeper joy than "hosts of words."
4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows:
"The voice that wins its sunny way,
A lonely home to cheer,
Hath oft the fewest words to say;
But, oh! those few, how dear!"
- i. What makes the few words spoken by this specific voice so "dear"?
 - (a) They are rarely heard
 - (b) They bring genuine comfort
 - (c) They are loudly spoken
 - (d) They cost a fortune
 - ii. **Assertion (A):** The voice described in the stanza is highly valued by the listener.
Reason (R): It uses an overwhelming number of words to bring cheer to the home.
 - (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
 - (c) A is true but R is false.
 - (d) A is false but R is true.
 - iii. What kind of home does the comforting voice seek to brighten in this stanza?
 - iv. Identify the archaic word used in the stanza that means 'often'.
 - v. Fill in the blank:
The comforting voice uses its limited words

effectively to bring brightness and _____ to a lonely home.

Ans :

- i. (b) They bring genuine comfort
 - ii. (c) A is true but R is false.
 - iii. The comforting voice seeks to bring cheer and warmth to a lonely home.
 - iv. oft
 - v. cheer
5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows:
"If words could satisfy the chest,
The world might hold a feast;
But words, when summoned to the test,
Oft satisfy the least!"
- i. What does the phrase "summoned to the test" imply about words in real-life situations?
 - (a) They face real challenges
 - (b) They create grand feasts
 - (c) They avoid difficult tests
 - (d) They win easy battles
 - ii. Which statement accurately reflects the core contrast presented in this stanza?
 - (a) Words promise emotional fulfillment but practically fail to deliver it.
 - (b) Words appear completely silent but echo loudly inside the chest.
 - (c) Words create immense physical hunger but provide absolutely no food.
 - (d) Words avoid rigorous testing but always succeed easily in the end.
 - iii. What would happen if words could truly satisfy the emotional needs of people?
 - iv. What does the term "chest" metonymically represent in the first line of the stanza?
 - v. State whether the following statement is True or False:
The world would celebrate endlessly if mere words were enough to fulfill our emotional needs.

Ans :

- i. (a) They face real challenges
- ii. (a) Words promise emotional fulfillment but practically fail to deliver it.
- iii. The world would celebrate joyfully and hold a great feast if words could truly satisfy the emotional needs of people.
- iv. Heart
- v. True, because the poet states that if words could truly satisfy the chest, "The world might hold a feast."

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows:

“Like plants that make a gaudy show,
All blossom to the root;
But whose poor nature cannot grow,
One particle of fruit!”

- i. What does the “particle of fruit” symbolize in the context of the poem’s message?
(a) Meaningful substance
(b) Beautiful flowers
(c) Shallow promises
(d) Bright colours
- ii. **Assertion (A):** The plants described by the poet are visually impressive but practically useless.
Reason (R): They are completely unable to produce any actual fruit despite their heavy blossoms.
(a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
(b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
(c) A is true but R is false.
(d) A is false but R is true.
- iii. What does the poet compare empty words to in this stanza and why?
- iv. Identify the word from the stanza that means ‘extravagantly bright or showy, typically so as to be tasteless’.
- v. Fill in the blank:
The poet compares empty words to plants that display abundant _____ but ultimately yield no real, nourishing fruit.

Ans :

- i. (a) Meaningful substance
- ii. (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- iii. The poet compares empty words to gaudy plants that blossom beautifully but bear no fruit, showing that impressive words often lack real meaning and substance.
- iv. gaudy
- v. blossom



CHAPTER 8

BELIEVE IN YOURSELF

1. INTRODUCTION

This engaging poem explores the deep internal conflict individuals experience when standing at the crossroads of their future. It delves into the psychological “tug-of-war” between the exciting promise of progress and the comforting safety of the familiar. The premise centers on the daunting reality of facing new challenges, highlighting how fear and uncertainty naturally pull us toward the “status quo.” Set against the solitary backdrop of personal ambition, where there is no cheering crowd to offer validation, the text vividly captures the mental barriers one must confront to take the incredibly difficult first step into the unknown.

2. SUMMARY

Facing the Challenge Alone

The speaker describes a situation where an individual must stand up and confront a difficult task. In this crucial moment, there is no audience or crowd present to watch the struggle or offer support. It is a deeply solitary journey where the only things that matter are the individual, the path that lies ahead of them, and the ultimate destination they wish to reach in their life.

The Weight of Future Choices

As the future approaches, it brings a sense of uncertainty that forces the individual to make critical decisions. The person faces a conflict regarding whether the impending future will motivate them to keep moving ahead or if the fear of the unknown will force them to retreat. Making these choices becomes increasingly hard and intimidating as the reality of the future draws closer.

Leaving the Comfort Zone

The speaker acknowledges that it is very relaxing and tempting to stay in a comfortable position, keeping everything exactly the way it currently is. However, the stanza points out that humans are not meant to simply remain stagnant in

their familiar, everyday routines. True personal development and progress cannot happen if a person refuses to leave their comfortable environment.

Taking the Hardest First Step

The initial action required to start a new journey is presented as the most difficult one to take. Once that crucial choice is made and the movement begins, there is no option to reverse course or return to the past. To ensure that the journey continues smoothly and the desired future is successfully reached, the individual must rely entirely on complete self-confidence and trust in their own abilities.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

Step up to the challenge
There is no crowd to see,
It's just you and the future
And where you want to be.

Word Meaning :

1. Step up - To bravely take action or accept a responsibility.
2. Challenge - A difficult task or problem that tests your abilities.
3. Crowd - A large group of people.

Explanation :

In this opening stanza, the poet is directly talking to you, the reader. He is encouraging you to bravely face any difficult tasks or obstacles in your life. He points out a hard truth: when you are working hard towards your goals, there won't always be people watching you or cheering you on.

This stanza sets a realistic but encouraging tone. It highlights that the journey to success is often a lonely one. It is ultimately a private matter between you, the future you are walking into, and the goals you have set for yourself. The poet wants you to understand that true

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows:

"If words could satisfy the heart,
The heart might find less care;
But words, like summer birds, depart,
And leave but empty air."

- i. What does the departure of "summer birds" imply about the nature of words in this context?
 - (a) They lack permanence
 - (b) They migrate annually
 - (c) They bring happiness
 - (d) They sound musical
- ii. **Assertion (A):** The heart continues to experience care and worry.
Reason (R): Words alone are insufficient to genuinely satisfy the heart's needs.
 - (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
 - (c) A is true but R is false.
 - (d) A is false but R is true.
- iii. What does the poet mean by saying words leave "but empty air"?
- iv. Identify the figure of speech used in the line "But words, like summer birds, depart,".
- v. State whether the following statement is True or False:
The poet believes that words leave behind a lasting, meaningful impact on the heart.

Ans :

- i. (a) They lack permanence
 - ii. (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - iii. Words leave no lasting impact or comfort behind — they simply vanish without truly satisfying the heart.
 - iv. Simile
 - v. False, because the poet states that words leave "but empty air," indicating they have no lasting substance.
2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows:
- "The heart, a pilgrim upon earth,
Finds often, when it needs,
That words are of as little worth
As just so many weeds."
- i. Why are words compared to "weeds" in times

of deep emotional need?

- (a) They multiply quickly
- (b) They lack true value
- (c) They grow everywhere
- (d) They are easily found
- ii. Which of the following best describes the speaker's perspective on the human heart?
 - (a) It is a weary traveler seeking genuine solace.
 - (b) It is a joyous explorer finding beautiful words.
 - (c) It is a lost wanderer confused by false plants.
 - (d) It is a careless pilgrim ignoring helpful advice.
- iii. In what situation does the heart realise that words are as worthless as weeds?
- iv. Identify the poetic device used in the phrase "The heart, a pilgrim upon earth,".
- v. Fill in the blank:
In times of deep emotional distress, the heart discovers that mere words are ultimately -----.

Ans :

- i. (b) They lack true value
 - ii. (a) It is a weary traveler seeking genuine solace.
 - iii. The heart realises the worthlessness of words when it is in genuine emotional need and seeks real comfort and solace.
 - iv. Metaphor
 - v. worthless
3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows:
- "A little said, and truly said,
Can deeper joy impart
Than hosts of words, which reach the head,
But never touch the heart."
- i. What does the phrase "reach the head" suggest about the "hosts of words"?
 - (a) They are intellectually understood.
 - (b) They are emotionally overwhelming.
 - (c) They are physically exhausting.
 - (d) They are logically confusing.
 - ii. Read the following statements:
 - I. Sincerity in few words brings profound happiness.
 - II. Abundant words always succeed in comforting people.
 - (a) Only statement I is true.

for/This isn't how we grow" shows how the repetition emphasizes that staying in your comfort zone is the wrong choice.

3. **Antithesis:** Placing opposite ideas or words close together to highlight a contrast. For example, "pull you forward/Or push you back" shows the two opposite directions a person can go based on whether they choose courage or fear.
4. **Inversion:** Changing the normal order of words in a sentence to emphasize a specific word. For example, "Difficult are choices" shows the poet putting the word "difficult" first to make the reader feel the weight of the struggle before even knowing what is being discussed.
5. **Personification:** Giving human-like actions or traits to an idea or object. For example, "When the future is getting near" shows the poet treating the "future" like a person who is physically walking toward the speaker, making the passage of time feel more urgent.

5. MESSAGE

The core message of this poem by Robert Frost is that making life choices can be very scary. When we stand at a crossroads, we must choose between our safe comfort zone and an unknown future. Frost shows us that it is normal to fear new challenges and want to stay safe. However, to succeed and grow, we must overcome this fear and bravely take that difficult first step away from the familiar.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Reflect and Respond

I. Imagine that you are the person in the image.

1. What emotions do you feel standing at the base of a difficult task?

Ans :

Standing at the base of a difficult task, I feel a mix of apprehension and excitement. There is a sense of nervousness about the unknown and the effort required, but also a glimmer of hope and determination to reach the top.

2. What might make you take the first step?

Ans :

The desire to achieve my goals and the belief that

the future holds better opportunities would make me take the first step. Knowing that staying in the same place won't lead to growth gives me the courage to move forward.

II. Think about a time when you had to face a challenge.

1. What was it, and how did you feel at the start of the journey?

Ans :

The challenge was participating in an inter-school debate competition for the first time. At the start of the journey, I felt intimidated, anxious, and filled with self-doubt about whether I was good enough to compete against experienced speakers.

2. How did you feel once you made the decision to move forward?

Ans :

Once I made the decision to move forward and started preparing, my fear slowly turned into focus. I felt a sense of empowerment and relief because taking action helped reduce my anxiety, making me feel more in control of the situation.

III. What does the phrase 'believe in yourself' mean to you? Write some words or phrases you associate with believing in yourself.

Ans :

To me, 'believe in yourself' means having confidence in your own abilities, trusting your instincts, and knowing that you can handle whatever obstacles come your way.

Words/phrases associated with it : 'Self-confidence, courage, inner strength, trusting the process, determination, resilience, and a positive mindset'.

IV. Select the correct meaning of 'status quo' based on the given sentence.

Even though some kids wanted to try new activities, most of them were happy with the status quo and didn't want any changes.

1. A plan to make things more exciting.
2. A situation to keep things the same.
3. A decision where everything is completely different.
4. A choice to change things quickly without thinking.

Ans :

2. A situation to keep things the same.

- iii. Fill in the blank with the appropriate word/phrase from the extract.
Latha will _____ her efforts to improve her vocal performance by practicing harder each day.

- iv. Select the most suitable title for the extract.

- A. The Struggles of Change
- B. Facing the Future Alone
- C. A Journey of Growth
- D. The Power of Fear

- v. Complete the analogy by using a word from the extract.

achieve : goal :: face : _____

Ans :

- i. It suggests that facing personal challenges is a solitary journey. You won't always have an audience to cheer you on or validate your choices; true motivation must come from within yourself.
- ii. The line 'It's just you and the future' suggests that you are solely responsible for shaping your own destiny and outcomes.
- iii. Latha will **step up** her efforts to improve her vocal performance by practicing harder each day.
- iv. B. Facing the Future Alone
- v. achieve : goal :: face : **challenge**

II. Answer the following questions.

1. What is the significance of the metaphor, 'The first step is the hardest' in the context of personal growth?

Ans :

In the context of personal growth, leaving our comfort zone is mentally and emotionally taxing. The metaphor signifies that while the journey itself may be long, gathering the willpower to initiate change and confront our fears at the very beginning requires the greatest amount of strength.

2. What message does the antithesis in the poem convey about the nature of personal development?

Ans :

The antithesis ("pull you forward / push you back") conveys that personal development is not a passive state; it is a constant tug-of-war between progress and fear. We are continuously forced to choose between retreating into our comfortable past or boldly stepping into the unknown future.

3. Do you think the poet's message is realistic in the context of real-world struggles? (Clue: Evaluate whether simply 'believing in yourself' is enough to overcome obstacles or other factors are also necessary.)

Ans :

The poet's message is an essential starting point, but in the real world, "believing in yourself" is rarely enough on its own. While self-belief provides the necessary courage to take the first step, overcoming practical obstacles also requires hard work, skill development, planning, and sometimes external support or resources. However, without self-belief, none of those other factors can be put to effective use.

4. Consider a situation where you or someone you know had to take a difficult first step towards a goal. How does the poem's message about the importance of self-belief apply to this situation?

Ans :

When my friend decided to switch streams from Science to Arts to pursue her passion for literature, she faced severe criticism and self-doubt. The "first step" of making the switch was incredibly hard because she was leaving her comfort zone (the status quo). The poem's message applies perfectly here: she had to rely solely on her self-belief to push past the fear of the unknown, trusting that this solitary choice would ultimately put her future on the right track.

Vocabulary in Context

- I. The phrase 'status quo' is a Latin expression that translates to 'the state in which' or 'the existing state of affairs.' Over time, it has become a popular term used in English to refer to the current situation or condition, especially when things remain unchanged.

There are other Latin terms commonly used in English.

Read a few given below along with their meanings.

	Latin expression	Meaning
1.	et cetera (etc.)	And other things; and so on
2.	exempli gratia (e.g.)	For example
3.	ad hoc	For a specific purpose or situation, often temporary

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	There is no crowd to see...	ii.	Suggests a solitary journey, stressing individual effort.
2.	push you back in fear?	iii.	Evokes the mental barrier that prevents growth.

Extra : (i) Represents the difficulty of beginning a new challenge or change.

VI. Symbolism

Select the words/phrases from the box below to complete the given sentences.

unknown	self-improvement	courage
leap of faith	stagnation	

- Comfort and the status quo represent _____ and fear of change, symbolising the comfort zone that holds one back.
- The future symbolises the _____, the potential for change and success that lies ahead but requires _____ to step into.
- The first step symbolises the initial _____ required to begin the journey of _____ or personal development.

Ans :

- Comfort and the status quo represent **stagnation** and fear of change, symbolising the comfort zone that holds one back.
- The future symbolises the **unknown**, the potential for change and success that lies ahead but requires a **leap of faith** to step into.
- The first step symbolises the initial **courage** required to begin the journey of **self-improvement** or personal development.

VII. Metaphor

The poet uses a metaphor in the line, 'The first step is the hardest'. Explain why this is metaphorical.

Ans :

This line is metaphorical because it compares the abstract idea of beginning a new endeavor or making a tough life choice to the physical action of taking a "first step." It implies that overcoming initial doubts, fears, and inertia to start something new is the most difficult part of any journey.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

VIII. The poem uses antithesis in a couple of lines.

Antithesis is a rhetorical device that pairs contrasting or opposite ideas in a parallel grammatical structure to highlight differences or create emphasis. It simplifies complex ideas through contrast, making them easier for readers or listeners to understand.

Consider the famous quote from Neil Armstrong when he stepped onto the moon:

"Setting foot on the moon may be a small step for a man, but a giant leap for mankind."

Here, the antithesis lies in contrasting the 'small step' for an individual with the 'giant leap' for all humanity. The parallel structure of the two phrases highlights the incredible significance of this event, presenting it as both a personal and massive achievement.

Other examples :

- Speech is silver, but silence is gold.
- Patience is bitter, but it has a sweet fruit.
- Man proposes, God disposes.

Identify the lines from the poem that show antithesis and explain why it is so.

Ans :

The lines in the poem that show **antithesis** are :

"If you think you are beaten, you are."
"If you think you dare not, you don't."

"If you think you'll lose, you're lost."

"If you think you can't, you won't."

These lines use **antithesis** because they present **contrasting ideas** in a parallel structure :

- Thinking positively vs thinking negatively
- Confidence vs fear or doubt

The poet contrasts **belief and doubt** to emphasise that success or failure begins in the mind. This contrast makes the message clear and powerful—that **attitude determines outcome**.

Critical Reflection

I. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow.

- Step up to the challenge
There is no crowd to see,
It's just you and the future
And where you want to be.
- What does the line, 'There is no crowd to see' suggest about facing challenges?
- Complete the following suitably.
The line 'It's just you and the future' suggests that _____.

Check Your Understanding

- I. Based on your understanding of the poem, select the correct central idea for each stanza from the options given.

Stanza 1

- Facing challenges requires personal responsibility and a clear focus on one's future.
- Facing challenges is a journey best taken with support and guidance from others.

Ans :

- Facing challenges requires personal responsibility and a clear focus on one's future.

Stanza 2

- Fear and uncertainty make it difficult to make choices as the future approaches.
- Facing the future with confidence makes choices easier and more straightforward.

Ans :

- Fear and uncertainty make it difficult to make choices as the future approaches.

Stanza 3

- Personal growth involves finding balance between comfort and change.
- Personal growth requires leaving behind comfort and embracing change.

Ans :

- Personal growth requires leaving behind comfort and embracing change.

Stanza 4

- The first step towards change may feel easy if you place your trust in others to guide you and provide support.
- The first step towards change is difficult, but having self-belief and confidence helps you stay on track.

Ans :

- The first step towards change is difficult, but having self-belief and confidence helps you stay on track.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

II. Rhyme Scheme

Fill in the blank to complete the following sentence.

The poem follows a simple, yet effective rhyme scheme _____ that flows steadily through each stanza.

Ans :

The poem follows a simple, yet effective rhyme scheme **abcb** that flows steadily through each stanza.

III. Tone

State whether the following statements are true or false.

- The overall tone of the poem is motivational and encouraging.
- The tone shifts from thoughtful in the beginning to one of determination by the end of the poem.

Ans :

- True
- True

IV. Speaker

Fill in the blanks with the correct options from those given in the brackets.

The speaker in this poem is not distant; rather, he/ she comes across as a _____ (stranger/ guide) who understands the struggle and is encouraging the reader to take _____ (interest in/control of) his/her own future.

The use of direct address 'You' creates a close connection, as though the speaker is _____. (talking directly to the reader/addressing the reader from a distance)

Ans :

The speaker in this poem is not distant; rather, he/ she comes across as a **guide** who understands the struggle and is encouraging the reader to take **control of** his/her own future.

The use of direct address 'You' creates a close connection, as though the speaker is **talking directly to the reader**.

V. Imagery

Match the phrases from the poem in Column 1 with the imagery they represent in Column 2. An extra representation is given.

	Column 1		Column 2
1.	There is no crowd to see...	i.	Represents the difficulty of beginning a new challenge or change.
2.	push you back in fear?	ii.	Suggests a solitary journey, stressing individual effort.
		iii.	Evokes the mental barrier that prevents growth.

4.	in media res	Into the middle of things; starting at a crucial point of the story or situation
5.	per se	By itself; fundamentally
6.	quid pro quo	A favour or advantage given in return for something

Now, fill in the blanks in the given sentences with the Latin expressions used in English from the table.

- I enjoy reading fantasy books, _____ Harry Potter and Magical Paint Brush.
- After helping Tanya with the homework, Ritu asked for a _____ to borrow her notes next time.
- I love all kinds of outdoor activities, such as trekking, hiking, biking, _____.
- The park is not very special _____; it becomes more fun when you visit with friends.
- We created an _____ team to organise the school festival.
- The movie started _____, with the hero already fighting the villain in a huge battle.

Ans :

- I enjoy reading fantasy books, **exempli gratia** (e.g.) Harry Potter and Magical Paint Brush.
- After helping Tanya with the homework, Ritu asked for a **quid pro quo** to borrow her notes next time.
- I love all kinds of outdoor activities, such as trekking, hiking, biking, **et cetera** (etc.).
- The park is not very special **per se**; it becomes more fun when you visit with friends.
- We created an **ad hoc** team to organise the school festival.
- The movie started **in media res**, with the hero already fighting the villain in a huge battle.

II. The line , ‘Will it pull you forward/or push you back in fear?’ is a rhetorical question.

A rhetorical question is a question that doesn't require an answer because it is used to make the reader think or reflect on a particular idea.

- Read the following rhetorical questions and state what they intend to achieve.
 - Isn't it obvious that we must act now? Don't we all have a responsibility to make a change?
 - Will we let fear control us, or will we rise above it?

Ans :

- These questions intend to create a sense of urgency, urging the reader/listener to agree with the speaker and take immediate collective action.
- This question intends to inspire courage and challenge the reader to make an empowering choice, highlighting that giving in to fear is undesirable.

- Match the situations in Column 1 to the rhetorical questions in Column 2.

	Column 1		Column 2
i.	Deciding whether to stand up for what is right	A.	How can we ever grow if we never try anything new?
ii.	Owning up to a mistake made in a group project	B.	Isn't it better to admit our mistakes than to let them define us?
iii.	Deciding whether to try something challenging, like public speaking	C.	If I don't take responsibility now, when will I?
iv.	Choosing between two career paths	D.	Can I really move forward without knowing which path to take?
v.	Deciding whether to apologise for a mistake	E.	What's the point of playing it safe if it means staying stuck?
vi.	Trying something new and stepping out of your comfort zone	F.	How can we stay silent when we know what is right?

Ans :

	Column 1		Column 2
i.	Deciding whether to stand up for what is right	F.	How can we stay silent when we know what is right?
ii.	Owning up to a mistake made in a group project	C.	If I don't take responsibility now, when will I?

iii.	Deciding whether to try something challenging, like public speaking	E.	What's the point of playing it safe if it means staying stuck?
iv.	Choosing between two career paths	D.	Can I really move forward without knowing which path to take?
v.	Deciding whether to apologise for a mistake	B.	Isn't it better to admit our mistakes than to let them define us?
vi.	Trying something new and stepping out of your comfort zone	A.	How can we ever grow if we never try anything new?

Listen and Respond

I. You will listen to a conversation between two friends. As you listen, answer the following questions in one to three exact words that you hear. (Transcript for teacher on page 275)

- How did the boy feel before the play?
- According to the girl, where does confidence come from?
- What was the girl finally sure about regarding the boy?

Ans :

- Worried and nervous.
- taking action.
- you'll shine.

II. You will once again listen to the conversation. As you listen, select the four true statements from 1–7 given below.

- The boy feels confident but is worried about freezing on stage.
- The girl encourages the boy to push through his doubts by trusting in his preparation.
- The boy thinks that the audience will be supportive regardless of his performance.
- The girl believes that self-doubt is a normal part of preparing for a big performance.
- The boy feels that his preparation is not enough and doubts his abilities, even though he has practiced.
- The girl suggests that the boy should avoid feeling nervous and perform perfectly.

- The girl believes that pushing through nervousness will help the boy grow and build confidence.

Ans :

- The girl encourages the boy to push through his doubts by trusting in his preparation.
- The girl believes that self-doubt is a normal part of preparing for a big performance.
- The boy feels that his preparation is not enough and doubts his abilities, even though he has practiced.
- The girl believes that pushing through nervousness will help the boy grow and build confidence.

The four true statements are : 2, 4, 5, 7.

Speaking Activity

Work in pairs. Read the three Sayings/Proverbs given below. For each one, think of a real-life situation where it could apply. Do the suggested role play and use the Saying/Proverb.

Remember :

- Before diving into a real-life situation, briefly explain the meaning of the saying.
- Describe the situation in the following way—
 - Introduction :** Briefly explain the saying.
 - Situation/Example :** Share a personal story or relate the saying to something familiar.
 - Conclusion :** Reflect on what the saying teaches or what you learned from the experience.
- For the role-play, work in pairs to create the dialogues first and then enact. Take turns to choose your sayings/proverbs.

Sayings/Proverbs

- Don't judge a book by its cover.
 - Situation to consider :** Have you ever misjudged someone based on their appearance or first impression? What happened?
 - Role-play :** One student acts as someone who judges others based on their looks or first impressions. The other student plays someone who shows the true personality after a deeper conversation, proving that appearances can be deceptive.
- Actions speak louder than words.
 - Situation to consider :** Think of a time when someone's actions proved more valuable than their words.

- **Role-play :** One student talks about how they will improve their grades, and the other shows how they actually put in the effort. Compare the impact of talking versus doing.
3. When the going gets tough, the tough get going.
- **Situation to consider :** Can you think of a time when you faced a difficult challenge but didn't give up?
 - **Role-play :** One student plays someone who is giving up on a tough school project, while the other encourages that student to keep going. Show how perseverance leads to success despite difficulties.

Ans :

- Don't judge a book by its cover.
Situation : A new student joins the class and looks very quiet and stern. Everyone thinks he is unfriendly, but upon talking to him, they realize he is hilarious and very kind.
Role-play :
Student A : "I don't think we should invite the new boy to our group. He always frowns and looks so mean."
Student B : "You know, I spoke to him during lunch. He's actually just really shy, but he tells the best jokes! Remember, don't judge a book by its cover."
- Actions speak louder than words.
Situation : A student always promises to help with group projects but never actually does any research or writing.
Role-play :
Student A : "I promise I'll do all the formatting tonight! I just got busy yesterday, but I'll definitely do it this time."
Student B : "You've said that for the past three assignments, but we ended up doing the work. Show us you mean it tonight, because 'actions speak louder than words.'"
- When the going gets tough, the tough get going.
Situation : A team is losing badly at half-time during a basketball final. Instead of giving up, the captain motivates the team to play their best defense.
Role-play :
Student A : "We are down by 20 points. We're never going to win this. I think we should just let the clock run out."
Student B : "No way! We didn't train for months to give up now. We need to push harder. "When the going gets tough, the tough get going! Let's get out there!"

Writing Task

- I. **Your class is conducting the morning assembly. You have been asked to deliver a speech on the topic, 'Turning Challenges into Opportunities'. Draft this speech by following the guidelines given below.**

- **Opening paragraph :** Greet the audience and introduce yourself. Begin with a quotation, a question or a surprising fact. State the purpose of your speech and provide an overview of what you will be talking about.
- **Paragraphs 2 and 3 — Body of the speech:** Divide the body of your speech into two paragraphs, each focusing on a different main point or idea. Use transition words, anecdotes, statistics, and other supporting evidence to strengthen your points.
- **Concluding paragraph:** Summarise the main points of your speech. End with a statement that leaves a lasting impression on the audience and convey your thanks.
- Use formal language to present ideas clearly
- Use persuasive tone — don't you agree .../..., isn't it?

Refer to the guidelines given below.

- Consider how challenges can lead to new learning experiences, growth, or unexpected benefits.
- Why do you think people often feel scared or anxious when faced with change?
- How can change open doors to new opportunities? Can you think of an example from your own life or someone you know?
- What are some strategies or attitudes you can adopt to approach change with a positive mindset?
- Think about how facing challenges builds skills, determination, and confidence, all of which are essential for success.

Ans :

Turning Challenges into Opportunities

Good morning, respected Principal, teachers, and my dear friends. I am [Your Name] from Class 9. Have you ever considered that a kite flies highest not with the wind, but against it? Today, I stand before you to speak on a topic that resonates with all of us: 'Turning Challenges into Opportunities.' We often view challenges as massive roadblocks, but in reality, they are stepping stones disguised as hurdles.

Whenever we face a sudden change or a difficult task, our first instinct is often fear or anxiety.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

- (d) Both A and R are false according to the poem.

Ans :

(b) A is true, but R is false based on the poem.

10. What does the poet encourage you to step into?

- (a) The unknown (b) The past
(c) The crowd (d) The familiar

Ans :

(a) The unknown

11. What does the poem explore as it progresses?

- (a) Social disputes (b) Internal conflict
(c) Financial ruin (d) Physical battle

Ans :

(b) Internal conflict

12. When does everyone face this internal conflict?

- (a) While sleeping
(b) While travelling
(c) Making tough choices
(d) Seeking validation

Ans :

(c) Making tough choices

13. How does the future interact with the reader, according to the poem?

- (a) It traps them in a cycle of deep despair and sadness.
(b) It offers them endless wealth and sudden global fame.
(c) It forces them to abandon their close family members.
(d) It pulls them forward or pushes them back in deep fear.

Ans :

(d) It pulls them forward or pushes them back in deep fear.

14. What emotion is associated with the future “pulling you forward”?

- (a) Excitement (b) Sadness
(c) Boredom (d) Anger

Ans :

(a) Excitement

15. What emotion pushes you back?

- (a) Joy (b) Fear
(c) Love (d) Hope

Ans :

(b) Fear

16. Which of the following statements is correct regarding the poem?

- (a) The future only brings fear and stops any meaningful progress.
(b) Making tough choices is easy and rarely causes any conflict.
(c) There is a constant tug-of-war between progress and retreating.
(d) The poet believes that fear is an unnatural and rare emotion.

Ans :

(c) There is a constant tug-of-war between progress and retreating.

17. The mind faces a tug-of-war between progress and retreating to what is _____.

- (a) Hard (b) New
(c) Far (d) Familiar

Ans :

(d) Familiar

18. What two feelings are completely normal when approaching new challenges?

- (a) Fear and uncertainty
(b) Joy and arrogance
(c) Anger and resentment
(d) Peace and relaxation

Ans :

(a) Fear and uncertainty

19. Assertion (A): Fear and uncertainty are normal when approaching new challenges.

Reason (R): Giving in to fear is the best way to reach your potential.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation.
(b) A is true, but R is false based on the poem.
(c) A is false, but R is true based on the poem.
(d) Both A and R are false according to the poem.

Ans :

(b) A is true, but R is false based on the poem.

20. What happens if we give in to fear?

- (a) We feel happier
(b) We gain wealth
(c) It stops our potential

with dedication. Through perseverance and rigorous training, he became one of India's greatest athletes and brought pride to the nation. His life teaches us the power of resilience and courage.

3. **Kalpana Chawla** : Kalpana Chawla grew up in a small town with big dreams of flying. She faced several obstacles, including limited opportunities and societal expectations. However, her determination and passion for aerospace engineering helped her overcome these challenges. She went on to become the first Indian woman in space, inspiring millions across the world.
4. **Sudha Murty** : Sudha Murty faced gender discrimination when she wanted to pursue engineering, a field dominated by men at that time. Despite this, she worked hard and proved her capability. She later became a successful author and social worker, contributing significantly to society through her philanthropic work.

Conclusion : These inspiring personalities show us that “challenges are not obstacles but opportunities in disguise”. With determination, hard work, and a positive attitude, anyone can overcome difficulties and achieve success.

4. Working towards your future is described as a journey that is deeply:
- Personal and solitary
 - Social and crowded
 - Public and praised
 - Loud and chaotic

Ans :

- (a) Personal and solitary

5. According to the poem, “There is no _____ to see.”
- Person
 - Crowd
 - Friend
 - Guide

Ans :

- (b) Crowd

6. What does the phrase “There is no crowd to see” mean in the text?
- The journey is often ignored by the public media.
 - The reader should always hide their true progress.
 - You won't always have an audience to cheer you.
 - People are naturally jealous of your new success.

Ans :

- (c) You won't always have an audience to cheer you.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. What is the tone of the poem?
- Highly motivational
 - Deeply sorrowful
 - Highly critical
 - Mildly sarcastic

Ans :

- (a) Highly motivational

2. What role does the poet act as?
- A strict teacher
 - A harsh critic
 - A supportive guide
 - A silent watcher

Ans :

- (c) A supportive guide

3. What must the reader take control of?
- Their fears
 - Their past
 - Their anger
 - Their destiny

Ans :

- (d) Their destiny

7. What will you not always get for your choices?
- Harsh criticism
 - Financial support
 - Quick results
 - External validation

Ans :

- (d) External validation

8. Where must true motivation come from?
- From within
 - From peers
 - From family
 - From society

Ans :

- (a) From within

Assertion (A): The journey to the future is deeply personal.

Reason (R): You will always have people cheering you on.

- Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation.
- A is true, but R is false based on the poem.
- A is false, but R is true based on the poem.

Why do we feel this way? It is because stepping out of our comfort zone disrupts the ‘status quo.’ However, staying in our comfort zone only leads to stagnation. Challenges push us to adapt, innovate, and discover strengths we never knew we had. Consider the story of Dr. APJ Abdul Kalam. Facing immense financial hardship as a child, he didn’t give up. Instead, he took on the challenge of distributing newspapers to fund his education. That difficulty taught him the value of hard work, eventually turning an ordinary boy into the ‘Missile Man of India.’ When we face our fears, don’t you agree that we unlock doors to unexpected benefits and new learning experiences?

To approach change with a positive mindset, we must embrace a simple strategy: view failures as feedback, not final outcomes. Every time we tackle a difficult math problem or step on stage despite being nervous, we build resilience and determination. These are the exact skills required for long-term success, isn’t it?

In conclusion, a life without challenges is a life without growth. The next time you find yourself standing at the base of a difficult task, do not step back in fear. Take a leap of faith, believe in yourself, and turn that obstacle into your greatest opportunity. Thank you!

Learning Beyond the Text

I. Explore the stories of Indian leaders who faced significant challenges and turned them into opportunities for success.

For example :

1. Dr. B. R. Ambedkar : At school, Ambedkar suffered untold humiliations and discrimination but he never gave up.

It was for sheer grit, hardwork, and perseverance that he went on to study Politics and Economics. His self-motivation proved to be a life-changing event not only for him but also for the nation. He is known as a great jurist, economist, and social reformer.

He rose to become the Chairperson of the Drafting Committee of the Constitution of India.

2. Lal Bahadur Shastri

He endured many hardships throughout his life. His father passed away when he was just a year and a half old, leaving the family in financial distress. Despite the challenges, he remained committed to his education, often walking several

miles barefoot to attend school, even in extreme weather. After graduating from Kashi Vidyapeeth in Varanasi, he was honoured with the title “Shastri,” meaning scholar.

Deeply involved in India’s freedom movement, Shastri was imprisoned multiple times alongside other freedom fighters for his active participation. Following India’s independence, he dedicated himself to the progress and unity of the nation. Through unwavering determination and sincere efforts, Lal Bahadur Shastri rose to become the Prime Minister of India, leaving a legacy of humility, service, and patriotism.

3. Dr. APJ Abdul Kalam

Kalam’s family faced financial difficulties, which made it hard for them to support his education fully. To help with his school expenses, Kalam took on a job delivering newspapers early in the morning. He would wake up before dawn, distribute newspapers across the town, and then head to school.

This job was more than just a way to earn money; it was a valuable learning experience for Kalam. Through this work, he learnt the importance of hard work, perseverance, and managing responsibilities. It also gave him a sense of independence and taught him the value of hard work.

He was a renowned scientist, also known as the ‘Missile Man of India’. He rose to become the 11th President of India.

Now, find out about such personalities from your village, town, city, or state and present their success stories in class.

Ans :

Success Stories of Inspiring Personalities

1. **Narendra Modi** : Narendra Modi faced many hardships during his childhood. He came from a humble background and even helped his father sell tea at a railway station. Despite financial struggles, he remained determined and focused on self-improvement. Through hard work, discipline, and strong leadership qualities, he rose to become the Prime Minister of India. His journey shows how determination can turn humble beginnings into great success.

2. **Milkha Singh** : Known as the “Flying Sikh”, Milkha Singh faced immense challenges in his early life, including the trauma of losing his family during the partition of India. Despite these hardships, he pursued athletics

(d) It brings an audience

Ans :

(c) It stops our potential

21. Giving in to fear stops us from reaching our

-----.

- (a) Past goals (b) Known limits
(c) Peer groups (d) True potential

Ans :

(d) True potential

22. The tug-of-war happens in our:

- (a) Minds (b) Hearts
(c) Homes (d) Schools

Ans :

(a) Minds

23. Retreating means going back to the:

- (a) Unknown (b) Familiar
(c) Excitement (d) Progress

Ans :

(b) Familiar

24. What is a major theme in the poem?

- (a) Social status (b) Staying safe
(c) The comfort zone (d) Earning money

Ans :

(c) The comfort zone

25. What is another term used for the comfort zone?

- (a) The new way (b) The leap forward
(c) The steady path (d) The status quo

Ans :

(d) The status quo

26. Why is staying in the “status quo” considered dangerous in the poem?

- (a) It makes true personal growth entirely impossible.
(b) It forces the individual to face physical dangers.
(c) It causes the person to lose all their true friends.
(d) It requires too much effort and exhausts the mind.

Ans :

(a) It makes true personal growth entirely impossible.

27. Personal growth is impossible if we avoid

-----.

- (a) People (b) Change
(c) Safety (d) Comfort

Ans :

(b) Change

28. What is described as the “enemy of success”?

- (a) Hard work (b) Excitement
(c) Stagnation (d) Motivation

Ans :

(c) Stagnation

29. To achieve goals, we must leave behind what is:

- (a) Difficult (b) Unknown
(c) Exciting (d) Easy

Ans :

(d) Easy

30. What must we embrace to improve ourselves?

- (a) The unknown (b) The familiar
(c) The audience (d) The stagnation

Ans :

(a) The unknown

31. What kind of leap must we take?

- (a) A fearful leap (b) A brave leap
(c) A slow leap (d) A blind leap

Ans :

(b) A brave leap

32. Which of the following statements is correct regarding stagnation?

- (a) Stagnation is the key to unlocking your true potential.
(b) Stagnation helps you face new challenges with courage.
(c) Stagnation is explicitly called the enemy of success.
(d) Stagnation is a brave leap into the unknown future.

Ans :

(c) Stagnation is explicitly called the enemy of success.

33. Avoiding change keeps us:

- (a) Successful (b) Motivated
(c) Growing (d) Comfortable

- iii. The poet presents being pulled forward with courage or being pushed back in fear as two contrasting outcomes when facing the future.
- iv. Difficult
- v. difficult

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“There is such ease in comfort
To maintain the status quo,
But this isn’t what we are made for
This isn’t how we grow.”

- i. What does the speaker imply about maintaining the “status quo”?
 - (a) It brings success.
 - (b) It stops progress.
 - (c) It builds courage.
 - (d) It ensures victory.
- ii. Which of the following best describes the speaker’s perspective on human potential?
 - (a) We thrive best in familiar comfort zones.
 - (b) We are meant to evolve through challenges.
 - (c) We must avoid disrupting our current lives.
 - (d) We should seek ease instead of hardship.
- iii. According to the poet, what is the only way human beings truly grow?
- iv. Which two-word phrase in the extract means “the existing state of affairs”?
- v. State True or False with a brief reason:
The poet believes that human beings are designed to remain in a state of comfort permanently.

Ans :

- i. (b) It stops progress.
- ii. (b) We are meant to evolve through challenges.
- iii. Human beings truly grow by stepping out of their comfort zone and facing challenges, not by maintaining the status quo.
- iv. status quo
- v. False, because the poet explicitly states “this isn’t what we are made for” to reject permanent comfort.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“The first step is the hardest
There is no turning back,
You just need to believe in yourself
For your future to be on track.”

- i. Why is the “first step” considered the hardest?
 - (a) It demands courage.
 - (b) It causes injuries.
 - (c) It requires friends.
 - (d) It wastes energy.
- ii. **Statement I:** The poet guarantees that the entire journey will be easy after the first step.
Statement II: Self-confidence is an essential requirement for navigating the future successfully.
 - (a) Both I and II are true.
 - (b) I is true, II is false.
 - (c) I is false, II is true.
 - (d) Both I and II are false.
- iii. What does the phrase “no turning back” suggest about beginning a new journey?
- iv. Identify the two-word metaphor used in the extract that represents beginning a new challenge.
- v. Fill in the blank:
According to the stanza, one simply needs to _____ to ensure their future heads in the right direction.

Ans :

- i. (a) It demands courage.
- ii. (c) I is false, II is true.
- iii. Once the first step is taken, one must commit fully to the path ahead without retreating or giving up.
- iv. first step
- v. believe in yourself



- (c) To return safely to the comfort zone and status quo.
- (d) To ignore any tough choices the future might bring.

Ans :

- (a) To keep you on track to achieve all of your dreams.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. How does the poet act as a supportive guide to the reader in the poem?

Ans :

The poet adopts a highly motivational tone, directly addressing the reader to act as a supportive guide. Instead of being a harsh critic, the poet encourages the reader to take charge of their own destiny and face life's upcoming challenges with resolute confidence.

2. Why does the poet describe the journey towards the future as deeply personal and solitary?

Ans :

The poet emphasizes that working towards one's future is a solitary endeavor because true progress often happens without external validation. There is no cheering crowd to witness your struggles, meaning you must rely entirely on yourself to navigate your unique path forward.

3. What does the phrase "There is no crowd to see" imply about seeking validation?

Ans :

This phrase implies that individuals should not depend on external validation, praise, or an audience to feel successful. Since the crowd will not always be there to cheer you on, true motivation and the drive to succeed must originate entirely from within yourself.

4. Explain the internal conflict the reader faces when making tough choices, as explored in the poem.

Ans :

When making tough choices, the reader experiences a mental tug-of-war. The future pulls them forward with the promise of excitement and growth, but simultaneously pushes them back with fear and uncertainty, making the decision to progress a difficult internal battle.

5. How does fear act as an obstacle to reaching one's true potential?

Ans :

Fear acts as a major obstacle by trapping individuals in their comfort zones. If we surrender to fear and uncertainty when approaching new challenges, it halts our progress completely, ultimately preventing us from discovering and reaching our true potential in life.

6. Why is it completely normal to experience fear and uncertainty when facing new challenges?

Ans :

Experiencing fear and uncertainty is a natural human reaction to the unknown. Stepping out of a familiar routine introduces unpredictability. The poem acknowledges these feelings as normal, but warns against letting them control your decisions or hinder your journey toward progress.

7. What is the "status quo," and why does the poem consider it dangerous?

Ans :

The "status quo" represents a state of unchanging comfort and familiarity. The poem considers it highly dangerous because it leads to stagnation. Staying within this safe zone makes true personal growth impossible and acts as the ultimate enemy of success.

8. According to the poem, why is stagnation referred to as the "enemy of success"?

Ans :

Stagnation is the enemy of success because it prevents any forward movement or self-improvement. When an individual avoids change and chooses an easy, comfortable life, they block the learning experiences and brave leaps necessary to achieve their most ambitious goals.

9. What must an individual leave behind, and what must they embrace to improve themselves?

Ans :

To achieve personal improvement, an individual must willingly leave behind what is easy, familiar, and comfortable. Instead, they must bravely embrace the unknown, taking courageous leaps forward rather than allowing fear to tether them to their stagnant past.

10. Why does the poet conclude that the "first step" is the hardest part of the journey?

Ans :

The first step is the hardest because it requires a person to actively break through long-standing mental barriers and deep-seated self-doubt.

one's future is deeply personal and solitary. If an individual depends solely on the applause or validation of society, they will falter when that external support inevitably fades. Intrinsic motivation—the drive originating from within—is vastly superior because it relies on an individual's self-belief and courage. Cultivating internal motivation makes a person resilient against the fear and uncertainty that accompany tough life choices. Trusting your own abilities empowers you to push past the comfort zone, shatter mental barriers, and bravely take the difficult first step toward achieving your dreams, regardless of who is watching.

6. Imagine you are an older sibling writing a letter to your younger brother, who is afraid of moving to a new city for higher studies. Use the core message of the poem to encourage him to take this step.

Ans :

Dear Rahul,

I know you feel anxious about moving to a new city. It is completely normal to experience fear and uncertainty when facing challenges. Currently, your mind is in a tug-of-war, tempting you to retreat to the familiar comforts of home. However, remember that the status quo is the enemy of success. Personal growth is impossible if we avoid change. You must leave behind what is easy and bravely embrace the unknown. The first step is always the hardest because it requires shattering your deep self-doubt. Do not worry about lacking a cheering crowd; true motivation comes from within. Trust in your amazing abilities, take this brave leap courageously, and proudly pursue your dreams.

With love,

Your Brother

7. Evaluate the poet's statement that "the first step is the hardest." Why do people struggle so much at the beginning of a journey, and how does the poem suggest they overcome this hurdle?

Ans :

The poet correctly evaluates that "the first step is the hardest" because beginnings require a monumental psychological shift. Before any physical action occurs, an individual must conquer internal obstacles. People struggle at the start because stepping into the unknown disrupts familiar routines, triggering profound self-doubt and fear of failure. It is much easier to remain

in the comfortable "status quo." To overcome this hurdle, the poem suggests individuals must actively break through their mental barriers. They need to summon immense courage, completely reject the need for external validation or a cheering crowd, and rely on strong self-belief. By trusting their inherent abilities, they can take that crucial, brave leap forward to achieve their dreams.

8. How does the poem use the imagery of a 'tug-of-war' to explain human psychology when faced with the future? What role does fear play in this dynamic?

Ans :

The poem uses the imagery of a 'tug-of-war' to brilliantly illustrate the internal psychological conflict when confronting the future. On one side, the future pulls the individual forward with the exciting prospect of achieving dreams and reaching new potential. On the opposite side, the comfort of the "familiar" pulls the individual backward. Fear plays a critical role in this dynamic; it is the primary force pushing us away from progress. While the poem acknowledges that fear and uncertainty are normal human reactions, it firmly warns that surrendering to them acts as a restrictive anchor. Fear traps individuals in comfortable stagnation, actively preventing the brave leap necessary for meaningful self-improvement and long-term success.

9. The poet views the journey to success as a solitary endeavor devoid of external validation. Discuss the implications of this view for a young student trying to build their career.

Ans :

The poet's view that the journey to success is solitary carries profound implications for a young student. It teaches them not to base their life choices on a desire for popularity, as there will not always be a "crowd to see." If a student relies solely on external validation, they risk abandoning their goals when faced with obstacles or silence. Instead, the poem empowers students to cultivate intrinsic motivation. They must learn to draw strength from within, completely trusting their own abilities rather than seeking societal approval. This perspective prepares students for reality, reminding them that enduring success requires breaking internal barriers, confronting solitary fears, and independently driving their own unique destiny forward.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. The poem highlights the mental 'tug-of-war' between progress and retreating to the familiar. Analyze this internal conflict and discuss why overcoming the 'status quo' is essential for achieving true potential. Support your answer with themes from the poem.

Ans :

The mental 'tug-of-war' represents the universal struggle between the desire to grow and the instinct to remain safe. The future pulls us forward with the exciting promise of achieving our dreams, while fear and uncertainty push us back toward the "status quo" or comfort zone. The poem states that while these fears are normal, giving in to them leads to stagnation, the ultimate enemy of success. Overcoming this internal conflict is essential because personal growth is impossible without embracing change. To truly succeed, an individual must break their mental barriers, reject the ease of the familiar, and take a brave leap into the unknown, trusting their own abilities to guide them.

2. Imagine you are a student who has just decided to pursue a difficult but unconventional career path, leaving your comfort zone behind. Write a diary entry reflecting on your decision, your fears, and your motivation, inspired by the poem's message.

Ans :

Dear Diary,
Today, I took the hardest step of my life by deciding to pursue an unconventional career path. The poem's words resonate deeply with me: the first step is indeed the most difficult.

My mind has been in a constant tug-of-war, tempting me to retreat to the familiar, safe choices that society applauds. However, I realize that staying in my comfort zone leads only to stagnation, the enemy of success.

I feel both fear and excitement as I face this unknown future. There is no crowd cheering me on, and the journey is solitary.

Yet, I am determined to conquer my self-doubt, embrace the unknown, and trust my own abilities to achieve my dreams.

3. You have been asked to deliver a morning assembly speech to your schoolmates on the topic "Stagnation is the Enemy of Success," drawing directly from the themes of the poem. Draft this speech.

Ans :

Respected Principal, teachers, and dear friends,
Good morning. Today, I wish to speak about a profound truth: Stagnation is the enemy of success. We often cling to our comfort zones, choosing the easy and familiar.

However, true personal growth demands change. As we envision our futures, we face a mental tug-of-war between the excitement of moving forward and the fear that pulls us back.

While feeling uncertain is normal, we must never let fear halt our potential. There won't always be a cheering crowd; therefore, our motivation must come entirely from within.

Let us actively conquer our self-doubt, take that courageous first step into the unknown, and trust our own abilities to achieve our deepest dreams.

Thank you.

4. Write a dialogue between two friends, Aman and Rohan. Aman is hesitant to participate in a tough state-level competition because he fears failure. Rohan uses the teachings of the poem to motivate him.

Ans :

Aman: Rohan, I am withdrawing from the competition. I am terrified of losing and would rather stick to school-level events where I feel safe.

Rohan: Aman, retreating to the familiar is just your fear talking. Remember, staying in your comfort zone causes stagnation, which is the true enemy of success.

Aman: But what if I fail? It feels so lonely without any support.

Rohan: The journey to the future is deeply solitary. You cannot rely on a cheering crowd; your motivation must come from within.

Aman: Taking that leap feels impossible due to my self-doubt.

Rohan: The first step is always the hardest. Break those mental barriers, embrace the unknown, and trust your abilities. You can achieve your dreams!

5. The poem emphasizes that true motivation must come "from within" because there is "no crowd to see." Elaborate on why intrinsic motivation is superior to external validation for long-term success, according to the poem.

Ans :

According to the poem, relying on external validation is fundamentally flawed because "there is no crowd to see." The journey toward

Ans :

(d) Comfortable

34. What must we do to the unknown?

- (a) Embrace it (b) Reject it
(c) Fear it (d) Ignore it

Ans :

(a) Embrace it

35. Choosing to stay comfortable hinders our:

- (a) Sleep cycle (b) Self-improvement
(c) Friendships (d) Daily routine

Ans :

(b) Self-improvement

36. According to the poem, what is the hardest?

- (a) The final goal (b) The middle path
(c) The steady pace (d) The first step

Ans :

(d) The first step

37. Why is beginning a new task considered the most difficult part?

- (a) It requires breaking through mental barriers and doubt.
(b) It requires financial support that is hard to obtain.
(c) It demands physical strength that most people lack.
(d) It means you must first gather a supportive crowd.

Ans :

(a) It requires breaking through mental barriers and doubt.

38. Making a big life change requires breaking through mental:

- (a) Peace (b) Barriers
(c) Health (d) Images

Ans :

(b) Barriers

39. What doubt must be overcome to begin?

- (a) Peer-doubt (b) Crowd-doubt
(c) Self-doubt (d) Future-doubt

Ans :

(c) Self-doubt

40. To take the first step, one needs strong _____.

- (a) Financial aid (b) Social status
(c) Physical power (d) Self-belief

Ans :

(d) Self-belief

41. What else is needed alongside self-belief?

- (a) Courage and confidence
(b) Fear and uncertainty
(c) Wealth and popularity
(d) Audience and validation

Ans :

(a) Courage and confidence

42. **Assertion (A):** Trusting in your abilities is important.

Reason (R): It helps you win arguments with the crowd.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation.
(b) A is true, but R is false based on the poem.
(c) A is false, but R is true based on the poem.
(d) Both A and R are false according to the poem.

Ans :

(b) A is true, but R is false based on the poem.

43. Which of the following statements is correct according to the conclusion?

- (a) The final step is always much harder than the first step.
(b) Self-doubt is an excellent tool for achieving your dreams.
(c) Trusting in your own abilities will keep you on track.
(d) Courage is not needed once the first hurdle is crossed.

Ans :

(c) Trusting in your own abilities will keep you on track.

44. What will keep you on track?

- (a) The crowd (b) The fear
(c) The comfort (d) Trusting abilities

Ans :

(d) Trusting abilities

45. What is the ultimate goal of trusting your own abilities?

- (a) To keep you on track to achieve all of your dreams.
(b) To prove to the crowd that you are better than them.

10. Analyze the conclusion of the poem. How does the practical message regarding self-belief serve as an antidote to the “stagnation” mentioned earlier in the text?

Ans :

The conclusion of the poem delivers a powerful, practical message: achieving success relies heavily on trusting one's own abilities. Earlier, the text identifies “stagnation” as the ultimate enemy of success, caused by retreating to the familiar due to fear. The conclusion offers self-belief as the perfect antidote to this paralyzing stagnation. While fear traps a person in their comfort zone, deep-rooted confidence provides the momentum needed to shatter mental barriers. By fully trusting themselves, an individual gains the immense courage required to take the hardest “first step” and bravely leap into the unknown. Ultimately, this unwavering self-belief empowers them to continuously move forward, conquer their internal tug-of-war, and relentlessly pursue their greatest dreams.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Step up to the challenge
There is no crowd to see,
It's just you and the future
And where you want to be.”

- What does the absence of a “crowd” imply in these lines?
 - Solitary effort
 - Public failure
 - External help
 - Loud applause
- Statement I:** The speaker wants the reader to take personal responsibility for their goals.
Statement II: The future is shaped by the presence of a large, supportive audience.
 - Both I and II are true.
 - I is true, II is false.
 - I is false, II is true.
 - Both I and II are false.
- Who does the poet say is responsible for determining where a person wants to be in the future?
- Identify the word in the extract that means “a demanding or difficult task”.

- State True or False with a brief reason:
The speaker believes that a person's future is determined entirely by others.

Ans :

- (a) Solitary effort
- (b) I is true, II is false.
- The poet says the individual themselves is solely responsible, as it is just “you and the future” with no crowd to influence the outcome.
- challenge
- False, because the lines state “It's just you and the future”, emphasizing individual autonomy over external influences.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Will it pull you forward
Or push you back in fear?
Difficult are choices
When the future is getting near.”

- According to the extract, what might cause an individual to be “pushed back”?
 - Unclear goals
 - Sudden fear
 - Past mistakes
 - Lost chances
- Assertion (A):** The choices we make become harder as the future approaches.
Reason (R): Approaching life events often bring a sense of uncertainty and apprehension.
 - Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
 - Both A and R are true but R is NOT the correct explanation of A.
 - A is true but R is false.
 - A is false but R is true.
- What two contrasting outcomes does the poet present through the rhetorical question in this stanza?
- Find the exact word from the extract that serves as an antonym for “easy”.
- Fill in the blank:
The poet suggests that making choices becomes _____ when the future gets closer.

Ans :

- (b) Sudden fear
- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

Initiating change demands an immense amount of courage to leave the comfort zone before any actual physical progress can begin.

11. How do mental barriers and self-doubt affect a person trying to make a big life change?

Ans :

Mental barriers and self-doubt create psychological hurdles that make beginning a new task incredibly difficult. They convince individuals that they might fail, forcing them into a state of hesitation. Overcoming these internal doubts is essential to taking the crucial first step.

12. What qualities are required alongside self-belief to successfully take the first step?

Ans :

Alongside self-belief, an individual must possess strong courage and unwavering confidence. These essential traits empower a person to push past the comfort of the familiar, face the unpredictability of the unknown, and trust their own abilities to navigate the path ahead.

13. How does trusting your own abilities keep you on track to achieve your dreams?

Ans :

Trusting your own abilities provides the inner resilience needed to overcome inevitable setbacks and fears. When you believe in yourself, you no longer rely on external crowds for motivation, ensuring you remain focused and steadfast on the path to realizing your dreams.

14. What is the significance of taking a “brave leap” into the unknown?

Ans :

Taking a brave leap into the unknown signifies a deliberate and courageous departure from the status quo. It is a necessary action for self-improvement, demonstrating a person’s willingness to risk failure in order to discover their capabilities and achieve personal growth.

15. How does the poem contrast the feelings of ‘excitement’ and ‘fear’ regarding the future?

Ans :

The poem contrasts excitement and fear as opposing forces in the mind’s tug-of-war. The prospect of the future pulls an individual forward with the excitement of new possibilities, while the fear of failure and the unknown pushes them back toward familiar comforts.

16. Why can’t a person rely on financial support or external validation, according to the poem?

Ans :

The poem suggests that a personal journey toward self-actualization is solitary. You will not always receive quick results, financial backing, or external validation for your choices. Therefore, genuine motivation must be cultivated internally rather than sought from outside sources or cheering crowds.

17. What role does the “familiar” play in the internal conflict described by the poet?

Ans :

The “familiar” acts as a powerful, magnetic force that tempts individuals to retreat during times of hardship. It represents safety and routine, actively competing against the desire for progress and making the choice to step into the unknown incredibly difficult.

18. How does the poem deliver a practical message in its conclusion?

Ans :

The poem concludes practically by acknowledging that while dreaming is easy, initiating action—taking the first step—is the hardest challenge. It leaves the reader with actionable advice: conquer self-doubt, muster your courage, and trust your abilities to stay on track.

19. In what way is working towards your future described as a “solitary” act?

Ans :

It is described as a solitary act because the responsibility of achieving your goals rests entirely upon your shoulders. Without an audience to applaud your minor victories, you must navigate your fears, make tough choices, and sustain your own momentum independently.

20. What is the ultimate consequence of choosing to stay comfortable instead of growing?

Ans :

The ultimate consequence of choosing comfort is the complete hindrance of self-improvement and the loss of your true potential. By avoiding change and resting in the status quo, you forfeit your dreams and succumb to the destructive force of stagnation.

Visit :

www.pdf.tube

Download PDFs For :

- ✓ **Chapterwise Question Bank**
- ✓ **JEE NEET Foundation**
- ✓ **Primary Classes Worksheets**
- ✓ **Olympiad Guide**
- ✓ **Sample Papers**
- ✓ **Previous Year Papers**
- ✓ **Previous JEE Papers**
- ✓ **Previous NEET Papers**

Nodia Editions LLP

125, Sector 6, Vidhyadhar Nagar, Jaipur 302039

MRP ₹ 650.00